American Society of Plumbing Engineers

Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook

A Plumbing Engineer's Guide to System Design and Specifications

Volume 3

Special Plumbing Systems



American Society of Plumbing Engineers 2980 S. River Road Des Plaines, IL 60018

The ASPE *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook* is designed to provide accurate and authoritative information for the design and specification of plumbing systems. The publisher makes no guarantees or warranties, expressed or implied, regarding the data and information contained in this publication. All data and information are provided with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, consulting, engineering, or other professional services. If legal, consulting, or engineering advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be engaged.



American Society of Plumbing Engineers 2980 S. River Rd. Des Plaines, IL 60018 (847) 296-0002 • Fax: (847) 296-2963 E-mail: info@aspe.org • Internet: www.aspe.org

Copyright © 2011 by American Society of Plumbing Engineers

All rights reserved, including rights of reproduction and use in any form or by any means, including the making of copies by any photographic process, or by any electronic or mechanical device, printed or written or oral, or recording for sound or visual reproduction, or for use in any knowledge or retrieval system or device, unless permission in writing is obtained from the publisher.

ISBN 978-1-891255-21-2

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook Volume 3 Special Plumbing Systems

ASPE Vice President, Technical Timothy A. Smith, CPD, FASPE Volume 3 Chair Michael Frankel Editor Gretchen Pienta Graphic Designer Rachel Boger

CONTRIBUTORS

Chapter 1 Fire Protection Systems Stephen F. Ziga, CPD, SET, CFPS

Chapter 2 Plumbing Design for Healthcare Facilities L. Richard Ellis, CPD, FASPE

> Chapter 3 Treatment of Industrial Waste Karl E. Yrjanainen, PE, CPD

> > **Chapter 4 Irrigation Systems** Joseph V. Messina, CPD

Chapter 5 Reflecting Pools and Fountains Marvin B. Schienberg

> **Chapter 6 Public Swimming Pools** Terrence R. LeBeau, CPD

Chapter 7 Gasoline and Diesel Oil Systems Daniel C. Gehl, CPD

Chapter 8 Steam and Condensate Piping Dean E. Proctor

Chapter 9 Compressed Air Systems Michael Frankel

Chapter 10 Solar Energy David E. DeBord, CPD, LEED AP

> Chapter 11 Site Utility Systems Michael Frankel

Chapter 12 Specialty Gas Systems Michael Frankel

About ASPE

The American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE) is the international organization for professionals skilled in the design and specification of plumbing systems. ASPE is dedicated to the advancement of the science of plumbing engineering, to the professional growth and advancement of its members, and to the health, welfare, and safety of the public.

The Society disseminates technical data and information, sponsors activities that facilitate interaction with fellow professionals, and, through research and education programs, expands the base of knowledge of the plumbing engineering industry. ASPE members are leaders in innovative plumbing design, effective materials and energy use, and the application of advanced techniques from around the world.

WORLDWIDE MEMBERSHIP — ASPE was founded in 1964 and currently has 6,200 members. Spanning the globe, members are located in the United States, Canada, Asia, Mexico, South America, the South Pacific, Australia, and Europe. They represent an extensive network of experienced engineers, designers, contractors, educators, code officials, and manufacturers interested in furthering their careers, their profession, and the industry. ASPE is at the forefront of technology. In addition, ASPE represents members and promotes the profession among all segments of the construction industry.

ASPE MEMBERSHIP COMMUNICATION — All members belong to ASPE worldwide and have the opportunity to belong and participate in one of the 62 state, provincial, or local chapters throughout the United States and Canada. ASPE chapters provide the major communication links and the first line of services and programs for the individual member. Communications with the membership is enhanced through the Society's magazine, *Plumbing Systems and Design*, and the biweekley e-newsletter "ASPE Pipeline."

TECHNICAL PUBLICATIONS — The Society maintains a comprehensive publishing program, spearheaded by the profession's basic reference text, the ASPE *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*. The *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, encompassing four volumes, provides comprehensive details of the accepted practices and design criteria used in the field of plumbing engineering. New additions to ASPE's published library of professional technical manuals and handbooks include the *Illustrated Plumbing Codes Design Handbook* and the *Plumbineering Dictionary*,

CONVENTION AND TECHNICAL SYMPOSIUM — The Society hosts biennial Conventions in even-numbered years and Technical Symposia in odd-numbered years to allow professional plumbing engineers and designers to improve their skills, learn original concepts, and make important networking contacts to help them stay abreast of current trends and technologies. In conjunction with each Convention is the Engineered Plumbing Exposition, the largest gathering of plumbing engineering and design products, equipment, and services in North America.

CERTIFIED IN PLUMBING DESIGN — ASPE sponsors a national certification program for engineers and designers of plumbing systems, which carries the designation "Certified in Plumbing Design" or CPD. The certification program provides the profession, the plumbing industry, and the general public with a single, comprehensive qualification of professional competence for engineers and designers of plumbing systems. The CPD, designed exclusively by and for plumbing engineers, tests hundreds of engineers and designers at centers throughout the United States biennially. Created to provide a single, uniform national credential in the field of engineered plumbing systems, the CPD program is not in any way connected to state-regulated Professional Engineer (PE) registration.

ASPE RESEARCH FOUNDATION — The ASPE Research Foundation, established in 1976, is the only independent, impartial organization involved in plumbing engineering and design research. The science of plumbing engineering affects everything from the quality of our drinking water to the conservation of our water resources to the building codes for plumbing systems. Our lives are impacted daily by the advances made in plumbing engineering technology through the Foundation's research and development.

American Society of Plumbing Engineers Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook

Volume 1 Fundamentals of Plumbing Engineering (Revised 2009)

Chapter 1

- 2 Standards for Plumbing Materials and Equipment
- 3 Specifications
- 4 Plumbing Cost Estimates
- 5 Job Preparation, Plumbing Drawings, and Field Checklists
- 6 Plumbing for People with Disabilities

Formulas, Symbols, and Terminology

- 7 Energy and Resource Conservation in Plumbing Systems
- 8 Corrosion
- 9 Seismic Protection of Plumbing Systems
- 10 Acoustics in Plumbing
- 11 Basics of Value Engineering
- 12 Ensuring High-quality Plumbing Installations
- 13 Existing Building Job Preparation and Condition Survey

Volume 2 Plumbing Systems (Revised 2010)

Chapter 1 Sanitary Drainage Systems

- 2 On-site Wastewater Reuse and Storm Water Harvesting
- 3 Vents and Venting Systems
- 4 Storm Drainage Systems
- 5 Cold Water Systems
- 6 Domestic Water Heating Systems
- 7 Fuel Gas Piping Systems
- 8 Private Onsite Wastewater Treatment Systems (POWTS)
- 9 Private Water Wells
- 10 Vacuum Systems
- 11 Water Treatment, Conditioning, and Purification
- 12 Special Waste Drainage Systems

Volume 4 Plumbing Components and Equipment (Estimated revision date: 2012)

Chapter 1 Plumbing Fixtures

- 2 Piping Systems
 - 3 Valves
 - 4 Pumps
 - 5 Piping Insulation
 - 6 Hangers and Supports
 - 7 Vibration Isolation
- 8 Grease Interceptors
- 9 Cross-connection Control
- 10 Water Treatment
- 11 Thermal Expansion
- 12 Potable Water Coolers and Central Water Systems
- 13 Bioremediation Pretreatment Systems
- 14 Green Plumbing

(The chapters and subjects listed for these volume are subject to modification, adjustment, and change. The contents shown for each volume are proposed and may not represent the final contents of the volume. A final listing of included chapters for each volume will appear in the actual publication.)

far@erga.com 17/01/15

Table of Contents

1	Fire Protection Systems1
	Fire Hazard Evaluation
	Classes of Fires
	Classification of Occupancy 2
	Type of Building Construction and Use
	Fire Load and Resistance Ratings
	Water Source
	Quantity and Availability
	Overall Fire Demand (Flow, Pressure, and Duration)
	Water Supply Makeup and Reliability 6
	Size and Age of Mains
	Automatic Sprinkler Systems
	Wet Pipe Systems
	Dry Pipe Systems
	Preaction Systems
	Deluge Systems
	Combined Dry Pipe and Preaction Systems
	Antifreeze Systems 11
	Sprinkler System Hydraulics
	Pipe Schedule System 12
	System Size
	Information Required for Hydraulic Calculations
	Steps to Fire Sprinkler System Design
	Use of Sprinklers
	Residential Sprinklers
	Pipe Hangers
	Standpipe Systems
	Locating and Determining the Number of Standpipe Risers
	Standpipe System Design
	Fire Pump Systems
	Fire Pump Drivers
	Jockey Pump
	Special Extinguishing Systems
	Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems

	Dry Powder Extinguishing Systems	24	
	Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems	24	
	Water Spray Fixed Systems.	24	
	Water Mist Systems	24	
	Foam Extinguishing Systems	25	
	Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems	26	
	Clean Agent Fire Suppression Systems	26	
	Fire Extinguishers	28	
	Elevator Shaft Protection	29	
	Elevator Recall	29	
	Elevator Shut Down	29	
	Sprinklers and Piping	29	
	Design Coordination And Considerations.	29	
	References	30	
	Appendix	30	
2	Plumbing Design for Healthcare Facilities	• •	.33
	Types of Healthcare Facilities	33	
	Hospitals	33	
	Nursing Homes	33	
	Limited-care Facilities	34	
	Other Healthcare Facilities	34	
	Medical Gas and Vacuum System Levels	34	
	Level 1	34	
	Level 2	34	
	Level 3	34	
	Plumbing Fixtures and Related Equipment.	35	
	Selection Process	35	
	General Requirements.	35	
	Fixtures for General Use in Staff and Public Areas	35	
	Fixtures for Patient and Treatment Rooms	37	
	Fixtures for Kitchens and Laundries	39	
	Decontamination Area Fixtures	39	
	Unique Fixtures	41	
	Fixtures for Laboratory Rooms	41	
	Special Equipment	42	
	Acid Waste Drainage Systems	42	
	Corrosive Waste System Materials	42	
	Alarm Systems	43	
	Discharge to Sewers.	43	
	Acidic Waste Neutralization	44	
	Acid Waste Solids Interceptor	45	
	Acid Waste Metering Detail	45	
	Traps for Laboratory Sinks	45	
	Laboratory Waste and Vent Piping	46	
	Water Supply Systems	46	

	Potable Water Systems	
	Nonpotable Water Systems	
	Pure Water Systems	
	Medical Gas and Vacuum Systems	
	Medical Gas System Design Checklist	
	Number of Stations	
	Medical Gas Flow Rates	
	Medical Gas System Dispensing Equipment	
	Medical Gas Storage	
	Medical Compressed Air	
	Vacuum Systems	
	Waste Anesthetic Gas Management	
	System Control Valves	
	Warning Systems	
	Medical Gas Piping Installation	
	Medical Gas Pipe Sizing Criteria	
	Medical Gas Piping Materials	
	Certification of Medical Gas Systems	
	Codes and Standards	
	Glossary	
	References	
	Resources	
3	Treatment of Industrial Waste	
	Definitions	
	Regulatory Framework	
	Clean Water Act	
	RCRA and CERCLA	
	Design Considerations	
	Elements of an Industrial Wastewater Handling System	
	pH Control	
	Removal of Dissolved and Suspended Metals	
	Oil/Water Separation	
	Biological Treatment	
	References	
	Codes and Standards	
	Government Publications	
	Technology and Industry Handbooks	
	Resources	
4	Irrigation Systems	
	Water Quality and Requirements	
	Soil Considerations	
	System Concepts	
	System Components	
	Sprinklers	

	Valves	
	Backflow Devices	
	Controllers	
	Design Information	
	Site Plan	
	Types of Plantings	
	Type of Soil	
	Type and Source of Water	
	System Location	
	References	
	Resources	
	Appendix 4-A	
5	Reflecting Pools and Fountains	
	Using the Building's Mechanical Area for Fountain Equipment	
	Using a Subterranean Vault for the Fountain Equipment	
	Sizing the Display Pump 100	
	Safety	
	Codes and Standards 100	
	Materials	
	System Devices in Pools and Mechanical Areas	
	Conclusion	
ß	Public Swimming Pools 104	
U	Codes and Standards	
	Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Sna Safety Act 104	
	State Swimming Pool Health Code Requirements	
	Important Considerations	
	Proliminary Design Parameters	
	Occupant Canadity and Size of the Facility 106	
	Location of the Facility 107	
	General Physical Character 107	
	Bathhouses Toilets and Showers	
	Pool Operating Systems 111	
	Design Parameters 111	
	Main Drain and Grate 112	
	Filtration Circulation and Water Chemistry Control Components 113	
	Component Evaluation and Selection	
	Surge Vessels (Surge Tanks) 116	
	Surge Cuttor Trough 116	
	Skippers 117	
	Uigh rate Sand Filters	
	Ingn-rate Sand Filters 110 Vacuum Sand Filters 110	
	Vacuum Sanu Finters	
	Circulation Dump Selection	
	Flow Sensors	
	r low gensors	

	Flow Control Devices 125	5
	Pool Water Heating Systems 126	6
	Dehumidification and Heat Recovery Systems	7
	Chemical Control and Feed Systems 127	7
	Level Control Systems	L
	Fresh Water Makeup	2
	Specialty Systems	3
	Supplemental Sanitation and Oxidation	3
	Water Features	Ł
	Pool Site Components	Ł
	Ladders, Ramps, and Handicapped Access	Ł
	Underwater Pool Lights	ó
	Pool Inlets	5
	Safety Equipment	5
	References	5
7	Gasoline and Diesel Oil Systems	. 136
	Definitions and Liquid Fuel Classifications 136	3
	Codes and Standards	7
	System Components	7
	Underground Storage Tanks	7
	Tank Materials 138	3
	Tank Construction 139)
	Tank Connections and Access 139)
	Tank Filling 139)
	Spill Prevention)
	Overfill Prevention	L
	Atmospheric Tank Venting 141	L
	Leak Detection and System Monitoring 141	L
	Vapor Recovery Systems 145	5
	Dispensing Systems 146	6
	Aboveground Storage Tanks 147	7
	Tank Construction. 147	7
	Corrosion Protection 148	3
	Tank Connections and Access 148	3
	Spill Prevention	3
	Atmospheric Tank Venting 148	3
	Overfill Prevention 148	3
	Leakage from Tanks 148	3
	System Monitoring 149)
	Vapor Recovery)
	Product Dispensing Systems 149)
	Tank Protection 149)
	System Piping Considerations)
	Piping Materials)
	Pipe Sizing)

	Pump Sizing	151
	Tests	152
	Testing of the Storage Tank	152
	Testing of the Piping Network	153
	Tightness Testing	153
	System Installation Considerations	154
	Tank Removal and Abandonment	154
	Tank Installation	154
	Piping Installation	155
	Installation Checklist	155
	References	156
	Resources	156
8	Steam and Condensate Piping	157
	Steam Basics	157
	Specific Volume of Saturated Steam	157
	- Flash Steam	157
	Steam Distribution Piping.	159
	Steam Velocity	159
	Pressure Drop	159
	Erosion in Steam Distribution Systems	161
	Condensate Removal	161
	Steam Traps	162
	Proper Condensate Drainage from System Piping.	163
	Startup Loads	163
	Heat-up Method	163
	Drip Legs	164
	Adequate Pressure Differential Across the Trap	164
	Running Loads	165
	Piping Layout	165
	Trap Installation	165
	Flashing Flow and High-pressure Condensate Piping	166
	Trapping Applications	166
	Trapping Space-heating Equipment.	166
	Trap Selection for Unit Heaters and Air-handling Units	167
	Trapping Shell and Tube Heat Exchangers	167
	Technical Resources	169
	References	169
9	Compressed Air Systems	171
	Codes and Standards	171
	Fundamentals	171
	Units of Measure	172
	Pressure	172
	Flow Rate	172
	Water Vapor in Air	172

Contaminants	 173
Liquids	 173
Vapor	 173
Gas	 174
Particulates	 174
Use Factor	 174
System Components	 174
Air Compressor	 174
Piping	 176
Joints	 176
Valves	 176
Flow Meters	 177
Compressed Air Receivers	 177
Aftercoolers	 178
Separators	 178
Compressed Air Drvers	 178
Regulators	 179
Filters and Purifiers	 180
Relief Valves	 180
Hose and Fittings	 181
Alarms	 182
Vibration Isolation	 182
Compressor Inlet Pining	 182
Pine Lavout Design and Sizing	 182
Recommended Pipe and System Sizing	 182
Flushing and Testing the Distribution System	 183
Glossary	 183
crossary	 100
10 Solar Energy	 188
Our Sun	 188
A Possible Solution	 188
What Is Solar Energy?	 188
How Can Solar Help?	 189
Environmental Impact: What Is Being Saved?	 189
Does It Work for Commercial Applications?	 190
Why Use Solar?	 190
Tax Credits	 190
Definitions	 190
Some Quick Estimating Calculations	 193
Quick Cost Comparisons	 193
System Sizing Rules of Thumb	 193
Solar Irradiation Collection Methods	 193
Flat-plate Solar Collectors	 193
Concentrating Collectors.	 195
System Sizing and Calculations.	 196
Solar-assisted Service Water Heating	 196

	Keys to Sizing	199
	Keys to Performance	199
	Panel Layouts and Piping Arrangements	199
	Panels in Parallel/Arrays in Parallel	199
	Panels in Series/Arrays in Parallel	199
	Panels in Series/Arrays in Series	199
	Illustrations	199
	Specifications	199
	Collectors	201
	Heat Exchangers	201
	Pump Body and Impeller Material	201
	Storage Tanks	203
	Heat Pumps	203
	Insulation	203
	Additional Reading and Other Resources	203
	References.	203
11	Site Utility Systems	205
	Preliminary Information for All Systems	205
	Domestic Water Service	205
	Codes and Standards	206
	Getting Started	206
	General System Requirements	206
	Typical Domestic Water Building Service Components and Design Considerations	208
	Fire Protection Water Supply	218
	Codes and Standards	218
	Building Water Supply	218
	Ancillary Devices	220
	Sizing the Fire Protection Water Service	221
	Sanitary Sewer	225
	Sizing the Sanitary Sewer	225
	Sewer Components and Design Criteria	225
	Sewage Lift Stations	228
	Alternative Methods of Disposal	237
	Site Storm Water Drainage System.	237
	Preliminary Investigation for the Entire Site	238
	Codes and Standards	238
	Materials	238
	Sizing a Storm Water System	238
	Storm Water System Design Procedure	243
	Storm Water Disposal Methods.	249
	Sizing a Ditch	250
	Storm System Design Considerations	250
	Natural Gas Service	251
	Codes and Standards	251
	General Procedures	251

	The Gas Utility Letter		252
	Major System Components		252
	Site Distribution		255
	Site Service Sizing Procedure		256
	Natural Gas Pipe Sizing Methods.		256
	Pipe and System Materials		256
	Testing and Purging		257
	Appendix 11-A		258
	Appendix 11-B		259
12	Laboratory Gases	•••	263
	Codes and Standards	••••	263
	Physical Properties of Air	••••	263
	Impurities and Contamination		264
	Water Vapor in Compressed Air		265
	Classification of Specialty Laboratory Gases	• • • •	266
	Grades of Specialty Laboratory Gases		267
	Storage and Generation of Gases		267
	Cylinder Storage		267
	Dewers		268
	Gas Cabinet		268
	Specialty Gas Generators		270
	Distribution System Components		270
	Manifolds		270
	Regulators		271
	Filters and Purifiers		273
	Gauges		273
	Flash Arresters		273
	Valves		273
	Manifold and Regulator Purge Devices		275
	Flow Measurement		275
	Gas Warmers		275
	Alarms		275
	Toxic and Flammable Gas Monitors		275
	Gas Mixers		276
	Vibration Isolation		276
	Distribution Network		276
	System Pressure		276
	Pipe Material Selection		276
	Joints		277
	Pipe Sizing and Lavout	••••	277
	System Sizing Procedure	••••	278
	Compressor Inlet Pining	• • • •	280
	Toete	• • • •	200
	Fluching Trating and Durging the Distribution System	• • • •	200 280
	rushing, resultg, and rurging the Distribution System	• • • •	200
In	dex		281

Figures

Figure 1-1	Time/Temperature Curve for Standard Fire Test
Figure 1-2	Pitot Tube Position
Figure 1-3	Method of Conducting Flow Tests 4
Figure 1-4	Three General Types of Hydrant Outlets and Their Coefficients of
Discharge	
Figure 1-5	Water Supply Graph
Figure 1-6	Typical Alarm Check Valve Riser
Figure 1-7	Wet Pipe Sprinkler System
Figure 1-8	Vane-type Water Flow Indicator
Figure 1-9	Dry Pipe Valve
Figure 1-10	Typical Dry Pipe Valve Riser
Figure 1-11	Typical Preaction Valve Riser 10
Figure 1-12	Typical Deluge Valve Riser 10
Figure 1-13	Deluge Valve with Single Differential Diaphragm 11
Figure 1-14	Deluge Valve with Outlet Pressure Regulator 11
Figure 1-15	Antifreeze System Piping Arrangement 11
Figure 1-16	Density Area Curve Example 12
Figure 1-17	Example Sprinkler Flow Pattern 18
Figure 1-18	Common Types of Acceptable Hangers 19
Figure 1-19	Acceptable Piping Arrangement for Combined Sprinkler/Standpipe
Systems	
Figure 1-20	Schematic Diagram of Fire Pump with Bypass
Figure 1-21	Fire Pump System
Figure 1-22	The Fire Triangle
Figure 2-1	Acid-neutralizing Tank Detail 43
Figure 2-2	Acid Waste Solids Interceptor Detail 44
Figure 2-3	Sampling Manhole 45
Figure 2-4	Typical Layout of Liquid Oxygen, Oxygen Reserve Supply, Cylinder
Figure 9.5	Turnical Bulk Supply System Schematic
Figure 2-5	Typical Durk Supply System Schematic
Figure 2-0	Conversion from asfm to sofm
Figure 2-1	Turnical Dunlay Medical Air Compression System (Turne 1 Cos System) 62
Figure 2-0	Schemetic of a Terrical Durlar Medical/Genetical Variante Durlar System). 63
rigure 2-9	Schematic of a Typical Duplex Medical/Surgical vacuum Pump System 66

Figure 3-1	Acid/Caustic Neutralization Diagram 85
Figure 3-2	Conventional Electroplating Industry Wastewater Treatment
Figure 3-3	Treatment System with Wastewater Stream Segregation
Figure 3-4 System fo	Typical Continuous Treatment of Wastewater and Solids-handling or Heavy Metals
Figure 3-5	Emulsified Oil Removal Flow Sheet
Figure 4-1	Examples of a Block System
Figure 4-2	Quick-coupling Valve
Figure 4-3	Valve-in-Head System
Figure 4-4	Pop-up Spray Heads
Figure 4-5	Impact Sprinkler
Figure 4-6	Rotor Sprinkler—Arcs and Full Circles
Figure 4-7	Nozzles—Adjustable Arcs and Patterns
Figure 4-8	Installation of Atmospheric-type Vacuum Breakers
Figure 4-9	Irrigation Sprinkler Programmers
Figure 5-1	Pre-plumbed Equipment Skid
Figure 5-2	Equipment Vault
Figure 5-3	Combination Suction Sump Pump and Discharge Plate 101
Figure 5-4	Combination Overflow and Water Level Sensor
Figure 5-5	Mechanical Sidewall Niche Assembly 102
Figure 5-6	Surface Skimmer Fitting 102
Figure 5-7	Eyeball Fitting 102
Figure 5-8	Adjustable Diverter Inlet Fitting 102
Figure 6-1	Field-fabricated Sump Dimensions 105
Figure 6-2	Formed Concrete Main Drain Sump with Hydrostatic Relief Valve 113
Figure 6-3	Typical Above-grade Piping Scheme 115
Figure 6-4	Typical Below-grade Piping Scheme 115
Figure 6-5	Deck-level Surge Gutter Trench 117
Figure 6-6	Skimmer Detail 117
Figure 6-7	Horizontal High-rate Sand Filtration System, Multi-tank 118
Figure 6-8	Vacuum DE Filter in Pre-coat Mode 119
Figure 6-9	Regenerative DE Filter 121
Figure 6-10	Particle Retention Test Results 121
Figure 6-11	Flow Control Valves 125
Figure 6-12 Valve wit	Differential Pressure Controller Detail, Piston-actuated Butterfly h Pilot Positioner
Figure 6-13 Valve	Differential Pressure Controller Detail, Diaphragm-actuated Butterfly
Figure 6-14	Complete System Piping
Figure 6-15	Handicapped Access
Figure 7-1	Typical Underground Storage Tank Installation
Figure 7-2	Containment Sump 139
Figure 7-3	Manway
Figure 7-4	Overfill Protection Valve
Figure 7-5	Ball Float Overfill Protection Valve 142
Figure 7-6	Schematic Diagram of Leak Detection Methods for Tanks and Piping. 143

Figure 7-7	Detail of Hydrostatic Interstitial Monitoring	144
Figure 7-8	Typical Service Station Piping	147
Figure 7-9	Shear Valve	150
Figure 7-10	Fuel Management Unit	150
Figure 7-11	Aboveground Storage Tank	151
Figure 7-12	Aboveground Storage Tank Installation	152
Figure 7-13	Fill Installation	153
Figure 7-14	Coaxial Pipe	153
Figure 7-15	Foot Valve	153
Figure 7-16	System Head Loss Checklist	154
Figure 7-17	Deadman Installation	155
Figure 8-1	Flash Steam Data	159
Figure 8-2	Flow Rate and Velocity of Steam in Schedule 40 Pipe at Saturation	
Pressure	of 0 psig	160
Figure 8-3	Velocity Multiplier Chart for Figure 8-2	161
Figure 8-4	Thermostatic Bellows Trap	162
Figure 8-5	Inverted Bucket Trap	163
Figure 8-6	Thermodynamic Disc Trap	163
Figure 8-7	Guidelines for Drip Leg Sizing	164
Figure 8-8	Piping for Runouts	165
Figure 8-9	Shell and Tube Heat Exchanger	167
Figure 9-1	Relationship Between Gauge and Absolute Pressure	172
Figure 9-2	Dewpoint Conversion Chart	173
Figure 9-3	Typical Aftercooler and Moisture Separator	174
Figure 9-4	Refrigerated Air Dryer with Four Major Components:	176
Figure 9-5	Absorption (Dessicant) Dryer	179
Figure 10-1	The Role of Renewable Energy in the U.S. Energy Supply	189
Figure 10-2	Amount of Sun's Energy that Reaches the Earth	193
Figure 10-3	How Solar Energy Is Collected.	194
Figure 10-4	Sample f-chart, Service Water Heating Application	197
Figure 10-5	Thermosyphon System, Service Water Heating Application, Indirect .	198
Figure 10-6	Pump Circulating System, Service Water Heating Application, Direct.	198
Figure 10-7	f-chart for Memphis, Tennessee	199
Figure 10-8	Pump Circulating System, Combined Space and Service Water	
Heating A	Applications	200
Figure 10-9	Panels in Parallel/Arrays in Parallel	201
Figure 10-10	Panels in Series/Arrays in Series	201
Figure 10-11	Panels in Series/Arrays in Series	201
Figure 10-12	Dual Water Heater with Solar Tank	202
Figure 10-13	Dual Water Heater with Dual Solar Tanks	202
Figure 10-14	Solar Panel Array Installation	204
Figure 11-1	Water Service Calculations	207
Figure 11-2	Conversion of Fixture Units to gpm	209
Figure 11-3	Hydrant Flow Test Arrangement	210
Figure 11-4	Pitot Tube with Gage and Air Chamber	210
Figure 11-5	Obtaining Nozzle Pressure with a Pitot Tube	210

Figure 11-6	Relative Discharge Curves	211
Figure 11-7	Water Supply Graph	212
Figure 11-8	Service Connection Schematic	213
Figure 11-9	Large Wet Tap Excavation Dimensions	213
Figure 11-10	Equivalent Lengths of Pipe for Valves and Fittings	214
Figure 11-11	Above ground Reduced Pressure Zone Backflow Preventer $\ldots \ldots \ldots$	215
Figure 11-12	Typical Backflow Preventer in Pit	216
Figure 11-13	Double Check Valve Installed in a Pit	216
Figure 11-14	RPZ Discharge Flow Rate.	217
Figure 11-15	Connections to a Public Water Main	217
Figure 11-16	Frost Depth Map of the Continental United States	218
Figure 11-17	Typical Connections to Water Storage Tanks	219
Figure 11-18	Typical Fire Hydrant	220
Figure 11-19	Typical Guard Post	221
Figure 11-20	Typical Post Indicator Valve	222
Figure 11-21	Thrust Block Installation	223
Figure 11-22	Fixture Unit Conversion to gpm	226
Figure 11-23	Pipe Sizing Using the Manning Formula	226
Figure 11-24	Bedding for Plastic Pipe	227
Figure 11-25	Bedding for Metallic Pipe	227
Figure 11-26	Rigid Pipe Bedding Methods	228
Figure 11-27	Typical House Sewer Connection	229
Figure 11-28	Typical Precast Manhole	230
Figure 11-29	Typical Acid Manhole	231
Figure 11-30	Shallow Manhole	232
Figure 11-31	Drop Manhole	232
Figure 11-32	Detail of Waterproof Manhole	233
Figure 11-33	Submersible Pump Assembly	233
Figure 11-34	Detail of Force Main Connection to Public Sewer	234
Figure 11-35	Force Main Cleanout in Manhole	234
Figure 11-36	Force Main Air Release and Vacuum Relief Valves	235
Figure 11-37	Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves	237
Figure 11-38	Overland Flow Time	240
Figure 11-39	Rainfall Intensity-Frequency-Duration Chart	243
Figure 11-40	Transition Fitting from Plastic to Steel	250
Figure 11-B1	Typical Water Service Letter	259
Figure 11-B2	Typical Sewer Letter	260
Figure 11-B3	Typical Gas Utility Letter	261
Figure 12-1	Moisture Content of Saturated Air	265
Figure 12-2	Dewpoint Conversion Chart	266
Figure 12-3	Гуріcal Arrangements and Dimensions of Cylinder Installations	268
Figure 12-4	Гуріcal Cylinder Dimensions	270
Figure 12-5 (Cryogenic Containers	271
Figure 12-6	Гуріcal Manifold Assembly	272
Figure 12-7	Гуріcal Single- and Double-stage Regulators	272

Figure 12-8 Typical Purifier Arrangement	273
Figure 12-9 Typical Single-cylinder Installation Detail	274
Figure 12-10 Typical Relief Venting	274
Figure 12-11 Typical Purging Arrangement	277
Figure 12-12 ¹ / ₈ -in. OD Tubing	278

Tables

gpm Flow Table 5
Factors for Determining Water Capacity per Foot of Pipe
Water Flow Tables 14
Water Flow Tables 15
Water Flow Tables 15
Water Flow Tables 16
Water Flow Tables 16
Water Flow Tables 17
Water Flow Tables 17
Equivalent Pipe Lengths for Fittings 17
Maximum Sprinkler Temperature Rating and Temperature Classification
Code (with glass bulb fusible link) 18
Approved Pipe Materials
Partial Summary of Centrifugal Fire Pump Data 22
Recommended Plumbing Fixtures and Related Equipment 36
Hospital Plumbing Fixtures 40
Acidic Waste Neutralization Tank Sizing Table 44
Inlet/Outlet Station Data 52
Medical Air Peak Demand Chart 53
Outlet Rating Chart for Medical Vacuum Piping Systems 54
Medical Vacuum Peak Demand Chart (Medical/Surgical Vacuum System). 54
Color Coding for Piped Medical Gases
Types of Dispensing Equipment for Specific Areas
Exterior Bulk Oxygen Storage Installation Criteria
Cryogenic Storage Tank Capacities
Selection Chart for Oxygen Manifolds
Sizing Chart for Nitrous Oxide Cylinder Manifolds
Altitude Correction Factors for Medical Air Systems
Minimum Pipe Sizes for Medical Air Compressor Intake Risers 64
Selection Chart for Nitrogen Cylinder Manifolds
acfm to scfm Vacuum Conversion Table
Altitude Correction Factors for Vacuum Systems
Minimum Pipe Sizes for Vacuum Exhaust Risers
Medical Gas Pipe Support Schedule

Table 2-21 Medical Gas Diversity (Simultaneous Use) Factors 70
Table 2-22Data for Sizing Oxygen and Nitrous Oxide Supply Piping.71
Table 2-23 Data for Sizing Nitrogen Supply Piping 71
Table 2-24Pressure Loss, psi per 100 ft in 50 psi Compressed Air Piping72
Table 2-25 High-pressure Compressed Air Friction Loss Table 73
Table 2-26 Data for Sizing Vacuum Piping Systems 73
Table 3-1 Industries Affected by the Effluent Guidelines Program Plan 82
Table 3-2General Properties of Materials Used for Storage Tanks and Piping 84
Table 4-1 Net Amount of Water to Apply per Irrigation Cycle 91
Table 6-1 Minimum Number of Sanitary Fixtures Required at Public Pools and Water Attractions. 109
Table 8-1 Properties of Saturated Steam 158
Table 8-2Relationship of Mass Flow Rate, Velocity, and Pressure Drop in a 2-inchSteam Line at 100 psig161
Table 8-3 The Warming-up Load from 70°F, Schedule 40 Pipe. 164
Table 8-4Condensation in Insulated Pipes Carrying Saturated Steam in Quiet Air at 70°Fat 70°F165
Table 8-5 Constants for Determining the Btu Output of a Unit Heater Under
Conditions Other than Standard 166
Table 8-6 Specific Gravity and Specific Heats of Various Substances 168
Table 9-1 General Composition of Dry Air 172
Table 9-2 Elevation Correction Factor 171
Table 9-3 Temperature Correction Factor 173
Table 9-4 Standard ASME Receiver Dimensions 174
Table 9-5 Selection of Supply Hose Size 175
Table 9-6 Inlet Air Filter Characteristics 175
Table 9-7 Recommended Air Inlet Pipe Size 177
Table 9-8 Equivalent Pressure Loss Through Valves and Fittings 177
Table 9-9 General Air Requirements for Tools 180
Table 9-10 High-pressure Compressed Air Friction Loss Table 181
Table 9-11 Friction Loss for Hose, psi 184
Table 9-12Factors for the Sizing of Any Gas, Based on Specific Gravity185
Table 10-1 Solar Cost Comparison, Method A. 192
Table 10-2 Solar Cost Comparison, Method B. 192
Table 11-1 Water Fixture Unit Values Assigned to Fixtures 206
Table 11-2 Maximum Probable Flow 208
Table 11-3 BFP Flow Rate, Drain Size Flowing Full 216
Table 11-4 Soil Bearing Loads 222
Table 11-5 Pressure Exerted at Joints by Flowing Water
Table 11-6 Typical Fire Protection Flow Rate Requirements 224
Table 11-7 Sewer Size Based on Velocity and Slope 224
Table 11-7(M) Sewer Size Based on Velocity and Slope $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 224$
Table 11-8 Manhole Spacing and Location of Pipe Sewers 233
Table 11-9 Capacity of Sump and Ejector Basins, gallons per foot depth 237
Table 11-10 Approximate Buoyant Force of Empty Tanks. 241
Table 11-11 Imperviousness Factors 242

Table 11-12	2 n Value for Pipe Used in the Manning Formula	42
Table 11-13	3 Typical Cross Sections for Ditches—Depths of 10 ft and Less 24	42
Table 11-14	1 n Values for Ditches Used in the Manning Formula	42
Table 11-15	5 Design Velocity of Water in Ditches 24	42
Table 11-16	Gas Pipe Sizing	53
Table 11-17	7 Sizing NG Pipe	53
Table 11-18	8 Test Duration for Plastic Gas Mains 24	54
Table 12-1	General Composition of Dry Air 20	64
Table 12-2	Elevation Correction Factor	64
Table 12-3	Temperature Correction Factor	64
Table 12-4	Flammability Limits and Specific Gravity for Common Gases 24	67
Table 12-5	Sizing for Oxygen, Nitrogen, and Air 24	69
Table 12-6	Factors for the Sizing of Any Gas, Based on Specific Gravity 24	69
Table 12-7	Typical Laboratory Branch Sizing Chart	75
Table 12-8	Recommended Air Compressor Inlet Pipe Size	76

Fire Protection Systems

As the role of the plumbing engineer has evolved, many have become responsible for the engineering of fire protection systems within the buildings they design. It is their responsibility to be knowledgeable about the applicable fire protection system types, design methods, relevant adopted codes, insurance regulatory requirements, and general installation methods.

The two main purposes for fire protection systems within built environments are life safety and property protection. Equal consideration must be given to attempt to contain a fire while protecting a building's occupants during their evacuation. Absolute safety from fire is not attainable, but means must be provided to minimize the potential for fire and the damage done by fire. The systems and methods used today are constantly changing and improving to meet the requirements of project variations and challenges. This chapter provides a basic outline for establishing the needed criteria to ensure fire safety via fire suppression within a building environment.

HISTORY AND OBJECTIVE

The primary system encountered is the water-based sprinkler system. This type of system dates back to the 1850s. The original sprinkler system was first introduced as lengths of perforated pipe that were manually activated. These types of systems were predominantly installed in mill buildings in the era from 1850 to approximately 1880.

In 1874, Henry S. Parmalee of New Haven, Connecticut obtained U.S. patent No. 154076 for an automatic sprinkler head. This device was a perforated sprinkler head containing a valve that was held closed against water pressure by a heavy spring made of low-fusing material. In 1874, he installed his fire sprinkler system in the piano factory that he owned. With the introduction of the first true heat-actuated automatic sprinkler, known as the "Parmalee head," in 1878, the automatic sprinkler system as we know it today was born. Fast forward 60 years. Following fires with large losses of life (Coconut Grove Nightclub, Boston, 1942, 492 dead; LaSalle Hotel, Chicago, 1946, 61 dead; Winecoff Hotel, Atlanta, 1946, 119 dead), fire and building officials searched for a means to provide life safety for building occupants. They found that factories and other buildings equipped with automatic sprinklers had an amazingly good life safety record compared to similar buildings without sprinklers, and thus dawned the new age of providing sprinklers in commercial buildings.

The predominant source for fire suppression guidance is the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA). Established in 1896, the NFPA's mission is to reduce the worldwide burden of fire and other hazards on the quality of life by providing and advocating scientifically based consensus codes and standards, research, training, and education. NFPA publishes many codes and standards and also compiles records on fires in buildings protected with fire suppression systems. NFPA statistics show that properly designed sprinkler systems rarely fail to control the spread of or extinguish a fire. The organization has no record of a fire killing more than two people in a completely sprinklered building where a sprinkler system was properly operating, except in an explosion or flash or where industrial fire brigade members or employees were killed during fire suppression operations. The major cause of sprinkler system failure is inadequate water supply due to under-designed systems or closed water control valves.

(Note: NFPA standards refer to the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ), which is the organization or individual responsible for approving equipment, materials, installations, and procedures. NFPA standards typically are adopted by our model building codes and local governments. Each authority may choose different versions of NFPA published standards or provide their own amended versions. It is important to investigate what applicable codes and standards are to be used for each project.)

FIRE HAZARD EVALUATION

The first step in the design of an automatic sprinkler system is the determination of the overall fire hazard. The key factors affecting the overall fire hazard are:

- Class of fire
- · Classification of occupancy and commodities
- Type of building construction
- Fire growth rate

Classes of Fires

A generally accepted method of classification separates combustible materials into five types:

- Class A Fires: Ordinary combustible materials such as wood, cloth, paper, rubber, and many plastics (typical for wet-based sprinkler systems)
- Class B Fires: Flammable liquids, combustible liquids, petroleum greases, tars, oils, oil-based paints, solvents, lacquers, alcohols, and flammable gases
- Class C Fires: Fires that involve energized electrical equipment
- Class D Fires: Combustible metals such as magnesium, titanium, zirconium, sodium, lithium, and potassium
- Class K Fires: Fires in cooking appliances that involve cooking oils and fats

Note: Class B, C, D, and K fires require specialized suppression systems based on the material that needs to be extinguished. The correct selection of an extinguishing agent is critical to controlling and extinguishing these types of fire.

Classification of Occupancy

The criteria for occupancy classification is defined in NFPA 13: *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*. The categories are broken into five areas based on building use type:

- Light hazard: Low quantity of combustibles with low heat release (e.g., churches, hospitals, museums)
- Ordinary hazard 1: Moderate quantity of combustibles with moderate heat release and 8-foot stockpiles (e.g., mechanical rooms, restaurant kitchens, laundry facilities)
- Ordinary hazard 2: Moderate quantity of combustibles with moderate heat release and 12-foot stockpiles (e.g., stages, large library stack rooms, repair garages)
- Extra hazard 1: High quantity of combustibles with high heat release and no flammable or combustible liquids (e.g., aircraft hangers, saw mills)
- Extra hazard 2: High quantity of combustibles with high heat release and flammable and combustible liquids (e.g., plastics processing, flammable liquids spraying)

If the building includes storage, whether in stockpiles, racks, or pallets, the materials and methods of storage must be known. NFPA 13 provides specific guidelines regarding stored goods within the building environment.

The different building uses and stored materials require different hydraulic demand requirements. It is imperative to obtain this information during the information-gathering process.

Type of Building Construction and Use

The general construction and occupancy use classification of the building must be understood to determine if the building is required to be provided with a sprinkler system by code. In some instances, the model building codes make exceptions to allow increased building area if fully protected by an automatic sprinkler system (which should be confirmed during code review).

Fire Load and Resistance Ratings

The nature and potential magnitude of a fire in a building are related directly to the amount, composition, and physical arrangement of combustibles, either as contents of the building or as materials used in its construction. The total amount of combustibles is referred to as the fire load of a building and is expressed in pounds per square foot (lb/ft²), with an assumed calorific value for ordinary cellulosic materials of 7,000 to 8,000 British thermal units per pound (Btu/lb). If this Btu content is applied when organic materials are present in large proportions, the weights must be adjusted accordingly.

The temperatures used in standard fire tests of building components are indicated by the nationally recognized time/temperature curve shown in Figure 1-1. The fire resistance of the construction of building assemblies, such as walls, floors, and ceilings (determined by standard fire tests), is expressed in hours.

WATER SOURCE

The primary agent for most fire-extinguishing systems is water. The availability of municipal water supplies of sufficient pressure and quantity to meet the design demands of the fire protection sprinkler system must be addressed. The points to be considered for the water supply include:

- Quantity, static pressure at no flow and residual pressure at design flow, and availability of water
- Overall fire demand, including duration of flow
- · Makeup and reliability of the source
- Size, material of construction, and age of mains Refer for NFPA 24: *Standard for the Installation*

of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances for more information.



Figure 1-1 Time/Temperature Curve for Standard Fire Test

Quantity and Availability

The amount of water available from a network of underground water mains, whether they be private yard mains or the public water supply, can be determined in several ways. (Refer to NFPA 291: *Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants*.) The simplest method is to consult the history of fire flow tests in the area, available through the local water and fire departments or plant personnel for private systems. If test results are not current or the water supply might have changed since the most recent hydrant flow test, a new hydrant flow test should be requested through the local authorities (i.e., water department, fire department, or plant management).

Hydrant Flow Test

To conduct a fire flow test, the following equipment and information are necessary:

- Hydrant butt cap, with dial-spring gauge
- Pitot tube and blade with an attached dialspring pressure gauge
- Hydrant wrench
- Nozzle pressure flow tables
- Knowledge of the water main's sizing and piping layout

Once all of the necessary equipment is assembled, a minimum of two operable fire hydrants should be selected. It is recommended practice that the residual pressure hydrant (test hydrant) be as close as possible to the structure under design and downstream of the flow hydrant. After the hydrants for the test have been selected, the hydrant butt cap with its pressure gauge should be placed on the test hydrant. The water department or maintenance personnel should operate the hydrants to limit the liability for damage. Special provisions may be required to accommodate the large volume of water that will discharge during a test.

Once the butt cap is in place, the test hydrant should be opened slightly to allow the air in the hydrant barrel to bleed off past the open bleed cock on the hydrant butt. After the air is bled off, the hydrant can be opened fully, and the bleed cock can be closed. The pressure that registers on the gauge at this time is the static pressure (pressure with no flow). The second hydrant now can be approached.

To start the test, one flow hydrant butt should be opened. The coefficient of discharge should be determined by considering the construction and roughness of the inside lip of the hydrant butt. In addition, the actual inside diameter of the butt should be measured to confirm its diameter. After this data has been recorded, the flow hydrant now can be opened fully. Some caution should be exercised when opening the hydrant. It should never be opened rapidly, and the path of discharge should be investigated to ensure that personnel will not be injured and that property will not be damaged by the stream or the residual standing water.

After the flow hydrant has been opened, it should be allowed to flow for two to five minutes to allow debris to clear the hydrant barrel and to stabilize the water flow before the pitot tube is inserted into the stream. When the pitot tube is inserted into the water stream, it should be placed in the centerline of the stream, at approximately one-half of the diameter of the butt opening (see Figure 1-2). The reading on the pressure gauge attached to the pitot tube then can be read. Simultaneously, the residual pressure (flowing pressure) must be read on the test hydrant (see Figure 1-3).

The pitot reading and residual pressure now should be recorded. For best results, the pitot reading



Figure 1-2 Pitot Tube Position

Source: NFPA 291

should not be less than 10 pounds per square inch (psi) or greater than 30 psi; similarly, the static pressure should drop 25 to 50 percent under the test conditions. In addition, it is a good idea to flow a quantity at least equal to the fire demand.

Now the data gathered during this test can be used to determine the quantity of water flowed and the amount of water available for firefighting operations. First, to determine the quantity of water flowed, the pitot pressure, hydrant butt size, and discharge coefficient are used. Using the pitot pressure and hydrant butt size from a given table (supplied by the manufacturer), a theoretical flow can be found, using the following formula. This formula allows computation of the gallons per minute (gpm) flowing from a nozzle, hydrant outlet, or orifice (see Figure 1-4).

Equation 1-1

$$Q = (29.83) (c) (d^2) (\sqrt{p})$$

where

Q= Flow discharge, gpm

c= Coefficient of discharge

d= Diameter of outlet, inches

p= Pitot (velocity) pressure, psi

The flow available at any pressure along the established flow curve can be found using the following equation:

Equation 1-2

$$Q_{A} = (Q_{T}) ((P_{S} - P_{A}) / (P_{S} - P_{R}))^{0.54}$$

where

 Q_A = Flow available at some residual pressure (P_A)

 Q_T = Actual flow measured during the test

 P_{s} = Measured static pressure

 P_R = Measured residual pressure

 P_A = Pressure of interest

The results of a hydrant flow test can be plotted on a graph to develop the characteristic flow curve for the piping network (water supply) for the test location. A typical water supply is shown in Figure 1-5. Either the formula method discussed above or the graph method can be used to determine water availability.



Figure 1-4 Three General Types of Hydrant Outlets and Their Coefficients of Discharge

Source: NFPA 291



Figure 1-3 Method of Conducting Flow Tests

Example 1-1

Determine the water demand at the desired residual pressure given the following flow test conditions:

- Static pressure: 70 psi
- Residual pressure: 50 psi
- Pitot reading: 24 psi
- Hydrant butt: 2¹/₂ inches
- Coefficient: 0.9

From Table 1-1, the theoretical flow can be found to be 914 gpm. By multiplying by the coefficient of 0.9, the actual flow is found.

- $Q_F = 0.9 \times 914 \text{ gpm}$
- $Q_{\rm F} = 822.6 \text{ gpm}$
- $Q_F = 823 \text{ gpm}$

By plotting this on the water supply graph, the characteristic flow curve can be established.

Similarly, using Equation 1-2, the flow available at 20-psi residual pressure can be found:

- $Q_{A} = (Q_{T}) ((P_{S} P_{A}) / (P_{S} P_{R}))^{0.54}$
- $Q_T = 914 \text{ gpm}$
- $P_{\rm S} = 70 \text{ psi}$
- $P_R = 50 \text{ psi}$
- $P_A = 20 \text{ psi}$
 - $Q_A = (823) ((70-20)/(70-50))^{0.54}$
 - $Q_A = (823) (50/20)^{0.54}$
 - $Q_A = (823) (2.5^{0.54})$
 - $Q_{A} = 1,350 \text{ gpm}$

Overall Fire Demand (Flow, Pressure, and Duration)

The overall fire demand is established by hydraulic calculations performed by the engineer, by code, or by the insurance rating organization. The end result is the amount of flow required (gpm) at a calculated pressure (psi). The flow duration requirement is typically mandated by NFPA 13. For example, light hazard occupancies typically require a reliable water supply with a 30-minute duration capability.



Source: NFPA 13

Table 1-1gpm Flow Table

Pitot		Velocity	Orifice Size (in.)											
Pressure*	East	Discharge	2	2.25	2 275	25	2 625	2.75	2	2.25	25	2.75		4.5
<u>(µSI)</u>	2 21	12 20	110	2.23	160	2.3 107	2.023	2.73	3	<u>3.23</u>	3.3	3.75	4	4.J
	Z.31	17.20	160	101	100	107	200	220	209	313	500	4 <u>2</u> 0	4//	004
2	4.01	17.25	109	214	238	204	291	319	380	440	517	593	0/5	800
3	0.92	21.13	207	202	292	323	350	391	405	546	033	121	827	1047
4	9.23	24.39	239	302	337	3/3	411	451	537	630	/31	839	955	1209
5	11.54	27.26	267	338	3/6	417	460	505	601	/05	817	938	1068	1351
<u>b</u>	13.84	29.87	292	370	412	457	504	553	658	112	895	1028	1169	1480
/	16.15	32.26	316	400	445	493	544	597	/11	834	967	1110	1263	1599
8	18.46	34.49	338	427	476	528	582	638	760	891	1034	1187	1350	1709
9	20.76	36.58	358	453	505	560	617	677	806	946	1097	1259	1432	1813
10	23.07	38.56	377	478	532	590	650	714	849	997	1156	1327	1510	1911
11	25.38	40.45	396	501	558	619	682	748	891	1045	1212	1392	1583	2004
12	27.68	42.24	413	523	583	646	712	782	930	1092	1266	1454	1654	2093
13	29.99	43.97	430	545	607	672	741	814	968	1136	1318	1513	1721	2179
14	32.30	45.63	447	565	630	698	769	844	1005	1179	1368	1570	1786	2261
15	34.61	47.22	462	585	652	722	796	874	1040	1221	1416	1625	1849	2340
16	36.91	48.78	477	604	673	746	822	903	1074	1261	1462	1679	1910	2417
17	39.22	50.28	492	623	694	769	848	930	1107	1300	1507	1730	1969	2491
18	41.53	51.73	506	641	714	791	872	957	1139	1337	1551	1780	2026	2564
19	43.83	53.15	520	658	734	813	896	984	1171	1374	1593	1829	2081	2634
20	46.14	54.54	534	676	753	834	920	1009	1201	1410	1635	1877	2135	2702
22	50.75	57.19	560	709	789	875	964	1058	1260	1478	1715	1968	2239	2834
24	55.37	59.74	585	740	825	914	1007	1106	1316	1544	1791	2056	2339	2960
26	59.98	62.18	609	770	858	951	1048	1151	1369	1607	1864	2140	2434	3081
28	64.60	64.52	632	799	891	987	1088	1194	1421	1668	1934	2220	2526	3197
30	69.21	66.79	654	827	922	1022	1126	1236	1471	1726	2002	2298	2615	3310
32	73.82	68.98	675	855	952	1055	1163	1277	1519	1783	2068	2374	2701	3418
34	78.44	71.10	696	881	981	1087	1199	1316	1566	1838	2131	2447	2784	3523
36	83.05	73.16	716	906	1010	1119	1234	1354	1611	1891	2193	2518	2865	3626
38	87.67	75.17	736	931	1038	1150	1268	1391	1656	1943	2253	2587	2943	3725
40	92.28	77.11	755	955	1065	1180	1300	1427	1699	1993	2312	2654	3020	3822
42	96.89	79.03	774	979	1091	1209	1333	1462	1740	2043	2369	2719	3094	3916
44	101.51	80.88	792	1002	1116	1237	1364	1497	1781	2091	2425	2783	3167	4008
46	106.12	82.70	810	1025	1142	1265	1395	1531	1821	2138	2479	2846	3238	4098
48	110.74	84.48	827	1047	1166	1292	1425	1563	1861	2184	2533	2907	3308	4186
50	115 35	86.22	844	1068	1190	1319	1454	1596	1899	2229	2585	2967	3376	4273

Source: NFPA 291

Water Supply Makeup and Reliability

A water supply's reliability can be determined by evaluating the method by which the pipe network is fed. Municipal water supplies consist of three types: elevated reservoirs (water towers), direct pump, or combined. The distribution of the water supply can be a dead end, grid, or loop pipe system or a combination of all three.

The elevated reservoir is reliable as it does not depend on electrical power to provide the water pressure. The same reasoning holds true for private supplies. With reliability in mind, an automatic fire protection system should be designed to function properly without the introduction of a booster fire pump. If this cannot be accomplished, then a fire pump will need to be added to provide the water supply. (See the discussion under "Fire Pumps" later in this chapter.)

A water supply piping system that consists of one large supply line feeding a series of dead-ended branch mains is far less efficient than a system of pipes that are looped and gridded together. For example, an 8-inch main flowing 2,000 gpm that is fed from one direction will have a friction loss of 4.62 psi per 1,000 feet of pipe. If that same main were fed from two directions, the flow could be balanced to 1,000 gpm from each side (assuming equivalent pipe characteristics and lengths). The friction loss would then be reduced to 1.128 psi per 1,000 feet, or reduced by a factor of 4.

Size and Age of Mains

The size and age of the fire mains play an important part in the ability of the water supply to produce adequate fire flows for fire protection systems. What may not be obvious to the casual observer, however, is how time and the corrosiveness of the water can affect the inside diameter of the supply mains. For example, with moderately corrosive water a 30-yearold cast iron pipe will have friction factors higher than new cast iron pipe.

AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

Once the fire hazard and water supply have been evaluated, the type of sprinkler system to be installed can be selected. The basic types of sprinkler systems are:

- Wet pipe
- Dry pipe
- Preaction
- Deluge
- Combined dry pipe and preaction
- Antifreeze

Wet Pipe Systems

Wet pipe sprinkler systems are installed more often than all other types by a wide margin. The wet pipe system employs automatic (fusible link, glass bulb, or closed type) sprinklers attached to piping containing water under pressure at all times. When a fire occurs, individual sprinklers are actuated by the heat, and water flows immediately. The starting point for all wet-based sprinkler systems is the water source.

The wet pipe system is controlled by an alarm check valve (see Figure 1-6). When a sprinkler activates, the flow of water raises the alarm valve clapper from its seat, thereby lifting the pilot valve disc from the nozzle. This permits water to enter the alarm line. A water motor gong is actuated by the flow. An optional pressure switch may be attached on the alarm line to provide an electric signal to an outdoor alarm bell or to the building's main fire alarm control panel.

The alarm valve is typically installed vertically in the main water supply to the wet pipe sprinkler system (see Figure 1-7). A variable-pressure water supply, which is the most common type of water supply encountered, requires the use of a retard chamber with the alarm valve to prevent false alarms.

Where the water supply has constant pressure, the alarm valve is used without the retard chamber. In cases where a local alarm is adequate, water is admitted directly to a water motor-driven gong. If no water motor gong is required, a vane-type water flow indicator can be inserted in the supply pipe to indicate, electrically, a water flow (see Figure 1-8).

Should a pressure surge occur, which will raise the clapper momentarily and lift the pilot valve disc from the nozzle, a small amount of water will pass into the retard chamber. If only a relatively small amount of water enters the retard chamber, the water will drain off through the retard chamber drain. However, should water escape through a sprinkler or from damaged piping, sustained water flow through the alarm valve will result. The clapper will move from its seat and lift the pilot valve disc, allowing a large volume of water to flow through the nozzle and into the retard chamber. The bleeding capacity through the retard chamber drain cannot keep up with the incoming volume. The retard chamber will fill, and water will flow through the alarm line to actuate the water motor gong and the optional alarm pressure switch, if used.

After a fire operation or test, the water in the alarm line will drain out through the retard chamber drain.

Dry Pipe Systems

Dry pipe systems are used in spaces in which the ambient temperature may be cold enough to freeze the water in a wet pipe system, rendering the system inoperable. This type of system is used most often in unheated buildings, in outside canopies attached to heated buildings (in which a wet pipe system would be provided), or in refrigerated coolers.



Figure 1-6 Typical Alarm Check Valve Riser Source: Tyco Fire

Water is not present in the piping until the system operates. The sprinkler piping is pressurized with air at a maintenance pressure that is relatively low compared to the water supply pressure. To prevent the higher water supply pressure from forcing water into the piping, the design of the dry pipe valve intentionally includes a larger valve clapper sectional area exposed to the maintenance air pressure, as compared

Typically, the dry valve is installed in a heated area or in an insulated, heated valve enclosure protected against any occurrence of freezing temperatures. When one or more of the automatic sprinklers is exposed to sufficient heat, it operates, allowing the maintenance air to vent from that sprinkler. As the air pressure in the piping drops, the pressure differential across the dry pipe valve changes, allowing water to enter the piping system (see Figures 1-9 and 1-10). Water flow from sprinklers needed to control the fire is delayed until the air is vented from the sprinklers. For this reason, dry pipe systems are usually not as effective as wet pipe systems in fire control during the initial stages of the fire. To compensate for the time delay, dry sprinkler system hydraulic area requirements are typically greater than that of a traditional wet system.

A hydraulically operated fire alarm is standard; however, many installations also have an electric fire alarm gong that sounds when water flow into the sprinkler piping system actuates the alarm switch. This electric switch can also be used to signal the building's main fire alarm control panel.



Figure 1-7 Wet Pipe Sprinkler System

Large dry pipe systems are typically installed with an accelerator, a device that accelerates dry valve operation. The accelerator is actuated by a drop in piping pressure. It then functions to apply remaining pressure from the sprinkler piping to the intermediate chamber of the dry valve. Added to the water pressure below the clapper, this quickly eliminates the differential to open the clapper. Exhausters are also available to assist in the quick discharge of air prior to operation. The time of water flow in dry pipe systems is based on system volume, generally not more than 750 gallons for any one dry pipe valve. This volume can be exceeded if water is delivered in 60 seconds or less. (Refer to NFPA 13 for system size and volume limitations.)

Under normal conditions, the dry pipe sprinkler system has sealed automatic sprinklers retaining air pressure in the sprinkler piping. Only after a sprinkler seal fuses and opens to release the air (under pressure) in the sprinkler piping does the dry valve clapper open, and water from the water supply main then flows through it into the sprinkler piping. The dry valve has two functions:

- To keep the clapper closed and withhold water from the sprinkler piping until fire fuses a sprinkler seal
- To trigger a fire alarm when the clapper opens

When set, the rubber-faced dry valve clapper rests with the rubber facing in contact with two concentric seat rings. The annular chamber, or intermediate chamber, is connected to the alarm devices such as the water motor gong and alarm switch. The clapper area against which the water exerts its force is the diameter of the inner seat ring. The clapper area against which the compressed air exerts its force is



Figure 1-10 Typical Dry Pipe Valve Riser
Source: Tyco Fire



Figure 1-8 Vane-type Water Flow Indicator

the diameter of the outer seat ring, which is considerably larger than the inner diameter. This difference in area enables the lesser air pressure (over a greater area) above the clapper to overcome the clapper. Priming water is added to some dry valves to provide a positive system through the intermediate chamber and its alarm outlets.

Electric Air Compressor

For dry pipe systems, the piping water capacity must be calculated to determine air capacity, which is used in the selection of the correct-size air compressor.

NFPA standards require air compressors to be capable of restoring normal air pressure in a system within 30 minutes. FM Global standards require compressors to be capable of restoring normal air pressure plus 25 percent pressure within 30 minutes.

To calculate a system's capacity in gallons, determine the total pipe footage for each size pipe, and then multiply by the corresponding factor from Table 1-2. When the total capacity in gallons is determined, multiply by 0.012 to obtain the free-air delivery in cubic feet per minute (cfm).

(Note: Where one air compressor supplies more than one dry pipe system, the largest-capacity system shall determine the compressor size.)

Accelerator

An accelerator is an accessory device used on large dry pipe systems to hasten dry valve operation. NFPA 13 requires each standard dry valve controlling a

Capcaity & Weight of Water-filled Pipe							
Size Sch 40 Sch 40 Sch 10 Sch 1							
inches	gal/ft	lb/ft	gal/ft	lb/ft			
1	0.045	2.05	0.049	1.81			
11/4	0.078	2.93	0.085	2.52			
11/2	0.106	3.61	0.115	3.04			
2	0.174	5.13	0.190	4.22			
2 ½	0.248	7.89	0.283	5.89			
3	0.383	10.82	0.433	7.94			
31/2	0.513	13.48	0.576	9.78			
4	0.660	16.40	0.740	11.78			
5	1.040	23.47	1.144	17.30			
6	1.501	31.69	1.649	23.03			
8	2.660	47.70	2.776	40.08			

Table 1-2	Factors	for Det	ermining	Water
Ca	apacity p	er Foot	of Pipe	

system with a capacity of more than 500 gallons to be provided with an accelerator, with the following exception: the 60-second limit does not apply to dry systems with a capacity of 750 gallons or less when equipped with a quick-opening device.

In a fire condition, the accelerator redirects air pressure from the system piping into the intermediate chamber of the dry pipe valve. This air pressure assists the water pressure differential and opens the dry pipe valve more quickly.

Water Delivery

NFPA 13 requires dry sprinkler systems to deliver water in a prescribed time frame for different hazard applications. For example, a dry system used in a residential application is required to deliver water to the most remote sprinkler initially open in 15 seconds. This requirement was established to address the time interval between the operation of the sprinklers and the heat release and growth of the fire.

Preaction Systems

Preaction sprinkler systems are specialized for use in locations where accidental activation is undesired,

such as in museums, data centers, or electrical rooms. A preaction system is installed where there is a need to counteract the operational delay of a conventional dry pipe system and to eliminate the danger of water discharge resulting from accidental damage to automatic sprinklers or piping. In a preaction system, the water supply (deluge) valve is actuated independently of the opening of sprinklers (i.e., the valve is opened by the operation of an automatic fire detection system and not by the fusing of sprinklers).

Preaction systems are hybrids of wet, dry, and deluge systems, depending on the exact system goal. The three subtypes of preaction systems are single interlock, double interlock, and non-interlock. The operation of single interlock systems is similar to dry systems, except that these systems require a preceding and supervised event (typically the activation of a heat or smoke detector) to take place prior to the action of water introduction into the system's piping by opening of the preaction valve (which is a mechanically latched valve). Once the fire is detected by the fire alarm system, the system is essentially converted from a dry system into a wet system. If

an automatic sprinkler operated prior to the fire being detected by the fire alarm system, water will be allowed into the piping, which will discharge water from the sprinkler.

The operation of non-interlock systems, much like the single interlock, admits water to sprinkler piping upon operation of either detection devices or automatic sprinklers.

The operation of double interlock systems is similar to deluge systems, except that automatic sprinklers are used. These systems require both a preceding and supervised event (typically the activation of a heat or smoke detector) and an automatic sprinkler activation to take place prior to the action of water introduction into the system's piping.

Preaction valves (see Figure 1-11) are typically located near the hazard they serve and are provided with an addressable control panel. Preaction systems operate faster and result in less fire and water damage compared to conventional dry pipe systems. They are limited to 1,000 sprinklers.

Deluge Systems

The purpose of a deluge system is to deliver sprinkler water coverage to the entire area of a fire in the least



Figure 1-9 Dry Pipe Valve (left) air pressure maintains clapper closed (right) venting of air allows clapper to open and water to flow





Figure 1-11 Typical Preaction Valve Riser

amount of time possible. It accomplishes this by admitting water to sprinklers or spray nozzles that are open at all times. By using automatic fire detection devices of the type used in preaction systems or controls designed for individual hazards, a deluge system can apply water to a fire more quickly than a system whose operation depends on the opening of sprinklers as the fire spreads. Deluge systems are suitable for extra hazard occupancies in which flammable liquids are handled or stored and where a fire may flash ahead of the operation of ordinary automatic sprinklers.

Water is not present in the piping until the system operates. Because the sprinkler orifices are open, the piping is at ambient air pressure. To prevent the water supply pressure from forcing water into the piping, a deluge valve, which is a mechanically latched valve, is used in the water supply connection. It is a nonresetting valve and stays open once tripped.

Because the sprinklers are of the open type, the deluge valve must be opened as signaled by a specialized fire alarm system. The type of fire alarminitiating device (e.g., smoke detectors, heat detectors, or optical flame detection) is selected mainly based on the hazard. The initiation device signals the fire alarm panel, which in turn signals the deluge valve to open. Activation can also be manual, depending on the system goals. Manual activation is usually via an electric or pneumatic fire alarm pull station.

Activation of a fire alarm-initiating device or a manual pull station signals the fire alarm panel, which in turn signals the deluge valve to open, allowing water to enter the piping system. Water flows from all sprinklers simultaneously. Where high values of discharge are involved or where spray nozzles, foam water sprinklers, or other foam applicators are used, the system should be supervised.

Deluge systems are used for fast, total application of water in extrahazardous areas and in water-spray systems. Deluge valves are essentially check valves with a clapper latched in the closed position (see Figure 1-12). The actuating system unlatches the valve, allowing water to enter the piping system and flow out the heads. The more common design of the deluge valve employs a single differential diaphragm in which the water pressure bears on both sides, while the top side adjoins a closed chamber (see Figure 1-13). The actuating system opens the closed chamber, allowing the water to push the diaphragm up and off the water seat, releasing water to the system.

A modification of the valve uses a pressure regulator that maintains (on the outlet side) any predetermined pressure less than the available system pressure (see Figure 1-14). This allows the system to discharge at a constant rate.

Combined Dry Pipe and Preaction Systems

A combined dry pipe and preaction sprinkler system is one that employs automatic sprinklers attached to a piping system containing air under pressure and has



Figure 1-12 Typical Deluge Valve Riser
Source: Tyco Fire



Figure 1-13 Deluge Valve with Single Differential Diaphragm
Source: Reliable Sprinkler



Figure 1-14 Deluge Valve with Outlet Pressure Regulator

a supplemental fire detection system installed in the same areas as the sprinklers. Operation of the fire detection system, as by a fire, actuates tripping devices that open dry pipe valves simultaneously and without loss of air pressure in the system. Operation of the fire detection system also opens approved air-exhaust valves at the end of the feed main, which facilitates the filling of the system with water, usually preceding the opening of sprinklers. The fire detection system also serves as an automatic, early warning fire alarm system. These systems are intended to be applied to unusual structures, such as piers or wharves that require unusually long runs of pipe.

Antifreeze Systems

Antifreeze systems are typically used as subsystems to wet-based sprinkler systems. These systems are intended to protect small areas that could be exposed to freezing temperatures. Typically, antifreeze systems are used for rooftop cooling tower equipment or, most commonly, residential construction. The sprinkler distribution piping in an antifreeze system (see Figure 1-15) is filled with a mixed antifreeze solution prepared with a freezing point below the expected minimum temperature for the locality.

Note: Confer with your local AHJ and insurer for the allowed use of antifreeze systems.

SPRINKLER SYSTEM HYDRAULICS

Most sprinkler systems installed today are designed using an area and density approach. As described earlier, first the building use and building contents must be analyzed to determine the level of fire hazard. After determining the hazard classification, a design area and density can be found by referencing tables in NFPA 13 (see Figure 1-16). The design area is a theoretical area of the building representing the worst-case area where a fire could burn. The design density is a measurement of how much water (in gpm) per square foot of floor area should be applied to the design area. Through tests and studies, NFPA, FM Global, Industrial Risk Insurers, and



Notes:

- Check valve shall be permitted to be omitted where sprinklers are below the level of valve A.
- The 1/2e in. (0.8 mm) hole in the check valve clapper is needed to allow for expansion of the solution during a temperature rise, thus preventing damage to sprinklers.

Figure 1-15 Antifreeze System Piping Arrangement
Source: NFPA 13



Source: NFPA 13

rigure 1-10 Density Area ourve Example

other organizations have established design densities that are appropriate for a wide range of occupancy classifications.

After the design area and density have been determined, fabrication drawings can be developed along with supporting hydraulic calculations, which are generated to prove that the designed pipe system can deliver the required amount of water to the required design area. These calculations account for all of the pressure that is lost or gained between the water supply source and the sprinklers that would operate in the design area. This includes pressure that is lost due to friction inside the piping and pressure that is lost or gained due to elevation differences between the source and the discharging sprinklers.

Another critical concept that must be understood in hydraulic calculations is that all of the sprinklers in the sprinkler system being designed are not expected to discharge simultaneously. Each selected remote area has a calculated number of sprinklers that are to be included in the hydraulic calculations. The number of sprinklers can be calculated by the following equation:

Equation 1-3

Calculated sprinklers

Remote area

Sprinkler coverage area

Example 1-2

If the remote area in an ordinary group 1 hazard application is 1,500 square feet, how many sprinklers should be calculated?

Calculated sprinklers = $1,500 \text{ ft}^2/130 \text{ ft}^2 = 11.5$ sprinklers = 12 sprinklers

The required size of the remote area varies among occupancy classifications. NFPA 13 allows some flexibility in the sizing of the design area, usually per-

mitting an area between 1,500 and 5,000 square feet. Other authorities have different ranges. In many cases, the insurance industry or government authorities require a specific design area based on a specific hazard classification. Otherwise, any area within the acceptable range can be chosen. It must be noted that the required minimum design density will vary with the hazard classification and the size of the design area.

The design area is to be located in the most hy-

draulically remote part of the fire area. In essence, the design area must be composed of the most demanding portion of the sprinkler system. If the calculations prove that the water supply available is adequate for the most demanding part of the system, then it logically follows that the water supply will be adequate for any part of the system. The most hydraulically remote area is not always easy to identify. In a non-loop and non-grid system (i.e., a conventional tree system), the hydraulically most remote area is usually the area most physically remote from the water supply source. However, it is important to understand that physical remoteness is not a fail-safe criterion for hydraulic remoteness, particularly when dealing with looped or gridded piping systems.

Pipe Schedule System

The essential difference between a hydraulically calculated sprinkler system and a pipe schedule sprinkler system lies in the regulation of pipe sizing. For a pipe schedule sprinkler system designed in accordance with NFPA 13, only a limited number of sprinklers may be supplied by a given pipe size. The pipes can become oversized based on available water supply and pressure, which make the system more costly than necessary. In a hydraulically calculated system, there is no limit to the number of sprinklers that can be supplied by any size pipe; the size is dictated by the rate of flow and pressure loss.

The pipe schedule design method is limited to additions or modifications to existing pipe schedule systems, to new installations of 5,000 square feet or less or to new installations exceeding 5,000 square feet where required flows are available with a minimum residual pressure of 50 psi at the highest sprinkler elevation.
System Size

The total square footage covered by a single fire zone is restricted, normally to 52,000 square feet for light and ordinary hazard occupancies and 40,000 square feet for extra hazard and storage occupancies.

Information Required for Hydraulic Calculations

The following information is necessary to obtain before performing hydraulic calculations.

Water Supply Information

- Static pressure, psi
- Residual pressure, psi
- Flow rate, gpm
- Location and elevation of test
- Total supply available
- Hazard Classification (occupancy)
 - Classification by insurance company or NFPA standards
 - Density and area requirements
 - Duration of flow requirements
 - Hose stream allowance
 - Pressure allowance

Piping Material

• Friction loss for selected piping type (e.g., lightwall pipe, Schedule 40 pipe, copper, cement-lined pipe)

Sprinkler Heads

- Sprinkler head K factor from technical data sheets
- Temperature rating
- Special coating requirements

STEPS TO FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEM DESIGN

1. Estimate the minimum water demand for the sprinkler system. This can be obtained by calculating the product of the density and design area (see Equation 1-4). The density and design are normally specified by NFPA 13 or the fire insurance underwriter, and both relate to the type of hazard to be protected.

Equation 1-4

System demand = Density \times Design area

Example 1-3

Given that a sprinkler system has a design density of 0.2 gpm/ft^2 and a design area of 3,000 ft², determine the system demand.

System demand = $0.2 \times 3,000 = 600$ gpm

2. Estimate the total demand for the sprinkler system and hose outlets. This can be determined by adding the sprinkler system demand to the hose demand (see Equation 1-5). The hose demand is normally specified by NFPA 13 or an insurance underwriter. (Typical combined hose demands are 100 gpm for light hazard; 250 gpm for ordinary hazard, and 500 gpm for extra hazard.)

Equation 1-5

Total demand = System demand + Hose demand

Example 1-4

If the minimum hose demand shall be 250 gpm, determine the total demand for Example 1-3.

- Total demand = 600 gpm + 250 gpm = 850 gpm
- 3. Establish the pressure available at the water supply with the total demand flowing. This can be determined from a graph of the water supply characteristics (flow and pressure) at the water supply point. Refer to the "Water Source" section of this chapter.
- 4. Calculate the end-head flow that is required to provide the minimum specified water density to the most remote sprinkler head (see Equation 1-6). The end-head sprinkler pressure at its required minimum flow can be determined by using Equation 1-7 or from sprinkler head characteristic tables.

Equation 1-6

 $Q = Design area \times Design density$

Equation 1-7

$$\mathbf{P} = (\mathbf{Q} / \mathbf{K})^2$$

where

Q = End-head flow, gpm

- P = End-head sprinkler pressure, psi
- K = K factor

Example 1-5

Determine the end-head sprinkler flow and the head sprinkler pressure given the following conditions:

- Occupancy = Machine shop
- Hazard= Ordinary group 2
- Maximum spacing = 130 ft^2
- K factor = 5.6 (for a nominal ¹/₂-inch orifice size)
- Density = 0.20 gpm/ft^2
- Area = $1,500 \text{ ft}^2$

Step 1: Calculate the end-head sprinkler flow or gpm head using Equation 1-6:

 $Q = 130 \text{ ft}^2 \times 0.20 \text{ gpm} = 26 \text{ gpm}$

Step 2: Calculate the end-head pressure using Equation 1-7:

 $P = (26/5.6)^2$

 $P = (4.64)^2$

P = 21.52 psi

This is the end-head starting pressure. The starting pressure may be reduced by using a large orifice head (K = 8.0).

$$P = (26/8)^2$$

$$P = (3.25)^2$$

P = 10.56 psi

For systems where the end pressure has been established, use the following formula to calculate the end flow requirement.

Equation 1-8

$$Q = K\sqrt{P}$$

- 5. Size the sprinkler piping system. The hydraulic pipe schedule is a table of standard sprinkler system pipe sizes with associated flows that will produce the average friction loss per foot allowed in the system under consideration. (See Tables 1-3A through 1-3G for hydraulic values in sprinkler pipe sizes up to 4 inches.)
- 6. Calculate the average pressure loss per foot of piping and fittings. This is the unit pressure loss that may be expended in friction losses as the water travels through the sprinkler piping and sprinklers. It is determined by dividing the pressure available for the system by the system equivalent pipe length. (Refer to Table 1-4 for equivalent pipe lengths for fittings.)
- 7. Calculate the system head and pressure loss associated with the vertical distance traveled.

Equation 1-9

Pressure = $(\text{Head} \times \text{Specific gravity}) / 2.31$

Head = $(Pressure \times 2.31) / Specific gravity$

The specific gravity for water in this case is 1.00.

8. Calculate the total pressure loss associated with the system for the single most remote sprinkler. This is an estimating exercise. Full remote area design calculations should be developed when available pressure is a factor or when sizing a fire pump.

Equation 1-10

Total pressure = Sprinkler pressure requirement + Average piping pressure loss + Head loss + 10% safety factor

USE OF SPRINKLERS

Automatic fire sprinklers operate at a predetermined temperature. These sprinklers utilize a fusible link, a portion of which melts, or a frangible glass bulb containing liquid that breaks, allowing the plug in the sprinkler orifice to be pushed out by the water pressure in the fire sprinkler piping, resulting in water flow. The water stream impacts a deflector, which produces a specific spray pattern designed in support of the goals of the sprinkler type. Most of today's sprinkler heads are designed to direct a spray downward (see Figure 1-17).

Table 1-3A	Water Flow Tables	
WATER FLOWING IN	1-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIF	PE

I.D. = 1.049 inches						
	Velocity					
Q (gpm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)			
10	0.051	0.036	3.71			
11	0.060	0.043	4.08			
12	0.071	0.051	4.46			
13	0.082	0.059	4.83			
14	0.094	0.067	5.20			
15	0.107	0.076	5.57			
16	0.121	0.086	5.94			
17	0.135	0.096	6.31			
18	0.150	0.107	6.68			
19	0.166	0.182	7.05			
20	1.820	0.130	7.43			
21	0.200	0.142	7.80			
22	0.217	0.155	8.17			
23	0.236	0.169	8.54			
24	0.255	0.182	8.91			
25	0.276	0.197	9.28			
26	0.296	0.211	9.65			
27	0.318	0.227	10.02			
28	0.340	0.243	10.40			
29	0.363	0.259	10.77			
30	0.386	0.276	11.14			
31	0.410	0.293	11.51			
32	0.435	0.310	11.88			
33	0.460	0.329	12.25			
34	0.487	0.347	12.62			
35	0.513	0.366	12.99			
36	0.541	0.386	13.37			
37	0.569	0.406	13.74			
38	0.598	0.427	14.11			
39	0.627	0.448	14.48			
40	0.657	0.469	14.85			
41	0.688	0.491	15.22			
42	0.719	0.513	15.59			
43	0.751	0.536	15.96			
44	0.784	0.56	16.34			
45	0.817	0.583	16.71			
46	0.851	0.608	17.08			
47	0.886	0.632	17.45			
48	0.921	0.657	17.82			
49	9.57	0.683	18.19			
50	0.993	0.709	18.56			
51	1.03	0.735	18.93			
52	1.068	0.762	19.31			
53	1.106	0.79	19.68			
54	1.145	0.817	20.05			

Table 1-3BWater Flow TablesWATER FLOWING IN 1 1/4-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPEI.D. = 1.049 inches

0	Pf (psi/ft)		Velocity	0
(gpm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)	(gpm)
10	0.013	0.009	2.14	53
11	0.016	0.011	2.36	54
12	0.019	0.013	2.57	55
13	0.022	0.015	2.79	56
14	0.025	0.018	3.00	57
15	0.028	0.020	3.21	58
16	0.032	0.023	3.43	59
17	0.036	0.025	3.64	60
18	0.039	0.028	3.86	61
19	0.044	0.031	4.07	62
20	0.048	0.034	4.29	63
21	0.052	0.037	4.50	64
22	0.057	0.041	4.71	65
23	0.062	0.044	4.93	66
24	0.067	0.048	5.14	67
25	0.072	0.052	5.36	68
26	0.078	0.056	5.57	69
27	0.084	0.060	5.79	70
28	0.089	0.064	6.00	71
29	0.095	0.068	6.21	72
30	0.102	0.072	6.43	73
31	0.108	0.077	6.64	74
32	0.114	0.082	6.86	75
33	0.121	0.086	7.07	76
34	0.128	0.091	7.29	77
35	1.135	0.096	7.50	78
36	0.142	0.102	7.71	79
37	0.150	0.107	7.93	80
38	0.157	0.112	8.14	81
39	0.165	0.118	8.36	82
40	0.173	0.123	8.57	83
41	0.181	0.129	8.79	84
42	0.189	0.135	9.00	85
43	0.198	0.141	9.21	86
44	0.206	0.147	9.43	87
45	0.022	0.153	9.64	88
46	0.224	0.160	9.86	89
47	0.233	0.166	10.07	90
48	0.242	0.173	10.29	91
49	0.252	0.180	10.50	92
50	0.261	0.186	10.71	93
51	0.271	0.193	10.93	94
52	0.281	0.200	11.14	

0	Pf (p	Velocity	
(gpm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)
53	0.291	0.208	11.36
54	0.301	0.215	11.57
55	0.312	0.222	12.00
56	0.322	0.230	12.21
57	0.333	0.238	12.43
58	0.344	0.245	12.64
59	0.355	0.253	12.86
60	0.366	0.261	13.07
61	0.377	2.690	13.07
62	0.389	0.278	13.29
63	0.401	0.286	13.50
64	0.412	0.294	13.71
65	0.424	0.303	13.93
66	0.437	0.312	14.14
67	0.449	0.320	14.36
68	0.461	0.329	14.57
69	0.474	0.338	14.79
70	0.487	0.347	15.00
71	0.500	0.357	15.21
72	0.513	0.366	15.43
73	0.526	0.375	15.64
74	0.540	0.385	15.86
75	0.553	0.395	16.07
76	0.567	0.405	16.29
77	0.581	0.414	16.50
78	0.595	0.424	16.71
79	0.609	0.435	16.93
80	0.623	0.445	17.14
81	0.638	0.455	17.36
82	0.652	0.466	17.57
83	0.667	0.476	17.79
84	0.682	0.487	18.00
85	0.697	0.498	18.21
86	0.712	0.508	18.43
87	0.728	0.519	18.64
88	0.743	0.531	18.86
89	0.759	0.542	19.07
90	0.775	0.553	19.29
91	0.791	0.565	19.50
92	0.807	0.576	19.71
93	0.823	0.588	19.93
94	0 840	0 599	20.14

Table 1-3CWater Flow TablesWATER FLOWING IN 1 1/2-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPEI.D. = 1.61 inches

	Pf (p	Velocity	
Q (gpm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)
10	0.006	0.004	1.57
12	0.009	0.006	1.89
14	0.012	0.008	2.20
16	0.015	0.011	2.52
18	0.019	0.013	2.83
20	0.023	0.016	3.15
22	0.027	0.019	3 46
24	0.032	0.023	3 78
26	0.037	0.026	4 09
28	0.007	0.030	4 4 1
30	0.012	0.000	4 75
32	0.040	0.004	5.04
3/	0.004	0.000	5 25
36	0.000	0.043	5.67
20		0.040	6.00
30	0.074		6 20
40		0.000	0.30
42	0.009		
44			0.93
40			1.24
48	0.114		
50	0.123		1.8/
52	0.133	0.095	8.19
54	0.142	0.101	8.50
56	0.152	0.109	8.82
58	0.162	0.116	9.13
60	0.173	0.123	9.45
62	0.184	0.131	9.76
64	0.195	0.139	10.08
66	0.206	0.147	10.39
68	0.218	0.155	10.71
70	0.23	0.164	11.02
72	0.242	0.173	11.34
74	0.255	0.182	11.65
76	0.359	0.191	11.97
78	0.281	0.200	12.28
80	0.294	0.210	12.59
82	0.308	0.220	12.91
84	0.322	0.230	13.22
86	0.336	0.240	13.54
88	0.351	0.250	13.85
90	0.366	0.261	14.17
92	0.381	0.272	14.48
94	0.396	0.283	14.80
96	0 412	0 294	15 11
98	0.428	0.204	15.43
100	0.445	0.300	15.7/
100	0.440	0.317	16.06
102	0.401	0.329	16.37
104	0.470	0.341	16.60
100	0.490	0.333	17.00
110	0.013	0.300	17.00
110	0.530	0.3/0	17.62
114		0.391	17.05
114	0.566	0.404	10.00
110	0.585	0.418	18.26
118	0.604	0.431	18.58
120	0.623	0.445	18.89
122	0.642	0.458	19.21
124	0.662	0.472	19.52
126	0.682	0.487	19.84
128	0.702	0.501	20.15

Table 1-3D Water Flow Tables WATER FLOWING IN 2-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPE

 Table 1-3E
 Water Flow Tables

 WATER FLOWING IN 2 1/2-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPE

I.D. = 2.469 inches

	1.D. = 2.0	J67 Inche	S
0	Pf (p	si/ft)	Velocity
(gpm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)
30	0.014	0.010	2.87
35	0.019	0.010	3.35
40	0.024	0.017	3.82
45	0.030	0.021	4.30
50	0.037	0.026	4.78
55	0.044	0.031	5.26
60	0.051	0.037	5.74
63	0.056	0.040	6.02
66	0.061	0.044	6.31
69	0.066	0.047	6.60
72	0.072	0.051	6.88
75	0.077	0.055	7.17
78	0.083	0.059	7.46
81	0.089	0.064	7 75
84	0.095	0.068	8.03
87	0.102	0.073	8.32
90	0 108	0.077	8.61
93	0 115	0.082	8 89
96	0 122	0.087	9.00
99	0.120	0.007	9.47
102	0.123	0.032	9.78
102	0.137	0.007	10.0/
103	0.144	0.103	10.04
111	0.152	0.100	10.55
11/	0.100	0.144	10.01
117	0.100	0.120	11 10
120	0.170	0.120	11.15
120	0.104	0.132	11.47
120	0.193	0.130	12.05
120		0.144	12.00
129		0.150	12.33
102	0.220	0.157	12.02
130	0.229	0.104	12.91
141	0.239	0.177	13.20
141	0.249	0.177	10.40
144	0.258	0.184	14.00
147	0.209	0.192	14.00
150	0.279	0.199	14.34
154		0.200	14.00
104	0.295		14.80
150	0.304	0.217	15.00
158		0.222	15.20
100	0.318	0.227	15.30
162	0.325	0.232	15.50
164	0.333	0.238	15.70
166	0.340	0.243	15.90
168	0.349	0.249	16.10
1/0	0.355	0.254	16.30
1/2	0.364	0.260	16.50
1/4	0.371	0.265	16.70
176	0.378	0.270	16.90
178	0.386	0.276	17.00
180	0.395	0.282	17.20
185	0.416	0.297	17.70
190	0.437	0.312	18.20
195	0.458	0.327	18.70
200	0.480	0.343	19.10
205	0.502	0.359	19.60
210	0.526	0.376	20.10

0	Pf (p	si/ft)	Velocity	1	0	Pf (psi/ft)		Velocity
(apm)	C = 100	C=120	(fns)		(apm)	C = 100	C = 120	(fps)
40	0.010	0.007	2.68	1	180	0.166	0.118	12.10
45	0.013	0.009	3.02	1	182	0.169	0.120	12.20
50	0.015	0.011	3.35	1	184	0.172	0.123	12.30
55	0.018	0.013	3.69	1	186	0.176	0.125	12.40
60	0.022	0.015	4.02	1	188	0.179	0.128	12.60
65	0.025	0.018	4.36	1	190	0.183	0.131	12.70
70	0.029	0.020	4.69	1	192	0.187	0.133	12.90
75	0.033	0.023	5.03	1	194	0.190	0.136	13.00
80	0.037	0.026	5.36	1	196	0.194	0.138	13.20
85	0.041	0.029	5.70	1	198	0.197	0.141	13.30
90	0.046	0.033	6.03]	200	0.201	0.144	13.40
95	0.050	0.036	6.37]	202	0.205	0.146	13.50
100	0.055	0.040	6.70]	204	0.209	0.149	13.60
103	0.059	0.042	6.90]	206	0.213	0.152	13.70
106	0.062	0.044	7.10]	208	0.216	0.154	13.80
109	0.065	0.046	7.30]	210	0.200	0.157	13.90
112	0.068	0.049	7.51]	212	0.224	0.160	14.10
115	0.072	0.051	7.71]	214	0.228	0.163	14.20
118	0.075	0.054	7.91		216	0.232	0.166	14.40
121	0.079	0.056	8.11		218	0.236	0.168	14.60
124	0.082	0.059	8.31		220	0.240	0.171	14.70
127	0.086	0.066	8.51		222	0.244	0.174	14.90
130	0.090	0.064	8.71		224	0.248	0.177	15.10
133	0.094	0.067	8.91		226	0.252	0.180	15.30
136	0.098	0.070	9.11		228	0.257	0.183	15.60
139	0.102	0.073	9.32		230	0.261	0.186	15.80
142	0.106	0.076	9.52		235	0.271	0.194	16.00
145	0.110	0.079	9.72	[240	0.282	0.201	16.10
148	0.114	0.082	9.92	[245	0.293	0.209	16.40
151	0.119	0.085	10.12]	250	0.304	0.217	16.90
154	0.123	0.088	10.32]	255	0.316	0.225	17.10
157	0.128	0.091	10.52]	260	0.327	0.234	17.40
160	0.132	0.094	10.72]	265	0.339	0.242	17.70
163	0.137	0.098	10.92]	270	0.351	0.250	18.10
166	0.142	0.101	11.12]	275	0.363	0.259	18.50
169	0.146	0.104	11.33]	280	0.375	0.268	18.80
172	0.151	0.108	11.53		285	0.388	0.227	19.00
175	0.156	0.111	11.73		290	0.401	0.286	19.40
178	0.161	0.115	11.93		295	0.414	0.296	19.80
179	0.164	0.117	12.00		300	0.427	0.305	20.10

Table 1-3FWater Flow TablesWATER FLOWING IN 3-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPEI.D. = 3.068 inches

0	Pf (p	si/ft)	Velocity	1	0	Γ
(apm) C=100	C=120	(fps)		(apm)	C=
30	0.002	0.001	1.30	1	280	0.1
40	0.004	0.003	1.74	1	285	0.1
50	0.005	0.004	2.17	1	290	0.1
60	0.007	0.005	2.60	1	295	0.1
70	0.010	0.007	3.04	1	300	0.1
80	0.013	0.009	3.47		305	0.1
90	0.016	0.011	3.91		310	0.1
100	0.019	0.014	4.34		315	0.1
110	0.023	0.016	4.77		320	0.1
120	0.027	0.019	5.21		325	0.1
130	0.031	0.022	5.64		330	0.1
140	0.036	0.026	6.08		335	0.1
150	0.041	0.029	6.51]	340	0.1
155	0.043	0.031	6.73		345	0.1
160	0.046	0.033	6.94		350	0.1
165	0.049	0.035	7.16		355	0.2
170	0.051	0.037	7.38		360	0.2
175	0.054	0.039	7.60		365	0.2
180	0.057	0.041	7.81		370	0.2
185	0.060	0.043	8.03		375	0.2
190	0.063	0.045	8.25		380	0.2
195	0.066	0.047	8.46		385	0.2
200	0.069	0.049	8.68		390	0.2
205	0.073	0.052	8.90		395	0.2
210	0.076	0.054	9.11		400	0.2
215	0.079	0.057	9.33		405	0.2
220	0.083	0.059	9.55		410	0.2
225	0.086	0.062	9.77		415	0.2
230	0.090	0.064	9.98		420	0.2
235	0.093	0.067	10.20		425	0.2
240	0.097	0.069	10.42		430	0.2
245	0.101	0.072	10.63		435	0.2
250	0.011	0.075	10.85		440	0.2
255	0.109	0.078	11.07		445	0.3
260	0.113	0.080	11.28		450	0.3
265	0.117	0.083	11.50		455	0.3
270	0.121	0.086	11.72		460	0.3
275	0.125	0.089	11.94		465	0.3

0	Pf (p	Velocity			
(gpm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)		
280	0.129	0.092	12.15		
285	0.134	0.095	12.37		
290	0.138	0.098	12.59		
295	0.142	0.102	12.80		
300	0.147	0.105	13.02		
305	0.151	0.108	13.24		
310	0.156	0.111	13.45		
315	0.161	0.115	13.67		
320	0.165	0.118	13.89		
325	0.170	0.122	14.11		
330	0.175	0.125	14.32		
335	0.180	0.129	14.54		
340	0.185	0.132	14.76		
345	0.190	0.136	14.97		
350	0.195	0.139	15.19		
355	0.200	0.143	15.41		
360	0.206	0.147	15.62		
365	0.211	0.151	15.84		
370	0.216	0.154	16.06		
375	0.222	0.158	16.28		
380	0.227	0.162	16.49		
385	0.233	0.166	16.71		
390	0.239	0.170	16.93		
395	0.244	0.174	17.14		
400	0.250	0.178	17.36		
405	0.256	0.183	17.58		
410	0.262	0.187	17.79		
415	0.268	0.191	18.01		
420	0.274	0.195	18.23		
425	0.280	0.200	18.45		
430	0.286	0.204	18.66		
435	0.292	0.208	18.88		
440	0.298	0.213	19.10		
445	0.305	0.217	19.31		
450	0.311	0.222	19.53		
455	0.317	0.226	19.75		
460	0.324	0.231	19.96		
465	0.330	0.236	20.18		

 Table 1-3G
 Water Flow Tables

 WATER FLOWING IN 4-INCH SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPE

I.D. = 4.026 inches

	Pf (p	Velocitv	
Q (apm)	C=100	C=120	(fps)
100	0.005	0.004	2.52
125	0.008	0.006	3.15
150	0.011	0.008	3.78
175	0.014	0.010	4.41
200	0.018	0.013	5.04
225	0.023	0.016	5.67
250	0.028	0.020	6.30
275	0.033	0.024	6.93
300	0.039	0.028	7.56
325	0.045	0.032	8.19
350	0.052	0.037	8.82
375	0.059	0.042	9.45
400	0.067	0.048	10.08
425	0.074	0.053	10.71
450	0.083	0.059	11.34
475	0.091	0.065	11.97
500	0.101	0.072	12.60
510	0.104	0.074	12.85
520	0.108	0.077	13.11
530	0.112	0.080	13.36
540	0.116	0.083	13.61
550	0.120	0.086	13.86
560	0.124	0.089	14.11
570	0.128	0.091	14.37
580	0.132	0.094	14.62
590	0.137	0.097	14.87
600	0.141	0.101	15.12
610	0.145	0.104	15.37
620	0.150	0.107	15.63
630	0.154	0.110	15.88
640	0.159	0.113	16.13
650	0.163	0.117	16.38
660	0.168	0.120	16.63
670	0.173	0.123	16.89
680	0.178	0.127	17.14
690	0.183	0.130	17.39
700	0.187	0.134	17.64
710	0.192	0.137	17.89
720	0.197	0.141	18.15
730	0.203	0.145	18.40
740	0.208	0.148	18.65
750	0.213	0.152	18.90
760	0.218	0.156	19.16
770	0.224	0.160	19,41
780	0.229	0.163	19.60
790	0.234	0.167	19.91

Table 1-4 Equivalent Pipe Lengths for Fittings

			· •		<u> </u>		<u> </u>			
Fittings and Valves	Fittings and Valves Expressed in Equivalent Feet of Pipe					ipe				
	0.5	0.75	1	1.25	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4
45° elbow	Х	1	1	1	2	2	3	3	3	4
90° standard elbow	1	2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	10
90° long-turn elbow	0.5	1	2	2	2	3	4	5	5	6
Tee or cross (flow turned 90°)	3	4	5	6	8	10	12	15	17	20
Butterfly valve	Х	х	х	х	Х	6	7	10	Х	12
Gate valve	Х	Х	х	Х	Х	1	1	1	1	2
Swing check*	х	Х	5	7	9	11	14	16	19	22

*Due to the variation in design of swing check valves, the pipe equivalents indicated in this table are considered average.



Figure 1-17 Example Sprinkler Flow Pattern
Source: NFPA 13

Many automatic fire sprinklers utilizing glass bulbs follow a standardized color-coding convention indicating their operating temperature, as shown in Table 1-5. Activation temperatures correspond to the type of hazard against which the sprinkler system protects. For example, residential occupancies are provided with a special type of fast-response sprinkler with the unique goal of life safety.

The selection of sprinklers will vary by occupancy. The types of sprinklers that may be used are standard spray upright and pendent, sidewall spray, concealed, extended coverage, open, residential, early suppression fast-response, large drop, quick response, and special application sprinklers. Sprinkler spacing is based on the rating and listing of the sprinkler in addition to the requirements set forth in NFPA 13.

Residential Sprinklers

Residential sprinklers, listed by Underwriters Laboratories (UL), are now available. They are designed to

Including Four Stories in Height. Residential fire sprinkler systems provide coverage throughout the entire home, excluding small bathrooms (less than 55 square feet), small closets (less than 24 square feet), attics, and garages.

PIPE HANGERS

Sprinkler systems can be made up of many different types of piping. NFPA 13 requires pipe used in sprinkler systems to have chemical properties, physical properties, and dimensions of material at least equivalent to the standards shown in Table 1-6. The pressure limitations of these piping systems and their components must be understood when specifying pipe materials.

Each sprinkler system shall be supported and installed in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 13 (see Figure 1-18). Pipe hangers shall be UL-listed. Hangers shall be arranged to maintain the required pitch for free expansion and contraction. Sprinkler piping or hangers shall not be used to support non-system components. Each vertical line shall be supported at its base using a hanger placed in the horizontal line near the riser. Hangers shall meet seismic requirements in areas prone to seismic movement.

STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

The purpose of installing a standpipe system is to provide a readily accessible water supply for use by fire department personnel and/or trained occupants during fire situations. A standpipe is a type of rigid water pipe to which firehoses can be connected that is built into multistory buildings in a vertical position. Standpipe systems can be classified into three system types as defined by NFPA 14: *Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems*.

• Class I system: A system that provides 2¹/₂-inch hose connections to supply water for use by fire

respond to a fire much faster than currently available standard commercial and industrial sprinkler systems. Typical residential sprinkler systems are installed in accordance with NFPA 13D: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes and NFPA 13R: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies Up to and

Maximum Ceiling Color Code (with **Glass Bulb Color** Temperature Temperature Temperature Rating Classification **Fusible Link**) 100°F 135-170°F Uncolored or Black Orange (135°) or Ordinary Red (155°) 150°F 175-225°F Intermediate White Yellow (175°) or Green (200°) 225°F 250-300°F Blue Blue High 300°F 325-375°F Extra High Red Purple 375°F 400-475°F Very Extra High Green Black 475°F 500-575°F Ultra High Orange Black 650°F 625°F Ultra High Orange Black Source: NFPA 13

 Table 1-5
 Maximum Sprinkler Temperature Rating and Temperature Classification Color

 Code (with glass bulb fusible link)

Chapter 1—Fire Protection Systems



Figure 1-18 Common Types of Acceptable Hangers

far@erga.com 17/01/15

Materials and Dimensions	Standard
Ferrous Piping (Welded and Seamless) Specification for black and hot-dipped zinc-coated (galvanized) welded and seamless steel pipe for fire protection use	ASTM A 795
Specification for welded and seamless steel pipe	ANSI/ASTM A 53
Wrought steel pipe	ANSI/ASME B36.10M
Specification for electric-resistance-welded steel pipe	ASTM A 135
Copper Tube (Drawn, Seamless)	
Specification for seamless copper tube	ASTM B 75
Specification for seamless copper water tube	ASTM B 88
Specification for general requirements for wrought seamless copper and copper-alloy tube	ASTM B 251
Fluxes for soldering applications of copper and copper-alloy tube	ASTM B 813
Brazing filler metal (classification BCuP-3 or BCuP-4)	AWS A5.8
Solder metal, Section 1: Solder alloys containing less than 0.2% lead and having solidus temperatures greater than 400°F	ASTM B 32
Alloy materials	ASTM B 446
Plastic Pipe	
Nonmetallic piping specification for special listed chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) pipe	ASTM F442

 Table 1-6
 Approved Pipe Materials

Source: NFPA 13

departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams

- Class II system: A system that provides 1¹/₂-inch hose connections to supply water for use by trained building personnel or fire departments during initial response
- Class III system: A system that provides 1½inch hose connections to supply water for use by trained personnel and 2½-inch hose connections to supply a larger volume of water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams

Standpipes may be either wet type or dry type, depending on the application. The subtypes of each are as follows:

- An automatic wet standpipe contains water at all times, is attached to a water supply capable of providing the system demand (flow and pressure)
- water supply capable of providing the system demand (flow and pressure), and requires no action other than opening a hose valve to provide water at hose connections.
- A manual wet standpipe contains water at all times but relies exclusively on the fire department connection to supply the system demand.
- An automatic dry standpipe contains air or nitrogen at pressure but is attached to a water supply capable of providing the system demand. The water supply is held at a dry pipe valve until a hose valve is opened, releasing the air or nitrogen and al-

lowing water to flow into the standpipe system.

• A semiautomatic dry standpipe is an empty, non-pressurized system attached to a water supply capable of providing the system demand. The water supply is held at a deluge valve and requires activation of a remote control device to provide water flow into the standpipe system.

•A manual dry standpipe has no attached water supply and relies exclusively on the fire department connection to supply the system demand.

Locating and Determining the Number of Standpipe Risers

Our model building codes establish whether or not a building is required to be provided with a standpipe system. Typically, standpipes are required in a building where the floor level of the highest story is located more than 30

feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access or where the floor level of the lowest story is located more than 30 feet below the highest level of fire department vehicle access. Separate standpipes shall be provided in each required exit stairway where required by code. Additional hose connections may be required where travel distances exceed the codemandated limits or where identified by the local fire department or authority having jurisdiction. Most building codes and NFPA require the risers and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inch hose valves for Class I and III standpipe systems to be located inside fire-rated stairs or smoke-proof



Figure 1-19 Acceptable Piping Arrangement for Combined Sprinkler/ Standpipe Systems

Source: NFPA 14

towers to allow the fire department the opportunity to make its connection to the riser inside a protected area prior to entering the floor under the fire condition.

Standpipe System Design

The design of standpipe risers and branch mains, if applicable to the installation, varies according to the system configuration, local and state building code requirements, the building hazard, and the size of the building. Typically, Class I and Class III standpipes shall be at least 4 inches in size. Standpipes that are part of a combined system (a system that supplies water to both fire department personnel and the building sprinkler system) shall be at least 6 inches in size (see Figure 1-19). (Exception: Where the building is protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system, the minimum standpipe size may be 4 inches for hydraulically calculated systems.) Since several factors are involved in the standpipe system, it is recommended to check with the local and state codes as well as the NFPA standards to ensure that the system will meet local requirements.

The standpipe design flow and pressure requirements from NFPA 14 are as follows:

- For Class I and Class III systems, the minimum flow rate for the hydraulically most remote standpipe shall be 500 gpm. Where a horizontal standpipe on a Class I and Class III system supplies three or more hose connections on any floor, the minimum flow rate shall be 750 gpm. The minimum flow rate for additional standpipes shall be 250 gpm per standpipe, with the total not exceeding 1,250 gpm or 1,000 gpm for buildings sprinklered throughout.
- Hydraulically designed standpipe systems shall be designed to provide the water flow rate (see above) at a minimum residual pressure of 100 psi at the outlet of the hydraulically most remote $2\frac{1}{2}$ -inch hose connection and 65 psi at the outlet of the hydraulically most remote 1¹/₂-inch hose station.

If the water supply to the standpipes cannot provide the required volume and pressure, the system must be upgraded to ensure an adequate supply or a fire pump must be added to the system (see Figure 1-20).

FIRE PUMP SYSTEMS

A fire pump usually is connected to the municipal or fire protection water supply at the intake and to the building's sprinkler system risers at the discharge (see Figure 1-21). Fire pumps are listed specifically for fire service by a listing agency such as UL or FM Global. The main standard that governs fire pump installations is NFPA 20: Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fire Pumps for Fire Protection.



Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems.

Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection.

Schematic Diagram of Fire Pump with Bypass Figure 1-20 Source: NFPA 20

The fire pump becomes active when the pressure in the fire sprinkler system drops below a set threshold. This threshold is typically the performance value of the jockey pump. Once operating, the fire pump provides additional water pressure to the sprinkler system.

The types of pumps used for fire service include horizontal split case, vertical split case, vertical inline, vertical turbine, and end suction.

Labeled fire pumps are made in specific sizes ranging from 25 gpm to 5,000 gpm. Pressure selections may range from 40 to 475 psi for fire pumps.

Per NFPA 20, the fire pump must meet the following requirements:

- The net pump shutoff (churn) plus the maximum static suction pressure shall not exceed the pressure for which the system components are rated.
- At 150 percent of the rated capacity, it shall develop at least 65 percent of its rated head and shall not exceed 140 percent of the rated head at zero capacity.
- Suction size and test components shall be per Table 1-7.
- The maximum pump brake horsepower must not exceed the rating of the particular driver.

Bypass in accordance with NFPA 20,

Minimum Pipe Sizes (nominal)								
Pump Rating (gpm)	Suction (inches)	Discharge (inches)	Relief Valve (inches)	Relief Valve Discharge (inches)	Meter Device (inches)	Number of Hose Valves (inches)	Size of Hose Valves (inches)	Hose Header Suppy (inches)
250	31/2	3	2	21/2	31/2	1	21/2	3
300	4	4	21/2	31/2	31/2	1	21/2	3
400	4	4	3	5	4	2	21/2	4
450	5	5	3	5	4	2	21/2	4
500	5	5	3	5	5	2	21/2	4
750	6	6	4	6	5	3	21/2	6
1000	8	6	4	8	6	4	21/2	6
1250	8	8	6	8	6	6	21/2	8
1500	8	8	6	8	8	6	21/2	8
2000	10	10	6	10	8	6	21/2	8

 Table 1-7
 Partial Summary of Centrifugal Fire Pump Data

Source: NFPA 20

• Each fire pump must have listed pressure gauges and be fitted with a suitable air-relief valve. With certain exceptions, a ³/₄-inch casing relief valve is required to prevent overheating of the pump when it operates against a closed valve. Where the pump pressure may exceed the safe working pressure of the system, and always when a diesel driver or variable-speed driver is used, a listed main relief valve must be furnished.

Fire Pump Drivers

Fire pumps are driven by either electric motors or diesel engines.

If the fire pump is electric, power must be uninterruptible with properly protected power cabling and emergency power. Alarms should sound if normal power is interrupted (i.e., loss of phase or phase reversal). All fire pump motor drivers are required to be rated for continuous duty and must not be used at voltages in excess of 110 percent of the rated voltage. At rated voltage and frequency, the full load ampere rating must not be exceeded under any pumping conditions.

If the fire pump is diesel, provisions must be made for a day tank for fuel storage, engine cooling, exhaust pipe discharge location, and sufficient airflow for cooling, combustion, and ventilation.

The performance requirements and accessories for pumps, whether motor or engine driven, are basically the same. The related components of the specific drivers, however, vary in installation, operation, and maintenance.

The motor-control equipment must be factory assembled, wired, and tested, as well as specifically approved for fire service.

Jockey Pump

A jockey pump is normally required in all pressurized systems. This automatic electric pump has a capacity of 5 to 10 gpm or less. The intent is to maintain pressure when it is lost due to minor leaks, not to keep up with sprinkler discharge. Its controller is set to start at about 5 psi above the start signal for the fire pump and to stop at full pressure.

Equation 1-11: Fire Pump Estimate Sizing

Brake horsepower _	$Head \times gpm \times Specific gravity$							
(BHP)	$3,960 \times \text{Efficiency}$							
Brake horsepower _	$(psi \times 2.13) \times Specific gravity$							
(BHP) -	$3.960 \times \text{Efficiency}$							

 $3,960 \times \text{Efficiency}$

Example 1-6

Calculate the brake horsepower given the following conditions:

- Standpipes = 3
- Fully sprinklered = Yes
- Flow demand = 1,000 gpm
- Building height = 50 feet
- Efficiency = 65%
- Specific gravity = 1.0
- BHP = $(50 \times 1,000 \times 1.0) / (3,960 \times 0.65)$
- BHP = (50,000) / (2,574)
- BHP = 19.42

Additional losses to consider are internal pipe loss, pump loss, backflow prevention equipment, and safety factors.

SPECIAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

Special extinguishing systems focus on the specific elements of a fire: oxygen, heat, and fuel. All three elements must be present at the same time for fire to occur.

Oxygen, heat, and fuel are frequently referred to as the "fire triangle" (see Figure 1-22). Take any of these three things away, and fire will not occur or



Figure 1-21 Fire Pump System

will be extinguished. Fire suppression systems put out fires by taking away one or more elements of the fire triangle.

Without sufficient heat, a fire cannot begin, and it cannot continue. Heat can be removed by the application of a substance that reduces the amount of heat available to the fire reaction. This is often water. Introducing sufficient quantities and types of powder or gas in the flame reduces the amount of heat available for the fire reaction in the same manner.

Without fuel, a fire will stop. Fuel can be removed naturally, as where the fire has consumed all of the burnable fuel, or manually, by mechanically or chemically removing the fuel from the fire.

Without sufficient oxygen, a fire cannot begin, and it cannot continue. With a decreased oxygen concentration, the combustion process slows.

(Note: The fire tetrahedron adds another requirement: the presence of a chemical reaction. If the chemical reaction is inhibited, the fire will extinguish.)

Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems

Dry chemical systems utilize dry powder mixtures as the fire extinguishing agent. They are intended for application by means of portable extinguishers, hand hose-line systems, or fixed systems. The five basic varieties of dry chemical extinguishing agents currently are borax and sodium bicarbonate, sodium bicarbonate, urea potassium bicarbonate, monoammonium phosphate base, and potassium bicarbonate. When introduced directly into the fire area, dry chemicals cause almost immediate extinguishment. The major effect of dry chemicals is that they break the chain reaction of combustion. The minimum requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, and testing of dry chemical extinguishing systems can be found in NFPA 17: *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*.

Dry chemical extinguishing systems originally were used to extinguish Class B fires. They consisted of a sodium bicarbonate base with additives to prevent caking and to improve the fluid flow characteristics. Later, multipurpose dry chemicals, effective on Class A, B, and C fires, were developed. When dry chemical systems are specified for use in a Class A fire area, they may not produce a lasting effect on the fire area. Twin-agent units using dry chemicals for early flame knockdown, followed by a foam application to prevent re-flash, are becoming a more common means of fire suppression.

Dry chemicals are most effective and most often used on surface fires, especially on flammable liquids. They can be discharged by handheld extinguishers, wheeled portable equipment, nozzles on fixed piping, or hose lines in local applications where the hazard is not enclosed or where the enclosure does not form an effective fire boundary. Chemical application may be tank side, overhead, or a combination of both.

Dry chemical systems also may be total flooding. The total flooding system consists of a predetermined supply of dry chemical permanently connected to a fixed discharge piping system, with fixed nozzles discharging into an enclosed space or an enclosure around a hazard. Upon actuation of the system by a heat detector, nitrogen is discharged into the storage container, and dry chemical is expelled



Figure 1-22 The Fire Triangle

through the system nozzles. The system may be either of the following:

- Engineered: These systems are based on known factors of chemical flow, pressure, friction losses, and pressure drops. Detection and activation are by automatic operation using electric, electronic, or mechanical detection and discharge. Many authorities require a full discharge test after installation for verification of the effectiveness of such a system or require a room air pressure test.
- Pre-engineered: These systems have been fire tested for a listing with a recognized laboratory. The manufacturer's instructions are specific regarding installation, pipe size, nozzle pressures, and types and quantities of chemicals to be used. Most pre-engineered systems are designed for automatic operation, using electric, electronic, or mechanical detection and discharge. A manual pull station is required to be installed at an exit.

Hand hose-line systems consist of a hose and nozzle connected to a dry chemical supply by direct connection to the storage container or by fixed piping. One or more hose reels can be supplied by the same chemical supply.

Dry Powder Extinguishing Systems

Dry powder extinguishing agents are different from dry chemical extinguishing agents and are effectively used to put out Class D fires, which are metal fires. Certain metals, such as sodium, titanium, magnesium, potassium, uranium, lithium, plutonium, and calcium, are flammable. Magnesium and titanium fires are common. When one of these combustible metals ignites, it can easily and rapidly spread to surrounding Class A materials.

To be effective on any type of Class D fire, the extinguishing agent must suppress the fire without reacting physically or chemically with the combustible materials. Water and other common firefighting materials can excite metal fires and make them worse. Thus, NFPA recommends that Class D fires be fought with dry powder extinguishing agents, which work by smothering and heat absorption. The two more familiar dry powder extinguishing agents for controlling combustible metal fires are graphite and sodium chloride (salt). Dry powder systems should not be confused with dry chemical systems, which normally are associated with extinguishing agents suitable for use on flammable liquid fires. Some dry chemical agents may create an explosive reaction when applied to combustible metal fires.

Several proprietary dry powders are currently available; however, none should be used without first consulting the manufacturer. The applicable NFPA standard for combustible metals is NFPA 484: *Standard for Combustible Metals*.

Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems

Wet chemical fire-extinguishing agents consist of organic or inorganic salts mixed with water to form an alkaline solution that is typically discharged though a piping and nozzle system when activated. The minimum requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, and testing of wet chemical extinguishing systems can be found in NFPA 17A: *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems*.

Wet chemical agents are listed for suppression of fires in commercial cooking equipment (Class K), such as deep-fat fryers, griddles, range tops, and broilers. These agents are considered to be nontoxic and noncarcinogenic.

When wet chemical extinguishing agents are sprayed on a grease fire, they interact immediately with the grease, forming a blanket of foam over the surface on which they are sprayed. This creates a smothering and cooling effect on the fire.

Wet chemical systems typically are pre-engineered systems, defined by predetermined flow rates, nozzle pressures, and quantities of agent required. Wet chemicals are usually stored in cylinders adjacent to the hazard and are activated by either manual or automatic means. Automatic actuation is provided by either a fusible link or heat detector operation. Manual actuation occurs by the use of a pull station. Actuation of the system opens the seal on the gas cylinder, and the gas flows to the agent cylinder and expels the liquid through the distribution piping and nozzles. Once the system is actuated, all sources of fuel and power to the equipment that produces heat are required to be shut down.

Water Spray Fixed Systems

Water spray systems are operationally identical to a deluge system, but the piping and discharge nozzle spray patterns are designed to protect a uniquely configured hazard, usually being three-dimensional components or equipment. Fixed water spray systems are most commonly used to protect equipment from exposure fires such as flammable liquid and gas tanks, piping and equipment, and electrical equipment such as oil-filled transformers. The nozzles used may not be listed fire sprinklers and are usually selected for a specific spray pattern to conform to the three-dimensional nature of the hazard. The minimum requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, and testing of these systems can be found in NFPA 15: Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection.

Water Mist Systems

Water mist systems utilize water as the extinguishing, suppression, or control medium, but they do so in a nontraditional manner. Water mist systems were introduced in the 1940s and were utilized for maritime applications such as on passenger ferries. The systems were designed to discharge less water using smalldiameter piping, thus having less overall weight than a standard sprinkler system. The minimum requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, and testing of these systems can be found in NFPA 750: *Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems*.

When a fire condition is detected in the protected hazard area via a heat or smoke detector, the system control panel sends a signal to the releasing module to operate the water mist suppression system. Small water mist systems contain nitrogen cylinders and a water cylinder, and large systems use pressure pumps. The nitrogen storage cylinder provides pressure to drive the water to the system nozzles. When the system is operated, valves on the nitrogen tanks open, and the resulting air pressure drives the water through the opened water valve and to the system nozzles. The specifically designed nozzles create specific water droplet characteristics for the applied hazard, and the resulting water mist contains a variety of droplet sizes. The larger droplets produced by the nozzle provide the necessary energy and momentum to carry the smaller droplets to the base of the fire where the mist vaporizes and extinguishes the fire. The simple theory behind this development is that a large amount of small droplets has a greater surface area than the same volume of large droplets, therefore absorbing more heat.

Water mist systems extinguish fires using the following basic principles:

- Cooling: As the mist is converted into vapor, it removes heat from the fire source.
- Inerting: As the water mist turns to steam, it expands approximately 1,700 times, forcing oxygen away from the flame front, thus denying the fire the oxygen necessary to support combustion.
- Wetting: Primarily for incidental Class A fires, wetting of the surface helps extinguish the fire as well as contain it.

Foam Extinguishing Systems

A foam-water fire sprinkler system is a special application system discharging a mixture of water and foam concentrate, resulting in a foam spray from the sprinkler. These systems are usually used with special hazard occupancies associated with high-challenge fires, such as airport hangars and flammable liquids.

Foam, mostly a mass of air- or gas-filled bubbles formed by chemical or mechanical means, is most useful in controlling fires involving flammable liquids with a low flash point and specific gravity that are lighter than water. The mass of bubbles forms a cohesive blanket that extinguishes the fire by excluding air and cooling the surface and by separating the fuel from the fire. Foam is not suitable for use on fires involving compressed gases or on live electrical equipment. Because of the water content, 94 to 97 percent, foam cannot be used on fires involving burning metals and is not effective on oxygen-containing materials. For fires involving water-soluble liquids, such as polar solvents, a special alcohol-resistant aqueous filmforming foam concentrate must be used. Foam can be applied to the fire surface or to the subsurface, such as in petrochemical tanks. Polar solvents must be surface applied. Systems can be fixed or semi-fixed.

- Foams are defined by their expansion ratio:
- Low-expansion foam: Expansion up to 20:1
- Medium-expansion foam: Expansion from 20 to 200:1
- High-expansion foam: Expansion from 200 to 1,000:1

The minimum requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, and testing of foam extinguishing systems can be found in NFPA 11: *Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam* and NFPA 16: *Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler and Foam-Water Spray Systems*.

Mechanical Foam

A number of foam concentrates are available, some of which are designed for specific applications. Mechanical foam is made by the mechanical mixing of water and the synthetic foam concentrates. Examples include aqueous film-forming foam (AFFF), fluoroprotein foaming (FP), film-forming fluoroprotein (FFFP), protein foaming (P), low-temperature foam, alcoholresistant foam (AR), and high-expansion foam.

Protein and fluoroprotein foams are the most costeffective and have excellent burn-back resistance, but they do not knock down the fire as quickly as AFFF, which drains quickly but is not as heat resistant or as stable. Alcohol-resistant foams are somewhere between the two, but cost twice as much as protein foams.

High-expansion foam can be generated in volumes that are 1,000 times that of the water used. The foam is formed by the passage of air through a screen constantly wetted by a solution of chemical concentrate, which usually has a detergent base. The foam can be conducted by ducts, either fixed or portable, and can be manually applied by portable generators. High-expansion foam is useful for extinguishing fires by totally flooding indoor confined spaces, such as mine tunnels, or by local application. It extinguishes by displacing air from the fire and by the heat-absorbing effect of converting the foam water into steam. The foam forms an insulating barrier for exposed equipment or building components. However, high-expansion foam is generally not reliable when used outdoors, where it is subject to wind currents, and although it is nontoxic, it can have a disorienting effect on people.

Mechanical foam can be conducted through pipelines and discharged through a fixed chamber mounted in a bulk-fuel storage tank, or it can be conducted through hoses and discharged manually through special nozzles. This foam can also be distributed through a specially designed sprinkler system.

The type of discharge device (nozzle) that should be used with a specific type of foam is based on the listing from the manufacturer. Foam can be supplied from a diaphragm (bladder) tank using water pressure to make and distribute foam or from an inline pressureproportioning system that utilizes an atmospheric tank with a supply-pressure pump.

Foam disposal after discharge can cause problems. Although most foams are biodegradable, because their biological oxygen demand (BOD) is high, they cannot be directly discharged to the sewer or storm water system. A holding tank with a treatment system may be required.

Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems

Carbon dioxide is an effective fire extinguishing agent that can be used on many types of fires, such as surface fires, flammable liquids, and most solid combustible materials. For fire suppression, the discharge is designed to raise the carbon dioxide concentration in the hazard area. This displaces the air containing oxygen, which results in fire extinguishment. (It should be noted that because of the displacement of oxygen, a carbon dioxide system will fail to support life; thus, care should be exercised in its application.) In addition, carbon dioxide cools fire areas. Typical applications for a high-pressure carbon dioxide system include spray booths, commercial fryers, dip tanks, dust collectors and bag houses, electrical cabinets, printing presses, and storage vaults. The minimum requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, and testing of these systems can be found in NFPA 12: Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems.

Carbon dioxide is an odorless, colorless gas at ordinary temperatures. Carbon dioxide as used for fire protection systems is available in high-pressure or low-pressure equipment. High-pressure systems (850 psi at 70° F) use gas compressed in standard cylinders. Low-pressure systems use carbon dioxide stored at 300 psi at 0° F in refrigerated, insulated tanks. Lowpressure systems are capable of multiple discharges since the duration of discharge is limited, and several hazards may be simultaneously protected through the use of multidirectional valves.

Under normal conditions, the gas is compressed into a liquid. When a carbon dioxide system is discharged, the pressure in the storage container acts as the propellant, forcing the stored liquid through pipelines to discharge nozzles. Each pound of carbon dioxide will expand to approximately 8 cubic feet of vapor at atmospheric pressure. Most of the liquid expands to a gas, but a portion forms particles of dry ice. This "snow" increases the mass of the discharge, allowing it to be projected for some distance. It absorbs heat and reduces temperature.

A minimum concentration of 34 percent by volume will handle most common materials; others may require an inerting atmosphere up to 100 percent. Some burning materials, such as stacked paper, furs, electrical insulation, and baled cotton, contain so much oxygen in pores or other internal spaces that they must be "soaked" in a smothering atmosphere for periods ranging from several minutes to several hours.

Carbon dioxide may be applied by either total flooding or local application. Total flooding is used where the hazard is contained in a room, compartment, or other enclosure that will allow the carbon dioxide atmosphere to remain in contact with the burning materials for a sufficient period to extinguish the fire and prevent its reigniting.

Local application is used where a hazard cannot be readily enclosed. The rate and duration of discharge, length of piping, and usable capacity of storage containers are critical factors, as the discharge of carbon dioxide is soon dissipated and has no continuing effect. System design for this type of application is considerably more complex than it is for flooding an enclosure. The types of nozzles to be used and their locations and discharge rates must be determined within accurate limits. Local application is commonly used for the largest and most valuable industrial processes, such as for oil quench tanks, flow-coating paint machines, steel and aluminum mills, printing presses, and power-generating equipment.

Clean Agent Fire Suppression Systems

For many years, halogenated agent (Halon 1211 and Halon 1301) fire suppression systems were utilized to protect high-value equipment, materials, and buildings. Halon 1301 was a particularly good extinguishing agent, as it interfered with the chain reaction of fire, left no residue, and was nontoxic. Halons contain compounds that consist of chlorine, bromine, fluorine, and carbon, which are commonly known as chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs). CFCs are extremely stable compounds that do not break down chemically until reaching the Earth's upper atmosphere. In September 1987, 24 nations of the United Nations signed an agreement to phase out production of refrigerants and halons that are detrimental to the Earth's ozone layer. This agreement is commonly referred to as the Montreal Protocol. Both Halon 1211 and Halon 1301 were phased out of production in 1994, except for essential uses, and CFCs were phased out in 1996. Some halons still exist in manufacturers' inventories and are still in service as a suppression system.

The current replacement fire suppression gases for Halon 1301 are halocarbon clean agents. Halocarbon replacements include compounds containing carbon, hydrogen, bromine, chlorine, fluorine, and iodine. They are grouped into five categories: hydrobromofluorocarbons (HBFCs), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), and fluoroiodocarbons (FICs).

The descriptions and design requirements for all of these replacement agents are given in detail in NFPA 2001: Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems. Halon 1301 information may be found in NFPA 12A: Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems.

Clean agent systems are designed to be chemical inhibitors that react with the transient products of combustion, terminating the combustion chain reaction and thereby stopping the flame propagation. They reduce the oxygen content below the point necessary to maintain combustion. Although inert gases have a low level of toxicity, the decomposition products generated by their breaking down in the presence of very high amounts of heat may be dangerous. They may be used in occupied areas if the design concentration does not exceed the "no observed adverse effect level" (NOAEL) of 43 percent.

NFPA 2001 has set exposure limits for inert gases. Unnecessary exposure to inert gas agent systems resulting in low oxygen atmospheres shall be avoided. The maximum exposure in any case shall not exceed five minutes. It is advised that evacuation from the protected areas be done during the countdown period between the verification of a fire and the release of any of these agents.

Clean Agent System Design Procedure

Modern concepts of fire protection for buildings of various occupancies include consideration of a clean agent extinguishing system as either an alternative or an addition to a traditional fire protection sprinkler system for rooms or areas considered special in nature from a fire protection point of view or of high value because of the equipment and/or materials housed in those areas. Specific applications must be reviewed with the local fire authorities having jurisdiction and the owner's insurance underwriter, but the following steps could be considered as a basis for further, detailed design.

1. Determine if the authority having jurisdiction and the owner's insurance underwriter will allow a clean agent in addition to a sprinkler system. If a clean agent system is installed in addition to a fire protection sprinkler system to protect the same floor area, the sprinkler system should be designed to release water after the clean agent system has been exhausted.

- 2. Determine the quantity of agent necessary, which depends on the following:
 - Calculate the square footage and the volume (cubic feet) of the space to be protected, including any under-floor (raised-floor) areas or plenum (above-ceiling) areas. According to the specific application, the under-floor area may be on a separate zone than the room space.
 - Determine the minimum agent concentration required for the hazard classification, as established by NFPA 2001, NFPA 12A, or the authority having jurisdiction. Subtract the volume of fixed structures that will be impervious to clean agent vapor.
 - Determine the specific volume of the agent vapor at the room's set temperature.
 - Evaluate minimum agent hold requirements and evaluate compartment for leakage.
 - Establish the maximum discharge time (10 to 60 seconds).

Equation 1-12: Clean Agent Weight Calculation

$$W = V / S (C / (100 - C))$$

where

- W = Weight of clean agent, pounds
- V = Net volume of hazard
- S = Specific volume of agent at set temperature
- C = Agent design concentration (per NFPA 2001 or authority having jurisdiction)
- t = Minimum anticipated temperature of the protected room volume

The connected standby is an integral part of the system. Connected standby (reserve) is sometimes required by the jurisdictional authority or owner in important systems or continually operated areas, such as telephone exchanges, data processing rooms, or mainframe computer rooms. The reserve system is arranged to discharge on a delayed basis after the primary bank of cylinders has released or failed to release. Normally, the requirement for 100 percent connected reserve is established by the owner or insurance underwriter for the building or equipment as an extra precaution against building loss, but it is not a requirement of the NFPA standards.

3. Locate the cylinder(s). The agent equipment supplier should be consulted at this point regarding standard cylinder sizes, required clearances between cylinders and walls, access for cylinder replacement from an outside supply truck, weight of the equipment (for structural engineering design), and anchoring and support methods for attaching cylinders or spheres to walls or hanging from or above ceilings. Cylinders can be located within the hazard area or outside the hazard area.

- 4. Locate the pipe route from the cylinders to the discharge nozzles to ensure uniform discharge and design concentration of the agent throughout the protected space, generally within 10 to 60 seconds. If a separate agent storage room is to be used, it is particularly important that the length of piping between the storage room and the point of discharge is properly sized to ensure complete flooding of the room to the design concentration and within a maximum of 10 to 60 seconds. Longer pipe runs mean a longer time before the agent reaches the most remote nozzle on the system.
 - Pipe sizing is usually established by a fire protection engineer or the extinguishing agent equipment supplier based on computerized programs for pipe size determination, with proper data input related to room size and volume, air infiltration, the hazard being protected, and the specifics about the agent being used. Any such program must be listed or approved by a thirdparty agency, such as Underwriters Laboratories or FM Global.
 - Special precaution in design is necessary to ensure proper support and anchoring of the piping, as the force of the agent under pressure moving through the pipe systems can cause pipe movement, ruptured joints, or other dangerous conditions. Ceiling clips are recommended to hold down lay-in ceiling tiles during high-pressure agent discharge.
- 5. Define the method of initiating or triggering the system. Typical system initiating devices are ionization and/or photoelectric smoke detectors. These detectors are located within the protected area at ceilings, under raised floors, or in the plenum space. These devices are normally spaced at approximately 125 square feet to 900 square feet per detector based on the airflow through the space. The maximum area per detector is defined in NFPA 72: National Fire Alarm and Signaling *Code*. When the detector is triggered, the signal is sent to an agent control panel normally located near the exit door from the protected space, thus beginning the alarm sequence. The most common sequence of events for the control panel is as follows:
 - The first smoke detector activates. An alarm bell or horn rings in the protected area, and an alarm signal is sent to the building fire alarm control panel.
 - The second smoke detector activates. An alarm bell sounds, the countdown timer delay (30 seconds) starts, air-handling equipment shuts down, clean agent air dampers close, and an alarm signal is sent to the building's fire alarm control panel.

• The time delay expires. The agent discharges immediately, electrical equipment shuts down, strobe lights and local discharge horns are activated, and an alarm signal is sent to the building's fire alarm control panel.

An alternative to the above-described initiation sequence is counter zoning, which requires at least one detector to alarm from two different detector zones in the protected space before system discharge. This requires the establishment of multiple detection zones in the protected space.

- 6. The control panel is commonly equipped with a light indicating that the agent is discharging, a 30-second time delay relay, alarm relay, shutdown relay, abort station, and manual release station. In the event that the fire can be brought under control by other means or until the fire is confirmed, the abort station may be used to prevent the release of the agent.
- 7. Building fire alarm systems should be equipped with the ability to receive a signal from the clean agent extinguishing system control panel and indicate to fire department personnel where the fire is within the building. If the building's fire alarm control panel does not have this capability, a separate remote annunciator should be provided with the extinguishing agent control equipment.
- 8. Actual discharge testing of halon systems is no longer permitted, due to environmental considerations. It is common, however, for a complete functional test of the system to be required after installation to ensure proper operation of all mechanical and electrical equipment, detection system, discharge control, abort, power shutdown, air-handling unit shutdown, fire damper, and door closure circuits. A fan pressurization test of the space integrity and an acceptance test also may be required. Refer to NFPA 2001 for complete inspection, testing, and training requirements for clean agent extinguishing systems. Refer to NFPA 12A for halon system requirements.

Fire Extinguishers

A fire extinguisher is an active fire protection device used to extinguish or control a fire, typically in emergency situations. A fire extinguisher, in general, consists of a handheld cylindrical pressure vessel containing an agent that can be discharged to extinguish a fire. In selecting a fire extinguisher, consideration should be given to the type of hazard and the potential size of fire involvement. For the proper type, rating, and locations, refer to NFPA 10: *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*.

Fire extinguishers are available to extinguish all Class A, B, C, D, and K fires and are available with specialty extinguishing agents: carbon dioxide, dry chemical, water, clean agent, foam, and special compounds for use with combustible metals.

Some extinguishers extinguish only one class of fire, and some may be suitable for two or three classes of fire; however, none are suitable for all classes. Rating numerals are used to provide the effectiveness of an extinguisher (i.e., a 4A extinguisher will discharge twice as much extinguishing agent as a 2A unit). The numerical rating for Class B extinguishers is based on the quantity of burning flammable liquid to be extinguished. Class C and D extinguishers do not have numerical ratings.

Class A extinguishers often are used for general building protection (paper, wood, cloth) and use water, AFFF, multipurpose dry chemical, and clean agent extinguishing agents. Class B extinguishers include carbon dioxide, dry chemicals, AFFF, and halogenated types for use on flammable liquid fires (gasoline, grease, oil, paint) and may be located in kitchens, laboratories, and generator rooms. Class C extinguishers include carbon dioxide, dry chemical, and clean agent types for use on electrical equipment fires. Class D extinguishing agents are special dry powder agents for use on combustible metals. It should be noted that multipurpose dry chemicals leave a residue when used. Delicate electrical or electronic equipment could be damaged if Class A, B, or C dry chemical extinguishing agents are used.

Extinguishers should be mounted with the top no more than 5 feet above the floor, but with the bottom a minimum of 4 inches above the floor. For units in excess of 40 pounds, the top should be 3.5 feet above the floor. Extinguishers shall be easily visible and accessible. The actual travel distance to extinguishers, including walking around partitions and equipment, becomes a critical factor for quick fire control. The maximum distance allowed is listed in NFPA 10. (For example, the maximum distance between extinguishers in a Class A hazard is 75 feet.) It is beneficial to locate extinguishers in normal paths of travel, near exits and entrances, where uniform distribution is possible, and where the units will be readily available. Wheeled extinguishers are usually intended for outdoor placement and use by trained personnel.

ELEVATOR SHAFT PROTECTION

ASME A17.1: *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators* states that the mainline power supply to the elevator must be automatically disconnected prior to the application of water in the event of a fire. This is required because the electrical components and brakes in an elevator do not perform predictably when wet. This situation necessitates some special arrangement, such as a preaction system or inline flow switch to ensure that water does not flow in the elevator shaft until power has shut down.

Elevator Recall

Smoke detectors are provided at the top of the shaft. When the smoke detector is triggered, this alarms the system control panel and initiates elevator recall upon actuation.

Elevator Shut Down

Heat detectors are provided adjacent to each sprinkler installed in the elevator shaft and elevator machine room. The heat detector activation set point is set for less than the activation temperature of the sprinkler. When the heat detector is triggered, a signal is sent to the system control panel that disconnects power to the elevator without time delay. In the event of accidental damage to a sprinkler head, water flow shall activate either the preaction system or water flow switch and send a signal to the system control panel that disconnects power to the elevator.

Sprinklers and Piping

Sidewall sprinklers are to be installed at the bottom of each elevator hoistway not more than 2 feet above the floor of the pit. All sprinkler piping must be located outside the shaft, except for the short horizontal branch that feeds the sprinkler heads. An accessible and monitored isolation valve must be provided on the main line feeding the shaft sprinklers, outside the shaft.

NFPA 13 allows eliminating the sprinkler at the top of elevator hoistways, if two conditions are met: The elevator hoistway must be noncombustible, and the elevator car enclosure material must meet the requirements of ASME A17.1. Note that this exception is subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

DESIGN COORDINATION AND CONSIDERATIONS

Fire protection design extends beyond the installation of the suppression system. The entire building team becomes part of the design effort. The architect and the HVAC, plumbing, and electrical engineers are an integral part of the fire protection system design process. Following is a partial list of items that should be reviewed by the design team prior to final drawings and specifications being issued for construction.

• State and local building codes and ordinances

- Fire wall locations
- Fire door locations
- Fire damper locations
- Smoke door locations
- Smoke exhaust locations
- Smoke damper locations
- Smoke detector locations
- Heat detector locations
- Fire alarm notification devices
- Fire alarm panel location

- Fire alarm manual pull station locations
- Sprinkler flow switch locations
- Sprinkler valve pressure switch locations
- Sprinkler valve supervisory switch locations
- Standpipe and hose locations
- Fire department connection locations
- Fire pump locations
- Fire pump test header locations
- Fire water service locations
- Fire hydrant locations
- Specialty suppression system locations
- Emergency and/or standby power
- Available power

As a result of the size and complexity of today's structures, the entire fire protection team is required to supply a life safety system of detection, notification, and suppression with the ultimate goal of safety to the occupants of the structure and protection of the owner's investment.

REFERENCES

The documents or portions thereof listed are referenced within the information sections of this chapter. Check with federal, state, and local codes to determine which editions are in effect in the project's location.

- National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Fire Protection Handbook
- NFPA 10: Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers
- NFPA 11: Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam
- NFPA 12: Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems
- NFPA 12A: Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems
- NFPA 13: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems
- NFPA 14: Standard for the Installation of Standpipes and Hose Systems
- NFPA 15: Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection
- NFPA 16: Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler and Foam-Water Spray Systems

- NFPA 17: Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems
- NFPA 17A: Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems
- NFPA 20: Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection
- NFPA 24: Standard for the Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances
- NFPA 72: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
- NFPA 291: Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants
- NFPA 484: Standard for Combustible Metals
- NFPA 750: Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems
- NFPA 2001: Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems

DISCLAIMER

The design of fire suppression systems should be performed only by experienced fire protection designers or engineers. Although this chapter provides a basic, systematic approach to fire protection systems design, it does not attempt to answer all of the questions concerning the subject.

APPENDIX

The following factors may be used to convert inchpound measurement units to metric units.

- 1 inch = 25.4 millimeters
- 1 foot = 0.348 meters
- 1 gallon = 3.785 liters
- 1 square foot = 0.0929 square meter
- 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 liter per second
- 1 psi = 6.8948 kPa
- $1 \text{ gpm/ft}^2 = 0.6781 \text{ L/s/m}^2$
- 1 foot per minute = 5.08 mm/s
- 1 cubic foot = 0.028 cubic meter
- 1 cubic foot per minute = 28.32 L/min

aspe.org

Your Gateway to Plumbing Engineering Expertise

ASPE's interactive website, ASPE.org, provides visitors with a vast collection of technical information focused on the plumbing engineering industry.

E-Learning that Fits Your Schedule

Accessible 24 hours a day, ASPE online education programs will enhance your technical expertise, increase your productivity, and provide career-focused education. Plus: the CEUs/PDHs earned by successfully completing any of the programs are approved in all states. Programs include:

- PowerPoint presentations on a variety of subjects
- Archived webinars taught by industry experts
- Audio programs
- Read, Learn, and Earn continuing education exams

Technical Knowledge with a Click of the Mouse

At ASPE.org, visitors have access to:

- Current adopted code information by state
- The Plumbing Systems Specification Directory, searchable by product or manufacturer
- An industry events calendar
- A peer-to-peer forum to ask questions and share information
- Back issues of ASPE Pipeline, the industry's biweekly source of news and events
- The latest issue of Plumbing Systems & Design magazine
- Industry news and new product announcements

Need an ASPE Publication or Product?

You can update your technical library or find that perfect ASPE gift at the ASPE Online Store.

Learn More About ASPE

In addition, ASPE.org provides everything you want to know about the American Society of Plumbing Engineers.

Visit ASPE.org today to expand your expertise in plumbing engineering.



E-Learning Technical Knowledge Publications Products



Health Gare Systems

At IPEX you get more than products. You get our knowledge.

You get more than just purity with Enpure[™]. You get peace of mind. Enpure is one of the most complete and dependable purewater thermoplastic piping systems available today. From the manufacturing of cosmetics to solutions for medical use, from pure-water lab applications to dialysis machines, Enpure is designed to meet all challenges. Manufactured with FDA approved materials, Enpure natural polypropylene pipe, valves and fittings eliminate the potential of contamination to your pure process.

And, unlike conventional systems, Enpure is designed as a socket fusion system. No hazardous chemicals are used for joining. Connections are as "clean" as any other components in the system. For more than 20 years IPEX has provided laboratories throughout North America with complete acid waste systems designed to take a variety of chemicals. Pour it, flush it or dump it – from school labs to industrial labs, Labline[™] polypro, and Plenumline[™] FR-PVDF acid waste systems are built to handle it.

> Since their introduction, Labline and Plenumline mechanical joints have revolutionized the industry – and they continue to be regarded as state-of-the-art. Labline and Plenumline also feature a new noheat Elastolive for quicker installation and higher performance.

Backed by IPEX's 50 years of experience, Enpure, Labline and Plenumline are built to our strict quality, performance and dimensional standards.







Products are manufactured by IPEX Inc. and distributed in the United States by IPEX USA LLC. Enpure™, Labline™ and Plenumline™ are trademarks of IPEX Branding Inc.

far@erga.com 17/01/15

Call 1-800-463-9572 or visit www.ipexamerica.com



Plumbing Design for Healthcare Facilities

Healthcare facilities, nursing homes, medical schools, and medical laboratories require plumbing systems that are more complex than those for most other types of buildings. The plumbing designer should work closely with the architect and facility staff and be involved in meetings and discussions to fully understand the plumbing requirements for any new or special medical equipment. The plumbing design must be coordinated with the civil, architectural, structural, mechanical, and electrical designs to ensure that adequate provisions have been made for utility capacities, the necessary clearances and space requirements of the piping systems and related plumbing equipment, and compliance with applicable codes. Healthcare facilities may have different requirements or be exempt from some codes and standards, such as water and energy conservation codes and regulations regarding the physically challenged. The plumbing engineer should consult with the administrative authority to ensure conformance with local ordinances.

This chapter discusses the provisions that may be encountered in the design of a healthcare facility, including the plumbing fixtures and related equipment, sanitary drainage system, water supply system, laboratory waste and vent systems, pure water systems, and medical gas systems.

TYPES OF HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

Healthcare facilities include hospitals, nursing homes, medical and dental offices, and clinics. These facilities fall into two general categories: short-term and longterm care. Short term is considered the typical acute care surgical- or medical-type hospital.

Hospitals

A hospital is defined as a building or part thereof that is used for medical, obstetrical, psychiatric, or surgical care on a 24-hour basis for four or more patients. These include general hospitals, mental hospitals, tuberculosis hospitals, children's hospitals, etc. and any facility providing inpatient care. Piping systems shall conform to levels (defined in the next section) as follows:

- Medical/surgical compressed gases and vacuum systems for direct patient care, pneumatic devices, or supplying-mechanical or assisted-mechanical ventilation equipment shall conform to Level 1.
- Waste anesthetic gas disposal (WAGD) systems shall conform to Level 1 requirements and may be produced by either a dedicated system or a connection to the medical/surgical vacuum system.
- High-pressure support gases (nitrogen or instrument air) for pneumatic devices, tools, etc. shall be Level 1 and also may be used for laboratory purposes if appropriate. They shall not be used for respiration.
- Level 2 systems are not permitted.
- A Level 3 gas (nitrous oxide and oxygen only) and vacuum system for dentistry shall be permitted if not connected to the hospital's Level 1 central system source. These gas systems shall not be used for patient or staff ingestion. Existing systems are permitted to be used, provided that they do not constitute a hazard to life as determined by the local authorities.

Nursing Homes

A nursing home is a facility providing long-term nursing care and housing on a 24-hour basis for patients who, because of physical or mental incapacity, may be unable to provide for their own needs without the assistance of another person. This type of facility includes nursing and convalescent facilities, skilled nursing homes, intermediate-care facilities, and infirmities with homes for the aged. Piping systems, if installed, shall conform to levels as follows:

- Medical gas and vacuum systems if provided for patients with mechanical or assisted-mechanical ventilation considered critical life support shall conform to Level 1 as well as any gas connected to Level 1 sources or distribution piping.
- Where patients are not dependent on medical gas or vacuum systems at any time for critical life

support, such systems, if provided, shall conform to Level 2.

• All other systems, if provided, shall conform to Level 3.

Limited-care Facilities

A limited-care facility is used on a 24-hour basis for the housing and care of four or more persons who are incapable of self-preservation due to illness, accident, mental retardation, or chemical dependency. If installed, piping systems shall conform to levels as follows:

- Where patients are provided with mechanical or assisted-mechanical ventilation, gas, or vacuum systems, these systems shall conform to Level 1.
- Systems shall meet Level 2 if they do not meet all of the above conditions.

Other Healthcare Facilities

Other facilities, or portions thereof, provide diagnostic and treatment services to patients other than those provided in hospitals, nursing homes, and limitedcare facilities. This category is intended to encompass all other facilities without the need for specifically naming them, which in the past has resulted in misinterpretation and misapplication of standards. It includes small outpatient facilities and medical and dental offices. If installed, piping systems shall conform to levels as follows:

- Medical compressed gases and vacuum systems supplying mechanical or assisted-mechanical ventilation equipment and WAGD systems shall conform to Level 1. If general anesthesia is given, Level 1 systems are required.
- Where patients are not dependent on medical gas or vacuum systems at any time for critical life support, such systems, if provided, shall conform to Level 2.
- All other systems, if provided, shall conform to Level 3.

MEDICAL GAS AND VACUUM SYSTEM LEVELS

The term "level" represents a comparative degree of risk to patients and the facility in which they are installed. The levels are intended to define standards of purity, safety, and reliability. They indicate intended system uses and the potential risk to a patient if the system shall fail or malfunction. Systems conforming to different levels within the same building are permitted.

Level 1

Level 1 includes any dedicated, nonflammable compressed gas or vacuum system whose failure or interruption will be an immediate threat to life safety and the expectation that the patient outcome would result in death or permanent injury. The official defini-

tion is "imminent danger of morbidity or mortality." A Level 1 gas system shall be installed in critical areas and also serve patients who could be provided with mechanical ventilation or assisted-mechanical ventilation. The patients are dependent on such systems for critical life support while undergoing or recovering from invasive diagnostic, treatment, or surgical procedures. The Level 1 vacuum system shall serve any station inlets installed in critical care areas, including WAGD, and provide medical/surgical support for the patient population undergoing or recovering from invasive diagnostic, treatment, or surgical procedures. This level shall include all necessary alarms, operating controls, gauges, etc. High-pressure compressed gases more than 160 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (1,103 kPa) used to serve pneumatic devices that are used for invasive procedures are Level 1, which also includes instrument (support) air that is used as a replacement for nitrogen. The supply and alarms must be redundant.

Level 2

Level 2 includes any nonflammable patient gas distribution system where patients are not dependent on such systems for critical life support and are not provided with mechanical ventilation or assisted-mechanical ventilation. The failure of this level system may result in death or permanent injury. This level is used where a patient is at manageable risk of morbidity or mortality if the system fails. This will serve any patient who is dependent on the piped medical gas and vacuum system for well-being and for recovery from invasive diagnostic, treatment, or surgical procedures, where a bottled gas could be substituted guickly for the failed service. This includes support air where applicable. The source supply, equipment, and alarms can be simplex. They shall not be connected to Level 1 central systems and are not permitted to be used in hospitals. The occupancy to be served and the function of that occupancy where Level 2 systems are installed shall be different from all other occupancies in a hospital.

Level 3

Level 3 systems are considered low risk to a patient and are found where interruption of the piped systems would allow termination of a procedure that would not place the patient at risk of mortality or conditions that would lead to death. Patients are not dependent on compressed gas or vacuum. Such systems are found in facilities such as dental offices and clinics. They include any nonflammable patient gas distribution system at a pressure of less than 160 psi (1,103 kPa) providing a source of power for orthopedic, pediatric, and plastic surgery devices and for dental services. The vacuum system can be either wet or dry and is used predominately for removal of liquids from any treatment area and from the oral cavity. Alarms and supplies need not be redundant. The systems installed shall not supply more than two adjoining treatment facilities.

PLUMBING FIXTURES AND RELATED EQUIPMENT

Selection Process

Meetings among the plumbing engineer, architect, and facility staff to discuss the general and specific requirements regarding the plumbing fixtures and related equipment usually are held after the architect has prepared the preliminary drawings. At these meetings, the plumbing designer should assist in the selection of plumbing fixtures. Following these sessions, the plumbing designer can prepare the preliminary drawings and coordinate the required piping systems and the plumbing fixture space requirements with the architect and facility staff. In detailing the piping system spaces and plumbing fixture locations, the plumbing engineer should refer to the framing drawings. It is common for the architect to locate the piping shafts and the spaces in direct conflict with the framing; it is the plumbing designer's responsibility to give the architect directions regarding the space requirements, fixture arrangements, and pipe shaft sizes and locations.

Following the meetings held with the architect and hospital staff and with the preliminary drawings available, the plumbing designer should prepare an outline specification for the plumbing fixtures and related equipment. A guide to the required plumbing fixtures and equipment for healthcare facilities is provided in Table 2-1 and is discussed later in this section.

A review of applicable code requirements regarding the quality and types of plumbing fixtures is always required. In addition to the local codes, it is necessary for the plumbing engineer to refer to the special hospital code requirements published by the local hospital authorities, state hospital or health department authorities, The Joint Commission, and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. The architect may investigate these special requirements; however, the plumbing designer must be familiar with them since they contain many other applicable requirements (in addition to the table indicating the plumbing fixtures necessary for a particular installation).

General Requirements

Plumbing fixtures in healthcare facilities should be of dense, impervious materials having smooth surfaces. Plumbing fixtures of vitreous china, enameled cast iron, and stainless steel are commonly used. Fixture brass—including faucets, traps, strainers, escutcheons, stops, and supplies—should be chromium plated in a manner approved by the administrative authority. Die-cast metals should not be used. Faucets should have a laminar flow device (no alternative) of brass, Monel metal, or stainless steel trim. Each plumbing fixture in a healthcare facility should be provided with individual stop valves. Each water service main, branch main, and riser shall have valves. Access shall be provided at all valves. All submerged inlets, faucets with hose adapters, and flush valves must be equipped with approved vacuum breakers. Backflow prevention devices shall be installed on hose bibbs and supply nozzles used for the connection of hoses or tubing and at other locations where the potable water supply must be protected from contamination.

All plumbing fixtures, faucets, piping, solder, and fluxes used in potential drinking water areas should comply with the latest maximum lead content regulations. Facilities for the physically challenged shall be in compliance with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) accessibility guidelines.

Fixtures for General Use in Staff and Public Areas

Water Closets

Vitreous china, siphon-jet water closets with an elongated bowl design and open-front seat, less cover, should be specified. Wall-hung water closets are preferred for easy cleaning; however, floor-set models are also acceptable by most local jurisdictions. All water closets should be operated by water-saver flush valves.

Lavatories and Sinks

Vitreous china, enameled cast iron, or stainless steel lavatories and sinks should be specified. The most commonly specified size is $20 \times 18 \times 7.5$ inches ($508 \times 457.2 \times 190.5$ mm) deep. Hands-free (foot or knee) controls are generally employed for staff use and for scrub-up sinks. In public areas, codes should be checked for the requirement for self-closing valves and/or metered valves. Stops should be provided for all supply lines. Aerators are not permitted; laminar flow devices shall be used instead. Insulated and/or offset p-traps should be used for handicapped fixtures.

Faucets

Valves should be operable without hands (i.e., with wrist blades, foot controls, or electronically). If wrist blades are used, blade handles used by the medical and nursing staff, patients, and food handlers shall not exceed 4.5 inches (114.3 mm) in length. Handles on scrub sinks and clinical sinks shall be at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) long. Water spigots used in lavatories and sinks shall have clearances adequate to avoid contaminating utensils and the contents of carafes, etc.

Urinals

Vitreous china wall-hung urinals with flush valves shall be specified. Flush valves should be equipped with stops and may be of the exposed or concealed design.

Public/Staff Restrooms			٠	٠																							
Staff Lounge																											
Patient Rooms			\bullet	\bullet																	\bullet						
Isolation Rooms			\bullet	\bullet																	\bullet						
Nurse Stations																											
Nursery			\bullet																								
Formula Room			\bullet																								
Intensive Care Room			\bullet																								
Outpatient-Services Area			\bullet		\bullet																						
Emergency Rooms					\bullet																						
Exam/Treatment Room																											
Labor Room			\bullet	\bullet																							
Janitor's Closet			\bullet																								
Clean Linen Holding																											
Soiled Linen Holding																											
Nourishment Station			\bullet																				\bullet				
Patient Bathing Area			\bullet	\bullet											\bullet												
Critical Care Area			\bullet												\bullet						\bullet						
Pharmacy																											
Surgical Scrub-up										\bullet																	
Anesthesia Workroom																											
Surgical Supply Services																											
Surgical Cleanup Room																											
Doctors' Locker Room																											
Nurses' Locker Room			\bullet	\bullet																							
Recovery Room			\bullet																		\bullet						
Fracture Room			\bullet										\bullet														
Cleanup/Utility Room			\bullet																								
Sub-sterilizing Room																											
Medical Laboratory		\bullet	\bullet		\bullet									\bullet	\bullet		\bullet	\bullet									
Physical Therapy Room			\bullet												\bullet					\bullet				\bullet			
Cystoscopic Room			\bullet	\bullet																							
Autopsy Room			\bullet	\bullet																							
Dietary Services			\bullet									\bullet															
Laundry Facility			\bullet												\bullet												
Family Waiting Room			\bullet		\bullet																						
	alve																										
	ongated Water Closet, Flush V	rinal	andwashing Lavatory	10Wer	rinking Fountain/Water Cooler	op Service Basin	ounter Sink, Single Compartment	ounter Sink, Double Compartment	inic Sink, Flushing Rim	crub-up Sink	tility Sink	nk, Triple Compartment	aster Sink, Plaster Trap	up Sink	oor Drain	oor Drain, Flushing Rim	nergency Shower	nergency Eyewash	athtub/Shower	tz Bath	edpan Washer	aste Grinder	e Maker	rm/Leg Bath	imersion Bath	ass Washer	fant Bathtub
	Ш	5	Ha	Sh	a	ž	<u>ප</u>	ដ	5	S	1 H	Sil	Ë	5	Ĕ	ШШ	E	E	Ba	Sit	Be	Š	ŭ	Ar	<u></u>	5	T

 Table 2-1
 Recommended Plumbing Fixtures and Related Equipment

Showers

The shower enclosure and floor specified by the plumbing engineer may be constructed of masonry and tile or prefabricated fiberglass. Showers and tubs shall have nonslip walking surfaces. The shower valve should automatically compensate for variations in the water supply pressure and temperature to deliver the discharge water at a set temperature that will prevent scalding.

Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers

Drinking fountains are available in vitreous china, steel, and stainless steel. Units for exterior installations are available in suitable materials. Refrigerated water coolers are available in steel and stainless steel. All of these materials are acceptable by most local administrative authorities. These units may be of the surface-mounted, semi-recessed, or fully recessed design.

Chilled water for drinking purposes should be provided between 45 and 50°F (7.2 and 10°C) and obtained by a refrigeration compressor, which may be enclosed in a cabinet with the dispenser (water cooler), installed in a wall cavity behind a grill adjacent to the dispenser, or remotely located for single or multiple dispensers. A remotely installed unit for multiple dispensers (central system) should have a recirculation system.

Mop-service Basins

Floor-mounted mop-service basins can be obtained in precast or molded-stone (terrazzo) units of various sizes. The plumbing engineer should specify the most suitable model. Rim guards typically are provided to protect the rims from damage, and wall guards are provided to protect walls from splashing and chemical stains. The water supply fixture is usually a twohandle mixing faucet mounted on the wall with a wall brace, vacuum breaker, and hose adapter.

Floor Drains

Floor drains in toilet rooms are optional in most cases; however, in many instances floor drains are required by the applicable codes. The plumbing designer should consider maintaining a trap seal in the floor drain through the use of deep-seal p-traps and/ or trap primers. Floor drains shall not be installed in operating and delivery rooms.

Fixtures for Patient and Treatment Rooms

Patient Rooms

These rooms (private or semiprivate) usually are provided with a toilet room containing a water closet, lavatory, and shower or bathtub. (Some hospitals use common shower and bath facilities for a group of patient rooms.) The plumbing fixtures should conform with the following recommendations:

- The water closet should be vitreous china, wall hung or floor mounted, with an elongated bowl. All water closets should be operated by a flush valve. Water closets should have openfront seats, less cover. Bedpan lugs and bedpan washers often are required by the local codes. Bedpan-flushing devices shall be provided in each inpatient toilet room; however, installation is optional in psychiatric and alcohol-abuse units where patients are ambulatory.
- The lavatory should be a minimum of $20 \times 18 \times 7.5$ inches ($508 \times 457.2 \times 190.5$ mm) deep. Lavatories should be installed at least 34 inches (863.6 mm) above the floor. Mixing faucets should be of the gooseneck-spout design and provided with wrist-blade handles or electronic or hands-free controls.
- The shower is usually constructed of masonry and tile, acrylics, or fiberglass. The shower base should be a nonslip surface. The shower valve should automatically compensate for variations in the water supply pressure and temperature to deliver the discharge water at a set temperature that will prevent scalding. Grab bars located within the shower enclosure are usually required by local codes. The plumbing engineer should always check with the local administrative authority regarding approved designs.
- Bathtubs can be constructed of cast iron, fiberglass, acrylics, or steel. Faucets should be as they are for showers. Showerheads may be of the stationary design, but in many locations handheld showerheads are required.
- A lavatory intended for use by doctors, nurses, and other hospital staff is sometimes required by local ordinances. This particular lavatory is usually located on the wall near the door with a gooseneck spout and hands-free controls.
- A water closet and lavatory, with a fixed or foldaway water closet made of stainless steel, may be considered. This concept, as well as the construction of the unit, must be accepted by the administrative authority.

Ward Rooms

Ward rooms are infrequently found in healthcare facilities, particularly in the private hospital field. These rooms require at least one lavatory, which should be a minimum 20×18 inches (508×457.2 mm) and be made of vitreous china or stainless steel. The faucet should be of the gooseneck-spout design and be provided with wrist-blade handles or hands-free controls.

Nurseries

A hospital's nursery is usually provided with a 20×18 -inch (508×457.2 -mm) minimum lavatory with hands-free controls and a high gooseneck spout. An

infant's bathtub, wall- or counter-mounted with an integral large drain board and rinsing basin, is provided. The water supply fitting is a filler spout over the basin with separate hand-valve controls. The spout and the spray are usually supplied and controlled through a thermostatic mixing valve. Use a separate supply tank to ensure a safe water temperature.

Intensive Care Rooms

These rooms usually have utility sinks with handsfree controls and high gooseneck spouts. A water supply fitting equipped with a gooseneck spout and a provision for bedpan washing (either at an immediately adjacent water closet or at a separate bedpan-washing station within an enclosure in the room) should be provided. Newer designs include combination lavatory/water closets for patient use, especially in cardiac care units.

Emergency (Triage) Rooms

The plumbing fixtures provided in emergency rooms include a utility sink with an integral tray and a water supply fitting with a gooseneck spout and wrist-blade handles. A vitreous china clinic sink (or a flushing-rim sink) for the disposal of solids, with the water supply fitting consisting of a flush valve and a separate combination faucet with vacuum breaker mounted on the wall above the plumbing fixture, also should be provided.

Examination and Treatment Rooms

These rooms are usually provided with vitreous china or stainless steel lavatories. The water supply fitting should be a hands-free valve equipped with a high, rigid gooseneck spout. For a particular examination room or a group of patient rooms, an adjacent toilet room is provided containing a specimen-type water closet for inserting a specimen-collecting bedpan. The toilet room also requires a lavatory and a water supply with wrist-blade handles or hands-free controls and a gooseneck spout.

Physical Therapy Treatment Rooms

The plumbing fixtures and related equipment for these rooms usually include hydrotherapy immersion baths and leg, hip, and arm baths. These units are generally furnished with electric motor-driven whirlpool equipment. The water is introduced into the stainless steel tank enclosure by means of a thermostatic control valve to prevent scalding, usually wall mounted adjacent to the bath for operation by a hospital attendant. The water supply should be sized to minimize tub fill time. Immersion baths typically are provided with overhead hoists and canvas slings to help lift a completely immobile patient in and out of the bath. A hydrotherapy shower also is sometimes required. These showers usually consist of multiple showerheads, sometimes as many as 12 to 16, vertically mounted to direct the streams of water at a standing patient by means of a sophisticated control console operated by a hospital attendant.

Cystoscopic Rooms

Among the various plumbing fixtures required in cystoscopic rooms are wall-mounted clinic sinks equipped with flush valves, bedpan washer, and combination faucets; lavatories provided with water supply fittings and gooseneck spouts; and, in an adjacent room, specimen water closet and lavatory. If a floor drain is installed in a cystoscopy room, it shall contain a non-splash, horizontal-flow flushing bowl beneath the drain plate.

Autopsy Rooms

The autopsy room table is usually provided with cold and hot water supplies, with a vacuum breaker or backflow preventer, and a waste line. The plumbing designer must consult with the table manufacturer and the administrative authority regarding the requirements of the autopsy room table. Drain systems for autopsy tables shall be designed to positively avoid splatter and overflow onto floors or back-siphonage and for easy cleaning and trap flushing. The autopsy room also is usually equipped with a stainless steel or vitreous china sink with hands-free fittings, a clinic sink, and a blood-type floor drain. A water closet and shower room are usually provided adjacent to the autopsy room. Many autopsy rooms are equipped with waste disposal units integral with the sink.

Nourishment Stations

These stations are usually provided on each patient room floor near the nurse station for serving nourishment between regularly scheduled meals. A sink, equipped for hand washing with hands-free controls, an ice maker, and a hot water dispenser (optional) to provide for the patient's service and treatment should be provided.

Pharmacy and Drug Rooms

The plumbing fixtures for these rooms include medicine and solution sinks. These units can be counter-type or made of stainless steel or vitreous china with a mixing faucet and a swing spout. A solids interceptor should be considered for compounding areas.

Operating Room Areas

No plumbing fixtures or floor drains are required in the hospital's operating room. However, the scrubbing station located adjacent to the operating room should have at least two scrub sinks, usually made of vitreous china or stainless steel, furnished with hands-free water supply fittings, and equipped with gooseneck spouts. These sinks should be sufficiently large and deep to allow scrubbing of hands and arms to the elbow. A soiled workroom, designed for the exclusive use of the hospital's surgical staff, should be located near the operating room area. This workroom should contain a vitreous china, flushing-rim clinical sink for the disposal of solids, with the water supply fittings consisting of a flush valve bedpan washer and a separate faucet mounted on the wall above the fixture, as well as handwashing facilities consisting of a vitreous china or stainless steel lavatory with a gooseneck spout and equipped with wrist-blade handles. Substerile rooms should be equipped with an instrument sterilizer and general-purpose sink. The plumbing designer should consult with the instrument sterilizer manufacturer for any special requirements for the equipment. The general-purpose sink can be countertop mounted and equipped with a hands-free water supply fitting with a gooseneck spout.

Recovery Rooms

The rooms for the post-anesthesia recovery of surgical patients should include a handwashing facility, such as a vitreous china or stainless steel lavatory equipped with a gooseneck spout and wrist-blade handles, as well as a vitreous china, flushing-rim clinical sink for the disposal of solids, with the water supply fitting consisting of a flush valve and a separate faucet mounted on the wall above the fixture with a vacuum breaker. A bedpan washer also should be installed next to the clinical sink. The type of bedpan washer depends on the hospital's method of washing and sterilizing bedpans.

Birthing Rooms

Each birthing room should include a vitreous china lavatory provided with a gooseneck spout and wristblade handles or hands-free controls. Each labor room should have access to a water closet and lavatory. A shower should be provided for labor room patients. The shower controls, including pressure and thermostatic mixing valves, should be located outside the wet area for use by the hospital's nursing staff. A water closet should be accessible to the shower facility.

Anesthesia Workrooms

These areas are designed for the cleaning, testing, and storing of anesthesia equipment and should contain a counter-mounted work sink, usually made of stainless steel. The faucet should be of the gooseneck spout design with wrist-blade handles and/or hands-free controls.

Fracture Rooms

A large-size, vitreous china plaster work sink equipped with a combination water supply fitting and wrist-blade handles, gooseneck spout, and plaster trap on the waste line (located for convenient access) should be provided.

Dialysis Treatment Rooms

These areas are designated for administering patient dialysis. They should include sinks with wrist-blade

handles, water supply and drainage connection points for dialysis machines, and pure water equipment with circulated supply piping to points designated by the department staff.

Fixtures for Kitchens and Laundries

The plumbing designer should consult with the architect and the food service consultant for kitchen equipment utility requirements. Typically, one of these people should provide locations and roughin drawings for all kitchen equipment. Normally required are toilet fixtures for kitchen staff, food preparation sinks, handwash sinks, pot- and pan-wash sinks, dishwashers, glassware washers, floor drains, hose bibbs, mixing stations, and grease interceptors. Kitchen grease traps shall be located and arranged to permit easy access without entering food preparation or storage areas. Grease traps shall be of the capacity required and shall be accessible from outside the building without interrupting any services. In dietary areas, floor drains and/or floor sinks shall be of a type that can be easily cleaned by the removal of a cover. Provide floor drains or floor sinks at all wet equipment (such as ice machines) and as required for the wet cleaning of floors. The location of floor drains and floor sinks shall be coordinated to avoid situations where the equipment makes the removal of covers for cleaning difficult. Also, the kitchen equipment may require other utility services, such as fuel gas, steam, and condensate.

When considering laundry facilities, the plumbing designer should consult with the architect and the laundry consultant for equipment utility requirements. These facilities require large-capacity washers/ extractors and dryers, presses, and folding machines. Wastewater drainage may require lint intercepters. These facilities are prime candidates for heat- and water-recovery systems. Also, the laundry equipment may require other utility services, such as fuel gas, steam, and condensate.

The hot water temperatures required for these areas (100, 140, and 180°F [38, 60, and 82°C]) are discussed in *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 6: "Domestic Water Heating Systems."

Decontamination Area Fixtures

The fixtures usually provided in these areas include a shower compartment with a floor drain and sediment bucket and a large showerhead with an integral flexible hose and vacuum breaker, allowing water to be sprayed onto any part of a patient on a stretcher. A utility sink and a lavatory are usually required, both having a gooseneck spout and wrist-blade handles. A toilet is usually provided. The shower and all fixtures shall drain to a hazardous materials tank completely separate from the facility system. This tank and its

lan lan			lumbing								
	F	ixture Uni	ts	gpm (L/sec)	gph (L/h)					
	Total	Cold	Hot	Total	Cold						
	Water	Water	Water	Water	Water	Hot Water					
Aspirator, fluid suction	2	2		3 (.19)							
Aspirator, laboratory	2	2		3 (.19)							
Autopsy table, complete	4	3	2	8 (.50)	41/2 (.28)	20(75.7)					
Autopsy table, aspirator	2	2		3 (.19)							
Autopsy table, flushing hose	2	2	—	3 (.19)		—					
Autopsy table, flushing rim	3	3		41/2 (.28)		—					
Autopsy table, sink and faucet	3	21/2	21/2	41/2 (.28)	4½ (.28)	20 (75.7)					
Autopsy table, waste disposal	11/2	11/2		4 (.25)		—					
Bath, arm	4	2	3	3 (.19)	7 (.44)	35 (132.5)					
Bath, emergency	4	2	3	3 (.19)	7 (.44)	15 (56.8)					
Bath, immersion	20	7	15	15 (.95)	35 (2.21)	450 (1,703.3)					
Bath, leg	10	4	7	8 (.50)	16 (1.01)	100 (378.5)					
Bath, sitz	4	2	3	3 (.19)	7 (.44)	30 (113.6)					
Bed pan, washer, steam	10	10		25 (1.58)							
Cleaner, sonic	3	2 ½	2 ½	4½ (.28)	4½ (.28)	20 (75.7)					
Cuspidor, dental and surgical	1	1	—	2 (.13)	—	—					
Cuspidor, dental chair	1	1	—	2 (.13)	_	—					
Drinking fountain	1	1	—	2 (.13)	_	—					
Floor drain, flushing type	10	10	—	25 (1.58)		—					
Hose, bed pan general	2	11/2	11/2	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	5 (18.9)					
Hose, bed pan private	1	1	1	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	8 (30.3)					
Laundry tub	3	2 ½	2 ½	41/2 (.28)	41/2 (.28)	30 (113.6)					
Lavatory, barber	2	11/2	11/2	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	15 (56.8)					
Lavatory, dental	1	1	1	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	8 (30.3)					
Lavatory, general	2	1½	11/2	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	8 (30.3)					
Lavatory, private	1	1	1	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	4 (15.1)					
Lavatory, nursery	2	1½	11/2	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	8 (30.3)					
Lavatory, scrub-up	2	11/2	11/2	3 (.19)	3 (.19)	10 (37.9)					
Lavatory, treatment	1	1	1	3(.19)	3 (.19)	4 (15.1)					
Microscope, electron	1	1		0.2 (.01)							
Sanistan	10	10		25 (1.58)							
Sanitizer, boiling, instrument	2		2		3 (.19)	10 (37.9)					
Sanitizer boiling utensil	2		2		3(19)	10 (37 9)					
Shower general	4	2	3	11/2 (09)	31/2 (22)	50 (189.3)					
Shower private	2	1	2	11/2 (.00)	31/2 (.22)	20 (75 7)					
Shower obstetrical	4	2	3	11/2 (.00)	31/2 (.22)	50 (189 3)					
Shower therapeutic	15	6	11	15(05)	35 (2 21)	400 (1 514)					
Sink barium	3	21/2	2 1/2	/1/6 (28)	11/2 (28)	15 (56 8)					
Sink, clean up room	3	2/2 21/2	2/2 21/2	<u>41/2(.20)</u>	41/2 (.20)	15 (56.8)					
Sink, ciedil-up room	2	2/2 21/2	2/2 21/2	4/2(.20)	4/2(.20)	15 (56.8)					
Sink, central suppry	10	10	2/2	25 (1 50)	2(10)	10 (27 0)					
Sink, clinical had non head	10	10	3	25 (1.30)	3(.19)	10(37.9)					
Sink, Cillical, Deu parl Hose	10	10	4	Z3(1.30)	4/2(.20)	10(00.0)					
	4	3	3	4/2(.20)	4/2(.20)	20(75.7)					
Sink, formula room	4	3	3	41/2 (.28)	41/2 (.28)	20(75.7)					
Sink, CUP	1	11/	11/	3(.19)	2/10						
Silik, laboratory	2	1 1/2	11/2	う(.19) 「(.00)	3(.19)	5(18.9)					
Sink, laboratory and trough	3	Z ¹ /2	11/2	5(.32)	3(.19)	5(18.9)					
Sink, pharmacy	2	1 1/2	1 1 1/2	3(.19)	3 (.19)	5(18.9)					
Sink, plaster	4	3	3	4½(.28)	41⁄2(.28)	15 (56.8)					

 Table 2-2
 Hospital Plumbing Fixtures

contents shall be able to be tested for contamination and then emptied into a hazardous materials disposal truck. A washdown hose bibb for the area shall be provided. This area shall have a special entrance directly accessible from the outside.

Unique Fixtures

Fixture-unit values for the unique fixtures found in healthcare facilities can be found in Table 2-2.

Fixtures for Laboratory Rooms

Laboratory Sinks

Most of the time, the architect provides the countertops and sinks, usually made of epoxy or other acid-resistant materials, in their specifications. However, the plumbing designer occasionally is responsible for selecting the laboratory sinks. Laboratory sinks should be acid resistant and can be of stainless steel, stone, or plastic. Laboratory and cup sinks are currently available in epoxy resin, composition stone, natural stone, ceramic or vitreous china, polyester fiberglass, plastic, stainless steel, and lead. The lead type is not recommended where mercury, nitric, hydrochloric, or acetic acids are used.

Often, these laboratory sinks are furnished with the laboratory equipment as rectangular sinks or cup sinks mounted in, or as part of, countertops and as cup sinks in fume hoods. Rules of thumb that can be used when the sink sizes are not recommended by the laboratory staff are as follows:

- Sinks with a compartment size of $12 \times 16 \times 7.5$ inches ($304.8 \times 406.4 \times 190.5$ mm) for general laboratory work areas
- Sinks with a compartment size of $18 \times 24 \times 10$ inches (457.2×609.6×254 mm) for classroom work and tests
- Sinks with a compartment size of $24 \times 36 \times 12$ inches ($609 \times 914.4 \times 304.8$ mm) for washing large equipment

The sink itself and sink outlet should be chemically resistant, a minimum of 316 stainless steel, and so designed that a stopper or an overflow can be inserted and removed easily. The outlet should be removable and have a strainer to intercept any materials that might cause a stoppage in the line. Unless an industrial water system is employed that isolates the laboratory water systems from the potable water system via a central backflow prevention device, all faucets should be provided with vacuum breakers. Supply fittings for distilled or deionized water are usually either virgin plastic or tin-lined and, where central systems are used, should be able to withstand higher pressures. Many fitting types, especially PVC, can handle pressures up to but not exceeding 50 psig (344.74 kPa). In these cases, pressure regulation is required.

Cup Sinks

These are small $(3 \times 6, 3 \times 9, \text{ or } 3 \times 11 \text{ inches} [76.2 \times 152.4, 76.2 \times 228.6, \text{ or } 76.6 \times 279.4 \text{ mm}])$ oval sinks for receiving chemicals, normally from a condensate or a supply line. They are designed to fit into the center section between tabletops, against a wall, or on raised back ledges. These sinks are also common in fume hoods.

Laboratory Glass Washers

These are usually included, either furnished by the laboratory equipment supplier or selected by the plumbing designer. Automatic washers are available. In addition to waste or indirect waste services, these units require hot water (usually 140°F [60°C] boosted to 180°F [82°C]) internal to the unit, distilled or deionized water, and compressed air. Manual-type glass bottle and tube washers also may be required in these rooms. Tube washers may have manifold-type supply fittings using cold water only. The manifolds can be fitted with a number of individually serrated tip outlets provided with separate controls and vacuum breakers.

Emergency Showers

These should be included throughout and located in adjacent corridors or at door exits. The showers must be accessible, require no more than 10 seconds to reach, and be within a travel distance of no greater than 100 feet (30.5 m) from the hazard rooms. The showerhead is a deluge type with a 1-inch (25.4-mm) nominal cold water stay-open design with a supply valve operated by a hanging pull rod, a chain and pull ring, or a pull chain secured to the wall. The latest edition of ANSI Z358.1: *Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment* and local codes should be consulted. A tempered water supply is required. A floor drain may be provided, if required. If floor drains are provided, trap primers should be incorporated.

Eyewash and Face Wash Fountains

Wash fountains also are required. These are wallor counter-mounted units with a foot-pedal or wrist-blade-operated water supply fixture; double side-mounted, full-face wash outlets; or deck-mounted, handheld (with hose) face and body-spray units. ANSI Z358.1 and local codes should be consulted. A tempered water supply is required.

Laboratory Service Outlets

Outlets for air, nitrogen, vacuum, and other required gas services may be furnished as part of the related equipment under another contract or may be included in the plumbing work. In either case, the plumbing designer should be knowledgeable about the various types of service outlets currently available, the materials (or construction), and the usage (diversity). It is desirable to use bodies of cast red brass, brass forgings, or brass bar stock that are specially designed for laboratory use and, where possible, made by one manufacturer. Handles should be made of forged brass and provided with screw-in, color-coded index discs. All outlets should be properly labeled. Serrated tips should be machined from solid stock or forgings. The service fittings should be chrome plated over nickel plating or copper plating. The outlets in fume hoods should have an acid- and solvent-resistant plastic coating over the chrome-plated surface or be made of acid-resistant materials. Nonmetallic fittings are also available.

Special Equipment

The plumbing engineer should always consult with the equipment manufacturer's authorized representative and the local administrative authority to determine equipment requirements and acceptability under the jurisdiction's applicable codes during the preliminary design. Some example special equipment requirements are as follows:

- Dialysis machines require a funnel drain or floor sink and cold water hose bibb with a vacuum breaker.
- Heart-and-lung machines also require a funneltype drain. If the apparatus is located in the operating room, an indirect waste is required.
- Electron microscopes require filtered, backflowprotected cold water or circulated chilled water.
- Stills for producing distilled water require cold water with a vacuum breaker and floor sinks or funnel drains.
- Sterilizers require an acid-resistant floor sink or funnel drains, a backflow-protected water supply, and sometimes steam and condensate connections.
- Film-processing (x-ray) areas require an acidresistant floor sink or funnel drains for indirect waste and a hot, cold, and/or tempered water supply operating between 40 and 90°F (4.4 and 32.2°C). Drain piping for any photo-developing equipment should not be brass or copper. Polypropylene, high-silica, cast iron, corrosion-resistant piping and drains should be used. Silver recovery and neutralization may be required; consult with the local authority.
- Dental areas should include console services (water, air, medical gas, nitrous oxide, and waste). For oral surgery, a separate surgical vacuum system should be provided.

ACID WASTE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

In addition to the conventional sanitary drainage systems (those found in most buildings), special sanitary drainage systems may be required in healthcare facilities.

If possible, drainage piping shall not be installed within the ceiling or exposed in operating or delivery rooms, nurseries, food-preparation centers, foodserving facilities, food-storage areas, central services, electronic data-processing areas, electric closets, and other sensitive areas. Where exposed, overhead drain piping in these areas is unavoidable. Special provisions shall be made to protect the space below from leakage, condensation, or dust particles.

Acid waste drainage systems require special design criteria because the corrosive solutions demand special handling from the actual work area to an approved point at which such acid waste (and fumes) can be safely neutralized and discharged. The plumbing engineer must exercise extreme care in this regard.

Acid-resistant waste and vent systems are necessary where acids with a pH lower than 6.5 or alkalis with a pH greater than 8.5 are present. These special conditions are commonly encountered in hospitals, research facilities, and laboratories. Since acid fumes are often more corrosive than the liquid acids themselves, proper drainage and venting are imperative.

Nationally recognized standards for sanitary systems that handle acid wastes and other reagents are set forth in the model plumbing codes, and such systems often are further regulated by local building and safety or health department requirements. For these reasons, the plumbing engineer should check for all special design conditions that may affect the project.

Strong acids and caustics may enter the sanitary waste system in large quantities and at elevated temperatures. These substances can mix to form highly corrosive and even dangerous compounds. Common laboratory procedures encourage neutralization or flushing with copious amounts of water to dilute and cool these chemicals to more acceptable levels. However, the plumbing engineer must protect the acid waste system by designing for the maximum hazard conditions that might be brought about by any human error, poor housekeeping, or accidental spillage.

Corrosive Waste System Materials

Borosilicate Glass Pipe

Sizes range from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 6 inches (40 to 150 mm). Beneficial properties include a mechanical joint, flame resistance, easy visual inspection, and high corrosion resistance.

High-silicon Cast Iron

Sizes range from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 inches (40 to 100 mm). Beneficial properties include a mechanical joint, flame resistance, and high corrosion resistance. It acts as a fire stop at floor penetrations equal to cast iron, but it is more fragile and heavier than standard-weight cast iron and easier to break in the field. It is an excellent choice for moderate- to high-budget projects.

Polypropylene

Sizes range from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 6 inches (40 to 150 mm). It comes with mechanical or heat-fusion joints. Mechani-

cal joints are not recommended for straight runs or sizes more than 2 inches (50 mm), but they should be used to access p-traps or other maintenance areas. Polypropylene is flame resistant and acceptable within most jurisdictions (meets 25/50 flame/smoke criteria). Newer Underwriters Laboratories (UL)-listed options are similar to glass in cost. Consult the local authority for approval. Polypropylene is lightweight and easy to install and is a good choice for moderate acids at low temperatures; however, it must be installed by qualified technicians. It is inexpensive compared to borosilicate glass and high-silicone cast iron.

Double-containment Waste Piping

With ever-increasing pressure to protect our environment, double-containment (pipe within a pipe) systems have become a strong consideration. Such piping is usually made of polypropylene inside and PVC or fiberglass outside. Systems should be pitched toward a containment vault for the collection of leaking fluid.

Alarm Systems

These can be employed to detect leaks at the collection basin, or if the budget and the nature of the liquid allow, sensors can be installed between the pipe walls that can pinpoint the original leak location. The latter could reduce the amount of excavation or exploration required to find a leak.

Discharge to Sewers

Many local jurisdictions require the building's sanitary sewer discharge to be at an acceptable pH level before it can be admitted into a sanitary sewage system. In such cases, it is recommended that a clarifying (or neutralizing) tank be added to the sanitary system. Small ceramic or polypropylene clarifiers with limestone can be located under casework for low flow rates; however, sufficient space must be allowed above the unit for servicing. Unless properly maintained and monitored, this type of system can be rendered ineffective. Large clarifiers and neutralizers may be



Figure 2-1 Acid-neutralizing Tank Detail



Figure 2-2 Acid Waste Solids Interceptor Detail

regulated by the requirements of a local industrial waste department.

Acidic Waste Neutralization

Lower pH values mean higher concentrations of acid, and discharging high concentrations of acid into a public sewer may cause considerable corrosion of piping systems and eventual failure. Most local authorities do not allow acid wastes to be discharged to a public sewer without some form of treatment.

The neutralization of acidic wastes is generally and most economically dealt with through an acidneutralization tank, which may be constructed of polyethylene, molded stone, stainless steel, or another acid-resistant material. Tanks are sized to provide a dwell time of two to three hours (refer to Table 2-3). Limestone or marble chips fill the interior of the tank, helping neutralize incoming acid wastes. Chips may be 1 to 3 inches (25.4 to 76.2 mm) in diameter and should have a calcium carbonate content in excess of 90 percent. A discharge pH sensor and routine maintenance schedule must be provided to ensure that the system operates properly. An example of a neutralization tank is depicted in Figure 2-1.

Table 2-3	Acidic Waste
Neutralization	Tank Sizing Table

Number of Lab Sinks	Tank Size, gal (L)							
2	5 (18.9)							
4	15 (56.8)							
8	30 (113.6)							
16	55 (208.2)							
22	75 (283.9)							
27	90 (340.7)							
30	108 (408.8)							
40	150 (567.8)							
50	175 (662.4)							
60	200 (757.0)							
75	275 (1,040.9)							
110	360 (1,362.6)							
150	500 (1,898.5)							
175	550 (2,081.8)							
200	650 (2,460.3)							
300	1200 (4,542)							
500	2000 (7,570)							
600	3000 (11,355)							

Note: For commercial and industrial laboratories, the number of lab sinks should be multiplied by a 0.5 use factor.



Figure 2-3 Sampling Manhole

Acid Waste Solids Interceptor

As with many sewer systems, it is impossible to control all materials discarded to the drain system. Unless building effluent is controlled, many unwanted items, such as glass fragments and needles, will find their way into the neutralization tank, thereby clogging the limestone or marble chips.

When this happens, replacement of the chips is required. One way to prolong chip life is to install an acid waste solids interceptor immediately upstream of the neutralization tank, as shown in Figure 2-2, although maintenance of the interceptor may have to be done quite frequently.

Acid Waste Metering Detail

Many local authorities require some means of sampling effluent from industrial, institutional, and laboratory buildings. An example of a device used for this purpose is a sampling manhole, depicted in Figure 2-3. This unit is installed as the last component before neutralized acidic wastes or treated industrial wastes are discharged to a public sewer. There are as many types of sampling point requirements as there are municipal sewer authorities. Consult local code authorities for individual requirements.

Traps for Laboratory Sinks

The trap is recognized by most plumbing engineers as the weakest link in the acid waste system. The trap must be acid resistant. If strong acids and solvents collect in an ordinary trap, failure of the system will occur. Three types of acid waste traps are currently in common use: p-traps, drum traps, and centrifugal drum traps. (Running and s-traps are not allowed by many local plumbing codes because of the potential for trap siphoning.) P-traps maintain a water seal to keep the acid fumes from reentering the work area. Drum traps provide a greater water seal and are frequently used to separate either precious metals or other matter before they enter the drainage system to become lost or cause a stoppage in the sink. Drum traps with removable bottoms should be installed high enough above the floor for servicing. P-traps, including some of the simple drum traps, can easily be back-siphoned if the head pressures are extreme. Centrifugal drum traps are designed to prevent backsiphonage conditions.

Laboratory Waste and Vent Piping

The sizing of under-table waste and vent piping, as determined by the local plumbing codes, should be suitable for the installation and allow for future expansion. Approved corrosion-resistant piping should be used for vent piping, since acid fumes are highly corrosive. Space is often limited under tables and in vent areas, and the space-saving features of mechanical joint piping have proven to be useful in many installations. (Note: When fusion-joint, plastic piping systems are used, mechanical joints should be installed at traps and trap arms for maintenance reasons.)

Special island (or loop) venting is frequently used when cabinets or work tables are located in the center of the laboratory area.

The transporting of acid waste, above and below the ground, must be done in approved, corrosionresistant piping (acceptable to the local administrative authority) and continued to a suitable point where neutralization can occur or where sufficient water or chemicals can be introduced to bring the pH level of the solution to an acceptable level. Acids below a pH of 6.5 normally are not permitted into the sanitary sewage system or into surrounding soil, which would pollute (or degenerate) the local ground water. High-silicon cast iron with hub-and-spigot joints may be caulked with Teflon, or neoprene gaskets may be used for sealing. This type of joint allows flexibility and, when properly supported, is particularly recommended on the horizontal runs where the expansion and contraction of pipe from heated chemicals can cause leaking. Plumbing codes require proper bed preparation and careful backfilling on all belowground piping, particularly plastic piping.

The plumbing engineer should check the manufacturer's recommendations to evaluate the severity of the chemicals to be used. A listing of the common chemicals and how these substances react with the various materials must be considered by the designer.

WATER SUPPLY SYSTEMS

A domestic water supply of adequate flow volume and pressure must be provided for all plumbing fixtures and related equipment. Systems typically encountered in healthcare facilities are as follows:

- Potable water systems
 - a. Cold water
 - b. Hot water (at various temperatures)
 - c. Chilled water
 - d. Controlled-temperature (tempered) water
 - e. Hot water recirculation
- Nonpotable water systems
- Pure water systems
 - a. Distilled water
 - b. Deionized (or demineralized) water
 - c. Reverse osmosis

Healthcare facilities should have dual domestic water services installed to ensure the provision of an uninterrupted supply of water. The design should consider water-conservation provisions. Many local jurisdictions have strict water-conservation laws in effect. Water recycling may be a consideration for use in landscaping, etc., depending on local code and health department regulations. (For more information, see *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 2: "On-site Wastewater Reuse and Storm Water Harvesting.")

Water supply through a tank (suction or gravity type) should be considered by the plumbing engineer when the water supply source may be subjected to unusual demands, pressure fluctuations, and/or interruptions that will cause a sudden excessive draw and pressure loss on the main system. The tank will act as a buffer. Inadequate flow and pressure require the design of a water storage tank and/or a booster pump for the water supply system. Excessive pressure fluctuations are highly undesirable in medical research laboratories. When such facilities are supplied from street pressure systems, the engineer may provide pressure-reducing valves on the branch lines or a gravity tank system.

The use of diversity factors for sizing the water systems must be carefully analyzed by the designer. Medical school laboratory classrooms have higher rates of simultaneous use than most research laboratories. Emergency rooms, outpatient treatment rooms, and operating room wash-up areas also have high rates of simultaneous use.

Extreme care must be taken to protect the potable water supply from contamination (cross-connection). When an industrial (nonpotable) system is not present, the engineer should specify the appropriate type of vacuum breakers (necessary for each fixture below the rim connection), hose-end outlet, and an aspirator or other serrated-tip laboratory outlet, whether they are required by local plumbing regulations or not. The vacuum breakers provided for fume hood outlets should be located outside the hood. Built-in (or integral) vacuum breakers are preferred to the hose-end units.

Potable Water Systems

Cold water should be provided at all required locations. Hot water should be generated with the most economical heating medium available.

With today's technology, several reliable methods can be applied to produce and store domestic hot water. Refer to ASPE's *Domestic Water Heating Design Manual* and *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 6: "Domestic Water Heating Systems" for in-depth explanations of design methods for hot water systems and a discussion of the various hot water systems available. When large dump loads are anticipated (for kitchens and laundries), storage of hot water is recommended. Hot water usage in patient care areas requires consideration of water temperature and bacterial growth. The most common waterborne bacterium of concern is Legionella pneumophila.

Recommended water temperatures for specific applications are as follows:

- Patient care and hospital general usage requires water temperatures between 105 and 120°F (40.5 and 49°C), except where the local plumbing codes or other regulations require other maximum temperatures. Hot water distribution systems serving patient care areas shall be under constant recirculation to provide continuous hot water at each hot water outlet. The temperature of hot water for bathing fixtures and handwash lavatories shall be appropriate for comfortable use, but shall not exceed 120°F (49°C).
- Kitchen general usage requires 140°F (60°C) to fixtures, except the dishwasher's sanitizing cycle. The sanitizing cycle requires 180 to 190°F (82 to 88°C) to the dishwasher, with 180°F (82°C) minimum required at the dish rack. (Consult local health department regulations.) Also, some health departments set a maximum temperature of 105 to 120°F (40.5 to 49°C) for handwashing lavatories.
- Laundry facilities should be supplied with two water temperatures: 140°F (60°C) for general usage and 160°F (71°C) minimum to washers/ extractors for laundry sterilization.

Providing a point-of-use booster heater for hightemperature applications instead of a central water heater system is often more economical.

A closed system of chilled water may be required for the cooling of electron microscopes and x-ray tubes and should be of a recirculating design.

Film processors operate at a normal range of 40 to 30° F (4.4 to -1.1°C). Some models require controlled water temperature for film processing. Depending on the quality of the water supply, a 5- to 75-micron filter may be required.

A thermometer should also be provided on the outlets of water heaters and thermostatically controlled valves. A pressure regulator, gauge, and flow meter may also be desired on the inlet side of pressuresensitive equipment.

Nonpotable Water Systems

Nonpotable water systems are usually employed in areas having multiple water requirements that could contaminate the potable water supply. Areas in this category include flushing-rim floor drains in animal rooms, all outlets in autopsy rooms, outlets in isolation rooms, and all outlets in infectious disease and tissue culture rooms. These systems normally use reduced-pressure backflow preventers as the means to protect the potable water system. Hot water, when required, may be provided by a separate generator supplied from the nonpotable water system.

Pure Water Systems

"Pure water" is the term generally used to describe water that is free from particulate matters, minerals (soluble ions), bacteria, pyrogens, organic matters, and dissolved gases, which frequently exist in the potable water supply. Pure water systems are usually required in the hospital's pharmacy, central supply room, laboratories, and laboratory glassware-washing facilities.

Two basic types of pure water are available in hospital facilities: biopure water (water containing no bugs or other life forms) and high-purity water (pure water that is free from minerals, dissolved gases, and most particulate matters). Refer to *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 11: "Water Treatment, Conditioning, and Purification" for additional information on water purity.

Water purity is most easily measured as specific resistance (in ohm-centimeter [Ω -cm] units) or expressed as parts per million (ppm) of an ionized salt (NaCl). The theoretical maximum specific resistance of pure water is given as 18.3 M Ω -cm at 77°F (25°C). This water purity is difficult to produce, store, and distribute, as it is starved for impurities and constantly attempts to absorb contaminants. It is important to note that the specific resistance of pure water is indicative only of its mineral contents and in no way shows the level of bacterial, pyrogenic, or organic contamination. An independent laboratory analysis should be made whenever possible.

Purification Methods

The five basic methods of producing pure water are as follows: distillation, demineralization, reverse osmosis, filtration, and recirculation. Depending on the type of pure water required in the facility, one (or more) of these methods will be needed. Under certain conditions, a combination of several methods may be necessary.

Distillation This method produces biopure water, which is completely free of particulate matters, minerals, organics, bacteria, pyrogens, and most of the dissolved gases and has a minimum specific

resistance of $300,000 \Omega$. An important consideration in this case is that the water is free from bacteria and pyrogen contamination, which is dangerous to patients, particularly where intravenous solutions are concerned. Biopure water is needed in the hospital's pharmacy, central supply room, and other areas where patient contact may occur. Biopure water may also be desired in certain specific laboratories at the owner's request and as a final rinse in the laboratory's glassware washer.

The typical water distillation apparatus consists of an evaporator section, an internal baffle system, a water-cooled condenser, and a storage tank. The best material for its construction is a pure block-tin coating for both the still and the tank. The heat sources, in order of preference based on economy and maintenance, are as follows: steam, gas, and electricity. The still may be operated manually or automatically. The distilled water may be distributed from the storage tank by gravity or by a pump. A drain is required for system drainage and flushing. On stills larger than 50 gallons per hour (gph) (189.3 L/h), a cooling tower should be considered for the condenser water.

Demineralization Sometimes called deionization, demineralization produces high-purity water that is completely free of minerals, most particulate matters, and dissolved gases. Depending on the equipment used, it can have a specific resistance ranging from 50,000 Ω to nearly 18 M Ω . However, it could be contaminated with bacteria, pyrogens, and organics. (These contaminants may be produced inside the demineralizer itself.) Demineralized water can be employed in most laboratories, the laboratory's glass-washing facilities (as a final rinse), and as the pretreatment for still feedwater.

The typical demineralizer apparatus consists of either a two-bed deionizing unit (with a resistivity range of 50,000 Ω to 1 M Ω) or a mixed-bed deionizing unit (with a resistivity range of 1 to 18 M Ω). The columns are of an inert material filled with a synthetic resin, which removes the minerals by an ionization process. Since the unit operates on pressure, a storage tank is not required or recommended (as bacteria will grow in it). A demineralizer must be chemically regenerated periodically, and during that regeneration time no pure water is produced. If a continuous supply of pure water is needed, a backup unit should be considered by the engineer, as the regeneration process takes several hours. The regeneration process can be done manually or automatically. An atmospheric, chemical-resistant drain is required. High-flow water is required for backwash during the regeneration.

Reverse Osmosis (RO) Reverse osmosis produces a high-purity water that does not have the high resistivity of demineralized water and is not biopure. Under certain conditions, an RO process can offer economic

advantages over demineralized water. In areas that have high mineral contents, an RO process can be used as a pretreatment for a demineralizer or a still.

Several types of reverse osmosis units are currently available. Units consist of a semipermeable membrane, in either a roll form or a tube containing numerous hollow fibers. The water is then forced through the semipermeable membrane under high pressure. A drain is required with these systems.

Note: Chlorine must be removed from the water, or it will destroy the RO membrane.

Filtration Various types of filters are currently available to remove particulate matters from the water as a pretreatment. Depending on the type of filter, a drain may be required. Bacteria may be eliminated through ultraviolet sterilization.

Recirculation High-purity systems should be provided with a circulation loop. Dead-end legs should be avoided whenever possible or limited to 50 inches (1.52 m). System design velocity should be between 4 and 7 feet per second (fps) (1.22 and 2.13 m/s) to discourage bacteria accumulation and to provide transport back to an ultraviolet sterilizer and filtration for removal.

Pure Water Piping Systems

Water treatment system components are selected to remove various impurities from the influent water. Connecting various system components involves the use of interconnecting piping. The use of this piping should not add any such impurity back into the treated water.

Selection of piping system materials is determined by the application intended, availability of the material, and cost of the material. Pure water applications, such as exist in the healthcare industry, can be very sensitive to the piping methods selected.

General pure water piping requirements include the following:

- Use inert materials to avoid leaching contaminants into the water.
- Use clean joining methods; avoid solvents, lubricants, and crevices.
- Materials must not erode or flake off particles.
- Materials should not enhance microorganism growth.
- Materials should be smooth, free of cracks and crevices, and nonporous.
- Avoid dead legs—system should have continuous flow through the piping.
- Provide chemical cleaning connections.
- Install (slope) with future cleaning and disinfection in mind.

A wide variety of piping materials are available on the market today. Their properties and cost cover a wide range. Common pure water materials include the following:
- Stainless steel, various grades (304L and 316L)
- Aluminum
- Tin-lined copper
- Glass or glass-lined pipe
- PVC or CPVC (polyvinyl chloride or chlorinated polyvinyl chloride)
- Polypropylene
- Polyethylene
- ABS (acrylonitrile butadiene styrene)
- PVDF (polyvinylidene fluoride)

Metal Pipe Aluminum, tin-lined copper, and stainless steel pipe all have been used in pure water treatment systems. Tin-lined pipe was once the material of choice in ultra-pure water systems. However, it leaches tin and eventually copper into the process fluid. Methods of joining tin-lined pipe can also create non-smooth joints with crevices.

Aluminum pipe has also been used in pure water systems. Pure water creates an oxide layer inside the pipe that continually erodes, producing particles and aluminum in the water.

Stainless steel has been used extensively in highpurity water systems. It can be joined with threads, butt welded, flanged, or manufactured with sanitarytype connection ends. Because it can use sanitary joints and can handle steam sterilizing, the sanitarytype connection method has been used in many pharmaceutical applications. However, experience has shown that even the best grades of stainless steel with the best joints still leach material from the metal that can cause problems in critical water systems.

Glass or Glass-lined Pipe Glass piping has been used in some special laboratory applications, but because it is fragile and leaches material into the water, it is not generally considered applicable for high-purity water systems.

PVC PVC pipe has been used on equipment and in piping systems successfully for many years. However, advances in technology, especially in electronics, have now raised questions about the true purity or inertness of PVC.

PVC pipe contains color pigments, plasticizers, stabilizers, and antioxidants that all can leach out of the plastic and into ultra-pure water. Remember that 18,000,000-Ω quality water is highly aggressive. When PVC pipe is made (extruded), bubbles of air exist, some of which are covered over with a thin film of PVC on the interior walls of the pipe. As the pipe ages, these thin coverings wear away, exposing small holes that then serve as debris-collecting or microorganism-breeding sites, not to mention the contribution of PVC particles and the potential release of organic dispersants, stabilizers, etc., originally trapped in these bubbles (holes).

Joints, either solvent welded or threaded, can leave crevices for the accumulation of particles and bacteria. Solvents from the weld can leach into the water. Premium grades of PVC, which reportedly have fewer leachables than standard PVC, are now being marketed.

CPVC is a special high-temperature PVC that has similar erosion and leachable characteristics.

Polypropylene Polypropylene is a very inert, strong piping material. However, in the manufacture of the pipe, antioxidants and other additives are used to control embrittlement. These additives are potential sources of contaminants that can leach into the water. However, a virgin material with no leachable products is now available.

Polypropylene pipe shows good ability to withstand both corrosive chemicals and high temperatures, up to 220° F (104°C). The natural toughness of the material minimizes damage to the pipe during installation and service.

Polypropylene is generally joined by the buttfusion method, resulting in smooth joints.

ABS Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe has been used in the primary stages of water treatment systems because of its relatively low cost and ease of installation.

ABS has some of the same contamination leach problems as PVC. In its manufacture, pigment dispersants, surfactants, styrene, and other additives are used that can leach into water over time. Hydrogen peroxide (used for system cleaning) will attack ABS plastic.

PVDF Numerous types of high-molecular-weight fluorocarbon pipes are on the market—SYGEF, Kynar, and Halar, to name a few. PVDF plastic can be extruded without the use of additives that can leach out. The different polymerization techniques used by each manufacturer can produce slightly different properties.

PVDF pipe is currently considered to be the state of the art in pure water piping systems. It has exceptional chemical resistance, temperature range (-40 to 320° F [-40 to 160° C]), impact strength, resistance to UV degradation, and abrasion resistance and smooth, clean, inside surfaces that discourage the collection of bacteria and particles. Most laboratory test reports show virtually zero leachables from PVDF piping systems.

PVDF pipe is joined by the butt-fusion method, resulting in clean, smooth joints.

When system pressures exceed 70 psig (482.6 kPa) or temperatures exceed 75°F (24°C), plastic piping system manufacturers should be consulted for compatibility. Polypropylene or PVDF-lined metal piping systems may be incorporated to meet pressures up to 150 psig (1034.2 kPa).

MEDICAL GAS AND VACUUM SYSTEMS

Healthcare is in a constant state of change, which forces the plumbing engineer to keep up with new technologies to provide innovative approaches to the design of medical gas systems. In designing medical gas and vacuum systems, the goal is to provide a safe and sufficient flow at the required pressure to the medical gas outlet or inlet terminals served. System design and layout should allow convenient access by the medical staff to outlet and inlet terminals, valves, and equipment during patient care or emergencies.

This section focuses on the design parameters and current standards required for the design of nonflammable medical gas and vacuum systems used in therapeutic and anesthetic care. The plumbing engineer must determine the needs of the healthcare staff. Try to work closely with the medical staff to seek answers to the following fundamental design questions at the start of a project:

- How many outlets and inlets are requested?
- How many outlets and inlets are required?
- Based on current conditions, how often is each outlet or inlet used?
- Based on current conditions, what is the average duration of use for each outlet or inlet?
- What is the proper usage (diversity) factor to be used?

Medical Gas System Design Checklist

As any hospital facility must be specially designed to meet the applicable local code requirements and the healthcare needs of the community it serves, the medical gas and vacuum piping systems also must be designed to meet the specific requirements of each hospital.

Following are the essential steps to a well-designed and functional medical gas piped system, which are recommended to the plumbing engineer.

- 1. Analyze each specific area of the healthcare facility to determine the following items:
 - Which piped medical gas systems are required?
 - How many of each different type of medical gas outlet and inlet terminal are required?
 - Where should the outlet and inlet terminals be located for maximum efficiency and convenience?
 - Which type and style of outlet and inlet terminal best meet the needs of the medical staff?
- 2. Anticipate any building expansion and in which direction the expansion will take place (vertically or horizontally). Determine how the medical gas system should be sized and valved to accommodate the future expansion.
- 3. Determine locations for the various medical gas supply sources:
 - Bulk oxygen (O₂)

- High-pressure cylinder manifolds (O $_2$, N $_2$ O, or N $_2)$
- Vacuum pumps (VAC)
- Medical air compressors (MA)
- 4. Prepare the schematic piping layout locating the following:
 - Zone valves
 - Isolation valves
 - Master alarms
 - Area alarms
- 5. Calculate the anticipated peak demand for each medical gas system. Appropriately size each particular section to avoid exceeding the maximum pressure drops allowed.
- 6. Size and select the various medical gas and vacuum supply equipment that will handle the peak demand for each system, including future expansions. If this project is an addition to an existing facility, determine the following:
 - What medical gases are currently provided and what are the locations and number of the stations?
 - Can the current gas supplier (or the hospital's purchasing department) furnish the consumption records?
 - Are the capacities of the existing medical gas supply systems adequate to handle the additional demand?
 - Are any existing systems valved that could be used for an extension? Are the existing pipe sizes adequate to handle the anticipated additional loads?
 - What type of equipment is in use and who is the manufacturer? Is this equipment state of the art?
 - Is it feasible to manifold the new and existing equipment?
 - What is the physical condition of the existing equipment?
 - Is adequate space available for the new medical gas supply systems and related equipment at the existing location?
 - Is existing equipment scheduled to be replaced? (A maintenance history of the existing equipment may help in this determination.)

Number of Stations

The first step is to locate and count the outlets and inlets, often called stations, for each respective medical gas system. This is usually done by consulting a program prepared by the facility planner or architect. This program is a list of all the rooms and areas in the facility and the services that are required in each. If a program has not been prepared, the floor plans for the proposed facility shall be used. No code specifically mandates the exact number of stations that must be provided in various areas or rooms for all healthcare facilities. In fact, there is no clear consensus of opinion among medical authorities or design professionals as to how many stations are actually required in the facility areas. Guidelines are published by the American Institute of Architects (AIA), National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), and American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE) that recommend the minimum number of stations for various services in specific areas.

The most often used recommendations for determining the number of stations for hospitals are those necessary to be accredited by The Joint Commission. Accreditation is required for Medicare and Medicaid compensation. The Joint Commission publishes a manual that refers to the AIA guidelines for the minimum number of stations for oxygen, medical air, and vacuum that must be installed to obtain accreditation. If this is a factor for the facility, these requirements are mandatory. Other jurisdictions, such as state or local authorities, may require plans to be approved by local health or building officials. These approvals may require adhering to the state or local requirements and/or NFPA 99: *Standard for Healthcare Facilities*.

If accreditation or the approval of authorities is not a factor, the number and area of locations of stations are not mandated. The actual count will depend on requirements determined by each individual facility or another member of the design team using both past experience and anticipated future use, often using the guideline recommendations as a starting point. Table 2-4 provides these recommendations.

Medical Gas Flow Rates

Each station must provide a minimum flow rate for the proper functioning of connected equipment under design and emergency conditions. The flow rates and diversity factors vary for individual stations in each system depending on the total number of outlets and the type of care provided.

The flow rate from the total number of outlets, without regard for any diversity, is called the total connected load. If the total connected load were used for sizing purposes, the result would be a vastly oversized system, since not all of the stations in the facility will be used at the same time. A diversity, or simultaneous-use factor, is used to allow for the fact that not all of the stations will be used at once. It is used to reduce the system flow rate in conjunction with the total connected load for sizing mains and branch piping to all parts of the distribution system. This factor varies for different areas throughout any facility. The estimated flow rate and diversity factors for various systems, area stations, and pieces of equipment are found in Tables 2-5, 2-6, and 2-7. Total demand for medical gas systems varies as a function of time of day, month, patient care requirements, and facility type. The number of stations needed for patient care is subjective and cannot be qualified based on physical measurements. Knowing the types of patient care and/or authority requirements will allow placement of stations in usage groups. These groups can establish demand and simultaneous-use factors (diversities), which are used in the calculation for sizing a particular system. All medical gas piping systems must be clearly identified using an approved color-coding system similar to that shown in Table 2-8.

Medical Gas System Dispensing Equipment

Medical Gas Outlet and Inlet Terminals

Most manufacturers of medical gas system equipment offer various types of medical gas outlets. These medical gas outlets are available in various gas orders (e.g., O_2 -N₂O-air), center-line spacing, and for exposed and concealed mountings. Outlet types and configurations must meet the requirements of the local jurisdictional authority and NFPA 99. All outlets must be properly identified and confirmed. Care should also be taken to accurately coordinate the various pieces of medical gas-dispensing equipment with the architect and medical staff involved in the project. If the project is a renovation, the outlet types should match existing equipment. With prefabricated patient headwall units, the medical gas outlets are generally furnished by the equipment manufacturer, and it is very important to maintain coordination to avoid unnecessary duplication of work. Over-the-bed medical gas service consoles are often specified in the electrical or equipment section of the specification, and medical gas service outlets are specified, furnished, and installed under the mechanical contract.

Gas outlet sequence, center-line spacing, and multiple gang-service outlets are some of the considerations to be taken into account when requesting information from the various equipment manufacturers. It is more practical, in terms of both the cost of the equipment and the installation, to specify and select the manufacturer's standard outlets. Details and specifications regarding the individual standard outlets are usually available from all manufacturers upon request.

The existing outlets are compatible with the adapters found on the hospital's anesthesia machines, flow meters, vacuum regulators, etc. Care should be taken to make sure all future expansions in the same facility have compatible equipment.

Patient Headwall Systems

A recent and growing trend in hospital construction is the requirement for patient headwall systems,

		16 2-4	inite				
Room	02	VAC	N ₂ O	Air	N ₂	EVAC	Typical Uses
Anesthesia workroom	1	1	а	1			Equipment repair testing
Animal oper. (research surgery)	1	1	а				Animal anesthesia and surgery
Animal research lab	1	1		1			Routine animal care
Autopsy	1	1					Suction waste materials from body
Bed holding	1	1					Cardiac arrest, O_2 therapy
Biochemistry	b	1		1			Standard lab use ^a
Biochem. lab	b	1		1			Standard lab use ^a
Biophysics/biochemical	b	1		1			Standard lab use ^a
Blood processing		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Blood receiving (blood donors)	1	1		1			Emergency use
Cardiac catheterization room	1	2					Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Chem analysis lab (sm. lab in hosp.)		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Chemical lab		1		1			Standard lab use ^a
Cystoscopy	1	3				1	Emergency use
Decontamination room (attached	1	1		1			Equipment testilna
to inhalation therapy dept.)							
Deep therapy	1	2					Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Demonstration room (in-service	1	1					Demo equip to new empl & students
training)	.	·					
Dental repair	1	1		1	b		Power drills (dental)
Dispensary (minor surgery first aid	а	-		а			Emergency use
student health & exams)							
Far-nose-throat exam	1	1		1			Aspiration: topical spray
ECG (electrocardiogram)	1	1		1			Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
EEC (electrocaldiograms)	1	1					Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Electron microscony	1	1		1			Standard Jah uso ^a
	1	2		1			Cardian arrest and other emergencies
Emergency room	1	1		1			Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Eivid (electromyogram)	1	1		1			Drive air toole and voouum clooping
Examination room	1	1		1			Drive air tools and vacuum cleaning
Exam room and proctoscopic	b			1			Chardiac arrest and other emergencies
	1						Standard lab use
Eye examination							Stock and cardiac arrest
Fluoroscopy (x-ray)	1	2		4			Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Heart catheterization lab	1	1		1			Cardiac arrest and other emerg. respir.
Hematology	1	1		1			Standard lab use
Intensive-care areas	2	3		1			For critically ill
Isolation (infectious & contagious	1	1		1			Patient care
diseases)							
Isolation room (patient room for	1	2		1			Oral, gastric or thoracic
contagious diseases)							
Lab annex		1		1			Pull waste evac. tubing drying apparatus
Lab cleanup area		1		1			Drying glassware
Lab—workroom		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Labor rooms—0.B.	1	1	a				Analgesia, patient care
Linear accelerator vault	1	1		1			
Microbiology		1		1			Standard lab use ^a
Microbiology lab—constant		1		1	Ь		Standard lab use ^a
temp room							
Multi-service room	1	1					Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Neurological pharmacy teaching lab	1		1				Standard lab use [®]
Neurological physiology teaching lab	1	1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Nursery (full-term)	1	2		1			Incubators, respirators
Nursing floor	1	2		1			Therapy, oral, gastric; IPPB, aerosols
Nursing, security (psychiatric violent	1	1		1			Patient care
patients use lock box)							
Observation	1	1					Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Obstetrics (delivery room)	1	3	а		1		Analgesia, anesthesia, patient care
Operating room (surgery-maior	2	3	1	1	а	1	Patient care
and minor	-						
Oral lab (dental)	а	1	а	1	а		Standard lab use [®]
Orthopedic exam room	1	1				1	Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Pathology (Drs. office special		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
lab tests)		.					

 Table 2-4
 Inlet/Outlet Station Data

Room	0 ₂	VAC	N ₂ 0	Air	N ₂	EVAC	Typical Uses
Patient room	1	1		1			Patient care
Pharma. room (drug prep.)		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Physiology lab—general	1	1		1			Standard lab use [®] plus teaching
Premature nursery and obs.	2	1		1			Incubators—respirators
Radiation, low-level (x-ray dept.)	1	2		1			Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Radio-chemical lab		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Radioisotope, high level (x-ray dept.)	1	2		1			Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Radioisotope room (research		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
room for animal lab)							
Recovery beds	2	3		1			2 thoracic, 1 oral, 1 gastric or wound
Recovery room—private (same as	1	3		1			Note: Need 1 more VAC for thoracic
regular recovery)							
Respiratory therapy	1	1		1			For out-patient treatments IPPB
Scanning room (part x-ray)	1	2					Cardiac arrest and other emergencies
Serology		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Sterilization (CS or OR)	1	1		1			Equipment testing
Surgical preparation room	1	1		1			Pre-medication for anesthesia
Teaching lab	1	1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Treatment room	1	1		1			Special therapy
Urinalysis		1		1			Standard lab use [®]
Standard x-ray rooms	1	2		1			Cardiac arrest and other emergencies

Table 2-4	Inlet/Outlet Station Data (continued	I)

Source: Information furnished courtesy of Puritan-Bennett, modified by ASPE.

a One outlet per area.

b Consult owner for number and location.

	Free Air Design Flow, scfm (L/min) Simultaneo					
Area	per Room	per Bed	per Outlet	Use Factor (%)		
Anesthetizing locations [®]						
Special surgery	0.5(15)	_	_	100		
Major surgery	0.5(15)		_	100		
Minor surgery	0.5(15)		_	75		
Emergency surgery	0.5(15)		_	50		
Radiology	0.5 (15)		_	25		
Cardiac catheterization	0.5 (15)	_	_	50		
Acute Care locations						
Recovery room	_	2 (60)	_	50		
ICU/CCU	_	2 (60)	_	50		
Emergency room	_	2 (60)	_	50		
Neonatal ICU	_	1.5 (40)	_	75		
Dialysis unit	_		0.5 (15)	10		
Sub-acute Care locations						
Nursery	—	—	0.5 (15)	25		
Patient rooms	_	0.5(15)		10		
Exam & treatment	1 (30)		_	10		
Pre-op holding			1.5 (40)	10		
Respiratory care	_	1 (30)	_	50		
Pulmonary function lab	_	_	1 (30)	50		
Other						
Anesthesia workroom	1.5 (40)	_	_	10		
Respirator-care workroom	1.5(40)			10		
Nursery workroom	1.5 (40)			10		
Equipment repair			1.5 (40)	10		

Table 2-5 Medical Air Peak Demand Chart

*These design flows are based on the use of air in the patient breathing circuit only. If air is to be used to power equipment such as an anesthesia ventilator, the design flow should be increased accordingly.

		-				
		Free Air Allowance, cfm (L/ min) at 1 atmosphere		Zone Allowances— Corridors, Risers, Main Supply Line, Valves		
				Simultaneous	Air to Be	
Location of I	Medical/Surgical			Usage Factor	Transported	
Vacuu	ım Outlets	Per Room	Per Outlet	(%)	cfm (L/min) ^ª	
Operating rooms:						
Major "A" (Ra	adical, open heart;	3.5 (100)	—	100	3.5 (100)	
orç	an transplant; radical					
tho	pracic)					
Major "B" (A	ll other major ORs)	2.0 (60)		100	2.0 (60)	
Minor	-	1.0 (30)		100	1.0 (30)	
Delivery rooms		1.0 (30)		100	1.0 (30)	
Recovery room (p	ost anesthesia)					
and intensive-care	e units (a minimum					
of 2 outlets per be	ed in each such					
department):						
1st outlet at ea	ich bed	_	3 (85)	50	1.5 (40)	
2nd outlet at ea	ach bed	_	1.0 (30)	50	0.5 (15)	
3rd outlet at ea	ich bed	_	1.0 (30)	10	0.1 (3)	
All others at ea	ich bed	_	1.0 (30)	10	0.1 (3)	
Emergency rooms	6	_	1.0 (30)	100	1.0 (30)	
Patient rooms:						
Surgical			1.0 (30)	50	0.5 (15)	
Medical			1.0 (30)	10	0.1 (3)	
Nurseries			1.0 (30)	10	0.1 (3)	
Treatment & exan	nining rooms		0.5 (15)	10	0.05(1)	
Autopsy			2.0 (60)	20	0.04(1)	
Inhalation therapy	r, central supply &		1.0 (30)	10	0.1 (3)	
instructional areas	S					

 Table 2-6
 Outlet Rating Chart for Medical Vacuum Piping Systems

[°] Free air at 1 atmosphere.

 Table 2-7
 Medical Vacuum Peak Demand Chart (Medical/Surgical Vacuum System)

	Free Air De	sign Flow, s	cfm (L/min)	Simultaneous
				Usage Factor
Area	per Room	per Bed	per Outlet	(%)
Anesthetizing locations:				
Specialized surgeries (open heart, organ	4 (115)		1.5 (40)	100
transplant, etc.)				
Major operating rooms	3.5 (100)			100
Cystoscopy	2 (60)			100
Delivery room	1 (30)			100
Emergency operating room	3 (85)			100
Other anesthetizing areas (minor 0.R.,	1 (30)			50
orthopedic O.R., cardiac catheterization,				
radiology, induction rooms, etc.)				
Waste anesthetic gas evacuation	2 (60)			100
Acute care (non-anesthetizing locations):				
Post-operative recovery room		3 (85)		50
0.B. recovery room		2 (60)		50
Intensive care units (except cardiac)		2 (60)		75
Emergency room		1 (30)		100
Cardiac intensive care		2 (60)	—	50
Neonatal I.C.U.		1 (30)		50
Sub-acute patient care areas:				
Normal nursery			1 (30)	10
Premature nursery		1 (30)		20
Labor/birthing		1 (30)		10
Patient room (surgical)		1.5 (40)		50
Patient room (medical)		1 (30)		10
Exam & treatment rooms			1 (30)	10
Other areas:			-	
Autopsy			2 (60)	20
Central supply			1.5 (40)	10
Respiratory care department			1.5 (40)	5
Equipment repair, calibration, and teaching			1.5 (40)	10
Medical lab			1 (30)	10

Gas Intended for Medical Use	United States Color	Canada Color		
Oxygen	Green	Green on white [®]		
Carbon dioxide	Gray	Black on gray		
Nitrous oxide	Blue	Silver on blue		
Cyclopropane	Orange	Silver on orange		
Helium	Brown	Silver on brown		
Nitrogen	Black	Silver on black		
Air	Yellow*	White and black on black and white		
Vacuum	White Silver on yellow ^a			
Gas mixtures (other than mixtures of	Color marking of mixtures shall be a combination of colors			
oxygen and nitrogen)	corresponding to each component gas.			
Gas mixtures of oxygen and nitrogen				
19.5 to 23.5% oxygen	Yellow ^a	Black and white		
All other oxygen concentrations	Black and green	Pink		

Table 2-8 Color Coding for Piped Medical Gases

Source: Compressed Gas Association, Inc.

a Historically, white has been used in the United States and yellow has been used in Canada to identify vacuum systems. Therefore, it is recommended that white not be used in the United States and yellow not be used in Canada as a marking to identify containers for use with any medical gas. Other countries may have differing specific requirements.

which incorporate many services for the patient's care. These units may include the following:

- Medical gas outlets
- Electrical service outlets (including emergency power)
- Direct and indirect lighting
- Nurse call system
- Isolation transformers
- Grounding outlets
- Patient-monitoring receptacles
- Vacuum slide and IV brackets
- Nightlights
- Electrical switches

Bed locator units are also available, which serve to provide power for the more advanced patient beds, telephone, nightlight, and standard power. These units also function to protect the walls from damage as beds are moved and adjusted.

Headwalls currently vary in shape, size, type, and cost from a simple over-the-patient-bed standard configuration to elaborate total-wall units. Most manufacturers of medical gas equipment offer medical gas outlets for all types of patient consoles available in today's market. When specifying headwall outlets, the plumbing engineer should consider the following:

- Is the service outlet selected compatible with the existing outlet component?
- Does the patient headwall manufacturer include the type of medical gas outlets required as part of the product?

Special Types of Ceiling-mounted Medical Gas Outlets

In critical care areas, which are generally considered by most individuals to be those locations of the hospital providing a special treatment or service for the patient (such as surgery, recovery, coronary, or intensive care units), the designer's selection and placement of the medical gas service equipment must be done very carefully to provide efficient work centers around the patient for the medical staff.

Manufacturers of medical gas service equipment usually provide a wide range of equipment that is available for use in these areas. Depending on the customer's preference and the available budget, the equipment is selected to provide the necessary individual gas services and accessories.

Table 2-9 provides a quick reference guide for the engineer to use as a basis for selecting the commonly used types of outlet-dispensing equipment.

Example 2-1

The following example presents some of the most important critical care area equipment and options for the selection of the equipment.

Surgery medical gas services to be piped include:

- Oxygen
- Nitrous oxide
- Nitrogen
- Medical compressed air
- Vacuum
- Waste anesthetic gas disposal
- Carbon dioxide

Providing medical gas service outlets in the surgery room may be accomplished in several ways, such as the following:

• Ceiling outlets: Individual medical gas outlets are mounted in the ceiling with hose assemblies providing the medical staff with connections from the outlets to the administering apparatus. This method is considered to be the most economical means of providing an adequate gas service to surgery areas. The ceiling gas service outlets are generally located at both the head and the foot of the operating table to provide alternate positioning of the table.

- Surgical ceiling columns: Surgical ceiling columns are usually available in two designs: rigid (a predetermined length from the ceiling height above the floor) and retractable. Both types of surgical ceiling column provide medical gas services within an enclosure that projects down from the ceiling. The ceiling columns are usually located at opposite ends of the operating table to provide convenient access to the medical gas outlets by the anesthesiologist. In addition to the medical gas outlets, these ceiling columns can be equipped with electrical outlets, grounding receptacles, physiological monitor receptacles, and hooks for hanging intravenous solution bottles. Most manufacturers offering surgical ceiling columns allow for many variations in room arrangements of medical gas services and related accessories, depending on the specific customer's needs and the engineer's specifications. When specifying this type of equipment, it is necessary to carefully specify all medical gas service requirements and their desired arrangements. Also, the engineer must coordinate all other required services with the electrical engineer and medical staff.
- Surgical gas tracks: Surgical gas tracks are forms of ceiling outlet and hose-drop arrangements that allow the movement of the hose drops from one end of the operating table to the other on sliding tracks mounted on the ceiling. These products are currently available from various manufacturers,

and all provide the same basic services. The proper selection and specification of specific types are based on individual customer preference. Many variations in products and particular product applications are available in critical (intensive) care areas. Consultation with the appropriate manufacturers for recommendations is always advisable.

• Articulating ceiling-service centers: Articulated ceiling-service centers are moved by pneumatic drive systems and are designed for the convenient dispensing of medical gas and electrical services in operating rooms. The medical gas and electrical systems are complete for single-point connection to each outlet at the mounting support platform.

High-pressure Nitrogen-dispensing Equipment

Special consideration must be given by the plumbing engineer to the placement of the nitrogen outlets. The primary use of nitrogen gas in hospitals is for driving turbo-surgical instruments. Variations of these turbosurgical instruments, in both their manufacture and intended use, will require several different nitrogen gas pressure levels to be available. For this reason, it is necessary for the engineer to provide an adjustable pressure-regulating device near the nitrogen gas outlet. A nitrogen control panel is usually located on the wall (in the surgery room) opposite the operating

		Medical Gas Outlet Dispensing Equipment					
Hospital Areas	Wall- mounted Outlets	Patient Care Head Wall	Ceiling-mounted Outlets with Hose Stops	Rigid Ceiling Columns	Retractable Ceiling Columns	Ceiling with Gas Stacks	Nitrogen Control Cabinets
Autopsy rooms							
Delivery rooms							
Emergency examination and treatment rooms	•		•				
Emergency operating rooms							
Induction rooms							
Labor rooms							
Major surgery rooms			•		•		•
Minor surgery, cystoscopy			•				•
Neonatal intensive care units							
Normal nursery rooms							
Nursery workrooms							
0.B. recovery rooms		•					
Patient rooms							
Pediatric and youth intensive care unit			•				
Post-operative recovery rooms			•				
Premature and pediatric nursery rooms			•				
Pre-op holding rooms							
Radiology rooms							
Respiratory care unit							
Specialized surgeries (cardiac and neuro)							

Table 2-9 Types of Dispensing Equipment for Specific Areas

area sterile field. The installation should allow for the access and adjustment of pressure settings by a surgical nurse.

Piping from the nitrogen control panel to a surgical ceiling outlet will provide a convenient source of nitrogen for surgical tools. This will prevent hoses from being located on the floor or between the wall outlet and the operating table. Excess hose can be obstructive to the surgical team.

Medical Gas Storage

After deciding the medical gas services to be provided at the facility, the engineer should determine the storage capacity and the pipe sizing required and possible locations for the source. Local codes and references as well as the administrative authority having jurisdiction should be consulted for each medical gas system.

Because of the unique characteristics of each medical gas source, the gases are described separately in this section. Also, an explanation of the techniques currently employed to exhaust anesthetic gases is provided.

Figure 2-4 illustrates a typical layout of liquid oxygen, oxygen emergency reserve supply (equal to one day's supply), cylinder nitrous oxide supply, and cylinder nitrogen supply.

Oxygen

Several factors must be known when estimating the monthly consumption of oxygen in new or existing healthcare facilities:

- Type of medical care provided
- Number of oxygen outlets or number of patient beds
- Future expansion of facility
- Approximate consumption (in existing facilities)

Two methods can be used by the plumbing engineer to estimate the consumption of oxygen. The more accurate method is to obtain a detailed consumption record from the healthcare facility or monthly oxygen shipment invoices from the supplier. If inventory records are not available from the healthcare facility or the supplier, use consumption records from a comparably sized facility, with good judgment.

The second method is to apply the following rules of thumb to estimate the monthly supply of oxygen. This estimating method should be used with good judgment. Always coordinate estimated demand with the oxygen supplier during the design process.

- In non-acute care areas, allow 500 cubic feet (14 m³) per bed per month for supply and reserve oxygen storage.
- In acute care areas, allow 1,000 cubic feet (28 m³) per bed per month for supply and reserve oxygen storage.

Oxygen supply sources are divided into two categories: bulk oxygen systems and cylinder manifold supply systems. Bulk oxygen systems should be considered for healthcare facilities with an estimated monthly demand more than 35,000 cubic feet (991 m³) or equal to 70 oxygen outlets. Manifold systems are used in small general hospitals or clinics.

Bulk Oxygen Systems When selecting and placing bulk oxygen systems, several factors must be considered: oxygen transport truck size, truck access to bulk storage tanks, and NFPA 50: *Standard for Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites*. Bulk oxygen equipment, construction, installation, and location must comply with NFPA 50 recommendations. If liquid oxygen is spilled or leaked, an extreme fire or explosive hazard could occur. NFPA has design standards to minimize fire exposure to and from surrounding structures. The location of bulk oxygen storage tanks and equipment must be certain distances from specified structures and materials, as shown in Table 2-10.

Bulk storage systems consist of cryogenic tanks that store liquid oxygen at low pressures (225 psi [1,551.3 kPa] or less). Cryogenic tanks are ASME unfired, double-walled, vacuum-insulated pressure vessels. Liquid oxygen has a boiling point of -297.3°F (-182.9°C) and a liquid density of 71.27 pounds per cubic foot $(1,141.8 \text{ kg/cm}^3)$. When vaporized into gas, it produces 900 times its liquid volume. Furthermore, since the tank is changed less often, process stability is maximized, and the introduction of atmospheric impurities is reduced. Tank systems are furnished with an integral pressure-relief valve vented to the atmosphere should the liquid oxygen convert to a gas. Table 2-11 depicts currently available cryogenic tank capacities, and Figure 2-5 illustrates a typical bulk oxygen system schematic.

Most bulk oxygen storage systems are furnished with vaporizers. Vaporizers are banks of finned-tube heat exchangers that convert the liquid to its gaseous state. The vaporizers come in several sizes and styles, including atmospheric, powered (forced air, steam, and electric), waste heat, and hybrid. The selection of a vaporizer should be based on demand, intermittent or continuous usage, energy costs, and temperature zones. Poorly ventilated sites or undersized heat exchangers can cause ice to form on vaporizers during the conversion process, and excessive ice formations can clog and damage the vaporizer. Also, ice could allow extremely cold gas or the cryogenic liquid to enter the piped system; damage the valves, alarms, and medical components; and even injure patients. Automatic controls furnished with the tanks regulate the flow of liquid through the vaporizers. When there is a demand for oxygen, the supply system draws liquid from the bottom of the cryogenic storage tank through



Figure 2-4 Typical Layout of Liquid Oxygen, Oxygen Reserve Supply, Cylinder Nitrous Oxide Supply, and Cylinder Nitrogen Supply

Вик тапк	
Separation	
Distances, ft (m)	Item
1 (0.30)	Building structure (except wood frame)
5 (1.52)	Property line
10 (3.05)	Parked vehicles, sidewalk, structure openings
15 (4.57)	All classes of flammable and combustible liquids stored below ground. Class III B liquid, 1000 gal (3785 L) or less, above-ground storage.
25 (7.62)	Solid slow-burning material, coal, lumber, etc., underground tank vent or fill openings. Above- ground flammable and combustible liquids, 1000 gal (3785 L) or less, except Class III B liquids.
35 (10.67)	Clearance for ventilation one side.
50 (15.24)	Public assembly area, open or enclosed. Wood- frame structure. Non-ambulatory patient area.
75 (22.86)	Liquefied hydrogen storage above ground. Clearance for ventilation one side.
25 (7.62)	1000 gal (3785 L) liquefied gas or 25,000 ft ³ (700 m ³) non-liquefied gas.
50 (15.24)	Over 1000 gal (3785 L) of liquefied gas or over 25,000 ft ³ (700 m ³) of non-liquefied gas.

 Table 2-10
 Exterior Bulk Oxygen Storage Installation Criteria

Source: NFPA 50

DUT

the vaporizers, and then the gas moves through a final line regulator. Thus, a constant supply of oxygen at a regulated pressure is provided.

In case of mechanical difficulty or the depletion of the liquid oxygen supply, the reserve supply will begin to feed into the distribution system automatically. An alarm signal should alert appropriate hospital personnel when the liquid in the oxygen storage tank reaches a predetermined level. The alarm signals should indicate low liquid levels, reserve in use, and reserve low.

Cylinder Manifold Supply Systems Compressedoxygen systems are comprised of cylinder manifolds

that allow a primary supply source of oxygen cylinders to be in use and an equal number of oxygen cylinders to be connected as a reserve supply. The controls of the cylinder manifold will automatically shift the flow of the oxygen gas from the service side to the reserve side when the service side is depleted. Refer to Figure 2-6 for a typical oxygen manifold

Manifold systems can be located indoors or outdoors. When manifolds are located indoors, the engineer should observe the following:

- Location: Preferably, the manifold should be in a dedicated room on an outside wall near a loading dock and have adequate ventilation and service convenience. Air compressors and vacuum pumps shall be located separately from medical gas (i.e., oxygen and nitrous oxide cylinder storage enclosures).
- Adjacent areas: There should be no doors, vents, or other direct connections between the anesthetizing location or the storage location and any combustible agents. If locating near or adjacent to an elevated-temperature area is unavoidable, the engineer should specify sufficient insulation to prevent cylinder overheating.
- Fire rating: The fire-resistance rating of the room should be at least one hour.
- Ventilation: Outside ventilation is required. If the total amount of gas in a room exceeds 3,000 cubic feet, mechanical ventilation is required. Relief vents from manifolds shall be piped to the outside.
- Security: The room (or area) must be provided with a door or a gate that can be locked and labeled.

Oxygen manifolds are sized taking into consideration the following:

- Size of the cylinders (see Table 2-12 for a sizing chart)
- Hospital's usage of oxygen, in cubic feet (L) per month

Nitrous Oxide

The common source of nitrous oxide is a cylinder manifold system. High-pressure manifold systems

system schematic.

Table 2-11 Cryogenic Storage Tank Capacities
--

Gross Volume, gal (L)	Net Liquid Capacity, gal (L)	Capacity Oxygen, ft ³ (10 ⁶ L)	Approximate Weight Empty Vessel, Ib (kg)	Approximate Weight Vessel Loaded with Oxygen, Ib (kg)
330	314	36,200	4,000	7,000
(1249.1)	(1188.5)	(1.02)	(1816)	(3178)
575	535	61,500	5,800	10,900
(2176.4)	(2025)	(1.74)	(2633.2)	(4948.6)
975	920	105,700	9,300	18,100
(3690.4)	(3482.2)	(2.99)	(4222.2)	(8217.4)
1,625	1,533	176,100	10,400	25,000
(6150.6)	(5802.4)	(4.99)	(4721.6)	(11 350)
3,400	3,250	374,000	18,500	49,400
(1286.9)	(12 301.3)	(10.59)	(8399)	(22 427.6)
6,075	5,935	684,999	27,999	83,500
(22 993.9)	(22 463.9)	(19.40)	(12 711.5)	(37 909)
9,200	8,766	1,009,000	34,000	117,500
(34 822)	(33 179.3)	(28.57)	(15 436)	(53 345)
11,000	10,500	1,215,000	40,000	139,750
(41 635)	(39 742.5)	(34.41)	(18 160)	(63 446.5)

Note: Consult local supplier for available tank capacities.



consist of two banks of cylinders, primary and reserve. (See the discussion under "Oxygen" above.)

System demands for nitrous oxide can be more difficult to determine than they are for other medical gases. The number of surgeries scheduled, types and lengths of surgeries, and administering techniques used by the anesthesiologists cause extreme variations in the amount of nitrous oxide used. Because of this variation, consideration must be given to the size and selection of the nitrous oxide manifold system.

Avoid locating the nitrous oxide manifold system outdoors in areas with extremely cold climates. Nitrous oxide is supplied liquefied at its vapor pressure of 745 psi at 70°F (5,136.6 kPa at 21.1°C). At extremely cold temperatures, the cylinder pressure will drop dramatically to a point where it is impossible to maintain an adequate line pressure. This is due to a lack of heat for vaporization. For nitrous oxide manifolds located indoors, the same precautions previously listed for oxygen systems must be observed. Central supply systems for nitrous oxide and carbon dioxide using cylinders or portable containers shall be prevented from reaching temperatures lower than 20°F (-6.7°C) and higher than 130°F (54.4°C).

The following should be considered when selecting and sizing nitrous oxide manifolds and determining the number of cylinders required:

- Size of the cylinders (see Table 2-13)
- Number of anesthetizing locations or operating rooms

Provide one-half of one cylinder per operating room for in-service and reserve supplies.

Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide is now a common gas used in the operating room, and the same requirements for nitrous oxide manifolds and piping apply. System demand also is typically the same as nitrous oxide.

enyge.	- maintoido	
Hospital Usage	Duplex Ma	nifold Size
Cu. Ft. (10 ³ L) per month	Total Cylinders	Cylinders per Side
5,856 (165.8)	6	3
9,760 (276.4)	10	5
13,664 (386.9)	14	7
17,568 (497.5)	18	9
21,472 (608.0)	22	11
25,376 (718.6)	26	13
29,280 (829.1)	30	15
33,154 (938,8)	34	17

Table 2-12Selection Chart for
Oxygen Manifolds

Note: Based on use of 244 ft³ (6909.35 L) H-cylinders.



Figure 2-6 Typical Cylinder Supply System without Reserve Supply Schematic Note: Supply systems with different arrangements of valves and regulators are permissible if they provide equivalent safeguards (Level 1 gas system).

Medical Compressed Air

Medical/surgical low-pressure compressed air (at about 55 psig [379.2 kPa]) and high-pressure instrument air (at 200 psig [1,379 kPa]) are usually supplied from air compressors. In facilities that require less volume, a manifold system may be provided. The manifold systems for compressed air are similar in configuration to those for oxygen and nitrous oxide (see the discussion under "Oxygen" above). Air supplied from cylinders or that has been reconstituted from oxygen USP and nitrogen NF must comply, at a minimum, with Grade D in ANSI/CGA G-7.1: *Commodity Specification for Air*.

Medical compressed air produced by compressors may be defined as outside atmospheric air to which no contaminants (in the form of particulate matter, odors, oil vapors, or other gases) have been added by the compressor system. It must comply with NFPA 99 and/or the Canadian Standards Association's air-quality standards. Air compressed for medical-breathing purposes is to be used for this purpose only and should

Table 2-13 Sizing Chart for Nitrous Oxide Cylinder Manifolds

Number of	Duplex Manifold Size					
Operating	Ind	oor	Outdoor			
Rooms	Total Cylind Cylinders per S		Total Cylinders	Cylinders per Side		
4	4	2	4	2		
8	8	4	10	5		
10	10	5	12	5		
12	12	6	14	7		
16	16	8	20	10		

Note: Based on use of 489 ft³ (13.85 \times 10³ L) K-cylinders.

not be used for other applications or cross-connected with other compressed air systems.

Not every compressor is suitable for use as a source for medical compressed air in healthcare facilities. Only those compressor units specifically designed and manufactured for medical purposes should be considered as a reliable source of oil-free, moisture-free, and low-temperature compressed air. Three major types of medical air compressors are in the marketplace today: centrifugal, reciprocating, and rotary screw. The reciprocating and rotary screw are positive-displacement units, while the centrifugal compressor is a dynamic compressor. The medical air compressor shall be designed to prevent the introduction of contaminants or liquid into the pipeline by one of two methods: Type 1 air compressors eliminate oil anywhere in the compressor, while Type 2 air compressors separate the oil-containing section from the compression chamber. Examples of a Type 1 compressor are the liquid ring, rotary screw, and permanently sealed bearing compressor. Type 2 compressors have extended heads.

A positive-displacement compressor is rated in actual cubic feet per minute (acfm). This is the amount of air taken from atmospheric conditions that the unit will deliver at its discharge. Within a broad range, changes in inlet air temperature, pressure, and humidity do not change the acfm rating of either the reciprocating or the rotary screw compressor. The centrifugal compressor's capacity, however, is affected slightly by the inlet air conditions due to the nature of the compression process. For example, as the air temperature decreases, the capacity of the dynamic compressor will increase. The capacity of a centrifugal compressor is defined in inlet cubic feet per minute (icfm). In an effort to obtain an "apples to apples" comparison of various compressors, many

manufacturers specify their capacity requirements in standard cubic feet per minute (scfm). This sometimes causes much confusion because many people do not fully understand how to convert acfm or icfm to scfm (see Figure 2-7). The design engineer specifying scfm must define a typical inlet air condition at the building site and a set of standard conditions—typically 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute (psia) at 60°F (101.4 kPa at 15.6°C) and 0 percent relative humidity. The warmest normal condition often is specified because scfm decreases as the temperature increases.

In the case of a dynamic compressor, the icfm airflow at the given inlet conditions is inserted in place of the acfm in the formula. Another design issue that the engineer should be aware of is how altitude affects the output of the compressor. At altitudes above sea level, all medical air systems have reduced flow. In these cases, the required sizing will need to be adjusted to compensate. To do this, multiply the scfm requirements by the correction factor in Table 2-14. In other words, to correctly size the medical air system, apply the correction factor listed in Table 2-14 to the peak-calculated load (scfm) at sea level.

Example 2-2

A facility is located at 5,000 feet (1,524 m) above sea level, and the system demand is 29.4 scfm. What is the adjusted scfm?

Multiply 29.4 scfm by 1.08 (the correction factor from Table 2-14) to get the adjusted scfm requirement of 31.8 scfm at 5,000 feet above sea level.

As this example shows, a medical air system of greater capacity is needed at higher altitudes.

Another handy formula for compressed air systems is the following: to convert scfm to L/min, multiply the scfm by 28.31685.

Each compressor must be capable of maintaining 100 percent of the medical air peak demand regardless of the standby compressor's operating status. Where more than two units are provided for a facility, any two units must be capable of supplying the peak calculated demands (refer back to Table 2-5). Provide automatic alternators (duty-cycling controls) to ensure even wear in normal usage. Alternator controls incorporate a positive means of automatically activating the additional unit (or units) should the in-service pump fail to maintain the minimum required pressure.

The basic compressor package consists of filter intakes, duplex compressors, aftercoolers, receiving



Figure 2-7 Conversion from acfm to scfm

Ratio of free air to compressed air. To find the free air equivalent for 1 acfm at 130 psig pressure, find 130 at the bottom, go up to the diagonal, then horizontal to the left, to find the multiplier of 9.8. Then 1 acfm will equal 9.8 scfm.

1 psig \times 7 = kPa.

 $1 \text{ cfm} \times 0.03 = \text{m}^3/\text{min.}$

Source: Facility Piping Systems Handbook

•							
Altitude, ft (m)	Normal Barometric Pressure, in. Hg (mm Hg)	Correction Factor for scfm (L/min)					
Sea level	29.92 (759.97)	1.0 (28.31)					
1,000 (304.8)	28.86 (733.04)	1.01 (28.6)					
2,000 (609.6)	27.82 (706.63)	1.03 (29.16)					
3,000 (914.4)	26.82 (681.23)	1.05 (29.73)					
4,000 (1219.2)	25.84 (656.33)	1.06 (30.01)					
5,000 (1524)	24.90 (632.46)	1.08 (30.58)					
6,000 (1828.8)	23.98 (609.09)	1.10 (31.14)					
7,000 (2133.6)	23.09 (586.48)	1.12 (31.71)					
8,000 (2438.4)	22.23 (564.64)	1.15 (32.56)					
9,000 (2743.2)	21.39 (543.3)	1.17 (33.13)					
10,000 (3048)	20.58 (522.7)	1.19 (33.69)					

 Table 2-14
 Altitude Correction Factors for Medical Air Systems

tanks, air dryers, inline filters, regulators, dewpoint monitors, and valves. The compressor components are connected by piping that allows equipment isolation, provides pressure relief, and removes condensate from receivers. See Figure 2-8 for a typical arrangement of a medical air compressor system.

The compressor air intake shall be located outside above the roof level, at a minimum distance of 10 feet (3.05 m) from any door, window, exhaust, other intake, or opening in the building, and a minimum distance of 20 feet (6.1 m) above the ground. (Refer to NFPA 99 for the proper location of medical air intakes.) The compressor shall draw air from a source of clean air located where no contamination is anticipated from engine exhausts, fuel storage vents, medical/surgical vacuum system discharges, particulate matter, or odor of any type. Beware of gases from boilers and gasfired water heaters, as they are a common source of problems with medical air intakes. Where the outside atmospheric air is polluted, special filters can be attached to the compressor's intake to remove carbon monoxide and other contaminants.

Table 2-15 provides the minimum pipe sizes for medical air compressor intake risers. Consult with the compressor manufacturer on intake recommendations and allowable friction loss for the intake riser before finalizing the pipe size equipment selection.

High-pressure Gas (Nitrogen) or Compressed Air Systems

The supply source for nitrogen is generally in the form of high-pressure cylinder manifolds (see the discussion under "Oxygen" above). The primary use of nitrogen is to power surgical pneumatic instruments.



Figure 2-8 Typical Duplex Medical Air Compressor System (Type 1 Gas System)

The selection and size of nitrogen manifolds should be based on the instruments with the highest pressure requirements at the greatest gas consumption rate.

Surgical instruments are used to drill or cut bones and metals. Surgical applications include neurology, where instruments are used to cut the cranium; orthopedic service for bone work and joint replacement; facial reconstruction; and open-heart surgery. The tools are operated by a foot pedal. The gas supply to the tool and discharge from the tool are both brought to the floor where the foot pedal is located.

A series of instruments is currently available with the highest pressure requirements and the greatest flow rates of all instruments: 200 psig (1,379 kPa) at the instrument and a maximum flow rate of 15 scfm (7.08 L/s) to operate effectively. Recent developments have resulted in a new series of tools that requires only 120 psig (827.4 kPa) with a maximum flow rate of 12 scfm (5.66 L/s) to achieve the same effectiveness as the older, higher-pressure line of tools. Other manufacturers of pneumatically operated instruments

commonly use a pressure of 160 psig (1,103.2 kPa) and a maximum flow rate of 15 scfm (7.08 L/s). For the foreseeable future, various facilities will use a mixture of instruments.

Table 2-15	Minimum
Pipe Sizes for	Medical Air
Compressor li	ntake Risers

	Pipe size, in. (mm)	Flow rate, cfm (L/min)
l	2.5 (63.5)	50 (1416)
	3 (76.2)	70 (1985)
	4 (101.6)	210 (5950)
	5 (127.0)	400 (11,330)

Revisions in NFPA 99 made provisions for pressures up to 300 psig (2,068.4 kPa), up from a

maximum of 200 psig (1,379 kPa) previously allowed. Care must be taken to ensure that all components of a proposed distribution system, including connectors, hose, etc., are rated and approved for the higher pressures.

The following should be considered when selecting and sizing nitrogen manifolds and determining the number of cylinders required:

- Size of the cylinder (see Table 2-16)
- Number of operating rooms served by the nitrogen or compressed gas
- Flow rate and pressure requirements of utilized instruments

One cylinder should be provided per operating room for in-service and reserve supplies.

Vacuum Systems

Vacuum is a negative pressure created by the vacuum pumps within the piping system. The evacuation of the air from the piping system allows ambient air to be pulled from station inlets and exhausted to the outside. The volume of air, in cubic feet per minute (cfm) (L/min), in the piping is greater than the volume of the ambient air at atmospheric pressure entering the system, due to expansion under vacuum. In a vacuum system, acfm is the air that has been expanded in a vacuum volumetric flow. Values of acfm are much greater than values of scfm. To convert acfm to scfm at 19 inches of mercury (Hg) (482.6 mm Hg), divide acfm by 2.73. For the ratio of scfm to acfm at other pressures, refer back to Table 2-17.

At altitudes above sea level, all vacuum systems have reduced flow. In these cases, the required sizing will need to be adjusted to compensate. To do this, multiply the total demand in scfm by the appropriate multiplier shown in Table 2-18. In other words, to size the medical vacuum system correctly in accordance with NFPA 99 recommendations of scfm at 19 inches Hg (482.6 mm Hg), apply the correction factor listed in Table 2-18 to the peak calculated demand in scfm at 19 inches Hg (482.6 mm Hg).

Example 2-3

A facility's total demand is 27.5 scfm to produce 19 inches Hg (482.6 mm Hg) of vacuum at sea level. If this facility is located at 5,000 feet (1,524 m) above sea level, what is the adjusted scfm?

Multiply 27.5 scfm by 1.20 (the correction factor from Table 2-18) to get the adjusted total requirement of 33.3 scfm at 5,000 feet (1,524 m) above sea level.

Be sure to use acfm to size vacuum pumps. The patient vacuum system is intended to be a dry vacuum system. However, occasionally fluids enter the piping system accidentally. This should not affect the operation of the vacuum pump, but it will eventually restrict flow as the pipes' inner walls become coated with dry body fluids, dust, and debris. Some facilities use the vacuum system to remove airborne smoke particles from electrosurgical or laser-surgery areas. This is not a recommended application for the vacuum system. The smoke contains particulates, hydrocarbons, and water, which, if captured, will condense on the pipes' inner walls, producing a tar-like substance that eventually will restrict flow.

The vacuum pump system includes duplex (or more) vacuum pumps, a receiver tank and automatic drain, controls, exhaust piping, muffler, and valves. System components are connected by piping that allows equipment isolation and drainage of the receiver tank. The receiver serves as a reservoir and an interceptor for fluids that may enter the vacuum system. Fluids must be periodically drained to the sanitary sewer from the receiver. Figure 2-9 illustrates the schematic of a typical duplex medical/surgical vacuum pump system.

The vacuum pump system must be selected, sized, and specified to provide the estimated peak flow demand and a dependable source of medical vacuum at all required times. Each vacuum pump of a duplex system must be sized for 100 percent of the estimated

Number of Operating	Duplex Ma	Manifold Size			
Rooms Piped with Nitrogen	Total Cylinders	Cylinders per Side			
1	2	1			
2–4	4	2			
5–8	8	4			
9–12	12	6			
13–16	16	8			
17–20	20	10			
21–24	24	12			
25_28	28	1/			

 Table 2-16
 Selection Chart for Nitrogen Cylinder Manifolds

Note: Based on use of 224 ft³ (6343.35 L) H-cylinders.

Table 2-17 acfm to scfm Vacuum Conversion Table

Vacuum Level, in. Hg	Ratio at Sea Level (scfm:acfm)
0	1:1
15	1:2
18	1:2.5
19	1:2.73
20	1:3
21	1:3.33
22	1:3.75
23	1:4.28
24	1:5
25	1:6
26	1:7.5
27	1:10
28	1:15
29	1:30
29.5	1:60

Table 2-18Altitude Correction Factors for
Vacuum Systems

Altitude, ft (m)	Normal Barometric Pressure	Multiplier used for required scfm
0 (0)	29.92″ Hg	1.0
500 (152.4)	29.39" Hg	1.02
1,000 (304.8)	28.86" Hg	1.04
1,500 (457.2)	28.33" Hg	1.06
2,000 (609.6)	27.82" Hg	1.08
2,500 (762)	27.32" Hg	1.10
3,000 (914.4)	26.82" Hg	1.12
3,500 (1066.8)	26.33" Hg	1.14
4,000 (1219.2)	25.84" Hg	1.16
5,000 (1524)	24.90" Hg	1.20
6,000 (1828.8)	23.98" Hg	1.25
7,000 (2133.6)	23.09" Hg	1.30
8,000 (2438.4)	22.23" Hg	1.35
9,000 (2743.2)	21.39" Hg	1.40
10,000 (3048)	20.58" Hg	1.45

peak demand. When a triplex or quadruplex system is specified, each pump shall be sized so if one pump fails, the remaining pumps are capable of maintaining the required vacuum at 100 percent of the peak calculated demand. Provide automatic alternators (duty-cycling controls) to ensure even wear in normal usage. Alternator controls incorporate a positive means of automatically activating the additional unit (or units) should the in-service pump fail to maintain the minimum required vacuum.

Individual exhaust stacks should be straight and as short as possible. The exhaust shall be free of dips and loops that might trap condensate or oil. Where such low points are unavoidable, a drip leg and valved drain shall be installed. The collection of the duplex stacks to a single stack is permissible if it is ensured that back-pressure will not be a potential problem for the system in the future. The exhaust system should be piped to the outside environment, have a gooseneck termination, and be properly screened to prevent insects, leaves, and debris from entering. The exhaust vents should be a minimum distance of 25 feet (7.6 m) from any door, window, outside air intakes, or other opening and a minimum distance of 20 feet (6.1 m) above the ground. The prevailing wind currents and the proximity of the power vents and intake louvers are very important factors to be considered when locating the outdoor vacuum pump exhaust.

Table 2-19 provides minimum pipe sizes for vacuum exhaust risers. Consult with the vacuum pump manufacturer on back-pressure (friction loss) before finalizing pipe size and equipment selection.

Laboratories should be served by a dedicated vacuum line that is separate from the medical vacuum system, be equipped with drainable fluid traps, and be connected by separate laterals, risers, and mains to the receiver.

Because the vacuum requirements vary considerably in the different sections of a hospital, in both peak demand and frequency of use, the total demand for the entire vacuum system should be calculated by the following:

Equation 2-1

$$FR \times UF \times NI = EPF$$

where

FR= Room or station inlet flow rates, scfm

UF= Simultaneous usage factors

NI= Number of rooms or station inlets

EPF = Estimated peak flow, scfm

Waste Anesthetic Gas Management

Anesthesia is as common to medical care as the antiseptic care of wounds. For too long, however, exposure to and control of waste anesthetic gases (WAGD) and vapors during surgical procedures have put healthcare workers in jeopardy. At any given time, more than 250,000 people who work in hospitals, operating rooms, dental offices, and veterinary clinics might be exposed unnecessarily to harmful levels of WAGD.

S	Sizes for Vacuum Exhaust Risers					
	Pipe Size, in. (mm)	Flow Rate, cfm (L/min)				
	11⁄4 (31.75)	12 (340)				
	11/2 (38.1)	23 (655)				
	2 (50.8)	40 (1 140)				
	21/2 (63.5)	70 (1 990)				
	3 (76.2)	130 (3 685)				
	4 (101.6)	160 (4 535)				

Minimum Pipe

350 (9 915)

525 (14,875)

Table 2-19

5 (127.0)

6 (152.4)

The waste anesthetic gases and vapors of concern

are nitrous oxide and halogenated agents (vapors) such as halothane, enflurane, methoxyflurane, trichloroethylene, and chloroform. Those workers with the potential for exposure to WAGD include nurses, physicians, surgeons, obstetricians, gynecologists, operating room technicians, recovery room personnel, dentists, veterinarians and their assistants, and other auxiliaries. Hospital emergency room personnel may also be exposed, but not on a regular basis.

The WAGD system should consist of a dedicated and labeled wall/column inlet piped through the zone valve box and either piped separately back to the medical vacuum pump or piped 10 feet (3.05 m) downstream of the valve box to connect to the medical vacuum branch main.

A complete WAGD management program includes the application of a well-designed WAGD scavenging system. Such a system consists of a collecting device (scavenging adapter) to collect WAGD and vapors from breathing systems at the site of overflow, a ventilation system to carry WAGD from the operating room, and a method or device for limiting both positive and negative pressure variations in the breathing circuit that may be used by the scavenging system. Most anesthesia equipment being manufactured today includes a scavenging system.

The remainder of the WAGD management program should include work practices minimizing gas leakage, the application of a routine equipment maintenance program also to minimize gas leaks, periodic exposure monitoring, and the provision of adequate general ventilation.

System Control Valves

After the proper selection of the medical gas system source has been made by the plumbing engineer, the next step in the design of such a system is the specification and installation of the piping and controls. These typically include source shutoff valves, main shutoff valves, inline shutoff valves, and zone valve box assemblies. The purpose of including these intermediate valves in the medical gas system is to provide the capability of isolating various portions of the system, in total or by area. This is useful in case of an emergency and to allow for maintenance without interrupting the entire medical gas system. Often, future remodeling connections should be considered in the determination of valve placement.



Figure 2-9 Schematic of a Typical Duplex Medical/Surgical Vacuum Pump System

All valves in medical gas systems must be totally accessible, labeled, and, if concealed, identified. This allows area shutdown, purge, and certification to be done while the remainder of the system stays in service. Based on the latest NFPA recommendations, zone valves that are accessible to those other than authorized personnel should be installed inside valve boxes that are provided with breakable or removable windows. This valve is to be readily operable from a standing position in the corridor on the same floor it serves. A gauge, installed downstream of the zone valve, is required in patient rooms.

The valves and box assemblies should be full-port ball valves with 90 degrees from the open to the closed position. The size of the valves should be based on the size of the pipe they serve to avoid reducing (or restricting) the flow of the pipeline system.

Inline shutoff valves (other than those in zone valve boxes) shall have locking handles to allow them to be locked open or closed. Shutoff valves should be located in medical gas systems at the following locations:

- Source equipment outlets
- Main supply line entering the building
- Base of each medical gas riser adjacent to the riser connection
- Each floor distribution zone serving patient areas
- Each anesthetizing location
- Each critical (intensive) care area, emergency room, and recovery room

The locations cited above are the minimum recommendations; local plumbing codes, NFPA standards, and site conditions should prevail in the final determination of the valve placement. All piping, except control-line tubing, shall be identified. All service main, branch main, and riser valves shall be tagged, and a valve schedule shall be provided to the facility owner for permanent record and reference.

Valves, fittings, and other components shall be cleaned for oxygen service.

Warning Systems

The facility's gas-dispensing equipment is adjusted to deliver a particular gas at a given flow and pressure. Fluctuations in the given pressure may cause the dispensing equipment to stop functioning or to function inaccurately. For this reason, line-pressure sensing switches should be installed in all medical gas lines immediately downstream of the source's main shutoff valve. Monitoring of the design conditions is extremely important because any alarms require a certain response from maintenance engineers, nursing personnel, and supply personnel.

Warning systems are classified into two basic groups: master alarms and area alarms. Additionally,

interface controls (relays) are now being provided in computerized signal equipment.

Master Alarms

NFPA requires two master alarm panels to be provided, located in the engineer's office and in an area where 24-hour surveillance is maintained. The master alarm provides its signals by a pressure switch (vacuum switch) located immediately downstream of the source's main shutoff valve or at the site of the source. For example, with a liquid oxygen system, various pressure switches are located at the bulk site, which provide signals of reserve changeover, reserve in use, reserve failure, and low reserve. Additional oxygen signals needed for the master alarm are line pressure high and line pressure low.

Typical manifold gases, such as nitrous oxide, require signals to the master alarm to indicate line pressure high, line pressure low, and reserve supply in use.

Area Alarms

Area alarms are local alarms usually provided with a self-contained pressure switch and a gauge located in the panel. These area alarms monitor the line pressure in areas to indicate if the pressure increases or decreases from the normal operating pressure.

Area alarms shall be located in all critical care areas. These areas are defined in NFPA as follows: ICU, CCU, angiography labs, cardiac cath labs, delivery rooms, operation rooms, post-anesthesia recovery rooms, emergency rooms, and similar areas in which patients are intended to be subjected to invasive procedures and connected to line-operated, patient-care-related electrical appliances. Except where each operating or delivery room is valved, the area alarm signals are from the specific line supplying the area, with the individual room shutoff valve being the only one between the actuating switch and the room outlets.

Care should be taken by the engineer to locate the area alarm in convenient view of the nursing personnel who normally work in the area covered. In case of a stoppage of the medical gas or any other alarm condition, the proper personnel must take prompt and precise corrective actions.

Interface Controls

To advise total building maintenance systems of any malfunctions in the medical gas systems, most manufacturers usually provide a relay interface control so that easy and compatible signals can be provided by the total building maintenance and control system.

Medical Gas Piping Installation

The basic principles regarding medical gas piping to be considered by the plumbing engineer and kept in mind during the design phase are as follows:

- Always protect against leakage, frost, corrosion, and physical damage. Conduit or castings may be used as necessary. Medical gas piping may be installed in the same utility tunnel with fuel gas pipelines, electrical lines, or steam lines, provided that adequate natural or forced-air ventilation is available. The medical gas pipelines must not be placed in a tunnel, trench, or duct where they may be exposed to physical contact with oil or corrosive materials.
- In concealed spaces, always protect against any physical damage by installation within a pipe or conduit. Openings for pipelines installed in combustible partitions must be firestopped with a type of construction having a fire resistance equal to or greater than the original construction.
- Medical gas systems may be installed in a pipe and duct shaft if suitably protected against any possible physical damage, excessive heat, corrosion, or contact with oil. Shafts that penetrate multiple floors must meet local code requirements regarding fire rating and sealing of shaft penetrations.
- The following installation locations are prohibited by codes and must not be considered by the plumbing engineer: elevator shafts, kitchens, electrical switch-gear rooms, and storage rooms for combustible materials.
- Installation in an activity area (such as a corridor where movement of portable equipment may damage piping) should be avoided if possible. If unavoidable, use a hard-temper tubing and provide adequate identification, protective shields, and monitoring.
- Pipe should be supported from the building structure in accordance with the Manufacturers Standardization Society (MSS) or the schedule given in Table 2-20.
- The installation of an emergency oxygen supply connection (EOSC) is required when the oxygen supply is remote from the building being served. The EOSC shall be attached to the building being served and be accessible by emergency supply vehicles at all times

Medical Gas Pipe Sizing Criteria

Pipe sizing is one of the most important aspects of designing medical gas systems. Oversized piping may be required for future expansions, and undersized pipes will never provide adequate flow or pressure during peak demand conditions. The friction loss or pressure drop between the supply source and the outlets must be designed within acceptable limits. Each medical gas system has a system operating pressure and a maximum pressure loss (drop), which are given later in this section.

To determine the approximate pressure loss for a system, start by measuring the longest pipe run from the source to the last station outlet and inlet. Multiply the longest pipe run by a fitting factor (30 to 50 percent is normal) to establish the equivalent length. Divide the allowable pressure drop by the equivalent length, and multiply by 100 (30.48) to obtain an allowable friction loss per 100 feet (30.48 m). Friction-loss tables provided later in this chapter give the friction loss per 100 feet (30.48 m) of various pipe sizes. The system's peak probable demand is calculated by multiplying the number of stations by the flow allowance by the simultaneous use factor. Pipe diameters are determined by reading the friction-loss tables at the proper correlating flow rate and friction loss per 100 feet (30.48 m) of pipe. Refer to the following equations:

Table 2-20Medical Gas PipeSupport Schedule

Pipe Size, in. (mm)	Maximum Span Between Hangers, ft (m)
1⁄4 (6)	5 (1.52)
³∕₃ (10)	6 (1.83)
½ (12.5)	6 (1.83)
3⁄4 (20)	7 (2.13)
1 (25)	8 (2.44)
11/4 (32)	9 (2.74)
$1\frac{1}{2}$ (40) and larger	10 (3.05)

Equation 2-2

$$EL = DM \times ff$$

then

Equation 2-2a

$$PL = \frac{APD}{EL} \times 100$$

where

EL= Equivalent length, feet (meters)

DM= Longest pipe length or run, feet (meters) ff= Fitting factor

PL= Pressure loss, feet per 100 feet (meters per 30.48 meters)

APD = Allowable pressure drop, feet (meters)

Acceptable pipeline system design criteria require the risers to be sized larger than the laterals and the laterals larger than the drops to the outlets. In general, the diameters tend to reduce from the source to the end of the distribution system.

Oxygen

The flow rate for oxygen outlets is 1 cfm (0.47 L/s). A source pressure of 55 psi (379.2 kPa) and a maximum pressure drop of 5 psi (34.47 kPa) should be used in the design. Adult and infant ventilators require oxygen volumes that exceed the 1 cfm (0.47 L/s) flow rate. The recommended flow rate for adult ventila-

tors is 6.36 cfm (3 L/s) with no diversity factor. Infant ventilators require 1 cfm (0.47 L/s) with no diversity factor. Refer to Table 2-21 for outlet ratings and diversity factors. The friction-loss data for oxygen pipe systems is given in Table 2-22.

Nitrous Oxide

The flow rate for nitrous oxide outlets is 1 cfm (0.47 L/s). A source pressure of 55 psi (379.2 kPa) and a maximum pressure drop of 5 psi (34.47 kPa) should be used in the design. Refer to Table 2-21 for outlet ratings and diversity factors.

Oxygen and nitrous oxide pipe sizes should be selected based on the more stringent of the following requirements:

- Maximum friction loss of 1 psi (6.90 kPa) per 100 feet (30.48 m)
- Maximum friction loss of 5 psi (34.47 kPa) to the farthest outlet

The friction-loss data for nitrous oxide pipe systems is given in Table 2-22.

Nitrogen

The flow rate for nitrogen outlets is 15 cfm (7.1 L/s) per operating room. The source pressure range is 200 to 300 psi (1,378.96 to 2,068.44 kPa), and the maximum pressure drop is 10 percent of the total system pressure. Specific pressure requirements for tools may dictate the pressure required at a specific point in the system. Refer to Table 2-21 for outlet ratings and diversity factors.

Nitrogen pipe size should be selected based on the more stringent of the following requirements:

- Maximum friction loss of 2 psi (13.79 kPa) per 100 feet (30.48 m)
- Maximum friction loss not to exceed 10 percent of the total system pressure to the farthest outlet

The friction-loss data for nitrogen pipe systems is given in Table 2-23.

Medical Air

The flow rate for medical air outlets is generally 1 cfm (0.47 L/s), although this may vary. A source pressure of 50 psi (344.74 kPa) and a maximum pressure drop of 5 psi (34.47 kPa) should be considered. Specific pressure requirements for equipment may dictate the pressure required at a specific point in the system. Refer to Table 2-21 for outlet ratings and diversity factors. The friction-loss data for medical air pipe systems and high-pressure compressed air is given in Tables 2-24 and 2-25.

Vacuum

The flow rate for vacuum inlets is different than it is for other systems because areas vary in demand. Table 2-21 provides outlet rating data and diversity factors. Consider a source vacuum of 19 inches (64.2 kPa) Hg at the service inlet with a maximum pressure drop of 5 inches (16.9 kPa) Hg. The friction-loss data for vacuum pipe systems is given in Table 2-26.

Medical Gas Piping Materials

Pipe and fittings installed in medical gas systems shall be thoroughly cleaned for oxygen service, with the removal of oil, grease, and other readily oxidizable materials. Such piping systems shall be plugged or capped until final assembly to prevent contamination. Piping materials allowed by code, subject to local requirements, shall be hard-drawn, seamless medical gas tube, type K or L (ASTM B819), cleaned and capped, and shall bear one of the following markings: "oxy, med," "oxy/med," "acr/oxy," or "acr/med." Mains and branches in piping systems shall not be less than 0.5 inch (12.5 mm) in nominal size. For systems operated at pressures between 200 and 300 psig (1,379 and 2,068.4 kPa), ASTM B819, type K copper shall be used. Joints in medical gas tube shall be brazed; however, memory metal couplings with temperature and pressure ratings not less than those of a brazed joint are also acceptable. Unions are not permitted in any medical gas distribution pipeline system.

Hoses and Flexible Connections

Metallic and nonmetallic hoses or flexible connections are to be no longer than required and should not be permanently concealed in walls, floors, ceilings, or partitions. Hoses are to have a flame-spread rating of 200 in accordance with NFPA 255: Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

Certification of Medical Gas Systems

Testing shall be in strict accordance with state and local regulations and NFPA 99. Note: The alternative test specified in NFPA 99 Section 4-3.4.1.3(a)2 is not recommended. Because of the possibility of line pressure drops, malfunction of test gauges, and/or human error, it should not be allowed in cross-connection testing of vital life-support gases.

Medical Gas Certification Checklist

It is recommended that a step-by-step checklist be followed to ensure that every aspect of the medical gas and vacuum system is tested properly. Prior to having the system certified, the plumbing contractor should perform steps 1 through 6 below. Typically, these are inspected by local inspectors.

- 1. Clean the piping system by clearing it with pressurized, oil-free dry air or nitrogen. This cleaning shall be performed just after the installation of the piping system but before installation of the alarm switches, manifolds, pressure gauge, and other peripheral components.
- 2. Visually inspect each brazed joint. This inspection shall be done to make sure that the brazing alloy has been properly applied to the joint and

_		Quantity of	Diversity	Minimum Flow, cfm
System	Abbreviation	Outlets	(%)	(L/min)
Oxygen & nitrous oxide	O_2 and N_2O	1–3	100	
		4–12	75	2 (56.64)
		13–20	50	4 (113.28)
		21–40	33	5 (141.60)
		41 & over	25	6 (169.92)
High-pressure nitrogen	N ₂	1	100	
		11–20	75	2.5 (70.8)
		21 & over	66	3.75 (106.2)
Medical laboratory compressed air	MA	1–2	100	
		3–12	80	3 (84.96)
		13–38	60	10 (283.2)
		39–115	40	25 (708.0)
		116-316	30	50 (1,416.0)
		317–700	20	95 (2,690.4)
		701–1880	15	145 (4,106.4)
		1881-4400	10	285 (8,071.2)
		4401-16,000	5	445 (12,602.4)
		16,001-80,000	2	800 (22,656.0)
		80,000 & over	2	800 (22,656.0)
Laboratory vacuum	VAC	1-4	100	
		5–12	80	5 (141.60)
		13–33	60	10 (283.20)
		34–80	50	21 (594.72)
		81–150	40	40 (1,132.80)
		151–315	35	61 (1,727.52)
		316-565	30	111 (3,143.52)
		566-1000	25	171 (4,842.72)
		1001-2175	20	251 (7,108.32)
		2176-4670	15	436 (12,347.52)
		4671 & over	10	701 (19,852.32)

 Table 2-21
 Medical Gas Diversity (Simultaneous Use) Factors

Minimum recommended pipe sizes, in. (mm)

Service	0 ₂	N ₂ 0	N ₂	MA	MV
Minimum system pipe/tube size	1⁄2 (12.5)	1⁄2 (12.7)	1⁄2 (12.7)	½ (12.7)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)
Minimum riser size	³ ⁄4 (19.1)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)	1 (25.4)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)	1 (25.4)
Minimum branch size	½ (12.7)	½ (12.7)	½ (12.7)	1⁄2 (12.7)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)
Minimum single outlet supply size	³∕₃ (9.5)	³∕₃ (9.5)	³∕% (9.5)	³ ⁄8 (9.5)	³ ⁄8 (9.5)

	Nominal Pipe Size, in. (mm)								
0, and N,O, cfm	1⁄2 (12.7)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)	1 (25.4)	1¼ (31.8)	1½ (38.1)	2 (50.8)	21 /2 (63.5)	3 (76.2)	4 (101.6)
L/min)			Pressu	ire Drop per 1	00 ft (30.48 m) of Pipe, psi	(kPa)		
1.76 (50)	0.04 (0.28)								
3.53 (100)	0.16(1.1)								
4.41 (125)	0.25 (1.72)								
5.3 (150)	0.33 (2.27)	0.04 (0.28)							
6.18(175)	0.48 (3.31)	0.06 (0.41)							
7.06 (200)	0.63 (4.34)	0.07 (0.48)							
8.83 (250)	0.99 (6.83)	0.11 (0.76)							
10.89 (300)	1.41 (9.72)	0.16(1.1)	0.04 (0.28)						
14.12 (400)	2.51 (17.31)	0.29 (2.0)	0.07 (0.48)						
17.66 (500)	3.92 (27.03)	0.45 (3.1)	0.11 (0.76)						
26.48 (750)		1.02 (7.03)	0.24 (1.65)						
35.31 (1 000)		1.80 (12.41)	0.42 (2.9)	0.13 (0.9)	0.05 (0.34)				
44.14 (1 250)		2.81 (19.37)	0.66 (4.55)	0.21 (1.45)	0.09 (0.62)				
52.97 (1 500)			0.95 (6.55)	0.30 (2.07)	0.12 (0.83)				
70.62 (2 000)			1.05 (7.24)	0.67 (4.62)	0.22 (1.52)	0.05 (0.34)			
88.28 (2 500)				0.83 (5.72)	0.34 (2.34)	0.08 (0.55)			
105.93 (3 000)				1.19 (8.2)	0.49 (3.38)	0.11 (0.76)			
141.24 (4 000)				2.11 (14.55)	0.88 (6.07)	0.20 (1.38)	0.06 (0.41)		
176.55 (5 000)				3.30 (22.75)	1.36 (9.38)	0.32 (2.2)	0.10 (0.69)		
264.83 (7 500)					3.10 (21.37)	0.71 (4.9)	0.22 (1.52)	0.09 (0.62)	
353.11 (10 000)						1.27 (8.76)	0.40 (2.76)	0.16(1.1)	
529.66 (15 000)						2.82 (19.44)	0.89 (6.14)	0.35 (2.41)	0.08 (0.55)
706.21 (20 000)						5.00 (34.47)	1.58 (10.9)	0.63 (4.34)	0.15(1.03)
882.77 (25 000)							2.47 (17.03)	0.98 (6.76)	0.23 (1.59)
1059.32 (30 000)							3.55 (24.48)	1.40 (9.65)	0.31 (2.14)
1412.43 (40 000)								2.48 (17.1)	0.59 (4.07)
1765.54 (50 000)								3.90 (26.9)	0.92 (6.34)

Table 2-22 Data for Sizing Oxygen and Nitrous Oxide Supply Pipi	Table 2-22	Data for Sizing Oxygen and Nitrous Oxide Supply Piping
---	------------	--

Table 2-23 Data f	for Sizing	Nitrogen	Supply	Piping
-------------------	------------	----------	--------	--------

	Nominal Pipe Size, in. (mm)									
	½ (12.7)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)	1 (25.4)	11⁄4 (31.8)	1½ (38.1)	2 (50.8)				
cfm (L/min)	Press	ure Loss, psi pei	r 100 ft (kPa per	3.48 m) of 160 p	si (1103.2 kPa) l	Piping				
5 (145)	0.11 (0.76)	0.01 (0.07)								
10 (284)	0.43 (2.96)	0.07 (0.48)	0.02 (0.14)	0.01 (0.07)						
15 (425)	0.96 (6.62)	0.12 (0.83)	0.04 (0.28)	0.01 (0.07)						
20 (567)	1.70 (11.72)	0.26 (1.79)	0.07 (0.48)	0.02 (0.14)	0.01 (0.07)					
25 (708)	2.66 (18.34)	0.42 (2.90)	0.11 (0.76)	0.03 (0.21)	0.01 (0.07)					
30 (850)		0.59 (4.07)	0.17 (1.17)	0.04 (0.28)	0.02 (0.14)					
35 (992)		0.81 (5.58)	0.22 (1.52)	0.05 (0.34)	0.02 (0.14)					
40 (1133)		1.06 (7.31)	0.29 (2.00)	0.07 (0.48)	0.03 (0.21)					
45 (1275)		1.34 (9.24)	0.37 (2.55)	0.09 (0.62)	0.04 (0.28)	0.01 (0.07)				
50 (1416)		1.65 (11.38)	0.46 (3.17)	0.11 (0.76)	0.05 (0.34)	0.01 (0.07)				
60 (1700)		2.37 (16.34)	0.66 (4.55)	0.15 (1.03)	0.07 (0.48)	0.02 (0.14)				
70 (1984)			0.90 (6.21)	0.21 (1.45)	0.09 (0.62)	0.02 (0.14)				
80 (2266)			1.17 (8.07)	0.27 (1.86)	0.12 (0.83)	0.03 (0.21)				
90 (2550)			1.48 (10.20)	0.34 (2.34)	0.15 (1.03)	0.04 (0.28)				
100 (2833)			1.83 (12.62)	0.43 (2.96)	0.19 (1.31)	0.05 (0.34)				
110 (3116)			2.21 (15.24)	0.51 (3.52)	0.23 (1.54)	0.06 (0.41)				
120 (3400)				0.62 (4.27)	0.27 (1.86)	0.07 (0.48)				
130 (3683)				0.72 (4.96)	0.32 (2.21)	0.09 (0.62)				
140 (3966)				0.83 (5.72)	0.37 (2.55)	0.10 (0.69)				
150 (4250)				0.96 (6.62)	0.42 (2.90)	0.11 (0.76)				

	Nominal Pipe Size, in. (mm)								
cfm (L/s)	½ (12.7)	³ ⁄4 (19.1)	1 (25.4)	1¼ (31.8)	1½ (38.1)	2 (50.8)	2 ½ (63.5)	3 (76.2)	4 (101.6)
5 (2.36)	0.30 (2.07)	0.03 (0.21)	0.01 (0.07)						
10 (4.72)	1.15 (7.93)	0.18 (1.24)	0.05 (0.34)	0.01 (0.07)					
15 (7.08)		0.40 (2.76)	0.11 (0.76)	0.03 (0.21)					
20 (9.44)		0.69 (4.76)	0.20 (1.38)	0.05 (0.34)	0.02 (0.14)				
25 (11.80)		1.14 (7.86)	0.31 (2.14)	0.07 (0.48)	0.03 (0.21)				
30 (14.16)			0.44 (3.03	0.10 (0.69)	0.05 (0.34)				
35 (16.52)			0.61 (4.21)	0.14 (0.97)	0.06 (0.41)				
40 (18.88)			0.80 (5.52)	0.18 (1.24)	0.08 (0.55)				
45 (21.24)			1.00 (6.89)	0.23 (1.59)	0.10 (0.69)	0.03 (0.21)			
50 (23.60)				0.29 (2.00)	0.13 (0.90)	0.04 (0.28)			
60 (28.32)				0.42 (2.90)	0.18 (1.24)	0.05 (0.34)			
70 (33.04)				0.56 (3.86)	0.25 (1.72)	0.07 (0.48)	0.03 (0.21)		
80 (37.76)				0.74 (5.10)	0.33 (2.28)	0.09 (0.62)	0.03 (0.21)		
90 (42.48)				0.93 (6.41)	0.41 (2.83)	0.11 (0.76)	0.04 (0.28)		
100 (47.20)				1.15 (7.93)	0.51 (3.52)	0.14 (0.97)	0.05 (0.34)		
110 (51.92)					0.62 (4.27)	0.17 (1.17)	0.06 (0.41)		
120 (56.64)					0.73 (5.03)	0.20 (1.38)	0.08 (0.55)		
130 (61.36)					0.86 (5.93)	0.23 (1.59)	0.09 (0.62)	0.03 (0.21)	
140 (66.08)					1.00 (6.89)	0.27 (1.86)	0.11 (0.76)	0.03 (0.21)	
150 (70.80)						0.31 (2.14)	0.12 (0.83)	0.04 (0.28)	
175 (82.60)						0.42 (2.90)	0.16 (1.10)	0.05 (0.34)	
200 (94.40)						0.54 (3.72)	0.21 (1.45)	0.07 (0.48)	
225 (106.20)						0.69 (4.76)	0.29 (2.00)	0.08 (0.55)	
250 (118.00)						0.85 (5.86)	0.33 (2.28)	0.10 (0.69)	
275 (129.80)						1.03 (7.10)	0.40 (2.76)	0.13 (0.90)	
300 (141.60)							0.48 (3.31)	0.15 (1.03)	
325 (153.40)							0.56 (3.86)	0.18 (1.24)	
350 (165.20)							0.65 (4.48)	0.20 (1.38)	
375 (177.00)							0.74 (5.10)	0.23 (1.59)	
400 (188.80)							0.84 (5.79)	0.27 (1.86)	
450 (212.40)							1.06 (7.31)	0.32 (2.21)	
500 (236.00)							, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	0.42 (2.90)	
550 (259.60)								0.50 (3.45)	0.12 (0.83)
600 (283.20)								0.60 (4.14)	0.14 (0.97)
650 (306.80)								0.70 (4.83)	0.17 (1.17)
700 (330.40)								0.82 (5.65)	0.19 (1.31)
750 (354.00)								0.94 (6.48)	0.22 (1.52)
800 (377.60)								1.06 (7.31)	0.25 (1.72)
850 (401.20)									0.28 (1.93)
900 (424.80)									0.32 (2.21)
950 (448.40)									0.36 (2.48)
1000 (472.00)									0.39 (2.69)
1100 (519.20)									0.48 (3.31)
1200 (566.40)									0.57 (3.93)
1300 (613.60)									0.67 (4.62)
1400 (660.80)									0.77 (5.31)
1500 (708.00)									0.89 (6.14)
1600 (755.20)									1.00 (6.89)

 Table 2-24
 Pressure Loss, psi per 100 ft (kPa per 30.48 m) in 50 psi (344.74 kPa) Compressed Air Piping

			1/2"		3/4"		1"			1 – 1-1/4"			
	Pipe Size	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi
	6	.102	.075	.054	.023								
	8	.181	.133	.096	.041	.030							
	10	.283	.208	.149	.064	.047	.034	.017					
	15	.636	.469	.336	.144	.106	.076	.038					
	20	1.131	.833	.597	.255	.188	.135	.067	.050	.036	.016		
	25	1.768	1.302	.933	.399	.294	.211	.105	.078	.056	.025	.019	
	30	2.546	1.875	1.344	.574	.423	.303	.152	.112	.080	.037	.027	
	35	3.465	2.552	1.829	.782	.576	.413	.206	.152	.109	.050	.037	.026
	40	4.526	3.333	2.388	1.021	.752	.539	.270	.199	.142	.065	.048	.034
	45	5.728	4.218	3.023	1.292	.952	.682	.341	.251	.180	.083	.061	.044
	50	7.071	5.208	3.732	1.596	1.175	.842	.421	.310	.222	.102	.075	.054
	60	10.183	7.499	5.374	2.296	1.692	1.213	.607	.447	.320	.147	.108	.078
	70	13.860	10.207	7.315	3.128	2.300	1.651	.826	.608	.436	.200	.147	.105
F	80		13.331	9.554	4.085	3.008	2.156	1.079	.794	.569	.261	.192	.138
SC	90		16.872	12.092	5.170	3.807	2.729	1.365	1.005	.721	.330	.243	.174
	100		20.830	14.928	6.383	4.700	3.369	1.685	1.241	.890	.408	.300	.215
	125			23.325	9.973	7.344	5.263	2.633	1.939	1.390	.637	.469	.336
	150				14.361	10.576	7.579	3.792	2.793	2.001	.918	.676	.484
	175					14.395	10.316	5.162	3.801	2.724	1.249	.920	.659
	200					18.801	13.474	6.742	4.965	3.558	1.632	1.202	.861
	225						17.053	8.533	6.284	4.503	2.065	1.521	1.090
	250						21.054	10.534	7.757	5.559	2.550	1.878	1.346
	275						25.475	12.746	9.387	6.727	3.085	2.272	1.628
	300						30.317	15.169	11.171	8.006	3.671	2.704	1.938
	325								13.110	9.396	4.309	3.173	2.274
	350								15.205	10.867	4.997	3.680	2.637
	375								17.454	12.509	5.736	4.224	3.027
	400								19.859	14.232	6.527	4.806	3.445
	425								22.419	16.067	7.368	5.426	3.889
	450									18.013	8.260	6.083	4.360

 Table 2-25
 High-pressure Compressed Air Friction Loss Table

 Table 2-26
 Data for Sizing Vacuum Piping Systems

	Nominal Pipe Size, inches (mm)								
Air Flow,	³ ⁄ ₄ (19.1)	1 (25.4)	1¼ (31.8)	1½ (38.1)	2 (50.8)	21/2 (63.5)	3 (76.2)	4 (101.6)	
cfm (L/s)		Pre	essure Drop	per 100 Ft (3	0.48 m) of Pi	pe, in. Hg (kl	Pa)		
1 (0.5)	0.15 (0.51)								
2 (0.9)	0.39 (1.32)	0.10 (0.34)							
3 (1.4)	0.77 (2.60)	0.19 (0.64)							
4 (1.9)	1.24 (4.19)	0.31 (1.05)	0.10 (0.34)						
5 (2.4)	1.78 (6.01)	0.44 (1.49)	0.14 (0.47)						
6 (2.8)	2.40 (8.10)	0.60 (2.03)	0.19 (0.64)						
7 (3.3)		0.77 (2.60)	0.24 (0.81)	0.12 (0.41)					
8 (3.8)		0.95 (3.21)	0.31 (1.05)	0.15 (0.51)					
9 (4.3)		1.17 (3.95)	0.38 (1.28)	0.18 (0.61)					
10(4.7)		1.38 (4.66)	0.45 (1.52)	0.22 (0.74)					
15(7.1)		2.80 (9.46)	0.88 (2.97)	0.44 (1.49)	0.12 (0.41)				
20 (9.4)			1.46 (4.93)	0.72 (2.43)	0.19 (0.64)				
25 (11.8)			2.20 (7.43)	1.09 (3.68)	0.29 (0.98)	0.10 (0.34)			
30 (14.2)				1.52 (5.13)	0.41 (1.38)	0.14 (0.47)			
35 (16.5)				2.00 (6.75)	0.54 (1.82)	0.18 (0.61)			
40 (18.9)				2.50 (8.44)	0.67 (2.26)	0.22 (0.74)	0.10 (0.34)		
45 (21.2)					0.81 (2.74)	0.27 (0.91)	0.12 (0.41)		
50 (23.6)					0.99 (3.34)	0.33 (1.11)	0.14 (0.47)		
60 (28.3)					1.34 (4.53)	0.45 (1.52)	0.19 (0.64)		
70 (33.0)					1.79 (6.04)	0.60 (2.03)	0.26 (0.88)	0.07 (0.24)	
80 (37.8)					2.30 (7.77)	0.77 (2.60)	0.32 (1.08)	0.09 (0.30)	
90 (42.5)						0.96 (3.24)	0.41 (1.38)	0.11 (0.37)	
100 (47.2)						1.17 (3.95)	0.50 (1.69)	0.14 (0.47)	
125 (59.0)						1.71 (5.77)	0.74 (2.50)	0.20 (0.68)	
150 (70.8)						2.30 (7.77)	0.99 (3.34)	0.27 (0.91)	
175 (82.6)							1.28 (4.32)	0.35 (1.18)	
200 (94.4)							1.61 (5.43)	0.44 (1.49)	

that there are no discernible defects. During the inspection, excess flux shall be removed.

- 3. Before the wallboard application, pressurize each section of the piping system to 150 psig (1,034.22 kPa) using oil-free dry air or nitrogen. After the system has been pressurized, each joint shall be checked for leakage using a soap/water solution or another nontoxic leak-detecting agent. If leaks are detected, the system shall be repaired and retested.
- 4. After testing each individual medical gas system, the completely assembled station outlets and all other components shall be installed and subjected to a 24-hour standing pressure test at 20 percent above normal operating line pressure. This test gas shall be oil-free dry nitrogen. The source valve shall be closed. Leaks, if any, shall be located, repaired, and retested.
- 5. Each dedicated gas system shall be tested with oil-free dry nitrogen to verify that there are no cross-connections to any other system. To determine the presence of cross-connections, pressurize only one system to 50 psig (344.74 kPa) at a time, and then test each outlet to verify that the gas exists only at each of the expected outlets. (See step 7.)
- 6. Each gas piping system shall be purged of contaminants by flushing it with the appropriate source gas while under system pressure. The piping system for each gas shall be purged by successively opening each outlet in progressive order, starting with the outlet that is nearest the pressure source and ending at the outlet that is farthest from the pressure source. The gas shall be purged through a white cloth material at a flow rate of at least 3.5 cfm (100 L/min) until there is no longer any evidence of discoloration or particulates. It is also important to purge for a sufficiently long time so that all of the test gas previously used is removed from the system. (See step 11.)

Startup, testing, and certification of the medical gas systems shall be conducted by an independent, third-party, trained representative with a minimum of five years of experience in medical gas pipeline testing and certification. Proof of liability insurance should be requested by the owner or general contractor.

After successful startup of all systems and components, vital information regarding the proper operation of the equipment shall be made part of the medical gas certification. This shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

• Medical air compressors, dryers, purifiers, filters, regulators, and dewpoint and carbon monoxide monitors

- Medical vacuum pumps
- Bulk liquid oxygen field and oxygen, nitrous oxide, nitrogen, and carbon dioxide manifolds
- Master and area alarms and their signal devices
- Medical gas valves and zone valve boxes
- Outlets, nitrogen control panels, columns, and hose drop assemblies
- 7. After the walls are closed and the requirements of NFPA 99 Section 4-3.4.1.2 have been completed, it shall be determined that no cross-connection of piping systems exists. All medical gas systems shall be reduced to atmospheric pressure. All sources of test gas from all of the medical gas systems, with the exception of the one system to be checked, shall be disconnected. This system shall be pressurized with oil-free nitrogen to 50 psig (344.74 kPa gauge). With appropriate adapter-matching outlet labels, each individual station outlet of all medical gas systems installed shall be checked to determine that test gas is being dispensed only from the outlets of the medical gas system being tested.

The source of the test gas shall be disconnected, and the system tested shall be reduced to atmospheric pressure. Proceed to test each additional piping system in accordance with the above instructions. Where a medical vacuum piping system is installed, the cross-connection testing shall include the piped vacuum system with all medical gas piping systems.

The presence and correctness of labeling required by NFPA 99 for all components (e.g., station outlets, shutoff valves, pipelines, and signal panels) shall be verified.

- 8. Valves installed in each medical gas piping system shall be tested to verify proper operation in rooms or areas of control. Records shall be made listing the rooms or areas controlled by each valve for each gas. The information shall be utilized to assist and verify the proper labeling of the valves.
- 9. All outlets shall be tested for flow. Tests shall be performed with the use of oil-free dry nitrogen as described in CGA P-9: *Inert Gases: Argon, Nitrogen, and Helium*. Oxygen, nitrous oxide, and air outlets shall deliver 3.5 scfm (1.65 L/s) with a pressure drop of no more than 5 psig (34.47 kPa) and a static pressure of 50 psig (344.74 kPa). Nitrogen outlets shall deliver 5 scfm (2.36 L/s) with a pressure drop of no more than 5 psig (34.47 kPa) and a static pressure of 160 psig (1,103 kPa).
- 10. All warning systems for each medical gas piping system shall be tested to ensure that all components function properly prior to placing the piping system into service. Permanent records of these tests shall be maintained. Warning systems that are part of an addition to an existing piping

system shall be tested prior to the connection of the new piping to the existing system. Tests of warning systems for new installations (initial test) shall be performed after the cross-connection testing discussed in step 7 but before the purging and verifying in step 12. Initial tests of warning systems that may be included in an addition or extension to an existing piping system shall be completed before connection of the addition to the existing system. The test gas for the initial tests shall be oil-free dry nitrogen.

The master alarm system test shall be performed for each of the nonflammable medical gas piping systems. Permanent records of these tests shall be maintained with those required under NFPA 99 Section 4-3.5.3. The audible and noncancellable visual signals of NFPA 99 Section 43.1.2.1(b)3e shall indicate when pressure in the main line increases or decreases 20 percent from the normal operating pressure.

The warning signals for all medical gas piping systems supplying anesthetizing locations and other vital life-support and critical care areas, such as post-anesthesia recovery, intensive care units, and coronary care units, shall indicate the pressure in the piping system if it increases or decreases 20 percent from the normal operating pressure.

11. To remove any traces of particulate matter deposited in the pipelines as a result of construction, a heavy, intermittent purging of the pipeline shall be done. The appropriate adapter shall be obtained from the facility or manufacturer, and high purge rates of least 8 cfm (225 L/min) shall be put on each outlet. After the purge is started, it shall be rapidly interrupted several times until the purge produces no discoloration in a white cloth loosely held over the adapter during the purge. To avoid possible damage to the outlet and its components, this test shall not be conducted using any implement other than the proper adapter.

For each positive-pressure gas system, cleanliness of the piping system shall be verified. Filter a minimum of 35 cubic feet (991.1 L) of gas through a clean, white 0.45-micron filter at a minimum flow of 3.5 scfm (99.12 L/min). The filter shall show no discoloration and shall accrue no more than 0.1 milligrams of matter. Each zone shall be tested at the outlet most remote from the source. The test shall be performed with the use of oil-free dry nitrogen described in CGA P-9.

12. For each positive-pressure system, the purity of the piping system shall be verified. Test each zone at the most remote outlet for dewpoint, total hydrocarbons (as methane), and halogenated hydrocarbons, and compare those values with the source gas. The test shall be performed with the use of oil-free nitrogen gas as described in CGA P-9. The two tests shall not exceed the maximum allowable variations:

- Dewpoint: 41°F at 50 psig (5°C at 375 kPa)
- Total hydrocarbons: ±1 ppm (as methane)
- Halogenated hydrocarbons: ±2 ppm
- 13. Prior to the connection of any work, extension, or addition to an existing piping system, the tests in steps 7 through 12 shall be successfully performed. After connection to the existing system and before use of the addition for patient care, the tests in steps 14 through 16 shall be completed. Permanent records of these tests shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 99 Section 4-3.5.3.

The final connection between the addition and the existing system shall be leak tested with the gas of system designation at the normal operating pressure. This pressure shall be maintained until each joint has been examined for leakage by means of soapy water or another equally effective means of leak detection safe for use with oxygen.

- 14. Operational pressure test: Piping systems, with the exception of nitrogen systems, shall maintain pressure at 50 + 5/-0 psig (345 + 35/-0 kPa gauge) at all station outlets at the maximum flow rate noted below. A nitrogen system shall be capable of delivering at least 160 psig (1,103 kPa gauge) to all outlets at the flow noted below. Piping systems that vary from the normal pressures shall be capable of delivering flows and pressures consistent with their intended use. Oxygen, nitrous oxide, and air outlets shall deliver 3.5 scfm (1.65 L/s) with a pressure drop of no more than 5 psig (34.47 kPa) and a static pressure of 50 psig (344.74 kPa). Nitrogen outlets shall deliver 5 scfm (2.36 L/s) with a pressure drop of no more than 5 psig (34.47 kPa) and a static pressure of 160 psig (1,103)kPa).
- 15. Medical gases concentration test: After purging each system with the gas of system designation, each pressure gas source and outlet shall be analyzed for concentration of gas, by volume, using instruments designed to measure the specific gas dispensed. The allowable concentrations shall be within the following ranges:
 - Oxygen: 99+% oxygen
 - Nitrous oxide: 99+% nitrous oxide
 - Nitrogen: <1% oxygen or 99+% nitrogen
 - Medical air: 19.5 to 23.5% oxygen
 - Other gases: Concentration as specified by their labeling ±1%, unless otherwise specified
- 16. Medical air purity test (compressor): Analyze the medical air source for concentration of contaminants, by volume. Take samples for an air system

test at a sample point. The compared tests shall not exceed the maximum allowable variations as follows:

- Dewpoint: +39°F at 50 psig (3.9°C at 375 kPa)
- Carbon monoxide: £10 ppm
- Carbon dioxide—air: ±500 ppm
- Gaseous hydrocarbons—air: £25 ppm (as methane)
- Halogenated hydrocarbons—air: £2 ppm

Codes and Standards

Care must be taken by the plumbing engineer to investigate and review the most recent local plumbing code and NFPA 99 provisions pertaining to the piping of nonflammable medical gas systems. The plumbing engineer should note that in many areas, state and/or local codes exist that may take precedence over the nationally recognized, voluntary standards.

GLOSSARY

acfm (actual cubic feet per minute) The unit used to express the measure of the volume of gas flowing at operating temperature and pressure, as distinct from the volume of a gas flowing at standard temperature and pressure (see scfm)

Air, oil-free, dry (air for testing) Air complying, at a minimum, with Grade D in ANSI/CGA G-7.1: *Commodity Specification for Air* and having a maximum dewpoint of -20°F (-28.9°C) at line pressure

Alarm system, Level III An area alarm system for a patient nonflammable medical gas system, typically oxygen, nitrous oxide, and medical air in dental care facilities and medical care facilities

Alarm system, local A warning system that provides visible and audible signals for the monitoring functions of medical gas and vacuum system source equipment at the equipment site

Alarm system, master A warning system that provides visible and audible signals for the monitoring of medical gas and vacuum sources and systems, consisting of alarm panels and associated actuating devices

Ampacity The current-carrying capacity of electric conductors, expressed in amperes

Anesthetic As used in this chapter, any inhalation agent used to produce relative analgesia or general anesthesia

Anesthetizing location Any area of a facility that has been designated to be used for the administration of nonflammable, inhalation anesthetic agents in the course of examination or treatment, including the use of such agents for relative analgesia (see anesthetic)

Authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) The organization, office, or individual responsible for approving equipment, an installation, or a procedure

Clinic A healthcare facility where patients are seen on an ambulatory basis, but where surgery involving general anesthesia is not performed

Combustible A substance that, if ignited, will react with oxygen and burn

Combustion products The gases, volatilized liquids and solids, particulate matter, and ash generated by combustion

DISS connector A threaded medical gas connector complying with CGA V-5: *Diameter Index Safety System (Non-Interchangeable Low-Pressure Connections for Medical Gas Applications)*

Emergency oxygen supply connection (**EOSC**) An assembly of equipment that permits a gas supplier to make a temporary connection to supply oxygen to a building that has had its normal source of oxygen disconnected

Flammable gas Any gas that will burn when mixed in any proportion with air, oxygen, or nitrous oxide

Flash point The minimum temperature at which a liquid gives off vapor in sufficient concentration to form an ignitible mixture with air near the surface of the liquid within the vessel, as specified by appropriate test procedures and apparatus

Healthcare facilities Buildings or portions of buildings in which medical, dental, psychiatric, nursing, obstetrical, or surgical care is provided, including, but not limited to, hospitals, nursing homes, limitedcare facilities, clinics, medical and dental offices, and ambulatory care centers, whether permanent or movable

Hyperbaric pressures Pressure above atmospheric pressure

Hypobaric pressures Pressures below atmospheric pressure

Laboratory A building, space, room, or group of rooms intended to serve activities involving procedures for investigation, diagnosis, or treatment in which flammable, combustible, or oxidizing materials are to be used, not intended to include isolated, frozen-section laboratories; areas in which oxygen is administered; blood donor rooms in which flammable, combustible, or otherwise hazardous materials normally used in laboratory procedures are not present; and clinical service areas in which hazardous materials are not used

Limited-care facility A building or part thereof used on a 24-hour basis for the housing of four or more persons who are incapable of self-preservation because of age, physical limitation due to accident or illness, or mental limitations such as mental retardation or developmental disability, mental illness, or chemical dependency

Medical air For the purposes of this chapter, air that is supplied from cylinders, bulk containers, or

medical air compressors or has been reconstituted from oxygen USP and nitrogen NF and complies with the following:

- Medical air USP
- Total hydrocarbons, liquid and nondetectable gaseous: <25 ppm
- Pressure dewpoint at 50 psig: <39°F (4°C)
- Permanent particulates: 5 mg/m³ at normal atmospheric pressure at 1-micron size or greater

Note: Air supplied from an on-site compressor and associated air-treatment systems (as opposed to medical air USP supplied in cylinders) that complies with the above limits is considered medical air.

Hydrocarbon carryover from the compressor into the pipeline distribution system could be detrimental to the safety of the end user and to the integrity of the piping system. The mixing of air and oxygen is a common clinical practice, and the hazards of fire are increased if the air is thus contaminated.

Compliance with these limits is considered important to fire and patient safety. The quality of local ambient air should be determined prior to its selection for compressors and air-treatment equipment.

Medical compressed air has many uses in the healthcare field. It is used in respiratory therapy applications in conjunction with high-humidity treatments using nebulizers in pediatrics and nurseries. It is also used to power pneumatic surgical instruments that have a pressure range of 120 to 200 psi (827.4 to 1,379 kPa).

Medical air compressor A compressor that is designed to exclude oil from the air stream and compression chamber and that does not under normal operating conditions or by any single fault add any toxic or flammable contaminants to the compressed air

Miscellaneous gases Carbon dioxide, helium, and mixtures of each of these two gases with oxygen, used in a teaching institution or in a hospital specializing in cardiovascular surgery

Nitrogen (N_2) An element that, at atmospheric temperatures and pressures, exists as a clear, colorless, odorless, and tasteless gas. It is a nontoxic and inert gas that inhibits combustion by displacing the air. The principle use of nitrogen gas in a healthcare facility is for powering pneumatic surgical instruments.

Nitrous oxide (N_2O) A nonflammable gas commonly used as an analgesic and, in combination with one or more agents, for the production of a balanced anesthesia

Oxidizing gas A gas that supports combustion such as oxygen and nitrous oxide as well as many others, including halogens

Oxygen (O_2) The most widely used of all medical gases, oxygen is colorless, odorless, and tasteless. Of the three basic essentials for the maintenance of life—oxygen, water, and food—the deprivation of oxygen leads most rapidly to death. Tissue cells have no reserve; they must be continually supplied with oxygen by the body's circulation system. Oxygen is a nonflammable gas used for respiratory therapy and in surgery for anesthesia.

Note: Its outstanding properties are its ability to sustain life and to support combustion. Although oxygen is nonflammable, materials that burn in air will burn much more vigorously and create higher temperatures in oxygen or in oxygen-enriched atmospheres.

Oxygen, gaseous A colorless, odorless, and tasteless gas; also, the physical state of the element at atmospheric temperature and pressure

Oxygen, liquid Exists at cryogenic temperature, approximately -300°F (-184.4°C) at atmospheric pressure. It retains all of the properties of gaseous oxygen, but, in addition, when allowed to warm to room temperature at atmospheric pressure, it will evaporate and expand to fill a volume 860 times its liquid volume.

Note: If spilled, the liquid can cause frostbite on contact with skin.

Oxygen-delivery equipment Any device used to transport and deliver an oxygen-enriched atmosphere to a patient. If an enclosure such as a mask, hood, incubator, canopy, or tent is used to contain the oxygen-enriched atmosphere, then that enclosure is considered to be oxygen-delivery equipment.

Oxygen-enriched atmosphere For the purpose of this chapter, and only for the purpose of this chapter, an atmosphere in which the concentration of oxygen exceeds 23.5 percent by volume

Oxygen index The minimum concentration of oxygen, expressed as a percent by volume, in a mixture of oxygen and nitrogen that just supports combustion of a material under the conditions of ASTM D2863: Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)

Oxygen toxicity (hyperbaric) Physical impairment resulting from breathing gaseous mixtures containing oxygen-enriched atmospheres at elevated partial pressures for extended periods. Under the pressures and times of exposure normally encountered in hyperbaric treatments, toxicity is a direct function of concentration and time of exposure.

Patient vacuum (VAC) Typically used to provide a source for patient drainage, aspiration, and suction to remove body fluids (such as saliva or blood) from an affected patient area. The body fluid is normally trapped in a container near the patient. The vacuum source only provides a source of subatmospheric pressure.

Piping The tubing or conduit of the system. The three general classes of piping are:

Main lines Those parts of the system that connect the source (pumps, receivers, etc.) to the risers, branches, or both

Risers The vertical pipes connecting the system main lines with the branch lines on the various levels of the facility

Branch (*lateral*) *lines* Those sections or portions of the piping system that serve a room or group of rooms on the same story of the facility

psia (pounds per square inch absolute) A unit of pressure measurement with zero pressure as the base or reference pressure

psig (pounds per square inch gauge) A unit of pressure measurement with atmospheric pressure as the base or reference pressure. Under standard conditions, 0 psig is equivalent to 14.7 psia.

scfm (standard cubic feet per minute) The unit used to express the measure of the volume of a gas flowing at standard conditions—a temperature of 68° F (20°C) and a pressure of 1 atmosphere (29.92 inches Hg)

Station inlet An inlet point in a Type I medical/ surgical piped vacuum distribution system at which the user makes connections and disconnections

Station outlet An outlet point in a piped medical gas distribution system at which the user makes connections and disconnections

Vacuum system, Level 1 A system consisting of central vacuum-producing equipment with pressure and operating controls, shutoff valves, alarm warning systems, gauges, and a network of piping extending to and terminating at suitable station inlets at locations where patient suction might be required

Vacuum system, Level 3 A vacuum system, either a wet or dry piping system, designed to remove liquid, air, gas, and solids from the treated area

Notes: The system is not intended for Level 1 vacuum applications. A wet piping system is designed

to accommodate liquid, air, gas, and solids through the service inlet. A dry piping system is designed to accommodate air and gas only through the service inlet. (Liquids and solids are trapped before entering the service inlet.)

Waste anesthetic gas disposal (WAGD) A surgical vacuum system that is used to evacuate the anesthetic gases from the operating room after the gases have been exhaled by the patient; also the process of capturing and carrying away gases vented from the patient breathing circuit during the normal operation of gas anesthetic equipment

REFERENCES

- CSA Z-305.1: Nonflammable Medical Gas Piping Systems
- CGA P-2: Characteristics and Safe Handling of Medical Gases
- ANSI/CGA G-7.1: Commodity Specification for Air
- CGA G-10.1: Commodity Specification for Nitrogen
- CGA G-7: Compressed Air for Human Respiration
- CGA V-5: Diameter Index Safety System (Noninterchangeable Low Pressure Connections for Medical Gas Applications)
- CGA P-9: Inert Gases: Argon, Nitrogen, and Helium
- CGA C-9: Standard Color Marking of Compressed Gas Containers for Medical Use
- CGA G-8.1: Standard for the Installation of Nitrous Oxide Systems at Consumer Sites
- NFPA 50: Standard for Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites
- NFPA 99: Standard for Healthcare Facilities

RESOURCES

- Canadian Standards Association: csa.ca
- Compressed Gas Association: cganet.com
- National Fire Protection Association: nfpa.org

NIBCO[®] Lead Free



Ask about our complete Lead-Free* offering:

- Wrot and cast copper fittings
- NIBCO[®] PEX ball valves and fittings 2 pc and 3 pc ball valves
- CPVC valves and fittings

- Gate valves
- Ring and swing check valves

*Lead Free refers to the wetted surface of pipe, fittings and fixtures in potable water systems that have a weighted average lead content <0.25% Source: California Health & Safety Code (116875); Vermont Act 193.

www.nibcoleadfree.com

Industrial Waste



Your Double Containment & Leak Detection Specialist

Certain environments demand fail-safe systems. No leaks. No risk. The professionals at IPEX understand the complexity of design and installation for demanding double containment applications. And, unlike other manufacturers of double containment systems, our specialists are part of a division of IPEX dedicated solely to the design, production and installation of state-of-the-art double containment systems. With more than 20 years of experience and success, we are the proven experts.

The IPEX family of double containment systems includes: Guardian[™] PVC and CPVC, and Clear-Guard[™] PVC pressure and drainage systems, Encase[™]

PolyPro drainage systems, CustomGuard[®] FRP and metal pressure systems and Centra-Guard[™] leak detection systems.

Safety and environmental concerns are top priorities on today's industrial agenda. Reduction of emissions, energy conservation and prevention of ground water contamination are some of the areas where regulations are increasingly defining an important line between utilization and exploitation of our planet's resources.

For most common chemical-waste or process applications, IPEX offers systems that are both simple yet highly advanced state-of-the-art technologies.

Guardian Encase CustomGuard Centra-Guard Clear-Guard



Products are manufactured by IPEX Inc. and distributed in the United States by IPEX USA LLC. Guardian[™], Encase[™], CustomGuard[®], Centra-Guard[™], and Clear-Guard[™] are trademarks of IPEX Branding Inc. far@erga.com 17/01/15

Call 1-800-463-9572 or visit www.ipexamerica.com

Treatment of Industrial Waste

"Industrial wastewater" is a generic term used to describe nonsanitary (plumbing) effluent, such as that typically found in chemical, pharmaceutical, and other manufacturing facilities. It also may be applied to wastewater from commercial facilities, such as selfservice laundries or large restaurants. The definition also includes storm water runoff containing anything considered harmful by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) discharged from sites involving any industrial activity or construction.

This chapter describes the regulatory framework governing industrial wastewater, hazardous substances, and hazardous wastes and the impact of these regulations on industrial-process plumbing design. It also contains design considerations, describes a few of the more common treatment technologies, and provides resources from which more detailed information can be obtained.

Whether discharged to municipal sewers, surface waters, deep wells, or land, industrial wastewater and some storm water runoff are subject to government permitting requirements. In most cases, these wastes must be treated before discharge to abate pollution. Permits specify the maximum allowable concentrations of pollutants in the discharge and the frequency and type of monitoring required to show compliance. Pollution abatement by dilution is no longer allowed. The segregation of incidental water streams, such as non-contact cooling water or storm water runoff, from process wastewater is almost universally required. Even clean, incidental wastewater streams require a permit.

Most nonaqueous liquids (including solvents, oils, and sludge) and some solids and gases are regulated as hazardous substances or hazardous wastes during their generation, use, collection, storage, transportation, treatment, and disposal. Some aqueous wastes that are not regulated under a wastewater permit are regulated as either hazardous substances or hazardous wastes.

As a result of these regulations, plumbing designers must either consult with an experienced environmental engineer or become familiar with the various environmental requirements to ensure an acceptable installation. New facilities must meet both environmental and plumbing code requirements. For novel manufacturing processes, the designer, environmental engineer, and owner may be required to work with regulatory authorities during the design stage to ensure compliance with the intent of the various codes and regulations. The designer is responsible for producing an installation with a low probability of failure. For plumbing design, this means minimizing the possibility of leaks and providing a means to limit the impact of spills on the public's safety and the environment.

DEFINITIONS

Hazardous substance Under Section 311 of the Clean Water Act, the EPA has compiled a list of hazardous substances (40 CFR 116). If a substance on this list is spilled or discharged, it must be reported to the EPA.

Priority pollutant The Natural Resources Defense Council and the EPA determine priority toxic pollutants. These pollutants have been incorporated into several regulatory programs, including NPDES permits, pretreatment standards (40 CFR 403), hazardous wastes (40 CFR 261), and CERCLA (42 USC 103).

Hazardous wastes The EPA has adopted regulations to control hazardous wastes under RCRA. These regulations (40 CFR 261) list hazardous wastes, including specific chemicals and mixtures defined by their characteristics. It should be noted that controls under RCRA apply to waste only and not to hazardous substances that are being stored prior to use in product manufacturing or that are to be reclaimed, recycled, or reused. RCRA regulates the generation, transportation, storage, treatment, and disposal of hazardous wastes.

Hazardous materials This term means substances or materials that have been determined by the secretary of transportation, under 49 CFR 172, to be capable of posing an unreasonable risk to health, safety, and property when transported in commerce. Chemicals included in this definition are hazardous substances, hazardous wastes, most of the priority pollutants, and many other chemicals in commerce that are too numerous to mention here. In this chapter, the term "hazardous materials" is used to describe all the previously defined materials and substances.

For detailed listings of these and other regulated chemicals and wastes, refer to the regulations cited in the above definitions.

REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

The most important pieces of environmental legislation affecting the design of plumbing systems for hazardous material and waste facilities serving industrial plants are the Clean Water Act (CWA), Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), and Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA), otherwise known as Superfund. These regulations, promulgated by the EPA and enforced by either the EPA or counterpart state agencies, provide a comprehensive framework of pollution control. The National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permitting program has recently been revised to include the discharge of storm water from selected industrial sites. Current EPA regulations can be found in the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), which is an annually updated compendium of all federal regulations. Any updates or regulation changes after the last publication date of the CFR can be found in the Federal Register, a daily government newspaper in which all agencies and departments publish their notices, proposals, and final regulations. Most states with counterpart regulations have similar codifications and newspapers.

The great body of codes and regulations can easily be a labyrinth, even for those persons with a good understanding of the overall outline and purpose of the statutes. Anyone with questions should not hesitate to seek advice from trade groups, regulatory officials, environmental engineers, lawyers, and other specialists as needed. Numerous current event reporting services digest federal and state regulatory actions and publish readable evaluations as well as reprints of important regulations, policies, and case notes.

Clean Water Act

The CWA establishes a mechanism for setting uniform national standards for discharge to surface waters and sewers. The EPA has established categorical effluent standards, usually prorated to production volume, for 56 industrial classifications under the Effluent Guidelines Program Plan. The affected industries are listed in Table 3-1. The EPA has also promulgated general standards for discharge to public sewer systems. These standards restrict pollutants that

Table 3-1 Industries Affected by the Effluent Guidelines Program Plan

Number	Industry Category
1	Aluminum Forming
2	Asbestos Manufacturing
3	Battery Manufacturing
4	Canned and Preserved Fruits and Vegetable
	Processing
5	Canned and Preserved Seafood Processing
6	Carbon Black Manufacturing
7	Cement Manufacturing
8	Centralized Waste Treatment
9	Coal Mining
10	Coil Coating
11	Concentrated Animal Feeding Operations
12	Concentrated Aquatic Animal Production
13	Copper Forming
14	Dairy Products Processing
15	Electrical and Electronic Components
16	Electroplating
17	Explosives Manufacturing
18	Ferroalloy Manufacturing
19	Fertilizer Manufacturing
20	Glass Manufacturing
21	Grain Mills
22	Gum and Wood Chemicals
23	Hospitals
24	Ink Formulating
25	Inorganic Chemicals
26	Iron and Steel Manufacturing
27	Landfills
28	Leather Tanning and Finishing
29	Meat and Poultry Products
30	Metal Finishing
31	Metal Molding and Casting
32	Metal Products and Machinery
33	Mineral Mining and Processing
34	Nonferrous Metals Forming and Metal Powders
35	Nonferrous Metals Manufacturing
36	Oil and Gas Extraction
37	Ore Mining and Dressing
38	Organic Chemicals, Plastics, and Synthetic Fibers
39	Paint Formulating
40	Paving and Roofing Materials (Tars and Asphalt)
41	Pesticide Chemicals
42	Petroleum Refining
43	Pharmaceutical Manufacturing
44	Phosphate Manufacturing
45	Photographic
46	Plastic Molding and Forming
47	Porcelain Enameling
48	Pulp, Paper, and Paperboard
49	Rubber Manufacturing
50	Soaps and Detergents Manufacturing
51	Steam Electric Power Generating
52	Sugar Processing
53	
54	I Imper Products Processing
55	I iransportation Equipment Cleaning
56	VVASTE COMDUSTORS

interfere with sewage treatment, pass through the system untreated, damage sewer lines or treatment facilities, or overload treatment processes.

State laws and regulations follow the federal format, with a few important differences. All states are allowed to make their regulations more stringent than the federal standards. Additionally, some states regulate discharges to the land (and hence to the groundwater). States also set goals for water quality levels in streams, lakes, and coastal waters. They then determine the allowable loading of each pollutant and allocate portions of that loading based on low-flow conditions where dilution is minimal. Water qualitybased discharge permit limits are almost always more stringent than industry-wide limits of the categorical effluent standards.

Two types of water discharge permits may require treatment processes. Permits for a direct discharge into a surface water (stream, lake, ocean) are called National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permits. These permits may be issued by the EPA or a state or jointly, depending on the location. Application is required well in advance of initiating a discharge.

The other type of industrial discharge permit is obtained from a publicly owned treatment works (POTW). Industrial discharges to a POTW are called indirect discharges and are regulated by pretreatment ordinances to ensure that the POTW meets the conditions of its NPDES permit. The ordinances are usually administered by the POTW, except when the industrial discharge is large, the POTW fails to meet its permit requirements, or the discharge is from an industry regulated under the Effluent Guidelines Program Plan.

RCRA and CERCLA

These two laws, together with the federal and state regulations derived from them, have had a major impact on the industrial management of hazardous substances and hazardous wastes. Almost all nonaqueous liquids, many aqueous mixtures, and many solids and gases are regulated when they become wastes or are spilled.

The purpose of CERCLA is to limit the uncontrolled release or threat of release of hazardous substances into the environment and to provide for a coordinated and effective response to mitigate actual releases. CERCLA requires industrial risk evaluations, in the form of contingency plans, and establishes a mechanism for governmental response to environmental and health hazards. CERCLA does not require any permits and does not force changes in current hazardous substance handling methods. Nevertheless, a great deal of publicity can result when the mishandling of hazardous substances leads to an environmental incident. There also can be an enormous cost to dispose of the hazardous wastes generated during a spill. These are strong inducements to chemical manufacturers and users to install process systems that minimize risk.

RCRA's purpose is similar to CERCLA's, except that RCRA regulates hazardous wastes from ongoing manufacturing activities. The goals of RCRA are accomplished through strict licensing and operational standards for every aspect of hazardous waste management.

RCRA requires identification numbers and/or permits for every hazardous waste activity. The permit application requirements are lengthy and technical for some of the regulated activities. In some cases, the regulations give performance standards that the designer must meet to obtain a permit for the facility. In other cases, the compliance method is almost completely specified. Obtaining RCRA permits for a facility may take six months and may require public hearings and disclosure of detailed process and waste information, including chemical material safety data sheets (MSDS).

When evaluating waste streams to determine if they are regulated as hazardous wastes, it is important to check both federal and state regulations. This is because states are allowed to be more stringent than the EPA. States may define certain wastes as hazardous when the EPA doesn't consider them so. For example, waste oil is considered hazardous by many states, but not by the EPA.

The relationship between RCRA and CERCLA is shown by this example: A tank containing a hazardous substance begins to leak onto the ground. Under CER-CLA, the owner must notify the EPA and the state, stop the leak, and clean up the spilled material. If the owner fails to take action, the regulatory agency may act under CERCLA and then seek reimbursement up to triple the cost of its expenses. Under RCRA, the spilled hazardous substance and any contaminated soil become hazardous waste. The hazardous waste must be removed, stored, transported, and disposed of in accordance with RCRA requirements.

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

For plumbing designers, the challenge is to design systems that minimize the chance of leaks, contain any spills that might occur, and segregate hazardous substances from both nonhazardous process streams and incompatible hazardous process streams. The design of a system that anticipates the potential for leaks and spills must include suitable materials, reliable joining, good fabrication, and provision for the secondary containment of liquids in areas and systems that pose a high spill risk.

Many leaks occur as a result of material incompatibility between the equipment and either the hazardous substances handled or the atmosphere in

	•	
Containment Materials	Advantages	Disadvantages
Carbon steel	Compatible with petroleum products and dry organics and incompatible with many aqueous solutions.	Subject to attack by corrosive soils and chemicals.
Stainless steel	Better corrosion resistance than carbon steel and higher structural strength—There are more than 70 standard types of stainless steel and many special alloys.	Corroded by chloride and exposure to reducing environments.
Fiberglass-reinforced plastic (FRP)	Compatible with a wide range of petroleum and chemical products, if proper resin is selected.	Lacks the structural strength and impact resistance of steel tanks.
Polyvinyl chloride	Excellent chemical resistance to acids, alkalis, and gasoline.	Lower structural strength than steels, generally not suited for the storage or handling of organic solvents such as benzene, carbon tetrachloride, and acetone, or use at temperatures above 140°F (60°C).
Concrete	Generally good resistance to alkaline chemicals, epoxy coatings often applied to concrete to increase chemical resistance.	Subject to cracking and spalling with changes in temperature such as during freeze/thaw cycles, uncoated concrete absorbs solvents.
Polypropylene	Resistance to all aqueous solutions except strong oxidizers.	Low structural strength, temperature limit of $248^{\circ}F$ (120°C).
Lined steel	Chemical resistance of plastic and structural strength of steel.	Relatively high cost for material and installation.

Table 3-2 General Properties of Materials Used for Storage Tanks and Piping

which the equipment is utilized. The incompatibility can be physical, such as polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipes melting at high temperatures or plastic pipes dissolving in solvents they were not designed to contain. Table 3-2 lists the general properties of the most common tank and pipe materials. Specific applications should be checked with the appropriate chemical compatibility references from the manufacturer.

Even the best designed liquid-handling systems are subject to occasional failure, particularly during liquid transfer operations. Secondary containment is an important aspect of any hazardous material system design to protect employees and the environment. Secondary containment may include a dike around a tank or tank farm or pipes within pipes for systems handling extremely hazardous liquids. Common secondary containment systems typically have the following features:

- Containment floors, pads, ponds, and dikes constructed of materials impervious to the substance stored
- Perimeter diking and storage reservoirs sized to contain 110 percent of the largest tank plus the maximum rainfall predicted to occur over 24 hours once in 10 years in exterior areas (or 20 minutes of sprinkler water flow for interior areas)
- Pumps, drain valves, or siphons to empty the secondary containment area to either a storage tank or a treatment facility

• Controls and procedures to prevent the accidental release of contained spills and an alarm system to notify operations personnel if a spill occurs

Minimal equipment and practices for preventing transfer spills should include overfill prevention including level sensors, gauges and a high-level alarm, automatic valve and pump shutdown, established transfer procedures including an operator on duty, proper curbing and containment, redundant valves and controls, vapor recovery, alarms, regular inspections, and a maintenance program. The equipment used in water treatment is operated to achieve the following: mixing and flocculation, sedimentation, clarification, filtering, turbidity removal, metals removal, and disinfection.

Historically, underground tanks up to 10,000 gallons (37,854 L) in capacity and occasionally larger have been preferred for hazardous materials, primarily to minimize fire risks. Unfortunately, many of these tanks were kept in service too long and, because of corrosion, have leaked and contaminated drinking water supplies. As a result, designers now must compare the environmental and fire risks of the aboveground tank. In either case, more attention must be given in the design to ensure that an installation is resistant to leaks and capable of containing spills. Soil conditions and groundwater levels, which affect the design, must be evaluated for each installation. Secondary containment of these tanks is the primary method of ensuring against leakage.


Figure 3-1 Acid/Caustic Neutralization Diagram

Note: Not to scale.

ELEMENTS OF AN INDUSTRIAL WASTEWATER HANDLING SYSTEM

pH Control

Neutralization for pH control involves the chemical reaction of an acid with an alkaline substance (a base), resulting in the formation of a salt and water. In an aqueous solution, the acid or base molecules dissociate and form ions. Sulfuric acid is presented in the solution as H^+ (hydrogen) and SO_4 (sulfate) ions and caustic soda as Na^+ (sodium) and OH^- (hydroxide) ions. The H^+ ions of the sulfuric acid and the OH^- ions of the caustic soda have a strong attraction to each other and combine to form H_2O (water). For example, in the neutralization reaction of H_2SO_4 (sulfuric acid) and NaOH (sodium hydroxide), the following process occurs:

Ium nyuroxide), the following process occur

 $H_{2}^{+}SO_{4} + 2Na^{+}OH^{-}Na_{2}^{+}SO_{4} + 2H_{2}O$

If excess hydrogen ions remain, the liquid will be acidic, and with a surplus of hydroxide ions, the liquid will be alkaline.

The acidity or alkalinity of a solution is expressed on the pH scale, with neutral water at a pH of 7, in the middle of the range between extremely acid (pH = 0) and extremely alkaline (pH = 14). The scale is logarithmic, so a pH of 3 is 10 times more acidic than a pH of 4. Buffers, such as bicarbonate/carbonate, undergo a chemical change when strong acids or bases are added to a solution and thereby act as capacitors that must be filled before the pH will change. A typical two-stage, continuous-flow pH neutralization process is shown in Figure 3-1. For flows less than 10 gallons per minute (gpm) (37.85 L/min), neutralizing in a batch basis, with two tanks alternating between collection and treatment, is sometimes preferred.

The most critical feature of the pH adjustment system is the controller that activates the chemical feed pumps. The controller must have the ability to prevent overfeeding of either acid or base, which would cause wide pH swings and subsequent repetitive chemical additions. Overfeeding is most probable in wastewater with no buffering capacity near the pH setpoint (e.g., deionized and soft water). Controllers with multi-rate response adjustment should be specified for each application.

Sulfuric acid is the most costly method for pH adjustment purposes, although in some cases the commercial 93 percent acid must be diluted prior to use. The manufacturer's recommendations for materials of construction, control of the heat of dilution, and safety precautions should be carefully followed. Carbon steel pipe and tanks are commonly used for 93 percent sulfuric acid, with stainless alloy 20 (a high nickel alloy) valves, as well as PVC and chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastics. For sulfuric acid at concentrations below 93 percent, polypropylene (PP), fiberglass-reinforced plastic (FRP), PVC, CPVC, and lined steel are preferred.

Sodium hydroxide (caustic or caustic soda) in 50 percent solution is the most convenient commercial





Figure 3-3 Treatment System with Wastewater Stream Segregation

Note: Not to scale.



Figure 3-4 Typical Continuous Treatment of Wastewater and Solids-handling System for Heavy Metals Note: Not to scale.

alkaline material for pH adjustment. Unfortunately, 50 percent caustic freezes at 54° F (12.2°C), so indoor storage or heated tanks are necessary. (Note that 20 percent caustic freezes at -18° F [-27.7°C].) Caustic solutions may be handled in carbon steel, stainless steel, and PVC tanks and pipe. Lime and hydrated lime are considerably less expensive than caustic but must be fed with dry feeders and/or slurry tanks, which require considerable maintenance. Consequently, lime is favored in applications where the cost outweighs the convenience of caustic.

Removal of Dissolved and Suspended Metals

Another common industrial wastewater treatment requirement is the removal of dissolved and suspended metals. The most popular method is to separate cyanide and chromium VI wastewater sources from each other and all other metal-bearing wastewaters. The cyanide is destroyed by oxidation with chlorine (or a sodium hypochlorite solution) at a pH of 9 to 11, and the chromium VI is reduced to chromium III with sulfur dioxide or sodium bisulfate at a pH of 2. Various treatment methods are shown in Figures 3-2, 3-3, and 3-4.

For trace metals up to 1,000 parts per million (ppm), the use of ion-exchange vessels containing resin beads tailored to the application may be considered. Ion exchange is a reversible chemical reaction wherein an ion (an atom or molecule that has lost or gained an electron and thus acquired an electrical charge) from a wastewater solution is exchanged for a similarly charged ion attached to an immobile solid particle. These solid ion particles are either naturally occurring inorganic zeolites or synthetically produced organic resins, which are the predominant type used today because their characteristics can be tailored to specific applications. This process is similar to the process for purifying water for laboratory or process applications. The exact ion combinations are based on the metals to be removed. The exchange vessels can be sized for the wastewater flow, or multiple vessels can be manifolded together to handle higher wastewater flows or to allow standby capacity. Automated controls and accessories can be furnished to back-flush or regenerate the vessels. The removed metals can then be reclaimed or safely disposed. This technology should be evaluated against other technologies for overall operating cost based on size and the type of application.



Note: Not to scale.

Oil/Water Separation

Oil/water separation may involve free-floating oils, mechanical emulsions or diversions, and chemical emulsions. The size of the oil droplets in emulsions may range from less than 20 microns (μ) to more than 150 μ . In selecting the separation equipment, the designer must consider the oil quantities, droplet size, presence of emulsifiers, temperature of the water and oil, difference in the specific gravity of the fluids, fluid viscosity, pH, and other wastewater constituents.

Separators are on the market to suit every situation, including simple settling tanks (e.g., American Petroleum Institute separators), tanks with coalescing media to promote the agglomeration of dispersed oils, and tanks with chemical pretreatment to promote the separation of chemically emulsified oils. Equipment options include sludge removal and automatic oil skimming. In special conditions, such as where oil is mixed with and adheres to suspended solids, dissolved-air flotation separators may be necessary. Figure 3-5 shows a unit designed to remove free and mechanically emulsified oil.

Biological Treatment

Wastewater discharging directly to surface or groundwater must be treated to remove organic compounds, which would deplete the dissolved oxygen in the receiving water. Typically, permits allow an average of 30 milligrams per liter of five-day biological oxygen demand (BOD5). Treatment is accomplished by processes that convert soluble organic compounds to biological cell mass, which can be separated from the effluent by gravity in a clarifier. Colloidal material and some nondegradable compounds are normally absorbed in the settled solids.

Biological wastewater treatment plants are expensive to build and operate, and specialized experience is necessary to produce a successful design. Consequently, a company faced with biological treatment requirements should first compare the feasibility and economics of discharging to a municipal treatment system to building its own facility. If the build alternative is indicated, a choice must be made among the available application methods, including activated sludge, aerated lagoons, trickling filters and rotating filters, and the anaerobic process. Expert advice is warranted.

REFERENCES

Codes and Standards

- ANSI/ASME B31.3: Process Piping
- API Spec 12D: Specification for Field Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids
- API Spec 12F: Specification for Shop Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids
- API Std 650: Welded Tanks for Oil Storage
- International Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
- FM Global Data Sheet 7-83: Drainage Systems for Flammable Liquids
- NFPA 30: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code
- UL 142: Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids.

Government Publications

- Activated Carbon Process for the Treatment of Wastewater Containing Hexavalent Chromium, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
- *Effluent Limitation Guidelines*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
- Treatment of Organic Chemical Manufacturing Wastewater for Reuse, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
- Technology for the Storage of Hazardous Liquids: A State-of-the-Art Review, New York State Department of Environmental Conservation
- CFR 40: *Protection of Environment*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

Technology and Industry Handbooks

- DeRenzo, D.J., Corrosion Resistant Materials Handbook, 4th edition, William Andrew Publishing/Noyes, 1985.
- *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, John Wiley and Sons Inc., 2004.

- Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook, 8th edition, McGraw-Hill, 2008.
- Schweitzer, Philip A., *Handbook of Corrosion Resistant Piping*, 2nd edition, Krieger Publishing, 1985.
- *Ion Exchange for Heavy Metal Removal*, Wastech Controls and Engineering.

RESOURCES

- American National Standards Institute: ansi. org
- American Petroleum Institute: api.org
- American Society of Mechanical Engineers: asme. org
- National Fire Protection Association: nfpa.org
- National Technical Information Service: ntis. gov
- New York State Department of Environmental Conservation: www.dec.ny.gov
- U.S. Government Printing Office: gpoaccess.gov
- Underwriters Laboratories: ul.com

GREENALLØYS

Leading the Way in Clean Water Regulatory Responsibility	C
Concast started producing lead-free copper alloys in 1993— naming them GreenAlloys [™] , lead-free copper alloys that	C
contain recycled content and qualify for LEED credits.	C

At Concast, we manufacture a broad selection of environmentally friendly lead-free copper alloys in solid, tube, rectangular, hex and shapes to fit your application-specific needs.

Designed to meet regulatory challenges, these alloys are widely used by the plumbing and water handling markets.

With extremely low lead content, often as low as .05%, GreenAlloys[™] maintains the lubricity, tightness, wear, strength, hardness and machinability of our standard products while delivering the consistent and reliable performance our customers require.

C89320
C89325
C89831
C89833
C89835
C89844
*C90300
*C95400
federalloy [®]
C87850 Eco Brass®

*Standard Stocked Alloys



P.O. Box 816 | Mars, PA 16046 1.800.626.7071 | 724.538.3956 fax greenalloys@concast.com | www.concast.com

C2011 Concast Metal Products Co.

I.800.626.7071 www.greenalloys.com



Scan with your smart phone to download our Metal Reference Guide.

Irrigation Systems

The function of an automatic irrigation system is to provide and distribute a predetermined amount of water to economically produce and maintain ornamental shrubs, cultivated lawns, and other large turf areas. Other benefits of an automatic irrigation system include convenience, full landscape coverage, easy control for overnight and early morning watering, and minimized plant loss during drought.

This chapter discusses the basic design criteria and components of irrigation systems for ornamental lawns and turf. Among the factors considered are water quality and requirements, soil type, system concepts, and system components. A design information sheet is also provided in Appendix A to assist the plumbing engineer in the orderly collection of the required field information and other pertinent data.

WATER QUALITY AND REQUIREMENTS

In urban areas where the source of the water supply is often the municipal water system, the plumbing engineer does not need to be concerned with the quality of the water. In cases where private or reclaimed water sources are used and the water quality is unknown, the water should be analyzed by the appropriate local health authority prior to use. The three main areas of concern are:

- Any silt content that, if high, may result in the baking and sealing of soil
- Any industrial waste that may be harmful to good growth
- Any soluble salts that may build up in the root area

The most common solution currently available for handling excessive amounts of silt is the construction of a settling basin, usually in the form of a decorative lake or pond. In those areas where the salt content is excessive, 1,000 parts per million (ppm) or more, the inability of the soil to cope with the problem may require the use of special highly salt-tolerant grasses.

The quantity of water required for an effective irrigation system is a function of the type of grass,

the soil, and local weather conditions. The quantity of water is usually expressed as the depth of the water applied during a given period over the area to be covered. The amount of water applied to a given area can be controlled easily by adjusting the irrigation system's length and frequency of operation. An efficient irrigation system takes into consideration the rate of the application of the water, usually expressed in inches per hour, and the attempt to match the application rate with the absorption rate of the soil. Often, this condition is achieved through frequent short watering cycles.

SOIL CONSIDERATIONS

Sandy, porous soils have relatively high absorption rates and can handle the high output of the sprinklers. Steep slopes and very tight, nonporous soils require low precipitation rates to avoid erosion damage and wasteful runoff.

A sufficient amount of water must be applied during each irrigation period to ensure penetration to the root zone. Table 4-1 suggests guidelines for several soil profiles (net amount of water to apply per irrigation cycle). In the absence of any specific information on the soil and local weather conditions, the irrigation system may be designed for $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38.1 mm) of water per week. The plumbing engineer should consult with the local administrative authority to determine compliance with the applicable codes in the jurisdiction. The engineer can obtain specific information on the soil and local weather conditions by contacting a local weather bureau, university, or state engineer.

Table 4-1	Net Amount of Water to Apply
	per Irrigation Cycle

Soil Profile	Amount, in. (mm)				
Coarse, sandy soils	0.45 (11.43)				
Fine, sandy loams	0.85 (21.59)				
Silt loams	1.10 (27.94)				
Heavy clay or clay loams	0.90 (22.86)				

Note: Net amount of moisture required based on 12 in. (304.8 mm) root depth.

SYSTEM CONCEPTS

The three basic system concepts that can be used by the engineer in the design of an irrigation network are the block method, the quick-coupling method, and the valve-per-sprinkler method.

The block system is an approach in which a single valve controls the flow of water to several sprinklers. It is ideal for residential and other small turf areas. Either manual or automatic valves may be used in the block system. As the irrigation area increases or where high-volume sprinklers are employed, the block system becomes less attractive to the engineer because of the large valves and pipelines required. Examples of the block system are shown in Figure 4-1.

The quick-coupling irrigation system is an alternative to the high cost incurred on large block system projects because the quick-coupling valve provides a more flexible irrigation system. The valve is located underground but can be activated from the surface. Where manpower is not critical and security is reasonable, the quick-coupling irrigation system may be considered by the engineer. An example of a quickcoupling valve is shown in Figure 4-2.

The last concept in sprinkler system design is the valve-per-sprinkler method. Small actuator valves, operated at low voltage, provide great flexibility and control. Sprinklers in diverse areas having the same (or similar) water requirements may be operated concurrently. In other applications, such as quarter applications covering quarter circles or half circles, the irrigation sprinklers may be piped, wired, and operated together through system programmers. The valve-per-sprinkler system provides the opportunity to standardize the pipe sizes by selecting the appropriate sprinklers to be operated at any given time. Figure 4-3 illustrates this design.

SYSTEM COMPONENTS

Sprinklers

One of the most important steps when designing an irrigation system is selecting the sprinklers, which are mechanical devices with nozzles used to distribute water by converting water pressure to a high-velocity discharge stream. Many different types of sprinklers are manufactured for a variety of system applications. The plumbing engineer should become knowledgeable of the various types before selecting the sprinklers, as the flow rates and operating pressures must be nearly the same in each of the irrigation system's circuits.

Spray Sprinklers

Surface-type spray and pop-up spray sprinklers (see Figure 4-4) produce a single sheet of water and cover a relatively small area, about 10 to 20 feet (3.05 to 6.10 m) in radius. These sprinklers can operate on a low-pressure range of 15 to 35 pounds per square inch (psi) (103.4 to 241.3 kPa). They apply the water at a



Figure 4-1 Examples of a Block System



Figure 4-2 Quick-coupling Valve

high rate of application—1 to 2 inches per hour (25.4 to 50.8 mm/hour)—and are most economical in small turf or shrub areas and in irregularly shaped areas.

Due to the fine spray design, the pattern can be easily distorted by the wind; therefore, these sprinklers should be installed in protected areas.

Impact Sprinklers

Impact sprinklers (see Figure 4-5) can be permanent or movable and either the riser-mounted type (see Figure 4-2) or the pop-up rotary type (see Figure 4-6).

Impact sprinklers have an adjustable, revolving water stream and are available in both single-nozzle and double-nozzle designs. These devices can operate at a higher pressure (25 to 100 psi [172.3 to 689.5 kPa]) and cover larger areas (40 to 100 feet [12.2 to 30.5 m] in radius). The water is applied at a lower rate (0.20 to 0.5 inches per hour [5.08 to 12.7 mm/hour]). Because of its larger, more compact stream of water, this sprinkler is not easily distorted by the wind and is most economical in large, open turf areas.

Freestanding sprinklers are not desirable where they are exposed. In such cases, the pop-up, rotarytype sprinklers shown in Figure 4-6 may be used. These nozzles rise above the ground level only when the water is being delivered to the unit.

CONTROLLER 5 4 5 6 6 -Typical Control Line (Station 5) 3 2 2 3 2 2 3 6 1. Main can supply four 4. Six control stations 20 gpm (75.7 L/min) required. sprinklers at one time. Similar numbered 2. 60' (18.3 m) square

spacing

- 3. Maximum loss per station = 2.3 psi (15.9 kPa)
- heads on same control station.
- 6. All lateral pipe is $1^{1/4}$ " (32 mm).

Figure 4-3 Valve-in-Head System

Figure 4-4 Pop-up Spray Heads

Photo courtesy of Rain Bird Corporation



Figure 4-5 Impact Sprinkler
Photo courtesy of Rain Bird Corporation



Figure 4-6 Rotor Sprinkler— Arcs and Full Circles Photo courtesy of Rain Bird Corporation



Figure 4-7 Nozzles—Adjustable Arcs and Patterns Photo courtesy of Rain Bird Corporation

Half-circle rotary sprinklers can discharge the same volume of water as full-circle units. A halfcircle rotary sprinkler can provide the same amount of water as a full-circle unit over half the area, doubling the application rate. Quarter-circle sprinklers will quadruple the application rate. Some equipment manufacturers use different nozzles to compensate for the reduced area and to provide a uniform application rate. If compensating nozzles are not used in half-circle sprinklers, these units must be valved and operated separately for a balanced application of the water.

Shrub Sprinklers

Several types of shrub sprinklers are available, including bubblers (see Figure 4-7), flat-spray sprinklers, and stream-spray sprinklers. Shrub sprinklers can be mounted on risers to spray over plants. If the plants are tall and not dense near the ground, shrub sprinklers can be used on short risers, and the spray can be directed under the plants. The spray also can be kept below the plant. Flat-spray shrub heads are best employed for these applications.

Trickle Irrigation

Trickle irrigation is commonly used in vineyards and orchards and routed through tubing with special emitters installed at each planting. Most emitters have flexible orifices and may have provisions for adding fertilizer. These irrigation systems have a low-volume usage and usually are not installed in conjunction with conventional lawn sprinkler systems.

Valves

Remote-control valves are generally classified into three basic categories: electric, hydraulic, and thermalhydraulic. The electrically operated valve receives an electric signal from the controller and actuates a solenoid in the valve. This solenoid opens and closes the control valve. The hydraulic control valve is operated with the water pressure and has control tubing from the controller to the valve. The thermal-hydraulic control valve uses an electric signal from the controller to heat up the components of the valve to open the unit. The most common use of this valve is to control the water usage to the different zones.

These devices should be installed with access for maintenance. Most control valves have some provisions for manual operation. In some systems, manual control valves are installed in pits or vaults with a long T-handle wrench used for the activation of each circuit.

An irrigation system may be installed with an automatic check valve on the sprinkler heads. When a zone is installed on sloping terrain, these valves will close when they sense a low pressure at turnoff, preventing the drainage of the supply pipe through a sprinkler head installed in a lower area. Atmospheric vacuum breakers (see Figure 4-8) must be installed on every sprinkler circuit downstream of the control valve to eliminate the possibility of back-siphonage into the potable water system. Many (if not all) local jurisdictions require this type of valve. The plumbing designer should consult with the local administrative authority and check all applicable codes for such requirements.

Pressure-reducing valves are installed where high street pressures are involved and also are commonly used to maintain a constant pressure where the inlet pressures may vary. Some manufacturers offer remote-

control valves with pressure regulation.

Low-flow control valves may be installed to avoid damage to the piping or tubing from pressure surges during the filling of a (dry) system. This control valve allows a slow filling of the piping or tubing until the pressure is established.

In climates where freezing conditions may occur, automatic-type drain valves should be installed at the low points of the system to allow for drainage of the system. This control valve will open automatically when the water pressure drops below a set point. In heavy or dense soils, a pit of gravel should be provided for quick drainage.

Backflow Devices

An irrigation system may be installed with an automatic check valve on the sprinklers. When a zone is installed on sloping terrain, these valves will close when they sense a low pressure at turnoff, preventing drainage of the supply pipe through a sprinkler head installed in a low area.

The use of pressure vacuum breakers to eliminate the possibility of back-siphonage into the potable water system is the minimum level of backflow prevention accepted by most jurisdictions. The plumbing engineer should consult with the local administrative authority and check all applicable codes for such requirements.

Controllers

Presently, many types of controllers for irrigation systems are available. Selection of this device is based on the specific application involved. Controllers are programmed to activate each irrigation zone at a specific time and also will control the length of time that each zone is activated. Some controllers have



Figure 4-8 Installation of Atmospheric-type Vacuum Breakers



Figure 4-9 Irrigation Sprinkler Programmers

a calendar that allows the irrigation system to be used only on certain days. Other types of controllers have manual (or automatic) overrides to shut down all systems during rain or to turn on specific zones for extra water. Some controllers have soil moisture monitors, which turn on zones only when needed. Controller panels can be surface mounted, recessed mounted, or pedestal mounted. Figure 4-9 shows a typical illustration of a surface-mounted irrigation system programmer.

Water Metering

Several municipalities charge sewage fees for water used because the water ends up in the building drainage system and eventually in the sewage treatment plant. Because of this, it is good practice to provide a second water tap and a second meter connected to the irrigation system. This meter will gage the amount of water used for irrigation, and the user will not be charged for sewage fees.

Rain Shutoff Device

A rain shutoff device should always be installed on an irrigation system. This device, which is tied to the controller, detects rainfall and prevents the controller from operating and wasting water.

DESIGN INFORMATION

When designing an underground sprinkler system, the plumbing engineer should consider the following factors: the site plan, type of plants, type of soil, type and source of water, and system location.

Site Plan

An accurate site plan, preferably laid out to scale and showing all buildings, shrubs, trees, hedges, walks, drives, and parking, should be drawn as accurately as possible. The site plan also should include any buried utilities such as electrical wiring and gas lines and their depth. Areas where overspray is undesirable, such as on walkways and buildings, should be clearly noted. Property lines also should be shown on the site plan. The heights and diameters of shrubs and hedges should be indicated.

When an irrigation system is installed on a site with an existing irrigation system, the plumbing designer should review the existing irrigation plans and connect to the existing system to avoid another water tap.

Types of Plantings

The engineer should show the areas that will be irrigated on the site plan as well as the areas that will be omitted. Those areas that require a different style of sprinkler and separate zoning also should be indicated. Some plantings require more frequent watering than others; therefore, they will require a separate zone and control valve. The engineer should determine whether the plantings allow spray on their leaves (or any other special type of spray) and should select the sprinklers accordingly.

Type of Soil

The type of soil determines the proper rate of application of water to the soil. The length and frequency of the applications can be determined by considering the soil and the types of plants.

A sufficient amount of water must be applied during each irrigation period to ensure penetration to the root zone. Table 4-1 recommends acceptable guidelines for several types of soil profiles. Where available, the engineer should secure local soil and weather conditions by contacting the local state extension engineer, a university, or the weather bureau. The local weather bureau usually publishes an evapotranspiration guide, which shows the deficit water required to maintain turf grass. This value is compiled by measuring the rainfall minus the evaporation taking place during a particular period. The balance is the amount of water required. In the absence of any specific information on local soil and weather conditions, the irrigation system should be designed for a minimum of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38.1 mm) of water per week.

Sandy, porous soils (as previously indicated) have relatively high absorption rates and can handle the high output of sprinklers. Steep slopes and very tight, nonporous soils require low precipitation rates to avoid erosion damage and runoffs.

Type and Source of Water

The source of the water should be located on the site plan. If the water source is a well, the pump capacity, well depth, pump discharge pressure, and other pertinent data should also be recorded. If the water source is a city water main, the location, size, service-line material, and length of piping from the service line to the meter should be researched by the plumbing engineer. The water meter size and the static water pressure of the city main are also needed. The engineer should determine whether special meter pits or piping arrangements are required by the utility company.

System Location

Due to the influence of physical and local climatic conditions, the general area may require specific design considerations, such as drain valves on systems subjected to freezing temperatures. Windy areas require closer spacing of sprinklers, and the wind velocity and direction must be considered. For areas on sloping terrain, the outlet pressure will differ from the inlet pressure, and consideration must be made for system drainage.

The engineer must review local codes to determine acceptable piping materials, installation, requirements, and the approved connection to municipal water works.

REFERENCES

- *The ABCs of Lawn Sprinkler Systems*, Irrigation Association, Fairfax, Virginia.
- Pair, Claude H., ed., *Sprinkler Irrigation*, 4th edition, Sprinkler Irrigation Association, Silver Spring, Maryland.
- Architect-engineers Turf Sprinkler Manual, The Rainbird Company, Glendora, California.
- Design Information for Large Turf Irrigation Systems, The Toro Company, Riverside, California.
- Young, Virgil E., *Sprinkler Irrigation Systems*, Mister Rain Inc., Auburn, Washington.

RESOURCES

• The Irrigation Association: irrigation.org

APPENDIX 4-A

SUGGESTED INFORMATION SHEET FOR SPRINKLER SYSTEM DESIGN

All available information should be contained on this sheet, plot plan, or both.

1.	Project name Address						
2.	Water supply: a. Location and size of existing tap, meter, pump, or other						
	 c. Power supply: LocationVoltage d. Length, type, location, and size of existing supply line (identify on plan) 						
3.	. Area to be watered. Identify all planted areas whether shrubbery or trees; indicate clearance under trees (Identify on plan.)						
4.	Soil type: Light						
5.	. Hours per day and night allowed for irrigation						
6.	Amount of precipitation required per week						
7.	Area to be bordered or not watered (identify on plan)						
8.	Elevations and prevailing wind conditions (identify on plan)						
9.	Type of system: e. Automatic electric						
10.	Indicate equipment preference						
11.	Indicate preferred location for valves and controllers						
12.	Indicate vacuum breaker and/or drain valve requirement						
13.	Indicate pipe material preference: 2 ¹ / ₂ " and larger 2" and smaller						
14.	Indicate any preference for sprinkler riser types						
Spe	ecial Notes (use additional sheet if necessary)						



Reflecting Pools and Fountains

This chapter provides the necessary information for plumbing engineers and designers when a client wants to install a water feature on their project. The client may be the owner, architect, or landscape architect, and the water feature might be indoors, outdoors, or both. The plumbing engineer's responsibilities might be limited to plumbing and sewer design, or they could include other disciplines.

In the first meeting with the client, the plumbing engineer must determine what visual effect the client expects and also if they desire to add sound to the space or minimize sound in the space. They might want to add sound to mask other noises or to minimize sound from the water feature in the case of a restaurant or library. The engineer also should determine if the client expects the existing maintenance personnel to service the water feature or if they will contract with an outside maintenance service. The engineer must also determine if the budget will allow automatic chemical water treatment equipment or if hand-broadcasting of the chemicals will be utilized.

The next step is to determine where the equipment will be placed. To allow the use of flooded end-suction pumps, locating the equipment in a room in the building—preferably 2 feet (0.61 m) below the level of the water feature—is preferred. A less efficient, more costly, and nosier option is self-priming pumps, which have limits on their lift. A building may not even exist or might be so far away that placing the equipment therein may not be practical. (Several hundred feet away is usually not a problem.)

In projects with a low budget, the water feature might need to use submersible pumps. If that is the case, the pump selection should be limited to high-quality bronze submersible pumps that are Underwriters Laboratories (UL) listed for fountains. Filtration cannot be used in such cases unless the water feature contains a very small volume of water. Submersible pumps normally last about five to seven years, if they are high quality, before needing to be replaced, whereas flooded end-suction pumps can last 20 to 25 years, with only the pump seals needing periodic replacement.

Some of the leading fountain equipment manufacturers offer prepackaged, pre-assembled units containing a submersible pump in a number of ULlisted capacities as well as the necessary electrical junction boxes and drain valves, with all of the equipment concealed in a prefabricated box assembly with a grate to cover the opening.

USING THE BUILDING'S MECHANICAL AREA FOR FOUNTAIN EQUIPMENT

Installing the required equipment in a building's mechanical area is ideal for a number of reasons:

- The maintenance personnel are more apt to perform their work if the equipment is easily accessed.
- The equipment cost is less than that of furnishing the equipment in an underground vault since the costs of the vault and its installation are eliminated.
- The utilities that must be interconnected to the equipment are in close proximity to the equipment, thereby shortening pipe runs.

Many of the leading fountain equipment manufacturers provide equipment skids with all of the required equipment mounted and pre-plumbed on the skids (see Figure 5-1). Usually the equipment skids are no more than 30 inches (0.76 m) wide to afford them access through a 3-foot (0.91-m) door buck. In some situations, more than one skid might be required—one for the water display and another for the filtration equipment.

Oxidation reduction potential (ORP) equipment such as a bromine or chlorine feeder should not be located in the same area as the fountain equipment. When the tablets become moist, they tend to emit a gas that, when combined with water, creates an acid that will quickly deteriorate electrical contacts and also make it hazardous to service the equipment. This also applies if a vault outside the building is used to house the equipment. Usually, a separate mini-vault or container is provided to house the bromine or chlorine feeder.

The equipment that might be housed in the mechanical area include:

- Silver ion generator system
- UL-listed electrical panel in a sealed enclosure such as NEMA 4X-rated enclosures
- Wind control device (with the anemometer mounted externally)
- Display pump
- Filtration system (either cartridge or some media such as silica sand or diatomaceous earth)
- Timers for lighting, water display, and filtration (either mechanical or electronic)
- Pump strainers, valves, etc.

The space should be ventilated by means of an exhaust fan with a minimum capacity of 5 cubic feet per minute (cfm) ($0.14 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$) per horsepower of the display pump, with 300 cfm ($8.49 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$) as a minimum in the case of a small display pump. A small pit (about 1 cubic foot [0.03 m^3]) with a 4-inch (101.6 mm) open drain to waste should be included to receive the filtration discharge or excess water if an equipment failure with the piping or pumps occurred.

Many times, a building owner might place the equipment in a garage area, in which case it can be separated from the public space by a chain-link fence with a lock on the gate.

USING A SUBTERRANEAN VAULT FOR THE FOUNTAIN EQUIPMENT

A below-grade vault may be used to house the fountain equipment and the site electrical equipment. The



Figure 5-1 Pre-plumbed Equipment Skid

vault must include a hatch or workable and lockable door for access, an interior light, sump pump, and access ladder. If site electrical equipment is installed in the vault, a number of code requirements in addition to the plumbing codes must be followed.

The underground vault should be built with a concrete floor, either reinforced concrete block or precast, as well as poured-in-place concrete walls. It should be large enough to allow code-mandated clearances around the equipment.

Pre-plumbed vaults with all of the above-mentioned devices pre-installed are available (see Figure 5-2). These vaults are structurally certified and complete with stainless steel wire hold-downs to anchor



Figure 5-2 Equipment Vault

the vault to the concrete slab on which it sits. They come with features such as stainless steel access doors or a hatch with ventilation, eliminating the requirement for additional round ductwork for the vault's ventilation. They also have interior lights, an exhaust fan, sump pump, ladder, UL-listed electrical panel in the required NEMA enclosure, and the necessary valves.

In situations where both the site electrical and the fountain equipment are to be placed in an underground vault, it may be beneficial to utilize more than one vault (depending on the required size of the equipment to be installed in the vault), thereby separating the site electrical equipment from the fountain equipment. In such a situation, the vault with the fountain equipment would include the fountain's electrical panel. The vaults should have flat flange connectors on the exterior to prevent the need for penetrations to be created in the field.

Some systems, depending on the sophistication required, can have remote devices that send signals into the building, dial a particular telephone number, or e-mail a building automation or monitoring system to notify personnel that the filter needs to be backwashed or that the chemicals are out of balance.

It is important for the individual specifying the vault to require a licensed structural engineer to certify the vault, as well as a licensed electrical engineer to ensure that all electrical items installed in the vault are UL listed.

Note: Fiberglass vaults should be avoided because they do not have the structural integrity to withstand the elements or groundwater infiltration, and many do not come with UL-listed electrical assemblies.

SIZING THE DISPLAY PUMP

The basic calculation to size the pump uses the required gallons per minute (gpm) per nozzle and the maximum feet of head required to establish the requirement for the nozzles in the display, if any.

If the feature contains any weirs due to a water wall, waterfall, or multiple levels, the lineal footage of the weir and the thickness over the weir must be determined using the Francis formula:

Equation 5-1

$$Q = 3.33(L - 0.2H)H^{1.5}$$

where

Q= Water flow rate, cubic feet per second L= Length of the weir opening, feet (typically four to eight times H)

H= Head on the weir, feet

If the horizontal distance from the back of the weir edge to the front is extensive, keep in mind that the width of the flow will diminish slightly by the time it reaches the front weir edge. Also consider any losses due to pipes, valves, and possible abnormal changes in direction.

Applying these three considerations will provide the required pump gpm and head requirement, which will help choose the required pump. Then the electrical power required for the pump can be determined. (The various controls and lights would be added to determine the full electrical load.)

Once the pump and electrical requirements are determined, then the required vault dimensions, if using a vault, or the required floor area if the equipment is to be located in a mechanical room can be sized.

SAFETY

While safety is addressed late in this chapter, don't assume it is not important. In fact, it is a primary factor in the design. Safety cannot be sacrificed to accomplish any desired effect or cost-cutting by the client.

While electrical safety should be obvious, certain plumbing-related items also must be addressed very carefully. For instance, extreme suction pressure at return openings on either the fountain pool bottom or sidewall has caused injury and even death in some very prominent water features. It is wise to add additional suction fittings where the suction levels approach near-high levels to reduce the suction pressure and the size of each opening.

Water depth is another item to scrutinize very carefully. In many jurisdictions, water 24 inches (0.61 m) or deeper must follow the swimming pool code. As such depths can be a hazard for small children and animals, the tendency today is to keep water levels shallow to minimize liability issues. A water feature with a pool at the bottom or lowest level can be accomplished with a 16-inch (0.4-m) depth or less. Many of today's designs are just a wet surface, with the water going to a reservoir—either a tank or one formed of concrete—hidden from view. Minimum water depths also benefit chemical treatment. The illusion of depth may be achieved by merely painting the pool and all the devices therein black.

If the water feature even appears to be one that either people or small animals might enter, governing approval bodies are erring on the safe side and labeling them as "interactive."

CODES AND STANDARDS

In most states, the water feature design must be submitted to the Health Services Department, which might mandate following the swimming pool code or at least strongly suggest conformity. Unfortunately, many of the states differ in their water treatment requirements, and some states offer only guidelines, not mandated codes, to follow. It is strongly recommended to determine the local requirements, if any, prior to beginning the design.



Figure 5-3 Combination Suction Sump Pump and Discharge Plate

A number of design architects and landscape architects, either on their own or directed by owners, are dictating that the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety (VGB) Act be implemented in their designs. This act is so sweeping in nature that it is retroactive in certain respects. Under the act, many fountains that are purely decorative in design are being subjected to local health codes. Additionally, the VGB Act supersedes any state law or rule regarding the manufacture, sale, or distribution of any suction outlet cover that does not meet ASME A112.19.8 (2007): Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, and Hot Tubs or subsequent editions. In addition to the VGB Act, many governing bodies also request the use of UV systems for both aquatic playgrounds and interactive fountains.

The regulatory environment for water feature design can be very frustrating, as it not only affects time, but also equipment costs, which affect the overall project costs.

MATERIALS

The use of ferrous materials for both plumbing and electrical piping and fittings should be avoided as ferrous and iron materials will deteriorate and cause discoloration in the water feature. If pipe runs are very long, the material may be changed outside the actual water feature, but a dielectric fitting must be



Figure 5-4 Combination Overflow and Water Level Sensor

used to prevent electromagnetic fields, which can cause deterioration of the two different materials at the joint.

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), copper, and brass are the most common pipe materials. Keep in mind that if the PVC will be buried, heavy-duty pipe should be used to minimize the chance of it being crushed during the backfill operation. A number of jurisdictions do not allow the use of PVC for water lines under the theory that PVC could leach carcinogens into the system. However, these same jurisdictions may allow PVC for waste lines.

SYSTEM DEVICES IN POOLS AND MECHANICAL AREAS

The fountain pool, if the design indicates one or more, should have a return sump with diverter plate going to the display pump suction line (see Figure 5-3). This should be placed in the lowest pool if more than one pool is included.

An overflow fitting is mandatory. It may be placed in the pool floor, in the sidewalls individually, or in combination with water level sensors (see Figure 5-4) or drain plugs.

A water level control, either mechanical or electronic, is a beneficial device. If mechanical, the water fill will be located at the sidewall device. The mechanical device is a modified version of a toilet float in combination with a discharge that is made to fit in a sidewall niche, hidden by a brass plate set out slightly from the wall to allow water into the niche (see Figure 5-5). If electronic, a sensor must be placed in the lowest pool either independently or in a combination sidewall device, both of which send a low-voltage signal to a solenoid valve in the mechanical area that causes water to flow in a pipe and fill the pool to its pre-established level.

A backflow prevention device must be placed in line with the fill pipe. The type shall be designated by the local code or the national plumbing code if that is the prevailing code in the area.

Other devices that may be placed in the sidewall include a surface skimmer (see Figure 5-6) that connects to the suction side of the filtration pump and



Figure 5-5 Mechanical Sidewall Niche Assembly





Source: The Fountain People, Inc.

Source: The Fountain People, Inc

Figure 5-6 Surface Skimmer Fitting









Figure 5-8 Adjustable Diverter Inlet Fitting

eyeball fittings (see Figure 5-7) that connect to the discharge side of the filtration pump.

An adjustable diverter plate (see Figure 5-8) may be inserted in the pool floor to allow the ability to fine-tune the discharge from the display pump. This may be a better option than closing the pump display discharge valve, which can shorten the pump's life by running it with too much back-pressure.

Many designs consist of a small wet surface with the water going to a reservoir, which could be either a tank or a reservoir formed of concrete hidden from view.

CONCLUSION

A water features pipe sizing or pipe layouts do not differ essentially from basic plumbing systems. A good source of further information is a high-quality fountain equipment manufacturer, not just the companies who market the various pieces of equipment. The manufacturers or their representatives are in a better position to provide very accurate information, as these companies actually make the equipment and have tested it along the way.



This chapter discusses public indoor and outdoor swimming pool design and the selection of pool plumbing, piping components, and the equipment required for operation in conformance with the codes of the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ). The goal of any quality pool design should be to maximize the safety of the patrons while providing an enjoyable water-based environment. The design approach should be to develop a system that provides maximum water quality, from both a clarity and bacterial safety standpoint. Potential hazards such as suction or limb entrapment, hair entanglement, or tripping concerns must be examined. Local health department codes are designed to ensure that this criterion is met, but these codes merely provide minimum standards. A quality design should go well beyond minimum requirements.

The chapter is organized to assist a designer, possibly unfamiliar with swimming pool design, in undertaking such a project. The first three sections can be used for the preparation of an initial scope outline of the project's size, type, and location. The "Pool Operating Systems" section discusses the key elements that are required for a complete circulation, filtration, water-heating, chemical-control system. It can be used to make initial decisions on the basic type of system to consider. The section titled "Component Evaluation and Selection" provides guidelines for making specific equipment selections. It will assist the designer in collecting pertinent data on the various products to assist in the writing of specifications.

CODES AND STANDARDS

In addition to the plumbing codes, swimming pool construction and operation are usually governed by state health department regulations and the requirements of local authorities. Publications of the Association of Pool and Spa Professionals (APSP) and the National Swimming Pool Foundation (NSPF) are often-referenced standards. The codes usually govern recirculation rates, filtration rates for various types of filters, and the spacing of main drains, as well as maximum velocities (feet per second {meters per second]) through main drain grate-free areas. Also of importance are the locations and types of inlets, spacing and capacity of gutter drains, and requirements for the use of surge tanks or skimmers. Heating requirements and feed capacities of disinfection systems are other areas requiring review. In addition to the standards noted above, if the pool is to be used for competitions, the rules and regulations of the International Amateur Swimming Federation (FINA) must be reviewed to ensure that the pool meets international standards. In the remainder of this chapter, any entity governing the various aspects of public swimming pools will referred to as the authority having jurisdiction.

Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act

In December 2007, a new federal law was enacted called the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act (VGB). This federal act set more stringent requirements on main drain sizes, velocities, and piping configurations and requires testing protocols to be regulated according to ASME A112.19.8 (2007): Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, and Hot Tubs. At a minimum, all existing main drain cover/grates must be replaced with a compliant cover/grate bearing the VGB stamp provided by the manufacturer or be field-certified by a licensed professional engineer attesting to its compliance with ASME A112.19.8. In cases where a single main drain is direct-connected to pump suction, some form of automatic vacuum release or some form of piping that provides an air break to prevent suction entrapment is required. (Refer to ASME A112.19.8) for specific details on sumps, piping, and cover/grate requirements.)

The intent of the VGB is twofold: prevent suction entrapment and prevent entrapment due to hair entanglement. The second issue (hair entanglement) is the reason why velocity through main drain grates is an issue. Hair entanglement, consistently the No. 1 cause of entrapment in pools, is caused by high velocities through main drain grates. When a swimmer's hair is drawn through the grate, high velocity can cause it to swirl and become tied in a knot on the other side of the grate.

Suction entrapment has nothing to do with velocity through the grate. Suction entrapment is addressed in VGB by requiring all pools to have multiple main drains spaced at least 3 feet (0.91 m) apart, which makes them "unblockable" in the verbiage of VGB. In instances where there is only one main drain, it must flow by gravity back to a surge tank (i.e., not be direct-connected to pump suction), be of an "unblockable" size (i.e., larger than 18 x 23 inches [0.46 x 0.58 m] or with a diagonal dimension greater than 29 inches [0.74 m]), or have another means of preventing suction entrapment. The most common means of accomplishing this is the addition of some type of automatic vacuum safety release. Several products are on the market, but all manufacturers insist that installation of their device be done by an installer certified on the proper installation of their product. However, all manufacturers of these products add the disclaimer "will not prevent disembowelment" to their product literature.

ASME A112.19.8 also details tests for finger entrapment, measuring the force needed to pull the cover/grate out of the frame, and resistance to UV degradation, which could make the cover/grate brittle and cause attachment failure. These are an important part of the ASME testing because many of the entrapment accidents that occur are due to detached cover/ grates. However, the primary issue that the designer needs to be concerned with is the maximum flow rating in gallons per minute (gpm) (L/sec).

VGB also requires main drain cover/grates to be sized for the maximum flow of the system. The combined maximum possible flow that the system pumps can produce (which is usually greater than the design flow) must not exceed the maximum flow rating for the cover/grate intended for installation. In fact, VGB goes one step further. In the instance where one cover/ grate is blocked or partially blocked, the remaining main drain cover/grates on the system must be sized to handle the full flow of the system. In other words, where there are two main drains, each cover/grate must be sized for the full flow of the system. With three main drains, each cover/grate must be sized for 50 percent of the system flow.

It is important to note the use of the term "system." That is because many pools have water feature pumps that pull from the same surge tank as the circulation pumps. The total possible flows of all of those pumps must be added to determine the full flow of the



Field Built Sump

Figure 6-1 Field-fabricated Sump Dimensions

swimming pool system. The fact that the cover/grates flow by gravity back to the surge tank might eliminate the first concern of VGB—entrapment—but it has no bearing on the second concern, hair entanglement. The velocity through the cover/grates is the same when water flows to the surge tank by gravity as the velocity when the main drains are direct-connected to pump suction.

The final important requirement of VGB is the ASME A112.19.8 protocol regarding main drain sump dimensions. Many field-fabricated sumps, as well as most previously installed fiberglass sumps, do not meet ASME requirements (see Figure 6-1) and are considered noncompliant. The reason for these required sump dimensions is somewhat complicated, but basically it is to ensure even flow across the cover/grate, which is the only way to ensure that velocities calculated for flow through the free area of the grate are uniformly less than 1.5 feet per second (fps) (0.46 m/s) at all points on the face of the cover/ grate. Attachment of a new, compliant cover/grate to a noncompliant pre-fabricated sump may not create a secure attachment that will meet ASME pull test requirements. The Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) has expressed concern that VGB doesn't address this attachment issue thoroughly enough since most entrapment occurrences have been due to a missing or displaced cover/grate.

A misconception that raises additional concern is the belief of some owners that their system is fully compliant once the state approves changes to the cover/grates. That is not the case. Most state codes do not address sump dimensions, and they also don't all require multiple cover/grates to be able to handle full system flow or some percentage of full flow based on the number of main drain sumps. Thus, in addition to the state public health code, the design must adhere to the requirements of VGB.

State Swimming Pool Health Code Requirements

State health code requirements become an issue when changes are made to main drains. Any changes in a pool's circulation piping or main drains are considered alterations, and in most states alterations to a pool design require submission by a Professional Engineer licensed by that state. Many owners are unwilling to adhere to this requirement because it adds costs to their attempts to become compliant with VGB.

One of the primary areas of conflict between VGB and state health codes is a result of the approach taken by manufacturers to design compliant grates. Most of the designs for grates that will prevent suction entrapment result in cover/grates that are raised anywhere from $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to 2 inches, which results in protrusions from the floor of the pool when these new "compliant" cover/grates are installed. This is not allowed by most state codes because it can present a tripping hazard. However, many states have made, or are making, changes to their codes to allow main drain protrusions no greater than 2 inches above the pool surface.

Important Considerations

When investigating what steps to take to comply with the regulations in the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act, the designer must keep in mind that anything done to meet the requirements of the federal act must not be in conflict with the state code. This does not mean that the state code takes precedence; it is merely meant to draw attention to the fact that there are two AHJs and that satisfying one set of requirements does not automatically mean full compliance. Pool compliance inspections will be done by both the local code authority for adherence to the local code and by the CPSC for adherence to the requirements of VGB.

PRELIMINARY DESIGN PARAMETERS

Before the plumbing for a swimming pool project can be designed, the following information should be obtained: occupant capacity, size of the facility (including pool volume), facility location and configuration, style of pool, times of use, availability to infants and children (which may necessitate a separate pool), tournament and racing requirements, toilet requirements, concession and vending requirements, and bathhouse requirements.

Occupant Capacity and Size of the Facility

Assuming that the swimming pool is part of a complex that includes other outdoor facilities (such as ball fields, tennis courts, and basketball courts), following are the generally accepted criteria for estimating the number of swimmers:

- The total membership of the facility can be estimated to be 10 percent of the total population of the community it serves.
- The maximum attendance on the peak day can be estimated to be 68 percent of the total membership.
- Maximum attendance at the public swimming pool facility can be estimated to be 40 percent of the projected maximum attendance on the peak day.
- The maximum number of swimmers is approximately 33 percent of maximum attendance.

This method of determining the maximum number of swimmers cannot be applied to all swimming pools. The social and economic conditions of a particular local community must be taken into account when designing a public swimming pool facility. Swimming pool occupancy, or capacity, restrictions are subject to local regulations and vary from one jurisdiction to another. Supervision capability also may limit pool capacity.

The desirability of accommodating competitive swimming should be considered when designing a swimming pool. The requirements for such events are 25- and 50-yard lengths for U.S. competitive meets and 25- and 50-meter lengths for international events. Normal competition pools are divided into a minimum of six swimming lanes, with each lane having a minimum width of 7 feet (2 m). An additional 3 feet (0.9 m) should be divided equally between the two outside lanes to aid in wave quelling. The shallow-end depth should be a minimum of 4.5 feet (1.35 m) for competitive pools and 3.5 feet (1.1 m) for recreational pools, depending on local codes. The deep-end minimum depth of pools with springboards is between 9 and 12 feet (2.7 and 3.7 m) for a 3-foot (1-m) board and 11.5 and 13 feet (3.5 and 4 m) for a 10-foot (3-m) board, depending on local codes. Platform diving is performed in specially designed pools, which are outside the scope of this chapter.

Location of the Facility

There are no generally accepted rules for choosing the location of a public swimming pool facility. Only careful investigation of the available sites and the use of common sense will result in a suitable location.

First, consideration must be given to the accessibility of the location. A public swimming pool will be used in direct proportion to the local population's convenience in reaching the facility. Distance is a barrier, and so are stop lights and railroad tracks. The engineer also must consider the traffic flow in the area and the relative safety for pedestrians and bicycle riders of the routes normally taken to and from the public swimming pool facility.

Equally important at this stage are the physical properties of the proposed swimming pool site, including its soil quality, groundwater locations, and subsurface obstructions such as rocks. Attention also must be given to the availability of water, gas, sewers, and electricity. If all utilities are not available or extensive clearing, grading, or difficult excavation is required at or near the proposed site, significant additional expenses may be incurred.

The availability of an adequate water supply is essential. The water supply system provides the means to fill the pool initially with water and to make up water lost through wastewater discharge and evaporation. The preferred supply source for filling the pool and maintaining adequate volume is potable water. In areas with a limited water supply or where the system capabilities are in doubt, consideration should be given to filtration equipment, which requires minimum backwash water, or an off-peak filling and servicing schedule. Well water is often of good quality and may be used directly; however, the mineral content may be sufficiently high to require treatment. All water should be given a detailed chemical analysis in the early planning stages to determine whether treatment (e.g., softening or pH control) should be considered. In general, using softened water for filling and makeup water is not recommended for swimming pools.

Protection of the potable water supply system through air gaps or backflow prevention equipment is mandatory. The type required must be determined by checking with the local AHJ. Some codes may not allow direct connection, even with reduced pressure zone backflow preventers installed on the freshwater supply.

The rate of water evaporation from the pool should be estimated to determine the average makeup water required. Direct discharge of swimming pool water into the local storm sewer system or a watercourse without proper treatment may not be allowed, since chlorinated water is harmful to the environment. The chemistry of the proposed effluent should be approved by the AHJ.

General Physical Character

Deciding on the general physical character of a proposed public swimming pool facility involves determining such things as the type of swimming pool, its style, the intended use of the pool, its shape and dimensions, indoor versus outdoor design, bathhouse planning, and the location and type of equipment. A swimming pool complex with separate recreation pool, diving well, and wading areas accommodates all possible uses, including recreation, training, diving, water sports, exercise, therapy, and competitive swimming. There is a definite aesthetic trend toward luxury in contemporary swimming pool design. The use of color, walks, deck areas, and plantings creates a pleasant and interesting personality, but also substantially increases costs.

Before commencing the design, it is important to determine the style of pools the facility requires and the impact this will have on the space available for mechanical systems. Many facilities are now being designed with multiple pools or a multiuse pool. Pool styles can range from leisure pools to swimming pools with a wave pool component to 25- and 50-meter competition pools with diving facilities.

Many leisure pools that allow younger children to play with interactive water toys and water slides are being designed in conjunction with other pool facilities. These pools usually have water depths that range from 1 to 4 feet (0.3 to 1.22 m) and may have an uneven bottom, depending on the location of the interactive play toys. The number of toys and the size of the pool will impact the space requirements for pumps and filters.

Wave pools and zero-depth pools have become common components of public swimming facilities in

the last few years. These designs allow swimmers to experience the sensation of swimming in ocean-like conditions. Many wave pools are designed so that the wave generator can be set to come on at certain times of the day and/or night or when requested by patrons. Both zero-depth and wave pools usually have a beach component at one end of the pool, which requires special consideration to be given to the gutter systems and water pickup at the beachhead, or zero-depth end. The wave-generation equipment requires additional space within the mechanical room, and this needs to be taken into consideration when planning a facility with this component.

Competition pools have very specific regulations that govern the water quality, clarity, turnover rates, temperature, size, depth, and markings that are permitted within the pool. These requirements may be more stringent than the local health department requirements and may require more or larger components to be located within the mechanical room.

Many alternatives of shape and/or dimension are available to the designer. However, public pool configurations most commonly use straight lines and right angles. Pools of this nature are much more adaptable to the use of automatic pool-cleaning equipment. Often, there are good reasons for unconventional designs and shapes in private swimming pools and, perhaps, in hotel swimming pools where architectural interest (or uniqueness) may be of prime consideration.

The question of indoor versus outdoor swimming pool design is considered during the preliminary planning of the facility. It is well established that, although about 10 percent of the public likes to swim outdoors in the summer, less than 1 percent is interested in swimming in the winter, even if indoor facilities are provided.

Therefore, the need for outdoor swimming is addressed first. Then, if the budget permits, indoor facilities can be added. An indoor swimming pool facility costs approximately three to four times more than a comparable outdoor swimming pool facility. If the total cost is of little consideration, the same swimming pool facility can be used for both indoor and outdoor swimming.

A possible solution to the problem of providing indoor swimming is the cooperative funding, planning, and construction of a swimming pool facility adjacent (or connected) to a school. This requires the cooperative effort of the school board, park district, recreation department, and any other taxing body. The engineer should plan such a swimming pool facility to have the following:

- An indoor swimming pool of sufficient size to meet the needs of the school and the local community
- An outdoor swimming pool complex planned and constructed to meet the needs of the local community

- A central shower and toilet area
- Mechanical equipment for water treatment designed to serve both the indoor and the outdoor swimming pools

During winter, the indoor swimming pool can be used for the school's and community's training and recreational needs. During summer, both indoor and outdoor swimming pools can be scheduled and used. This arrangement allows one pool to be out of service for maintenance while the other remains operational. A facility of this type saves a considerable amount of money and provides a swimming pool facility for year-round comprehensive scheduling, with revenue sufficient to cover the operational and maintenance costs.

Many technical problems are involved in the design of an indoor swimming pool facility. First, there is the obvious problem of maintaining the proper relationship between air and water temperatures to control condensation and fogging. To be properly balanced, the water temperature should be in the range of 75 to 80° F (23.8 to 26.7°C), and the air temperature in the building should be maintained 3 to 5°F (1.6 to 2.6°C) above the water temperature. If this relationship is inverted, the swimmers will become uncomfortable when they exit the pool, and both fogging and condensation are likely to occur.

Secondly, there are the additional considerations of acoustics, ventilation, and air movement. Maintaining maximum air quality in an indoor pool facility is essential. Evaporation of the pool water and the gassing off of disinfection by-products such as trihalomethanes and chloramines require careful consideration of relative humidity, the introduction of large quantities of fresh, outside air, and proper air movement in the space. Refrigeration-loop dehumidification systems, as well as physical heat-transfer systems to allow some pre-heating of incoming outside air, are frequently employed.

The rules for the bathhouse design generally are specified in great detail by the local governing public health authority. The preliminary planning of the bathhouse facility must be carried out within the limits of established regulations. Apart from these rules, however, the designer may exercise imagination with considerable latitude in several areas: achieving a pleasing and aesthetic architectural balance, providing an adequate floor area for traffic, and providing adequate storage and management facilities.

Equipment locations should be established during the preliminary design phase. It must be decided, for example, whether equipment is to be located in the bathhouse or in a separate enclosure (keeping in mind that it is usually desirable to combine all of these facilities under a single enclosure). The filter assembly should be housed in an area with heat for

	Cumulative Area of Surface Water (in square feet)	Number of								
Facility		Public Toilets		Public Urinals	Public Lavatories		Public Showers		Public Drinking Fountains	
type)		F	м	М	F	М	F	м		
 Swimming pools, wading pools and whirlpools in conjunction with sleeping or dwelling units having plumbing, except for items 2 - 5, No open swim lessons permitted. (i.e. apartments, hotels, motels, condos and mobile home parks) 	< 2000	One unisex		0	One unisex		0	0	1	
	2000 - 7500	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	
	>7500	See note ^a below for requirements								
2.Swimming pools, wading	<2000	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	
pools and whirlpools without living units, except for items 3.	2000 - 3999	3	1	2	1	1	2	2	1	
to 5. Swimming pools, wading pools, and whirlpools with	4000 - 5999	4	2	2	2	2	4	4	1	
sleeping or dwelling units where open swim or lessons	6000 - 7499	4	2	2	2	2	5	5	1	
are permitted and water attractions where lessons are	7500 -8999	84	2	2	3	2	5	5	1	
conducted (i.e. municipal	9000 - 9999	10	2	3	4	3	6	6	1	
poolo ana oampgroundo)	10000 - 12999	12	3	3	4	3	6	6	1	
	13000 - 15000	14	2	4	5	4	7	7	1	
	>15000	See note ^a below for requirements								
3.Water attractions and water	<7500	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	
attraction complexes with sleeping or dwelling units. No	7500 - 9999	4	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	
open swim or lessons permitted. Use 300 sq. ft. for	10000 - 14999	8	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	
slides without basins (i.e. activity pools, waterslide	15000 -22499	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
plunge pools, leisure river or tubing pools and wave pools)	22500 - 29999	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
	30000 - 37500	16	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
	>37500	See note ^a below for requirements								
4. Water attraction and water	<7500	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
sleeping or dwelling units. No	7500 - 9999	6	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	
sq. ft. for slides without basins	10000 - 14999	8	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	
(i.e. activity pools, waterslide plunge pools, leisure river or tubing pools and wave pools)	15000 - 22499	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
	22500 - 29999	16	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
	30000 - 37500	20	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	
	>37500	See note ^a below for requirements								
5.Slash pad (independent of any other pool or attraction)		One u	unisex	0	One unisex		One rinse-off Shower		1	
	Patron Load									
	Up to 10	One uisex								
	11 to 20	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
	21 to 30	2	1	1	2	2	3	3	1	
	>30	Per departmental approval								

 $^{\rm a}$ For water attractions in excess of 37,500 sq. ft., use the following additions:

* For each 7,500 sq. ft. or fraction thereof add one sanitary unit - 0.7 male water closets, 1.0 male urinal, 0.85 male lavatories, 1.0 male showers, 0.6 drinking fountains, 4.0 female water closets, 1.0 female lavatory, and 1.0 female shower

For pools in excess of 7,500 sq. ft. and Type 1. above, and for pools in excess of 15,000 sq. ft. and Type 2. above, use the following additions: * For each 4,000 sq. ft. or fraction thereof, add one sanitary unit - 1.0 male water closet, 1.0 male urinal, 1.0 male lavatory, 4.0 male showers, 1.0 drinking fountain, 4.0 female water closets, 1.0 female lavatory and 4.0 female showers

For the requirements listed for additional sanitary facilities, each fraction represents an additional fixture

the off-season and with ample storage space. The filter equipment also should be located in the filter room for easy and efficient operation and maintenance. Consideration needs to be given to the location of the pumps in relation to the water levels in the pools. Wherever possible, the pool pumps should be located below the water level determined by the gutter system or surge tank so the pumps will have positive suction. Self-priming pumps are used for a number of pool applications, but the use of this style of pump is subject to greater startup problems and maintenance issues.

The construction of a major swimming pool facility with the filter equipment located outdoors or under drop lids to save costs is false economy and is not allowed by some codes. This type of installation will cause rapid deterioration of the pumps, hoses, motors, and other specialized equipment during the off-season, as well as make operation during the season difficult and costly.

Finally, the designer must select the type of filtration and purification equipment to be used. The most obvious considerations are pool size; available space; the type, location, and availability of sewer facilities; soil, rock, and groundwater conditions; and the location, availability, chemistry, and cost of the fill water. If the water is plentiful and inexpensive and space is not a problem, sand filtration may be considered. Scarce or costly water and limited equipment room floor space, plus a desire for maximum water clarity during heavy use, might dictate the use of diatomite filtration. The size of the swimming pool facility, as well as the chemistry of the fill water, will usually determine the type of disinfection equipment to be used.

In areas where freezing temperatures are possible and if the pool is not used year-round, provision must be made for draining the water lines, exposed drains, and plumbing fixtures to prevent damage by freezing. Alternatively, all areas must be provided with minimum heating equipment.

Bathhouses, Toilets, and Showers

Adequate dressing and toilet facilities must be provided. Each swimming pool complex must have separate facilities for male and female bathers, with no interconnections between them. The rooms must be well lighted, drained, and ventilated. They must be constructed of impervious materials, finished in light colors, and developed and planned so that good sanitation can be maintained throughout the building at all times.

The partitions used in dressing rooms, showers, and toilets must be made of durable materials and not subject to water damage. They should be designed with spaces under the partitions to permit a thorough cleaning of the walls and floors. If these partitions are subject to vandalism, block walls and vandal-proof devices should be considered.

The showers and dressing booths for females should have curtains or some other means of providing privacy. This rule may not apply for schools and other institutional facilities where a swimming pool may only be open to one sex at a time or where supervision is necessary.

Facilities for the physically challenged that meet all federal, state, and local regulations for private and public facilities also must be provided.

The floors of a bathhouse must be free of joints or openings, be continuous throughout the area, have a slight texture to minimize slipping (but also be relatively smooth to ensure positive drainage of all parts of the building), and have an adequate slope toward the drains. An adequate number of floor drains shall be provided. Floor drains should be positioned based on the requirements of the plumbing and building codes, but in no case should the floor slopes be designed for less than 0.25 inch per foot (6.35 mm/m) to ensure proper drainage of all floor areas.

An adequate number of 0.75-inch (20-mm) hose bibbs must be provided for the washing of the dressing rooms and the bathhouse interior. At least one drinking fountain should be provided for bathers of each sex in the bathhouse, with additional drinking fountains provided at the pool.

The minimum sanitary plumbing facilities, as mandated by the local plumbing code, should be provided. (A sample of a representative code is offered in Table 6-1 as a reference.) These minimum criteria for bathhouse plumbing facilities must be based on the anticipated maximum attendance.

If the local code does not address swimming pool facilities, the following minimum facilities should be provided:

- Three showerheads for the first 150 male users and one showerhead for each additional 50 male bathers
- Two showerheads for the first 100 female users and one showerhead for each 50 additional female bathers

Tempered water at a temperature of approximately 90–100°F (32.2–37.8°C) should be provided to all showerheads. Water heaters and thermostatic mixing valves should be inaccessible to the bathers.

Soap dispensers, providing either liquid or powdered soap, must be furnished at each lavatory and between each pair of showerheads. The dispensers should be constructed of metal or plastic; no glass is permitted. Mirrors must be provided over each lavatory. Toilet paper holders must be furnished at each water closet combination. As previously stated, vandal-proof devices should be considered, if applicable.

POOL OPERATING SYSTEMS

Most provincial and state regulations now require pool system components to be certified by an independent testing agency, such as NSF International. This certification ensures that all piping and other components meet a national standard for quality of materials and that public health and safety issues are addressed. This standard also ensures that the equipment meets consistent quality controls and builds a level of confidence in the product.

When considering the broad spectrum of approaches used for pool design, the designer should attempt to evaluate the major cost and performance differences between lower-quality residential or hotel, motel, and health club-type equipment and higher-end products used on major commercial pool installations. If the owners have not already made some of these assessments on their own, the designer should be prepared to appraise them on the pros and cons of the available choices so they can make an informed decision on the value they wish to place on the quality of the end product.

If designing a commercial installation for a high school, university, park district, or YMCA, the designer must follow certain basic board of health requirements beyond the scope of the plumbing codes that must be met.

Design Parameters

Turnover Rate

The turnover rate (turnovers per day) refers to the time it takes to move a quantity of water, equal to the total gallons (liters) in the pool and surge vessel, through the filtration system.

Minimum turnover rates for various types of pools are determined by code. Typically, they fall within the following ranges:

- Swimming pool: Six hours (four turnovers per day)
- Wading pool: Two hours (12 turnovers per day)
- Therapy pool: Four hours (six turnovers per day)
- Hot tub and whirlpool: 30 minutes (48 turnovers per day)

Keep in mind that these are minimums. In heavily used pools, quicker turnovers will help maintain water clarity by means of increased filtration and better chemical distribution. Also, pool designs that combine shallow areas, such as zero-depth pools, with deeper swimming areas require a turnover rate that combines the characteristics of both types of pool.

A calculation of the flow rate required to move a quantity of water equal to the gallons (liters) in the shallow area (usually up to 18 inches [0.46 m] in water depth) within two hours is combined with the flow rate required to achieve the minimum turnover requirements for the deep area of the pool (six hours). This combined flow requirement will result in a greater number of turnovers per day, usually in the range of six per day (or one turnover every four hours).

One additional point to consider in deciding on a turnover rate for pools projected to experience heavy usage is the fact that one turnover refers to a volume of water equal to the total gallons (liters) in the pool system. It has been calculated that it takes more than three turnovers for 95 percent of the actual molecules of water in the system to pass through the filter. This is due to the physical characteristics of the pool. The only way to remove the dirt load being introduced into the pool by the users and the environment is through filtration or oxidation. No matter how efficient the filter, it can't remove what isn't put through it.

Filter Media Rate

The filter media rate is the rate, measured in gallons per minute (gpm) per square foot (L/min per m²) of filter surface area that water is allowed to pass through various types of filters. These maximum rates are established by NSF/ANSI 50: Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Other Recreational Water Facilities, as well as local health department codes. This rate becomes the determining factor in the sizing of the filter area needed for a given minimum turnover rate and the resultant minimum flow rate.

Flow Rate

The flow rate is the rate at which water moves through the filtration system. It is calculated based on the minimum turnovers per day. The flow rate has a major bearing on pipe sizing in the distribution system.

Many codes limit velocities in suction piping and return piping. In swimming pool parlance, return piping is the piping carrying filtered water returning to the pool. Some common maximums are 5–8 feet per second (fps) (1.52–2.44 m/s) in suction piping and 8–10 fps (2.44–3.05 m/s) in return piping.

Required Surge Capacity

The term "surge" describes all water that comes off the top of the pool, either displaced by the bodies of the swimmers or splashed into the gutters through wind or heavy activity. It must flow to a surge vessel attached to the swimming pool circulation system. Continuous skimming is required even during times of no activity. The skimming that takes place during these quiescent periods is intended to draw material near the water surface into the gutters and back to the filtration equipment.

The skimming action is essentially accomplished by maintaining the level of the water in the pool no more than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm) above the rim of the gutter As the water just barely breaks over the lip of the gutter, the velocity of the skimmed water increases and creates a pull on the water surface. If the water level is too high, little skimming action occurs.

Many years ago, this skimmed water went to waste. Water conservation, as well as the cost of reheating replacement water, has resulted in code requirements for the capture of this water. It now must be filtered, chemically treated, and returned to the pool. Most codes mandate a minimum volume requirement for the vessels that receive and hold this water until it can pass through the filter. The volumes are based on the estimated water displaced by swimmers plus wave action caused by their activities. A common requirement is for 0.6-1 gallon (2.27-3.79 L) of surge capacity for each square foot (m^2) of pool surface area. The various means of achieving this are covered under the "Surge Vessel or Surge Trench Selection" section of this chapter.

Some smaller pools are allowed to use skimmers to return water from the top of the pool. There are restrictions to their use, usually based on the size of the pool. Skimmers are covered in more detail in the "Component Evaluation and Selection" section of this chapter.

Main Drain and Grate

VGB states that where one cover/grate is blocked or partially blocked, the remaining main drain cover/ grates must be sized to handle the full flow of the system. In other words, with two main drains, each cover/grate must be sized for the full flow of the system. With three main drains, each cover/grate must be sized for 50 percent of the full flow of the system.

ASME A112.19.8 also details tests for finger entrapment, measuring the force needed to pull the cover/grate out of the frame, and resistance to UV degradation, which could make the cover/grates brittle and cause attachment failure. These are an important part of the ASME testing because many of the entrapment accidents that occur are due to detached cover/ grates. However, the primary issue that the designer must be concerned with is the maximum flow rating. VGB also requires main drain cover/grates to be sized for the maximum flow of the system. The combined maximum possible flow (which is usually greater than the design flow) that the system pumps can produce must not exceed the maximum flow rating for the cover/grate intended to be installed.

To address hair entanglement, VBG requires all existing main drain grates to be replaced with new cover/grates that have been tested to ASME 112.19.8. They must bear a stamp indicating the maximum flow allowed through the cover/grate as determined by that ASME testing.

Most of the designs for grates that will prevent suction entrapment result in cover/grates that are raised, which results in protrusions from the floor of the pool. This is not allowed by most state codes because it can present a tripping hazard. However, many states have made, or are making changes to their codes to allow main drain protrusions no greater than 2 inches (50.8 mm) above the pool surface.

In instances where the grates are installed in a wall, the installation of the anti-suction entrapment cover/ grates results in a protrusion from the wall, which is a separate hazard addressed by most state codes.

No manufacturer is allowed to manufacture or distribute a cover/grate that has not met VGB requirements. All cover/grates or cover/grate and sump systems must bear the VGB-required stamp on the face of the cover/grate. The CPSC is tasked with inspecting all commercial facilities, and they have the authority to shut down and fine facilities that are found noncompliant.

Main Drain Piping and Location

The typical pool has main drain connections at the deepest point of the pool structure. These main drain pipes are connected to a formed concrete sump, stainless steel sump, or prefabricated fiberglass sump covered by a grating.

These connections provide a means of drawing water off the bottom of the pool for filtration purposes. They also usually provide a means of pumping the pool water to waste or draining the pool via gravity to a remote sump for pumping to waste.

In some cases, a reverse flow design is allowed. In this type of design, all filtered water is returned to the pool through inlets in the bottom of the pool. All dirty water is skimmed off the top of the pool. In such a design, a main drain is simply used to drain the pool. Not all codes allow such a design.

Due to entrapment concerns, multiple main drain sumps, piped hydraulically equal, are usually required. Velocities through the gratings covering these sumps are usually mandated to not exceed 1-1.5 fps (0.3–0.46 m/s) to reduce the chance of hair entanglement.

The free area of the covering grate typically must be at least four times the area of the connected main drain pipe. Codes also require minimum distances between main drain sumps, as well as distance requirements from the pool wall.

Hydrostatic Relief Valve

In areas where hydrostatic forces are a concern, such as in areas with high water tables, protection of the pool structure must be provided. This typically necessitates sufficient underdrain piping below and around the pool structure. A pumped drainage scheme also may be employed.

However, even with proper groundwater removal systems in place, a hydrostatic relief valve should be installed in the main drain sump. This device serves as a spring-loaded water stop and relief valve. If the main drain sump is poured concrete, a 2-inch (50.8-mm) pipe, along with a no-leak flange, is situated in the bottom of the pour. The HRV is threaded into the pipe on the pool side of the sump, and a pebble stop is threaded onto the backfill side of the concrete. If the pool is drained, the HRV may be the only way to prevent the pool from being lifted out of the ground (floated like a boat) by releasing hydrostatic forces into the pool. There have been cases where large (up to 200,000gallon [757,082-L]) outdoor pools have popped as much as 24 inches (0.61 m) out of the ground.

If the pool is internal to a large building with a large basement area and a substantial drainage system in place, the use of an HRV may not be a concern. For a diagrammatic representation of this, see Figure 6-2.

Filtered Water Return Piping

In swimming pool system terminology, return piping refers to piping returning filtered, chemically treated water back to the swimming pool inlets. The quantity, location, and spacing of these inlets is covered by the plumbing code. If the volume of these inlets cannot be adjusted, care must be taken in the pipe layout and sizing to ensure equal distribution of chemical treatment throughout the pool volume.

Basic Piping Schemes

Numerous acceptable piping schemes are available. The major factors determining which approach to take are decisions on the following:

- Where the mechanical equipment room will be located (above or below the pool level)
- The type of surge-holding vessel to be used
- Whether to use skimmers instead of a surge vessel (if the pool is small enough)

Some typical piping layouts are given in Figures 6-3 and 6-4. For simplicity's sake, chemical feed systems and heating systems are not shown on these drawings. Those items will be added to these diagrams in the specific section covering those components.

Filtration, Circulation, and Water Chemistry Control Components

Surge Vessels

Surge vessels are basically large holding tanks. They accept water flowing by gravity from the top of the pool and hold it until the circulation pump can move it through the filter. To reduce the potential for suction entrapment, the main drain piping should, ideally, flow by gravity to the surge tank.

Gutters

The water from the top of the pool is usually collected by a gutter. In the past, these were simply formed out of concrete with drain connections spaced evenly around the pool. Though this is still done on occasion, the following types of gutters are much more the norm.

Stainless Steel Gutter This is a dual-function system. It not only collects the skimmed water from the top of the pool, but it also provides the distribution inlets for returning filtered water. The skimmed water flows into one chamber of the gutter. Through another chamber, separated from the gutter water by a stainless steel wall or plate welded in place internally in the unit, the filtered water is pumped back to the pool. This pressurized chamber has holes, spaced around the entire perimeter of the pool, that serve as filtered return water inlets.

One disadvantage of this system is the fact that the inlets are placed very close to the surface of the pool, and distribution throughout the entire pool volume can be affected. Short-circuiting of filtered water back into the gutter is also possible. Of additional concern is the potential for internal breaches between the two flows (gutter water and filtered water). These may develop over time due to corrosion and/or expansion and contraction. These breaches are difficult to detect, and they will result in less-than-minimum turnovers due to short-circuiting of filtered water right back to the filtration system through the gutter system. To address this concern, some stainless steel gutter manufacturers weld a rectangular stainless steel tube to the face of the rear gutter portion of the assembly. which provides a completely independent chamber for the flow of filtered water back to the pool.



Figure 6-2 Formed Concrete Main Drain Sump with Hydrostatic Relief Valve

Surge Gutter Trench This is a formed concrete trench of sufficient width and depth to hold the required surge volume. It extends around the entire perimeter of the pool and is usually covered by a grating, which can be as simple as fiberglass bars sitting on a formed lip or as substantial as polymer concrete coping stones. The concrete coping stone is even considered part of the deck, which can be useful when minimum deck widths might otherwise be hard to accomplish. See Figure 6-5 for details of this approach.

Skimmers

On smaller pools, codes allow the use of skimmers. These are devices made of various types of plastics that have a floating weir (flapper door) that creates a skimming action at the water surface. They are set in the concrete when it is poured at one or more locations spaced around the perimeter of the pool or hot tub. Since they are directly connected to circulation pump suction, they should be piped to an equalizer fitting that is located well below the pool's operating level (see Figure 6-6). VGB considers this equalizer fitting a suction outlet and requires it to be covered by a compliant cover/grate or to be removed or disabled.

Skimmers are not as effective as a continuous gutter at skimming debris off the entire surface. That is why they are limited to use on pools with a small surface area. They also are used when budget concerns dictate.

Filters

The filter component of a pool system mechanically removes debris from the pool water. Measurable removal efficiency differences exist between the various types. In selecting a filter type, consideration should be given to the following items:

- Equipment room floor space and ceiling height
- Availability of backwash replacement water
- Filtration efficacy (turbidity of water leaving the filter)
- Water and sewer costs for replacement water
- Ability to handle a possibly large volume of backwash water
- Cost of heating replacement water
- · Ease of operation
- Equipment longevity
- Budget requirements

Two basic media types are used in filters: sand and diatomaceous earth. Cartridge filters are sometimes used on smaller pools and spas, but they merely use replaceable cartridges, not loose media.

Sand is a granular media (usually #20 or #30 grade filter sand), and a uniformity coefficient is associated with each grade. The filter manufacturer will indicate the recommended grade of sand, as filtration efficiency is affected by the grade used, with #30 sand having particulate removal efficiencies that

are more efficient than #20 sand. However, more restrictive sand beds result in higher friction losses through the filter.

Diatomaceous earth, known as DE, is considered a disposable media. It is a fine white powder material made up of skeleton-like fossilized diatoms. This powder is mixed with the water in the filter vessel and deposited in a layer on the filter element or septum. DE also comes in various grades. Typically, for swimming pool use, the product used should have permeability in the 3–5 Darcy range. Particulate removal capabilities basically track the permeability range, so the 3-Darcy media would be expected to achieve 99 percent reduction of 3-micron particles.

The filter area required depends on the media selected and the minimum flow rate requirement for the facility being designed. The various filter configurations for each of the two primary media types are covered in the "Component Evaluation and Selection" section of this chapter.

Circulation Pump

Circulation pump selection must be based on the ability of the pump to move the required amount of water through the circulation and filtration system under worst-case conditions. As the filter becomes dirty (loaded), it restricts the flow. As piping ages and becomes calcified, it also can substantially restrict flow.

For these reasons, many codes mandate that a pump be selected with a design performance point of the minimum flow required, with an available total dynamic head (TDH) capability of 70–80 feet. In the absence of such a code requirement, the designer must assume the expected pressure drop through a dirty filter, usually 15–20 pounds per square inch (psi) (103.4–137.9 kPa).

In addition to the dirty (loaded) filter, all pipe and fitting losses on both the suction and discharge sides of the pump, friction losses through a dirty hair strainer, and losses through a pool heater or heat exchanger must be calculated. The resultant estimated system head requirement dictates the proper pump selection.

Hair and Lint Strainer

These are devices with removable strainer baskets. They are installed upstream of the pump and are required by code. Their primary purpose is pump protection. Most codes require two strainer baskets, which decreases shutdown times when cleaning and changing a basket.

Flow Sensor and Display

All systems must include a device to indicate that the minimum flow rate and resultant turnover rate are being achieved. Numerous types are available, and their costs versus accuracy and life expectancies vary considerably. Many codes require gauges to be located properly on the suction and discharge sides of the circulation pump. These gauges, together with a pump curve for that particular pump, provide the ability to accurately check the performance of the pump and to verify the accuracy of the flow-measuring device.

Flow Control Devices

Consideration must be given to the means that will be used to control the rate and direction of flow to and from the pool. The circulation pump is selected for a worst-case scenario, so if it is allowed to run wide open when the filter, hair strainer, and piping are free and unobstructed, then over-pumping of the filter and heater will result.

Manual butterfly valves also are needed as isolation valves to enable the servicing of system components without draining the system. Valves must be provided to isolate the hair strainer to allow the replacement of a dirty hair strainer basket.

Codes also require control of flow from the pool. Usually, 80 percent of the circulated water is taken off the top of the pool, and the remaining 20 percent is drawn from the bottom of the pool through the main drain. Some type of float-operated butterfly valve or manual valve usually is used to control this.

For more accurate control, diaphragm-type air-operated butterfly

valves or piston-operated butterfly valves with pilot positioners are used. The various types are covered in the section titled "Component Evaluation and Selection." Even if variable-frequency drives (VFDs) are used to control the rate of flow to the pool, some type of manual valve should be in place in case the VFD fails. Manual operation must be able to be controlled while the VFD is out of service.

Pool Water Heating Systems

The basic types of heating systems are gas-fired water heaters, steam/hot water heat exchangers, and, infrequently, electric heaters. One possible disadvantage of using heat exchangers is that they require year-round operation of a boiler (if the pool is a 12-month operation). The rest of the facility may not require the use of the boiler, which may make the case for the use of a supplemental electric heater.





Venting capabilities, corrosive ambient air, and equipment space requirements are the primary issues to be given consideration. Many facilities are designed with dehumidification systems that use the heat of condensation to heat the pool water or pool space. The various choices are listed in the "Pool Water Heating Systems" section under "Component Evaluation and Selection."

Chemical Control and Feed Systems

Commercial pools must have systems in place that are capable of maintaining the pH and oxidizer/sanitizer levels in the pool water within a code-mandated range. These systems can be as simple as adjustable-rate feed pumps for acid and chlorine solutions. Some codes require the use of an automatic water chemistry controller to constantly measure pH and sanitizer levels in the pool. These controllers will turn on the associated chemical feed pump or system as needed.

Level Control Systems (Surge Tank)

Level control systems can vary from a simple floatoperated main drain valve installed on the main drain pipe after it enters the surge tank to a complex bubbler system (differential pressure controller) controlling an air-operated modulating valve. The decision typically is based on cost versus accuracy. Diagrams and specific operational characteristics of these systems are covered in detail later in this chapter.

Fresh Water Makeup

Fresh water makeup can be accomplished by an operator regularly checking the pool water level and turning on the manual freshwater fill valve until the pool is filled properly. Most codes require a skimming action to take place constantly, and a good way to ensure this is to provide some form of automatic fresh water makeup system.

From an operational standpoint, since most contaminants in the pool water are introduced at the top portion of the pool, the top layer of water should pass through the filter the quickest. Such a water makeup scheme is closely associated with the water level control scheme employed. (Informational diagrams are provided later in this chapter.)

Specialty Systems

The complexity of pool designs has increased dramatically from the days of the simple rectangular lap pool with basic filtration and chemical feed systems. An seemingly endless variety of water play features are now available, as well as supplemental sanitation systems designed to offset the increased demand created by heavy bather loads.

This places an increased responsibility on the shoulders of the pool designer. The designer must investigate and understand the capabilities and special considerations required of the design when using these products. Some basic information can be found in the "Component Evaluation and Selection" section that follows.

COMPONENT EVALUATION AND SELECTION

Surge Vessels (Surge Tanks)

One method used to create a surge-holding capacity is a buried concrete tank. This type of surge tank is buried somewhere between the pool and the equipment room, usually under the deck, which extends around the perimeter of the pool. It is also frequently located under the equipment room floor slab. Water from the perimeter gutter, and ideally the main drain, is piped to this holding tank.

Although the buried tank saves floor space, it complicates accessibility to key components. Access must be provided for cleaning or adjustments. Pump strainers and/or level control devices are often difficult to access. Frequently, draining of the surge tank is necessary.

This type of buried concrete structure is considered a confined space, so the operator will be required to follow Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) guidelines before working in this area, which should be taken into consideration before deciding on this approach. Figures 6-3 and 6-4 show how a buried surge tank would be piped into the circulation system.

A freestanding vessel is another type of surge tank that is located in the equipment room. It can be an open or a closed vessel. Open-tank vessels are still very common in installations where the equipment room is in a basement or where the location prevents venting of a closed tank. The obvious concern is how to provide protection from flooding if the system shuts down unexpectedly. Properly functioning check valves on the piping downstream of the filter, as well as between the main drain piping and the surge tank (if the main drain isn't connected to the surge tank), are an absolute necessity. The open-tank design provides a convenient way to add fresh water with the required air gap.

The closed and vented tank is a much better option for a basement equipment room. A closed vessel, with flanged connections for the gutter piping, pump suction, and possibly the main drain piping, is vented through piping extending above the water level of the pool. Venting is essential, as it allows incoming water from the gutter and/or main drain to displace air in the tank. It also prevents a possibly damaging vacuum situation from occurring if isolation valves are inadvertently closed while the circulation pump is in operation or are left closed when starting the pump. The vent, if of sufficient size, also provides a means of adding fresh water with the required air gap. Figure 6-4 shows such a piping scheme.

Surge Gutter Trench

The surge gutter trench is a continuous concrete trench formed on the exterior of the pool walls around the entire perimeter of the pool. The trench is sloped to an area closest to the pool equipment room. At that low point, a single pipe connection is made to allow the water collected in the trench to be combined with main drain water at the circulation pump suction.

The trench is sized to meet or exceed the minimum surge-holding capacity requirement of 1 gallon per square foot (3.79 L/m^2) of pool surface area. The trench typically is covered by a fiberglass or Cycolac (a type of ABS plastic commonly used for pool components) grating. A slightly raised handhold must be provided at the water's edge of the covering scheme used for this trench to provide swimmers with a place to securely grip, if needed.



Figure 6-5 Deck-level Surge Gutter Trench

Another design employs precast polymer concrete coping stones. This type of pool operates with the pool water essentially at deck level, and the coping stone is considered an extension of the deck. Return piping often is run in this trench around the perimeter of the pool, which facilitates pipe repairs, when needed, without breaking up the concrete deck. Figure 6-5 gives a diagrammatic representation of this approach.

Skimmers

Skimmers can be used only on small pools, usually pools less than 20 feet (6.1 m) in width or less than a certain amount of water.

They don't effectively skim a very large surface area, and they are directly connected to pump suction. If the pool's operating level isn't properly maintained and the water level drops below the opening of the skimmer, the circulation pump may possibly suck



Figure 6-6 Skimmer Detail

air and be damaged by cavitation conditions.

To prevent air from reaching pump suction when using skimmers, it is important to require the installation of an equalizer fitting, located in the wall of the pool a few feet below the skimmer. An equalizer valve and float are then installed inside the body of the skimmer. In this way, if the pool level drops, water still will be drawn through the equalizer fitting. These items are offered as options with most commercial skimmers. (See the diagram in Figure 6-6.) A VGB-compliant fitting is required for this equalizer connection to the pool since it is considered a suction

outlet. Some codes may even require the removal or disabling of these equalizer connections to comply with VGB requirements.

High-rate Sand Filters

The high-rate sand filter is currently the most common type of filter employed on swimming pool systems. High-rate sand filters have acceptable particulate removal capabilities, and they are simple to operate.

These filters are pressure type, meaning the filter is installed downstream of the circulation pump, and the pump creates pressure to force the dirt-laden pool water through the filter. The water enters the filter at the top of the media bed and is forced through the sand to a set of slotted laterals, which are connected to a collection manifold.

The most common media used in high-rate sand filters is #20 or #30 filter sand, with a specific unifor-

mity coefficient. The #20 sand has a particle size of 0.018 inches (0.35 mm) to 0.022 inches (0.56 mm) or an effective size of 0.45 mm and a uniformity coefficient of 1.5 maximum. The #30 grade of sand is not as common as #20. It is finer sand and is sometimes used when higher filtration efficiency is desired. Not all filters are designed to allow the use of #30 sand, as the underdrain laterals must be manufactured with very close tolerances regarding opening size to disallow the passage of the smaller sand particles back to the pool. Check the filter manufacturer's specifications to ensure that #30 sand can be used.

In general, the flow rate of the water being filtered through this type of filter is in the range of 15–20 gpm per square foot $(56.8-75.7 \text{ L/min/m}^2)$ of filter surface area. All pool filters must be tested by NSF International, given an NSF/ANSI 50 listing, and bear that label on their exterior. This listing prescribes the maximum allowable flow for each listed filter, and many codes use this listing as their design requirement criteria.

The backwash rate for any sand filter is based on research done by the Hydraulic Institute. It has been determined through testing that a minimum of 15 gpm per square foot (56.8 L/min) of filter area is required to "fluidize" the sand bed. At less than 15 gpm per square foot (56.8 L/min), the filter bed doesn't lift up and allow debris that is deeply embedded in the sand bed to be released. If this lower-than-required backwash rate continues, "mud balls" eventually will develop and effectively decrease the usable filter area.

Properly designed high-rate sand filters, using the most common #20 grade media, can effectively capture particles as small as 15–20 microns when the filter is clean. As the filter becomes dirty ("loaded" is a better description), the filtration efficiency of a sand filter actually increases. The interstitial spaces between the grains of sand media become smaller and can possibly capture particles as small as 10 microns.

Horizontal High-rate Sand Filters

Horizontal high-rate sand filters may require more equipment room floor space than vertical sand filters, but they lend themselves to more accurate design possibilities regarding flow during filtration and backwash. Backwash functions are also more easily automated and are at a lower backwash flow for each individual tank. Multiple tank arrangements may be used to alleviate concerns about the ability of waste piping or transfer pumps to handle large backwash flow rates. A three-tank horizontal system is shown in Figure 6-7.



Figure 6-7 Horizontal High-rate Sand Filtration System, Multi-tank

Vertical High-rate Sand Filters

Depending on the required filter area and the shape of the equipment room, vertical high-rate sand filters sometimes can be a more space-conscious option. An 8-foot (2.44-m) diameter vertical filter would have more filter area than two 3-foot-diameter by 6-footlong (0.91-m-diameter by 1.83-m-long) horizontal filters with a 6.25-foot by 6-foot (1.91-m by 1.83-m) footprint. Three horizontal filters, each with a footprint of 9.5 feet by 6 feet (2.9 m by 1.83 m), would be required to provide a filter area equivalent to that of the 8-foot (2.44-m) diameter vertical filter.

The equipment room floorplan will probably dictate which type of filter is best suited for the application. However, the designer also must consider the backwash water removal capabilities. Since the vertical system is forced to backwash the entire filter area at one time, the backwash flow rate for the vertical filter will be three times that of each individual component of the horizontal system where each tank is backwashed individually.

Multi-cell Vertical Sand Filters

Multi-call vertical sand filters offer even more floor space savings. That same 8-foot (2.44-m) diameter footprint can accommodate two or three filter cells stacked one above the other. If even distribution across the sand bed is a concern, the method of distribution through each cell should be examined. Lower filtration efficiencies can result if flow distribution is not uniform. Non-uniform flow results in higher velocities in certain areas of the sand bed, and these higher velocities can drive contaminants through the sand bed. Automated backwash of each cell, individually, is difficult if not impossible.

Vacuum Sand Filters

A vacuum filter system is one in which the circulation pump is located downstream of an open filter vessel. As the filter media restricts pump suction, a vacuum is created that allows atmospheric pressure to force the dirt-laden water through the media. The contaminants are left embedded in the media.

The media used in these filters is usually one or two grades of gravel covered by several inches of #20 filter sand. Media requirements vary by manufacturer. The gravel layer is intended to enhance backwash capabilities.

The NSF/ANSI 50 listing for these filters indicates the maximum allowable flow rate for each listed filter size. These are listed as high as 15–20 gpm per square foot (56.8–75.7 L/min/m²) of filter surface area. Individual manufacturers may recommend an even lower filter media rates than allowed by NSF International. The lower flow, frequently in the 5-gpm per square foot (18.9-L/min) range, is intended to allow smaller



Figure 6-8 Vacuum DE Filter in Pre-coat Mode

particles to be captured by the media. However, this requires a larger footprint.

As for any sand filter, the backwash rate needs to be at least 15 gpm per square foot (56.8 L/min/ m^2) of filter surface area. This is the minimum flow needed to fluidize the sand bed and release trapped particles. Due to the large surface area of these filters, this rate can translate into excessive amounts of wasted water.

Some manufacturers have introduced an airscouring system in which bubbles of air rise through the sand bed during backwash. The air bubbles are intended to lift the sand bed and allow lower backwash flow (e.g., 10 gpm per square foot [37.9 L/min/m²]), while still achieving an acceptable removal of the dirt load. This is somewhat questionable and may not be allowed by some codes, but manufacturers of these systems claim better filtration efficiencies at lower filter media rates than those achieved with high-rate sand filters. This might seem a logical conclusion, but no definitive independent testing of the turbidity of the water leaving these filters supports that claim. At higher rates, near 15 gpm per square foot (56.8 L/)min) of filter surface area, they are at least as good as high-rate sand filters.

Diatomaceous Earth (DE) Filters

Fossilized skeletons, primarily of sea plankton, are called diatoms. Large deposits of this fine powder are mined and graded according to particle size. The mined white powder is then heated and milled, resulting in diatomaceous earth (DE) products with varying properties. A coating of DE on a filter element or septum is used to trap and remove debris from the pool water passing through the filter. DE with a permeability of 3–5 Darcy units is common for commercial filtration.

In many locales, spent DE must be captured when draining or backwashing the filter to prevent the DE

from settling in the sewer system in areas of low flow velocity. Since DE is a light, fine, white powder, proper breathing protection should be worn if the DE could potentially become airborne. Vacuum DE filters require the broadcasting of the DE powder over the water surface of the filled filter vessel, so making the DE airborne in that case is unavoidable.

Respirable (airborne) DE is considered a Class I carcinogen by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), but skin contact or ingestion is not considered dangerous. In fact, due to the prevalent use of DE for food preparation, such

as soda and beer manufacturing processes, DE is classified as an incidental food additive. For purposes of comparison, beach sand, filter sand, sawdust, and drywall dust also are listed as Class I carcinogens.

Vacuum Diatomaceous Earth Filters

Vacuum DE filters are one of the oldest and most efficient (regarding particulate removal) forms of pool filtration. As with any vacuum system, the pump is located downstream of the filter.

The filter itself consists of an open-top vessel, filled with multiple filter elements or septums. The number and shape depend on the filter area needed and the design preference of a specific manufacturer. The septums are covered by a cloth bag or cover (usually polyethylene) that is coated with DE during a precoating process. The DE media performs the actual filtration, not the bag or the filter element.

A vacuum safety switch is required between the filter and the suction connection to the circulation pump. This safety switch is connected to the autocontrol circuit of the circulation pump. Whenever a vacuum of 10–13 inches (254–330.2 mm) mercury (Hg) occurs, the pump is automatically shut down. Otherwise, this high vacuum condition could possibly collapse and destroy the filter elements.

The septums can remain coated with DE only through continuous sufficient flow through the media, as the flow of water through the media holds the DE in place. If pump operation is inadvertently interrupted, the DE will drop off the elements. If the pump is then restarted without going through a precoat process, some of the DE initially will be pumped out to the pool.

The pre-coat process is a manual operation in which the filter vessel is filled with water and valves are adjusted to direct water pulled through the filter straight back to the stilling chamber of the filter tank. The pump is then started, and the required amount of DE (approximately 1 pound per 10 square feet $[0.5 \text{ kg per } 0.93 \text{ m}^2]$ of filter area) is broadcast over the surface of the water in the filter tank. Pre-coating is continued until the cloudy water (DE slurry) in the vessel clears sufficiently. Without stopping the pump, the pool return valve is slowly opened to allow filtered water to flow out to the pool. The pre-coat recycle valve is then slowly closed, and the filter is considered online, or in filtering mode. Figure 6-8 shows the piping configuration for the pre-coat loop.

Contingent on the quality of the media selected, these filters can achieve a 99 percent reduction of water impurities in the 3-micron range. The configuration of these filters can also play a major role in their particulate-retention capabilities.

The procedure for cleaning a vacuum DE filter is simply draining the filter completely, hosing off the filter elements, and flushing the old, or spent, DE completely out of the filter tank. This can be a laborious, time-consuming task. If the filter vessel is poorly designed, with a floor that doesn't have sufficient slope to the drain, the old DE will be difficult to wash over to the drain opening.

Once the filter and elements are sufficiently cleaned, the filter is filled with water. DE is then added by either broadcasting it over the surface of the water or mixing the required amount of DE in buckets of water and dumping it into the filter vessel. The pre-coating process is then initiated, and after approximately three to five minutes, the filter can be put back online. Typical piping for a vacuum DE filter is shown in Figure 6-8.

Slurry Feed Systems

When DE is mixed with water it forms a DE/water slurry. To extend the time between DE changes in the filter, additional DE often is added on a continuous basis. For filter media rates above 1.5 gpm per square foot (5.68 L/min/m²), continuous DE slurry feed (sometimes called body feed) may be required by code. The rate of addition is prescribed by the same code.

A dry slurry feeder uses a rotating auger mounted below a DE holding funnel. As the auger rotates, it carries DE from the funnel out to the end of a trough. The dry DE then drops off the end of the trough into the water-filled filter tank and adds an additional thickness to the coating of DE on the filter elements. These units have digital controls and adjustments for setting the rate of feed in pounds per day.

Wet slurry feeders employ a holding tank filled with water in which a predetermined amount of DE is mixed. An agitator pump is required to keep the DE from settling out on the bottom of the holding tank. A feed pump, usually a diaphragm-type feed pump with a timed auto-flush solenoid keeping the check valves clear, is used to draw the slurry out of the holding tank and to inject it into the water stream entering the filter from the pool. Peristaltic pumps also may be used, and since they don't require check valves, they may not require the auto-flush feature.

Pressure Diatomaceous Earth Filters

Pressure DE filters are the most economical regarding equipment room floor space. They are of a vertical configuration, with internal elements that provide a large surface area for filters having such small footprints. Like vacuum DE filters, they provide a high level of filtration efficacy.

Again, in a pressure system, the pump is located upstream of the filter and forces the water requiring cleaning through the filter elements. The actual configuration of the elements varies by manufacturer, but their purpose is to provide a surface for the DE to coat and to act as a filtering media.

Static Cake Diatomaceous Earth Filters

Static cake DE filters receive an initial charge of DE and then are pre-coated in a manner similar to the process described for vacuum DE filters. They filter continuously until the DE becomes plugged to a point where the flow through the filter is dramatically reduced below design operating parameters. Some form of wet slurry feed usually is employed to extend filter cycles. Due to the required frequency of cleaning, these filters are not usually found on large commercial systems.

Regenerative Diatomaceous Earth Filters

Regenerative DE filters are similar to static cake filters in their basic design, but they are far different in their performance characteristics. They typically have a higher initial cost than any other type of filter system, so care must be taken to ensure that the initial cost is commensurate with improved performance.

To eliminate the need for slurry feed and to greatly reduce the frequency of changing DE, regenerative DE filters employ an automatic regenerative process in which the original DE pre-coat is periodically forced (bumped) off the filter elements. The circulation pump is automatically turned off; the filter is automatically bumped; and then the circulation pump is automatically restarted, and a pre-coat cycle is automatically reinstituted. This procedure essentially clears free paths through the DE that is coating the elements and reduces the pressure drop through the media. It allows for complete use of all the surfaces of the initial DE charge. A regenerative DE filter, of sufficient size to handle flows up to 2,300 gpm (8,706 L/min), is shown in Figure 6-9.

Both static cake and regenerative DE filters are subject to NSF/ANSI 50 testing requirements. They are NSF listed by model number regarding the maximum allowable flow. Typically, these flows range between 1.3-1.6 gpm per square foot (4.92-6.06 L/
min/m^2) of effective filter surface area. For particle retention test results, refer to Figure 6-10.

Filtration efficacy is very dependent on the design and construction of each specific filter. Flow characteristics regarding velocity uniformity and uniform turbulence have a measurable effect on the DE-retention capabilities of each filter design. If the equipment choice is based on quality of filtration, investigation of previously installed operating systems of this type should be undertaken.

In general, particulate removal efficacies in a well-designed filter can be expected to track directly with the permeability of the DE media used. With the most common grade of DE used in commercial filters having a permeability of 3 Darcy units, at least a 99 percent removal of 3-micron particles can be expected. Some filters of this type have proven performance in the 1.5-micron range. In this range, a 2-log removal of bacteriological contaminants is possible. That is well worth consideration with the current interest in removing Cryptosporidium bacteria from pool environments. Again, this should be closely investigated to justify the use of these systems.

As stated, static cake filters require more frequent cleaning. They also require a pumped backwash to force the DE and dirt out of the weave of the multi-filament fabric of the filter elements. The fil-



Figure 6-9 Regenerative DE Filter

Perfect Filter – Tubular Particle Retention Test Results FILTER AID COMPARISON – 1.5 DARCY PERMEABILITY RESULTS AVERAGED FROM 10 FILTER RUNS, 20 SAMPLES PER RUN @ 1.5 GPM/SQ. FT.			
Microsphere Size	DE % REMOVAL	PERLITE % REMOVAL	
1 MICRON	81.67	64.38	
2 MICRON	99.29	94.385	
5 MICRON	99.992	99.049	

Figure 6-10 Particle Retention Test Results

ter elements themselves require removal and more thorough cleaning, usually on a yearly basis. That is not the case with regenerative DE filters.

The cleaning requirements of a regenerative DE filter vary greatly depending on the load and filter size. In a heavy-use indoor facility, a regenerative DE filter should be recharged every three to four months. For a heavily used outdoor pool, if long filter runs are desired, the filter is sized for a filter media rate of approximately 1 gpm per square foot (3.79 L/min/m^2) of filter area, which usually results in four- to five-week filter runs. When filters are selected for operation near their maximum allowable filter media rate, they will probably require a DE change approximately every two to three weeks.

The procedure for replacing the DE is quite simple. The filter is bumped and then drained. No pumped backwash is required. After one or two additional fills with pool water for rinsing, the filter is refilled with DE, usually through a specially designed vacuuming system, which eliminates the concern about airborne DE. The infrequent need for DE changes, along with the fact that these filters don't require a pumped backwash, can be a major factor in reducing the water replacement and reheating requirements inherent in other systems.

Regenerative Alternative Media Filters

In recent years, some filters listed as regenerative DE filters under NSF/ANSI 50 have been tested using alternative media, and perlite and cellulose have been approved under NSF/ANSI 50 as DE substitutes. However, the challenge particulate material (U.S. Silica SCS 106) used in NSF test protocol is largely incapable of evaluating the particulate reduction characteristics of any filter aid, including DE products of varying permeability at or below the 12-micron level. Other independent test results indicate that cellulose has filtration efficacies only slightly better than sand media filters.

A paper presented at the National Swimming Pool Foundation (NSPF) World Aquatic Health Conference in October 2009 offered findings resulting from careful testing of the filtration efficacy of perlite compared with DE. When the two media were tested at the same permeability (1.5 Darcy), same coating thickness (0.125 inch) on the filter elements (tortuous path), and same filter media rate (1.5 gpm per square foot), the DE gave a reasonable expectation of a 4-log (99.99 percent) capture of cryptosporidium sized particles, compared with a 2-log (99 percent) capture by perlite. That is a sizeable difference when a single diarrheal accident can contain millions of crypto oocysts. If a million oocysts are filtered by a DE filter, less than 100 will make it through. The same million oocysts encountering a perlite-coated filter have a much better chance of making it through and out to the pool.

At a 2-log removal capability, perlite would allow almost 10,000 oocysts to pass through. Since it only takes 10 oocysts to infect a susceptible swimmer, the media choice is an important consideration.

If the choice of a regenerative DE filter is predicated on crypto-removal capability, some type of performance specification should be established. The above test results were arrived at through the use of a "perfect" filter for testing. Actual results in the field will be affected by the design of the filter selected, as well as the piping layout in the equipment room.

Circulation Pump Selection

Centrifugal pumps are the type of pump used on swimming pool circulation systems. They can be of an end-suction form or a vertical turbine configuration. The most common end-suction centrifugal pump is the horizontal, either base mounted or motor mounted. In some instances, an owner may opt for a horizontal or vertical mounted, inline, split-case design, but the instances of this are rare.

Horizontal End-suction Centrifugal Pumps

A flooded suction centrifugal pump should be used only when it can be installed below the pool's operating water level. In some installations, they are placed on grade, and a check valve or foot valve is used, supposedly, to maintain a filled suction pipe. This configuration is not recommended, as these installations always are operationally problematic. Flooded suction pumps are not designed to effectively evacuate air. Once the check or foot valve gets jammed by a foreign object, re-priming the pump is almost impossible. Most flooded suction pumps have a tapped hole in the top of the pump volute to release air if the pump become air-locked.

Self-priming pumps are designed for installations where the equipment room is above the pool's water level. Selection should take into account the lift required for the application when operating at the duty point, as it relates to net positive suction head required (NPSHR). Self-priming pumps are effective at passing air during the priming process, but care must be taken to never operate them dry. A check valve in the suction piping on the vertical run of pipe as it drops to the surge tank is helpful during the priming process. If some form of backflow prevention is in place on the freshwater system, a hose bibb connection on the suction side of the pump also might be considered to assist in the priming process (if this is allowed by the local code).

Since swimming pool water has a constant residual of chlorine, swimming pool pumps should be fabricated of materials that offer decent life expectancy. These pumps are, according to most codes, required to operate 24 hours per day. Pumps with cast iron volutes and impellers can be expected to provide many years of service. Maintaining proper water balance, as discussed later under "Chemical Control and Feed Systems," plays a major role in ensuring this longevity. Proper piping schemes, designed to prevent conditions that might lead to cavitation, will extend the life of the impeller.

For situations in which the pump operates intermittently, such as when its function is to provide flow to a water feature or as a spa jet pump, all wetted components of the pump must be made of noncorrosive materials. If a cast iron pump were used, rust would form during the quiescent period (primarily overnight). Then, when the cast iron pump is restarted in the morning, the operator and patrons will be treated to an initial flow of brown, rusty water.

Stainless steel pumps are available. These are not truly noncorrosive; stainless merely means that the material stains less frequently than other materials. However, stainless steel pumps will not discharge rusty water after an overnight shutdown period.

Also, many plastic pumps with plastic impellers are used in the pool industry. Most of these are self-priming pumps, so they can be used whether the equipment room is above or below grade. The stainless steel pumps are a little more heavy duty and seem to hold up better in conditions where the equipment room is in a basement below the hot tub or water feature. They are not self-priming pumps, so this below-grade location is ideal.

Many swimming pool codes for filtration and circulation pumps contain a minimum performance capability requirement based on the mandated flow rate needed to attain the minimum turnovers per day. The pump must be able to move the resultant minimum required flow at some code-estimated total dynamic head (TDH). This might be a TDH of 70 feet for a sand filter system or as high as 75–80 feet for a pressure DE filter system.

Basically, the pump must be selected to guarantee that it can move the required flow through the filter in a worst-case scenario, or when the filter is the dirtiest. Therefore, even if the code mandates a minimum pump TDH capability, the designer should perform a system head calculation. All pipe and fitting losses on the suction and discharge sides of the pump must be included. The additional losses through system components—hair strainer, valves, dirty filter, heater—and discharge and friction losses through the inlet fittings must be added to the pipe and fitting losses to come to a total system head requirement. This will verify that the code-mandated performance requirement is sufficient.

Vertical Turbine

Vertical turbine pumps can save up to 75 percent of floor space as compared to horizontal end-suction centrifugal pumps. They have smaller footprints mainly due to the location of the pump below the floor. However, accommodations should be made for pulling these pumps for service. If very long shaft lengths are necessary, high ceilings and possibly an overhead I beam may be necessary. These pumps are basically flooded suction pumps that can be installed above the pool's water level. The downside to their use is the necessity for a hair strainer screen or basket on the bottom of the pump. Cleaning during normal use is difficult, so to facilitate this cleaning, some installations use a screen that slides through a slot in the floor and isolates the section of the surge pit where the pump's suction bell is located.

When a buried concrete surge tank is part of the design, a vertical turbine pump is an obvious choice. These pumps require the operating level in the surge tank to be maintained at or above the pump's required minimum submergence. The pressure available at the mouth of the suction bell of the pump is essential to proper pump operation without cavitation. The NPSHR for a particular pump, at the design operation point, controls the water depth above the suction bell entry point (minimum submergence), and the resultant depth-related water pressure at that point must be such that the net positive suction head available (NPSHA) always exceeds NPSHR. This minimum submergence also guarantees that the lowest impeller of the pump is always submerged and that it will start pumping when it begins to rotate. This, in effect, provides the same priming certitude as any flooded suction pump.

These pumps can be used in a wet-pit installation or they can be closed suction (direct piped), possibly in a dry pit. In either configuration, some protection against large debris entering the bowl assembly must be provided. The bowl assemblies can be either semiopen or closed.

Standard materials of construction for clear water service include cast iron bowls, bronze or cast iron impellers, and stainless steel shafts. The column shaft connecting the bowl assembly to the discharge head is usually steel, and the discharge head is cast iron. All components, however, are available in more corrosion- and abrasion-resistant materials.

Pumps can be custom-selected to allow variations in the slope of the head curve to meet the head and capacity system requirements. A pump with a steeper curve will allow for better control when using a variable-frequency drive (VFD) for flow control.

Placement of the vertical turbine pump (or multiple turbine pumps) is critical to non-turbulent operating conditions. This topic includes too many variables to be effectively covered in this chapter. As a starting point, the designer can reference *Hydraulic Institute Standards for Centrifugal, Rotary, and Reciprocating Pumps*, 14th Edition. Manufacturers of vertical turbine pumps offer various strainer basket assemblies for mounting on the suction bell of the pump. On swimming pool applications where the pump is required to operate all day, these strainers will become fouled quickly, which can present a maintenance nightmare. Often, instead of the factory-provided strainers, pool designs call for a fabricated, perforated, stainless steel wall or other perforated stainless steel enclosure. If properly designed, this can provide much more free area and result in less frequent cleaning requirements (possibly only at the end of an outdoor pool season).

Hair and Lint Strainers

Hair and lint strainers are required on the suction side of end-suction centrifugal pumps and are intended to provide pump protection. The baskets installed in the hair strainer capture debris that could possibly plug the eye of the impeller or damage the impeller. Opening sizes in the basket are usually prescribed by code. Typically, the operator is required to have available two of the removable baskets for ease of changing and cleaning.

The straight flow-through strainer is the most common type. The inlet and outlet flanges are matched to the pipe size on the suction side of the pump. The centerlines of both the upstream and downstream openings in the strainer body are equidistant from the bottom of the strainer.

Offset connection strainers are a specialty type. They are custom-fabricated to simplify alignment of the suction piping to the suction connection on the circulation pump. The centerline of the influent side of the strainer can be at a higher elevation than the leaving side (effluent) elevation.

Change-fitting connection strainers are also a custom fabrication. This type of strainer provides a simplified way to change from the suction pipe size to the actual size of the suction connection on the pump, as the flanged suction opening on most pumps is usually several pipe sizes smaller than the suction piping. A combination of the offset and change-fitting types is also available.

Cast iron hair strainers are no longer used in new construction in the swimming pool industry. The most common types of strainers are made of fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) or stainless steel. Removable covers are usually clear acrylic. The removable baskets are stainless steel, but the baskets may be made of plastic in smaller plastic pumps, which are often provided with integral hair strainers.

Flow Sensors

Codes require a device to be provided in the circulation system to verify that the pump is moving enough water to satisfy code turnover requirements. These sensors with displays take many forms.

Impact Type

The impact flow sensor usually has a small opening facing upstream and another opening facing downstream. The downstream opening merely senses static pressure in the pipe, while the upstream opening senses total pressure (velocity pressure plus static pressure). The resultant difference in total pressure versus static pressure forces a movable indicator up inside a vertical measuring tube that has markings for associated flow. This type becomes easily plugged and requires frequent cleaning. It is the least accurate type of flow sensor.

Pressure Differential Style

The pressure differential sensor can consist of an orifice plate with tubing connections on each side of the plate, or it can consist of a tube extending across the interior diameter of the pipe. This tube has two chambers, one on the upstream and one on the downstream side of the tube, each with a single opening or multiple openings spaced across the interior diameter of the pipe. The attached display measures the total pressure on the upstream side of the sensor and subtracts the static pressure on the downstream side to arrive at a resultant velocity pressure, which is converted to flow based on the interior diameter of the pipe.

Paddle Wheel Type

The paddle wheel sensor measures the spinning rate of a paddle wheel inserted in the flow stream. This rate of rotation is converted into velocity and, based on the pipe's interior diameter, gallons per minute. The rotational speed of the paddle wheel can be measured by pulses or magnetically, depending on the manufacturer. With the magnetic type, metallic particles present in the pool water can build up on the sensor and restrict rotation.

Magnetic Sensors

A magnetic sensor can be used in situations where the piping configuration only contains sufficient uninterrupted straight runs of pipe on the dirty side of the filter, or in a section of pipe that is within the pre-coat loop for a DE filter. Since the signal is magnetic and doesn't require a paddle wheel or orifice that could become plugged, these sensors work well for such applications.

Installation Parameters

If at all possible, flow-measuring devices should be installed in the relatively clean water downstream of the filter. In DE systems, they should be outside of the pre-coat loop, unless a magnetic type sensor (listed above) is used. Each manufacturer has specific requirements regarding placement on the pipe. They also recommend the number of pipe diameters of straight, uninterrupted flow upstream and downstream of the sensor. This is intended to ensure that the sensor is measuring uniform turbulence and can achieve its maximum accuracy.

Most codes, regardless of the manufacturer's recommendations, have their own minimum requirements for straight, uninterrupted flow upstream and downstream of the sensor. Since the local board of health most likely is the AHJ in these designs, its prescribed minimums are the ones that must be met.

Pressure differential sensors are problematic when used on installations where the equipment room is above the pool level. They are designed to respond to a difference between the total pressure and the static pressure. If water is siphoning back to the pool, as usually the case in these installations, a vacuum will be on the downstream side of the sensor instead of a measurable static pressure. As such, accuracy under these conditions is totally compromised.

Flow Control Devices

Since all commercial pools have a requirement for minimum turnovers per day (flow rate) and since pumps must be selected for the worst-case scenario of a dirty filter with maximum pressure loss through the filter, some means must be provided to control the flow output of the pump. If the filter is clean, thus placing little or no restriction on pump discharge, the flow through the filter may exceed the acceptable filter media rate, which will result in inefficient filtration.

Manual Butterfly Valves

Manual butterfly valves are disc-type valves with either a lever handle with 10 position stops or a gear-operated drive with either a chain (for valves positioned at high elevations) or an extended operator (for valves in a pit or not easily accessible).

Figure 6-11B depicts a butterfly valve using PVC as the body and disc for better chemical resistance. Figure 6-11C shows a butterfly valve with a polyestercoated cast iron body, nylon II-coated ductile iron disc, and a 416 SS stem. All of these materials are intended to make the assembly impervious to chemicals present in the pool water. The use of the type of valve shown in Figure 6-11A will be described in the section covering level control systems.

Both the PVC and cast iron valves employ EPDM seats for bubble-tight closure. Of the two, the cast iron will probably hold up better to frequent use and/ or rough handling.

Diaphragm-actuated Valves

A diaphragm-actuated valve is very accurate in controlling flow. The large weir allows for minor flow adjustments with only a slight movement of the hand wheel, which controls the movement of the diaphragm. The body and bonnet of the valve are solid thermoplastic, PVC, CPVC, PP, or PVDF. Diaphragms are made of EPDM or Teflon with EPDM backing.



Figure 6-11 Flow Control Valves

The valve design is excellent for throttling of corrosive fluids, since only the body and diaphragm are wetted parts. They also provide bubble-tight closure, even in slurry applications or flows with suspended particles.

Variable-frequency Drives

Though not commonly found on past swimming pool applications, VFDs are slowly gaining popularity, as dramatic energy savings can be realized through their use. The pump Affinity Laws provide the engineering verification of this. With a VFD, the rotational speed of the circulation pump can be slowed when system head requirements are at their lowest (i.e., clean filter, clean hair strainer conditions). Rather than closing a valve to reduce the flow to the design flow, the speed of the pump can be slowed while still maintaining the minimum turnover rate to the pool. As the pump performance is always designed well above the required duty point, use of a VFD offers the potential for substantial speed reduction.

The pump Affinity Laws show the cubed relationship between speed and power:

- BHP₂ = BHP₁ x $(S_2)^3 \div (S_1)^3$
- BHP₂ = BHP₁ x $(0.80)^3 \div (1.00)^3$
- $BHP_2 = 0.512 \times BHP_1$

As shown in the calculation above, a mere 20 percent reduction in speed lowers the pump power requirements by almost 49 percent compared to the power the pump would require using a standard across-the-line motor starter. Also, reduced demand charges are incurred when the pump is started gradually (soft started) by the VFD. The demand spike created by the lock-rotor-amp draw inherent with a standard motor starter is not experienced. The resultant system performance when a VFD is employed is sometimes even more appealing than the expected energy savings. The soft start and gradual ramp down during start and stop operations reduce wear and tear on the system components.

Care must be taken when implementing a VFD as a system component. For instance, if the pump selection is marginal, the pump may need to run at or near 100 percent. At this operating point, the use of a VFD will actually result in a higher operating cost due to some minor power transmission losses associated with the circuitry of the VFD. Other system pressure concerns also must be evaluated. Simple solutions to these potential operational problems are available, but they must be dealt with in the initial design stages of a project.

Pool Water Heating Systems

One component of virtually all swimming pools is a system for heating the pool water. In rare cases, the owner may consider this an expensive, unnecessary luxury, but instances of this are rare.

Temperatures generally are maintained in the range of 78–84°F (25.6–28.9°C) and sometimes higher when the facility has an older clientele with many water aerobic classes. Most heater manufacturers provide a general selection criteria table, which can be used to estimate the British thermal unit (Btu) output desired, regardless of the type of heating system chosen.

This method of selection is basically intended to offset an expected average heat loss and is more directed toward maintaining temperature in the pool water. If the Btu output selection is based on how long it will take to heat a total volume of fresh water from the source water temperature to the operating temperature (Δ T), the required Btus must be calculated using the following equation.

Equation 6-1

Btus required = Pool gallons × 8.33 × $\Delta T \div$ System efficiency (percent)

This is usually the method used for hot tub heater sizing. If the desire is to reheat a tub full of water within two hours, divide the calculated Btus required by two to arrive at the Btu per hour (Btuh) output for the heating system. Another area of consideration when designing the water heating system is providing for the ability to flow the correct amount of water through the heater's tube bundle. Many heaters are provided with integral booster pumps; others are not. The goal, especially on outdoor pools at initial startup, is to produce an optimum temperature rise across the tube bundle. On startup, if the pool water is cold (50–55°F [10–12.8°C]) and the flow through the tubes is too high, condensation on the tube bundle will occur, and sulfuric acid will form. This will quickly shorten the life of the tube bundle and even the burners.

Maintaining optimum inlet water temperatures is greatly facilitated by the use of a VFD. With proper heater by-pass piping and the implementation of a heater booster pump, the heater manufacturer's required inlet temperature can be effectively maintained. Once the pool is at the desired temperature, the pressure and water flow at the suction side of the heater booster pump will remain constant. With the heater firing, a one-time adjustment to the mix of heated water and the pool water being heated can be made to attain a desired inlet temperature. That setting will never change and will ensure a noncondensing situation for the tube bundle.

Direct-fired Gas Heaters

If space is available in or near the pool equipment room, a dedicated gas-fired pool water heater may be used. Two choices are available.

The atmospheric gas-fired heater uses the ambient air from the area in which it is installed for its combustion air needs. Manufacturers of these units have stringent requirements regarding the sizing of air-admittance louvers or grilles serving the operating space. If this type of heater is installed in the pool equipment room, the combustion air may contain high levels of chemicals or corrosive fumes, which obviously will have a detrimental effect on the longevity of the heater. In a sealed combustion gas-fired heater, combustion air is outside air, drawn into the heater by an integral fan. Exhaust gases are evacuated outside of the building by the same fan or a supplemental fan. These units are often rated at high efficiencies, since the exhaust fan can move cool exhaust air out through the vent pipe before any condensation occurs.

Indirect Heating

Often, a dedicated pool heater or boiler will heat a primary water source and pass it through an enclosure that has a secondary coil or tube bundle immersed in the boiler water, which carries pool water. The heat transfer between the two raises the pool water temperature.

These heat exchangers are required by code to be of double-wall construction. The intermediate space must be drip-vented to atmosphere to prevent the intermingling of pool water and boiler water, which may contain unwanted boiler treatment chemicals. In consideration of the pool water chemistry, the more expensive cupro-nickel tubes are worth the additional cost versus life performance characteristics.

Central Heating Boiler

The only difference in the central heating design choice is the lack of a dedicated boiler or direct-fired heater for the pool system. Water from a central boiler is used as the primary loop supplying a heat exchanger for the pool. This will require the boiler system for the whole building to be in operation whenever the pool is in use.

If a central boiler is the main component of the pool water heating system and there are substantial periods when the pool is the only system requiring operation of the boiler, a supplemental system should be considered. An electric heater, piped in parallel with the heat exchanger, is an option. With an electric heater in place, the central boiler can be shut down while the electric heater maintains the pool water temperature.

Dehumidification and Heat Recovery Systems

Maintaining air quality in an indoor pool facility can be quite difficult, yet it is essential to the comfort of the patrons.

The HVAC engineer should try to bring in as much outside air as possible. Humidity must be maintained at an acceptable level to reduce any impact high humidity might have on the building structure and ceiling components. If there are large window areas, excessive humidity will cause condensation and possibly damage the window casings.

Using a refrigerant loop to capture the heat of condensation from exhausted air provides some supplemental heating possibilities. The captured heat can be used to preheat incoming outside air if needed, or it may be used to assist in pool water heating.

Using these systems with a dedicated gas-fired pool heater or in conjunction with a heat exchanger can present some difficult control decisions. Which system will do the primary heating? Will each system have a different temperature control point? Will the heat recovery unit merely be a backup, or will it be used only when the central boiler isn't in operation?

Dehumidification and heat-recovery units are commonly used in current pool design. However, they may present high maintenance costs. The air passing through the heat-recovery or dehumidification coil can be quite corrosive. Special materials should be used for these coils, or the coil should have a special corrosion-resistant coating applied.

These are expensive systems with the potential for substantial repair costs, yet they offer some energy-saving benefits. It is recommended that the pool designer do a thorough psychometric evaluation of the particular installation and make an informed cost/benefit evaluation.

Chemical Control and Feed Systems

The owner or operator of any commercial or public swimming pool is expected to maintain a safe environment regarding water quality. The water environment that is shared by the patrons must be clear and free of debris and contain no bacteriological contaminants. To ensure this safety factor, codes place minimum requirements regarding oxidizer/sanitizer levels in the pool water, as well as a proper range in which the pH of the water must be maintained. In all but extreme cases, these levels provide proper bacteria kill as well as help maintain water clarity.

Proper pH and Sanitizer Levels

Typical sanitizer levels and pH ranges can be found in APSP publications as well as NSPF textbooks. These ranges are as follows:

- Pool sanitizer levels: 1–5 parts per million (ppm) when some form of chlorine is used as the sanitizer/oxidizer and 4–5 ppm when bromine is used as the sanitizer/oxidizer
- Pool pH levels: 7.2–7.8 pH (acceptable), 7.4–7.6 pH (ideal)
- Whirlpool and hot tub sanitizer levels: 2–3 ppm when chlorine is used and 4–5 ppm when bromine is used

Many people do not recognize the importance of maintaining pH in the proper range. In fact, the pH of the water is the primary factor in determining the killing power of the chlorine. When any type of chlorine is dissolved in water, it forms hypochlorous acid (HOCl), which is the most active form the dissolved chlorine can take. HOCl is a strong oxidizer/ sanitizer, but the pH of the water is the determining factor for how much of the dissolved chlorine remains as HOCl. Hypochlorous acid easily disassociates into a hypochlorite ion (OCl-) and a hydrogen ion (H+), and this disassociation is much greater at a higher pH. The hypochlorite ion is still an oxidizer/sanitizer, but it is considerably weaker than HOCl. Thus, at a higher pH, less of the chlorine in the pool water is in the strong hypochlorous acid form.

For example, at a pH of 8.0, it will take a residual of 3 ppm of free chlorine to have the equivalent killing power that 1 ppm of free chlorine has at a pH of 7.4. This merely emphasizes the fact that just as much attention must be paid to the output capabilities of the acid or pH adjustment systems as is paid to chlorine feed systems. If proper pH control cannot be maintained, the sanitizing characteristics in the pool water cannot be effectively controlled.

Water Balance

Water balance is based on a combination of factors. It is a measurement of five primary chemical levels that determine whether the pool water is scale forming (oversaturated) or corrosive (undersaturated). The Langelier Index is the most common calculation used to determine this.

Water is the universal solvent. It will try to dissolve anything it comes into contact with until it becomes satisfied (saturated). At this point, any additional solids introduced into the solution cause it to become oversaturated. These solids eventually will settle out or form layers of calcification on the surfaces or components of the circulation system. This calcification can degrade system performance, and oversaturated water also affects water clarity. Undersaturation, or corrosive conditions, can also degrade performance as well as destroy the pool's structure (i.e., tile, grout) and metallic system components.

All of these factors point out the importance of maintaining proper water balance. The chemistry of the fill and makeup water of any facility should be examined. It can be a major factor in determining the proper chemical feed system to use.

Choosing Proper Control Chemicals

The chemistry of the source water at a potential pool location should be examined to see if it could impact a decision on the type of control chemicals to use. If the fill and/or makeup water is essentially balanced, almost any of the various sanitizer/oxidizer and pHadjustment systems can be used. Balanced water would fall within the following ranges:

- Total alkalinity: 80–120 ppm
- pH: 7.2–7.8
- Calcium hardness: 200–400 ppm
- Total dissolved solids: <1,000 ppm

Gas chlorine is seldom used in new designs. The acceptable sanitizers/oxidizers are primarily chlorines (stabilized or unstabilized) and bromine. Lithium hypochlorite is sometimes suggested by various suppliers but is seldom used. Its relatively low active strength (29 percent) and high cost relegate its use primarily to backyard pools, where it is ideal for use on vinyl-liner pools.

Acid is used to lower pH; soda ash (calcium carbonate) is used to raise pH. The available common acids used are muriatic acid (dilute hydrochloric acid) and sodium bisulfate. Sometimes carbon dioxide is used. When carbon dioxide is injected into the return water, it forms carbonic acid (a weak acid).

Where high total alkalinity is present or when designing an indoor pool facility, care should be taken when considering carbon dioxide for pH control. Since carbon dioxide raises alkalinity when injected into the pool water, it would potentially make an existing total alkalinity problem worse. High total alkalinity encourages high pH levels, and more acid (carbonic acid) is needed to offset this. The required feeding of more carbon dioxide results in even greater increases in alkalinity levels.

Source water with high calcium hardness levels, more than 400 ppm, presents similar difficulties, and using calcium hypochlorite as the sanitizer/oxidizer may compound the problem. It may be necessary to consider sodium hypochlorite as the sanitizing and oxidizing agent.

Other factors to consider are the different effects the unstabilized chlorine products can have on water balance and the need for pH adjustments. Calcium hypochlorite has a pH of approximately 10 when dissolved in water; sodium hypochlorite (a liquid) has a pH of approximately 13. This higher pH can require almost twice the amount of acid used for pH control. Sodium hypochlorite also introduces approximately two times more total dissolved solids (TDS) into the pool water. Most codes limit the amount of total dissolved solids in pool water to a range of less than 2,500 ppm (sometimes as low as 1,500 ppm). Another common criteria is to maintain TDS no greater than 1,500 ppm over the TDS of incoming source water.

Stabilized chlorines are chlorine products that have been combined with a stabilizing chemical (cyanuric acid). The available choices are trichlor (trichloro-s-triazinetrione) and dichlor (dichloros-triazinetrione), which are chlorine products that have been chemically combined with cyanuric acid. The addition of cyanuric acid (also called stabilizer or conditioner) is used to reduce the amount of chlorine burned off by the ultraviolet (UV) rays of the sun striking the pool water. Since indoor pools are seldom faced with a problem of excessive sunlight conditions, these stabilized products are normally recommended only for outdoor pools and are sometimes not allowed by code for indoor applications.

The use of stabilized chlorine can, over time, result in the buildup of high levels of cyanuric acid in the pool water, and the cyanuric acid does not degrade. It remains in the pool until it is backwashed away or splashed out. Most codes limit the level of cyanuric acid to 100 ppm because levels exceeding 30 ppm substantially limit the time it takes for the chlorine residual in the pool to oxidize the contaminants or kill bacteria, which can lead to unsafe conditions.

These concerns are frequently enough to relegate the isocyanuric chemicals to private backyard pools because the patron loading on these pools is substantially lower than any commercial facility. Instead of using stabilized chlorines, calcium hypochlorite or sodium hypochlorite with the manual addition of a small amount of cyanuric acid to the pool will have a reasonable resistance to UV degradation. This can be done at a much lower chemical cost and without the unwanted buildup of cyanuric acid.

The final consideration regarding pH control is the effect that the adjustment chemical used can have on the longevity of the mechanical equipment. The strongest form of acid used in the pool industry to lower pH is muriatic acid. If feed equipment handling muriatic acid is not sealed properly, the fumes emanating from the acid will rapidly destroy or corrode all metal components in the equipment room.

Chemical Controllers

Automatic water chemistry controllers have become the norm on almost every design of a new pool facility or the upgrade or retrofit of an older system. Some codes only require controllers on pools; others require them on pools and hot tubs.

Numerous choices are available. Low-cost controllers simply measure pH and oxidizer/sanitizer levels and then send power to the associated feed equipment to bring either back into the proper range.

Most controllers measure these chemical levels through the use of measuring probes immersed in a stream of filtered pool water or in a larger sample cell with pool water flowing through it. These probes produce a millivolt signal, which is the feedback to the controller that allows that control device to maintain proper pH and chlorine levels. The millivolt output of the pH probe is directly related to the pH level of the pool water. The chlorine or bromine level is not given directly by the probe.

The probe measuring the chlorine or bromine level is actually measuring how active the sanitizer is, not the quantity of it in the pool water. This activity is defined as oxidation reduction potential (ORP). In other words, the probe is measuring the potential of the sanitizer for oxidizing contaminants.

As was discussed earlier in this chapter, changes in pH levels affect the activity of chlorine. The controller can only control to an ORP set point, measured in millivolts. If pH rises, the ORP of the chlorine (i.e., the millivolt signal from the ORP probe) decreases. As a result, the controller will turn on the chlorine feed system, often when the chlorine level is actually in the desired range. This relationship reinforces the premise that pH is equal in importance to chlorine in maintaining safe water conditions. High pH results in weak chlorine; low pH results in the controller underfeeding chlorine on a ppm basis.

Other controllers that are programmable actually control to a ppm set point. This type of controller uses curve fitting (high-end floating-point math) to calculate ppm based on standard ppm curves on a pH versus ORP axis provided by the manufacturer of the probe.

The last type of automatic controller treats pool water samples on an intermittent schedule with test

chemicals. It then compares the color of the sample to a standardized series of colors and determines pH and chlorine levels directly. This type of controller requires regular replenishment of the test chemicals.

In general, more complex controllers have a higher initial cost. Controllers with unnecessary bells and whistles may require frequent service calls and related service costs. This should be considered when trying to design an operator-friendly system.

pH Control Systems

There are two distinct systems for controlling pH. Chemical feed pumps can be used to pump some form of acid to lower pH. The same style of pump can also feed soda ash to raise pH, if that is what the pool requires.

Typically, if using sodium hypochlorite (a liquid sometimes incorrectly referred to as bleach) or calcium hypochlorite (a dry chemical that is mixed with water) as the oxidizer/sanitizer, acid would need to be used as the pH control chemical. Sodium hypochlorite has a pH of approximately 13, and calcium hypochlorite has a pH of approximately 10. Obviously, using these products to maintain proper sanitizer residuals would increase the pH of the pool water.

The other system that is sometimes employed to lower pH is a carbon dioxide feed system. The carbon dioxide gas is injected into the water returning to the pool, and it forms carbonic acid when dissolved in the stream of water. Carbonic acid is weak, but it will effectively lower pH.

Acid Feed Pumps

Two basic types of chemical feed pumps are used on pool systems. They each have advantages and disadvantages.

Peristaltic pumps use a motor-driven series of rollers that rotate in an enclosed pump head, and as the assembly rotates, it squeezes a feed tube. This creates a vacuum on one end of the tube, which allows atmospheric pressure to push the acid solution into the evacuated area of the feed tube. The next roller then forces that solution toward the other end of the tube and creates a new evacuated area of tube in its wake.

In the past, there were concerns that the pressure developed by peristaltic pumps (usually no more than 25 psi [172.4 kPa]) might be insufficient for injecting chemicals into the circulation system. However, this is seldom true. Chemicals must be injected downstream of all system components, such as heaters, heat exchangers, and dehumidification equipment. At that area of the return piping, the only back-pressure or system head remaining is merely due to elevation head, small return pipe and fitting losses, and friction and discharge losses through the filtered water inlets. It is seldom more than 7–10 psi (48.3–68.9 kPa). In cases where pressures greater than 25 psi (172.4 kPa) are expected, some peristaltic pumps can create output pressures as high as 100 psi (689.5 kPa).

These are relatively inexpensive pumps. The internal components don't usually have a long life expectancy, but they are not costly to replace. The only other concern is that peristaltic pumps must be placed close to the acid solution holding tank. The weak vacuum that they create does not allow for long suction tubing runs.

The other type, the diaphragm pump, uses a rotating cam to move a diaphragm in an enclosed housing. Check valves are used on both the suction and discharge sides of the diaphragm enclosure.

The rotating cam controls the inward and outward movement of the diaphragm. When the diaphragm moves outward, a vacuum is created in the enclosure. This vacuum closes the discharge check valve and opens the suction check valve. Thus, the outward motion allows the chemicals to be drawn from the solution tank. The inward movement of the diaphragm has the opposite effect: Pressure is created in the housing. That pressure closes the suction check valve and opens the discharge side to allow chemicals to be pumped into the piping system.

As many as four check valves can be used with this type of pump. If the chemical being pumped is prone to calcification or particulate buildup, frequent cleaning is required. If sediment impairs the operation of the check valves, pumping will cease.

These pumps usually create pressures in excess of 100 psi (689.5 kPa). Caution must be taken to ensure that the check valve, usually installed at the chemical injection point into the circulation piping, doesn't become blocked. If the diaphragm pump becomes dead-headed, the resultant high pressure in the feed tubing can cause it to burst.

Carbon Dioxide Feed Systems

Carbon dioxide has become an alternate choice for lowering pH. When it is injected into the circulation system, it forms carbonic acid. It also has a tendency to increase total alkalinity in the pool water. If the makeup water for the pool already has high total alkalinity characteristics, carbon dioxide may not be a good choice for pH control.

Carbon dioxide comes in 50-pound (23-kg) or 150pound (68-kg) high-pressure tanks. For large facilities or especially for outdoor pools, permanent installation of 750-pound (340-kg) tanks can be employed. These are usually set up to be refilled from outside the pool building.

In general, a gas-control electric solenoid is used to regulate the flow of the carbon dioxide gas. The solenoid is most commonly connected to an automatic water chemistry controller. Some system manufacturers use a side stream with a venturi and possibly a booster pump to create a vacuum to assist in drawing in the gas and dissolving it in the return water.

Carbon dioxide is heavier than air. It is best located in a separate, force-ventilated area. The vent fan pickup should be positioned near the floor.

Sanitizer/Oxidizer Feed Systems

Feed pumps are used when the oxidizer/sanitizer chemical is in a liquid form. This can be sodium hypochlorite (sold as a liquid), a dry calcium hypochlorite, or granular dichloro-s-triazinetrione (dichlor) dissolved in water. The pumps used for feeding chlorine solutions are the same as those indicated earlier for pH-adjusting acid feed systems. However, since acid solutions do not generate calcium carbonate (calcification) and do not contain insolubles or sediment, the working parts of the pump operate in a much cleaner environment. Chlorine solutions are much more prone to sediment and calcification concerns. This should be considered when deciding on the type of pump to use.

Erosion feeders are used where the control chemical is manufactured in a tablet or briquette form. The briquettes or tablets are dissolved by either a flow of water across their surface or contact with a water spray. The feeder can be either atmospheric or pressurized. NSF International requires that only the chemical product prescribed by the manufacturer be used in a given feeder. This mandate is directly related to concerns about mixing different chemicals, as well as maintaining NSF-verified feeder output capabilities (pounds per day of available chlorine).

Calcium hypochlorite is often manufactured in a tablet or briquette form and has to be dissolved in some manner. Several types of these systems are available. The feeder can be installed in a side stream, with or without a booster pump. The design can be as simple as a flow-through device or a more complex spray device with a venturi and booster pump. Overflow protection is usually provided as part of the feeder design. Most codes require a certain output capability, in pounds per day based on the gallons in the system being treated. This will be the determining factor for specifying feeder sizing.

The stabilized chlorine product trichloro-striazinetrione (trichlor) is introduced into the pool using a pressurized feeder. The feeder is filled with the trichlor tablets and then sealed. When pool water flows through the feeder, the tablets dissolve. Trichlor feeders are usually installed in a side stream with isolation valves. Feed of the chemical can be accomplished by manually opening the isolation valves or by using a normally closed solenoid on the influent side of the feeder. Use of a solenoid requires an automatic water chemistry controller to be part of the system. The solenoid is opened by the automatic chemical controller when it senses a drop in chlorine residual. If



Figure 6-12 Differential Pressure Controller Detail, Piston-actuated Butterfly Valve with Pilot Positioner



Figure 6-13 Differential Pressure Controller Detail, Diaphragm-actuated Butterfly Valve

trichlor is selected as the oxidizer/sanitizer, there are some concerns regarding buildup of stabilizer in the pool water. As more and more trichlor is fed to replace what is used for sanitation purposes, the stabilizer remains and builds to higher ppm levels.

Automatic water chemistry controllers rely on the millivolt signal from the ORP probe for feedback regarding chlorine levels in the pool water. High stabilizer levels cause inaccuracies in the output of the ORP probes.

Elemental bromine is a heavy reddish-brown liquid. In its elemental form, its use is no longer allowed by U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. Thus, bromine, when used as a spa disinfectant, must be provided in some other form. One form is sodium bromide activated by potassium monopersulfate (an oxidizer). This two-part system is not used on commercial systems, so it is mentioned here for informational purposes only. The second means of introducing bromine into the pool water is by use of an erosion feeder. The pressurized feeder is filled with bromine tablets. The flow-through feeder is installed in a side stream, with isolation valves and possibly a solenoid. The solenoid is only used if an automatic water chemistry controller is part of the system.

Pound for pound, bromine is a much weaker sanitizer/oxidizer than chlorine. It requires approximately 2.25 times more bromine to achieve the same oxidation and sanitation results available with chlorine use. Its main advantage is that it is less prone to degradation due to high water temperatures. For that reason, bromine is often the choice for hot tub and whirlpool applications where $104^{\circ}F$ ($40^{\circ}C$) temperatures are the norm. If heavy user loads are expected, chlorine, due to its greater oxidizing and sanitizing properties, may still be the proper choice.

Level Control Systems

Some method is needed to maintain a proper level in the surge tank, primarily for pump protection. If the level in the surge tank drops too low, vortex conditions will occur, and the resultant cavitation can damage the pump.

Float-operated Main Drain Butterfly Valve

The float-operated main drain butterfly valve is the simplest form of control (see Figure 6-11A). The main drain pipe is connected to the surge tank, and this valve is installed on the end of that pipe

between a set of flanges. As the level drops in the surge tank, the floats drop, allowing more water to flow from the main drain. As the level rises, the main drain is restricted, which results in a higher percentage of circulated water being taken from the top of the pool (not a very accurate means of level control). The surge tank usually ends up at an operating level near the top, with little room for acceptance of actual surge. This is due to the fact that this type of valve is only capable of 80 percent closure.

Pneumatically Operated Main Drain Modulating Valves

Pneumatically operated main drain modulating valves are butterfly valves with either a diaphragm-

driven actuator or an air-operated piston actuator. They require some type of control device, which will constantly reposition the butterfly valve disc based on level changes in the surge tank. They are primarily installed on the main drain line. The use of these valves does not require the main drain to be piped into the surge tank. Remote devices measuring the level in the surge tank provide the feedback needed for valve positioning.

The diaphragm-driven type of modulating valve uses a large diaphragm, with pressure applied to one side. The other side of the diaphragm is connected to linkage that moves the disc of the butterfly valve. The pressure source can be either water or a pneumatic air system. If water is used, the controller is a simple float assembly controlling city water or pump discharge pressure.

The piston type with pilot positioner has a piston in a chamber. When air pressure is introduced into one side of the chamber, the piston strokes away from that increased pressure. Linkage attached to the piston changes the position of the disc of the butterfly valve. The actual stroke of the piston is controlled by a pilot positioner that responds to a feedback control signal from the level control device. These are two separate air signals. One air connection merely provides the power to move the piston against system pressure. The other lower-pressure signal is the control signal that tells the pilot positioner how far to move the piston.

Differential-pressure Controller

Using pneumatic air, a differential-pressure controller is an extremely accurate way to control the surge tank level. It is sometimes referred to as a "bubbler" system. As the level rises in the surge tank (a mere quarter-inch), the controller begins to close the main drain modulating valve. If the level continues to rise, the valve may close completely, allowing the flow of water from the top of the pool (where all of the contaminants are being introduced) to be the first through the filtration and chemical treatment systems.

When bathers leave the pool, the pool level will drop below the lip of the gutter. This is because the swimmers displaced water from the pool into the surge tank. Since the main drain modulating valve restricts the main drain flow until the predetermined surge operating level is achieved, the surge water will quickly be sent from the surge tank back to the pool. In this way, skimming action will quickly resume. (See Figures 6-12 and 6-13.)

Fresh Water Makeup

Commercial pools are required to maintain a level where skimming action occurs continuously, which requires the maintenance of sufficient water in the system to offset splash out, evaporation, or any other water losses (leaks).

If there is no means provided for automatic freshwater makeup, the operator will be required to regularly monitor the water level. The simplest form of water level control is for the operator to manually open a water fill valve. The fresh water will usually be discharged from the fill pipe into a surge tank or balance tank with the required air gap. If fill water is directly connected to the circulation system, some form of backflow prevention must be employed.

Level-sensing System with Electric Solenoid

A level-sensing system can be used when automatic water makeup is desired. Numerous control systems are available.

The electronic sensor type of controller requires a reflecting line from the body of water being measured and whose level is being maintained. An encapsulated electronic sensor, connected to the controller, is positioned at the operating level desired. When the water drops and the sensor comes out of contact with the water, the controller sends voltage to a slow-closing electric solenoid that opens and allows fresh water to be added. A time delay is built in before solenoid actuation to limit short-cycling.

The stainless steel probe system is a set of three probes used to measure water level. A reflecting line is also required for this system. The probe module is mounted on the top of the reflecting line, with the probes extending into the water. When the level drops below the medium-length probe, the freshwater solenoid is energized. When the level rises and touches the shortest probe, freshwater fill is discontinued. The difference in length between these two probes determines the sensitivity of this system. If the difference in length is not enough, short-cycling will occur.

Pneumatic

The action of this control system was described under "Pressure Differential Control System." The combination of the air pressure signal to the modulating valve and an adjustable 120-volt pressure switch controls the freshwater makeup solenoid.

When the flow from the pool gutter diminishes, the level in the surge tank begins to drop. In response to this, the pressure-differential controller increases its output pressure to the main drain modulating valve. This allows flow to increase from the main drain piping to make up for the reduction in gutter flow. In this way, the desired surge tank operating level can be maintained.

If skimming action continues to decrease and the controller must continue to increase pressure to the main drain valve, the set point of the adjustable pressure switch will be reached, and it will send power to the electric solenoid to begin freshwater makeup. This is the most accurate means of controlling the total volume of water in the system (pool plus surge). For piping details, see Figures 6-12 and 6-13.

SPECIALTY SYSTEMS

Supplemental Sanitation and Oxidation

In general, the use of a proper oxidizer/sanitizer and pH-adjustment chemicals should be all that is required to maintain a safe swimming environment. For a swimming pool chemical treatment strategy, less is better. While a preponderance of unproven products are on the market, some technologies have possible merit.

Ozone Systems

Ozone is a gas that is heavier than air. It is a very strong oxidizer and bactericide. Since it is very unstable, it must be produced on site. Two methods are used for the production of ozone: corona discharge and UV. Of the two, corona discharge is more applicable to large commercial systems. The lower output of UV ozone units relegates them to small systems or hot tubs.

Ozone gas is usually drawn into the water and dissolved through the use of a side stream off the main circulation system. Since ozone is quickly used up in the oxidation process or converts back to oxygen due to its short half-life, it cannot be used as the primary sanitizer/oxidizer. It must be used in conjunction with one of the other oxidizers/sanitizers that leave a residual in the pool water.

Ozone is a supplemental system. Its use is not required on every pool design. However, on systems such as an indoor facility with multiple pools and water features, it can be a beneficial addition. The heavy bather load experienced at these venues overtaxes the usual water treatment resources. The buildup of objectionable combinations of organic and inorganic materials locked up with the chlorine will rapidly result in unsatisfactory ambient air and water conditions. The



Figure 6-14 Complete System Piping

addition of a properly sized ozone-generating system can totally eliminate this problem.

The corona discharge ozone system consists of several components. An oxygen concentrator preps the air entering the ozone generator. A side stream off the main return piping, along with a booster pump and venturi, is used to create a vacuum that draws the ozone from the ozone generator and injects it into the side-stream flow.

The water is then piped into a contact chamber. The contact chamber is sized to allow approximately four minutes of contact time between the water and the dissolved ozone. By the time this flow leaves the contact chamber, the ozone has been depleted either through the oxidation and sanitation processes or by reverting back to its basic form of oxygen.

Any ozone gas that bubbles out of solution in the contact chamber is vented out the top of the chamber through an automatic air vent and flows to an ozone destruct unit. The contact chamber and automatic air vent ensure that no ozone remains by the time the ozone side stream mixes back into the circulation system return flow. This protects pool patrons from any undue exposure to ozone.

The installation protocol is quite straightforward. Essentially, the side stream ties in right after the filter at the point of highest remaining system pressure. The side-stream flow is then assisted by the booster pump through the venturi into the contact chamber and reconnected to the main circulation flow after the pool water heater and before any other chemical injection. For details, see Figure 6-14.

UV Systems

In contrast to UV ozone systems that pass air over an ultraviolet bulb, sanitizing UV systems immerse an ultraviolet bulb into the full flow of water returning to the pool. A fine strainer screen is required downstream of the bulb to limit the amount and size of glass particles that might flow into the pool if the bulb shattered. The UV contact cell is piped, full size, into

> the return piping. Thus, every gallon of water circulated passes through the UV rays on the way back to the pool or water feature.

> UV radiation alters the molecular structure of compounds that experience sufficient exposure to the rays. The components remain in the water, only in an altered form. The DNA of most bacteria is changed, rendering most of them harmless. Despite the fact that written promotional material claims that UV has oxidation capabilities, that statement is untrue. Oxidation is a chemical process that requires an oxygen atom to be given

up by the oxidizing agent to the material being oxidized.

The prime consideration here is contact time. For this exposure to UV to have the desired results, there must be sufficient contact time. At the velocities common in most circulation systems (8–10 fps), there is little exposure time for the UV rays to do their job.

On outdoor pools, the loss of chlorine from UV degradation caused by exposure to sunlight can be substantial. The same occurs with UV sanitizing systems. The UV will strip most if not all of the chlorine residual from the pool water passing through. This chlorine must be replaced on the way out to the pool; otherwise, the necessary residual won't be maintained in the pool. This chlorine destruction may cause the chlorine consumption of the facility to increase by 40–50 percent. Due to that fact and the cost to replace the UV contact cell bulbs every six to 12 months, these systems can be quite expensive to operate.

Another concern is that these systems place the UV disinfectant bulb in the stream of water returning to the pool. Because of the potential for bulb breakage, a fine stainless steel mesh screen is placed





Figure 6-15 Handicapped Access

downstream of the UV bulb to limit the size of glass shards that might be pumped out to the pool. This UV disinfecting bulb contains mercury, and when replacement becomes necessary, it must be disposed of as a hazardous waste. With this potential for breakage, the designer should carefully consider if they are comfortable with even a small amount of mercury being present in the water exiting a pool inlet with a patron in the nearby water.

Water Features

Many different types of playground features—spray features, slides, flumes, vortexes, etc.—are available. See Chapter 5 of this volume for detailed information on their design. Following are some ideas on what should be considered when incorporating these into a pool design.

The primary concern is user safety. Will the structures themselves create tripping hazards on the pool deck or limit free movement around the pool deck? Can the area near the bottom of a slide or flume be kept free of bathers so patrons exiting the play feature will not strike fellow swimmers?

Will separate pumps be used for each feature? If so, from where will they draw their water? If it will be from the dirty water in the surge tank, how can the pump be protected against being plugged with debris? This same dirty water also has the potential to plug any play feature that incorporates small orifices for spray action.

If water will be drawn directly from the pool, the same dirty water concerns exist. An additional concern is protecting against possible hair, limb, or suction entrapment of the patrons. Some codes require the use of a vacuum breaker open to atmosphere through a sizeable pipe connection at pump suction. Exercise caution in the use of these, as many times they are adjusted improperly. If they are triggered inadvertently and the operator is not aware of an open connection at pump suction, cavitation over a long period may destroy the circulation pump.

If these water features are part of the design of an indoor facility, consider some type of sanitation of the water being atomized into the pool facility atmosphere. This can be a good use for ozone or other non-chlorine means of oxidation.

POOL SITE COMPONENTS

Ladders, Ramps, and Handicapped Access

Selecting and specifying ladders and ramps may fall under the responsibilities of the architect designing the pool structure. However, if the design assumes that a pool contractor will do the installation, these items may end up being included in the swimming pool section of the specification (usually Section 13150). Most ladders are made of stainless steel, with an outside diameter of 1.9 inches and a wall thickness of 0.065 inch or 0.109 inch. (0.145 inch is also available.) Recently, ladders and rails for access ramps with an outside diameter of the stainless steel tube of 1.5 inches have been introduced. This is purported to be more user friendly and possibly is soon to be recommended by American with Disabilities Act guidelines.

Handicapped access can be accommodated on rehabs of older pools by the use of portable stairs or battery-powered movable lifts. For an idea of how these systems look, see Figure 6-15.

Underwater Pool Lights

The majority of pool lights are wet niche-type lights, with the wet niche set into the concrete of the pool wall. The light has a long, sealed power cord that can be removed from the niche and lifted to the pool deck for re-lamping.

These lights can be 120 volt or 12 volt with a 120–12-volt transformer. The 12-volt lights are usually available with 300-watt bulbs; the 120-volt lights are available with 400-watt or 500-watt bulbs.

Pool Inlets

Inlets come in many forms. Adjustable floor inlets are shaped like a cone, tapering from the surface of the pool floor to the pipe connections. A movable flat disc with an adjustment screw moves in or out to change the volume of flow through the inlet. Wall inlets can be of an eyeball variety or merely a flat grate with the option of a flow-adjustment mechanism.

Some codes strictly restrict any wall inlets that stick out beyond the surface of the wall. This is to prevent injuring a patron who might slide down the wall. Other designs include hydrotherapy inlets used in hot tubs. Good design for all return inlets employs the use of some type of no-leak flange for pipe penetrations through the pool structure.

Safety Equipment

Safety items typically required are as follows:

- U.S. Coast Guard-approved ring buoys with 60foot throw lines
- Approved first aid kit
- Life hook with pole
- Spineboard with head immobilizer, body straps, and wrist and ankle straps
- Test kit

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

- DE/Perlite Performance Test Data, Ken Bergstrom, President, Filtrex Inc.
- "Improving Bacteriological Safety: A Comparison of DE and Perlite," presented at The World Aquatic Health Conference, October 2009.

REFERENCES

- Hydraulic Institute Standards for Centrifugal, Rotary, and Reciprocating Pumps, 14th Edition
- Wisconsin Administrative Code, Table 6-1
- ASME A112.19.8 (2007): Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, and Hot Tubs
- "Understanding the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act 2007," *Plumbing Systems & Design*, September 2009.



Gasoline and Diesel Oil Systems

This chapter describes the design, selection, and installation requirements for shop-fabricated atmospheric storage tanks and distribution and dispensing networks for new and replacement systems for liquid petroleum-based fuels. Although mentioned several times in this chapter, rail-type tanker cars are not considered a primary method of fuel delivery. For the purposes of this chapter, trucks are considered the primary method of delivery.

DEFINITIONS AND LIQUID FUEL CLASSIFICATIONS

A storage tank for liquid fuel is any stationary receptacle designed to contain an accumulation of regulated substances. Tanks can be constructed of materials such as steel, concrete, and fiberglass-reinforced plastic or of various combinations of materials that provide structural support.

A storage tank is considered underground if 10 percent or more of the total tank volume of single or multiple tanks, including all associated and interconnecting piping, is below grade or covered with earth.

A regulated substance is any designated chemical that includes hydrocarbons derived from crude oil, such as motor fuels, distillate fuel oils, residual fuels, lubricants, used oils, and petroleum solvents.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 29 CFR 1926: *Safety and Health Regulations for Construction* further defines storage tanks according to their operating pressure ratings as follows:

- Atmospheric tank: Atmospheric pressure to 0.5 pound per square inch gauge (psig) (3.45 kPa)
- Low-pressure tank: Atmospheric pressure from 0.51 to 15 psig (3.451 to 103.42 kPa)
- Pressure tank: Atmospheric pressure greater than 15 psig (103.42 kPa)

Liquid fuels are governed by the requirements of National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 30: *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*. This standard classifies liquids as either flammable or combustible based on their flash point, which is the temperature at which a liquid gives off vapor in sufficient concentration to form an ignitable mixture with air at or near the surface. In short, the flash point is the minimum temperature at which a fire or explosion could occur.

In addition to classifying liquids as either flammable or combustible, NFPA divides them into Class IA, B, and C; Class II; and Class IIIA and B. (Note: The following definitions are only for the purpose of fire protection.)

Flammable liquids are only Class I. They have a flash point below 100°F (37.8°C) and a vapor pressure no higher than 40 pounds per square inch absolute (psia) (2,086 millimeters of mercury [mm Hg]) at 100°F (37.8°C). Class IA liquids (which include gasoline and gasoline blends) have a flash point below 73°F (22.8°C) and a boiling point below 100°F (37.8°C).

Combustible liquids are only Class II or III. They have a flash point at or above 100°F (37.8°C). Diesel fuel, light heating oil, and kerosene are Class II combustible liquids with a flash point at or above 100°F (37.8°C) but below 140°F (60°C). Class III liquids include motor lubrication and waste oil.

Liquid petroleum and petroleum products are defined as hydrocarbons that are liquid at atmospheric pressure and at temperatures between 20 and 120° F (-29 and 49° C) or are discharged as liquid at temperatures in excess of 120° F (49° C). For the purposes of this discussion, these products include gasoline, gasoline blends, and diesel oil used as fuel for motor vehicles and internal combustion engines. These fuels are classified as hydrocarbons. They are also considered flammable liquids.

Specific gravity is the direct ratio of a liquid's weight to the weight of water at 62° F (16.7°C).

The viscosity of a liquid is a measure of the internal friction between particles that resists any force tending to produce flow. As the viscosity increases, the liquid's flow decreases under gravity conditions. Viscosity is obtained by measuring the amount of time a given quantity of liquid at a specified temperature takes to flow through an orifice. Viscosity is expressed in Seconds Saybolt Universal (SSU), used primarily for pump work, as well as kinematic viscosity centistokes or centipoises, Seconds Saybolt Furol, and Seconds Redwood.

The vapor produced by the evaporation of hydrocarbons is in a category known as volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are environmentally controlled emissions. Vapor produced by gasoline and gasoline blends is required by code to be recovered. Phase I systems refer only to storage tanks where vapor is displaced when the tank is filled with product. The recovered vapor is returned to the delivery truck or rail tanker car. Phase II systems refer only to vapor recovery from automobiles when their tanks are filled with product. The recovered vapor is returned to the storage tanks. Kerosene and diesel oil storage and dispensing systems do not require vapor recovery at this time. Codes concerning environmentally controlled substances are changed and improved frequently. It is essential that the designer stay abreast of current code requirements.

CODES AND STANDARDS

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has written basic minimum regulations to protect the environment and people's health from the leakage of hydrocarbons and VOCs from underground storage tanks (USTs), aboveground storage tanks (ASTs), and associated piping. The basic purpose of these regulations is to ensure the proper installation of the various system components, to prevent leaks or spills from occurring, and should a leak or spill occur, to ensure that the leak is quickly found, corrected, and reported.

In almost all jurisdictions where these systems are installed, specific requirements are mandated by local and state agencies concerning permits, registration, fees, and recordkeeping, as well as specific technical rules and regulations regarding system installation, maintenance, materials, and leak detection. Very often, these requirements are more stringent than the federal EPA regulations cited here. A thorough code search is necessary to ensure complete compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations.

Other organizations regulate component testing and make general provisions for system components and installation with regard to fire prevention. Following is a list of commonly used codes, regulations, and guidelines. This list is not complete and must be verified in the locality where the project is constructed.

NFPA 30, NFPA 30A: Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages, NFPA 385: Standard for Tank Vehicles for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, and NFPA 329: Recommended Practice for Handling Releases of Flammable and Combustible Liquids and Gases

- 40 CFR 112: Oil Pollution Prevention
- International Code Council (ICC) International Building Code (IBC)
- State fire marshal regulations, as applicable
- Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 142: Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids and UL 2085: Protected Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids
- Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), Subtitle C
- STI/SPFA (Steel Tank Institute/Steel Plate Fabricators Association) regulations
- Public Law 98-616: Hazardous and Solid Waste Amendments of 1984
- Clean Air Act
- Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (SARA), Title III, Section 305(a): Emergency Planning and Community Right-to-Know Act (EPCRA)

SYSTEM COMPONENTS

Liquid fuel storage and dispensing, whether in an AST or UST, require many interrelated subsystems and components for proper operation and for compliance with applicable codes and standards. They are:

- Storage tanks, including tank filling and accidental spill containment, atmospheric tank venting, overfill protection, and a vapor recovery system
- Leak detection and system monitoring
- Motor vehicle vapor recovery system, if applicable
- Pump and piping systems for dispensing and distributing product from the storage tank into motor vehicles or directly to engines

Due to the significant differences between USTs and ASTs in terms of materials, installation, and operation, these systems are discussed separately.

UNDERGROUND STORAGE TANKS

Storage tanks are designed and fabricated to prevent product releases due to structural failure and/or corrosion of the tank from the time of installation to the end of the expected useful life of the system. This requires the tank manufacturer to fabricate the tank in conformance with applicable codes and nationally recognized standards for structural strength and corrosion resistance. Since the tank must be installed in a manner that prevents distortion and stress, the installation must be done by contractors trained and approved by the manufacturer of the specific tank. The tank foundation, bedding, and backfill must be done only with materials and methods approved by the manufacturer, local code authorities, and nationally recognized standards.

Prior to tank installation, the groundwater conditions, soil composition, and potential for corrosive action should be determined. When deemed necessary, tests should be performed to determine the allowable soil pressure. The excavation for the storage tank should be sufficient to permit safe installation and proper backfilling on all sides of the tank with a minimum of 18 inches (0.46 meter) of noncorrosive inert materials, such as clean sand or gravel. The suggested backfill material should be a naturally rounded aggregate such as pea gravel, with particles ranging from 0.13 to 0.37 inch (3.2 to 9.5 millimeters) in diameter, clean, and free flowing. An illustration of a typical UST installation is shown in Figure 7-1.

Other conditions that should be considered when installing underground storage tanks include the following:

- High water table levels: Proper tank strapping, pads, or deadman anchors should be installed to counteract tank buoyancy and to keep the tank from popping out of the ground. Deadman anchors are strip footings located under the tank that are engineered to counteract empty tank buoyancy.
- The possibility of flooding from an adjacent water body or source: Again, installation on an antifloatation pad and strapping should be used.
- Established flood plains for the local area
- Seismic conditions
- Corrosion protection (soil conditions)

Since tank dimensions for the same size tank differ among manufacturers, consult the manufacturer of the proposed tank for the exact dimensions.

Tank Materials

The materials used to manufacture primary and secondary tanks include the following:

- Steel, with thin coating or thick cladding depending on the corrosion protection method selected by the manufacturer (cathodic protection sometimes required)
- Fiberglass-reinforced plastic (FRP) (no corrosion protection required)
- Steel and FRP composite
- Pre-engineered, cathodically protected steel

Clad steel is manufactured by applying a layer of plastic, usually FRP, over the exterior surface of the steel tank. This offers the strength of steel with the corrosion protection of FRP. Care must be taken to prevent damage to the cladding during shipping and installation. Since cracks and crevices in the cladding may allow corrosion to occur, some authorities require the installation of sacrificial anodes.

FRP tanks are manufactured by several proprietary processes from thermoset plastic reinforced by fiberglass. Reinforcing ribs are built into the tank for increased structural strength. Generally, a resinrich layer contacts the product. The specific plastic materials are listed by the manufacturer as being suitable for the intended product. These tanks are completely resistant to corrosion; however, they have the disadvantage of being more susceptible to damage from mishandling and distortion during backfill installation. In addition, FRP tanks are susceptible to ultraviolet (UV) light. It is important to minimize exposure to UV light (i.e., sunlight) for extended periods.

With a composite tank, the steel tank is wrapped in a jacket of high-density polyethylene that is not bonded to the tank itself. This provides a very thin interstitial space that can be monitored. Experience



Figure 7-1 Typical Underground Storage Tank Installation

has shown that the jacket is the portion of the assembly that fails most often.

Pre-engineered steel tanks are constructed with an insulating coating on the steel tank and sacrificial anodes welded to the tank's sides. The coating is usually coal tar epoxy, although FRP and polyurethane are also used. If steel piping is used, it must be isolated from the tank by special dielectric bushings or unions. This is the least costly material, but it has the disadvantage of requiring constant monitoring of the cathodic protection.

Tank Construction

Typical tanks are cylindrical with a round cross-section. FRP tanks have half-dome ends, and steel tanks have dished ends. Tanks are available in either single-wall or

double-wall construction. In double-wall construction, the inner tank containing the product is called the primary tank, and the outer tank is called the secondary containment tank. This type of construction often is referred to as being double contained. The outer tank may be manufactured from the same material as the primary tank, or it may be a different material if approved by the jurisdictional agency. The space between the primary and secondary tanks is called the interstitial space. The width of the space varies among manufacturers and types of construction. This space is monitored for leakage from the primary to the secondary containment tank. Monitoring systems may sense product leakage from the primary tank, groundwater leakage into the secondary tank, or both.

Tank Connections and Access

Reference applicable codes and standards—local, state, and federal—for mandated connections, access requirements, and overfill and spill prevention regulations. Following are generic, standard features recommended for all installations.

A convenient and leakproof method of connecting directly into the primary tank must be provided to allow for filling, venting, product dispensing, gauging, and leak detection. Where only piping connections are provided, an enclosure connected to all pipes and including an extension to grade should be installed to allow leakage monitoring and access to the connections for maintenance. This arrangement is commonly called a containment sump (see Figure 7-2) because there is no direct connection of the sump to the wall of the tank.



Figure 7-2 Containment Sump

For large tanks, access directly into the tank for personnel also may be desired. Allowance for this may be made by providing a manway (see Figure 7-3), which is formed at the factory during manufacturing. (It should be noted that a tank is considered a confined space, and entrance is specifically regulated by OSHA standards, which require, minimally, the use of self-contained breathing apparatus and an outside assistant or observer. Also, the tank must be marked per OSHA requirements.) The manway often is used for installing equipment and several piping connections. A manway cover on the tank with multiple piping connections in a variety of sizes can be provided. This is done to eliminate the need for secondary containment, and, if the pipes are installed inside the manway, to allow for easier maintenance. Standard fittings are 3- and 4-inch (80- and 100-mm) national pipe thread (NPT). Standard inside diameters (IDs) of manway openings are generally 22, 30, and 36 inches (0.56, 0.76, and 0.91 m), with the size depending on the size of the tank and code or OSHA requirements. These connections can be arranged in a straight line or in a circular configuration.

In addition to the manway, individual half-couplings are usually provided for direct connection of piping to the tank.

Tank Filling

Underground storage tanks are filled from delivery trucks or, in rare cases, rail tanker cars. When done by gravity, this is commonly called a gravity drop or, simply, a drop. When gravity filling is not possible, truck-mounted pumps or remote pump fill stations are used. If the fill port is located directly over the



Figure 7-3 Manway

UST, the assembly is called a direct fill port. If horizontal piping runs from the fill port to the tank, it is considered a remote fill port. The surrounding grade should be sloped away from the fill port.

The fill port cover must be watertight. Where multiple tanks containing different products are installed, the fill port covers should be color-coded to distinguish among the various product ports and the vapor recovery ports. The cover plates should be installed a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) above ground level to minimize the possibility of storm water entering the port.

Another integral part of the filling system is the drop tube or piping inside the tank. The drop tube provides a submerged inlet for product during filling. This reduces the fluid turbulence inside the tank, which can cause foaming of the product. Some drop tubes, called overfill protection valves, restrict tank filling. One example is a float valve that closes when the tank reaches capacity. Overfill protection must be provided.

The fill port assembly is designed to accomplish the following:

- It provides a watertight grade cover allowing access to the fill hose connection.
- It provides a fill hose connection for the tanker truck delivery hose. The hose end has a standard end connection, so an adapter may be required on the fill pipe leading to the tank. The gravity drop delivers approximately 200 gallons per minute (gpm) (756 L/min). The flow rate of a

truck-mounted pump is generally 50 gpm (189 L/min).

- It allows any fuel spillage from the fill hose to be contained and returned to the tank.
- It allows any storm water to be removed.

Another fill method involves the use of a coaxial (pipe within a pipe) truck delivery hose to both fill the tank and recover vapor. This requires only one connection from the truck to the tank fill port and a different type of adapter than is used for a fill connection alone.

Spill Prevention

The purpose of spill prevention is to provide a safe filling method that is capable of catching spills from delivery hose disconnections. A typical 20-foot (6.1-m) length of 4-inch (100-mm) delivery hose holds 15 gallons (56.8 L). Spilled product must be prevented from entering the soil adjacent to the fill port through the provision of safeguards that are code mandated and recommended as good practice. This is accomplished by installing a below-grade catchment basin with a capacity of 3.5 to 15 gallons (13.2 to 56.8 L) to catch spillage of product from truck delivery hoses. An optional device that could be part of the basin is a drain valve that, when opened, empties the product into the tank fill line. Any water accumulating in the sump must be removed manually and properly treated elsewhere. Catchment basins should be watertight to prevent surface water from entering the tank.

A dry disconnect coupling on the delivery truck hose also could be used to prevent spills.



Figure 7-4 Overfill Protection Valve

Overfill Prevention

All UST systems must be provided with overfill protection by the installation of one or more of the following devices (method must be approved by the local authority):

- A device that alerts the operator when the tank is no more than 90 percent full by restricting the flow of product into the tank or by sounding an audible alarm, which is activated by a highlevel alarm probe, and sometimes a visible alarm, which must be located in clear sight of the fill port and the operator
- A mechanical device (see Figure 7-4), typically located on the fill tube, that automatically reduces flow into the tank when the tank is 90 percent full and stops flow entirely when the tank is 95 percent full

The best method of overfill protection is the second, and a number of approved mechanical devices from different manufacturers are available. This is the method most often required by local authorities.

In addition, tanks that do not require a vapor recovery system can have a floating ball device (see Figure 7-5) installed on the atmospheric vent line that closes the vent when the product reaches a predetermined point (usually 90 percent full) at which additional filling may cause a spill. When the vent is closed, the air pressure increases inside the tank and restricts the inflow, alerting the operator that the tank is approaching the full level. If such a device is used, an extractor fitting is required to allow access into the line for maintenance or removal of the float assembly.

Atmospheric Tank Venting

Underground storage tanks are at atmospheric pressure and require continuous tank venting to ensure that no pressure or vacuum is built up inside the tank when it is filled or emptied. These vents are not to be confused with vapor recovery vents, which serve a different purpose.

Since all of the vapors produced from products are heavier than air, the vapors normally do not escape. A release of vapor can occur as the tank is filled (vapor is displaced by the product added), as product is removed, or as a result of a buildup of vapor pressure caused by the evaporation of product at times of high temperature.

Each tank is vented by means of a dedicated vent pipe, typically 2 inches (50.8 mm) in diameter for tanks 10,000 gallons (37,854.12 L) or less.

The vent pipe is directly connected to the top of each primary tank and should be extended to a safe location above the highest level of any adjacent building or to a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 m) above grade. The vent discharge must be directed either vertically or horizontally away from buildings and other tanks.

When not in conflict with other regulations, general practice is to terminate the vent in a pressure/ vacuum cap that prevents the entrance of rain and birds and only opens when the pressure exceeds 2 to 15 ounces per square foot (0.86 to 6.46 kPa) or when a vacuum pressure of 1 ounce per square foot (0.43 kPa) is exceeded. If a cap is not provided, a flame arrestor should be installed, if permitted by regulations.

Leak Detection and System Monitoring

Leak detection is required by code. There are three basic requirements for leak detection:

- 1. Leakage must be capable of being detected from any portion of the tank or piping that routinely contains petroleum.
- 2. The leak detection equipment must meet the performance requirements described in 40 CFR 280.43 and 280.44.
- 3. Leak detection equipment must be installed, calibrated, operated, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The EPA has established various options, combinations of which may be used depending on project conditions, initial or long-term costs, and product. In addition, state and local requirements may differ from EPA requirements in terms of the number and application of these options. A schematic diagram indicating methods of detecting leaks from tanks and piping is illustrated in Figure 7-6.

Measuring leakage from tanks is accomplished by gauging the level of product in a tank and measuring the amount of product dispensed and the amount of product delivered. If the dispensed and remaining product figures equal the amount of product delivered, there is no leakage. (Many states no longer allow manual or automatic tank gauging or tightness testing with inventory control as methods of leak detection.)



Figure 7-5 Ball Float Overfill Protection Valve

Manual Tank Gauging

In manual gauging, referred to as sticking, a long gauge stick calibrated to 0.125 inch (203.2 mm) is lowered directly into the tank, along the center axis, until the stick rests on the bottom. This requires straight, direct access into the tank, usually through the tank manway. The liquid leaves a mark on the stick that is read by the operator after the stick is removed. This method is generally limited to tanks of 2,000 gallons (7,570 L) or less and is used only in conjunction with tightness testing for tanks with capacities greater than 550 gallons (2,082 L).

With this method, the tank being measured must be completely idle for at least 36 hours. Two separate readings must be taken, one at the beginning and one at the end of that period, and the readings must be taken once a week. If the readings do not meet or match weekly or monthly standards, the tank is leaking.

It is common to provide manual tank gauging to double-check mechanical or electronic methods and to allow measurement if electrical power is lost or if the automatic devices fail.

Automatic Tank Gauging

Automatic tank gauging is accomplished by the permanent installation of a probe, or monitor, in the storage tank. The probe can be mechanical, pneumatic, or electronic. The least costly tank gauging is a mechanical device, such as a float, that rides on the surface of the liquid. By its movement, the float transmits a reading of the liquid level by mechanical or other means to a remote indicator. General accuracy is about 2 percent.

A slightly more accurate method is a pneumatic tank gauge that uses a bubbler pipe extending down into the liquid. A permanent source of compressed air or a hand-operated air pump forces air out of the bubbler pipe. The gauge operates by measuring the pressure required to force air out of the bubbler pipe. Higher pressures required to produce the bubbles indicate deeper depths of the liquid.

Electronic tank gauging is typically the preferred method of gauging. An electronic tank gauging system consists of a probe, which is mounted in a tank opening and extends to the bottom of the tank, and a remote panel that is controlled by a microprocessor and can be programmable. The probe, which is capable of monitoring several parameters, extends from the primary tank bottom to a termination point above the tank that both anchors the probe and acts as a junction box for the wiring. For underground storage tanks, this point is below grade. Access to the box through a small manhole is required. For aboveground storage tanks, the probe terminates in a junction box on the top of the tank.

The advantage of the electronic gauging system is that it can be programmed to automatically record many functions, such as product and water level inside the tank and product temperature. Overfill and low-product levels are also capable of being monitored. Many manufacturers include probe testing from the control panel, which makes testing and troubleshooting easier, and probes from multiple tanks can be linked to a single panel. In addition, probes extending from various locations can be electronically linked to monitor vapor and liquid leakage from many sources, such as monitoring wells, piping, containment sumps, and tank interstitial spaces.

The electronic probes that are commonly available are the magnetostrictive and the ultrasonic. The magnetostrictive type uses changes in the magnetic field produced by movable product sensor floats, one for water and one for product. Each float has an integral magnet and is free to ride on the probe shaft as the product and water levels change. Ultrasonic devices signal a change in product level via ultrasound waves from the probe on the shaft to a receiver on the top of the probe.

Capacitance-type probes are no longer recommended, having been replaced by less expensive and more accurate electronic probes.

Tank Tightness with Inventory Control

A combination method uses periodic tank tightness testing and monthly inventory control, but it is allowed only during the first 10 years of operation. Many states no longer allow this method in new tank installations. (Check local code requirements.)

Tank tightness testing requires the tank to be taken out of service and temporary testing equipment to be installed. One method uses volumetric testing to exactly measure the change in the level of product over a period of several hours. Another method uses ultrasound or tracer gas detection techniques to detect leaks in the tank wall.

The monthly inventory requires an exact measurement to be taken of the amount of product delivered each month. That measurement then must be compared to the amount stored in the tank plus the amount dispensed. If the two figures do not balance, there is a leak.

Interstitial Monitoring

The interstitial space between tanks is used to detect and contain any leakage from the primary tank. Many states now require some form of this type of monitoring of tanks and connected piping. The monitoring of interstitial space is divided into two general categories: wet and dry.

Dry methods use vapor monitoring to detect the presence of hydrocarbon vapors. Some products can distinguish between water and hydrocarbon, which may be useful in determining the type of leak detected. Vapor monitoring is achieved by placing a probe sensitive to product vapor in the dry interstitial space. The probe typically is placed half the distance into the interstitial tank space. When leakage occurs, the vapor produced by the product is detected, and

a signal is given. This method has the advantage of being unaffected by condensed water.

Wet methods monitor for the presence of liquid product using either air pressure or vacuum. In this method, the interstitial space is filled with a brine solution that is monitored for drop or rise in quantity. Liquid monitoring is achieved by placing a probe capable of detecting liquid at the bottom of the dry interstitial space. When leakage occurs, it is detected, and a signal is given. A shortcoming of this method is that water condensation in the interstitial space is detected as leakage. Again, some products provide the ability to distinguish between water and hydrocarbons. However, external groundwater leakage through the secondary containment tank is also detected. Monitors that are sensitive only to product, based on specific gravity, are available.

A hydrostatic monitoring system (see Figure 7-7) is more expensive than the other methods, but it is the most accurate method of interstitial monitoring. It is a wet system in which a liquid, usually brine, which is installed at the factory, completely fills the interstitial space. The system is at atmospheric pressure, with the liquid carried above the tank into a reservoir that contains a level probe. To maintain atmospheric pressure, holes must be made in the standpipe cap. If the possibility of water entering the holes exists, a separate vent line, extended to a point safely above grade, must be installed. Since normal product temperature differences will cause the liquid level to fluctuate, the level probe is set to annunciate only when unacceptable changes occur. Water from a high water table leaking into the interstitial space from a hole in the secondary tank will cause the level to rise. Product leaking out of the primary tank into the interstitial space will also cause a change in the brine level, as will a hole in the secondary tank.

Pressure monitoring of the interstitial space is accomplished by applying air pressure (at 1.5 psig [10.34 kPa]) or creating a vacuum in the space. Any increase or reduction of pressure or vacuum indicates a leak, and a signal is sent to a remote panel for annunciation. Pressure systems are rarely used due to the level of experience and maintenance required.

Groundwater Monitoring

Groundwater monitoring senses the presence of product floating on the surface of groundwater. It



Figure 7-6 Schematic Diagram of Leak Detection Methods for Tanks and Piping



Figure 7-7 Detail of Hydrostatic Interstitial Monitoring

can be used only where water and the product to be measured are immiscible. This method requires the installation of monitoring wells in the groundwater at several strategic locations near the tank. The wells must be properly designed and sealed to eliminate surface contamination. A geotechnical report may be required to determine the flow of underground water and the direction a pollution plume might travel if the groundwater became contaminated.

The wells can be checked either manually or automatically by electronic methods. Manual methods require the use of a bailer to collect liquid samples from inside the well and bring them to the surface. Samples must be sent for analysis once a month. Electronic methods use probes suspended in the well to continuously monitor for the presence of contamination in groundwater. If contamination exists, an alarm is annunciated at a remote panel.

Monitor wells are limited to sites where the groundwater level is 20 feet (6.1 m) or less below the

surface, with the best results obtained from depths of between 2 and 10 feet (0.60 and 3 m).

Inground Vapor Monitoring

Inground vapor monitoring measures the fumes in the soil around a storage tank to determine whether spilled product is present. This method, like groundwater monitoring, requires the installation of monitoring wells.

The wells can be checked either manually or automatically by electronic equipment. Manual methods require monthly air sample gathering and laboratory analysis. Electronic methods use a probe suspended in the well and a remote, finely calibrated analyzer. Vapor monitoring should be considered only where the backfill is sand, gravel, or some other material that allows vapors to move readily from the tank through the backfill to the monitor. It is not recommended where high groundwater and excessive precipitation might interfere with the operation of the system for more than 30 days.

Leakage from Piping

Pressurized piping must have one automatic leak detection method and one additional leak detection method, as described below.

Automatic leak detection entails a permanently installed, automatic flow restrictor or automatic flow shutoff device installed in the product discharge piping and/or a continuous alarm system, which could be a probe installed in the secondary pipe that continuously monitors the liquid or vapor release of the secondary containment piping system. If the secondary containment terminates in a manway or containment sump, the lower end of the secondary containment pipe should be open to the sump and should allow any leaking liquid to spill into the sump to be detected by a sump alarm probe.

The following accuracy must be provided for automatic detection: a pressurized shut-down monitoring device that prevents the flow of product when a line tightness test indicates a minimum leakage of 0.10 gallon per hour (gph) (0.063 L/h). In addition, the device must be capable of shutting down the system when a leak of 3 gpm (0.19 L/s) at 10 psi (68.95 kPa) is detected. One commonly used device is installed on the discharge of the submersible pump in the manway. It must act independently of any other pressurized shut-down monitoring device.

An additional method of leak detection may be any one of the following, performed monthly: groundwater monitoring, secondary pipe vapor monitoring, or secondary pipe liquid monitoring. Annual pipe tightness testing also meets the requirement for an additional method, as does a continuous alarm to detect spillage as described above.

Underground suction piping leak detection is not required if the piping is sloped back to the tank from the dispenser and if a check valve is installed in the dispenser as close as possible to the vacuum pump. Due to the increased use of alcohol additives in gasoline, it is general practice to provide double-contained suction piping for gasoline systems. Double-contained piping is not required for diesel fuel, but it is highly recommended.

When the tank is higher than the dispenser, it is necessary to use double-contained piping. A sump is installed at the low point of the piping, and a probe is installed to detect leakage from the secondary pipe. Any product leaking from the primary pipe will spill into the secondary containment pipe and flow by gravity to the low point. The piping is pitched downward to a bulkhead, sump, or manway. Double-contained piping penetrates the side of the bulkhead using special fittings called bulkhead fittings. These fittings are used to terminate double-contained piping so the secondary containment is open and liquid from between the two pipes can spill into the sump to be detected. Inductive sensors that do not require penetration of the secondary containment pipe are also available. These attach directly to the outside of the secondary pipe to detect leakage by interruption of the inductive path of the sensor.

Leakage from Sumps

Leakage within containment sumps and manways is monitored by means of probes sensitive to liquid or vapor. They are suspended in or attached to the sides of the containment sump. The liquid probe level is adjusted to signal the presence of liquid. Probes that discriminate between water and petroleum products are available. They are connected by wires to a remote panel for annunciation.

Vapor Recovery Systems

Sometimes the local code requires VOC vapors resulting from the displacement of gasoline and gasoline-blended products to be prevented from entering the atmosphere. VOC vapors occur when storage tanks and motor vehicles are filled. Diesel fuel, kerosene, waste and motor oil, and heating oil do not require vapor recovery.

Vapor recovery is divided into two phases. Phase 1 is recovery from gasoline storage tanks; phase 2 is recovery from gasoline dispensers used to fill motor vehicles.

Phase 1 Vapor Recovery

Phase 1 vapor recovery entails a separate and independent closed system installed at the storage tank for use only during the filling of the storage tank. The product flowing into the tank displaces an equal volume of vapor, which must be recovered. The purpose of phase 1 vapor recovery is to prevent the escape of VOCs from the UST into the atmosphere. It can be achieved by means of a two-point or coaxial system.

The two-point vapor recovery system consists of a separate fill line to and a vent from the UST, each piped directly to the tanker truck. A separate hose from the truck is connected to an outlet accessed through a vapor recovery fill port adjacent to the product fill port. It is common practice for the vapor recovery pipe to be the same size as the fill line, typically 3 inches (80 mm). The vapor recovery pipe does not require double containment.

Coaxial vapor recovery is a combination system that uses a single connection point. It is similar in principle to the phase 2 vapor recovery used with dispensers. It consists of a drop tube with a pipe within a pipe and a delivery hose of the same construction. Product is delivered through the center pipe of the delivery hose, and the vapor passes through the outer pipe of the drop tube, which returns vapor directly to the delivery truck through the coaxial delivery hose as the product fills the tank.

Phase 2 Vapor Recovery

Phase 2 vapor recovery is a separate and independent closed system installed at the dispenser only for use during the dispensing of gasoline. Its purpose is to prevent the escape of VOCs from the motor vehicle tank into the atmosphere during tank filling. Phase 2 vapor recovery can be achieved by use of either a balanced or a vacuum-type system. The balanced is the type most often used.

Dispensing Systems

Product dispensing concerns only transferring product from the storage tank into the fuel tanks of motor vehicles.

Two methods are used to transfer product from a UST to the motor vehicle: pressure and vacuum systems. The pressure system uses a small-diameter, submersible pump immersed in the UST to create the pressure and flow rate needed to transfer product from the UST to the vehicle (see Figure 7-8). The submersible pump is sized to fit inside a 4-inch (100-mm) tank connection. Other sizes are also available. In any case, the design should incorporate easy removal of the pump for maintenance purposes.

The vacuum system uses a pump installed in the dispenser enclosure to create the suction pressure needed to draw product from the UST into the vehicle. Vacuum dispensers have a practical upper limit of 10 feet (3 m) of suction lift from the bottom of the UST to the highest point of the dispensing system. (Note: The vacuum system is no longer recommended.)

For USTs, the pressure system is preferred for the following reasons:

- Maintenance is much lower compared to that for vacuum systems.
- The initial cost is lower than that of vacuum systems.
- A submersible pump can supply multiple dispensers, while vacuum pumps must be installed in each individual dispenser.
- Submersible pumps can deliver higher flow rates than vacuum pumps.
- Vapor lock is eliminated with a submersible pressure pump system, as the pump suction is always flooded.

Product Dispensers

Dispensers are commonly available in two flow rates: standard speed for cars, which delivers a flow rate in the range of 7 to 15 gpm (0.44 to 0.95 L/s), and high speed for trucks, which delivers as much as 45 gpm (2.84 L/s). For passenger cars, the average dispenser discharges approximately 10 gpm (0.63 L/s) and requires approximately 30 psi (207 kPa). The size of the hose from the dispenser to the nozzle could be either 0.5 or 0.75 inch (15 or 20 mm), with 0.75 inch (20 mm)

being the most often used. High flow rates for large fuel tanks require a 1-inch (25-mm) hose.

Dispensers have a wide variety of features. Following are the major components generally found in a dispenser:

- A register that displays the amount of product dispensed
- A meter used to register the total gallons
- The hose outlet, available in a side or front location
- A hose of the coaxial type for phase 2 vapor recovery (12-foot [3.66-m] length on average, but 15-foot [4.57-m] length is available with breakaway fittings)
- A high hose retractor to keep the hose off the floor or driveway
- A high-capacity product filter
- A dispenser containment mounting pan for installing the dispenser (A shear valve is illustrated in Figure 7-9.)
- An emergency shutoff, located in the dispenser sump pan, to stop flow in the event of a supply or dispenser hose line break
- A nozzle, with a vapor recovery feature where required and an automatic shutoff feature. Two sizes are generally available: 0.5 inch (15 mm) and the more commonly used 0.75 inch (20 mm). Note that the nozzle should not reach within 5 feet (1.52 m) of building openings.

Dispenser Pan

A dispenser pan is required to attach the dispenser to a concrete pad or island. The pan provides a liquidtight entry for both single- and double-wall product piping and electrical conduit. It is also designed to collect and monitor spills and to prevent product from leaking below the dispenser into the environment.

Fuel Island

Dispensers, including the dispenser pan, should be installed on a fuel island. The purpose of the island is to protect the dispensers against collision damage. The island may be field-poured, or pre-assembled island forms are available to ease construction. Steel or stainless steel are the typical materials. Stainless steel is the preferred material for its ease of maintenance, but it has a higher upfront cost. The dispenser pan is then anchored to the island to create a solid base for the dispenser.

Fire Suppression Systems

For unattended motor fuel dispensing facilities, a fire suppression system may be required. Consult the local code to determine if it is mandated. Pre-engineered chemical extinguishing systems are available for inclusion on the fueling island. Consult the manufacturer's information for engineering data, including nozzle placement, suppressant storage tanks, detectors,



(7) Ball float overfill prevention, (8) Drop tube, (9) Tank gauge, (10) Monitor well, (11) Emergency shutoff

and other equipment. These systems are customized for each application based on several factors, such as island size, canopy or no canopy, wind direction, and other site constraints.

Fuel Control Systems

On systems serving fleets (e.g., bus companies, school buses, municipalities), it maybe desirable to include a fuel management system to supervise fuel transactions. These units typically are computer based, but less expensive key-controlled mechanical units are available. Operation of the unit requires a key, an electronic key, or a keypad with assigned PIN numbers. Each vehicle and/or vehicle driver is assigned a key or PIN. When a user logs onto the system, the unit turns on the power to the dispensers, lights, etc. It can log fuel capacity dispensed including date, time, driver, and vehicle. Some units even require inputting odometer readings for maintenance such as oil change or tire rotation. Systems can be used simply for pump operation or for a multitude of other tasks. A fuel management unit is illustrated in Figure 7-10.

ABOVEGROUND STORAGE TANKS

The most often used aboveground storage tank (see Figure 7-11) is factory constructed of steel and intended for atmospheric pressure conditions. Such tanks must conform to UL 142, UL 2080: *Fire Resistant Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids*, or UL 2085. Materials such as FRP, reinforced concrete, and FRP clad steel are seldom used for small tanks. If used, code requires the outside of a concrete vault to be protected against corrosion, weather, and sunlight.

Tank Construction

Aboveground storage tanks are factory fabricated in both round and cylindrical configurations. Concrete-

encased tanks can come either round or rectangular. Primary tanks are often manufactured with compartments capable of storing different products. NFPA 30 limits motor fuel AST capacity to 6,000 gallons (22,710 L). All ASTs must be provided with some form of product leakage and overfill containment conforming to 40 CFR 112 regulations. This containment can be achieved by including a dike or an impoundment capable of holding 110 percent of the tank's contents or by providing integral secondary containment of the primary tank.

Many small tanks are provided with integral secondary containment and an interstitial space. The width of the space varies among manufacturers. Several proprietary methods are used to construct the secondary containment vault around the primary tank. An often-used material is plastic-lined concrete, which, if sufficiently thick, provides a two-hour fire rating as required by UL 2085. Another material used for external secondary containment vaults is steel. Insulation between the primary and secondary tank is provided by some manufacturers to protect the primary tank from temperature extremes. This also may be used to meet fire safety requirements for a two-hour fire rating.

Stairs or ladders are generally provided to allow inspection and for delivery truck operators to reach connections located on top of the tank.

Corrosion Protection

Since the tank is aboveground, the only corrosion protection required is weather resistance on the tank exterior. This is a code requirement, and each manufacturer has a proprietary method of protecting the outside of the AST.

The exposed piping must be a corrosion-resistant material such as FRP (which also must be impervious to UV light), stainless steel, or protected (painted or coated) black steel.

Tank Connections and Access

Connections are located only on top of the tank and extend through the vault or secondary containment into the primary tank. Except for large tanks, direct access for personnel entry into the primary tank typically is not provided. Standard connections include:

- Tank vent
- Emergency vent used for exposure to fire and the elevated pressures created by the boiling liquid in the tank
- Product dispenser outlet
- Product fill (either coaxial or single as required)
- Phase 1 vapor recovery
- Tank gauging
- Leak detection

A typical aboveground tank installation is illustrated in Figure 7-12.

Spill Prevention

For tanks with integral secondary containment, a containment sump surrounds the fill pipe. The size of the sump ranges from 5 to 15 gallons (18.9 to 56.8 L). For tanks with external secondary containment, spills enter the containment and are manually removed. A remote fill station could be provided with an integral spill containment sump to catch any hose spills. A small hand or electric pump could be provided to empty the containment sump into the primary tank. For detail of a typical fill installation, see Figure 7-13.

Atmospheric Tank Venting

An AST requires two vents. One is the standard atmospheric vent used to keep the tank at atmospheric pressure. This is commonly a 2-inch (50-mm) vent that must extend to a point 12 feet (3.66 m) above grade. The end typically terminates in a pressure/ vacuum cap.

The second is an emergency vent required to depressurize the tank if a fire near or under the tank raises the temperature to a point where product vapor is generated faster than the atmospheric vent can pass it. Such a vent is commonly 6 or 8 inches (150 or 200 mm) in size, based on the tank size and the volume stored. The tank manufacturer provides the required emergency vent, with the size based on American Petroleum Institute standards.

Overfill Prevention

Overfilling is prevented by automatic or manual means installed directly on the tank. Automatic overfill prevention employs an overfill-preventing valve similar to that described previously in the discussion of underground storage tanks. Manual methods include a direct reading-level gauge installed in sight of the operator and/or an audible high-level alarm activated by a separate probe installed inside the tank. Alarms shall sound when the product level reaches 90 percent of capacity, and product delivery will be stopped when the level reaches 95 percent of capacity.

Leakage from Tanks

Use of aboveground tanks requires a method of containing any possible product release and preventing contamination of the adjacent environment. Product releases can result from small leaks or the catastrophic failure of the tank. Containment methods that meet requirements include a dike completely surrounding the tank, remote secondary containment, and integral secondary containment.

For ASTs without secondary containment, a dike must be provided. Dikes are required to be capable of containing 110 percent of tank capacity and to be constructed of materials such as concrete, steel, or impermeable soil designed to resist the full head of liquid. Dikes must be constructed in conformance with NFPA 30. For discharge from the dikes, a separator must be provided along with the necessary control valves, which may need to be self-actuating to conform with local codes. It is recommended that an additional impoundment basin be constructed at least 50 feet (15.2 m) from the AST and at a safe distance from other buildings, property lines, or tanks. The purpose is to capture and isolate any flammable liquids released during a fire or tank failure and to remove them a safe distance away from the AST. For ASTs, dikes are seldom used because remote and integral secondary containment have far lower initial costs.

Remote secondary enclosures are usually made of steel. They are totally enclosed and sealed in a manner that prevents the entrance of rainwater by the inclusion of rain shields. They are required by code to have a capacity that is 110 percent of the nominal capacity of the primary tank.

Tank integrity is achieved by enclosing the primary tank with an integral secondary containment, usually of steel or reinforced concrete. This type of tank has an interstitial space that is monitored for leakage in the same manner used for a UST, which was discussed previously.

System Monitoring

System monitoring consists of product level gauging and leakage annunciating. AST systems can be monitored either manually or electronically; however, manual reading is no longer allowed in some states.

Product level gauging in the tank can be achieved by use of a visual level gauge or an electronic gauge, either mounted on or immediately adjacent to the tank or at a remote location. Level gauges similar to those installed in USTs can be used. Remotely mounted electronic gauges capable of recording and placing in memory many functions using probes similar to those installed in USTs are commonly used.

Leak detection for ASTs is much easier than that for USTs because leakage from the tank can be easily observed. Automatic means of system monitoring include a stand-alone alarm panel and alarms that are integral to an electronic panel used for product level indication.

Vapor Recovery

Phase 1 and phase 2 vapor recovery for gasoline and gasoline blends is required. For phase 1 recovery, similar to USTs, either coaxial or two connections from a delivery truck are necessary during the filling operation. Phase 2 vapor recovery for tank-mounted dispensers is usually integral. For remote dispensers, a separate vapor recovery line connecting from the dispenser to the tank is required.

Product Dispensing Systems

For ASTs, the dispenser is usually directly connected to the tank or located a very short distance from it. Some codes require a separation distance between the tank and the dispenser of upwards of 50 feet (15.24 m). For remote dispensers, a vacuum system may offer a lower initial cost, and due to the short piping runs and single dispenser, most of the objections to vacuum systems discussed previously in the UST section do not apply. However, while they often operate acceptably for diesel fuel dispensing applications, vacuum systems may be plagued by chronic vapor lock in gasoline dispensing systems. It is important to include an anti-siphon valve with all AST dispensing systems. This valve is used to automatically shut off the flow of product in case the line is broken.

For ASTs, the dispenser can be mounted either on the tank or as a separate, remote dispenser (similar to those used for a UST). Dispensers are available with vacuum or pressure systems.

The tank-mounted dispensing system consists of a submersible pump, the complete dispenser (nozzle, hose, integral phase 2 vapor recovery system, means of base-mounting, and safety features), product pump, and interconnecting piping. This arrangement has the lowest initial cost.

Tank Protection

All ASTs located adjacent to a road or subject to a possible automotive collision must be adequately protected. Acceptable means of protection are concrete barriers or bollards or a concrete-encased tank. Bollards similar to those used to protect fire hydrants are the means most often used. The entire assembly should be placed within fencing with a lockable gate to minimize vandalism.

SYSTEM PIPING CONSIDERATIONS

For pressurized product pipe, it is common practice to use a minimum of a 2-inch (50-mm) size, increasing it only if the system under design requires a larger size based on a higher flow rate or if the difference in friction loss allows the selection of a lower-horsepower submersible pump. Generally accepted practice is not to use pipe sizes smaller than 1.25 inch (32 mm). A larger-size product pipe is generally used to lower the head requirements of the pump selected.

Piping Materials

Piping aboveground from an AST is for the vent and product delivery. The most common piping material is A-53 steel with threaded joints, and the pipe must be coated at the factory with an accepted and proven corrosion paint or coating. Note that Teflon tape should not be used on the pipe joints as it is incompatible with hydrocarbons. A common practice is to use a baked-on powder. Another material used where a high degree



Figure 7-9 Shear Valve



Figure 7-10 Fuel Management Unit

of corrosion protection and strength is required is stainless steel. FRP with ultraviolet protection added to the pipe is another often-used material. Galvanized steel pipe is not considered acceptable. Adapters are used to connect steel pipe to FRP if an underground run to a remote dispenser is necessary.

Because leakage is visible, double-contained piping is not required for ASTs if the tank is located within a dike or inside a remote containment. If pipe is run underground or aboveground outside diked areas, it must be double contained and provided with leak detection.

For new and replacement USTs, interconnecting piping is almost exclusively plastic or FRP with plastic or FRP secondary containment. Requirements regarding the approval of the specific piping material and connections selected and cathodic protection, if applicable, must be checked with the jurisdictional authority.

Plastic piping is commonly divided into two general types: flexible and rigid. Flexible pipe is generally manufactured from proprietary materials. If it is UL listed and/or FM Global approved, it is generally acceptable. In addition, the joints and connections should be selected to provide the greatest strength, ease of installation, and corrosion resistance. Flexible, plastic coaxial piping systems are a double-walled piping system installed as a single pipe. For an illustration of a coaxial pipe, see Figure 7-14.

Rigid FRP piping with an epoxy interior lining has been widely used and accepted and is considered the piping material of choice. The primary pipe is assembled with socket-type fittings and epoxy cement. The outer (secondary containment) pipe is the same material as the primary pipe and is manufactured in two half sections with a longitudinal flange. It is assembled after the primary pipe is tested using cement placed on the adjacent flanges with nuts and bolts installed to hold the two half sections together until the cement dries. Drop tubes in tanks reduce production of vapors as well as product foaming. For a detail of a foot valve, refer to Figure 7-15.

Flexible pipe connectors are used to connect piping runs to sumps and manways to allow for settlement. In addition, because submersible pumps are screwed into a tank connection, the product discharge will not always face the direction of the piping run to the dispenser when tightened. Flexible connectors are necessary inside manways to connect the submersible pump discharge to the dispenser supply piping.

Gasket materials must be either Buna-N (nitrile butadiene) or NBR (acrylonitrile butadiene rubber).

Pipe Sizing

Pipe sizing is based on the flow rate of the product, the allowable friction loss of the fluid through the system, and fluid velocity. This is an iterative procedure done in conjunction with selecting the size of the product pump.

Before the pipe can be sized, the following procedure for sizing the dispensing system must be done:

- 1. Select the dispenser location, type, and ancillary devices.
- 2. Select the pipe material.
- 3. Lay out the piping system, including length, fittings, and elevations in the layout.
- 4. Select the storage tank size and location.
- 5. Select a suction or pressure product pump system.

Flow Rate

For ordinary applications, the typical discharge flow rate to a motor vehicle from an average dispenser is 8 to 10 gpm (0.50 to 0.63 L/s). High-rate dispensers with discharge rates of up to 45 gpm (2.84 L/s) are available for buses and trucks.

Simultaneous Use Factor

The number of dispensers likely to be used at once is usually determined by experience. Where this can't be determined by experience, the following rule of thumb may be used. For multiple dispensers up to four, normally use a 100 percent use factor. For more than four, use a 75 percent simultaneous use factor.

Velocity

For FRP piping, the recommended maximum velocity should be kept at or below 7.5 feet per second (fps) (2.3 m/s). This figure keeps the pressure rise from water hammer to a safe level of 150 percent of design pressure. This is necessary due to the quick

closing of the dispenser valve. For steel pipe, a maximum velocity of 8 fps (2.44 m/s) has been found acceptable. Some coaxial piping systems can handle velocities of 20 fps (6.1 m/s) or lower.

Piping Friction Loss

Friction loss of product through piping is found by checking with the manufacturer of the submersible pump or dispenser. Using the established flow rate, the allowable friction loss can be selected based on pipe size and the selected product.

For preliminary sizing purposes only or if specific tables are not available, most products are close enough in viscosity to water that standard water charts can be used to obtain a friction loss figure that is sufficiently accurate. For FRP pipe, the friction loss should be decreased by 10 percent for a more accurate figure.

PUMP SIZING

The pump is sized using the total flow rate and the total head required. Then obtain the pump curves from the manufacturer and select the pump based on the calculated head and flow rate.

To find the flow rate, calculate the total gpm (L/s) from each section of the product line. This is done using the flow rate from the selected dispensers and the simultaneous use factor for the number of dispensers that may be used at the same time.

To find the total pump head required:

- 1. Calculate the height from the bottom of the storage tank to the high point of the dispenser hose, including the elevation of the high hose dispenser.
- 2. Find the friction loss of the product flow through the distribution piping up to the dispenser based on the flow rate calculated. This figure must include the equivalent length of run and other losses through fittings and all other connected devices. Most figures can be obtained from the manufacturer. For pressure loss through a submersible pump leak detector, dispenser assembly, and dispenser hose, refer to the manufacturer's information.
- 3. Obtain the recommended pressure required for proper operation of the selected dispenser. A typical figure used is in the range of 25 to 30 psi (172 to 207 kPa). This figure includes losses through the nozzle, hose, strainer, etc.



Figure 7-11 Aboveground Storage Tank

4. Add all of the above figures to calculate the total head required.

For a system head loss calculation sheet containing a checklist of all fittings and devices, refer to Figure 7-16. This checklist contains many items that may not be necessary for all installations.

TESTS

Testing of all piping and the UST at the time of installation is critical to ensure that no leakage of product can occur and to check the integrity of the pressure-bearing components. In addition, tests of the UST for deformation after installation and corrosive coating damage are also necessary. Testing must be performed in accordance with code and local jurisdictional authority requirements.

Testing of the Storage Tank

The UST must be pressure-tested before the tank is placed into the excavation and again after backfilling is complete. Certification must be obtained from the manufacturer that the inner and outer tank walls were leak-free prior to shipment. The certification must be based on a factory-performed tank tightness test. If a factory-installed hydrostatic interstitial monitoring system is used, a test before installation is not required since a visual check of the leak detection system will disclose any problem.

The pressure test prior to installation consists of applying 5-psig (34.5-kPa) air pressure in the tank for two hours with no lowering of pressure permitted. At this time, all tank openings should be sealed and a soapy water solution applied to all connections so



Figure 7-12 Aboveground Storage Tank Installation

any bubbles indicating leakage can be observed. If the tank has a coating for corrosion protection, this must be checked with an electronic device that discloses imperfections in the coating, called holidays, which must be repaired if found.

After installation, a hydrostatic test of the tank should be performed at a pressure of 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for a period of 30 minutes, with all piping isolated so only the tank is under pressure. (It is important to remove all traces of water prior to filling with product.)

Testing of the Piping Network

All piping containing product must be tested hydrostatically at a pressure of 100 psig (689.5 kPa) for a period of 30 minutes with no leakage allowed. Containment piping must be tested with air at 10 psig (68.9 kPa) for 30 minutes with no leakage permitted.

Vent and vapor recovery piping must be tested hydrostatically at a pressure of 30 psig (206.8 kPa) for 30 minutes with no leakage permitted.

Tightness Testing

Tightness testing is a general term used to describe the testing and evaluating of existing tanks and piping systems that contain product. Tightness testing is required periodically, following a schedule obtained from the local authority. However, periodic tightness testing generally is not required for the following:

- Tanks and piping containing no. 5 and no. 6 fuel oil
- Tanks and piping with a capacity of 1,100 gallons (4,163.5 L) or less, unless leakage is occurring
- Tanks and piping that are corrosion resistant and have an approved leak-detection system
- Tanks and piping installed in conformance with requirements for new construction
- Tanks larger than 50,000 gallons (189,250 L) where it is technically impossible to perform a meaningful series of tests. In such cases, an alternative test or inspection approved by the local authority must be conducted.

All tests must conform to EPA and local requirements, and the technicians performing them must be trained and qualified by the test equipment manufacturer. The tightness test must detect a leak of 0.1 gph (0.38 L/h) from the system with a detection probability of 95 percent and a false alarm probability of 5 percent. Acceptable leakage amounts are variable and depend on values established by the local authority.

Many types of tests are capable of achieving this precision, and various manufacturers make equipment suited for performing these tests. The following should be considered prior to selecting the type of test:

- Vapor pockets
- Thermal expansion of product



OPW 1-2100E, 5-Gallon (Deep Bucket Model) Figure 7-13 Fill Installation



Figure 7-14 Coaxial Pipe



Figure 7-15 Foot Valve

- Temperature and temperature stratification
- Groundwater level
- Evaporation
- Tank end deflection
- Pressure

SYSTEM INSTALLATION CONSIDERATIONS

Tank Removal and Abandonment

The standard life expectancy for fuel tanks installed today is approximately 30 years, so at some point these tanks will need to be removed or replaced. Every jurisdiction has its own regulations regarding how this is accomplished, so be sure to check with the local authority prior to tank removal. In general, tank removal consists of the following procedures.

• The tank must be emptied as much as possible. Ideally, this is accomplished by using as much product as possible prior to removal and then pumping

the remaining product and sludge into labeled containers for proper disposal.

- Once as cleaned out as possible, the tank should be uncovered (if buried), and all manways, pipes, alarms, etc. should be removed.
- The tank then should be removed, and holes should be cut in the ends of the tank to allow quick venting of the tank as well as to facilitate additional sludge removal. Note that only nonsparking pneumatic tools should be used to prevent igniting any vapors present in the tank.
- Sludge and any other foreign materials shall be removed by shoveling and brushing. All major scale should be knocked loose and should be in a "brush clean" condition prior to removal from the site. Proper protective breathing apparatus and protective clothing should be used since the sludge is likely to contain lead and other toxic materials. Again, all sludge and scale from the tank interior should be drummed and legally disposed.

If the tank has been leaking or petroleum product is discovered outside the tank, contact the local authority for direction. At times, the local authority may require the installation of monitoring wells at the spill location. These monitoring wells consist of a

Project	Specific gravity	Temp
Liquid	gpm (L/s) Range	Viscosity
	Static Losses	
	Tank Diameter	ft (m)
	Bury Depth	ft (m)
	Height High Hose Reel	ft (m)
	Total Static Height	ft (m)
Α.	Run of Pipe, Pipe Size (in diameter)	in. (mm)
	Measured Run	ft (m)
	Fittings — equivalent length (E.L.)	ft (m)
	Valves — equivalent length (E.L.)	ft (m)
	Reducers and Enlargements (E.L.)	ft (m)
В.	Total Equivalent Length	ft (m)
С.	Pipe Friction Loss	×friction loss/100 ft (30.5 m)
	Total Friction Loss	ft (m)
	Equipment Loss (in feet head) Meter	ft (m)
	Dispenser	ft (m)
	Filter and Leak Detector	ft (m)
	Hose and Nozzle	ft (m)
	Strainer	ft (m)
D.	Total Equipment Losses	ft (m)
E.	Total Head Loss (A+C+D)	ft (m)

Figure 7-16 System Head Loss Checklist

slotted pipe that allows monitoring of ground water without excavation.

In most cases, it is advantageous to deal with the contamination issue once it is discovered rather than covering it up and dealing with it at a later date. Several techniques are available for dealing with contaminated soil. The most common method is to haul it to a landfill fitted with facilities to deal with the contamination. It may be cost-effective to deal with the contamination via on-site treatment systems or even by injecting bacteria that will digest the petroleum. In any case, it is important to isolate the contamination to prevent it from migrating further.

At times, it may be necessary to abandon the fuel tank, but this should be considered a last resort. Generally, this is allowed only if the tank removal will impact the structural integrity of a nearby structure. Again, coordinate all requirements for proper abandonment with the local authority.

Tank Installation

The installation of the tank is critical to the longevity and proper functioning of the system and to the prevention of leaks over time. The contractor or installer must be trained and certified by the specific tank manufacturer.



Figure 7-17 Deadman Installation

FRP-type UST tanks rely on the quality of the backfill for long-term support to resist distortion and resulting failure. Experience has shown that carefully compacted, washed pea gravel that is free from any organic matter and has no sharp edges is the best backfill material. FRP tanks must be installed in conformance with API Recommended Practice 1615: Installation of Underground Petroleum Storage Systems. If tank floating is a possibility, such as exists in areas subject to flooding or with a high water table, the tanks must be installed over a reinforced concrete ballast pad or deadman concrete anchors heavier than the buoyant force of the tank and anchored to the pad or anchors by means of hold-down straps (see Figure 7-17). The weight of the backfill over the pad, which also resists floating, should not be added but used instead as a safety factor. It is recommended that the calculated load on each hold-down strap have a safety factor of five.

Steel USTs are structurally stronger and do not depend as much as FRP tanks on backfill for support. The backfill must prevent all but very minor shifting or settling of the tank over time. Tanks must be installed in conformance with NFPA 30 and NFPA 31: *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*. The requirements for a ballast pad and hold-down straps are the same as those for FRP tanks.

When steel tanks are used, they must be protected against corrosion by coating or cladding. Coatings must be tested for faults (called holidays) while the tank is on the truck and after its initial placement in the excavation. All defects found must be repaired in strict conformity to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Tanks should not be stored on the site prior to installation due to the possibility of damage. Arrangements should be made to deliver the tank on the day of installation.

ASTs should be placed on saddles on a level concrete pad of sufficient thickness to adequately support the tank and product. Bollards must be placed around the tank to protect it from vehicle damage.

The placement of the fuel tank must take into consideration its proximity to property lines, septic tanks, drywells, buildings, public ways, additional tanks, and other utilities.

Piping Installation

Pipe should be installed in a flat and level trench, far enough underground to prevent vehicular and frost damage. Initial backfill should be pea gravel, clean sand, or some other acceptable material. A generally accepted minimum depth from grade surface to the top of the pipe is 18 inches (450 mm) where there is no slab, 12 inches (300 mm) below asphalt slabs, and 6 inches (150 mm) under concrete slabs. It is also accepted practice where electrical conduit is installed in the same trench as piping to protect the conduit with a concrete encasement and to provide 4 inches (100 mm) minimum of separation.

Installation Checklist

Following is a typical installation checklist.

1. Is the installation in compliance with federal and local or municipal ordinances?

- 2. Have specifications and drawings been submitted to regulating bodies for approval?
- 3. Are all permits for construction compatible with the liquid to be stored?
- 4. Is the tank material's construction compatible with the liquid to be stored?
- 5. Will any surrounding structures create excessive loading on the tank?
- 6. Are clearances from adjacent buildings, property lines, roads, sidewalks, and surroundings in accordance with NFPA and insurance underwriter requirements?
- 7. Have groundwater tables, flood plains, and adjacent water bodies been investigated?
- 8. Does the piping system, as designed, create undesirable pressure or vacuum on the tank?
- 9. Have the chemical and physical properties of the soil been checked?
- 10. Has the depth of the tank installation been established with respect to traffic conditions over the tank?
- 11. What is the local seismic zone? Are other earth movements possible?
- 12. Are existing underground utilities or structures in the area?
- 13. Do the vent pipe locations pose hazards to buildings or personnel?
- 14. If a nonmetallic tank is installed, have the ballast pad weight and size been adjusted?

- 15. Has the frost-line depth in the area been checked for possible tank depth adjustment?
- 16. Regarding secondary containment, have the natural lay and slope of the land been considered?
- 17. Has the tank location been provided with restrictive fencing, lightning protection, maintenance lighting and power, and delivery truck access?
- 18. Can visual and audible alarms be observed or heard by operators?

REFERENCES

- API RP 1004: *Bottom Loading and Vapor Recovery for MC-306 Tank Motor Vehicles*. American Petroleum Institute.
- API Bulletin No. 1615: Installation of Underground Gasoline Tanks and Piping at Service Stations. American Petroleum Institute.
- API Bulletin No. 1611: Service Station Tankage Guide. American Petroleum Institute.
- Frankel, M. Facility Piping Systems Handbook. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- NFPA 30: *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*. National Fire Protection Association.
- NFPA 30A: Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages. National Fire Protection Association.

RESOURCES

- American Petroleum Institute: api.org
- Environmental Protection Agency Office of Water: epa.gov/OW


Steam and Condensate Piping

Put most simply, steam is used as a medium to transfer heat energy from a point of generation to a point of use where the heat energy can be extracted to do work. Steam is an efficient heat-transfer medium and has the advantage of flowing by pressure differential to the point of use. Thus, no pumps are necessary to move the heat-transfer medium as in a hot water system, which reduces initial equipment costs and associated maintenance expenses.

STEAM BASICS

Steam is produced when sufficient heat energy is added to change water from a liquid to a vapor. The heat energy inputs take two forms.

Sensible heat (also referred to as heat of saturated liquid) is the amount of heat energy required to raise 1 pound of water from a temperature of 32° F to the boiling point, or saturation temperature, for any given system pressure. This heat energy input is referred to as "sensible heat" because every British thermal unit (Btu) of heat energy added to the water can be sensed by a thermometer from the fact that the water temperature rises by 1°F. (1 Btu is the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 pound of water by 1°F.) As an example (refer to Table 8-1, column 4), a steam system operating at 15.3 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) requires 218.82 Btu per pound of water of sensible heat energy input to raise the temperature of the water from 32° F to 250.33° F.

Latent heat content is the heat energy required to turn 1 pound of saturated water from a liquid to vapor steam. It is the heat energy available to be extracted from the steam to do work. When the latent heat content of a pound of steam has been extracted by any heat-transfer process, the steam will condense back to saturated liquid. The amount of latent heat energy cannot be determined with a thermometer because the temperature of saturated liquid and steam are identical for any given system pressure. Referring again to Table 8-1, column 5, at 15.3 psig the latent heat content is \sim 945 Btu per pound.

Specific Volume of Saturated Steam

The volume required per pound of steam at a given pressure (see Table 8-1, column 8) is of great importance when installing a steam-distribution system. The choice of the steam-generation pressure influences both the required distribution pipe size and the steam velocity in the system. Pipe size directly impacts initial system cost, while steam velocity raises issues of erosion and noise. Steam-distribution systems often are designed to generate the steam at a relatively high pressure, requiring smaller diameter, lower cost piping and reducing steam pressure prior to the point of use, thus increasing the available latent heat content.

Flash Steam

Condensed steam (condensate) is saturated liquid at the same temperature as the steam from which it was formed. If this condensate is discharged to an area of lower pressure, the excess sensible heat content of the condensate will cause a portion of the liquid to "flash" or re-evaporate to vapor steam. This is an energy-saving measure that reclaims the heating value of high-pressure condensate rather than letting it vent to atmosphere (to 0 psig) before being returned to the boiler.

Figure 8-1 provides information on flash steam formation for typical systems, while specific values of flash steam formation may be determined using the following equation:

Equation 8-1

% of flash steam = $\frac{\text{SH-SL}}{\text{H}} \times 100$ where:

SH = Sensible heat in the condensate at the higher pressure before discharge

SL = Sensible heat in the condensate at the lower pressure to which the discharge takes place

H = Latent heat in the steam at the lower pressure to which the condensate has been discharged

	Col. 1 Gauge Pressure	Col. 2 Absolute Pressure (psia)	Col. 3 Steam Temp. (F°)	Col. 4 Heat of Sat. Liquid (Btu/lb)	Col. 5 Latent Heat (Btu/Ib)	Col. 6 Total Heat of Steam (Btu/lb)	Col. 7 Specific Volume of Sat. Liquid (cu ft/lb)	Col. 8 Specific Volume of Sat. Steam (cu 11/lb)
	29.743	0.08854	32.00	0.00	1075.8	1075.8	0.096022	3306.00
Ε	29.515	0.2	53.14	21.21	1063.8	1085.0	0.016027	1526.00
	27.886	1.0	101.74	69.70	1036.3	1106.0	0.016136	333.60
/ac	19.742	5.0	162.24	130.13	1001.0	1131.0	0.016407	73.52
1	9.562	10.0	193.21	161.17	982.1	1143.3	0.016590	38.42
s	7.536	11.0	197.75	165.73	979.3	1145.0	0.016620	35.14
l e	5.490	12.0	201.96	169.96	976.6	1146.6	0.016647	32.40
	3.454	13.0	205.88	173.91	974.2	1148.1	0.016674	30.06
	1 418	14.0	209.56	177.61	971.9	1149.5	0.016699	28.04
	0.0	14 696	212.00	180.07	970.3	1150.4	0.016715	26.80
	1.3	16.0	216.32	184 42	967.6	1152.0	0.016746	20.00
	23	17.0	210.02	187.56	965.5	1152.0	0.016768	23.30
	53	20.0	227.96	196.16	960.1	1156.3	0.016830	20.00
	10.3	25.0	2/0.07	208.42	952.1	1160.6	0.010030	16 30
	15.3	20.0	250.33	218.82	9/5 3	116/ 1	0.010022	13 75
	20.3	35.0	250.33	277.01	030.2	1167.1	0.017004	11 00
	20.3	<u> </u>	255.20	227.31	033.2	1160.7	0.017076	10.50
	20.2	40.0	207.25	230.03	933.7	1172.0	0.017140	0.40
	30.3	40.0	274.44	243.30	920.0	1172.0	0.017205	9.40
	40.3	<u> </u>	207.07	200.00	919.0	1170.9	0.017323	1.19
	50.5	75.0	297.97	207.30	911.0	1101.0	0.017624	0.00 E 02
	00.3	75.0	307.00	211.43	904.0	1101.9	0.017612	<u> </u>
	70.3	05.0	310.23	200.39	097.0	1104.2	0.017606	0.17 4 CE
	00.3	95.0	324.12	294.00	091.7	1100.2	0.017775	4.00
	90.3	105.0	331.30	302.10	000.0	1100.1	0.017050	4.23
	100.0	114.7	337.90	308.80	075.4	1100.0	0.017000	3.00
	110.3	125.0	344.33	315.08	8/5.4	1191.1	0.017001	3.59
	120.3	135.0	350.21	321.85	870.0	1192.4	0.01/991	3.33
67	125.3	140.0	353.02	324.82	808.2	1193.0	0.018024	3.22
SIC	130.3	145.0	355.76	327.70	805.8	1193.5	0.018057	3.11
–	140.3	155.0	360.50	333.24	861.3	1194.6	0.018121	2.92
	150.3	165.0	365.99	338.53	857.1	1195.6	0.018183	Z./5
	160.3	1/5.0	370.75	343.57	852.8	1196.5	0.018244	2.60
	180.3	195.0	3/9.6/	353.10	844.9	1198.0	0.018360	Z.34
	200.3	215.0	387.89	361.91	837.4	1199.3	0.018470	2.13
	225.3	240.0	397.37	372.12	828.5	1200.6	0.018602	1.92
	250.3	265.0	406.11	381.60	820.1	1201.7	0.018/28	1.74
		300.0	417.33	393.84	809.0	1202.8	0.018896	1.54
		400.0	444.59	424.00	/80.5	1204.5	0.019340	1.16
		450.0	456.28	437.20	/6/.4	1204.6	0.019547	1.03
		500.0	467.01	449.40	/55.0	1204.4	0.019/48	0.93
		600.0	486.21	4/1.60	/31.6	1203.2	0.02013	0.77
		900.0	531.98	526.60	668.8	1195.4	0.02123	0.50
	ļ	1200.0	567.22	571.70	611.7	1183.4	0.02232	0.36
	ļ	1500.0	596.23	611.60	556.3	1167.9	0.02346	0.28
		1700.0	613.15	636.30	519.6	1155.9	0.02428	0.24
		2000.0	635.82	671.70	463.4	1135.1	0.02565	0.19
		2500.0	668.13	730.60	360.5	1091.1	0.02860	0.13
		2700.0	679.55	756.20	312.1	1068.3	0.03027	0.11
		3206.2	705.40	902.70	0.0	902.7	0.05053	0.05

 Table 8-1
 Properties of Saturated Steam

Source: Armstrong International, Inc.



Figure 8-1 (a) Percentage of flash steam formed when discharging condensate to reduced pressure; (b) Volume of flash steam formed when 1 cubic foot of condensate is discharged to atmospheric pressure Source: Armstrong International, Inc.

Example 8-1

The following example (courtesy of Armstrong International) illustrates the amount of recoverable heat energy in flash steam formation.

Condensate at steam temperature and 100-psig pressure has a heat content of 308.8 Btu per pound (see column 4 in Table 8-1). If this condensate is discharged to atmospheric pressure (0 psig), its heat content instantly drops to 180 Btu per pound. The surplus of 128.8 Btu re-evaporates or flashes a portion of the condensate. Thus,

% of flash steam =
$$\frac{308.9 - 180}{970.3} \times 100 = 13.3\%$$

The ability to recover usable heat content in the form of flash steam can greatly increase overall steam system efficiency. Consider a heat exchanger operating on 50-psig steam and condensing 2,000 pounds per hour of condensate:

% of flash steam =
$$\frac{267.5 - 180.07}{970.3} \times 100 = 9.01\%$$

Thus, flash steam produced = $0.0901 \ge 2,000$, or 180 pounds per hour.

STEAM DISTRIBUTION PIPING

The purpose of any steam distribution system is to deliver clean, dry steam at the needed pressure to the eventual point of use. Two factors governing the design and sizing of steam distribution piping are steam velocity and the allowable pressure drop in the distribution system.

Steam Velocity

The velocity of the steam in a distribution system is a function of the mass rate of steam flow, steam pressure, and pipe size.

The steam velocity can be determined by the following:

Equation 8-2

w

$$V = \frac{2.4 Q \times V_s}{A}$$

V = Velocity, feet per minute (fpm)

Q = Flow of steam, pounds per hour

 V_s = Specific volume of steam at system pressure

A = Internal area of pipe, square inches

Steam velocities of 6,000 to 8,000 feet per minute are common in process steam systems. In heating systems where noise from flowing steam is an issue, velocities are typically 4,000 to 6,000 fpm.

Pressure Drop

One function of the steam distribution system is to deliver the steam at the needed pressure. Friction losses in the piping, as well as flow through elbows, fittings, strainers, and valves, contribute to pressure drop between the boiler and the point of use. While steam velocity is a function of the mass flow rate, pressure drop is a function of the square of the mass flow rate. Table 8-2 provides an example of the relationship of mass flow rate, velocity, and pressure drop in a 2-inch steam line at 100 psig.

6



50 40 30

20

Flow and Velocity Based on 0 PSIG

Table 8-2 Relationship of Mass Flow Rate, Velocity, and Pressure Drop in a 2-inch Steam Line at 100 psig

Mass Flow (lb/hour)	Velocity (fpm)	Pressure Drop
1,000	2,780	0.7 psi/100 ft
2,000	5,560	2.7 psi/100 ft
3,000	8,340	6.0 psi/100 ft

It is commonly accepted that the total pressure drop in a steam system should not exceed 20 percent of the steam supply pressure at the boiler.

One other factor to note in sizing steam distribution piping is the possibility of future expansion of the steam system. Generous sizing of the original distribution system can save costly retrofits in the future.

Figures 8-2 and 8-3 provide guidance for properly sizing steam distribution lines to take into account both steam velocity and pressure drop. The following example (reprinted with permission from the *ASHRAE Handbook*) illustrates the use of the charts.



Figure 8-3 Velocity Multiplier Chart for Figure 8-2 Source: ASHRAE Handbook

Example 8-2

Given a flow rate of 6,700 pounds per hour, an initial steam pressure of 100 psig, and a pressure drop of 11 psi per 100 feet, find the size of Schedule 40 pipe required and the velocity of steam in the pipe.

The following steps are illustrated by the broken line on Figure 8-2 and Figure 8-3.

- 1. Enter Figure 8-2 at a flow rate of 6,700 pounds per hour, and move vertically to the horizontal line at 100 psig.
- 2. Follow the inclined multiplier line (upward and to the left) to the horizontal 0-psig line. The equivalent mass flow at 0 psig is about 2,500 pounds per hour.
- 3. Follow the 2,500-pounds-per-hour line vertically until it intersects the horizontal line at 11 psi per 100 feet of pressure drop. The nominal pipe size is 2.5 inches. The equivalent steam velocity at 0 psig is about 32,700 fpm.
- 4. To find the steam velocity at 100 psig, locate the value of 32,700 fpm on the ordinate of the velocity multiplier chart (Figure 8-3) at 0 psig.
- 5. Move along the inclined multiplier line (downward and to the right) until it intersects the vertical 100-psig pressure line. The velocity as read from the right (or left) scale is about 13,000 fpm.

Note: Steps 1 through 5 would be rearranged or reversed if different data were given.

Erosion in Steam Distribution Systems

It is important to note that high steam velocity, especially with the presence of entrained droplets of condensate, will erode piping and fittings. This is most apparent at elbows, valves, and reducing fittings where flow direction or flow volume changes cause impingement on the piping.

CONDENSATE REMOVAL

Condensate is formed in steam systems when the latent heat of the steam is given up. This heat transfer can be intentional, such as in a space heater, radiator, or steam jacketed kettle, or unintentional (and unavoidable) due to radiation heat loss from piping and equipment.

In either case, it is imperative that the condensate, as well as any air or other noncondensable gases, be removed from the steam system as quickly as possible. Condensate and noncondensable gases contribute to a loss of heat transfer efficiency, corrosion of piping and equipment, and an increased probability of dangerous water hammer.

The problems resulting from poor condensate drainage are as follows.

- A loss of heat-transfer performance will result unless condensate is drained from the steam heating unit. Since heat transfer in a steam system is based on the large amount of latent heat that becomes available as the steam condenses, if the heating unit is flooded, only the sensible heat from the condensate will become available as it cools. Table 8-1 shows that the sensible heat is only a small fraction of the latent heat available in a pound of steam at any given pressure. The latent heat is transferred at constant steam temperature as the steam condenses.
- Water hammer in an undrained or improperly drained steam main can be caused by the impact of a rapidly moving slug of water. Unless the condensate is removed from low points in the steam mains, it gradually accumulates until the high-velocity steam forms ripples. As condensate builds up, it decreases the area available for steam flow, leading to even higher steam velocities to the point where water is entrained by the steam in the form of a wave. The slug of water accelerated by the steam can reach velocities in excess of 100 miles per hour before it hits some obstruction, such as an elbow or other fitting. The rapid change in speed can cause a loud noise or even severe damage to the system.
- Corrosion occurs in units that are not properly drained. Several corrosion processes have been defined: generalized corrosion, which removes metal more or less uniformly from the surface; oxygen pitting, which concentrates on small areas, rapidly creating holes; and condensate grooving, which etches away the metal along the path followed by condensate, which has become acidic (carbonic acid) due to dissolved carbon dioxide.
- Corrosion is accelerated by the presence of carbon dioxide, which can form in the boiler as chemical components like carbonates and bicarbonates decompose. Oxygen introduced by vacuum breakers or from makeup feed water also increases the corrosion rate.
- Fouling or scaling on heat-transfer surfaces also is increased by inadequate condensate drainage and venting.

STEAM TRAPS

Properly installed steam traps can minimize these problems by draining the condensate and venting noncondensable gases from steam piping and heat exchangers. A steam trap is an automatic valve that is open in the presence of condensate and noncondensable gases and closed in the presence of live steam. The main difference between trap types is the method of actuation. All steam traps must:

- Vent air and other gases from the mains and heating units
- Prevent the flow of steam into the condensate piping
- Allow condensate to drain into the condensate piping

Many steam trap designs have been developed, but the most commonly used traps fall into one of the following categories:

• Thermostatic: The trap opens and closes by sensing the difference in temperature between steam and the condensate, which has been allowed to subcool to below steam temperature. Some examples of this type of trap include thermostatic bellows and bimetallic traps. Figure 8-4 shows a typical thermostatic bellows trap.



Figure 8-4 Thermostatic Bellows Trap

- Mechanical: These include inverted bucket and float and thermostatic (F&T) traps. These traps operate on the difference in density between steam and condensate, opening when a mixture of condensate and steam lifts the bucket (or condensate alone lifts the float) and closing when the condensate is discharged and live steam enters the trap. Figure 8-5 shows a typical inverted bucket trap.
- Thermodynamic disc: This trap senses differences in flow velocity or pressure caused by relatively high-velocity steam compared to lower-velocity condensate. A typical thermodynamic disc trap is shown in Figure 8-6.

Each trap design gives the trap its own set of characteristics. Because of the variety of trap designs, one of the key decisions in condensate drainage design is



Figure 8-5 Inverted Bucket Trap

the choice of the right type of trap. Often this choice is easy; for example, low-pressure heating system radiators are almost always equipped with thermostatic traps because the characteristics of that type of trap match the condensate drainage and air-venting requirements of low-pressure heating equipment. Sometimes, either of two different types of trap could be applied equally well to a given condensate drainage situation because the trap characteristics meet the drainage and venting requirements. For example, a high-pressure steam main could be equipped with either an inverted bucket trap or a thermodynamic disc trap. In some cases, a given kind of trap simply would not be able to do the job. For instance, since a thermodynamic trap requires a significant pressure drop between the steam-condensing device and the condensate pipe, installing such a trap in a low-pres-



Figure 8-6 Thermodynamic Disc Trap

sure heating system would not have a great enough pressure differential to operate.

PROPER CONDENSATE DRAINAGE FROM SYSTEM PIPING

Properly drained mains and care taken in starting up a cold system not only prevent water hammer damage but also improve the quality of the steam and reduce the maintenance required on pressurereducing valves, temperature controls, and other components.

Startup Loads

When bringing a steam distribution system up to operating pressure and temperature from a cold state, large amounts of latent heat are given up to the piping and fittings. This heat loss causes condensate formation on a scale much greater than that encountered in normal system operation. Table 8-3 gives values for warming-up loads for various sizes of pipe to different saturation temperatures.

Take as an example 300 feet of 10-inch line being brought up to 125-psi system pressure or \sim 353°F, assuming a warm-up time of one hour. The warming-up load of the line would be 450 pounds per hour of condensate. When at the operating pressure/temperature, this same line only loses latent heat through radiation and creates only 88 pounds per hour of condensate in still air at 70°F with 90 percent efficient insulation, or a factor of more than 5:1.

A liberal steam trap load safety factor and oversized steam traps do not always provide an efficient and safe steam main drain installation. The following points should also be considered by the designer:

- The method of heat up to be employed
- Providing suitable reservoirs, or drip legs, for the condensate
- Ensuring adequate pressure differential across the steam trap
- Selecting and sizing the steam trap
- Proper trap installation

Heat-up Method

The type and size of the steam trap used to drain steam mains depend on the method used to bring the system up to normal operating pressure and temperature. The two methods of system heat up commonly used are the supervised and the automatic heat up.

In the supervised heat-up method, manual drain valves are installed at all drainage points in the steam main system. The valves are fully opened to the condensate return or to drain before steam is admitted to the system. After most of the heat-up condensate has been discharged, the drain valves are closed, allowing the steam traps to drain the normal operating

 Table 8-3
 The Warming-up Load from 70°F, Schedule 40 Pipe

Steam Pre	ssure, psig	2	15	30	60	125	180	250
Pipe Size	wt of Pipe Per ft (lbs)		Por	unds of V	Vator Por	l incal F	oot	
(111)			100					
1	1.69	.030	.037	.043	.051	.063	.071	.079
11⁄4	2.27	.040	.050	.057	.068	.085	.095	.106
11/2	2.72	.048	.059	.069	.082	.101	.114	.127
2	3.65	.065	.080	.092	.110	.136	.153	.171
2 ½	5.79	.104	.126	.146	.174	.215	.262	.271
3	7.57	.133	.165	.190	.227	.282	.316	.354
31/2	9.11	.162	.198	.229	.273	.339	.381	.426
4	10.79	.190	.234	.271	.323	.400	.451	.505
5	14.62	.258	.352	.406	.439	.544	.612	.684
6	18.97	.335	.413	.476	.569	.705	.795	.882
8	28.55	.504	.620	.720	.860	1.060	1.190	1.340
10	40.48	.714	.880	1.020	1.210	1.500	1.690	1.890
12	53.60	.945	1.170	1.350	1.610	2.000	2.240	2.510
14	63.00	1.110	1.370	1.580	1.890	2.340	2.640	2.940
16	83.00	1.460	1.810	2.080	2.490	3.080	3.470	3.880
18	105.00	1.850	2.280	2.630	3.150	3.900	4.400	4.900
20	123.00	2.170	2.680	3.080	3.690	4.570	5.150	5.750
24	171.00	3.020	3.720	4.290	5.130	6.350	7.150	8.000

load. Therefore, the steam traps are sized to handle only the condensate formed due to radiation losses at the system's operating pressure. This heat-up method generally is used for large installations with steam mains of appreciable size and length and where the heat up generally occurs only once a year, such as in large systems where the system pressure is maintained at a constant level after the startup and is not shut down except in emergencies.

In the automatic heat-up method, the steam

boiler brings the system up to full steam pressure and temperature without supervision or manual drainage. This method relies on the traps to drain the warm-up load of condensate automatically as soon as it forms. This heatup method generally is used in small installations that are shut down and started up at regular intervals, as occurs in heating systems or dry-cleaning plants where the boiler is usually shut down at night and started up again the following morning. To avoid system shock, steam system warm up also can be done with a $\frac{3}{4}$ -foot line with a $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch valve to gradually warm up the main for a fixed amount of time before opening the main control valve.

Drip Legs

A reservoir, or drip leg, must be provided for the steam trap to be effective, since a steam trap can discharge only the condensate that is brought into it. Drip legs should be provided at all low points in the system and wherever the condensate can collect, such as at the ends of mains, at the bottoms of risers, and ahead of expansion joints, separators, pressure-reducing valves, and temperature regulators.

For long horizontal runs of steam mains and where there are no low drainage points, the drip legs should be provided at intervals of approximately 300 feet, but never more than 500 feet.

Figure 8-7 provides guidelines for drip leg sizing. A properly sized drip leg will capture condensate. An inadequately sized drip leg can actually cause a vertical "piccolo" effect where

pressure drop pulls condensate out of the trap. The diameter of the drip leg should be the same as that of the steam main up to 4 inches in diameter and half the steam main diameter (but not less than 4 inches) on larger lines.

Adequate Pressure Differential Across the Trap

The trap cannot discharge condensate unless a pressure differential exists across it—that is, unless there



Figure 8-7 Guidelines for Drip Leg Sizing

is a higher pressure at the inlet than there is in the condensate line. The drip leg should be of sufficient length to provide a hydrostatic head at the trap inlet so the condensate can be discharged during warm up, before a positive steam pressure develops in the steam main.

For mechanical traps, the minimum differential plus the maximum allowable differential (the trap operating pressure rating) must be considered. In draining devices such as heat exchangers that are controlled by temperature-regulating valves that could possibly operate in a vacuum at part load, install a vacuum breaker to ensure that pressure upstream of the trap cannot fall below atmospheric pressure and that adequate hydrostatic head is available.

Running Loads

As noted earlier, condensate formation is significantly lower after the system has come up to temperature, since it is due only to radiation heat loss from the system through the insulation. Table 8-4 provides condensate loads for various pressures and line sizes.

Piping Layout

Since the condensate in the steam line flows to the drip leg by gravity, it is important that the piping be pitched to properly direct that flow. Figure 8-8 provides guidelines for proper pipe pitch.

Trap Installation

The following recommendations should be observed.

• The steam trap should be installed as close as possible to the drip leg.

 Table 8-4
 Condensation in Insulated Pipes Carrying Saturated Steam in Quiet Air at 70°F (insulation assumed to be 75% efficient)

Pressu	ıre, psi	15	30	60	125	180	250	450	600	800
Pipe Size	sq ft Per		Pour	ds of Cu	ndone	ato Por	Hour Po	r Linoal	Foot	
(11)		0.5	1 Uuli		Jiluonac	10101	iloui i c		1000	
1	.344	.05	.06	.07	.10	.12	.14	.186	.221	.289
11⁄4	.434	.06	.07	.09	.12	.14	.17	.231	.273	.359
11/2	.497	.07	.08	.10	.14	.16	.19	.261	.310	.406
2	.622	.08	.10	.13	.17	.20	.23	.320	.379	.498
2 ½	.753	.10	.12	.15	.20	.24	.28	.384	.454	.596
3	.916	.12	.14	.18	.24	.28	.33	.460	.546	.714
31/2	1.047	.13	.16	.20	.27	.32	.38	.520	.617	.807
4	1.178	.15	.18	.22	.30	.36	.43	.578	.686	.897
5	1.456	.18	.22	.27	.37	.44	.51	.698	.826	1.078
6	1.735	.20	.25	.32	.44	.51	.59	.809	.959	1.253
8	2.260	.27	.32	.41	.55	.66	.76	1.051	1.244	1.628
10	2.810	.32	.39	.51	.68	.80	.94	1.301	1.542	2.019
12	3.340	.38	.46	.58	.80	.92	1.11	1.539	1.821	2.393
14	3.670	.42	.51	.65	.87	1.03	1.21	1.688	1.999	2.624
16	4.200	.47	.57	.74	.99	1.19	1.38	1.927	2.281	2.997
18	4.710	.53	.64	.85	1.11	1.31	1.53	2.151	2.550	3.351
20	5.250	.58	.71	.91	1.23	1.45	1.70	2.387	2.830	3.725
24	6.280	.68	.84	1.09	1.45	1.71	2.03	2.833	3.364	4.434

- The need to lift condensate to the return system requires special consideration. If the equipment being drained is under modulating pressure, as in a temperature-controlled heat exchanger, the inlet pressure to the trap could fall below that needed to lift the condensate. As a rule of thumb, the trap needs approximately 1 psig at the inlet for every 2 feet of lift to the return (0.43 psig per 1 foot, more precisely). When sufficient lift pressure cannot be guaranteed, the condensate should be drained to a reservoir/pump system and pumped to the return. A check valve should be piped in the trap outlet line if condensate is being lifted to the return.
- Pipe connections to and from the steam trap should be at least equal to the pipe size of the trap connection, and full-size isolation valves should be installed on each side of the trap to allow service.



Figure 8-8 (a) Piping for runout less than 10 feet: No trap required unless pitch back to supply header is less than 1/2 inch per foot; (b) Piping for runout greater than 10 feet: Drip leg and trap required ahead of control valve. Strainer ahead of control valve can serve as drip leg if blowdown connection runs to an inverted bucket trap. This will also minimize the strainer cleaning problem. Trap should be equipped with an internal check valve or a swing check installed ahead of the trap.

	rating of the neater by the indicated constant.)												
Steam	Latent					Ent	ering Air	Tempera	ture, °F				
Pressure, lbs/in ²	Heat of Steam	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
2	066.2						1 155	1 078	1 000	0.026	0.853	0 782	0 712
2	300.3	_	_	_	-	-	1.155	1.070	1.000	0.920	0.000	0.762	0.713
5	960.7	1.640	1.550	1.456	1.370	1.289	1.206	1.127	1.050	0.974	0.901	0.829	0.760
10	952.4	1.730	1.639	1.545	1.460	1.375	1.290	1.211	1.131	1.056	0.982	0.908	0.838
15	945.5	1.799	1.708	1.614	1.525	1.441	1.335	1.275	1.194	1.117	1.043	0.970	0.897
20	939.3	1.861	1.769	1.675	1.584	1.498	1.416	1.333	1.251	1.174	1.097	1.024	0.952
30	928.5	1.966	1.871	1.775	1.684	1.597	1.509	1.429	1.346	1.266	1.190	1.115	1.042
40	919.3	2.058	1.959	1.862	1.771	1.683	1.596	1.511	1.430	1.349	1.270	1.194	1.119
50	911.2	2.134	2.035	1.936	1.845	1.755	1.666	1.582	1.498	1.416	1.338	1.262	1.187
60	903.9	2.196	2.094	1.997	1.902	1.811	1.725	1.640	1.555	1.472	1.393	1.314	1.239
70	897.3	2.256	2.157	2.057	1.961	1.872	1.782	1.696	1.610	1.527	1.447	1.368	1.293
75	893.8	2.283	2.183	2.085	1.990	1.896	1.808	1.721	1.635	1.552	1.472	1.392	1.316
80	891.1	2.312	2.211	2.112	2.015	1.925	1.836	1.748	1.660	1.577	1.497	1.418	1.342
90	885.4	2.361	2.258	2.159	2.063	1.968	1.880	1.792	1.705	1.621	1.541	1.461	1.383
100	880.0	2.409	2.307	2.204	2.108	2.015	1.927	1.836	1.749	1.663	1.581	1.502	1.424

 Table 8-5 Constants for Determining the Btu Output of a Unit Heater Under Conditions Other than Standard

 (Standard = 2 pounds of steam pressure at 60°F entering air temperature. To apply, multiply the standard Btu capacity rating of the heater by the indicated constant.)

- A strainer equipped with a blowdown valve should be installed before the steam trap, and a test valve should be installed downstream of the trap. (Some traps now available combine isolation valves, strainers, and test valves in a single package.)
- All low points of the steam main and wherever condensate can collect, such as before pressurereducing valves and temperature regulators, should be drained.

FLASHING FLOW AND HIGH-PRESSURE CONDENSATE PIPING

Flash tanks play an important role in condensate drainage. They get their name from the sudden evaporation, or flashing, that occurs when condensate at high pressure is suddenly released to low pressure. The production of flash steam also is influenced by other components in the system. For example, thermostatic steam traps open only after the condensate has subcooled to below the saturation temperature for the given pressure. In sizing condensate returns for high-pressure systems, this flash steam must be considered, since it provides more friction loss than would be the case if the flashing did not occur and the pipe was carrying only liquid. Flash steam lines typically are sized for the pressure at which the main is operating. Low-pressure steam requires a larger pipe size than high-pressure steam.

To size condensate pipes to carry flashing condensate, determine the percentage of flash steam using Figure 8-1, and then multiply the total high-pressure condensate flow by the flash steam percentage to determine the flash steam flow rate. This procedure will oversize the condensate pipe to accommodate the flash steam without generating excess return line pressures.

TRAPPING APPLICATIONS

Two common applications for steam in industrial and commercial environments are space-heating equipment and shell and tube heat exchangers.

Trapping Space-heating Equipment

Space-heating equipment is found in most industries. The type and size of trap to be used depend on the application requirements.

Two standard methods for sizing traps for this equipment are available. For constant steam pressure for inverted bucket traps and F&T traps, use a 3:1 safety factor at operating pressure differentials. For modulating steam pressure for F&T traps and inverted bucket traps with thermic buckets, the safety factors are as follows:

- 0–15-psig steam: 2:1 safety factor at 0.5-psi pressure differential
- 16–30-psig steam: 2:1 at 2-psi pressure differential
- More than 30-psig steam: 3:1 at one-half of the maximum pressure differential across the trap

For inverted bucket traps without thermic buckets with more than 30-psig steam pressure only, use a 3:1

safety factor at one-half of the maximum pressure differential across the trap.

Trap Selection for Unit Heaters and Airhandling Units

Three methods can be used to determine the amount of condensate to be handled, based on the operating conditions.

Btu Method

The standard rating for unit heaters and other air coils is Btu output with 2-psig steam pressure in the heater and an incoming air temperature of 60°F. To convert from standard to actual rating, use the conversion factors in Table 8-5, and then multiply the condensate load by the safety factor.

Cubic Feet per Minute and Air Temperature Rise Method

If only the cubic feet per minute (cfm) capacity of the fan and the air temperature rise are known, find the actual Btu output using Equation 8-3:

Equation 8-3

 $Btu/hr = cfm \ge 1.08 \times temperature rise in °F$

The following example from Armstrong International illustrates this equation.

Example 8-3

What size trap will drain a 3,500-cfm heater that produces an 80°F temperature rise? The steam pressure is constant at 60 psig.

Using Equation 8-3:

• 3,500 x 1.08 x 80 = 302,400 Btuh Now divide 302,400 Btuh

by 904.5 Btu (from Table 8-1) to obtain 334 pounds per hour and then multiply by the recommended safety factor of 3. The application needs a trap with a 1,002-pounds-per-hour capacity.

Derive the 1.08 factor in Equation 8-3 as follows:

- 1 cfm x 60 = 60 (cubic feet per hour) cfh
- 60 cfh x .075 pounds of air per cubic foot = 4.5 pounds of air per hour
- 4.5 x 0.24 Btu/lb-°F (specific heat of air) = 1.08 Btu/ hr°F-cfm

Condensate Method

The condensate method can be used if the Btu output has been determined. First, divide the Btu output by the latent heat of steam at the steam pressure used. (See Column 2 of Table 8-5 or Table 8-1.) This will give the actual weight of steam condensed. For a close approximation, a rule of thumb is to divide the Btu output by 1,000. Then, multiply the actual weight of steam condensing by the safety factor to get the continuous trap discharge capacity required.

Trapping Shell and Tube Heat Exchangers

In shell and tube heat exchangers (see Figure 8-9), numerous tubes are installed in a housing or shell with confined free area. This ensures positive contact with the tubes by any fluid flowing in the shell. In the most common applications such as water heaters, the steam is in the shell, and the liquid is in the tubes.

The safety factors for constant steam pressure for inverted bucket traps and F&T traps is 2:1 at operating pressure differentials. The safety factors for modulating steam pressure for F&T traps and inverted bucket traps are:

- 0–15-psig steam: 2:1 at 0.5-psi pressure differential
- 16–30-psig steam: 2:1 at 2-psi pressure differential
- More than 30-psig steam: 3:1 at one-half of the maximum pressure differential across the trap

Trap Selection for Shell and Tube Heat Exchangers

To determine the condensate load on shell and tube heaters, use the following formula when the actual rating is known.



Figure 8-9 Shell and Tube Heat Exchanger

Table 8-6 Specif	fic Gravity an Substa	d Specific Hea nces	ats of Various	Hydrochloric acid, 10% (muriatic)	L	1.05	0.75
		Specific	Specific Heat	lce	S	0.90	0.50
Substance	or Solid (S)	Gravity at	at 60°F, Btu/	Ice cream	S	-	0.70
Acetic acid 100%		1 05	ID- Г	Lard	S	0.92	0.64
Acetic acid, 100%		1.05	0.40	Lead	S	11.34	0.031
		0.78	0.50	Leather	S	0.86–1.02	0.36
Alcohol ethyl 95%		0.70	0.60	Linseed oil	L	0.93	0.44
Alcohol, methyl	 	0.01	0.00	Magnesia, 85%	S	0.208	0.27
90%	L	0.82	0.65	Maple syrup	L	-	0.48
Aluminum	S	2.64	0.23	Meat, fresh, average	S	-	0.78
Ammonia, 100%	L	0.61	1.10	Milk	L	1.03	0.9–0.93
Ammonia, 26%	L	0.90	1.00	Nickel	S	8.90	0.11
Aroclor	L	1.44	0.28	Nitric acid, 95%	L	1.50	0.50
Asbestos board	S	0.88	0.19	Nitric acid, 60%	L	1.37	0.64
Asphalt	L	1.00	0.42	Nitric acid, 10%	L	1.05	0.90
Asphalt, solid	S	1.1–.5	0.22-0.4	No. 1 fuel oil	L	0.81	0.47
Benzene	L	0.84	0.41	(kerosene)		0.06	0.44
Brickwork and	S	1.6–2.0	0.22	No. 2 fuel oil		0.00	0.44
Brine, calcium		1 23	0.689	No. 4 fuel oil		0.00	0.43
chloride, 25%		1.20	0.003	No. 5 fuel oil		0.90	0.42
Brine, sodium chloride, 25%	L	1.19	0.786	No. 6 fuel oil		0.95	0.41
Clay, dry	S	1.9–2.4	0.224	API mid continent	L	0.95	0.40
Coal	S	1.2–1.8	0.26-0.37	crude	L	0.085	0.44
Coal tars	S	1.20	0.35@40	API gas oil	L	0.88	0.42
Coke, solid	S	1.0–1.4	0.265	Paper	S	1.7–1.15	0.45
Copper	S	8.82	0.10	Paraffin	S	0.86–0.91	0.62
Cork	S	0.25	0.48	Paraffin, melted	L	0.90	0.69
Cotton, cloth	S	1.50	0.32	Phenol (carbolic	L	1.07	0.56
Cottonseed oil	L	0.95	0.47	Phosphoric acid,		1 1 1	0.95
Dowtherm A	L	0.99	0.63	20%	L	1.11	0.00
Dowtherm C	L	1.10	0.35–0.65	Phosphoric acid,	L	1.05	0.93
Ethylene glycol	L	1.11	0.58	Phthalic anhydride	L	1.53	0.232
Fatty acid, palmitic	L	0.85	0.653	Rubber, vulcanized	S	1.10	0.415
Fatty acid, stearic	L	0.84	0.550	SAE, SW (#8	1	0.88	_
Fish, fresh, average	S		0.75–0.92	machine lube oil)			
Fruit, fresh, average	S	_	0.80-0.88	machine lube oil)	L	0.89	-
Gasoline	L	0.73	0.53	SAE, 30 (#30	L	0.89	_
Glass, Pyrex	S	2.25	0.20	Sand	S	1 4–1 76	0.19
Glass, wool	S	0.072	0.157	Sea water		1.03	0.94
Glue, 2 parts water/1 part dry	L	1.09	0.89	Silk	S	1.25–1.35	0.33
giue Glycerol, 100% (alycerin)	L	1.26	0.58	Sodium hydroxide, 50% (caustic acid)	L	1.53	0.78
Honey	L	_	0.34	30%	L	1.33	0.84
Hydrochloric acid, 31.5% (muriatic)	L	1.15	0.60	Soybean oil	L	0.92	0.24-0.33

Steel, mild @ 70	S	7.90	0.11
Steel, stainless, 300 series	S	8.04	0.12
Sucrose, 60% sugar svrup	L	1.29	0.74
Sucrose, 40% sugar syrup	L	1.18	0.66
Sugar, cane and beet	S	1.66	0.30
Sulfur	S	2.00	0.203
Sulfuric acid, 100% (fuming)	L	-	0.27
Sulfuric acid, 98%	L	1.84	0.35
Sulfuric acid, 60%	L	1.50	0.52
Sulfuric acid, 20%	L	1.14	0.84
Titanium (commercial)	S	4.50	0.13
Toluene	L	0.86	0.42
Trichloroethylene	L	1.62	0.215
Tetrachloride carbon	L	1.58	0.21
Turpentine, spirits oil	L	0.86	0.42
Vegetables, fresh, average	S	-	0.73–0.94
Water	L	1.00	1.00
Wines, table, dessert, average	L	1.03	0.90
Woods, vary from	S	0.35–0.9	0.90
Wool	S	1.32	0.325
Zinc	S	7.05	0.095

Equation 8-4

$$Q = \frac{L \times \Delta T \times 500 \times g}{H}$$

where:

Q = Condensate load, pounds per hour

L = Liquid flow, gallons per minute (gpm)

 ΔT = Temperature rise, °F

C = Specific heat of liquid, Btu/lb-°F (Table 8-6)

500 = 60 minutes per hour x 8.33 pounds per gallon sg = Specific gravity of liquid (Table 8-6)

H = Latent heat of steam, Btu per pound (Table 8-1)

Example 8-4

Assume a water flow rate of 50 gpm with an entering temperature of 40°F and an exiting temperature of 140°F. The steam pressure is 15 psig. Determine the condensate load.

Using Equation 8-4:

 $Q = \frac{50 \text{ gpm} \times 100^{\circ}\text{F} \times 1 \text{ Btu/lb-}^{\circ}\text{F} \times 500 \times 1.0 \text{ sg}}{945 \text{ Btu/lb}}$ Thus, Q = 2,645 pounds per hour.

TECHNICAL RESOURCES

All reputable steam equipment manufacturers have technical manuals and other literature available to aid in the proper design, sizing, installation, and maintenance of steam systems and equipment. The ASHRAE Handbooks also provide valuable information on these issues.

REFERENCES

- *Fundamentals Handbook*, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE).
- Solution Source for Steam, Air, and Hot Water Systems, Armstrong International Inc.
- Publication No. 200, Hydronics Institute.



Your Compressed Air System for the 21st Century

When your plant's compressed air system leaks, more than just air is getting out. You're losing money in the form of wasted energy, wear and tear on your compressors and increased operating and maintenance costs. Duratec[®] Airline, a unique time and money-saving piping system, is designed to reduce leaks and costs.

A tough piping system that meets ASME codes and OSHA safety requirements, Duratec Airline requires less time, labor and money to install and maintain than traditional systems. Its long, lightweight coils cut down on the



number of potential leak points in your system. Duratec fittings are quick and easy to install and feature double O-ring seals that ensure maximum joint integrity.

> Duratec requires no special tools or installation training and eliminates the need for soldering and threading. And because Duratec is so quickly and easily installed, modified, and adapted to existing metal systems, it can reduce your plant's downtime. So stop your compressed air system's problems before they become big news — Install Duratec.





Products are manufactured by IPEX Inc. and distributed in the United States by IPEX USA LLC. Duratec® is a trademark of IPEX Branding Inc.

Call 1-800-463-9572 or visit www.ipexamerica.com

Compressed Air Systems

Air is the natural atmosphere surrounding Earth and is a major source of power possessing many advantages for industrial and commercial applications. It is nonflammable, economical, easily transmitted, and adaptable. Compressed air has thousands of applications. It is used for hand tools, air hammers, paving breakers, rock drills, positive-displacement pumps, paint chippers, vibrators, and more. It also is employed to actuate linear movement through a piston and cylinder or a diaphragm for air-actuated valves, doors, dampers, brakes, etc. Atomizing, spraying, and moving hard-to-pump fluids are other applications. Compressed air can be bubbled to measure fluid levels, agitate liquids, and inhibit ice formation in bodies of water. Another use of compressed air is for instrumentation. Air circuits solve the most complex problems in automatic control, starting and stopping, and modulation of valves, machines, and processes. Some applications would be almost impossible with any power medium other than compressed air.

This chapter discusses compressed air for industrial and commercial applications. For medical compressed air used in healthcare facilities, refer to Chapter 2: "Plumbing Design for Healthcare Facilities." For purified compressed air used in laboratories, refer to Chapter 12: "Laboratory Gases."

For the purposes of this chapter, a compressed gas is any gas at a pressure higher than atmospheric.

CODES AND STANDARDS

The building codes and standards impacting the design and installation of compressed air systems have been put in place to protect the safety and health of operating personnel and building occupants. However, no mandated code requirements have been written specifically about compressed gases. Industry standards and guidelines are published by the Compressed Gas Association (CGA) and National Fire Protection Association (NFPA). These requirements are usually specific to the type of facility, application, and end user.

FUNDAMENTALS

Air is a fluid. The two types of fluids are liquids and gases. Gases have a weaker cohesive force holding their molecules together than liquids and will conform to the shape of their container. Ambient air is a mixture of gases, the main components of which are oxygen and nitrogen, along with many other gases in minor concentrations. For the composition of dry air, refer to Table 9-1.

The actual volume of an atom of gas in relation to the total volume of a gas molecule is quite small; thus, gases are mostly empty space. Pressure is produced when the molecules of a gas in an enclosed space rapidly strike the enclosing surfaces. If the gas is confined to smaller and smaller spaces, the molecules strike the container walls more and more frequently, producing greater pressure.

Because free air is less dense at higher elevations, a correction factor (see Table 9-2) must be used to determine the equivalent volume of air at high elevations. Temperature is also a consideration. Because a volume of free air at a high temperature exerts a higher pressure than the same volume of air at a lower temperature, a correction factor (see Table 9-3) must be used to determine the equivalent volume of air at different temperatures.

The most commonly used compression process in industrial compressed air production is the polytropic process, which allows variations in pressure,

Table	9-2	Elevation	Correction
		Factor	

Altitude, ft (meters)	Correction Factor
0 (0)	1.00
1,600 (480)	1.05
3,300 (990)	1.11
5,000 (1,500)	1.17
6,600 (1,980)	1.24
8,200 (2,460)	1.31
9,900 (2,970)	1.39

Component	Percent by Volume	Percent by Mass
Nitrogen	78.09	75.51
Oxygen	20.95	23.15
Argon	0.93	1.28
Carbon dioxide	0.03	0.046
Neon	0.0018	0.00125
Helium	0.00052	0.000072
Methane	0.00015	0.000094
Krypton	0.0001	0.00029
Carbon monoxide	0.00001	0.00002
Nitrous oxide	0.00005	0.00008
Hydrogen	0.00005	0.0000035
Ozone	0.00004	0.000007
Xenon	0.000008	0.000036
Nitrogen dioxide	0.0000001	0.000002
lodine	2 x 10 ⁻¹¹	1 x 10 ⁻¹⁰
Radon	6 x 10 ⁻¹⁸	5 x 10 ⁻¹⁷

 Table 9-1 General Composition of Dry Air

temperature, and volume to occur during the compression cycle.

UNITS OF MEASURE

Pressure

Pressure measurements are made using force acting upon an area. In the United States, pressure is commonly measured using inch-pound (IP) units of measurement and expressed as pounds per square inch (psi). Another common unit of measurement for low-pressure systems is inches of water column (in. wc). In International System (SI) units, pressure is commonly measured in kilopascals (kPa).

The two basic reference points for measuring pressure are standard atmospheric pressure and a perfect vacuum. When pressure is measured using standard atmospheric pressure as the point of reference, the measurement is called gauge pressure, expressed as pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (kPa). If the reference pressure level is a perfect vacuum, the term used is absolute pressure, expressed as pounds per square inch absolute (psia) (kPa absolute). A graphical representation of the relationship between gauge and absolute pressure is shown in Figure 9-1. A perfect vacuum has a value of 0 psia (0 kPa) and 0 inch of mercury (Hg).

Local barometric pressure, which is the prevailing pressure at any specific location, is variable and should not be confused with standard atmosphere, which is the theoretical barometric pressure at sea level (14.7 psia or 0 psig and 29.92 inches Hg [101.4 kPa and 760 mm Hg]).

Flow Rate

The most common IP unit of measure for flow rate is cubic feet per minute (cfm). If the flow rate is low, it commonly is expressed in cubic feet per hour (cfh). The SI units used for flow rate are cubic meters per minute (m^3 /min), liters per minute (L/min), and liters per second (L/s).

Flow rate must reference a standard, which in the United States is 14.7 psia, standard atmospheric temperature (60°F [15.6°C]), and 0 percent humidity. This is called "standard air" and is referenced as standard cubic feet per minute (scfm) or actual cubic feet per minute (acfm) (nL/min or aL/min). Some manufacturers use nm³/min, which means normal cubic meters per minute, or nL/min, which means normal liters per minute (the SI equivalent of standard air). It is mandatory that all flow rate criteria for the selection of equipment be in the same units.

WATER VAPOR IN AIR

Air contains varying amounts of water vapor, depending on its temperature and pressure. When a given volume of free air is compressed under conditions used in facilities, an increase in temperature occurs, resulting in an increased ability of the air to retain moisture. With each 20° F (5.6°C) increase in temperature, the ability of air to accept water vapor doubles. Because of the high temperature of the air during the compression cycle, water is not precipitated during compression inside the compressor; rather, it is precipitated after the cycle has been completed.

The quantity of moisture carried during the process varies widely with the ambient temperature. The amount of moisture in completely saturated air is referred to as 100 percent humidity. Relative humidity is the amount of water vapor actually present compared to that of saturated air. It is not the preferred manner to express moisture. The



Figure 9-1 Relationship Between Gauge and Absolute Pressure





-58 -80 -60 -40 -20 -90 -70 -50 -30 -10 10 30 50 Dew point at atmospheric pressure, °F Note: Multiply pressure in PSIG by 6.9 to obtain KPa Figure 9-2 Dewpoint Conversion Chart Source: Hankison Corp.

preferred method is to use the dewpoint, which is the temperature at which moisture will condense on a surface and does not depend on temperature. A chart comparing the dewpoints at various pressures is shown in Figure 9-2.

CONTAMINANTS

The four general classes of contamination in air are liquids (oil and water), vapor (oil, water, and hydrocarbons), gas, and particulates. Knowing the various pollutants in the air is helpful when the engineer has to decide what equipment is required to effectively reduce or remove them. The required level of protection from the various contaminants depends on the purpose for the air. The performance criteria for each system, along with the identity and quantity of pollutants, must be determined prior to the selection of equipment.

Liquids

Water enters a system with the intake air, passes through the compressor as a vapor, and condenses afterward into liquid droplets. When water settles on or within pipes, corrosion begins, ultimately ruining machinery and tools, causing product contamination and rejection. Water also allows microorganisms to grow. Most liquid oil contamination originates at the intake location or in an oil-lubricated compressor. As the droplets are swept through the system at velocities approaching 4,000 feet per minute (fpm) (1,200 m/min), they gradually erode obstructions in their path by repeated collisions. At high temperatures, oils break down to form acids. In the presence of particulates, oil forms sludge. Oil also can act like water droplets and cause erosion.

Liquid chemicals react with water and corrode surfaces. There is no safe level of liquids in the airstream. They should be removed as completely as practical.

Vapor

Water vapor is the most common contaminant to enter the system. Oil, water, and chemical vapors enter the system in the same manner as liquids and contribute to the corrosion of surfaces in contact with the air. Oil vapor also reacts with oxygen to form varnish buildup on surfaces.

The level of acceptable water vapor varies with the end-use requirements. A dewpoint of -30° F $(-34^{\circ}$ C) is required to minimize corrosion in pipelines. For critical applications, a dewpoint of -100° F $(-86^{\circ}$ C) may be required. Oil vapor remaining in the air should be removed as much as practical. Chemical concentrations should be reduced to zero where practical.

140

130

120

110

100

90

80

70

60

50

40

30

20

10

0

40

-50

-60 -70

-80

-90

-100

100

point at pressure indicated,

20 Me 30 Dem

Gas

Gases such as carbon dioxide, sulfur dioxide, and nitrogen compounds react with heat and water to form acids. Gases in any quantity that are potentially harmful to the system or process requirements should be reduced to zero or to a point that will cause no harm, depending on practical considerations. Condensable hydrocarbons should be removed as completely as practical.

Particulates

Particulates enter the system from the air intake, originate in the compressor due to mechanical action, or are released from some air-drying systems. These particles erode piping and valves or cause product contamination. However, the most harmful effect is that they clog orifices or passages of (for example) tools at the end-use points. These particulates include metal fines, carbon and Teflon particles, pollen, dust, rust, and scale.

Particulate contamination must be reduced to a level low enough to minimize end-use machine or tool clogging, cause product rejection, or contaminate a process. These values must be established by the engineer and client and will vary widely. The general range of particle size in a typical system is between 0.01 and 10 micrometers (μ m) in diameter.

USE FACTOR

The use factor represents how many of the tools connected to the system will be in use simultaneously and their air usage. Experience indicates that it is almost impossible to accurately determine a use factor for commercial and industrial applications. Therefore, sufficient receiver capacity or large compressor capacity to allow for possible variances must be provided. The selection of the use factor shall be verified with the end user.

SYSTEM COMPONENTS

Air Compressor

The purpose of an air compressor is to concentrate free air, decreasing its volume and thereby increasing its pressure. The two general categories of air compressors are positive displacement and dynamic.

The positive-displacement compressor is essentially a constant-volume, variable-pressure machine capable of operating over a wide range of discharge pressures at a relatively constant capacity. Positivedisplacement compressors can be further categorized as reciprocating or rotary machines. Typical reciprocating compressors include piston and diaphragm types. Rotary compressors include such types as sliding vane, liquid ring (or liquid piston), and screw. The most widely used types of dynamic compressors include the centrifugal and the axial flow.

Dynamic compressor characteristics are opposite those of the positive-displacement compressor. This machine operates over a relatively wide range of capacities at a relatively constant discharge pressure.

Reciprocating Compressor

A reciprocating compressor uses positive displacement, which is accomplished by a piston moving in a cylinder similar to an internal combustion engine. When compression occurs on only one stroke, it is called a single-acting cylinder, and when compression occurs on both strokes, it is called a double-acting compressor. The cylinders can be horizontal, vertical, or angled, and they can be sealed and lubricated with oil when traces of oil in the discharge air are not problematic. Oil-free machines are also available, but they cost more than those requiring oil.

Cooling is accomplished by air or water. Water cooling is generally more effective than air cooling and consumes less power, but the initial and



Figure 9-3 Typical Aftercooler and Moisture Separator

Table 9-4 Standard ASME Receiver Dimensions

Diameter, in.	Length, ft	Volume, ft3
13	4	4.5
14	6	11
24	6	19
30	7	34
36	8	57
42	10	96
48	12	151
54	14	223
60	16	314
66	18	428

Notes: 1 in. = 25.4 mm; 1 ft = 0.003 m3; 1 ft = 0.3 m

Table 9-5 Selection of Supply Hose Size

	Air Inlet Port NPT, in.					
	1⁄8	1⁄4	3⁄8	1⁄2		
Supply Hose Size ID, in.	1⁄4	3⁄8	1⁄2	3⁄4		

Table 5-0 filler All Filler Glaracteristics								
Filter Type	Filtration Efficiency, %	Particle Size, µm	Maximum Drop When Clean, wc	Comments (see key)				
Dry	100 99 98	10 5 3	3–8	(1)				
Viscous impingement (oil wetted)	$100 \\ 95 \\ 85$	$\begin{array}{c} 20\\ 10 \end{array}$	1/4-2	(2) (3)				
Oil bath	98 90	10 3	6–10 = nominal 2 = low drop	(2) (3) (4)				
Dry with silencer	100 99 98	10 5 3	5(5) 7(6)					

Table 9-6 Inlet Air Filter Characteristics

(1) Recommended for nonlubricated compressors and for rotary vane compressors in a high-dust environment

(2) Not recommended for dusty areas or for nonlubricated compressors

(3) Performance requires that oil is suitable for both warm and cold weather operation

(4) Recommended for rotary vane compressors in normal service

(5) Full flow capacity up to 1,600 scfm

(6) Full flow capacity from 1,600 to 6,500 scfm

operating costs are higher. A two-stage compressor consumes less power than a single-stage unit for the equivalent output.

Sliding Vane Compressor

Sliding vane compressors work by utilizing vanes that are mounted eccentrically in a cylindrical rotor and are free to slide in and out of slots. As the rotor turns, the space between the compressor casing and the vanes decreases, compressing the air.

These are compact units, well suited for direct connection to a relatively high-speed motor. Their efficiency is usually less than that of an equivalent piston unit. They are best applied in situations where small, low-capacity compressors, generally in the range of 100 cfm and 75 psi (2,832 L/min and 517.1 kPa), are required.

Liquid Ring Compressor

Liquid ring compressors, sometimes referred to as liquid pistons, are rotary positive-displacement units that use a fixed-blade rotor in an elliptical casing. The casing is partially filled with liquid. As the rotor turns, the blades set the liquid in motion. As they rotate, the blades extend deeper into the liquid ring, compressing the trapped air. The resulting air is completely oil free.

This type of compressor also can handle wet, corrosive, or explosive gases. Various liquids, which are compatible with specific gases to be compressed, can be used.

This unit is very well suited for hospital and laboratory use. A practical limitation of 100 psi (689.5 kPa) exists, and they consume more power than piston units of a similar rating.

Straight Lobe Compressor

Straight lobe (often referred to as rotary lobe) compressors function in a manner similar to that of gear pumps. A pair of identical rotors, each with lobes shaped like the figure 8 in cross section, are mounted inside a casing. As they rotate, air is trapped between the impeller lobes and pump casing and carried around without compression. This air is then discharged, using the existing pressure in the system to increase pressure. These units are available oil free and generally are recommended for pressures up to 200 psig (1,379 kPa) and 150 scfm (4,285 nL/min).

Rotary Screw Compressor

Rotary screw compressors use a pair of close-clearance, helical-lobe rotors turning in unison. As air enters the inlet, the rotation of the rotors causes the cavity in which air is trapped to become smaller and smaller, increasing pressure. The air reaches the end of the screw at high pressure and flows out smoothly at the discharge port.

The majority of rotary screw compressors in use today are of the oil-flooded type, but designs that produce oil-free air are available. These compressors produce pulse-free air and are generally available for pressures from 150 to 300 psi (1,034 to 2,068 kPa) and 300 scfm (8,496 nL/min).

Centrifugal Compressor

Centrifugal compressors are dynamic machines that utilize impellers to add kinetic energy to the airstream by centrifugal action. The velocity of the air is increased as it passes through each impeller. A diffuser section decelerates the high-velocity air, converting the kinetic energy into potential energy. The volute Figure 9-4 Refrigerated Air Dryer with Four Major Components: (1) Refrigeration Compressor A hermetically sealed motor-driven compressor operates continuously and generates a highpressure refrigerant gas. (2) Hot Gas Condenser The high-pressure refrigerant gas enters an aircooled condenser where it is partially cooled by a continuously running fan. (3) Automatic Expansion Valve The high-pressure liquid enters an automatic expansion valve where it thermodynamically changes to a subcooled low-pressure liquid. (4) Heat Exchanger A system of coils produces dry air. Source: Arrow Pneumatics

further increases the pressure and directs the air into the discharge piping.

Centrifugal compressors typically produce large volumes of air at relatively low pressures. Higher pressures can be attained by adding stages with intercooling between the stages. The centrifugal compressor takes up less floor space but requires more power than a reciprocating unit of equal output. Its inherently oil-free air delivery is a major advantage in many applications.

Piping

The most often used pipe material is ASTM B88 copper tube for water use. When considering other materials, the engineer should take into account the pressure rating of the pipe and joints, the temperature rating of the pipe, and the joining method. If all elements are equal, the least expensive piping shall be selected.

The allowable pressure ratings for the various piping materials is based on wall thickness values at ambient temperatures calculated from equations appearing in ASME B31.3: *Process Piping Design*. The pipe pressure rating is selected to resist the highest system design pressure, which is usually in the range of 50–55 psi (344.7–379.2 kPa). Higher pressures for special uses are well within the limits of piping with flared and brazed joints. Type L copper tubing is used for pressures up to 200 psi (1,379 kPa), and type K is used for pressures up to 300 psi (2,068.4 kPa).

Joints

The most often used joint for copper tubing at low pressures is the soldered joint, with those at 100 psig (689.5 kPa) and above being brazed. The flared joint is popular because it can be made using only a saw and some wrenches. When copper tubing is used with flared joints, the pipe shall not have embossed identification stamped into the pipe because doing so causes leaks at the joint. There is no designation for patented flared joints, but they are acceptable for all applications as long as the allowable joint pressure ratings are not exceeded.



Experience has shown that reaming the ends of pipe or tubing to obtain a smooth interior has left pieces of shaved metal in the pipe. If this is a cause for concern, reaming methods and tools are available to eliminate this problem.

For systems with operating pressures up to 200 psi (1,379 kPa) and piping 4 inches (101.6 mm) and smaller, consider 304 or 316 stainless steel and/or copper tubing with press-fit joining.

Valves

Valves are an often-overlooked component of a compressed air system, but the valve type and material are important to efficiency and operating life. The valves used should have been designed for compressed air service. Be careful to examine valve specifications for airway ports or openings smaller than the nominal size indicated or expected.

The most often used shutoff valves are ball valves. Three-piece valves also are desirable because the body can be separated from the end connections when being installed and serviced. For exact control and modulating purposes, needle valves are used because of the precise level of control permitted.

In addition to the end use, the engineer should take the following design considerations into account when selecting valves.

- The most important valve feature is minimum flow restriction (pressure drop) when the valve is fully open. Ball, gate, and plug valves have the lowest pressure drop, and it is extremely rare to use these types for flow restriction.
- The pressure rating should be suitable for the maximum pressure possible.
- The valve body and seat materials must be compatible with the expected trace gases and contaminants.
- The valve must be capable of positive shutoff.
- Leakage through the valve stem should be prevented.

Flow Meters

Flow meters can be either of two types: electric or mechanical. The mechanical kind is called a variablearea type and uses a small ball as an indicator in a variable-area vertical tube. The type of mechanical meter most often used has an accuracy of 10 percent full scale. This means that if the flow range is from 1 to 10 scfm, the accuracy is ± 1 acfm. More accurate variable-area flow meters are available.

The mass flow meters are electronically operated, using the difference in temperature that gas creates when flowing over a heated element. The mass flow meter is very accurate, but expensive.

Compressed Air Receivers

The primary purpose of a receiver is to store air. Secondary purposes are to equalize pressure variations (pulsations) from the compressor and to collect residual condensate. Determination of the need for a receiver is always based on the type of pressure regulation the system uses. If the compressor runs 100 percent of the time and has constant pressure and blowoff, an air receiver is not required.

For most applications, the system pressure is regulated by starting and stopping the compressor, with a receiver used to store air and prevent the compressor from cycling too often. The generally accepted practice for reciprocating compressors is to limit starts to about 10 per hour (less is better) and the running time to 70 percent. Centrifugal, screw, and sliding vane compressors are best run 100 percent Receivers should be ASME stamped for unfired pressure vessels. Manufacturers offer standard receiver sizes measured in gallons (liters) of water capacity (see Table 9-4). Receivers should be selected based on system demand and compressor size, using the starts per hour and running time best suited for the project. The design engineer must keep in mind that a compressor operates to satisfy the pressure switch rather than the use of air and that the receiver is an integral part of the system that must function with respect to load conditions, amount of storage, and pressure differential. Often the manufacturer offers a standard size receiver for specific compressor models, but a commonly used formula to estimate the size of the receiver is as follows:

Table 9-7 Recommended Air Inlet Pipe Size

Maximum scfm Free Air Capacity	Minimum Size, in.
50	21/2
110	3
210	4
400	5
800	6

Note: 1 cfm = $0.03 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$

Source: James Church

Nominal Pipe Size, in.	Actual ID, in.	Gate Valve	Long Radius, All or on Run of Standard Tee	Standard Ell or on Run of Tee Reduced in Size 50 Percent	Angle Valve	Close Return Bend	Tee Through Side Outlet	Globe Valve
1/2	0.622	0.36	0.62	1.55	8.65	3.47	3.10	17.3
3⁄4	0.824	0.48	0.82	2.06	11.4	4.60	4.12	22.9
1	1.049	0.61	1.05	2.62	14.6	5.82	5.24	29.1
11⁄4	1.380	0.81	1.38	3.45	19.1	7.66	6.90	38.3
11⁄2	1.610	0.94	1.61	4.02	22.4	8.95	8.04	44.7
2	2.067	1.21	2.07	5.17	28.7	11.5	10.3	57.4
2 ½	2.469	1.44	2.47	6.16	34.3	13.7	12.3	68.5
3	3.068	1.79	3.07	6.16	42.6	17.1	15.3	85.2
4	4.026	2.35	4.03	7.67	56.0	22.4	20.2	112.0
5	5.047	2.94	5.05	10.1	70.0	28.0	25.2	140.0
6	6.065	3.54	6.07	15.2	84.1	33.8	30.4	168.0
8	7.981	4.65	7.96	20.0	111.0	44.6	40.0	222.0
10	10.020	5.85	10.00	25.0	139.0	55.7	50.0	278.0
12	11.940	6.96	11.00	29.8	166.0	66.3	59.6	332.0

Table 9-8 Equivalent Pressure Loss Through Valves and Fittings, ft of pipe

Notes: 1 ft = 0.3 m; 1 in. = 25.4 mm

Equation 9-1

$$T = \frac{V \times (P_1 - P_2)}{C + P_a}$$
where:

T = Time the receiver takes to go from the upper to the lower pressure limit, minutes

V = Volume of the tank, cubic feet (m³)

 P_1 = Maximum tank pressure, psia (kPa)

 $P_2 = Minimum tank absolute pressure, psia (nL/min)$

C = Free air needed, scfm (nL/min)

 P_a = Atmospheric pressure, psia (kPa)

While it is common practice to locate a receiver near the compressor, the designer should consider locating the receiver at the largest air consumers. Installation of a receiver at a remote point on the piping system allows the system to handle surges and possibly can eliminate the need for an additional compressor.

Piping connections should be made in such a way that the incoming air is forced to circulate and mix with the air already inside the tank before being discharged. A common piping scheme used in large manufacturing facilities is to provide a loop header around the plant. This scheme provides flexibility for future connections and reduced pressure drops to remote locations. Oversizing the header one pipe size also provides storage capacity and may eliminate the need for a remote receiver.

An automatic drain valve is required so the receiver can discharge wastewater to an adjacent floor drain through an air gap.

Aftercoolers

An aftercooler is used to lower the temperature of the compressed air immediately after the compression process. Air leaving the compressor is very hot, and it is desirable to reduce the temperature of discharged air to the range of $70-110^{\circ}$ F ($21.1-43^{\circ}$ C). A primary reason the temperature is lowered is to remove moisture that would otherwise condense elsewhere in the system as the air cools to ambient conditions. Therefore, it is considered good practice to install the cooling unit as close to the compressor discharge as practical. An aftercooler is also useful to precondition air where additional conditioning is necessary.

The three general types of aftercoolers are water cooled, air cooled, and refrigerant. Air-cooled is the most often used type of aftercooler.

Since large amounts of water typically are removed from the air in an aftercooler, a moisture separator is usually provided. The separator could be either an integral part of the aftercooler or a separate unit. Additional factors to be considered when selecting an aftercooler are pressure drop through the unit, space and clearance requirements, operation costs, and maintenance.

Separators

A separator is a type of filter used to remove large quantities of liquid water or oil from the airstream. Often, oil and water form an emulsion inside the compressor and are discharged together.

Since suspended liquids are present after air leaves the aftercooler or compressor, the compressor discharge is the most common location for a separator. The general design of these units should allow for the removal of between 90 and 99 percent, by weight, of liquids. An aftercooler and separator are illustrated in Figure 9-3.

Compressed Air Dryers

Air dryers are used to remove additional water vapor from the airstream after the separator has removed large volumes of water consisting of large droplets. The general categories of dryer, defined by the method of drying, are high pressurization of the compressed air, refrigerated, absorption, desiccant (adsorption), and heat of compression.

High Pressurization

High pressurization reduces the quantity of water vapor by compressing air to pressures greater than those required for actual use. An increase in pressure decreases the ability of air to hold moisture. Since pressurization requires large amounts of energy, this process is rarely used.

Refrigerated Dryer

The most common type of dryer uses a refrigerant and is called a refrigerated dryer. It lowers the temperature of the airstream through a heat exchanger to produce a lower dewpoint. Lowering the dewpoint reduces the capability of the air to retain moisture. Moisture then condenses out of the air onto the coils of the dryer, and a moisture separator removes the condensate.

The cooling medium in the coil could be water, brine, or a refrigerant. A refrigerated dryer requires operation within a small range of pressure and airflow rates to be effective. In general, a minimum of 20 percent of rated airflow is required to achieve the specified moisture removal.

The greatest limitation of these dryers is that they cannot practically produce a pressure dewpoint lower than 35° F (1.7°C). Otherwise, the condensed moisture would freeze on the coils. The advantages are that they have a low operating cost and do not introduce impurities into the airstream. A refrigerated air dryer is illustrated in Figure 9-4.

Absorption

Absorption dryers use either a solid or a liquid medium and operate on the principle that when the airstream containing water vapor passes through or over a deliquescent material, the water causes the medium to change state (or dissolve). The solvent is then drained away; thus, the water is removed, and the amount of material available for absorption is reduced. Solid absorbers are much more common than liquid ones.

The advantage of this type of dryer is that it requires no outside power source or connection to any other system. A disadvantage is that impurities may be introduced into the airstream.

Desiccant Dryers

Desiccant dryers use a porous, nonconsumable material that causes water vapor to condense as a very thin film on the material's surface, a process called adsorption. This material is called a desiccant. No chemical interaction occurs, and the adsorption process is reversible. Desiccant dryers are capable of producing pressure dewpoints as low as -100° F (-73.3°C).

Desiccant materials include silica gel, activated alumina, and aluminosilicate (molecular sieve). Each material also has applications for the removal of specific impurities other than water. Desiccant materials age when in use over a period of years, which may affect their capacity. In addition, care must be taken to avoid contamination of the materials, particularly by oils.

The method of regeneration is the primary way to distinguish between types of desiccant dryers. One type is the duplex-bed pressure swing (heatless) dryer, which uses approximately 15 percent of the hot air directly discharged from the compressor before it goes into the aftercooler to dry one bed while the other is operating. Additional compressor capacity is necessary to provide this extra air. The other type is the heat-activated dryer, which uses internal or external heaters.

A typical desiccant air dryer is illustrated in Figure 9-5.

Heat of Compression

Another type, the heat of compression dryer, accomplishes continuous regeneration of the desiccant material by using a portion of the hot air directly discharged from the compressor before it goes into the aftercooler. The difference between this and the pressure swing dryer is that for continuous duty, the pressure swing regenerates one whole bed at a time, requiring a second bed to dry the airstream. The continuous dryer has only one bed that rotates and regenerates a portion of the desiccant material on a continuous basis, leaving the remainder of the bed to dry the air. The air used to regenerate the desiccant is then returned into the main airstream. No regeneration air is lost, and no electric heaters are used. This dryer could be cooled by a fan (air cooled) or water cooled. Units that are cooled with air at $95^{\circ}F(35^{\circ}C)$ often give a pressure dewpoint of -15°F (-26.1°C).

Dryer Selection

The most important requirement in the selection process is to determine the lowest required pressure

Dry air out 50 Outlet valve Purge metering valve Operating Atmospheric pressure Line Regenerating tower Purge valve Inlet val and exhaust Wet air in muffler

Figure 9-5 Absorption (Dessicant) Dryer Source: Van Air Systems

dewpoint for the intended application. The economics of initial and operating costs, which vary from one unit to another, are another determining factor. Space conditions and maintenance availability also should be considered.

Regulators

A regulator is used to reduce a variable high inlet pressure to a constant lower outlet pressure. Regulators are available in two types: single and double stage. The single stage is less costly and less accurate. This type should be chosen if maintenance of an exact pressure is not a major factor in system operation. The double stage is more costly and more accurate, and it is able to achieve a constant outlet pressure within a narrow operating range. When selecting a regulator for specific accuracy requirements, obtain the accuracy envelope diagrams from the manufacturer to check the device parameters using actual anticipated system design pressures and flow rates.

The single-stage regulator reduces pressure in one step. Typical differences in outlet pressure could vary as much as 7 psig (49 kPa) from low to high flow rates. The double-stage regulator reduces the pressure in two steps. Typical differences in outlet pressure could vary as much as 3 psig (21 kPa) from low to high flow rates.

Another parameter that may be important in some installations is regulator creep. This is the rise in delivery pressure due to differences in motion of the internal mechanical components caused by aging. Creep also is caused by foreign material interfering with the mechanical operation of the unit. This is the most common cause of unit failure.

The following design considerations should be taken into account when selecting a regulator.

General Air Re Size or Type	quirements for Air Pressure,	Tools Air Consumed,	 The regulator should have a positive gas ver The regulator must be rated for the highest sible working pressure. The delivery pressure range must be adequated.
	psig	scfm	• The operating temperature must be compared with the environment in which the regulate
1 ton	70–100	1	located.
	70–90	3	• The pressure range of the gauges must be com
14,000-lb cap	70–90	10	ible with the pressures expected. As an ideal,
8,000-lb cap	70–90	6	working pressure should be half the maxim
	70–90	6	outlet gauge reading.
1⁄4-in. cap	70–90	20–90	Filters and Purifiers
	70–90	5	Filters and purifiers are necessary to reduce
6	70–90	4	lates other than water in the airstream. The n
2-in. wheel	70–90	50	common purifiers are those used to remove w
4-in. wheel	70–90	20	vapor, hydrocarbons, and particulates. They are
Production gun	40–70	20	used to eliminate other unwanted trace elemen
	40–70	4	The most often used filter removes particul

2-10

10 - 35

50-110

5

10 - 15

50

30

1

11/2

1

2

30-40

25-40

20-30

4-10

4-10

2

20

3

6-400

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

70-90

80-90

40-90

70-90

70-100

90

The most often used filter removes particulates $0.2\,\mu m$ and larger, and a number of materials are used for filters. To remove hydrogen, palladium filters are used. Ceramic, fiberglass, sintered metal, and other adsorbent material are used to remove oil, moisture, and other trace contaminants. Another type of filter material is the molecular sieve, which is a synthetically produced crystalline metal powder that has been activated for adsorption by removing the water of hydration. This material is manufactured with precise and uniform size and dimensions, which determines what can be filtered. Sieves are available as powder, pellets, beads, and mesh.

Pressure drop through the filter medium is a critical factor in the selection of the material used. For large installations, pressure gauges on each side of the filter are used to monitor their effectiveness. Usually, a 5-psig (35-kPa) drop means that replacement is required.

Relief Valves

Relief valves are used to protect a system from overpressure. A relief valve must be provided between the regulator and the first shutoff valve in the system, at the first point in the system that could be subject to full cylinder pressure if the regulator should fail. The discharge should be independently piped outdoors, and the discharge pipe should be a minimum of 3/4 inch in diameter. No valve should be located between the relief valve and the regulator, and no connection from any source to a relief discharge may be made from any other system. The relief valve release point should be set to 50 percent more than working pressure.

When two-stage regulators are used, a preset first-stage (or interstage) relief valve is sometimes required to protect the second stage from overpres-

Sand blasters	Wide variation				
Notes: $1 \text{ nsi} = 6.9 \text{ kPa}$	$1 \text{ cfm} = 0.03 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$				

Table 9-9

Tool or

Equipment

Bus or truck lifts

Hoists Blow guns

Car lifts

Car rockers

Drills, rotary

Grease guns

Paint sprayers

Paint sprayers

Drills, piston

Carving tools

Rotary sanders

Rotary sanders

Tire changers

Tire inflators

Tire spreaders

Valve grinders

Air hammers

Sand hammers

Nut setters and

runners

Impact

wrenches/

screwdrivers

Air bushings

File and burr

Wood borers

Rim strippers

Body polishers

Carbon removers

tools

Pneumatic doors

Spark plug

cleaners

Small hand

Small to large

Reach 36-45

Light to heavy

Small to large

Small to large

1-2 in.

1/4-in. to 3/4-in. cap

1/2-in. cap, 3-in. cap

Spring oilers

Riveters

Grinders

Grinders

Engine, cleaning

180

• The regulator mus
The regulator mas

- t be rated for the highest posng pressure.
- y pressure range must be adequate.
- ng temperature must be compatible vironment in which the regulator is
- e range of the gauges must be compate pressures expected. As an ideal, the essure should be half the maximum e reading.

Purifiers

urifiers are necessary to reduce or wanted contaminants and particuan water in the airstream. The most fiers are those used to remove water rbons, and particulates. They are also ate other unwanted trace elements if user.

70-90 40-80 100-120 6 70-90 2

Notes: 1 psi = 6.9 kPa; 1 cfm = 0.03 m³/mir

	Pressure Loss Through Schedule 40 Steel Pipe, feet											
efm	1/2	-in. diame	ter	3⁄4-in. diameter			1-in. diameter			1¼-in. diameter		
Cilli	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi	at 125 psi	at 175 psi	at 250 psi
6	.102	.075	.054	.023								
8	.181	.133	.096	.041	.030							
10	.283	.208	.149	.064	.047	.034	.017					
15	.636	.469	.336	.144	.106	.076	.038	.028				
20	1.131	.833	.597	.255	.188	.135	.067	.050	.036	.016		
25	1.768	1.302	.933	.399	.294	.211	.105	.078	.056	.025	.019	
30	2.546	1.875	1.344	.574	.423	.303	.152	.112	.080	.037	.027	
35	3.465	2.552	1.829	.782	.576	.413	.206	.152	.109	.050	.037	.026
40	4.526	3.333	2.388	1.021	.752	.539	.270	.199	.142	.065	.048	.034
45	5.728	4.218	3.023	1.292	.952	.682	.341	.251	.180	.083	.061	.044
50	7.071	5.208	3.732	1.596	1.175	.842	.421	.310	.222	.102	.075	.054
60	10.183	7.499	5.374	2.298	1.692	1.213	.607	.447	.320	.147	.108	.078
70	13.860	10.207	7.315	3.128	2.303	1.651	.826	.608	.436	.200	.147	.105
80		13.331	9.554	4.085	3.008	2.156	1.079	.794	.569	.261	.192	.138
90		16.872	12.092	5.170	3.807	2.729	1.365	1.005	.721	.330	.243	.174
100		20.830	14.928	6.383	4.700	3.369	1.685	1.241	.890	.408	.300	.215
125			23.325	9.973	7.344	5.263	2.633	1.939	1.390	.637	.469	.336
150				14.361	10.576	7.579	3.792	2.793	2.001	.918	.676	.494
175					14.395	10.316	5.162	3.801	2.724	1.249	.920	.659
200					18.801	13.474	6.742	4.965	3.558	1.632	1.202	.861
225						17.053	8.533	6.284	4.503	2.065	1.521	1.090
250						21.054	10.534	7.757	5.559	2.550	1.878	1.346
275						25.475	12.746	9.387	6.727	3.085	2.272	1.628
300						30.317	15.169	11.171	8.006	3.671	2.704	1.938
325								13.110	9.396	4.309	3.173	2.274
350								15.205	10.867	4.997	3.680	2.637
375								17.454	12.509	5.736	4.224	3.027
400								19.859	14.232	6.527	4.806	3.445
425								22.419	16.067	7.368	5.426	3.889
450									18.013	8.260	6.083	4.360

Table 9-10 High-Pressure Compressed Air Friction Loss Table

Notes: 1 ft = 0.3 m; 1 in. = 25.4 mm; 1 psi = 6.9 kPa

sure. Additionally, it is good practice to install an adjustable relief valve on the second stage to protect the system and instruments from damage due to excessive pressure. For outdoor installations involving inert gases, the relief valves can exhaust directly to atmosphere. For indoor installations, or any installation involving toxic or flammable gases, the relief valve exhaust should be captured and vented to a safe location.

Hose and Fittings

Most tools use flexible hose to connect to the piping system, and the hose used is usually larger than the air inlet port on the tool it serves. Table 9-5 indicates generally accepted practice for the selection of supply hose based on the size of the inlet port. When the length of the hose extends more than 20 feet (6 m), one size larger should be used to allow for the additional friction loss. It is good practice to limit the friction loss within the hose to approximately 5 psig (35 kPa). $(\mbox{Refer}$ to Table 9-11 for pressure loss through various sizes and lengths of hose.)

Alarms

Alarms are necessary to alert users of immediate or potential trouble, and they can be visible and/or audible. The typical alarms are high system pressure, low system pressure, and reserve in use. In some installations, a normal light is also requested. If a single cylinder is the sole source of supply, an alarm might be installed when the pressure in the tank reaches 400 psig (2,800 kPa). Other alarms could be provided to indicate high pressure loss at filters, low gas temperature, purifiers at limit of capacity, and flow limit valve operation.

These alarms typically are installed in an alarm panel. The panel could be mounted in a constantly occupied location such as a maintenance shop or receptionist area or in the area of use itself, depending on the availability and level of maintenance.

Various devices must be placed in the system for these alarms to function, such as pressure switches, transducers, and auxiliary contacts in a manifold assembly to transmit the alarm signal to the alarm panel.

Vibration Isolation

Vibration isolation is achieved by the proper selection of resilient devices between the pump base and the building structure. This isolation is accomplished by placing isolators between the pump and the floor, flexible connections on all piping from the compressor, and spring-type hangers on the piping around the compressor for a distance of about 20 ft (6 m). Earthquake loads should be acquired and applied to system piping as required.

Compressor Inlet Piping

Since air compressor performance depends on inlet conditions, the inlet piping system deserves special care and should be held to the minimum requirements. The air intake should provide a supply of air to the compressor that is as clean, cool, and dry as possible. Depending on location, an inlet filter may be required. Table 9-6 provides the characteristics of inlet air filters. The velocity of the inlet air should be limited to about 1,000 fpm (300 m/min) The proposed location should be studied for the presence of any type of airborne contamination and positioned to avoid the probability of contaminated intake. For recommended intake piping sizes, refer to Table 9-7.

PIPE LAYOUT DESIGN AND SIZING

On the piping layout, the following information must be available:

• A list of all air-consuming devices and their locations

- Minimum and maximum pressure requirements for each device
- Actual volume of air used by each device
- Suggested duty cycle and diversity factor for equipment
- Special individual air purification requirements
- An allowance for future expansion

Recommended Pipe and System Sizing

Following is a recommended system sizing procedure. (Note: The sizing procedure discussed below is not intended for compressed air for laboratories.)

- 1. Locate the mechanical room and lay out the locations of compressors and ancillary equipment.
- 2. Establish a general layout of the system from the storage area to the farthest outlet or use point. Measure the actual distance along the run of pipe to the most remote outlet. Next, add a fitting allowance. For ease of calculations, the addition of 30 percent to the actual measured run will give a conservative approximation of the entire system. Adding the measured length to the fitting allowance will result in the equivalent run of pipe. If a precise calculation is desired, refer to Table 9-8 for the equivalent loss of pressure, in feet, through valves and fittings.
- 3. Obtain specific purity requirements from the end user and choose all of the filters, purifiers, and accessories necessary for system purity. This will establish a combined allowable pressure drop through each of them and the assembly as a whole.
- 4. Establish the actual pressure required at the farthest outlet.
- 5. Calculate the allowable total system friction loss.
 - a. It is accepted practice for general use to have a minimum system pressure loss of 10 percent in the pipe. For high-pressure systems serving specific equipment or tools, start with the high end of the range for the actual pressure required. Thus, for a 125-psig (860-kPa) system, a figure of ± 12 psig (85 kPa) friction loss will be allowed. This figure is variable. To that figure add the pressure required to overcome the drop through the ancillary purifier equipment and other accessories as required.
 - b. Divide the total equivalent run of pipe (in hundreds of feet) by the allowable friction loss to calculate the allowable friction loss per 100 feet of pipe. This calculation is necessary to allow the use of the sizing chart provided in this chapter. If other methods are used to indicate friction loss in the piping system, calculate the loss in that specific method.

- 6. Calculate the connected flow rate for the piping to be sized. In the absence of data from the end user, Table 9-9 provides preliminary data on air usage and pressure. For general use other than the equipment listed, a figure of 1 scfm (30 nL/min) for each outlet is used unless information from the end user indicates otherwise. Calculate the scfm (nL/min) of gas through each branch, from the farthest outlet back to the source (or main). For specific equipment, use the flow rate recommended by the manufacturer.
- 7. Calculate the expected flow rate for all points using the appropriate diversity factor for all parts of the system. For specific equipment, the duty factor must be determined from the end user. The diversity (simultaneous use) factor, which determines the maximum number of outlets in use at any one time, has a major influence on the sizing of the piping system. Consulting with the end user to determine the diversity factor is strongly suggested. Starting from the most remote point on the branch and then proceeding to the main, calculate the actual flow rate using the appropriate diversity factor.
- 8. With the above information available, the piping system can be sized using the charts for system pressure. Table 9-10 provides a sizing chart for pressure losses through piping for air at various high pressures. Since many tools are connected to piping through hose, Table 9-11 provides friction losses through various size hoses. Enter the appropriate table with the actual flow rate and the allowable friction loss. Find the flow rate, and then read across to find a friction loss figure that is equal to or less than the allowable friction loss. Read up the column to find the size. In some cases, the diversity factor for the next highest range of outlets may result in a smaller-size pipe than the range previously calculated. If this occurs, do not reduce the size of the pipe; keep the larger size previously determined.

FLUSHING AND TESTING THE DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

After the system is completely installed and before it is placed in service, the piping system must be flushed to remove all loose debris and then tested. An accepted flushing method is to allow a volume of two to five times the expected flow through each respective part of the system. This is done by connecting air under pressure to the piping system and then opening and closing all outlets and valves, starting from the closest and working to the most remote.

Testing is done by pressurizing the system to the test pressure with air. The system test pressure for low-pressure systems is 150 percent more than the working pressure. For systems with a working pressure up to 200 psig, the entire piping system is tested to 300 psig for one hour, with no leakage permitted. If a working pressure higher than 200 psig is required, the system is tested at 150 percent of the system pressure. This pressure testing should be done in increments of 100 psig, starting with 100 psig. This is done to avoid damage due to a catastrophic failure. Leaks are repaired after each increment. After final testing, it is recommended that the piping be left pressurized at the system working pressure.

GLOSSARY

Absolute pressure The arithmetic sum of gauge and atmospheric/barometric pressures. It must be used in all calculations involving the basic gas laws.

Absolute temperature The temperature of a body referred to as absolute zero, at which point the volume of an ideal gas theoretically becomes zero. On the Fahrenheit scale, this is -459.67°F; on the Celsius scale, it is -273.15°C. Engineering values of -460°F and -273°C are typically used.

Aftercooling The cooling of air in a heat exchanger following the completion of compression to reduce the temperature and to liquefy condensable vapors

Altitude The elevation of a compressor above sea level

Barometric pressure The absolute atmospheric pressure existing at the surface of Earth. It is the weight of a unit column of air above the point of measurement. It varies with altitude and, at any given location, with moisture content and weather.

Capacity The quantity of air actually delivered when operating between the specified inlet and discharge pressures. For ejectors, capacity is measured in pounds per hour. For all other compressor types, capacity is a volume measured at the conditions of pressure, temperature, gas composition, and moisture content existing at the compressor inlet flange.

Compressed air Ambient air stored and distributed at a pressure greater than atmospheric pressure (14.7 psia, 101 kPa)

Compressibility The property of air or of an air mixture that causes it to differ in volume from that of a perfect gas when each is under the same pressure and temperature conditions. Occasionally it is called deviation. It must be experimentally determined.

Compression efficiency The ratio of the theoretical work requirement (using a stated process) to the actual work required to be done on the air for compression and delivery. Expressed as a percentage, compression efficiency accounts for leakage and fluid friction losses and thermodynamic variations from the theoretical process.

Compression ratio The ratio of the absolute discharge to the absolute intake pressure. It usually

Free Air Flow, scfm	6 ft, ¹/ଃ in.	8 ft, ⁵/₃₂ in.	8 ft, 1⁄4 in.	8 ft, ⁵/16 in.	8 ft, ³∕₃ in.	12.5 ft, ½ in.	25 ft, ½ in.	50 ft, ½ in.	25 ft, ¾ in.	50 ft, ¾ in.	8 ft, ⁵/₃₂ in. 25 ft, ½ in.	8 ft, ¼ in. 50 ft, ½ in.	12.5 ft, ½ in. 25 ft, ¾ in.	12.5 ft, ½ in. 50 ft, ¾ in.
2	3.5	1.2									1.3			
3	7.3	2.7									2.8			
4	12.5	4.4									4.6			
5		6.7									6.9			
6	9.3	9.3									9.7	1.2		
7		12.4	1.3								12.9	1.6		
8			1.6									2.1		
10			2.5									3.2		
12			3.5	1.3								4.5		
15			5.3	2.0				1.1				6.9		
20			9.0	3.4	1.4		1.0	1.9				11.8		
25			13.8	5.1	2.2		1.5	3.0					1.3	1.5
30				7.3	3.1	1.1	2.1	4.2					1.8	2.1
35				9.8	4.1	1.5	2.9	5.6					2.5	2.8
40				12.5	5.3	2.0	3.7	7.1		1.0			3.2	3.7
45					6.6	2.5	4.6	8.9		1.2			4.0	4.6
50					8.1	3.0	5.6	10.9		1.5			4.9	5.6
55					9.7	3.6	6.7	13.0		1.8			5.9	6.8
60					11.5	4.3	7.9		1.1	2.1			7.0	8.0
70						5.7	10.6		1.4	2.8			9.4	10.7
80						7.3	13.6		1.9	3.6			12.1	13.9
90						9.2			2.3	4.5				
100						11.2			2.8	5.5				
120									4.0	7.7				
140									5.4	10.3				
160									6.9	13.3				
180									8.7					
200									10.6					
220									12.7					

Table 9-11 Friction Loss for Hose, psi

Note: Based on 95-psig air pressure at hose inlet, includes normal couplings (quick-connect coupling will increase pressure losses materially). Hose is assumed to be smooth. Air is clean and dry. If an airline lubricator is upstream from the hose, pressure loss will be considerably higher. Pressure loss varies inversely as the absolute pressure (approximately). Probably accuracy is believed to be ± 10 percent. Use on-half of indicated value for air at 50 psig.

applies to a single stage of compression, but may be applied to a complete multistage compressor as well.

Critical pressure The saturation pressure at the critical temperature. It is the highest vapor pressure that a liquid can exert. When calculated for a mixture, it is called the pseudo (pretend) critical condition.

Critical temperature The highest temperature at which a gas can be liquefied.

Dead-end pressure The suction pressure attained by an ejector or positive-displacement vacuum pump at zero capacity with the suction absolutely blanked off.

Degrees Kelvin (°K) An absolute temperature scale

Degree Rankine (°**R**) An absolute temperature scale

Density The weight of a given volume of gas, usually expressed in pounds per cubic feet at standard pressure and temperature conditions (air = 0.09 pound/cubic foot [1.3 kilograms/cubic meter]) **Design (built-in) compression ratio** In a rotary compressor, the compression ratio that has been attained when the fixed discharge port is uncovered. A helical-lobe compressor (and most other rotary units) can have an operating ratio somewhat higher or lower than the design ratio with little change in efficiency.

Dewpoint The temperature at which the vapor in a space (at a given pressure) will start to condense (form dew). The dewpoint of a gas mixture is the temperature at which the highest boiling point constituent will start to condense.

Discharge pressure The total pressure (static plus velocity) at the discharge flange of the compressor. Velocity pressure usually is considered only with dynamic compressors.

Discharge temperature The temperature existing at the discharge flange of the compressor

Displacement The net volume swept by the moving parts in a unit of time, usually one minute (applies only to positive displacement compressors)

Dry bulb temperature The ambient gas temperature

Dry gas Any gas or gas mixture that contains no water vapor and/or in which all of the constituents are substantially above their respective saturated vapor pressures at the existing temperature (see wet gas). Note: In commercial compressor work, a gas may be considered dry (even though it contains water vapor) if its dewpoint is low at the inlet condition (-50° to -60°F).

Dry unit One in which there is no liquid injection and/or liquid circulation for evaporative cooling or sealing (see evaporative cooling)

Energy The capacity of a substance, either latent or apparent, to exert a force through a distance, that is, to do work

External energy The energy represented by the product of pressure and volume. It may be regarded as the energy a substance possesses by virtue of the space it occupies.

Internal energy The energy a substance possesses because of the motion and configuration of its atoms, molecules, and subatomic particles.

Kinetic energy The energy a substance possesses by virtue of its motion or velocity. It enters into dynamic and ejector compressor calculations, but seldom into positive-displacement problems.

Potential energy The energy a substance possesses because of its elevation above Earth (or above some other chosen datum plane)

Enthalpy (heat content) The sum of the internal and external energies

Entrainment ratios Used with ejectors to convert the weight of gas and/or water vapor handled to or from equivalent air. They are based on extensive tests.

Table 9-12 Factors for the Sizing of Any Gas, Based on Specific Gravity

Specific Gravity	Factor
.05	4.50
.10	3.16
.15	2.58
.20	2.20
.25	2.00
.30	1.79
.35	1.68
.40	1.57
.45	1.49
.50	1.41
.55	1.33
.60	1.28
.65	1.23
.70	1.19
.75	1.15
.80	1.12
.85	1.07
.90	1.05
.95	1.02
1.00	1.00
1.10	.95
1.20	.91
1.30	.87
1.40	.85
1.50	.81
1.60	.78
1.70	.76
1.80	.74
1.90	.72
2.00	.70
2.10	.69
2.20	.67
2.30	.65
2.40	.63
2.50	.62
2.60	.61
2.70	.60
3.00	.56
4 50	25

Note: Multiply factor by scfm in Table 9-7. Calculate adjusted scfm. Use adjusted scfm to obtain friction loss. **Entropy** A measure of the unavailability of energy in a substance

Equivalent air An ejector term—the calculated pounds per hour of air at 70°F and 14.696 psia and containing normal atmospheric moisture that is equivalent to, but not necessarily equal to, the weight rate of the gas handled by the ejector at suction conditions. Entrainment ratios are involved.

Evaporative cooling Takes place when a liquid (usually water) is injected into the gas stream before or during compression. As compression takes place, the gas temperature rises and some or all of the liquid is evaporated—the latent heat of liquid vaporization being removed from the gas—thus lowering its temperature.

Fixed compression ratio The design (builtin) compression ratio for a rotary unit having this feature

Free air Air at ambient conditions at a specific location. Temperature, barometric pressure, and moisture content may be different from those of standard air. The term "free air" is not to be used unless the ambient temperature, humidity, and barometric pressure conditions at the compressor location are stated.

Gauge pressure Pressure as determined by most instruments and gauges. Barometric pressure must be allowed for to obtain the true or absolute pressure.

Heat Energy transferred because of a temperature difference. No transfer of mass occurs.

Horsepower A unit of work equal to 33,000 footpounds per minute

Brake horsepower The total power input required including gas horsepower plus all friction losses

Gas horsepower The actual work required to compress and deliver a given gas quantity, including all thermodynamic, leakage, and fluid friction losses. It does not include mechanical losses.

Indicated horsepower That obtained by indicator card analysis of compression or expansion in a cylinder of a reciprocating compressor. It is the same as gas horsepower.

Peak horsepower The maximum power required by a given compressor when operating at a constant discharge pressure with variable intake pressure or constant intake pressure with variable discharge pressure.

Theoretical horsepower The work theoretically required to compress and deliver a given gas quantity in accordance with a specified product

Humidity In normal usage, the moisture (water vapor) in the atmosphere

Relative humidity The ratio of the actual partial vapor pressure in an air and vapor mixture to the saturated vapor pressure at the existing dry-bulb mixture temperature, usually expressed in percent

Specific humidity The ratio of the weight of water vapor in an air and vapor mixture to the weight of dry air, usually expressed as pounds of vapor per pound of dry air

Inlet pressure The total pressure (static plus velocity) at the inlet flange of the compressor. Velocity pressure is usually considered only with dynamic compressors.

Inlet temperature The temperature at the inlet flange of the compressor. Note: In a multistage compressor, the various stages may have differing inlet temperatures.

Intercooling The cooling of gas between stages of compression to reduce the temperature, reduce the volume to be compressed in the succeeding stage, liquefy condensable vapors, and save power

Maximum discharge pressure As applied to ejectors, the maximum absolute static recovery pressure against which the ejector will operate with stability

Mechanical efficiency The ratio, expressed in percent, of the indicated horsepower to the actual shaft horsepower (or steam indicated horsepower in an integral steam-driven unit)

Normal air The term used for average atmospheric air at sea level in a temperate zone where it contains some moisture. It is defined as being at 14.696 psia, 68°F, 36 percent relative humidity, and weighing 0.075 pound per cubic feet. The k-value is 1.395.

Piston displacement For a reciprocating compressor cylinder, the net volume displaced by the piston at rated machine speed, generally expressed in cubic feet per minute (cfm). For single-acting cylinders, it is the displacement of the compressing end only. For double-acting cylinders, it is the total of both ends. For multistage compressors, the displacement of the first stage only is commonly stated as that of the entire machine.

Precooler A heat exchanger located immediately preceding an ejector to condense and remove a portion of the vapor in the mixture and thus reduce the total pounds per hour to be handled

Psychrometry A measurement of the properties of air and water vapor mixtures in the atmosphere

Pumping The reversal of flow within a dynamic compressor that takes place when the capacity being handled is reduced to a point where insufficient pressure is being generated to maintain flow

Ratio of specific heats The ratio of the specific heat at constant pressure to the specific heat constant volume. It may vary considerably with pressure and temperature.

Recovery pressure That pressure of either motive fluid or discharge at which an ejector requires stable operation following a period of unstable operation due to having previously reached the breaking pressure. **Reduced pressure** The ratio of the actual absolute gas pressure to the absolute critical pressure.

Reduced temperature The ratio in absolute units of the actual gas temperature to the critical temperature.

Saturation When a vapor is at the dewpoint or saturation temperature corresponding to its partial pressure. A gas is never saturated with a vapor. The space occupied jointly by the gas and vapor may be saturated, however.

Degree of saturation The ratio of the weight of a vapor existing in a given space to the weight that would be present if the space were saturated at the space temperature

Saturated air and vapor mixture A mixture in which the space occupied by the mixture is saturated with water vapor at the mixture temperature

Saturated vapor pressure The pressure existing at a given temperature in a closed vessel containing a liquid and the vapor from that liquid after equilibrium conditions have been reached. It depends only on temperature and must be determined experimentally.

Saturation pressure Another term for saturated vapor pressure

Saturation temperature The temperature corresponding to a given saturated vapor pressure for a given vapor

Slip The internal leakage within a rotary compressor. It represents gas at least partially compressed but not delivered. It is experimentally determined and expressed in cfm to be deducted from the displacement to obtain capacity.

Slip rpm The speed required of a rotary compressor to maintain a given discharge pressure, supplying leakage only (zero actual output). It is an experience factor.

Specific gravity The ratio of the density of a given gas to the density of dry air, both measured at the same specified conditions of temperature and pressure, usually 14.696 psia and 60°F. It should also take into account any compressibility deviation from a perfect gas.

Specific heat (heat capacity) The rate of change in enthalpy with temperature. It is commonly measured at constant pressure or at constant volume. The values are different and are known as cp and cv respectively.

Specific volume The volume of a given weight of gas, usually expressed as cubic feet per pound at standard pressure and temperature conditions

Standard air Dry air with a relative humidity of 0 percent, a temperature of 60° F (15.6°C), and a pressure of 14.7 psig (101.4 kPa). For the chemical industry, standard air is 68° F (20°C) at a relative humidity of 0 percent, and a pressure of 14.7 psig (101.4 kPa). Some manufacturers use a relative humidity of 36 percent, a temperature of $68^{\circ}F$ (20°C), and a pressure of 14.2 psig (100 kPa) for performance test ratings. It is imperative that the conditions under which a compressor rating is calculated are obtained from the owner and manufacturer.

Actual cubic feet per minute (acfm) (actual liters per minute [aL/min]) A volume measurement of standard air after it has been compressed. The term "acfm (aL/min)" is not to be used unless the pressure is stated.

Standard cubic feet per minute (scfm) (normal liters per minute [nL/min]) A volume measurement of air at standard conditions. Outside the United States, standard is commonly referred to as normal, hence nL/min and nL/s.

Standard pressure and temperature (SPT) 14.696 psia and 60°F unless specifically stated otherwise

State A gas's condition at an instant of time as described or measured by its properties

Suction pressure The absolute static pressure prevailing at the suction of the ejector

Superheated air and vapor mixture A mixture in which the space occupied by the mixture is above the saturation temperature at the mixture temperature

Temperature The property of a substance that gauges the potential or driving force for the flow of heat

Thermal compressor An ejector used to compress waste or exhaust steam or any other gas through a moderate range of compression above atmospheric pressure

Vapor pressure The pressure exerted by a vapor confined within a given space. The vapor may be the sole occupant, or the space or may be associated with other gases.

Wet bulb temperature Used in psychrometry, the temperature recorded by a thermometer whose bulb has been covered with a wetted wick and whirled on a sling psychrometer. Taken with the dry bulb, it permits the determination of the relative humidity of the atmosphere.

Wet gas Any gas or gas mixture in which one or more of the constituents is at its saturated vapor pressure. The constituent at saturation pressure may or may not be water vapor.

Wet helical-lobe unit A device that handles a small constant flow of liquid with the gas, utilizes evaporative (injection) cooling, or circulates a liquid for sealing and/or cooling. The last may or may not be evaporative cooling.

Work Energy in transition, defined in units of force times distance. Work cannot be done unless there is movement.

Solar Energy

OUR SUN

- Diameter: 864,000 miles (1,390,473 km)
- Mass: 438 trillion, trillion, billion pounds (1.99 trillion, trillion, billion kg)
- Surface temperature: 5,800°K (9,980°F)
- Core temperature: 15,600,000°K (28,079,540°F)
- Energy output: 386 billion, billion mega watts per second
- Distance from Earth: 93,000,000 miles (149,668,992 km)
- Power level at Earth: 1.4 kilowatts per square meter or 440 British thermal units (Btu) per square foot

The Sun hits Earth with enough energy every minute to meet the needs of the world's population for an entire year.Earth is populated with more than 6.5 billion people, and the population is growing at a rapid rate, even though the rate of increase actually has been declining since the 1980s. It is estimated that the global population will reach 9 billion people around 2045. Beyond the increase in the population itself are higher rates of increase in industry to support this population and the nations that are emerging into the industrial age. One of the downsides to this industrial growth is its insatiable appetite for energy. Fossil resources are finite, while appetites for consumption are not.

The biggest leap in energy consumption will come from emerging economies such as China and India, where populations are expected to grow by 25 percent over the next two decades and economic output and standards of living also will rise dramatically. Energy demand in China and India alone is expected to double by 2025, but the issue isn't limited to developing countries.

Canada is the No. 1 country for use of energy per capita. The United States is in second place per capita and uses a tremendous amount of energy. The United States is home to 4 percent of the world's population but consumes 25 percent of the world's energy. As the more developed countries continue to prosper, it is only natural that their energy needs will continue to grow accordingly.

A POSSIBLE SOLUTION

To reduce dependence on fossil fuels, the use of renewable energy sources must increase. Some progress is being made. For instance, solar panels are now compulsory on all new and renovated buildings in Spain as part of the country's efforts to update its building codes and to meet the growing demand for energy.

The sun bombards Earth with an enormous amount of energy continuously. If this energy source is tapped, it could provide "free" energy.

WHAT IS SOLAR ENERGY?

The Earth bathes in a variety of energy wavelengths and particles from the sun, but for the purposes of this chapter, solar energy is a renewable, environmentally friendly resource in the form of heat and light. Solar energy is available everywhere on Earth, at least part of the time, and this energy is provided free of charge. It just needs to be harvested and used to provide heat, lighting, mechanical power, and electricity.

Various methods of harnessing the sun's abundant and clean energy are available. Energy from the sun, for these purposes, can be categorized in two ways:

- Thermal energy (heat)
- Light energy (photovoltaics)

Solar thermal technologies use the sun's heat energy to heat substances (such as transfer fluids or panels) for applications such as space heating, pool heating, and domestic water heating. Many products are on the market that utilize thermal energy. Often the products used for this application are called solar thermal collectors and can be mounted on the roof of a building or in some other sunny location. The sun's heat also can be used to produce electricity on a large utility-scale by converting the sun's heat energy into mechanical energy.

Light energy can be converted directly into electrical current through photovoltaic devices. Photovoltaics (PV) is a technology often confused with solar thermal and is in fact what many people mean when they refer to "solar energy." Photovoltaics (photo = light, voltaics = electricity) is a semiconductor-based technology (similar to the microchip) that converts light energy directly into an electric current that can be used either immediately or stored, such as in a battery or capacitor, for later use. PV panels and modules are very versatile and can be mounted in a variety of sizes and applications (e.g., on a roof or awning of a building, on roadside emergency phones, or as very large arrays consisting of multiple panels and modules). Currently they are being integrated into building materials, such as PV roofing material, which replaces conventional roofing shingles.

How much energy is needed to heat water?

- 1 kilowatt will raise 4.1 gallons of water 100 degrees in one hour (4.1 gph at $100^{\circ}\Delta T$).
- 1 watt is approximately 3.41 Btuh.
- 1 kilowatt is 3,412 Btuh.
- 1,000 Btuh is approximately 293 watts.
- 1 Btu will heat 1 pound of water 1°F.

How Can Solar Help?

Research shows that an average household with an electric water heater spends about 25 percent of its home energy costs on heating water. Solar water heaters offer the largest potential savings, with solar water heater owners saving as much as 50 percent to 85 percent annually on their utility bills over the cost of electric water heating. A simple payback of four to eight years can be expected on a well-designed and properly installed solar water heater. (Simple payback

is the length of time required to recover the investment through reduced or avoided energy costs.)

The United States spends more than \$13 billion a year on energy for home water heating. That is the equivalent of 11.4 barrels of oil per household—more than the amount of oil (in the form of gasoline) burned by a medium-size automobile driven 12,000 miles. See Figure 10-1 for a breakdown of how the use of solar energy compares to other energy sources.

Solar water heaters do not pollute. Specifying a solar water heater system prevents carbon dioxide, nitrogen oxides, sulfur dioxide, and the other air pollution and wastes created when the utility generates power or fuel is burned to heat the domestic water. When a solar water heater replaces an electric water heater, the electricity displaced over 20 years represents more than 50 tons of avoided carbon dioxide emissions alone.

Environmental Impact: What Is Being Saved?

Consider a family of four with a hot water demand of 60 usages per day. They install a solar collector system with two collectors and an 80-gallon storage tank and an expected minimum system lifetime of 20 years. The solar energy supplied is 11,010,000 Btu per year, so the energy supplied in 20 years is 220,200,000 Btu. The emissions reduction in 20 years is:

- 16.5 tons of carbon dioxide
- 3330 lbs of nitrous oxides
- 1950 lbs of carbon monoxide



Note: Sum of components may not equal 100% due to independent rounding.

Figure 10-1 The Role of Renewable Energy in the U.S. Energy Supply

Source: U.S. Energy Information Administration

Does It Work for Commercial Applications?

Solar is being used by more businesses every day in applications ranging from heating water to providing a reliable and clean power source. A business can save 40 to 80 percent on electric or fuel bills by replacing a conventional water heater with a solar water-heating system. Solar energy also provides other benefits to business such as "power security," enabling a business to continue operating even when outside utility power is disrupted.

Concentrating solar power plants generate electricity by using the heat from solar thermal collectors to heat a fluid that produces steam used to power the generator.

Why Use Solar?

A solar energy system can be used to help earn two LEED credits:

- SS Credit 7.1: Heat Island, Non-roof, one credit
- E&A Credit 2: Renewable Resources, one to seven credits

Solar energy also reduces reliance on natural gas or electricity for water heating with a sustainable source of "free" energy and reduces pollution emissions.

Tax Credits

Tax credits are constantly changing and evolving. Be sure to check for the current local, state, and federal incentives. Many sources for this information are available, including:

- On-site Renewables Tax Incentives: energytaxincentives.org/business/renewables.php
- Database of State Incentives for Renewables and Efficiency: dsireusa.org
- Guide to Federal Tax Incentives for Solar Energy: seia.org (member login required)

DEFINITIONS

The following terms are frequently employed in solar energy technology and related applications.

Absorber area The total heat transfer area from which the absorbed solar radiation heats the transfer fluid or the absorber media if both transfer fluid and solid surfaces jointly perform the absorbing function, in square feet (m^2)

Absorber (plate) The part of the solar collector that receives the incident solar radiation energy and transforms it into thermal energy. In some cases, the heat transfer fluid itself could be the absorber.

Absorptance The ratio of the absorbed flux to the total incident flux, measured in terms of percent

Angle of incidence The angle between the line of direct solar irradiation and the perpendicular to the aperture plane, in degrees

Angle of reflection The angle between the reflected rays' propagation direction and the per-

pendicular to the surface at the point of reflection, in degrees

Angle of refraction The angle between the refracted rays' propagation direction and the perpendicular to the interface at the point of refraction, in degrees

Area, aperture The maximum projected area of a solar collector through which un-concentrated solar radiant energy is admitted, in square feet (m^2)

Area, gross collector The maximum projected area of a solar collector module including any integral mounting devices, in square feet (m^2)

Auxiliary energy subsystem A configuration of equipment and components, utilizing conventional energy sources, to supplement the output of the solar system

Collector A device used to absorb the sun's energy

Collector, concentrating A collector that uses reflectors, lenses, or other optical devices to concentrate the radiant solar energy passing through the aperture onto an absorber of which the surface area is smaller than the aperture area. Parabolic trough-shaped reflectors concentrate sunlight onto an absorber or receiver to provide hot water and steam, usually for industrial and commercial applications.

Collector, flat plate A non-concentrating collector in which the absorbing surface is essentially planar and usually with approximately the same area as the aperture. Small tubes run through the box and carry fluid—either water or another fluid such as an antifreeze solution. The tubes attach to a black absorber plate. As heat builds up in the collector, the fluid passing through the tubes is heated. The hot transfer liquid goes to a storage tank, and water is heated as it passes through a tube inside the storage tank full of hot fluid. This is the most common type of collector for solar water heating.

Collector, evacuated tube (vacuum tube) A collector consisting of rows of parallel transparent glass tubes, each containing an absorber and covered with a selective coating. Sunlight enters the tube, strikes the absorber, and heats the liquid flowing through the absorber. These collectors are manufactured with a vacuum between the tubes, which helps them achieve extremely high temperatures (170–350°F). Their high efficiency makes them a good choice for commercial uses.

Collector, transpired A south-facing exterior wall covered by a dark sheet-metal collector. The collector heats outside air, which is then drawn into the building's ventilation system through perforations in the collector. They have been used for preheating ventilation air and crop drying. They are inexpensive to make, and commercially have achieved efficiencies of more than 70 percent.

Collector, trickle A flat-plate collector over which non-pressurized liquids flow

Collector efficiency The ratio of the energy collected (or absorbed) to the total solar energy incident on the collector, expressed in percent

Collector subsystem That portion or assembly of the solar system used for absorbing incident solar radiation, converting it to thermal energy and transferring this thermal energy to a heat-transfer fluid. The collector subsystem includes the solar collectors, related piping or ducts, and regulating devices.

Collector tilt The angle above the horizontal plane at which a solar collector is mounted, in degrees

Concentrating ratio The ratio of the aperture area to the absorber of a solar collector

Concentrator A reflector, lens, or other optical device in concentration solar collectors used to focus the incident solar energy on the reduced absorber area

Conduction A heat-transfer process by which heat flows from a region of higher temperature to a region of lower temperature within a solid, liquid, or gaseous medium by molecular contact or between different media having a direct physical contact

Convection A heat-transfer process in which heat is transferred from one region to another by motion of a fluid

Convection, forced A convection transfer process caused by mechanical devices, such as fans and injectors

Convection, free A convection transfer process caused by density differential within a fluid, without involvement of any mechanical devices

Cooling system The complete assembly of subsystems required to convert solar energy into other forms of energy for space cooling purposes

Cover, collector The transparent material placed over the aperture or absorber area of a solar collector to provide protection from the environment and reduce thermal losses from radiation or convection

Distribution subsystem The portion of a solar system from the storage subsystem to the point of ultimate use, including the related piping or ducts and regulating devices

Emittance The fraction of heat radiated by the solar collector, measured in percent of the absorbed energy by the panel

Emissivity The ratio of the radiation emitted by a surface to the radiation emitted by a black body at the same temperature

Energy transport subsystem The portion of a solar system that contains the heat-transfer media and transports the energy throughout the solar system, including related piping and regulating devices

Heat exchanger A device designed for transferring heat between two physically separated fluids **Heat pump** A device designed to simultaneously or alternately use the heat extracted at a low temperature and the heat rejected at a high temperature for cooling and heating purposes

Heat-transfer medium A fluid used in the transport of thermal energy

Heating and cooling system The complete assembly of subsystems required to convert solar energy into thermal energy and utilize this energy, in combination with auxiliary energy (if necessary), for combined heating and cooling purposes

Heating system The complete assembly of subsystems required to convert solar energy into thermal energy and utilize this energy, in combination with auxiliary energy (if necessary), for heating purposes

Hot water system The complete assembly of subsystems required to convert solar energy into thermal energy and utilize this energy, in combination with auxiliary energy (if necessary), for service water heating

Infrared radiation Radiation with wavelengths greater than 70 millionths centimeter (7,000 Angstrom units) but less than radio waves, about 5.5 centimeters

Irradiation (insolation), instantaneous The quantity of solar radiation incident on a unit surface area in a unit of time, in Btuh per square foot (W/m^2)

Insolation The solar radiation striking the surface of Earth or another planet. Also the rate of delivery of solar radiation per unit of horizontal surface (see irradiation).

Performance factor efficiency The ratio of the useful output capacity of a system to the input required to obtain it

Radiant emittance (exitance) The quotient of the radiant flux leaving an element of the surface containing the point by the area of that element

Radiant flux Power emitted, transferred, or received in the form of electromagnetic waves or photons

Radiant intensity The quotient of the radiant flux emitted by a source (or by an element of a source in an infinitesimal cone containing the given direction) by the solid angle of the cone

Radiation The heat-transfer process by which heat flows from a body at a higher temperature to a body at a lower temperature, when the bodies are separated in space or when a vacuum exists between them (emission or transfer of energy in the form of electromagnetic waves or photons)

Selective surface A coating applied to a solar collector, or its absorber area, having a high absorptance and a low emittance

Solar absorptance The fraction of the solar irradiance that is absorbed

Solar constant The solar radiation intensity that is incident on a surface normal to the sun's rays, outside the Earth's atmosphere, at a distance from the sun equal to the mean distance between the Earth and the sun. The accepted valued of the solar constant is equal to 428.8 Btuh per square foot $(1,353 \text{ W/m}^2)$.

Solar degradation The process by which exposure to sunlight deteriorates the properties of materials

Solar energy The photon (electromagnetic) energy originating from the sun

Solar system Equipment and components arranged in a manner to collect, convey, store, and convert solar energy

Solar system, air A solar system that uses air as the primary heat-transfer fluid

Solar system, active A solar system in which the incident solar radiation is absorbed by the solar collectors, transferred to an independent thermal storage unit, and distributed to the point of ultimate use by means of mechanical devices powered by conventional fuels (i.e., pumps and fans)

Solar system, closed A solar system that has a com-

pletely enclosed collector subsystem circulating the heat-transfer fluid under pressure above atmospheric and shut off from the atmosphere, except for an expansion tank

Solar system, liquid A solar system that uses liquid as the primary heat-transfer fluid

Solar system, open A solar system that exchanges heat directly with the end-use application

Solar system, passive A solar system in which solar energy utilization becomes the prime objective of engineering and architectural design. The flow of heat is achieved by natural convention, conduction, and radiation

Solar system, thermosyphon A passive solar system in which fluids circulate due to their temperature differentials, rather than under the influence of pumps or fans

Storage device (thermal) The containers, including all contents of such containers, used for

Table 10-1 Solar Cost Comparison, Method A

Solar Collector (Flat Plate)			Cost	Total Cost
Total kilowatts	Watts per square foot	Square feet	Cost per watt	
200	63	3,200	1	\$200,000
PV Panel			Cost	Total Cost
Total kilowatts	Watts per square foot	Square feet	Cost per watt	
200	16	12,500	10	\$2,000,000
PV Roof Material			Cost	Total Cost
Total kilowatts	Watts per square foot	Square feet	Cost per watt	
200	4	50,000	10	\$2,000,000

Table 10-2 Solar Cost Comparison, Method B									
Solar Collector (Flat Plate)			Cost	Total Cost					
Square feet	Watts per square foot	Total kilowatts	Cost per watt						
3,200	63	200	1	\$200,000					
PV Panel			Cost	Total Cost					
Square feet	Watts per square foot	Total kilowatts	Cost per watt						
12,500	16	200	10	\$2,000,000					
PV Roof Material			Cost	Total Cost					
Square feet	Watts per square foot	Total kilowatts	Cost per watt						
50,000	4	200	10	\$2,000,000					

storing thermal energy. Heat-transfer fluid, heat exchangers, flow-control devices, valves, baffles, etc. that are integral with the thermal storage container are regarded as parts of the storage device.

Storage medium (thermal) The material in the thermal storage device, independent of the containing structure, in which the major portion of the energy is stored

Storage subsystem The assembly of components necessary for storing energy so it can be used when required, including all related regulating devices used in connection thereof

Subsystem A major, separable, and functional assembly or portion of a system

Thermosyphon The natural circulation of a fluid caused by temperature differentials within the fluid system

Transfer fluid, heat The medium that flows through a solar collector and carries the absorbed energy away from the collector
Transmittance The ratio of flux transmitted through a material to the incident flux

Ultraviolet radiation Radiation with wavelengths from 180 to $400 \,\mu\text{m}$ (Angstrom units)

Watt An energy per second unit (1 watt = 1 joule per second)

SOME QUICK ESTIMATING CALCULATIONS

Following are some estimates that can be used in calculations:

- One direct hour of sunlight = 1 kilowatt-hour per square meter
- 1 kilowatt-hour = 3,412 Btu
- 1 gallon of #2 fuel oil = 150,000 Btu
- 1 square meter = 10.6 square feet
- One 4x8 collector (approximately) = 3 square meters
- One 4x8 collector (approximately) = 12–15 kilowatt-hours per day

QUICK COST COMPARISONS

Tables 10-1 and 10-2 illustrate two simple spreadsheets used to estimate costs for different solar systems. Many variables and other project-specific items are not taken into account within these calculations, so the actual cost of a system will be higher. This is only to provide a general idea of the magnitude of the differences among the systems.

A plethora of information is available via the Internet, books, and magazines to assist in the design of solar systems. Some of this information can be found within this chapter; however, a more complete understanding will come only through further research.

SYSTEM SIZING RULES OF THUMB

Approximately 440 Btuh per square foot of energy generated by the sun could potentially reach the Earth (see Figure 10-2). Of that potential energy, 30 to 60 percent is lost in the journey through the atmosphere, and 170 to 315 Btuh per square foot eventually reaches the surface.

For example, Chicago receives 1,260 to 1,575 Btu per square foot per day of energy from the sun. For optimum output, panels should be installed at a 45degree angle and face south. The optimum output from a panel is roughly 220 Btuh per square foot. The amount of energy disbursed by the sun fluctuates with sunspot activity and solar storms, but the maximum available energy from a collector is generally considered to be 220 Btuh per square foot.

SOLAR IRRADIATION COLLECTION METHODS

The solar collector is the main component of the active solar irradiation collection subsystem (see Figure 10-3). It is the device that absorbs the incoming solar energy, converts it to heat, and transfers this heat to a fluid (liquid or air) flowing through the solar collector. To absorb or collect this energy, several different panel or collector styles are available, which can be classified into three general categories:

- Flat-plate solar collectors: Non-concentrating collectors in which the absorbing surface is essentially planar and is approximately equal to the gross collector area
- Concentrating solar collectors: Collectors that use mirrors, lenses, reflectors, or other optical devices to concentrate the radiant solar energy passing through the collector's aperture onto an absorber of which the absorber area is smaller than the aperture area
- Vacuum tube solar collectors: Collectors that use sealed vacuum tubes, which operate via a selfcontained vapor reaction to heat a condenser at the end of the tube and transmit heat through a small, integral heat exchanger through a manifold through which the fluid (water and/or glycol) circulates

Flat-plate Solar Collectors

A typical flat-plate solar collector unit consists of the following basic elements:

• One or more collector covers (glazing), transparent to the incoming incident solar radiation and opaque to the infrared radiation from the absorber plate. These are intended to protect the absorber



Figure 10-2 Amount of Sun's Energy that Reaches the Earth



Figure 10-3 How Solar Energy Is Collected

plate from the environment and to act as a shield to reduce radiative and convective heat losses from the absorbing surface. Glass and plastic typically are the materials utilized for collector covers.

- An absorber plate (surface), usually incorporating channels (conduits) containing the heat-transfer fluid, used to absorb the sun's incident radiation and to transfer the energy (heat) to the fluid medium in the channels. Metals and plastics have been used in the construction of absorber plates, which are sometimes coated with a selective surface finish having high-absorptivity and low-emissivity factors. Extreme care should be exercised when selecting a metal for the construction of the absorber plates. Each material has its own characteristics, which may induce galvanic corrosion. Also, it should be noted that the thermal conductivities of plastics are less than those of metals. Therefore, plastic materials should be limited to low-temperature applications (e.g., swimming pool heating).
- Thermal insulation, placed behind the absorber plate and channel assembly and surrounding the perimeter of the solar collector module, used to reduce heat losses and increase radiation on the absorber plates and channel assembly
- A backplate, which is placed behind the insulation and acts as a reflector surface, used to reduce heat losses and increase radiation on the absorber plates and channel assembly. Aluminum and foil reflectors are the materials generally used in the construction of backplates.
- Headers (manifolds), which are used to convey the absorbed energy. To ensure steady flow conditions, the headers should have a cross-sectional area larger than the area served by the channels.

Metals and plastics are the materials commonly utilized in the construction of the headers.

• A frame, including angle-fixing and mounting devices, etc., enclosing the complete solar collector module

Many configurations of flat-plate solar collectors are available. For example, the absorber plate/channel assembly could be of fin design or corrugated sheets, with channels above, channels below, or channels as integral parts with the absorber plate. Also, flat-plate modules used in swimming pool heating applications (low temperature/high water volume) do not normally require a covers, backplate, or insulation by design. The absorber plate, channel assembly, and headers are the only elements necessary.

The amount of incident solar energy (radiation) collected is governed by the following criteria:

- Transmittance of the collectors covers, which should exceed 90 percent of the solar spectrum
- Absorptivity factor of the absorber plate to the incident solar radiation, which should exceed 95 percent
- Emissivity factor of the absorber plate in the infrared spectrum
- Thermal resistance between the absorber plate and the heat-transfer medium
- Reduction of the conductive, convective, and radiative heat (thermal) losses from the panel, which depends on the operating temperature of the panel, usually ranging from 90–210°F (32.2–98.8°C) or higher

The most widely used measure of the performance of flat-plate collectors is thermal efficiency (q), which is defined as the ratio of delivered heat to the incident solar radiation. However, it should be noted that the thermal efficiency of a flat-plate solar collector is not a sufficiently descriptive index to select a unit module. The most important properties of a flat-plate solar collector are the collector operating temperature, type of collector surface, and type and number of collector covers.

The steps for determining the thermal efficiency of a flat-plate solar collector, including the necessary data, are as follows:

- To calculate the incident beam component of insolation normal to the collector (Ib,coll) and the diffuse component of insolation (Ih,d), obtain the insolation on a horizontal surface (Ih), cloud cover (CC), solar altitude angle (a), collector tilt angle (E), and latitude (L).
- To calculate the absorbed radiation (Icoll), obtain the number of collector covers (n).
- To calculate the delivered energy to working fluid (qa), obtain the wind speed (v) in knots (m/s), collector temperature (Tcoll) in °R, and collector physical properties.

The following equations should be used in calculating the thermal efficiency:

Equation 10-1

b,coll = b,b(cos i)/sin a

Equation 10-2

 $^{I}h,d = 0.78 + (1.07) a + (6.17) CC$

Equation 10-3

 I coll = I b,coll(l - Pbn) $^{\alpha}$ s,b + I h,d (l - Pd) $^{\alpha}$ s,d

Equation 10-4

$$qa = coll - L_t$$

Equation 10-5

$$\eta = q/(b, coll + b, d)$$

where:

- 1 b,coll = Incident beam component of insolation normal to the collector surface, Btuh per square foot (W/m²)
- ¹h,b = Horizontal beam component of insolation, Btuh per square foot (W/m²)
- i = Angle of incidence, degrees
- a = Solar altitude angle, degrees
- ¹h,d = Diffuse component of insolation, Btuh per square foot (W/m²)
- CC = Cloud cover, tenths (1/10) of sky covered
- coll = Absorbed radiation, Btuh per square foot (W/m²)

Pbn = Reflectance from several covered sources

- $^{\alpha}$ s,b = Absorptance (beam)
- Pd = Diffuse reflectance
- $^{\alpha}$ s,d = Absorptance (diffuse)
- qa = Energy delivered to working fluid, Btuh per square foot (W/m²)
- $$\label{eq:Lt} \begin{split} L_t &= Thermal \mbox{ losses of collectors, Btuh per square} \\ foot \mbox{ } (W/m^2) \end{split}$$
- η = Thermal efficiency, percent

Concentrating Collectors

The advantages of using concentrating collectors in solar systems have long been recognized. Several thermal processes require much higher temperatures than those that can be reached by flat-plate solar collectors; therefore, concentrators must be employed. However, although many concentrating solar systems have successfully operated over the years, the economics have played a very important role. The flat-plate solar collectors that do not require sun-tracking devices have taken predominance because of their lower manufacturing and installation costs.

Some of the advantages of concentrating collectors over flat-plate collectors are as follows:

• The reflecting surfaces require less material and are structurally simpler than flat-plate units.

- The absorber area is significantly smaller than that of a flat-plate unit. Therefore, the radiation intensity is much greater.
- The working fluid can attain higher temperatures.
- Little or no antifreeze solution is required.
- Some of the disadvantages are:
- The concentrating collectors only collect on the direct component of the radiation.
- Maintenance and operating costs are higher.
- Reflecting surfaces may deteriorate.
- The diffuse component of radiation plays a very small role in the heating of the fluid.

Among the concentrating collector systems, particular notice should be paid to the following.

Stationary Reflector Tracking Absorber

The stationary reflector tracking absorber (SRTA) system was developed by W. Gene Steward (Environmental Consulting Services in Boulder, Colorado) and J. L. Russel (General Atomics in San Diego, California). The Steward SRTA is a compound curvature collector, whereas the Russel SRTA is a single curvature collector. Both SRTA systems are for electric power generation (photovoltaic application). This collector system is based on optical principles showing that, regardless of the position of the sun, a fixed mirror can focus most of the incoming solar radiation on a line parallel to the rays of the sun.

The size of the SRTA absorber is based on the width of the solar image and the maximum absorber length necessary to capture all reflected rays.

A theoretical average geometric concentration factor (F_c) is defined as the ratio of the projected surface area of a concentrator (A_p) to the area of the sun's image (A_i) on the collecting surface. The temporal average for a day is obtained from the following relation:

Equation 10-6

$$\bar{\mathbf{F}}_{c} = \frac{\mathbf{A}_{p}}{\mathbf{A}_{i}} = \frac{\mathbf{I}}{\theta_{1}} \int_{\circ}^{\theta_{1}} \bar{\mathbf{F}}_{c} d\mathbf{i}$$

where:

 θ = Incidence angle i at mirror sunrise

The value of the concentration factor obtained from Equation 10-6 does not take into account surface irregularities in the reflecting mirror. In actual practice, the absorber may be five or six times greater than the theoretical value to compensate for surface irregularities in the reflecting mirror and to absorb some diffuse radiation on cloudy or hazy days.

When comparing a flat-plate collector system and a SRTA system, it is imperative that a complete system analysis be performed. One does not pay for the surface area, but rather for the amount of heat or useful energy delivered per unit surface area. A cost comparison between a flat-plate collector and a SRTA system can be made on the following:

Equation 10-7

 $\left(\frac{Afp}{\eta fp}\right)(\text{cost per }ft^2 \text{ of flat-plate collector})$

Equation 10-8

 $\frac{\pi d_a^2}{\eta_{\text{SRTA}}} \times \frac{\text{cost per ft}^2 \text{ of mirror surface}}{\text{frontal area per mirror area}}$

where:

- Afp = Surface area of flat-plate collector, square feet (m^2)
- $\eta fp = Diameter of flat-plate collector, percent$
- d_a = Diameter of aperture area of SRTA collector, feet (m)
- η_{SRTA} = Efficiency of stationary reflector tracking absorber collector, percent

The cost of the SRTA absorber is prorated on a mirror surface area basis. For complete cost comparisons, the cost of the entire solar system for each design should be considered.

Compound Parabolic Concentrator

The compound parabolic concentrator (CPC) system was developed by Roland Winston (Argonne National Laboratories in Argonne, Illinois). The CPC is a non-tracking solar collector consisting of two sections of a parabola of second degree, symmetrically located about the mid-plane of a collector. The two sections form a single curvature solar concentrator with an angular acceptance of 2 (θ_{max}). The acceptance depends on the ratio of aperture area (W_c) to the absorber area (W_a) and is expressed by the relation:

Equation 10-9

$$\theta_{\rm max} = \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{W_{\rm a}}{W_{\rm c}} \right)$$

where

 $\begin{array}{l} \theta_{max} = Maximum \ acceptance \\ W_a = Absorber \ area, \ square \ feet \ (m^2) \\ W_c = Aperture \ area, \ square \ feet \ (m^2) \end{array}$

The concentration ratio (CR) of the CPC system can be determined by the expression:

Equation 10-10

$$CR = \frac{W_e}{W_a}$$

This collector system should be oriented in an eastwest direction and tilted toward the south at an angle (E) from the horizontal plane. When the angle (y) is less than A_{max} , the CPC collector accepts both direct and diffuse components of sunlight. When the angle is greater than A_{max} , the CPC collector accepts only diffuse sunlight over the portion of the aperture area equal to the absorber area. Beam insolation incident on a CPC collector outside the acceptance angle does not reach the absorber area, but is reflected from the side walls back through the aperture.

The theoretical depth of the CPC collector (d_{coll}) depends on the concentration ratio and is defined by the expression:

Equation 10-11

$$\mathbf{d}_{\text{coll}} = \mathbf{W}_{\mathrm{a}} \left[\frac{(\mathbf{CR}+1)}{2} \right] [(\mathbf{CR}-1)^{\frac{1}{2}}]$$

In actual practice, it has been found advantageous to use a value of d_{coll} that is one-third smaller than that calculated from Equation 10-11.

SYSTEM SIZING AND CALCULATIONS

Several computer simulation design programs are currently available for sizing solar-assisted service water- and space-heating systems. In this chapter, the f-chart method developed by the University of Wisconsin is used for sizing such systems. The f, expressed in terms of percent, is the fraction of the heating load supplied by solar energy or the percentage of the total heating load furnished by the solar system. These design charts are calculated utilizing double-glazed, selective-surface collector panels. Other types of solar collectors (e.g., single-glazed selective surface; double-glazed non-selective surface; single-glazed non-selective surface) could be used. However, the data for developing the charts must be varied accordingly.

The following data is required when employing the f-chart method in the sizing procedures: number of degree days, ambient temperature, building heat loss (if space heating is being considered), hot water demand, collector orientation, and design parameters of the system.

Solar-assisted Service Water Heating

Solar-assisted service water-heating systems generally provide maximum savings when the system is designed to deliver 45 to 70 percent of the load (f =45 to 70 percent). To determine the amount of energy required to heat the service water, the following information is needed:

- Hot water supply temperature
- Cold water supply temperature
- Daily hot water demand

To meet the requirements set forth in the Federal Housing Administration's Minimum Property Standards, the hot water supply temperature must be 140° F (60° C) minimum. This also helps reduce waterborne pathogens such as Legionella. Depending on the season and geographical location, the cold water supply temperature may vary from 40° F to 70° F (4.4° C to 21.1° C), although it is possible to have lower or higher temperatures. This should always be considered when calculating water heating or cooling applications.

Although many system types, applications, and design techniques may be considered for various service water-heating requirements, a few basic guidelines should be followed in all cases.

- Systems should be designed to be as simple and as feasible as possible for each specific application.
- Match system design to load patterns and magnitude, and avoid misuse of design rules of thumb.
- Consider system efficiency, as well as collector efficiency.
- All phases of a system's control cycle should be examined for potential operational and energy waste problems.
- Plan for component expansion, movement, and service during system design.

Sizing Procedure for Service Water Heating

The following steps should be followed when sizing a solar-assisted service water-heating system.

- 1. Determine the daily hot water demand.
- 2. Determine the hot water supply temperature. Generally, this temperature can be taken as 140° F (60° C).
- 3. Determine the cold water supply temperature. This temperature typically ranges from 40°F to 70°F (4.4°C to 21.1°C), depending on the season and geographical location. In the absence of such data, assume this temperature to be 45°F (7.2°C) as a year-round average.
- 4. Determine the closest weather station location and prepare an f-chart. A sample f-chart is illustrated in Figure 10-4. Data on degree days and percent f at the collection point may be obtained from the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals and the Solar Decision Handbook.
- 5. Determine the percent f to be delivered by the solar system.
- 6. Using the f-chart, determine the size of the collector array (in square feet [m2]) required to provide the desired percent f. The following calculations will provide approximate values, as indicated.
 - To determine the flow rate of the heattransfer fluid in the collector loop, multiply the collector area by 0.039 (0.027 in SI units).
 - To determine the maximum heat transfer to the heat exchanger, multiply the collector area by 225 (709.6 in SI units).
 - To determine the size of the preheater tank, multiply the collector area by 2 (81.4 in SI units).

- 8. Determine the pump head in the storage loop.
- 9. Determine the volume of heat-transfer fluid required.
- 10. To determine the size of the expansion tank needed, multiply the volume of the heat-transfer fluid by 10 percent.

Figures 10-5 and 10-6 illustrate typical installations of solar-assisted service water-heating systems.

Example 10-1

- Location: Memphis, Tennessee
- Family of four, standard kitchen and bathroom

Step 1: Determine the daily hot water demand, approximated as 15 gallons per person per day (56.8 L per person per day). For four persons, the daily hot water demand would be 60 gallons (227.2 L).

Step 2: Determine the hot water supply temperature. To meet FHA requirements, this temperature should be 140° F (60°C).

Step 3: Determine the cold water supply temperature. This temperature can be assumed to be 45° F (7.2°C).

Step 4: Develop an f-chart. See Figure 10-7.

If 60 percent of the load is to be supplied by the solar system, approximately 35 square feet (3.3 m^2) of collector area is required. The flow rate of the heat-transfer fluid in the collector loop would be 35 ft² × 0.039 = 1.4 gpm $(3.3 \text{ m}^2 \times 0.027 = 0.09 \text{ L/s})$. The maximum heat transfer to the heat exchanger would be 35 ft² × 225 = 7,875 Btuh $(3.3 \text{ m}^2 \times 709.6 = 2,341.7 \text{ W})$.



Figure 10-4 Sample f-chart, Service Water Heating Application

100

Sizing Procedure for Service Water and Space Heating

The following steps should be followed when sizing a combined solar-assisted service water- and space-heating system.

- 1. Calculate the building heat loss. ASHRAE-recommended methods should be used.
- 2. Determine the building's design temperature. This temperature is the lowest outside air temperature, in °F (°C), at which the building must be heated to 65° F (18.3°C).
- 3. Calculate the building's design load. This load is the product of the building's heat loss and the building's design temperature.
- 4. Determine the daily hot water demand, hot water supply temperature, and cold water supply temperature. Follow steps 1, 2, and 3 given for service water-heating systems.
- 5. Determine the closest weather station and prepare an f-chart.
- 6. Determine the percent f to be delivered by the solar system.
- 7. Determine the size of the collector array, in square feet (m2), required to provide the desired percent f using the chart.
- 8. Determine the flow rate of the heattransfer fluid in the collector loop, maximum heat-transfer fluid in the collector loop, maximum heat transfer to the heat exchanger, and the size of the storage tank. Use step 6 of the service water-heating procedure.
- 9. Determine the pump head in the collector loop and storage loop.
- 10. Determine the pump head for the entire heat-delivery loop (preheater, to and from storage tank, etc.).
- 11. Determine the fan coil size. The output of the fan coil should be equal to or greater than the building's design load.
- 12. Select a heat pump with an output equal to or greater than the building's design load.
- 13. Select an auxiliary heater with an output equal to or greater than the building's design load.

Figure 10-8 provides illustrations of combined systems.







Figure 10-6 Pump Circulating System, Service Water Heating Application, Direct

4.

HEAT EXCHANGER



Figure 10-7 f-chart for Memphis, Tennessee

Keys to Sizing

- Building load: What is the daily water demand?
- Building occupancy: On average, how many days per week is the building occupied?
- Location
- Safety measures/devices

Example 10-2

An apartment building occupied at all times has 64 units using 30 gpd each (1,920 gpd total). If one 30-square-foot panel generates 30,000 Btu per day in the summer, how many panels are needed?

- 30,000 Btu / 8.34 pounds per gallon / (120°F 60°F) = 60 gallons at a 60°F rise per panel
- 1,920 gpd / 60 = 32 solar panels

Example 10-3

For the same apartment building, how much storage is needed?

- 30,000 Btu / 8.34 pounds per gallon / $(150^{\circ}F 60^{\circ}F) = 40$ gallons at a 90°F rise per panel
- 40 x 32 panels = 1,280 gallons of storage

Keys to Performance

When laying out the panels, consider the following to ensure peak performance.

- What is the flow rate through a panel?
- How do off-peak loads affect temperature and control?
- What temperature does the sensor see?
- How big is the piping (heat loss, installation cost)?

• How efficient is the system?

PANEL LAYOUTS AND PIPING ARRANGEMENTS

Panels in Parallel/Arrays in Parallel

- 32 panels = Eight arrays (see Figure 10-9)
- 1-1.5 gpm per panel = 32-48 gpm total
- 2–2½-inch pipe
- Vents on cold water
- Sensor low at end

 \bullet 10°F band in summer; 2–4°F in lower months

Panels in Series/Arrays in Parallel

- 32 panels = Eight arrays (see Figure 10-10)
- 1–1.5 gpm per panel = 32–48 gpm total
- $2-2\frac{1}{2}$ -inch pipe
- One vent on hot water
- Sensor high at end

• 10°F band in summer; 2-4°F in lower months

Panels in Series/Arrays in Series

- 32 panels = Eight arrays (see Figure 10-11)
- 1-1.5 gpm per panel = 8-12 gpm total
- 1–1¹/₄-inch pipe
- Vents at high points
- Sensor high at end
- 40°F band in summer; 10–20°F in lower months

Illustrations

Figures 10-12, 10-13, and 10-14 illustrate a dual water heater installation with one storage tank, a dual water heater installation with two storage tanks, and a detail of the solar panel array.

SPECIFICATIONS

The specifications are an important part of any system design. Several formats are used today. Always coordinate and verify the specification format that is to be used for a project.

In the current Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) format, plumbing is found in the 220000 sections. Some of the sections that may be included in a solar water heater system specification follow. Note that a system may require sections other than those listed. These are only listed as an example.

- 220500 Common Work Results for Plumbing
- 22053 General Duty Valves for Plumbing
- 220529 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing
- 220533 Freeze Protection for Plumbing Piping
- 220548 Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- 220553 Identification for Plumbing Pipe and Equipment
- 230993.13 Controls Point List



Figure 10-8 Pump Circulating System, Combined Space and Service Water Heating Applications



Figure 10-9 Panels in Parallel/Arrays in Parallel





Figure 10-10 Panels in Series/Arrays in Series

Figure 10-11 Panels in Series/Arrays in Series

Regardless of the format used, the basic objectives and requirements are the same. The following may serve as a guideline to writing specifications for a solar system.

Collectors

- Manufacturer and model number
- Number of covers
- Performance characteristics
- Testing agency and test method followed
- Stagnation conditions
- Recommended flow rate
- Operating temperatures
- Pressure drop at maximum flow rate
- Materials
- Glazing
- Gaskets
- Insulation
- Absorber plate
- Selective coating
- Recommended heat-transfer fluid
- Physical dimensions
- Module size
- Aperture area
- Weight
- Expected collector life
- Warranty

Heat Exchangers

- Manufacturer and model number
- Construction
- Recommended heat-transfer fluid
- Warranty
- Expected life
- Materials
- Physical dimensions
- Performance
- · Testing agency and test method followed
- Operating conditions
- Flow rate
- Pressure drop
- Temperature
- Pressure
- Pumps
- Manufacturer and model number
- Motor coupling
- Mechanical seal
- Warranty
- Estimated life

Pump Body and Impeller Material

- Gasketing materials
- Motor voltage
- Amperage
- Operating conditions
- Flow rate
- Pressure drop
- Temperatures





- Pressure
- Pump curves
- Flange connections
- Preheater tanks
- Manufacturer and model number
- Storage capacity
- Body material
- Lining
- Insulation
- Plumbing connections
- Jacket
- Sacrificial anode
- Physical size
- Auxiliary heater
- Pressures
- Weight
- Warranty
- Estimated life
- Operating temperatures

Storage Tanks

- Manufacturer and model number
- Capacity
- Operating temperatures
- Storage medium
- Freezing precautions
- Lining
- Working pressure
- Materials of construction
- Insulation
- Plumbing connections
- Jacket
- Physical dimensions
- Pressures
- Weight
- Drain valves
- Manhole
- Live and dead loads
- Warranty
- Estimated life
- Controls
- Manufacturer and model number
- Differential thermostat
- Sensor
- Available functions
- Power input
- Approvals and listings
- Ground provisions
- Warranty
- Estimated life

Heat Pumps

- Manufacturer and model number
- Pump type
- Rated heat and cooling output
- Rated heat and cooling coefficient of performance and energy-efficiency ratio

- Auxiliary heaters
- Filters
- Operating voltage and amperage
- Condenser coil operating range and flow rate
- Physical dimensions
- Weight
- Operating sequence
- Warranty
- Estimated life

Insulation

- Manufacturer and type (material)
- Heat transfer characteristics/thickness
- Flame spread and smoke-developed characteristics
- Vapor barrier/cover
- Method of application
- Warranty

ADDITIONAL READING AND OTHER RESOURCES

A bounty of information is available to assist in the design of solar systems. A more complete understanding will come through further research.

- The Solar Hydrogen Civilization by Roy McAlister
- Solar Energy Industries Association: seia.org
- Energy Star: energystar.gov
- Internal Revenue Service: irs.gov
- TIAP: energytaxincentives.org
- Solar Rating Certification Corporation (SRCC): solar-rating.org
- U.S. Department of Energy, Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy: eere.energy.gov
- Solar and Sustainable Energy Society of Canada: sesci.ca
- Canadian Solar Industries Association: cansia.ca
- Kortright Centre for Conservation: kortright.org

REFERENCES

- ASHRAE Handbook 1989 Fundamentals, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.
- Duffie, J. A. and Beckman, W. A., *Solar Energy Thermal Processes*, Interscience Publishers, New York, NY, 1974.
- Kreider, J. F. and Kreith, J., Solar Heating and Cooling, McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, 1975.
- ASHRAE 93: Standard of Testing to Determine the Performance of Solar Collections, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 1986.
- Montgomery, R. H. and Budnick, J., Solar Decision Book, Dow Coming Corporation, Midland, MI,1978.
- ASHRAE 90A: Energy Conservation in New Building Design, American Society of Heating, Refrigerat-

ing, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 1975.

- Beckman, W. A., Klein, S. A., and Duffie, J. A., Solar Heating Design by the f-Chart Method, Wiley-Interscience, New York, NY, 1977.
- Kreider, J. F., *The Solar Heating Design Process*, McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, 1982.
- Solar Design Workbook, Solar Energy Research Institute, Golden, CO, 1981.
- Solar Energy System Design, American Society of Plumbing Engineers, Westlake, CA, 1980.
- Tully, G. F., Solar Heating Systems, McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, 1981.

- U. S. Department of Energy, Active Solar Energy System Design Practice Manual, Solar/0802-79/01, NITS, Springfield, VA, 1979.
- ASHRAE Handbook 1988 Equipment, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.
- ASHRAE Handbook 1987 Systems and Applications, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA.
- Solar Water Heater's: A Buyer's Guide" Natural Resources Canada, Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services, 1987.
- Noble, Duncan and Robert K. Swartman, *The Canadian Renewable Energy Guide*, Burnstown: General Store Publishing House, 1995.



Figure 10-14 Solar Panel Array Installation

Site Utility Systems

This chapter discusses the components and design of building and site utility services for all plumbing systems and their installation from the building wall to their connection to a source. Such connections could be a public water supply or main or, with regard to drainage, any ultimate point of disposal, which could include a public sewer, retention basin, or other method as appropriate. Natural gas supply would connect to a franchised public utility main. The systems discussed include:

- Potable water supply
- Fire protection water supply
- Sanitary sewer
- Site storm water system
- Natural gas service

Other methods of supply, such as wells and surface water, are outside the scope of this chapter.

PRELIMINARY INFORMATION FOR ALL SYSTEMS

The following general information shall be obtained for all systems on each project. Information for specific items is discussed under the individual systems.

- Obtain an architectural site plan showing the location of the building on the site. Part of the site plan should be a location plan of the surrounding area. Also included should be the block and lot number, building address, building classification, and building height. Keep in mind that the actual height and the legal height are different, but both dimensions are necessary to determine fire protection requirements. Other pertinent information includes the location of existing buildings and any natural interference, such as boulders and trees not being removed.
- Obtain an existing utility site plan from the various purveyors or suppliers if the utilities are not shown on the architectural site plan. An investigation should be conducted to ensure the availability of all services that are required.
- For your reference, create a contact sheet showing all of the building and plumbing code officials, fire

marshal, fire code officials, and every other person or department necessary for the development, design, and approval of the plumbing systems. One of the most important items for the record is the utility information, such as water pressure, gas information, sanitary sewer disposal information, and storm water sewer and disposal information.

- Make certain that north is clearly and consistently indicated on all drawings.
- If the project is an alteration, obtain all available existing plans, including the legal height of the existing structure.
- Conduct a thorough code search to find all codes applicable to the project, including the requirements for grease traps and storm water management systems.
- Obtain from the plumbing and other code officials all submittal and approval requirements for plans and other contract documents prepared for the project.
- Obtain the requirements for fire protection systems from the fire department, fire marshal, and insurance carrier, including the need for a meter and backflow preventer.
- Include existing and finished grades on a topographical plan, as well as temporary or intermediate grades used for any purpose.
- Obtain soil boring information, including groundwater level.
- Determine if a lawn or turf irrigation system is required.
- Determine the need for a private sewage disposal system.
- Determine if a sewage lift system is required.

Typical general site notes (see Appendix 11-A) apply only to the site. They are intended to be a general series of notes, and some may not apply to a specific project.

DOMESTIC WATER SERVICE

The domestic water system provides water suitable for human consumption to all fixtures and equipment

throughout a facility. The domestic water building service conveys water from a public utility or other source into a facility for further distribution.

Codes and Standards

Various codes, particularly the plumbing code, are applicable to domestic water services. It is recommended to check with the local or state authorities to determine which codes apply in the area. Water purveyors also may have regulations with which the project must comply.

Getting Started

The most important piece of information concerning the water service connecting to a public water supply is the residual water pressure available at the entrance into the building. A decision regarding the necessity for a pressure-boosting system is based on this figure. Figure 11-1 provides a step-by-step calculation to find the residual pressure.

The water pressure at the public water main is called the static pressure and usually depends on the time of day this static measurement is taken. Request this reading to be taken between 10 a.m. and noon. From this actual pressure, the pressure losses through the installed components are deducted. In addition, the difference in height between the water main and the building entrance (or point of connection to the interior distribution system) is either added or deducted. After all service losses due to fittings, length of run through a preliminary sized water service, backflow preventer, and other connected equipment and devices have been subtracted, the result is the available, or residual, pressure. From the residual pressure, it is recommended to subtract an additional 5-poundper-square-inch (psi) (34.5-kPa) pressure loss to allow for future nearby construction that might lower the pressure.

General System Requirements

The first step in determining the general system requirements is to find the water purveyor or utility company providing water to the site. Next, calculate the preliminary (or final, if possible) maximum instantaneous water service requirements, in gallons per minute (gpm) (L/min). This is done from a preliminary (or final, if available) fixture count. An additional 10 percent is added as an allowance for cooling tower fill, boiler fill, and other miscellaneous uses of water in addition to the domestic use. For specialized facilities, add the flow rate obtained from the owner for additional processes and equipment that may use potable water. To calculate the maximum probable gpm, proceed as follows.

1. Count all fixtures to be installed in the facility by fixture type.

- 2. Based on each type of fixture, find the water fixture unit (wfu) value for each fixture. Refer to Table 11-1 for wfu values for each type of fixture. As stated previously, use the plumbing code that applies to the project's location.
- 3. Add all facility water fixture units to calculate the total water load in water fixture units.
- 4. Refer to Figure 11-2 to convert water fixture units to the maximum probable gpm. Several codes, such as the Uniform Plumbing Code (UPC), International Plumbing Code (IPC), state codes, and even city codes, can be used as well. The IPC currently uses the Hunter's curve fixture unit conversion to gpm developed in 1924. If an engineer is designing a facility where this code requirement is in effect, the information must be used. However, recent tests and studies conducted by many authorities have determined that use of Hunter's curves leads to oversized piping, mainly due to the reduced water flow of modern fixtures. If this code is not the approved code for the local area, converting water fixture units to gpm

Fixture	Occupancy	Type of Supply Control	Water Fixture Units
Bathroom group	Private	Flush tank	3.6
Bathroom group	Private	Flush valve	8.0
Bathtub	Private	Faucet	1.4
Bathtub	Public	Faucet	4.0
Bidet	Private	Faucet	2.0
Combination fixture	Private	Faucet	3.0
Dishwashing machine	Private	Automatic	1.4
Drinking fountain	Offices, etc.	3/8-in. valve	0.25
Kitchen sink	Private	Faucet	1.4
Kitchen sink	Hotel, restaurant	Faucet	4.0
Laundry trays (1–3)	Private	Faucet	1.4
Lavatory	Private	Faucet	1.0
Lavatory	Public	Faucet	2.0
Service sink	Offices, etc.	Faucet	3.0
Shower head	Public	Mixing valve	4.0
Shower head	Private	Mixing valve	1.4
Urinal	Public	1-in. flush valve	10.0
Urinal	Public	³ ⁄4-in. flush valve	5.0
Urinal	Public	Flush tank	3.0
Washing machine (8 lb)	Private	Automatic	1.4
Washing machine (8 lb)	Public	Automatic	3.0
Washing machine (15 lb)	Public	Automatic	4.0
Water closet	Private	Flush valve	6.0
Water closet	Private	Flush tank	2.2
Water closet	Public	Flush valve	10.0
Water closet	Public	Flush valve	5.0
Water closet	Public or private	Flushometer tank	2.0

 Table 11-1
 Water Fixture Unit Values Assigned to Fixtures

Notes:

For fixtures not listed, loads should be assumed by comparing to listed fixtures that use water in similar quantities and at similar rates.

^{2.} For SI conversion, 1 in. = 25.4 mm.

Figure 11-1	Water Service Calculations	S
-------------	----------------------------	---

CALCULATION	IS WATER SERVICE										
SYSTEM: DOMESTIC WATER				SHEET	OF						
PROJECT:		PREPARED BY:	CHECKED	8¥:	DATE:						
DOMESTIC WATER											
STATIC:PSI											
RESIDUAL: PSI BASED ON GPM FOR BLDG AT ELEV											
RESIDUAL STREET PRESSURE PSI											
			L								
ST. PR. GPM			PSI × 2.31								
PUMP GPM											
HVAC GPM											
MISC. CONTINUOUS GPM											
TOTAL GPM											
SIZE OF SERVICE TO BLDG	" VEL.*	-									
FRICT. LOSS / 100'		FT. TOTAL FRICT	ION LOSS		FTHD						
	DROP IN ST. PR	_ PSI (CHECK WITH	LOCAL AU	THORITY	1						
	·										
CORPORATION COCK OR TIE IN WATER MAIN SERVICE LOSSES	SERVICES LO			OG DISTR	IBUTION						
QUANTITY SIZE"		ITEM									
	TIE IN	e	PSI =		FT.						
	VAL	VES @			FT.						
	MI	SC FTGS @			FT.						
	-	TOTAL FRICTIO	N LOSS = _		FT.						
RESIDUAL			VATION = _		FT.						
	STRAINER	LOSS @ PS	x 2.31 = _		FT.						
	METER	LOSS @ PS	1 x 2.31 = _		FT.						
SERVICE	BFP	LOSS @ PS	I x 2.31 = _		FT.						
	SOFTENER	LOSS @ PS	l x 2.31 = _		FT.						
	TOTAL FRI	CTION LOSS FOR SE	RVICE		FT,						
PRESSURE	ACTUAL PF	AVAILABLE PRES RESSURE - SERVICE			FT.						

is recommended. Refer to Table 11-2 for more modern conversions, based on recent studies.

Once this is accomplished, a formal letter to the utility should be written to obtain the following information. The importance of this cannot be overemphasized. The following should be requested:

- A site plan from the utility company showing all water mains adjacent to the site
- Other information appearing in a typical water utility letter (provided in Appendix 11-B)

Once the utility company has answered the utility letter and provided most of the information requested and a site plan showing the location and size of the main and the location of the building on the site has been provided, the information obtained can be used to determine the following major design items.

• Based on a preliminary assessment of available

pressure inside the building wall, a decision regarding the method to use to increase water pressure in the facility, if required, can be made. The general space requirements for the necessary pumps and tanks inside the building or water tanks outside on the site shall be determined.

- Using a complete fixture count, the final maximum water supply flow rate can be calculated.
- The run into the building should be determined, and the meter assembly should be selected and located.

A typical domestic water service and all required installed devices can now be discussed in detail. Included are a description of the various required information, installed components, and necessary design criteria.

Typical Domestic Water Building Service Components and Design Considerations

Preliminary Flow Rate Determination

The best way to find the flow, in gpm, for a new building is to use a fixture count, convert it to gpm, and add 10 percent. Use the expected time of occupancy for the flow rate. For a preliminary flow rate for office buildings, it is best to use the number of occupants for this purpose. Use 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) per occupant for a competitive building, 150 square feet (13.9 m^2) per occupant for a normal building, and 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) per occupant for a single-company building. Using 10 gallons (37.9 L)per employee for a 10-hour day, calculate the gpm (L/ min). Another figure commonly used for other kinds of buildings is 0.125 gallons per square foot (0.5 L)per square meter) of building area for a 10-hour day. To this figure add 10 percent additional for HVAC evaporation and demand, boiler feed water, and any other miscellaneous uses.

Static and Residual Water Pressure

A hydrant flow test is the method most often used to determine static and residual water pressure. This

Table 11-2 Maximum Probable Flow, gpm (L/s)

Water	Tank-type	Flushometer-	Water	Tank-type	Flushometer-
supply	water	type water	supply	water	type water
fixture units	closets	closets	fixture units	closets	closets
1	1	-	120	25.9 (2.0)	76 (5.7)
2	3	-	125	26.5 (2.0)	76 (5.7)
3	5	-	130	27.1 (2.1)	77 (5.8)
4	6	-	135	27.7 (2.1)	78 (5.8)
5	7 (0.53)	27.2 (2.2)	140	28.3 (2.1)	78.5 (5.8)
6	8 (0.60)	29.1 (2.2)	145	29.0 (2.2)	79 (5.9)
7	9 (0.68)	30.8 (2.4)	150	29.6 (2.2)	80 (6.0)
8	10 (0.70)	32.3 (2.5)	160	30.8 (2.3)	81 (6.1)
9	11 (0.83)	33.7 (2.5)	170	32.0 (2.4)	83 (6.2)
10	12.2 (0.92)	35 (2.6)	180	33.3 (2.5)	84 (6.3)
12	12.4 (0.94)	37.3 (2.6)	190	34.5 (2.5)	85 (6.4)
14	12.7 (0.96)	39.3 (2.8)	200	35.7 (2.6)	86 (6.5)
16	12.9 (0.98)	41.2 (3.1)	220	38.1 (2.8)	88 (6.7)
18	13.2(1)	42.8 (3.2)	240	40.5 (3.0)	90 (6.8)
20	13.4 (1.01)	44.3 (3.3)	260	43.0 (3.2)	92 (7.0)
22	13.7 (1.02)	45.8 (3.5)	280	45.4 (3.4)	94 (7.2)
24	13.9 (1.03)	47.1 (3.6)	300	47.7 (3.6)	96 (7.2)
26	14.2 (1.07)	48.3 (3.7)	400	59.6 (4.5)	102 (7.4)
28	14.4 (1.09)	49.4 (3.8)	500	71.2 (5.3)	108 (8.2)
30	14.7 (1.1)	50.5 (3.9)	600	82.6 (6.3)	113 (8.6)
35	15.3 (1.1)	53.0 (4.0)	700	93.7 (7.1)	117 (8.9)
40	15.9 (1.2)	55.2 (4.1)	800	105 (8.0)	120 (9.1)
45	16.6 (1.3)	57.2 (4.2)	900	115 (8.7)	123 (9.3)
50	17.2 (1.3)	59.1 (4.3)	1,000	126 (9.5)	126 (9.5)
55	17.8 (1.4)	60.8 (4.5)	1,500	175 (13.3)	175 (13.3)
60	18.4 (1.4)	62.3 (4.6)	2,000	220 (16.7)	220 (16.7)
65	190. (1.5)	63.8 (4.7)	2,500	259 (19.7)	259 (19.7)
70	19.7 (1.5)	65.2 (4.9)	3,000	294 (22.3)	294 (22.3)
75	20.3 (1.5)	66.4 (5.0)	3,500	325 (24.7)	325 (24.7)
80	20.9 (1.6)	67.7 (5.1)	4,000	352 (26.7)	352 (26.7)
85	21.5 (1.6)	68.8 (5.2)	4,500	375 (28.5)	375 (28.5)
90	22.2 (1.7)	69.9 (5.3)	5,000	395 (30)	395 (30)
95	22.8(1.7)	71.0 (5.3)	6,000	425 (32.3)	425 (32.3)
100	23.4 (1.8)	72.0 (5.4)	7,000	445 (34)	445 (34)
105	24.0 (1.8)	73.0 (5.5)	8,000	456 (34.6)	456 (34.6)
110	24.6 (1.9)	73.9 (5.6)	9,000	461 (35)	461 (35)
115	25.3 (1.9)	74.8 (5.7)	10,000	462 (35)	462 (35)



Figure 11-2 Conversion of Fixture Units to gpm

test consists of choosing the two adjacent fire hydrants closest to the site and taking three separate pressure readings, two with water flowing through a hydrant. For a typical test arrangement and nomenclature, refer to Figure 11-3.

The first pressure reading is obtained from a pressure gauge connected to one hydrant (hydrant A) with no water flowing out of either hydrant. This is called the static pressure because there is no flow through the test hydrant. The second reading involves both hydrants. The hydrant with the pressure gauge attached (hydrant A) remains unchanged. The second hydrant (hydrant B) is now opened, and a velocity pressure reading is taken using a pitot tube held directly in the water stream. A pitot tube is illustrated in Figure 11-4, and the method of taking the reading is illustrated in Figure 11-5. At the same time, another reading is taken from the first hydrant (hydrant A) while the second hydrant (hydrant B) is flowing water. The actual flow rate must be known for this test to be meaningful. This is calculated by converting the velocity pressure reading from the pitot gauge into gpm by referring to a typical relative discharge curve, such as

that illustrated in Figure 11-6. For fire hydrants, use the curve labeled A for an open hydrant butt.

The time of year and time of day the test is taken are conditions that affect the flow test data. During seasonal variations, such as occurs in the summer, the flow is generally regarded as being greater than it is at other times of the year in generally residential areas. The time of day also often accounts for large differences in flow, leading to lower residual pressures. Consult with the water utility company to decide if these items are important in determining the actual pressure available to the project.

The static and residual pressure and the flow rate represent only two pieces of information. With these two points known, it is now possible to determine the pressure available at any flow rate. This is important since the flow rate for the project under design will almost certainly be less than the flow rate at which the hydrant flow test was conducted. The method used is to plot these two points on hydraulic graph paper. The vertical axis is the pressure, in psi, and the horizontal axis is the flow rate. By connecting the known two flow rates on different points on the graph and using

care to use the proper gpm scale, any other point on the

line will give the residual pres-

sure if the flow rate desired is

plotted on the line drawn. A

graph illustrating this is given

A tap is the connection to any water main. The connec-

tion for a private residence

or other building that does

in Figure 11-7. *Pressure Loss and Installation of Taps*

TEST HYDRANT Gage attached to hydrant to show static and residual pressures FLOW HYDRANT Gage attached to hydrant or pitot tube to register flowing pressure



Figure 11-3 Hydrant Flow Test Arrangement

Source: Reprinted with permission from NFPA 13. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the NFPA on the subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.



Figure 11-4 Pitot Tube with Gage and Air Chamber



Figure 11-5 Obtaining Nozzle Pressure with a Pitot Tube



Figure 11-6 Relative Discharge Curves

Source: Chemical Engineers' Handbook. McGraw-Hill.



Figure 11-7 Water Supply Graph



14" thru 24" 6'- 0" 7'- 0" Figure 11-9 Large Wet Tap Excavation Dimensions not require a major service is illustrated in Figure 11-8. This type of service should be limited to approximately 2 inches (50.8 mm) and smaller. Typical large main wet tap (a connection under pressure) excavation dimensions are given in Figure 11-9. Other methods of wet-tapping into a main are available, and the dimensions are approximately the same.

The exact pressure lost through taps or street ells shall be obtained from the specific manufacturer or the public water supply authority.

Pressure Loss Through Valves and Fittings

The pressure loss through valves and fittings is available from standard engineering texts. Because the size of the service could be large, it is recommended to

individually count and calculate all valves and fittings, rather than add a set amount common for the distribution network inside a building. The final calculation will result in an equivalent run of pipe. An equivalent straight length of pipe for fittings is given in Figure 11-10.

Total Pressure Loss in the Piping Run

The measured distance is from the main to the point of connection with the water distribution network inside the building. To the measured distance, add the equivalent run of pipe from pressure lost through all valves, fittings, and devices installed in the building service. Using the maximum probable gpm flow and equivalent number of feet run of pipe, the velocity and friction loss for the entire service can be obtained from standard engineering texts such as Cameron Hydraulic Data and the Plumbing Engineering and Design Handbook of Tables.

Backflow Preventers

The water utility company is responsible for protecting the public water supply from any possibility of contamination by backflow resulting from pollutants and contaminants. The most common reason for the utility company to require a backflow preventer (BFP) is the potential backflow from a facility that uses or produces any pollutant or contaminant. These facilities are separated into three general categories: low, moderate, and severe hazard. The facility category designated by the local authorities will mandate the type of BFP that shall be used. Another consideration is the presence of a close supply of impure water (such as a stream or lake) that could be used by a fire department to supply water that will be pumped into a building to fight a fire. This creates a potential source of contaminated water that could find its way back into a public main due to the pressure of the fire apparatus pumper.

The facility rating or classification should be made only after consulting with the proper authorities. The categories mentioned cannot list every circumstance



Figure 11-10 Equivalent Lengths of Pipe for Valves and Fittings Note: For sudden enlargements or sudden contractions, use the smaller diameter on the nominal pipe size scale. *1 ft = 0.3 m.

and facility type. Judgment must be used in the final selection. Following are often used categories based on the use, toxicity, nature, and availability of contaminants.

- Low (minor) hazard: Private homes and commercial establishments without complex plumbing or fire protection systems
- Moderate (medium) hazard: Commercial buildings and establishments, fire protection storage tanks and mains with no additives, and facilities that discharge water at higher-than-normal temperature. The fire protection system will have only stagnant water present in the pipe.
- Severe (high) hazard: Any facility that uses chemicals considered toxic or has the potential to discharge toxic waste. Typical facilities are hospitals, laboratories, water and sewage treatment plants, and facilities involving chemical, pharmaceutical, food, and industrial manufacturing and processing.

For hazardous locations, a reduced pressure zone (RPZ) BFP will be required near the property line

at the connection to the public main or immediately inside a building. Figure 11-11 illustrates an RPZ BFP installed in an exterior aboveground enclosure. Figure 11-12 illustrates an RPZ BFP installed in an exterior belowground enclosure. For lesser hazards, a double check valve (DCV) is often acceptable. A double check valve in a belowground pit is illustrated in Figure 11-13. It is important to allow for adequate drainage from the RPZ discharge. The flow rate of discharge from an RPZ BFP is given in Figure 11-14 at various pressures. There is no discharge from a DCV.

The size of drain or pump required is of critical importance to remove any possible discharge from an RPZ BFP as quickly as possible, especially if it is located indoors or underground. Table 11-3 gives the size of drains based on the discharge and slope of discharge pipe.

A typical pressure loss through an RPZ BFP is 10 psi (68.9 kPa), and a typical pressure loss through a DCV is 5 psi (34.5 kPa). Since many types of backflow preventers are available, check with the manufacturer regarding the exact amount of dis-

Cover



Figure 11-11 Aboveground Reduced Pressure Zone Backflow Preventer

charge and pressure loss. They vary with size. Tests at the independent Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research at the University of Southern California have established that various manufacturers do not represent the pressure losses of their backflow preventers correctly. It would be appropriate to request the flow curves produced at the Foundation for the most accurate method of comparing various devices.

Drain Size		Maximum Flow Rate, gpm, L/m				
In.	Dn	¹ /8"/ft	0.5 cm/m	¹ /4"/ft	1.0 cm/m	
2	50	13	100	18	135	
3	75	36	275	51	390	
4	100	77	585	110	835	
6	150	220	1,670	314	2,385	
8	200	494	3,755	696	5,290	
10	250	934	7,100	1,300	9,900	

Table 11-3 BFP Flow Rate, Drain Size Flowing Full



Figure 11-12 Typical Backflow Preventer in Pit

Strainer Losses

Strainers are commonly used for water with known particulate problems. Losses through different strainer types should be obtained from the manufacturer for the greatest accuracy.

Meter Losses

Water meters are usually selected by the water utility company, which very often also provides the installation. Pressure losses through typical meters conforming to American Water Works Association (AWWA) standards are given in ASPE *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 5: "Cold Water Systems." Consult the manufacturer for the exact loss.

Difference in Elevation

The difference in elevation from the centerline of the public water main to the centerline of the service inside the building where it connects to the distribution network is an important item to consider. This distance shall be added or subtracted from the actual pressure (depending on whether it is higher or lower

than the point of connection) along with all of the above items.

A calculation sheet showing all of the data used to calculate the final water service pressure should be prepared to provide a permanent record (refer back to Figure 11-1).



Figure 11-13 Double Check Valve Installed in a Pit





Recommended depth of cover (feet) above underground mains. (1 ft. = 0.3 m) Figure 11-16 Frost Depth Map of the Continental United States

FIRE PROTECTION WATER SUPPLY

The fire protection building service provides the water necessary for fire suppression purposes inside a building, such as sprinkler and fire standpipe systems. This service could be combined with the domestic water supply.

The fire protection building service continues from a connection to a source of water to a point inside a building where a connection to the fire suppression piping network is located. The source is usually a public water main, but other sources also could be used. The building service includes water storage tanks, backflow preventers, meters, valves, hydrants, and other devices that may be required based on the nature of the water service, insurance carrier requirements, and local regulations. This section is not intended to cover a complete private fire service main, which is outside the scope of this chapter.

Codes and Standards

The standard most often used for the design of private fire protection water mains is National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 24: *Standard for the* Installation of Private Service Mains and their Appurtenances. If FM Global is the fire insurance carrier, the system must conform with FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 3-10: Installation/Maintenance of Fire Service Mains.

Building Water Supply

If the water supply to a building is a combined service that is, both domestic and fire service are fed through a single pipe-the main shall be considered a fire service until the domestic water connection is made in the combined service. Typical connections to a public water main are illustrated in Figure 11-15. If the source is a well, an aquifer performance analysis and investigation of the history of adjacent wells should be made. For many facilities where loss of water would be an extreme hardship, such as hospitals, multiple water supplies from two separate public mains is a very desirable feature. This allows water to be supplied to the facility from either of two directions. If multiple connections are made to a single main, a sectionalizing valve installed in the source main somewhere between the two connections shall be required.



- 1. Hot water circulating pipe
- 2. Frostproof casing
- 3. Pipe clamps. Locate at about 25 ft (7.6 m) intervals. Loose fit around hot water circulating pipe.
- 4. Indicator-post valve. May be replaced with indicating-type valve in pit on yard side of check valve if space is not available for indicator post.
- 5. Hatch cover
- 6. Valve pit
- 7. Drain pipe
- 8. OS&Y gate valve
- 9. Ladder
- 10. Tank heater with relief valve set at 120 psi (825 kPa)
- 11. Four-elbow swing joint
- 12. Thermometer
- 13. Steam supply pipe
- 14. Drain cock, 1/2 in. (13 mm) 15. Approved check valve with bypass
- 16. Cold water circulating pipe
- 17. Pipe to mercury gauge
- 18. Steam trap
- 19. Condensate return
- 20. Valve-pit drain

Valve pit and pipe connections at base of tank on independent tower. Tank has a pipe riser and steam-heated gravity circulating heating system.



- 1. Inside brass overflow pipe, if used
- 2. Hot water circulating pipe
- 3. Handhole for removing sludge
- 4. Frostproof casing when required
 - 5. Expansion joint
- 6. Approved OS&Y gate valve
- 7. Door in frostproof casing
- 8. Walkway
- 9. Brace for hot water circulating pipe
- 10. Pipe riser

Details of pipe connections to bottom of steel gravity tank with pipe riser.



- 1. Pump room
- 2. Approved aboveground suction tank
- 3. Entrance elbow with vortex plate or flange
- 4 in. (102 mm) above bottom of tank
- 4. Suction pipe
- 5. Frostproof casing, about 4 ft (1.2 m) high and 4 ft (1.2 m) wide
- 6. Flexible couplings
- 7. Steam trap on steam supply
- 8. Heating coil inside tank
- 9. Condensate return line to steam trap

Discharge pipe connected to side of suction tank.

Figure 11-17 Typical Connections to Water Storage Tanks

Contamination of the public water supply is a prime concern of the water company that supplies water to the project. Determination of the acceptable device for preventing contamination by the fire protection water supply will be made by the health department, water purveyor, or plumbing code official. The two most often used are the double check valve assembly and the reduced pressure zone backflow preventer. These devices were discussed in the domestic water supply section.

The mains shall be buried below the frost line. A generalized map of the United States is given in Figure 11-16 to aid in determining that depth. Local authorities shall be contacted for conditions at the project site.

In many cases, it is not possible to supply the required flow rate or volume of water for firefighting purposes from the public supply. These situations call for the use of a water storage tank. Such tanks can be either elevated or installed on the ground. (The design of these tanks is outside the scope of this chapter.) Connections from the water supply to a storage tank shall terminate 1 foot (0.3 m) over the overflow level. The overflow shall be two pipe sizes larger than the water supply pipe size. Various connections to a storage tanks are shown in Figure 11-17.

Ancillary Devices

Fire Hydrants

Fire hydrants are directly connected to the site main or the building service. They shall be installed adjacent to roadways to allow easy connection of fire department apparatus. If reasonable, they shall be located on all sides of the building being protected. A desired separation from the building wall is 50 feet (15.2 m) to provide some protection from building wall collapses. The recommended separation between hydrants is 300 feet (91.4 m) at a building location. (Hydrant locations are mandated by the local applicable code.) Hydrants located near a road shall be protected by guard posts. It is good practice to provide a shutoff valve on the branch line to a hydrant to allow easy repair without having to shut down the main or the service. A detail of a typical hydrant is given in Figure 11-18.

Guard Posts

Guard posts may be necessary to protect any device that is installed above grade near roads. A typical guard post is illustrated in Figure 11-19.

Post Indicator Valve

A post indicator valve (PIV) is used only to shut off the supply of water, never to control the flow. It is used as



TYPICAL FIRE HYDRANT

Figure 11-18 Typical Fire Hydrant



TYPICAL HYDRANT BUMPER DETAIL Figure 11-19 Typical Guard Post a section valve on water mains and also on building services. Since it is critical for emergency personnel to be certain that any control valve is open or closed, an indicator is positioned above grade with a window or some other method of allowing easy observation of the valve position. A typical post indicator valve is illustrated in Figure 11-20.

Joint Restrainers

When run in a straight line, properly specified joints will provide a leakproof installation. Where changes in pipe direction occur, pressure is exerted by the flowing water on the fitting, and the joints may not provide sufficient resistance to the force exerted by the pressure of the water against the fitting. To prevent joint failure due to the pressure exerted, most pipe joints must be restrained in some manner.

Mechanical and push-on joints are sealed by a rubber-type gasket compressed in a space between the spigot end of the pipe and the bell. These joints will not resist the pressure of the water on the joint. The method of restraint used is external clamps and rods. Friction clamps are bolted around the pipe on both sides of the joint. These clamps engage steel tension rods, sometimes called tie rods, across the joint, preventing it from separating. This will combine the resistance of these joints to prevent separation. Calculations are necessary to determine the actual number of joints to be restrained.

Another method of restraint used is integrally cast glands for mechanical joint pipe with internally locked, grooved, and keyed push-on joints. This type of restraint is usually recommended only for the repair of existing systems.

The most common method of restraint is to use a block of concrete contacting the fitting and poured against undisturbed soil. The size of the block varies with the water pressure (the higher the pressure, the larger the block), the pipe size (the larger the pipe, the larger the block), and the bearing pressure of the soil (the less the soil bearing pressure, the larger the block). A detail of typical thrust block dimensions is given in Figure 11-21. Table 11-4 gives values for soil-bearing loads, and Table 11-5 gives the pressure, in pounds, at various joints. The main problems with this method are that on many project sites there is often no undisturbed soil against which to base the thrust block and that the size of the concrete block prevents piping from being placed adjacent to the run of pipe being protected.

Sizing the Fire Protection Water Service

When all of the information required for the design of the domestic water system has been obtained, the fire marshal, fire protection code official, and insurance company shall be contacted for their installation requirements.

Soil	Bearing Load (lb/ft²)
Muck	0
Soft clay	1000
Silt	1500
Sandy silt	3000
Sand	4000
Sandy clay	6000

Table 11-4 Soil Bearing Loads

What constitutes an adequate water supply has generated much discussion over time. Many factors, when all are considered, result in an adequate water supply. The water supply should be capable of supplying the largest demand, which is usually the sprinkler or standpipe system, and expected hose flow under reasonably adverse conditions. If other factors such as building occupancy, yard storage, external structures that must be protected, exposure protection, and catastrophic hose demand are considered, they will all add to the flow rate.

Demand Flow Rate

The demand flow rate used to size the building service for the facility under design usually is based on several factors. The first is the gpm based on the calculated flow rate for the sprinkler system, which is based on hydraulic

 Table 11-5
 Pressure Exerted at Joints by Flowing Water

Total pounds resultant thrust at fittings at 100 psi water pressure										
Nom. Pipe Diameter,										
in.	Dead End	90° Bend	45° Bend	22 ½° Bend	11¼° Bend					
4	1,810	2,559	1,385	706	355					
6	3,739	5,288	2,862	1,459	733					
8	6,433	9,097	4,923	2,510	1,261					
10	9,677	13,685	7,406	3,776	1,897					
12	13,685	19,353	10,474	5,340	2,683					
14	18,385	26,001	14,072	7,174	3,604					
16	23,779	33,628	18,199	9,278	4,661					
18	29,865	42,235	22,858	11,653	5,855					
20	36,644	51,822	28,046	14,298	7,183					
24	52,279	73,934	40,013	20,398	10,249					
30	80,425	113,738	61,554	31,380	15,766					
36	115,209	162,931	88,177	44,952	22,585					
42	155,528	219,950	119,036	60,684	30,489					
48	202,683	286,637	155,127	79,083	39,733					
54	256,072	362,140	195,989	99,914	50,199					

Note: To determine thrust at pressures other than 100 psi, multiply the thrust obtained in the table by the ratio of the pressure to 100. For example, the thrust on a 12-in, pipe with a 90° bend at 125 psi is $19,353 \times 125/100 = 24,191$ lb.



Figure 11-20 Typical Post Indicator Valve



SECTION X-X BENDS & TEES



		1/4 B	lends	1/8 B	1/8 Bends		1/16 Bends		es	Plugs	
Туре	Size (in.)	A (in.)	B (in.)	A (in.)	B (in.)	A (in.)	B (in.)	A (in.)	B (in.)	C (in.)	D (in.)
	6	8	10	6	8	3	8	8	8	10	15
L .	8	12	12	8	10	5	9	9	12	12	20
Ivpe I	10	16	14	10	12	6	10	11	14	14	25
4000 DSE Soil	12	19	16	12	14	8	11	14	16	16	30
F3F 301	14	23	18	14	16	10	12	16	18	18	34
	16	26	20	16	18	11	13	18	20	20	38
	6	16	10	9	10	6	8	10	12	10	21
	8	22	13	12	13	8	10	13	16	12	29
Iype II	10	26	17	14	17	10	13	16	20	14	36
PSE Soil	12	29	21	16	21	11	16	18	24	16	41
1 31 301	14	35	24	19	24	12	20	22	27	18	48
	16	38	27	21	27	12	24	24	30	20	54

Thrust Block Dimensions

Note: Based on 100 psi static pressure plus AWWA water hammer. All bearing surfaces to be carried to undisturbed ground.

Figure 11-21 Thrust Block Installation

Land Use	GPM range	Average GPM
Single-family residential	500 - 2,000	750
Multifamily residential	1,500 - 3,000	2000
Commercial	2,500 - 5,000	3000
Industrial	3,500 - 10,000	
Central building district	2,500 - 15,000	3000

 Table 11-6
 Typical Fire Protection Flow Rate

 Requirements

Table 11-7 Sewer Size Based on Velocity and Slo	pe
---	----

Slop	Slopes of cast-iron, soil-pipe sanitary sewers required to obtain self-cleansing velocities of 2.0 and 2.5 fps (based on Manning's Formula with $n = 0.012$)										
Pipe	Velocity	1/4	Full	1/2	Full	3/4	Full	Full			
Size (in.)	(fps)	SLOPE (ft/ft)	FLOW (gpm)	SLOPE (ft/ft)	FLOW (gpm)	SLOPE (ft/ft)	FLOW (gpm)	SLOPE (ft/ft)	FLOW (gpm)		
2.0	2.0	0.0313	4.67	0.0186	9.34	0.0148	14.09	0.0186	18.76		
	2.5	0.0489	5.84	0.0291	11.67	0.0231	17.62	0.0291	23.45		
3.0	2.0	0.0178	10.77	0.0107	21.46	0.0085	32.23	0.0107	42.91		
	2.5	0.0278	13.47	0.0167	26.82	0.0133	40.29	0.0167	53.64		
4.0	2.0	0.0122	19.03	0.0073	38.06	0.0058	57.01	0.0073	76.04		
	2.5	0.0191	23.79	0.0114	47.58	0.0091	71.26	0.0114	95.05		
5.0	2.0	0.0090	29.89	0.0054	59.79	0.0043	89.59	0.0054	119.49		
	2.5	0.0141	37.37	0.0085	74.74	0.0067	111.99	0.0085	149.36		
6.0	2.0	0.0071	43.18	0.0042	86.36	0.0034	129.54	0.0042	172.72		
	2.5	0.0111	53.98	0.0066	107.95	0.0053	161.93	0.0066	215.90		
8.0	2.0	0.0048	77.20	0.0029	154.32	0.0023	231.52	0.0029	308.64		
	2.5	0.0075	96.50	0.0045	192.90	0.0036	289.40	0.0045	385.79		
10.0	2.0	0.0036	120.92	0.0021	241.85	0.0017	362.77	0.0021	483.69		
	2.5	0.0056	151.15	0.0033	302.31	0.0026	453.46	0.0033	604.61		
12.0	2.0	0.0028	174.52	0.0017	349.03	0.0013	523.55	0.0017	698.07		
	2.5	0.0044	218.15	0.0026	436.29	0.0021	654.44	0.0026	872.58		
15.0	2.0	0.0021	275.42	0.0012	550.84	0.0010	826.26	0.0012	1101.68		
	2.5	0.0032	344.28	0.0019	688.55	0.0015	1032.83	0.0019	1377.10		

Table 11-7(M) Sewer Size Based on Velocity and Slope

Slopes of cast-iron, soil-pipe sanitary sewers required to obtain self-cleansing velocities of 0.6096 and 0.762 m/s (based on Manning's Formula with n = 0.012)											
Pipe	Velocity	1/4	Full	1/2	Full	3/4	Full	Fi	ıll		
Size (mm)	(m/s)	Slope (m/m)	Flow (L/s)	Slope (m/m)	Flow (L/s)	Slope (m/m)	Flow (L/s)	Slope (m/m)	Flow (L/s)		
50	0.6096	0.0313	0.295	0.0186	0.59	0.0148	0.89	0.0186	1.18		
	0.762	0.0489	0.369	0.0291	0.74	0.0231	1.11	0.0291	1.48		
75	0.6096	0.0178	0.68	0.0107	1.35	0.0085	2.03	0.0107	2.71		
	0.762	0.0278	0.85	0.0167	1.69	0.0133	2.54	0.0167	3.38		
100	0.6096	0.0122	1.2	0.0073	2.4	0.0058	3.6	0.0073	4.8		
	0.762	0.0191	1.5	0.0114	3.0	0.0091	4.5	0.0114	6.0		
125	0.6096	0.0090	1.89	0.0054	3.77	0.0043	5.65	0.0054	7.54		
	0.762	0.0141	2.36	0.0085	4.72	0.0067	7.07	0.0085	9.42		
150	0.6096	0.0071	2.72	0.0042	5.45	0.0034	8.17	0.0042	10.9		
	0.762	0.0111	3.41	0.0066	6.81	0.0053	10.22	0.0066	13.62		
200	0.6096	0.0048	4.87	0.0029	9.74	0.0023	14.61	0.0029	19.48		
	0.762	0.0075	6.09	0.0045	12.17	0.0036	18.26	0.0045	24.34		
250	0.6096	0.0036	7.63	0.0021	15.26	0.0017	22.89	0.0021	30.52		
	0.762	0.0056	9.54	0.0033	19.08	0.0026	28.61	0.0033	38.15		
300	0.6096	0.0026	11.01	0.0017	22.02	0.0013	33.04	0.0017	44.05		
	0.762	0.0044	13.77	0.0026	27.53	0.0021	41.3	0.0026	55.06		
380	0.6096	0.0021	17.38	0.0012	34.76	0.0010	52.14	0.0012	69.52		
	0.762	0.0032	21.72	0.0019	43.45	0.0015	65.17	0.0019	86.9		

calculations. The second is the flow of water for additional hose streams used by the fire department to fight a fire.

The following figures are presented for preliminary discussion purposes only. They are not to be used for actual design calculations, which should be made only on a specific project basis after consulting with the fire marshal, insurance carrier representative, and fire code official.

The fire department hose streams depend on the occupancy hazard, which can be as follows.

- \bullet Light and ordinary hazard: 500 gpm (1,900 L/ min)
- Extra hazard, Group 1: 750 gpm (2,900 L/min)
- Extra hazard, Group 2: 1,000 gpm (3,800 L/min)
- High-piled storage: As required by the insurance company

The hose demand shall be increased by 25 percent for the following conditions:

- Combustible construction
- Possible delay in response by the fire department
- Minimum protection less than recommended by insurance company requirements
- Limited access to remote interior sections

For the design of a large site consisting of multiple buildings, the typical fire protection flow rate requirements are given in Table 11-6.

Tank Capacity

If the gravity tank is the sole source of water, the tank should be capable of being filled in eight hours. In evaluation of the total capacity, consideration should be given to the following storage capacities, based on the categories appearing in NFPA 13: *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*.

- Light and ordinary hazard occupancies, Group 1: Two hours
- Ordinary hazard occupancies, Groups 2 and 3: Three hours
- Extra hazard occupancies: Four hours

SANITARY SEWER

The purpose of the sanitary house sewer is to convey all sanitary waste from a facility to an approved point of disposal, which is usually a public sewer.

The first step is to find the department or jurisdiction responsible for the approval, design, and installation of sanitary sewers. Also, find the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) responsible for the disposal of other kinds of waste, notably kitchen waste that contains fats, oil, and grease (FOG). Once this is established, a formal letter should be written to obtain the following information. A typical sewer letter is given in Appendix 11-B.

- What is the size, location, and invert of all available sewers fronting the property?
- Are the sewers sanitary, storm, or combined?

- What is the material of these sewers?
- If no sewers are available, who is the AHJ for a private disposal system (septic tank and field)? What codes and standards regulate the design and installation of the septic system?
- Are street sewer connections preferred at spurs between manholes, or shall a manhole be used for the connection? Are standard details available? Will these manholes be constructed by the plumbing contractor or the AHJ?

When the utility company has answered the letter and provided most of the information requested, the following work can be accomplished.

- The run from the building to the sewer can be selected. If the invert elevations are not suitable, determine if a force main will be necessary.
- The house sewer can be sized based on the fixture count and the slope of the sewer.

Sizing the Sanitary Sewer

The size of the sewer from the building to the property line is based on the applicable plumbing code requirements. If the house sewer extends beyond the property line to connect to a pubic sewer, the plumbing code may not apply. However, other codes may be applicable in the area. A self-scouring velocity must be maintained to avoid the settling out of solids and stopping the pipe. Table 11-7 is provided to allow sizing at a minimum slope to maintain a velocity of 2 to 2.5 feet per second (fps) (0.61 to 0.76 m/s). Figure 11-22 can be used to convert the sanitary drainage fixture units to gpm. Since sanitary effluent has a viscosity similar to water, Figure 11-23 can then be used to size the sewer based on flow and pitch. Good engineering practice is to use a pipe size based on flowing half full.

Sewer Components and Design Criteria

Public Sewer Availability

The question of availability is a concern. It is up to the AHJ to determine whether the project shall connect to any particular sewer. This is a potential problem in rural areas, where considerable distances are necessary to connect to a sewer. A run by gravity is the preferred method, but this is costly for a long run and a large size. A force main, which is discussed later, may be desirable.

Trenching and Bedding

Bedding is the point of contact between the pipe and the earth. The type of bedding has an important influence on the load the pipe can support.

The bedding for metallic pipe is different than that for plastic pipe because trench walls are needed to help support plastic pipe. A typical trench for plastic pipe is shown in Figure 11-24, and one for metallic pipe is shown in Figure 11-25. The methods shown are for class B bedding, as is suitable for the majority of piping buried underground. If the weight placed on the buried pipe is a concern, other bedding methods that increase the resistance of the pipe can be used (see Figure 11-26).

Grease Interceptors

When a project has a kitchen or cafeteria, fats, oil, and grease are bound to be discharged. If they are not removed from the waste stream, they must be intercepted before entering the public sewer by means of a FOG interceptor.

Typical Sewer House Connection

A typical small house or building will connect to the sewer in a manner similar to that illustrated in Figure 11-27 where a spur is provided. A spur is a pre-installed fitting located at fixed distances along the length of a sewer line.

Drainage Structures

A drainage structure is any appurtenance built into a sewer run, including manholes, storm water inlets, and catch basins.

Manholes can be made of poured concrete, bricks, blocks, or precast sections. Precast manholes (see Figure 11-28) are the most widely used type. Manholes are installed for the following reasons:

- At changes of direction in the sewer
- For inspection and cleaning purposes
- At substantial changes of grade
- At changes of pipe size
- To make a connection to a public sewer for large sewers



Figure 11-22 Fixture Unit Conversion to gpm







CLASS A

The primary purpose of a manhole is to provide a smooth invert to allow pipes that join the main sewer to have an unimpeded entry to that sewer and to provide a smooth invert when pipes change size and pitch. To accomplish this, the bottom of the manhole is channeled smooth from the invert of all the pipes entering the manhole. It is accepted practice for the tops of the joining sewer pipes to be even. Manhole construction requirements should be verified with the authority having jurisdiction.

If the building has an acid drainage component, a separate line shall be provided from the building to the point of disposal. A detail of an acid manhole is given in Figure 11-29.

If the depth from finished grade to the invert of the sewer is 3 feet (0.9 m) or less, a shallow manhole should be used. A shallow manhole is illustrated in Figure 11-30.

When a difference in the inverts of the pipes is more than approximately 2 inches to 2 feet (50.8 mm to 0.61 m), the falling water will cause the lower pipe to erode. When this is the case, a chute shall be created at the manhole bottom. If the difference in the inverts of the pipes is greater than 2 feet, a drop manhole should be installed, as shown in Figure 11-31.

Other manhole accessories are manhole steps and standard manhole and watertight frames and covers. In some cases where the watertight manhole cover is required, an outlet for the air that accumulates in the manhole may not exist. Where this is a concern, a vent should be installed, as illustrated in Figure 11-32.

For short runs of sewers into the main, cleanouts shall be provided on the site every 75 feet (22.9 m) or as dictated by code to allow the line to be rodded out in the event of a stoppage.

General manhole spacing and locations are given in Table 11-8.

Sewage Lift Stations

When the discharge of the sanitary sewer from a facility is lower than the public sewer intended for disposal required to reach that higher elevation. A sewage lift station or sewage pumping station is the system used to accomplish this. The following discusses only the methods used to pump sewage discharged from an industrial/commercial type of facility

The difference in terminology between a sewage ejector and a lift station is one of scope. In general, the ejector system is used to pump discharge from a portion of the building up to the main house sewer for disposal, while the lift station is used to pump discharge from an entire building or site for disposal. The components of a sewage ejector system and sewage lift station are very similar to the ejector system discussed in Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook Volume 2, Chapter 1: Sanitary Drainage Systems.

pipe diar ar above too d (min 3 in al in the cra 30 in. to 60 in. 4 in of con 66 in, & large 6 in Flat Suborad **Figure 11-26 Rigid Pipe Bedding Methods** due to topography or low elevation, pumping will be




ELEVATION

Figure 11-27 Typical House Sewer Connection

The components of a sewage lift station are the sewage pumps, basin, discharge pipe (routed to the public sewer or point of disposal), controls, and alarms. The sewage pump discharge line often is called a force main. The design of the complete sewage lift station as a whole is an iterative one, where the selection of each component somewhat depends on other components for size and capacity.

Sewage Pumps

The types of pumps used in sewage lift stations are similar to the ejector systems discussed in Volume 2.

The pump most often selected is the submersible type because of its low initial cost, wide range of capacities, and tolerance of many starts. Another advantage is that a smaller basin can be used because additional height below grade is not required to house the motor of a conventional vertical, submerged ejector pump. A typical submersible pump assembly is shown in Figure 11-33.

For a facility sewage pump, it is accepted practice for the pump capacity to equal the highest instantaneous flow rate expected from the facility. The reasoning is that in the event the basin is incapable of being used, a single pump must be capable of discharging all possible effluent from all sources. It is also critical that at least a duplex set of pumps be included, each one with the same capacity, to ensure that the facility will be kept in operation if one pump is out of service. If a wide range of instantaneous flow rates is possible, a three-pump system, with each pump sized at 75 percent of the maximum calculated flow, should be considered. One pump typically would always be on standby.

The maximum discharge is calculated for two conditions. The first is for the maximum possible inflow. This is done by adding the plumbing fixture load, in gpm, obtained from Hunter's curve and other possible sources of discharge to arrive at a maximum probable instantaneous flow rate. If the facility is discharging mostly effluent from plumbing fixtures, add 10 percent to that figure as a safety factor. The second condition is based on a reasonable number of starts per hour.

Required Head

The required system head is calculated by adding the static height (in feet) from the bottom of the basin to the point of discharge (or the highest point of the force main run) to the friction loss of the liquid running through the pipe based on the equivalent length of run. The friction loss is obtained from standard engineering charts for the material selected using water as the liquid. For more viscous liquids, appropriate charts shall be used.



Figure 11-28 Typical Precast Manhole



Figure 11-29 Typical Acid Manhole







NOTE: Drop pipe to be used in all cases where difference between inlet invert and lowest outlet invert is 2 feet or greater.

Figure 11-31 Drop Manhole



Fig 11-33 Submersible Pump Assembly

Table 11-8	Manhole Spacing	and Location	of Pipe Sewers
-------------------	-----------------	--------------	----------------

A. Maximum Spacing of Manhole on Pipe Sewers				
Pipe Sizes, in. (mm)	Recommended Max. Spacing, ft (m)	Absolute Max. Spacing, ft (m)		
10 Dia. to 24 Dia. (254 to 610) Circular	450 (45 7)	000 (01)		
$14 \text{ H} \times 23 \text{ W}$ (356 × 584) Horiz. Elliptical Pipe 23 H × 14 W (584 × 356) Vert. Elliptical Pipe	150 (45.7)	200 (61)		
27 Dia. to 48 Dia. (686 to 1219) Circular				
19 H \times 30 W to 48 H \times 76 W (483 \times 762 to 1219 \times 1930) Horiz. Elliptical Pipe 30 H \times 19 W to 49 H \times 32 W (962 \times 483 to 1245 \times 813) Vert. Elliptical Pipe	300 (91.4)	400 (121.9)		
54 Dia. to 66 Dia. (1372 to 1676) Circular				
53 H×83 W to 68 H×106 W (1346×2108 to 1727×2692) Horiz. Elliptical Pipe 53 H×34 W to 68 H×43 W (1346×864 to 1727×1092) Vert Elliptical Pipe	400 (121.9)	500 (152.4)		
72 Dia. (1829) and larger Circular				
72 H×113 W (1829×2870) and larger Horiz. Elliptical Pipe	500 (152.4)	600 (182.8)		
A State of the second sec	l			
1. Change in grade or elevation				
(a) At all changes in grade or elevation for all sizes of sewers.				
2. Change in alignment				
(a) At all changes in alignment for circular sewers up to and including 42 in. (1067 mm) diameter.				
(b) At all changes in alignment for elliptical pipe sewers up to and including 43 in. $H \times 68$ in. W (1092				
mm×1727 mm) and 42 in. H×27 in. W (1067 mm×686 mm) sizes.				



Figure 11-34 Detail of Force Main Connection to Public Sewer



Figure 11-35 Force Main Cleanout in Manhole



Storage Basin

Basins, often referred to as sumps or wet wells, are typically manufactured from cast iron, fiberglass, poured in place concrete, and steel. Large basin capacities require the design of the basin to include principles important to proper pump functioning. These principals are as follows.

- The flow of effluent from the liquid entrance should be directed to the pump inlet in a manner that will reduce swirl and hydraulic loss.
- The water depth shall be the minimum established by the manufacturer to avoid surface vortices.
- Excessive turbulence should be avoided. A small amount of turbulence shall be limited to that required to prevent stagnation of stored water.
- To prevent sedimentation and the accumulation of solids, the floor of the basin should be sloped to the pumps. The floor joints shall be welded with fillets at walls.
- Where the inflow into the sump is at a high elevation, the falling water entrains air as it spills onto the surface of the water in the sump. This entrained air should be allowed to rise to the surface before reaching the pump by providing a baffle wall in the sump and/or a dissipation arrangement at the inflow. If the basin is large, a significant distance from the point of liquid entry to the pumps should be provided to allow air to dissipate.

- Pumps should be installed as close to the outside walls as practical to avoid stagnant areas that allow solids to accumulate.
- A small sump pump in a pit should be installed in the basin to permit total drainage of the basin for maintenance.

A majority of systems consist of relatively small units. For this type of installation, a standard basin should be obtained from the pump manufacturer. In this way, the basin size corresponds to the number and size of the pumps selected; the inlet and discharge piping will be pre-installed in the basin; and the depth is predetermined to contain the desired quantity of liquid. The basin could then be installed as a single, integrated unit.

Basins receiving sanitary effluent shall be provided with a gasketed cover that has a atmospheric vent pipe to the outside. The location shall be such that an odor emanating from the basin would be easily dissipated before causing any discomfort to people. The cover shall be easy to remove so the pumps can be raised to the surface for servicing. Guide rails are attached to the inside of the basin for his purpose. A hose bibb or lawn hydrant should be provided to wash off the pump.

Basin Capacity The capacity of the basin is based on the primary pump discharge flow rate and the desired number of starts per hour. Recommended practice is an average of six to seven starts per hour with a maximum of 12 starts. Another consideration is to have a minimum capacity to allow a minimum running time of one minute. With these parameters and after consulting with the pump manufacturer, the storage capacity can be selected. Since the exact inflow into the basin in any time period will never be known, a minimum running time shall be selected based on the number of gallons stored, and if any additional flow occurs, the running time of the pump is extended, which is an added benefit.

The actual size may be limited by space conditions at the location where the basin is located. Additional depth may be used to obtain the desired volume if the length or width (or diameter) cannot be adjusted. To size the basin, use Table 11-9, which shows the capacities of various size basins.

System Design Considerations The basin should not be located at a point of the site that is subject to flooding unless it is the only possible location. Borings of the area should be made to determine if the area has a high groundwater condition or other underground obstacles that would interfere with the installation of the basin. The top shall be installed aboveground to prevent the entrance of storm water.

Flotation Any structure extending into the groundwater table or into any soil that may become saturated must be protected against flotation by checking that the buoyant force will not cause the basin to float. This is done by comparing the downward force and the upward force. If the upward force is greater, the basin will float.

The downward force is the sum of the basin and equipment weight plus the dry weight of any soil over the basin. Dry weight is calculated by subtracting the weight of any water from the weight of the soil. If it is determined that the basin will float, a concrete base slab of sufficient weight is added to the bottom of the basin. It is common practice to multiply the slab weight by a factor of 4 to calculate the weight of the bottom slab. The buoyant force of empty tanks is given in Table 11-10.

Controls

The basic operating controls of a lift station are similar to that of a typical ejector system. Experience has shown that a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) between levels should be used.

Discharge Piping (Force Main)

The discharge pipe, or force main, is the pipe from the pump discharge to the point of disposal. The force main includes valves, cleanouts, vacuum release, and thrust restraints.

Pipe Material The selection of the pipe material is based on the effluent's flow rate, friction loss, and velocity and the material's chemical resistance to the effluent, pressure rating, and strength. For sanitary effluent, pressure-rated PVC or PE is often selected. Soil contamination may not permit plastic to be used. When the force main is routed in public streets, the AHJ may have specific requirements. Where the strength of the material is a factor, ductile iron may be preferable. With ductile iron, it is common practice to protect the exterior with a PE wrap. Several installation methods are outlined in ANSI/AWWA C105/A21.5: Standard for Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems.

Flow Rate The flow rate used to size the force main is based on two conditions. In the first (normal), one pump of the multiple installation is running. In the second (emergency), all of the pumps are running in parallel at the same time.

Velocity The velocity in the pipe shall be between the minimum 2 fps (0.61 m/s) and the generally accepted maximum of 10 fps (3.05 m/s). It is necessary to know the difference in flow rate between one and two pumps running to determine the velocity for both conditions (normal and emergency), with the higher velocity and friction loss of the increased flow both taken into consideration. One recommendation is to use a slow-acting check valve to limit the generation of excessive pressure every time the pump is stopped.

Pipe Sizing The discharge pipe is sized to convey the effluent economically from the pump to its ultimate point of discharge, based on friction loss due to flow and velocity. Selecting the size is an iterative process. A comparison of the pump system head curve should be done between different pipe sizes. The total friction loss between sizes is used to compare the higher head required. The total friction loss based on flow and size can be obtained from standard engineering texts.

Design Considerations The most commonly used method of connecting a force main to a gravity public sewer is illustrated in Figure 11-34. This method allows accumulated air to be discharged through the top of the connection. Cleanouts are generally required along the pipe run. A cleanout in a manhole is illustrated in Figure 11-35. Air and vacuum relief valves shall be installed at all high points. A typical detail of valves in a manhole is given in 11-36.

Vacuum and Pressure Venting

It is good practice to provide an air pressure vent at the high point of the piping run. If the high point of the system occurs prior to the point of discharge, it is desirable to place a combination pressure/vacuum device in the pipe to allow the accumulated air at the high point to be eliminated. Since the remainder of the run might be downhill, a vacuum may be produced by the flowing liquid that must be broken to allow for the free flow of liquid. The air relief device may discharge some water, so the device is usually put in a large valve box or a manhole with a gravel bottom to absorb the liquid. Ease of maintenance is the most important consideration.

Alternative Methods of Disposal

Problems are compounded when a public sewer is not available at the project site. Alternative methods of disposal include a private sewage disposal system, generally consisting of a septic tank and disposal field, and a sewage treatment plant discharging into seepage trenches. The designs of those systems are outside the scope of this chapter but are discussed in *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook* Volume 2.

SITE STORM WATER DRAINAGE SYSTEM

The site storm water drainage system removes rainwater from roofs and other areas exposed to the weather from a point 5 feet (1.52 m) outside the building wall to the point of ultimate disposal. Ponding may be allowable in areas such as a paved schoolyard or parking lot, where it would cause few problems because of the normal inactivity during a rainy period or over a weekend. The storm water drainage system is not permitted to receive any other waste, including clear waste, without the permission and approval of the code official.

If any pollutants, including oils, might be discharged into the environment, storm water management laws require a storm water management device to be provided to separate all pollutants of interest prior to discharge to the environment or to a public storm system. Based on the Clean Water Act and the requirements of the local jurisdiction, oil/water separators and pollutant removal devices are now mandatory in large projects. In addition, storm water mitigation during construction is more stringent than

 Table 11-9 Capacity of Sump and Ejector Basins, gallons per foot depth

Circular		Squa	re
Diameter, ft ^a	Gallons®	Side, ft [°]	Gallons®
2	23.50	2	30
21/2	36.72	21/2	45
3	52.88	3	67.50
31⁄2	71.91	31/2	90
4	94	4	120
41⁄2	110.32	41/2	149.60
5	146.89	5	187
6	158.64	6	270
7	170	7	365.50
8	181		
9	193		
10	204		

 $^{\circ}$ 1 ft = 0.3 m; 1 gal = 3.8 L

Rainfall Intensity – Duration – Frequency (Houston, Texas)



237

after site buildout. The AHJ must approve all drainage plans, including detention and outfall structures, and must issue permits.

Preliminary Investigation for the Entire Site

The following procedures must be performed prior to designing the proposed storm water system.

- 1. Determine the ultimate discharge location or method of disposal. This could be a public sewer, local waterway or body of water, or developed drainage pattern on the site—that is, an existing flow path the storm water follows on the undeveloped site. Every effort should be made to follow this pattern. Drywells can be used if the soil structure permits this method. A retention basin can be used if a method of disposal for the rainwater is available, but it cannot accept the full flow rate during a design storm. A detention basin can be used where the water on the site is routed to be evaporated and absorbed into the ground.
- 2. If streams or rivers are to be used as a final outfall, contact state and federal agencies regarding permitted flow, outfall structures, and required permits. Such agencies may be the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), or the local sewer department. Obtain EPA permits if the waterway is considered navigable.
- 3. If a public sewer is to be the final outfall, contact the AHJ regarding permitted flow, connection details, plan submittal, and required approvals.
- 4. Determine the high and low water levels of all streams and rivers, including past history of floods. If the waterway is considered navigable, special approval may be required.
- 5. Ensure that the discharge of site storm water directly into smaller streams doesn't create a possible flood condition downstream.
- 6. Include provisions for any future development of surrounding site areas or building additions.
- 7. Finally, the preliminary investigations shall include the location, size, topography, and elevation, soil conditions and type, water table, location and pipe material of the public storm sewer, location of existing manholes, location of other utilities under and on the site, etc.

Codes and Standards

The first step is to find the department or jurisdiction responsible for the design and installation of sewers. It may be the same plumbing code official responsible for sanitary sewers. In jurisdictions with a storm water management requirement, a separate department may be responsible for storm water sewers. If the discharge is into public streams or navigable waterways, additional approval from state and national jurisdictions will be necessary. The information needed should be part of the utility letter outlined in Appendix 11-B.

It shall be determined whether a storm water management program is in place. Such a program is established where the AHJ requires limiting the storm water discharge from the developed site to the same flow rate that existed before the site was developed.

Materials

Underground piping should be of cast iron (service or extra-heavy weight, depending on the loads exerted on the pipe), ductile iron, hard-temper copper, aluminum, acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS), polyvinyl chloride drain, waste, and vent (PVC DWV), concrete, or extra-strength vitrified clay. If plastic piping is used, a proper class B bedding must be provided for adequate laying and support of the pipe. Plastic piping does not have the scour resistance of metal piping, especially at changes of direction. Aluminum pipe and other metallic pipe in corrosive soils must be wrapped or coated. All materials must be approved by the local code body. See *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook* Volume 1 for data on pipe schedules, joining methods, plumbing drains, etc.

Sizing a Storm Water System

When large areas with few drainage points—such as commercial and industrial sites, parking lots, highways, airports, and whole cities—require storm drainage, the methods and tables found in most plumbing codes are not applicable. The solutions obtained using those methods would result in systems that are oversized for the flows involved and pipe sizes that are far too large to be economically feasible.

The reason is that, in large systems, time is required for flows to peak at the inlets and accumulate in the piping system. Because of this time factor, the peak flow in the piping does not necessarily coincide with the peak rainfall. The design of large storm drainage systems usually is the responsibility of the civil engineer; however, the applicable theories and principles are often used by the plumbing engineer.

The rate of runoff from an area is influenced by many factors:

- Intensity and duration of the rainfall
- Type, imperviousness, and moisture content of the soil
- Slope of the surfaces
- Type and amount of vegetation
- Surface retention

The Rational Method of Determining Design Flow

The Rational Method is used to determine the theoretical water inflow into the storm sewer system. This method of storm drainage design states that the peak discharge is approximately equal to the product of the area drained, runoff coefficient, and maximum rainfall intensity. Since its introduction slightly before the turn of the century, the Rational Method has been widely used. It is an empirical formula suited for the design of small watersheds, less than 10 square miles. The formula is:

Equation 11-1

$$Q = AIR (IP units)$$

 $Q = AIR/100 (SI units)$

where

- A= Area to be drained, acres (43,560 square feet = 1 acre = $4,070 \text{ m}^2$)
- I= Imperviousness factor of surface comprising drainage area, dimensionless coefficient
- R= Rate of rainfall (intensity), inches per hour (mm/hr)

The Rational Method reduces an inexact set of conditions to an exact formula. Variables such as rainfall rate, overland water flow, and the amount of storm water that actually reaches the drainage system can never be exactly determined. Because of this unpredictability, it is important to realize that some judgment is required in applying the calculated and obtained information in the design of a storm water system.

Design Storms

The storm water drainage system generally is designed to remove the maximum expected runoff as quickly as it falls to avoid ponding and flooding. The ability to calculate the flow rate is complicated by one's inability to predict accurately many of the factors affecting the actual amount of runoff resulting from any given storm. For the purpose of calculating the estimated maximum runoff, an artificial design storm is created. This storm serves as a simulation for the purpose of predicting runoff volume accurately enough to provide a basis for the design of the piping network.

Design storms are based on actual rainfall records and have been presented in a convenient form by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's National Weather Service (NWS). Design storms are available as either intensity-duration-frequency curves or as charts and formulas appearing in several technical memoranda covering different areas of the United States. The intensity-duration-frequency charts are in a very convenient, easy-to-use form and are considered accurate for the watersheds that are the subject of this book. A typical chart is illustrated in Figure 11-37. Charts for various cities throughout the United States are available in U.S. Weather Bureau Technical Paper No. 40: *Rainfall Frequency Atlas of the United States*. However, it has been superseded by NOAA Technical Memorandum NWS HYDRO-35: *Five- to 60-minute Precipitation Frequency for the Eastern and Central United States* because of the longer period of data collection for the memorandum, which must be considered the latest information available. However, the intensity-duration-frequency charts obtained from Technical Paper No. 40 are more often used because of their simplicity. Use of this information is discussed later in the chapter.

Imperviousness Factor

The imperviousness factor (I), expressed as a decimal, is that portion of rain that falls on an area and flows off as free water and is not lost to infiltration into the soil, ponding in surface depressions, water remaining on vegetation, or evaporation. This allows for the loss of rainwater as it flows over the ground from a remote point of the tributary area until it enters a drainage inlet. The average imperviousness figures of various surfaces are found in Table 11-11.

The infiltration rate is much greater for loose, sandy soils than for hard, clay-type soils. Once saturated, the soil will not absorb any more water, which causes greater runoff. The rate of infiltration and the amount of water held in depressions decrease as the precipitation duration and the slope of the ground increase. Inspection, if possible, is the best way to determine the nature of an existing surface. In places where the exact nature of future development is uncertain, the figure selected should represent the least amount of loss that might be expected to allow the largest quantity of storm water to reach a drainage inlet. Where any tributary area consists of different types of surfaces and/or soil combinations, a weighted overall value should be assigned for ease of calculations and for use in Figure 11-37. Use Equation 11-2 to determine the weighted average.

Equation 11-2

$$\mathbf{F} = (\mathbf{A1} \times \mathbf{C1} + \mathbf{A2} \times \mathbf{C2} + \mathbf{An} \times \mathbf{Cn}) / \mathbf{A}$$

where

- A = Total area for the tributary area under design, acres
- A1 (etc.) = Separate individual contributing area for area under design, acres
- C1 (etc.) = Imperviousness factor for separate surface types under design
- \mathbf{F} = Weighed factor for combined tributary area
- n = Number of different types of surfaces within the tributary area

Example 11-1

As an example, three separate individual areas comprising 1.2 acres of a tributary area have previously



Figure 11-38 Overland Flow Time

Graph for determining the time of concentration for runoff traveling across the surface of the ground. (1) Determine the distance from the most remote point of the tributary area to the inlet. (2) Enter this distance at the appropriate point on the left vertical scale. (3) From this point draw a horizontal line until it intersects the slope which has an average slope S equal to the slope of the tributary area. (4) From this point of intersection, draw a line vertically downward until it intersects a curve having the appropriate coefficient of runoff C. (5) At this point of intersection, draw a horizontal line to the right vertical scale, where the time of concentration will be indicated.

been determined to be 0.5 acre of grass, 0.5 acre of pavement, and 0.2 acre of roof. What is the weighed factor for this total tributary area?

$$\label{eq:F} \begin{split} \mathrm{F} &= ([0.50 \times 0.15] + [0.50 \times 0.95] + [0.2 \times 1.00]) / 1.2 = 0.625 \ \mathrm{weighed\ factor} \end{split}$$

Rate of Rainfall

Rate of rainfall (R), or rainfall intensity, is the amount of average precipitation per hour that falls in a short period. This figure uses the duration of rainfall, in minutes, along with a set of curves for the frequency of occurrence to find the rainfall intensity, or rate of rainfall, in minutes of duration. To enter Figure 11-37, the return frequency of a design storm must have been selected, and the rainfall duration, which is the sum of the overland flow time and the time in pipe, if applicable, will have been calculated. To use the chart, find the calculated duration at the bottom. Draw a vertical line up until it intersects the curve for the selected return frequency. From this intersection, draw a horizontal line to the left to read the rainfall intensity in inches per hour.

The determination of several interdependent criterion is necessary to calculate the peak rate of runoff. The rate of runoff is hard to accurately evaluate and is impacted by the precipitation rate, surface composition and slope, duration of the precipitation, and degree of saturation of the soil.

Return Period

The design storm return period, or frequency, is the statistical period of years that must elapse to produce the most severe design storm once in that period. The theory is that the worst storm that would be expected to occur once in 100 years is much more severe than the worst storm that would be expected to occur once in two years.

The curve for a given frequency is actually a plot of different storms of varying lengths, each with a different duration, not a single storm plotted against time. Therefore, a storm of 10-minute duration is one that lasts for exactly 10 minutes and then stops. It is not an extension of any other plot. Any storm with a longer duration would have a lower instantaneous peak flow.

Flooding will result if the design storm is exceeded and the storm water is not removed by the design storm water piping. Special consideration should be

Table 11-10 Approximate Buoyant Force of Empty Tanks

Tank Capacity, gal	Tank Diameter	Tank Length	Tank Weight, Ibs	Wall Thickness	Net Upward Force (net buoyancy) Totally Submerged in Water, lbs*
560	4′	6′	480	12 gauge	4,190
560	4′	6′	828	7 gauge	3,842
1,000	5′4″	6′	875	10 gauge	7,475
1,000	4′	11′	968	10 gauge	7,382
1,000	5′4″	6′	1,180	7 gauge	7,459
1,500	5′4″	9′	1,575	7 gauge	11,200
2,000	5′4″	12′	1,980	7 gauge	14,720
2,500	5′4″	15′	2,375	7 gauge	18,479
3,000	5′4″	18′	2,765	7 gauge	22,235
3,000	6′	14′	2,565	7 gauge	22,150
4,000	5′4″	24′	3,560	7 gauge	29,790
4,000	6′	19′	3,310	7 gauge	30,040
4,000	7′	14′	3,150	7 gauge	30,200
5,000	6′	24′	5,400	¹∕₄ inch	36,300
5,000	8′	13′6″	4,775	¹∕₄ inch	36,925
6,000	6′	29′	6,380	1/4 inch	43,720
6,000	8′	16′	5,370	1⁄4 inch	44,630
7,500	8′	20′	6,500	¼ inch	56,238
8,000	8′	21′6″	7,000	1⁄4 inch	59,750
8,000	10'6″	12′5″	6,470	1⁄4 inch	60,980
10,000	8′	27′	8,360	1⁄4 inch	74,356
10,000	10'6″	15′6″	7,600	1⁄4 inch	75,019
12,000	10'6″	18′6″	8,400	1⁄4 inch	91,440
15,000	10'6″	23′3″	12,600	5/16 inch	112,833
20,000	10'6″	13′	15,900	5/16 inch	151,345
25,000	12′	30′	20,875	3/8 inch	190,509
30,000	10'6″	46′3″	27,000	3/8 inch	222,518
30,000	12′	36′	24,294	3/8 inch	229,329

* lbs x 2.2 = kg

given to the degree of protection provided for the building and its contents by the rapid removal of rainfall by the storm water drainage system. This depends on the importance of the facility, how flooding may affect access, the importance of uninterrupted service, and the value of the equipment or material installed or stored. Since a severe thunderstorm or hurricane could produce rainfall rates greater than those anticipated, the property value may necessitate the selection of a frequency longer than the minimum determined.

Choices on the reoccurrence of a storm are usually based on code requirements (if applicable), economic

considerations, and risk trade-off. The following criteria may be helpful as a guide.

- For average sites, a design storm frequency of 10 years is generally used.
- Certain clients design their projects for 40 years of useful life, which may require a 50-year design storm if flooding might cause a problem.
- Many municipal authorities use a two- or five-year design storm for city sewers. Some use a 10-year storm.
- The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers normally uses a 10-year storm, but for military installations a 25-year storm is used.

The exceedance probability, which is the probability of any storm exceeding the rainfall rate to be used in the design of the storm water system for any one year, shall be calculated using the following formula:

Equation 11-3

$$P = \frac{1}{T}$$

where

P = Exceedance probability for a one-year period T = Frequency (return period) of occurrence used in design

period) of occurrence used in design, years

Example 11-2

Using a 25-year storm as an example, what is the possibility that this storm will be exceeded?

P = 1/25 = 0.04, or 4 percent

In this example, the probability

that a rainfall will occur in a one-year period that exceeds a 25-year storm is 4 percent. It is entirely possible for a specific rainfall rate to be exceeded at any time. With the selection of a higher average frequency of occurrence, such as 100 years, the probability of a similar storm occurring is considerably lower.

Rainstorm Duration

The duration, or time of concentration, is measured in minutes. It is found by calculating the overland flow time and the time in pipe of a theoretical drop of water as it moves from the most remote point on the site to any design point on a branch or main

Table 11-11 Imperviousness Factors

drainage line. The duration of the rainfall is needed to establish the rate.

This is important because the rate of rainfall is more intense in shorter amounts of time. This heavy rainfall, multiplied out to one hour, would be much greater than the rainfall expected for a one-hour period. As an example, for New York City, the heaviest total amount of rain on record for a five-minute period is 0.75 inch. Multiplying the five-minute reading out to determine the one-hour rate gives an hourly figure of 9 inches of rain, yet the largest amount of rainfall ever recorded over a one-hour period is 5.01 inches. Thus, it can be seen that the rate of rainfall measured during a short period is much more intense than the rate measured over a longer period.

The underlying theory is that the rainfall will stop at the exact moment the entire design area is contributing to the flow in this particular section of the sewer. Therefore, calculations must establish the shortest amount of time a drop of water takes to run from the farthest point of the site to any design point of the sewer. This is necessary so that the shortest time of concentration is obtained and the largest hourly rainfall rate is used for design purposes.

Overland Flow Time

The overland flow time, often called the inlet time, is the number of minutes it takes a drop of water to travel on the surface of the ground from the farthest point of the area contributing flow to a drainage inlet until it spills into the inlet. The impedance to overland flow of water by a grass surface is greater than that by an asphalt surface. For equal distances and slopes, it takes longer for a drop of water to enter a drainage inlet from the farthest point of a lawn than it does from a paved parking lot. The slope of the land is also a factor, since for any given surface water flows faster down steeper slopes.

Figure 11-38 offers a way to determine overland flow time when the slope of grade and type of surface are known. During a rainstorm, the flow of water from surfaces covered with pavement is in the form of a very shallow sheet of water covering the surface of the ground. This phenomenon is known as sheet flow.

Time in Pipe

The time in pipe is the number of minutes the theoretical drop of water takes to flow from the drainage inlet to the design point. Determining this requires the pipe to be sized and the velocity, in feet per second, of the storm water to be known. Multiplying that figure by the actual pipe length,

Surface	Flat Slope, < 2%	Average Slope, 2.0–7.0%	Steep slope, > 7.0%
Roofs & pavement (all types) ^a	0.95	0.95	0.95
Clay – sparse vegetation	0.40	0.55	0.70
Clay – lawn	0.15	0.20	0.30
Clay – dense vegetation	0.10	0.15	0.20
Clay – dense woods	0.07	0.12	0.17
Sand – sparse vegetation	0.20	0.30	0.40
Sand – lawn	0.07	0.12	0.17
Sand – dense vegetation	0.05	0.10	0.15
Sand – dense woods	0.03	0.08	0.13

Source: Baltimore County Design Standards

a For ease of calculation, the factor for roofs and pavement could become 1.0 if excessive runoff will not result in a significant overdesign.

Table 11-12 n Value for Pipe Used in the Manning Formula

Pipe Material	Range of n Values	Generally Accepted Value
Asbestos-cement	0.011-0.015	0.013
Corrugated metal pipe	0.022-0.026	0.024
Cast iron	0.011-0.015	0.013
Concrete pipe	0.011-0.015	0.013
Ductile iron (cement lined)	0.011-0.015	0.013
Plastic pipe, all kinds	0.009-0.015	0.010
Steel pipe	0.012-0.020	0.015
Vitrified clay	0.011-0.015	0.013

Table 11-13 Typical Cross Sections for Ditches—Depths of 10 ft and Less

Asphalt or concrete lined	1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical
Grass lined	3 horizontal to 1 vertical
Gravel lined	2 horizontal to 1 vertical
Clay	2 horizontal to 1 vertical

Table 11-14 n Values for Ditches Used in the Manning Formula

Description	n
Paved invert corrugated metal steel pipe	0.020
Cast iron, ductile iron, concrete, and steel pipe	0.013
Unpaved corrugated metal steel pipe	0.024
Small plant ditches (no vegetation, fair condition)	0.025
Main plant ditch (grass, some weeds, fair condition)	0.030
Natural ditches (dense weeds, high as flow depth, poor condition)	0.120

Note: n = coefficient of roughness.

Table 11-15 Design Velocity of Water in Ditches

Ditch Material	Max. Velocity (fps)
Unlined	
Fine sand	1.5
Silt loam or silt	1.5
Fine gravel	2.5
Sandy clay or clay	3.0
Sod	3.0
Still clay or coarse gravel	4.0
Shale and hardpan	6.0
Lined	
Asphalt, concrete, and granite	8.0



in feet, gives the time in pipe, in seconds. Convert this to minutes.

Final Calculations

When the inflow into the piping network (total flow rate) from all sources has been calculated for each design point using the intensity-frequency-duration curve, the run of storm water piping on the site shall be made to determine the slope of the pipe.

Storm Water System Design Procedure

The drainage structures should be located, and final coordination should be completed with the site planner. Select the type of drainage structure, either a drainage inlet or a catch basin.

Select the return period for the design storm. A site plan showing the location of the drainage structures and contour lines should be used to determine the exact surface area and type of surface contributing to the flow into each drainage structure. A chart or tabulation in any convenient form should be prepared indicating the type of surface and the area of each type of surface draining into each drainage structure. Room should be left for additional information that will be added later. For each drainage structure, measure the distance from the furthest point on the watershed that would contribute water to it and calculate the slope of the land into it.

Determine the imperviousness factor of the various surfaces in the watershed, keeping in mind the average slope of the area and the type of surface or surface combinations. Use a weighed factor for areas having more than one surface type.

Figure 11-38 is a direct reading chart that gives the overland flow time for runoff traveling over the surface to the drainage inlet. It is calculated by first measuring the distance of the furthest point of the tributary area, then determining the average slope of the ground, and finally determining the type or combination of surfaces. If the area consists of more than one surface, calculate the weighed coefficient. Find the distance on the left side of the diagram, and using the appropriate distance point, draw a line horizontally until it intersects the average slope. From there, draw a vertical line until it intersects the curve of the selected imperviousness coefficient. From this intersection, draw a line to the right to find the number of minutes that would be the overland flow time. The minimum overland flow time should be 10 minutes. Rarely will a lesser time be economically justifiable.

4 2 4 2 4 3 3 3 3 3 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	6 4 2 1 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 4 10 8 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
0 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	Pensacola, Florida 10 8 6 4	Sand Key, Florida,
0 Tampa, Flarida 1 8 53 50 6 7 7 7 4 7 7 7 4 7	10 8 6 4 2	10 Augusta, Georgia 8 6 4 7	10 8 6 4 2
0 8 6 4 2 2	10 8 6 4 2 Thomasville, Georgia	Boise, Idaho 2 1 8	4 2 1
6 4 2 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2 2	8 Peoria, Illinois 6 4 2
5	8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	8Indianapolis, Indiana 6
Terre Paute, Indiana 3 Control 100 3 Control 100 4 Control 100 4 Control 100 5 Control 1000	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
5 10 15 20 30 40 60	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60 15 20 30 40 60	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60	10 Concordia, Kansas 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60
	Grand Junction, Colorado	Image: All and the control of the c	Image: American Control Image: American Control Image: American Contro Image: American Control

	10 8 6 4 2 8 6 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	10 8 6 4 10 8 6 4 10 8 6 4 10 8 6 4 10 8 6 4 10 8 10 8 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	10 8 6 4 2 10 New Orfeans, Louisiana 8 6 4	10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 4 2 10 8 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
	8 6 4 2 2 2	8 6 4 2	10 Battimore, Maryland 8 6 4	Beston, Massachusetts 4 2
r Hour	8 6 4 2 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	6 East Lansing, Michigan 4 2
Intensity, Inches Pe	8 Escanaba, Michigan 6 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	8 6 4 2	8 Grand Rapids, Michigan 6 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	8 6 4 2
Rainfall	A Constant of the second secon	8 Port Huron, Michigan 6 4 2	8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
10 8 6 4 2 10 8 6 4 2		8 Moorhead, Minnesota 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
	Vicksburg, Mississippi	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
10 8 6 4 2	5 10 15 20 30 40 E0	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 6	⁸ 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60

Minutes Duration

Figure 11-39 Rainfall Intensity-Frequency-Duration Chart (cont.)

	6 4 2 1	4 2 1	10 Miles City, Montana 8 6 4 2	4 Missoula, Montana 2 1 .8
1	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 4 2 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
	Reno, Nevada 4 2 1	4 Winnemucca, Nevada	Concord, New Hampshire	Atlantic City, New Jersey
er Hour	Sandy Hook, New Jersey Sandy Hook, New Jersey 4 2 2	8 Trenton, New Jersey 6 5 4 7 2 7	4 2 1	Roswell, New Mexico 4
Intensity, Inches P	6 Santa Fe, New Mexico 4 700 2 70 2 70 3 70 2 70 3 70 3 70 3 70 3 70 3 70 3 70 3 70 3	Albany, New York	8 Binghamton, New York 6 4 2	8 6 4 2
Rainfal	8 Canton, New York 6 700 4 700 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	8	10 8 6 4 2	8 Oswega, Kew York
8 5 4 2	Rochester, New York	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
	Greensboro, North Carolina	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2 Wilmington, North Carolina
	2 Bismarck, North Dakota 5 10 15 20 30 40 60	$\begin{array}{c} 10\\ 8\\ 6\\ 4\\ 2\\ 5\\ 10\\ 15\\ 20\\ 30\\ 40\\ 6\end{array}$	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60
		Minutes	Duration	

10 8 6 4 2 2	8 Columbus, Ohio 6 4 2	8 6 4 2	8 Sendusky, Ohio 6 4 2
	10 8 6 4 2	6 4 2 1	4 Portland, Oregon 2 1
6 Reseture, Oregon 4 Jack State Sta	Erie, Pennsylvania 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	2
nop 2	Reading, Pennsylvania	8 Scranton, Pennsylvania 6 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	8 6 4 2
d set under the stand of the set	10 8 6 4 2 Charlesten, South Carolina	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
Huron, South Dalkota 1	10 8 6 4 2	8 Rapid City, South Dakota 6 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	8 6 4 2
10 Chattanooga, Tennessee	8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2
A contract of the second secon	10 8 6 4 2	10 8 6 4 2	10 Brownsville, Texas 6 4 2
10 8 6 4 2 Corpus Christi, Texas 5 10 15 20 30 40 60 60 70 70 70 70 70 70 70 70 70 7	10 8 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60 Minutes	10 Del Rio, Texes. 6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60 Duration	6 4 2 5 10 15 20 30 40 60



far@erga.com 17/01/15

Utilizing the rainfall intensity-duration-frequency curves for the city closest to the project location (see Figure 11-39), select the rainfall intensity using the return period selected and the time of concentration previously calculated. The time of concentration will be the overland flow time plus the time in pipe, if applicable. This will provide the final piece of information necessary to use Equation 11-1.

Using the data just collected and the Rational Method (Equation 11-1), calculate the total inflow into each drainage structure. The individual pipe from each drainage structure will be sized from this information.

With the total inflow in cubic feet per second to each drainage structure now known, select the grate type and size. Consult the manufacturer's literature for the correct size, and adjust the drainage structure locations for the flow requirements, if necessary. Most manufacturers have developed inlet flow charts for specific grates. Obtain from their catalog the size of grate that can accept the calculated flow.

Lay out the piping system from the drainage structure to the point of disposal. Locate manholes, and then select the pipe material and determine the n value, or roughness coefficient, for the pipe selected from Table 11-12.

Building roof drain runouts shall be connected to the storm water drainage lines, and their drainage areas shall be noted.

Select the critical inlet, which is the one that produces the maximum combination of inlet time (overland flow time) plus the flow time in the sewer to the very first connection with any other branch. The inlet at the farthest end of the drainage system should be selected as the starting point. This point will be the longest in time, not necessarily in distance. This may require some trial calculations of several drainage inlets at various far ends to determine which drainage inlet actually is critical. Distance will not be the only criterion. An area comprised of asphalt, which has a fast inlet time, might be a much greater distance from an inlet than an area consisting of grass, which produces a longer inlet time. The slope and length of the sewer pipe also must be considered.

With the selection of the critical inlet, the individual sewer pipe now can be sized from the critical inlet up to the first point of intersection with any other contributing source of storm water. Using Figure 11-38 and the flow in cubic feet per second, draw a straight line from the flow rate to the slope of the piping. This establishes the pipe size and water velocity. Adjust the line to intersect a standard size. If necessary, make the adjustment as indicated by the conversion factor if a different n value from that of the chart is used. Multiply the desired figure by the conversion factor found under the actual n value. Generally accepted practice assigns a value of 0.013 to the most commonly used pipe materials.

When the first junction with another contributing source has been reached, add the entire area of all contributing sources up to this first junction. Calculate the new time of concentration from the most remote inlet and the time in pipe to the design point of the storm sewer. Using the appropriate intensityduration-frequency chart to find the rainfall rate will give all of the necessary information required for using the Rational Method to find the total cubic feet per second. The resultant flow into the pipe is used to size that particular segment downstream from the design point. This is continued in succession to the end of the system, requiring a longer time of concentration each time a new design point is reached.

As progress is made along the route of the sewer, all branches to the main sewer line should be sized individually as their connection is reached. The branch is sized using the time to concentration required only for that branch. To size the main, add all of the areas contributing to the flow at any particular junction and use the longer time of concentration determined from the initial overland flow time from the critical inlet added to the flow time of the water in the pipe.

Storm Water Disposal Methods

Disposal into a Public Sewer

A public sewer is the simplest method, requiring only a house sewer that is properly sized using the applicable code from the building wall into the public sewer. The connection should be made to a manhole. Codes call for the house sewer to be sized from the building wall to the property line if only receiving runoff from the roof. A problem exists if the building roof and surrounding areas are larger than the areas appearing in the charts provided in the applicable code. If this is the case, the Rational Method of calculating the volume of storm water runoff shall be used.

The storm water house sewer shall be a separate line leaving the building, even if a combined public sewer is used as the point of disposal. The storm water and sanitary house sewers can be combined on the site, if allowed. A combined sewer is one that receives both sanitary and storm water drainage. The reason for separate lines is that if separate public sewers are constructed in the future, a new connection can easily be accomplished. The final connection to the public sewer shall be into a hooded manhole or catch basin to prevent sewer gas from entering the storm water sewer.

Disposal into Drywells

A drywell is an underground structure with openings or porous walls that allow the storm water entering the drywell to escape out the sides and be absorbed into the surrounding soil. This disposal method is used in very limited areas with AHJ approval and where sandy soil permits its effective use. Local codes specify the number and size of drywell sections or depth of bury and the distance between structures.

Disposal into Recharge Basins

A recharge basin is a depressed area on a site that is normally dry, with no outlet. These basins are sized to collect runoff from the surrounding area due to a storm of a given duration, usually a 100-year, 24-hour storm, with a 10 percent safety factor and additional height above the top to account for wave action when full. When in such a basin, the water is mostly absorbed into the surrounding soil and some evaporates into the air. A headwall should be constructed to avoid erosion around the inflow pipe.

Disposal into Retention Basins

A retention basin is intended to collect rainwater and to allow discharge at a rate that is slower than the rate of inflow into the basin because a storm water management program is in effect. Water in the retention basin is not intended to be absorbed into the surrounding soil. The design engineer should first determine the discharge from the undeveloped site and then calculate the discharge from the developed site. The volume of water in the retention basin to be stored is based on the allowable discharge flow rate volume compared to inflow flow rate over a period of time, while not exceeding the allowable discharge flow rate.

Limited-discharge Roof Drains

Another possible storage method is a limited-discharge system. Special roof drains are available with limited-discharge characteristics that store water on the roof and discharge the rainwater at a rate that is slower than the rate at which it accumulates. Its use must be coordinated with the architect and structural engineer to ensure provision of a watertight roof and elevated sections at entrances to roof stairways to avoid water flow entering the building.

Discharge into an Existing Flow Path

A project may be constructed on a site where the only method of removing storm water is by discharging it into swales or ditches on the site. These flow paths eventually find their way into a remote watercourse.

Sizing a Ditch

The following criteria shall be used to size a ditch:

- The discharge into the ditch shall be from a headwall. A headwall is necessary because the outflow from the pipe will eventually wear away the invert.
- The slope sides should be no steeper than 1 on 3 to allow mowing.
- A 4-foot-tall fence may be required for larger channels.

- The suggested cross-section is given in Table 11-13.
- The roughness coefficient, or n value, shall be as listed in Table 11-14.
- The maximum recommended velocity is listed in Table 11-15.

The ditch is sized using Manning's formula. This formula requires that a value be selected to account for the roughness of the area being sized. When sizing, it is a reasonable assumption for the ditches to flow full during design flow.

Using the design flow and calculating the wetted length of the ditch sides and bottom, converted to the diameter of a pipe, use Figure 11-23 to size the ditch.

Slope

Ditches should be sized to run full at the design discharge rate with a minimum freeboard of 6 inches (152.4 mm). The preferred minimum freeboard on larger ditches is 12 inches (304.8 mm). For ditches running parallel to plant roads, the maximum design water surface elevation should not be higher than the bottom of the road base. Low-capacity ditches should have a minimum slope of 0.002 foot per foot. Larger ditches should be hydraulically designed to set the ditch slope.

Storm System Design Considerations

The velocity in the piping system should not be less than 2 fps (0.61 m/s). This is to allow for the move-



Figure 11-40 Transition Fitting from Plastic to Steel

ment of sediment and any other solids in the pipe by the flow of water at this minimum velocity.

The maximum velocity should be limited to approximately 30 fps (9.14 m/s). This is to prevent erosion of the pipe interior. Large quantities of sand present in the water will add to the scouring action, and the velocity should be limited to a lesser figure for this condition.

To limit velocity, a shallow slope of the piping system should be chosen rather than oversizing the pipe. Other methods are also available. If the slope of the ground is steep, a drop manhole should be used where the difference in elevation between inlet and outlet inverts is more than 2 feet 0.61 m).

A manhole should be located at every change in slope, pipe size, or direction. In many cases, a drainage structure can be used for this purpose if such placement is practical.

The minimum size pipe should be 12 inches (304.8 mm) to reduce the possibility of stoppage by debris. A lesser size runout from a building roof storm water system is generally acceptable.

When a change in pipe size occurs, the pipe should be installed crown to crown to eliminate a surcharge of the upstream portion of the pipe.

An item such as snowmelt may add additional quantities of water that are unexpected. This does not add a significant amount of inflow, but it should be considered if the snow is deep. However, increasing one pipe size may lead to a problem of too little velocity. If this is the case, it is advisable to increase the slope of the sewer line. As a general rule, be a little generous with pipe sizes. The slight increase in cost will be more than made up by the safety factor of the additional capacity provided.

Exfiltration occurs when water leaks out of a pipe into the surrounding ground through bad joints and cracks. When a pipe passes under a road or railroad, select a joint that has very little or no leakage to avoid the washing away of the subgrade.

Piping should be installed roughly parallel to the slope of the ground. Standard percentages of slopes should be used where possible to permit contractors to more easily install the pipe.

NATURAL GAS SERVICE

Natural gas is obtained from either of two sources. The first, restricted to very large users of gas, is a transportation gas company whereby the gas is directly purchased by the facility from the point where gas originates, usually at the wellhead. The second is from a franchised public utility. As part of this service, the utility company usually supplies and installs the service line from the utility main in addition to providing a regulator and meter assembly in or adjacent to the building. An installation fee may be charged if utility company regulations concerning the time of payback from expected revenue do not justify the cost of installing the service. The same might be true if the volume of gas intended for a commercial or industrial facility is considered too little. In such a case, it would be the responsibility of the owner to pay for the design and installation of the complete site service in conformity with utility company regulations.

Codes and Standards

The standard most often used for the design of natural gas systems is NFPA 54: *National Fuel Gas Code*, along with applicable provisions of the local plumbing code. Some insurance carriers, such as FM Global and Industrial Risk Insurers, have standards that may be more stringent than those listed. When a gas-fired emergency generator is provided, valve arrangements at the meter assembly must comply with NFPA 110: *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*.

General Procedures

The first step is to find the utility company that supplies gas in the area. If the project is existing, the owner can supply the utility company's name. In general, the engineering department of the utility company will be the first contact for the information necessary for design. The next step is for the design engineer to calculate the total connected load in cubic feet per hour (cfh). This is done based on information about the boilers obtained from the HVAC department, water-heating requirements, cooking requirements, and process requirements, if any. This total connected load shall be given to the utility company, which has its own method of calculating the actual load. The distance from the property line to the proposed meter location shall be given. The utility company shall provide the gas pressure in the utility main.

The various types of service that a utility company may provide each have a different cost (or rate). (Specific types of service may be unavailable or known by different names in various localities.) The types of service are:

- Firm or uninterruptible service: This type of service provides a constant supply of gas under all conditions without exception. This service has the highest rate.
- Interruptible service: This type of service allows the utility company to stop the gas supply to the facility, under predetermined conditions, and start it again when these conditions no longer exist. The rate is lower than that for firm service, and the service will require a backup source of fuel, such as fuel oil or liquid propane.
- Light or heavy process service: This type of service is provided for industrial or process use and

is reserved for quantities of gas that the utility company defines for this class of service.

- Commercial and industrial service: This type of service is provided for heating and cooling system loads for this class of building usage.
- Transportation gas service purchased directly from a company other than the public utility, with the gas actually carried to the site by the utility company mains: In addition to the cost of the gas, the utility company will charge a fee for this service.

The following criteria and information should be obtained in writing from the public utility company:

- Btu content of the gas provided
- Minimum pressure of the gas at the outlet of the meter
- Extent of the installation work done by the utility company and the point of connection by the contractor
- Location of the utility supply main and the proposed run of pipe on the site by the utility company
- Acceptable location of the meter and/or regulator assembly and any work required by the owner to allow the assembly to be installed (such as a meter pit or slab on grade)
- Types of service available and the cost of each

For the utility company to provide this data, it must have the following information:

- The total connected load—the utility will use its own diversity factor to calculate the size of the service line. This is not required if the design engineer is responsible for the installation, since the diversity factor calculated by the design engineer for the facility shall be used.
- Minimum pressure requirements for the most demanding device
- Site plan indicating the location of the proposed building on the site and the specific area of the building where the proposed natural gas service will enter the building
- Preferred location of the meter and regulator assembly
- Expected date of the start of construction

The Gas Utility Letter

A typical gas utility letter is given in Appendix 11-B. The following explains the information in this letter.

Btu Content of the Gas

The Btu content of natural gas varies across the country. Generally, a figure of 1,050 Btu per cubic foot of gas (reduced to 1,000 Btu for ease of calculations) has been used for design purposes. It is recommended that the design engineer ask the supplier to provide the Btu content supplying each specific project.

System Operating Pressures

The pressure in a site main depends on that existing in the mains of the utility company, since pressure is not reduced until the point where the facility meter is installed. This pressure is generally in the range of 15 to 50 psig (103.4 to 344.7 kPa).

The maximum allowable system operating pressure of fuel gas when installed inside a building is governed by NFPA 54, unless local codes or insurance carriers have more stringent requirements. Natural gas systems are not permitted to exceed 5 psig (34.5 kPa) unless all of the following conditions are met:

- Local authorities permit a higher pressure.
- All piping is welded.
- The pipe is run inside buildings or areas used only for industrial processes, research, warehouse, or boiler and/or mechanical equipment rooms.

Placement of the Meter Assembly

The requirements of various utility companies differ regarding the placement of the meter assembly. It could be installed in an underground, exterior meter pit, at an aboveground exterior location exposed to the weather, or inside the building in a well-ventilated area or mechanical equipment room. The utility company often has installation requirements for the gas service pipe into the facility. For large installations, the meter pad could be as large as 8 feet (2.4 m) wide by 20 feet (6.1 m) long. In addition, an electrical and telephone outlet should be installed at the pad location.

Major System Components

Gas Line Filters

Filters for natural gas are installed on the site service to protect the regulator and meter from injury due to particulate clogging, which may damage the equipment inside the building. They should be considered when:

- Limescale, dirt, or rust is known to be present.
- Dirty gas is obtained from a transmission company.
- Wet gas (sometimes referred to as sour gas) is known to be present, such as occurs after large utility company pressure-reducing valves.

The filter consists of a housing and a cartridge filter element. Selection of the housing is based on the highest flow rate and pressure expected and the size of the proposed building service. The housing should be capable of having interchangeable elements to allow replacement of the original filter if desired. Oversizing a filter is considered good practice if the cost of the larger size is not excessive, since this allows a longer service life.

The filter element is usually cellulose or synthetic fiber. Generally, the cellulose type is used for sizes 3 inches (76.2 mm) and smaller and fiber for 4 inches (101.6 mm) and larger. Fiber is stronger and should

	Pipe diameter (in.)												
Length	Nominal	0.50	0.75	1	1.25	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	5	6
(ft)	actual	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	3.548	4.026	5.047	6.065
10		2,040	4,329	8,240	17,121	25,820	50,285	80,771	144,079	212,400	247,753	543,611	887,323
20		1,446	3,060	5,826	12,332	18,262	35,556	57,113	101,929	150,190	210,385	384,391	629,684
25		1,293	2,738	5,211	10,828	16,334	31,803	51,084	91,168	134,334	188,174	343,810	561,192
30		1,180	2,499	4,757	9,885	14,911	29,032	46,633	83,225	122,630	171,779	311834	512,296
35		1,093	2,314	4,404	9,150	13,791	26,878	43,174	77,051	113,532	159,035	290,572	474,294
40		1,022	2,165	4,120	8,561	12,913	25,143	40,385	72,674	106,200	148,764	271,806	443,662
45		964	2,040	3,883	8,071	12,175	23,705	38,075	67,953	100,127	140,257	256,260	418,288
50		915	1,936	3,685	7,657	11,550	22,488	36,122	64,466	94,988	133,059	243,110	396,823
60		835	1,767	3,340	6,990	10,544	20,529	32,974	58,848	86,712	121,466	221,928	362,248
70		773	1,636	3,114	6,471	9,761	19,006	30,528	54,483	80,276	112,455	205,466	335,377
80		723	1,530	2,913	6,053	9,131	17,779	28,556	50,964	75,095	105,193	192,196	313,716
90		682	1,443	2,746	5,707	8,609	16,761	26,924	48,050	70,794	99,176	182,750	294,774
100		646	1,369	2,606	5,414	8,167	15,902	25,670	43,584	67,167	94,087	171,905	280,596
125		578	1,224	2,331	4,843	7,305	14,223	22,845	40,770	60,076	84,153	153,756	250,973
150		528	1,118	2,128	4,421	6,668	12,110	20,855	37,219	54,842	76,822	140,360	229,106
200		437	968	1,843	3,828	5,775	11,244	18,061	32,232	47,494	66,529	121,555	198,411
300		374	790	1,504	3,126	4,715	9,181	14,747	26,318	38,779	54,322	99,299	162,002
400		324	685	1,303	2,707	4,083	7,950	12,771	22,792	33,583	47,043	85,952	140,299
500		289	612	1,141	2,421	3,653	7,111	11,423	20,386	30,038	42,077	76,878	125,487
1,000		204	433	824	1,712	2,383	5,028	8,076	14,413	21,240	29,753	54,361	88,732
1,500		166	354	673	1,398	2,109	4,106	6,595	11,770	17,342	24,293	44,385	72,449
2,000		145	306	583	1,210	1,826	3,557	5,712	10,193	15,018	21,039	38,439	62,743

Table 11-16 Gas Pipe Sizing, Initial Gas Pressure 20 psig, 2 psig Pressure Loss Capacity of Horizontal Gas Piping (cfh)

Table 11-17Sizing, NG Pipe with Initial Pressure of 50 psig and 5 psig Pressure Drop
Capacity of Horizontal Gas Piping (cfh)

	Pipe diameter (in.)												
Length	Nominal	0.5	0.75	1	1.25	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	3	6
(ft)	actual	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	3.548	4.026	3.047	6.065
10		5,850	12,384	23,575	48,984	73,889	143,864	231,083	412,407	607,670	851,220	1,555,251	2,538,598
20		4,137	8,757	16,670	34,637	52,248	101,727	163,400	291,616	429,688	601,903	1,099,729	1,795,060
25		3,700	7,832	14,910	30,980	46,732	90,988	146,150	260,829	384,324	538,359	983,627	1,465,660
30		3,377	7,150	13,611	28,281	42,660	83,060	133,416	238,103	350,839	491,452	897,923	1,356,938
35		3,127	6,619	12,601	26,183	39,495	76,899	123,519	220,441	324,813	454,996	831,317	1,356,938
40		2,925	6,192	11,787	24,492	36,945	71,932	115,541	206,203	303,835	425,610	777,626	1,269,299
45		2,758	5,838	11,113	23,091	34,832	67,818	108,934	194,411	286,459	401,269	733,152	1,196,706
50		2,616	5,538	10,543	21,906	33,044	64,338	103,343	184,434	271,758	380,677	695,529	1,135,295
60		2,388	5,056	9,624	19,998	30,165	58,732	94,339	168,364	248,080	347,509	634,929	1,036,378
70		2,211	4,681	8,910	18,514	27,927	54,376	87,341	155,875	229,678	321,731	587,830	959,500
80		2,068	4,378	8,335	17,319	26,124	50,864	81,700	145,808	214,844	300,952	549,864	897,330
90		1,950	4,128	7,858	16,328	24,630	47,955	77,028	137,469	202,557	283,740	518,417	846,199
100		1,850	3,916	7,456	15,490	23,366	45,494	73,075	130,415	192,162	269,179	491,814	802,775
125		1,655	3,503	6,668	13,855	20,899	40,691	65,360	116,646	171,875	240,761	439,891	718,024
150		1,510	3,197	6,087	12,648	19,078	37,146	59,663	106,483	156,900	219,784	401,564	655,463
200		1,308	2,769	5,271	10,953	16,522	32,169	31,672	92,217	135,879	190,339	347,765	567,648
300		1,068	2,261	4,304	8,943	13,490	26,266	42,190	75,295	110,945	155,411	283,949	463,482
400		925	1,958	3,727	7,745	11,683	22,747	36,537	65,207	96,081	134,590	245,907	401,388
500		827	1,751	3,334	6,927	10,450	20,345	32,680	58,323	85,938	120,381	219,946	359,012
1,000		585	1,238	2,357	41,898	7,389	14,386	23,108	41,241	60,767	113,122	155,525	253,860
1,500		478	11,011	1,925	4,000	6,033	11,746	18,868	33,673	49,616	69,502	126,986	207,276
2,000		414	876	1,667	3,464	5,225	10,173	16,340	29,162	42,969	60,190	109,973	179,506

		Maximum Length of Pipe Being Tested (ft)a											
Main Size		Test Duration (h)											
(in.)	2	3	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24
1 or less	6590	11,000	15,400	24,200									
2	1700	2,830	3,960	6,220	8490								
3	743	1,240	1,730	2,730	3720	4710	5700						
4	439	732	1,030	1,610	2200	2780	3370	3960	4540	5130			
6	189	315	442	694	947	1200	1450	1710	1960	2210	2460	2730	2970
8	108	180	252	396	541	685	829	973	1120	1260	1410	1550	1700
12	48	80	112	177	241	306	370	435	499	563	628	692	757
14	41	68	96	151	206	261	316	371	426	482	537	592	647
16	30	50	70	110	150	191	231	271	311	352	392	432	472
20	19	31	44	69	95	120	146	171	197	222	247	273	298
24	13	21	30	48	65	83	100	118	135	153	170	188	205

 Table 11-18
 Test Duration for Plastic Gas Mains

^aMains to operate at less than 125 psig.

be considered where the pressure differential may be excessive and when recommended by the manufacturer. A filter rating of 10 microns is suggested as a starting point, with actual operating experience being the final criterion.

The size of the filter is based on actual cubic feet per minute (acfm) and the velocity across the filter. The pressure drop across the filter when it is dirty shall be considered in the actual pressure loss allowed for the service assembly. Since the filter should be changed when the pressure difference approaches 10 percent of the operating pressure, it is good practice to provide pressure gauges on both sides of the filter. If no filter is installed on the service, a spool piece should be provided if it is possible that one may be required. Most filters are mounted horizontally.

Gas Meters

Gas meters are part of a service assembly that may consist of filters, valves, regulators, and relief valves. The complete assembly is usually supplied and installed by the utility company. For the rare instances where this is not the case, gas meters are selected using the local utility company's standards, while the size and arrangement of the entire meter assembly is based on the flow rate and pressure. Because steady pressure is necessary for accurate metering, the regulator is installed before the meter. The utility company will provide sketches and details, with space requirements, of typical meter assemblies for various capacities and pressures. This permits accurate determination of the dimensional and space requirements for the area where the complete assembly will be installed. Obtain from the utility company all requirements for the specific installation being designed.

The plumbing contractor is usually responsible for providing a pit for the assembly or a concrete slab under the complete meter assembly when it is installed outside the building. This includes determining the meter slab size for outdoor meter installations and pit sizes and access openings for meters installed in pits. For facilities with high demands for boilers and other equipment, a meter assembly with dimensions of 6 feet (1.8 m) wide by 25 feet (7.6 m) long may be common.

Generally, if the contractor is installing the site service, the utility company will either supply the meter or install the entire assembly. This must be confirmed in the utility letter.

Pressure Regulators

Gas pressure regulators are pressure-reducing devices used to reduce a variable high inlet pressure to a constant low outlet pressure. Two types of regulators are available: direct acting and pilot operated. The direct-acting type uses the difference in pressure between the high and regulated sides of the regulator to directly move a closure (adjusting) member inside the regulator to adjust the pressure. The pilot-operated type uses a primary regulator to sense and magnify differences in pressure between the high and low pressure sides and a second, main valve with the closure member to achieve the desired pressure.

Regulators are categorized based on their end use. One type is the line regulator, which is used to reduce high pressure, often in the range of 25 to 50 psig (172.4 to 344.7 kPa), from the gas service provided by the utility company to a lower pressure used for the building service. An intermediate regulator is used to reduce the lower pressure, often in the range of 3 to 5 psig (20.7 to 34.5 kPa), to a pressure required to supply terminal equipment such as a boiler gas train. The third type is an appliance regulator used at the individual piece of equipment for final pressure.

The line regulator can be pilot operated and provided with an internal or external relief valve. The regulator is pressure rated to withstand the highest pressure expected. The relief valve is installed downstream of the regulator and is set to trip at a pressure that is about 10 percent higher than the highest set pressure. The line regulator is placed upstream of the meter to provide the meter with a constant pressure, allowing accurate measurement. This line pressure regulator is most often selected and installed by the utility company as part of the gas meter assembly.

An intermediate regulator is used within a facility where high pressure used for distribution purposes must be reduced to a lower pressure required by the terminal appliances. This is the most often used regulator. Two types of intermediate regulator are available, and the choice is determined by the accuracy desired and the ability to install a relief valve and associated gas vent discharge. One type of intermediate regulator has an internal relief valve set to discharge when the pressure rises above the set point. This has the lowest initial cost and the least degree of accuracy. Another type of intermediate regulator, called a monitor type, consists of two pilot-operated regulators. They can be installed in two configurations, both of which use regulators in series. In the first configuration, the upstream regulator reduces the inlet pressure initially to some intermediate value, and the downstream regulator further reduces the pressure to the final set point. This arrangement puts less stress on each of the regulators. In the second configuration, the upstream regulator is wide open, and the downstream regulator does all of the pressure reducing. If the gas pressure goes above the set point, the upstream regulator closes to partially lower the pressure. This installation has a high initial cost.

The appliance regulator is used to control the pressure of gas directly connected to the terminal appliance or equipment. This is most often provided by the manufacturer as part of the equipment gas train. The gas train is an assembly of piping, valves, regulators, and relief vents used to connect the gas supply directly to the terminal equipment. For large pieces of equipment, such as boilers, the gas train arrangement is dictated by insurance carrier requirements. An additional requirement of most gas trains is small relief vents from various devices. These vents must be piped outside the building to a point where they can be diluted by the outside air and pose no threat to the public or create a fire hazard. This is usually above a roof or the highest point of the structure.

Another type of appliance regulator is called an atmospheric regulator, or a zero governor. This is a very sensitive type of regulator that works with a very low gas pressure and extremely small differentials.

A differential regulator is a multiple-port regulator used to produce a single, uniform outlet pressure when supplied with multiple inlets of different pressures.

A back-pressure regulator is arranged to provide accurate inlet pressure control. It is used as a relief valve where the application requires a higher degree of regulation and sensitivity than is possible with a standard poppet-type relief valve. When operating as a relief valve, it limits inlet pressure to a set point. At pressures below this point, it remains closed. If the pressure rises above the set point, it begins to open and will bleed off enough pressure to maintain the system set point.

A piped gas vent must be provided from the regulators to a point several feet above the roof of any adjacent structure and must be properly sized to carry the amount of gas that will be discharged. This is necessary to protect the system from overpressure in the event of a malfunction or failure to lock up fully.

It is common practice to oversize the capacity of a regulator by about 15 percent to provide a margin for accurate regulation. However, care should be taken when sizing a gas pressure regulator to not provide a large regulator when small loads are connected. It may be advisable to provide a separate regulator to handle small loads, such as a kitchen. For large loads, regulators in parallel are often used to keep the pressure drop to a minimum.

The adjustment range of a regulator should be approximately from 50 percent over the desired regulated pressure to 50 percent under that pressure.

The utility company may require regulators to be of the lock-out type. The lock-out feature will stop regulator operation when the pressure falls below a predetermined set point when the downstream portion of the piping is normally under pressure.

Drip Pots

Drip pots are necessary to prevent water that is in the utility company mains from reaching the building. Modern technology has reduced, but not eliminated, the presence of moisture in utility company mains.

Site Distribution

The site distribution portion of the system starts at the property line of the customer and usually ends above grade (or at the concrete pad) at the valve after the meter. The connection to the utility company mains and the installation of the meter assembly are generally done by the utility company. Electrical and telephone connections usually are requested at the meter assembly pad.

The most often used piping material for underground installations is high-density polyethylene (HDPE). The rating for pipe 4 inches (101.6 mm) and smaller should be SDR 11, and that for pipe 5 inches (127 mm) and larger should be SDR 13.5. The pipe shall be buried a minimum of 3 feet (0.91 m) belowground, and a 14-AWG corrosion-resistant tracer wire should be placed in the pipe trench 6 inches (152.4 mm) over the pipe. Another detection method is to put a warning tape containing metallic material with the words "natural gas" on it. This will allow location by a metal detector and warn of the gas line immediately below the tape if digging takes place without the pipe being located beforehand.

The pipe aboveground shall be metal; therefore, a transition fitting is required if HDPE is used for the supply service. The transition fitting shall comply with ASTM D2513-11e1: *Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings.* Refer to Figure 11-40.

Site Service Sizing Procedure

Existing Pressure

The pressure in the main provided by the utility company and the flow rate of the facility are the basis for sizing, which is done by the utility using proprietary charts for the specific pressure in the gas main. If these charts are not available, compressed-air frictionloss tables can be used, based on the pressure in the gas service main with adjustments made to compensate for the difference in the specific gravity of the gas, which is usually 0.60 compared to compressed air, which is 1. This will provide sizing within a range that is acceptable for this system. The pressure drop selected is at the discretion of the design professional, but is generally kept to approximately 10 percent of the available pressure. To use the pressure-loss tables, calculate the pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe.

If the design engineer is responsible for sizing the meter and regulator, the following information must be calculated or established:

- Adjusted maximum flow rate, in acfm, for all connected equipment in the facility
- Highest pressure required for the most demanding equipment inside the building
- Pressure in the building service main immediately downstream of the regulator (which will be reduced by a pressure loss through a filter, if expected)
- Allowable pressure loss for the piping system inside the facility
- Pressure differential between the service main pressure and the pressure required inside the building (the sum of the second and fourth items above subtracted from the third item)

The regulator and meter now can be sized using literature and catalog information from the manufacturers.

Maximum Probable Demand

For some types of buildings, such as multiple dwellings and laboratories, the total connected load is not used to size the piping system, since it is unlikely that all of the connected devices will be used at the same time. For design purposes, it is necessary to apply a diversity factor to reduce the total connected load when calculating the maximum probable demand. The demand and diversity factors are given in ASPE *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 7: "Fuel Gas Piping Systems." The total connected load shall be given to the utility company, as it has a proprietary method of establishing the actual maximum flow rate.

This calculation first requires the listing of every device using gas in the building and the demand, in Btuh, for each. The manufacturer of each device should be consulted to find its actual input gas consumption.

For industrial or process installations and for major gas-using equipment, such as boilers and water heaters, in all building types, the connected load with no diversity factor is used because it is possible for all connected equipment of these types to be used at the same time.

Natural Gas Pipe Sizing Methods

The most conservative method for sizing piping systems is by the use of tables, such as those prepared by the American Gas Association and included in Appendix C of the *National Fuel Gas Code*. Other methods using tables appear in *Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook*, Volume 2, Chapter 7. Proprietary gas tables and calculators are available. Calculators are considered more accurate than prepared tables.

Two high-pressure tables are provided in this chapter. Table 11-16 is for 20-psi pressure with a 2-psi pressure loss, and Table 11-17 is for 50 psi with a 5-psi pressure loss. To use the tables, follow these steps:

- 1. Measure the length of the pipe from the property line to the gas meter location. Add a fitting allowance of 50 percent of the measured length. This is the equivalent length of pipe.
- 2. Select the column showing the distance that is equal to or more than the equivalent length just calculated.
- 3. Use the vertical column to locate all gas demand figures for this particular system. This is the only column to use. If the exact figure is not shown, choose the figure closest to or more than the calculated demand.
- 4. Opposite the demand figure selected, in the column on the left, find the correct size of pipe.

Pipe and System Materials

All of the piping materials must be listed in NFPA 54 and other applicable codes. In addition to the codes, the recommendation of the utility company, which has experience in the location of the project, should be considered. The most often used material for underground lines is HDPE. The material for larger lines and piping for high pressure (more than 100 psig (689.5 kPa) is steel pipe protected against corrosion by a plastic coating.

Codes do not permit plastic pipe to be run aboveground. For aboveground lines, the piping and jointing methods depend on the pipe size and system pressure. For piping up to 3 psig (20.7 kPa), black steel pipe or pipe conforming to ASTM A53: Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless or ASTM A106: Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-*Temperature Service* is used. Other materials, such as corrugated stainless steel, may be permitted by the AHJ, and they must be listed for gas service. Fittings are cast or malleable iron screwed fittings in sizes 3 inches (76.2 mm) and smaller and butt-welded joints in sizes 4 inches (101.6 mm) and larger. Where natural gas is considered dry gas, type L copper pipe could be used. All piping for pressures more than 3 psig (20.7 kPa) should be steel with welded joints. Welded fittings shall conform to ANSI/ASME B16.9: Factorymade Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings. Screwed fittings shall be black malleable iron, 150-pound class, conforming to ASTM A197: Standard Specification for Cupola Malleable Iron. Check valves shall be cast iron, 316 SS trim, disk type, with a soft seat. In sizes 3 inches (76.2 mm) and smaller, use screwed joints. Larger sizes shall be flanged.

Joints for polyethylene (PE) should be butt-type, heat-fused joints. Socket-type joints have been found to introduce a stiffness in the joint area that is undesirable. Joints for steel pipe shall be screwed for pipe sizes 4 inches (101.6 mm) and smaller. Sizes 5 inches (127 mm) and larger should be welded. Where flanged connections are necessary to connect some devices, flanges are heat welded to the HDPE pipe ends.

To make the transition from underground plastic pipe to aboveground steel pipe, an adapter fitting is required. Such a fitting is illustrated in Figure 11-40.

Testing and Purging

After installation of the pipe is complete, the site system shall be tested, purged of air, and then filled with natural gas. The testing phase shall be done with compressed air at a gauge pressure 50 percent higher than the highest pressure expected in the main. No loss of pressure shall be allowed. The test period is based on the size of the line and the length of run. Table 11-18 gives the recommended test periods.

After successful testing, the line shall be purged of air with dry nitrogen. The reason for this is to prevent a flammable mixture of gas and air when the pipe is filled with natural gas for the first time. This is accomplished by calculating the volume of the piping and introducing an equal volume of nitrogen into the pipe. After the nitrogen purge, natural gas is introduced until the nitrogen is displaced. It is recommended that the pipe be left under normal operating pressure.

APPENDIX 11-A

TYPICAL GENERAL NOTES— SITE UTILITIES ONLY

- 1. ALL ELEVATIONS ARE IN FEET (METERS).
- 2. ALL CONTOUR LINES ARE IN _____ FOOT (METER) INTERVALS.
- 3. CONNECTIONS TO ALL PUBLIC UTILITIES SHALL BE IN STRICT CONFORMANCE WITH RULES AND REGULATIONS OF THE ______ (AHJ).
- 4. STREET DRAINAGE AND TRAFFIC SHALL BE MAINTAINED AT ALL TIMES.
- 5. TOP ELEVATIONS OF EXISTING MANHOLE FRAMES AND GRATES SHALL BE ADJUSTED TO CONFORM TO NEW GRADES WHERE REQUIRED.
- 6. THIS CONTRACTOR SHALL COMPLY WITH ALL RULES AND REGULATIONS OF GOVERNING BODIES AND AHJ REGARDING REMOVAL, REPLACEMENT, AND DISPOSAL OF ANY PUBLICLY OWNED PROPERTY WITHIN THE (_______PROPERTY). ALL MATERIAL SHALL BE TAKEN TO A LOCATION WITHIN ______ (CITY) AS DIRECTED BY AHJ. IF NO DIRECTIVE IS GIVEN, ALL SUCH PROPERTY SHALL BE DISPOSED OF BY THIS CONTRACTOR AT HIS/HER OWN EXPENSE.
- 7. SURVEY INFORMATION FROM SURVEY ______TITLE, BY _____, DATED _____.
- 8. ALL ELEVATIONS REFER TO _____ DATUM.
- 9. ALL WORK SHOWN ON THIS DRAWING WHICH IS BEYOND THE SCOPE OF THE CONTRACT AND CONTRACT DRAWINGS IS SHOWN ONLY FOR THE PURPOSE OF EXPEDITING THE PROGRESS OF THE JOB AND DOES NOT IN ANY WAY CONSTITUTE ADDITIONAL WORK.

APPENDIX 11-B LETTERS

Date: To: Water Utility Company

Re: Project name Lot and block number Address

Dear sir or madam:

We are the engineers responsible for the design of the mechanical [and electrical] work for this proposed new [addition to an existing] project. We are enclosing three site plans which give a detailed location of the proposed structure and also our desired location for the point of entry into the building. At this time our preliminary estimate for this project is a maximum instantaneous demand of gpm.

gpm.

Based on the above data, we request the following information:

- A. What are the size and location(s) of any existing water mains adjacent to the project site that can be utilized for both domestic and fire protection water service? If at present no such service exists, what is the expected date of completion for such services? Would you please mark up one copy of the enclosed site plan with this information?
- B. What is the depth of bury of the water mains based on the datum taken from the enclosed site plans?
- C. What is the static and residual pressure in these mains? If there is any cost involved for obtaining this information, or if you do not normally conduct such tests, please advise us. If weather conditions do not permit such tests at this time, please advise us when such tests would be conducted.
- D. Please advise us about the requirements of, and any specific required locations for, both domestic and fire protection meter assembly installations. Is a separate meter required for both domestic and fire water service? Please include dimensions for all such meter assembly installations.
- E. Are there any requirements or preferred piping materials and jointing methods for this service?
- F. Please provide us with a breakdown of the work provided by you, the utility company, and all work required to be performed by the plumbing contractor relating to the domestic and fire protection service from the main into the building and the installation of the water meter assembly. Who is responsible for connecting to the public water main? If it is our contractor, please provide us with any rules and regulations regarding the installation.
- G. Please provide us with any rules and regulations regarding the requirements for and installation of backflow preventing devices. If you are not responsible for such installations, please provide us with the name and address of the agency or department having jurisdiction in this matter. If there are none, please so state.
- H. Based on your experience, would you please advise us of the minimum depth of bury acceptable for water mains in your jurisdiction.
- I. At the present time, we expect construction to start on or about _____

If I can be of further assistance in this matter, please call. Sincerely,

Figure 11-B1 Typical Water Service Letter

Date: To: Re: Gentlemen: We are the engineers responsible for the design of the mechanical [and electrical] work for this proposed new [addition to an existing] project. The address of the project is: We are enclosing three site plans which give a detailed location of the proposed structure and also our desired location for the point of entry into the building. At this time we estimate that this project will produce the following maximum sewage and storm water flow: Present Future Ultimate Sewage Storm Water Based on the above data, we request the following information: A. Are there sanitary, storm water, or combined sewers adjacent to the site? Could you please provide us with their location and elevation based on the datum of the enclosed site plan? Would you please mark up one copy of the enclosed site plan with this information? If at present no such sewers exist, what is the expected date of completion for such services? B. Do your regulations permit disposing of storm water into the sanitary sewer system? C. What are your regulations regarding specific limits of pollutants of concern for disposal of industrial or chemical waste into the sanitary sewer system? If you are not responsible for such installations, please provide us with the name and address of any agency or department having jurisdiction in this matter. D. What are your regulations for the installation of grease traps in your jurisdiction? If you are not responsible for such installations, please provide us with the name and address of any agency or department having jurisdiction in this matter. If there are none, please so state. E. Are there any storm water management programs in effect for your jurisdiction? If you are not responsible for such installations, please provide us with the name and address of any agency or department having jurisdiction in this matter. If there are none, please so state. If there are no sewers available to the site, please provide us with the rules and regulations for F. private sewage and storm water disposal. If you are not responsible for such installations, please provide us with the name and address of any agency or department having jurisdiction in this matter. If there are none, please so state. G. Please provide us with a breakdown of all work required to be performed by the plumbing contractor relating to the installation of the sanitary and storm water house sewer from the building into the public sewer. Who is responsible for connecting to the public sewer? If it is our contractor, please provide us with any rules and regulations regarding the installation. H. Are there any unique requirements for the use of any piping material and jointing methods required for installation of the normal sanitary and storm water piping in your jurisdiction other than those listed in the applicable code? If I can be of further assistance in this matter, please call. Sincerely,

Figure 11-B2 Typical Sewer Letter

Date:

To: Attn: Re:

Gentlemen:

We are the engineers responsible for the mechanical [and electrical] design for this proposed new [addition to the existing] project. This building will be constructed at ______. We anticipate that construction will start on or about ______.

We are enclosing a copy of the site plan which gives the location of the proposed structure and our desired location for the point of entry into the building and our preferred location of the gas meter assembly. At this time we estimate that this project will have a maximum instantaneous gas demand of _____CFH (BTUH).

The total gas input in CFH of all connected devices is as follows:

A. Device. Range of pressure is _____ to ____ in. wc. [in. Hg] [psi].

- В.
- 1. There will be [no] dual fuel requirements. We intend to use fuel oil [propane] as the second source of fuel.
- 2. No [The following] equipment will be equipped with a pilot light. [The consumption will be _____ CFH and a required pressure of _____ in. wc.]
- 3. We request that the supply be firm [interruptible]. Please inform us of the conditions that will require you to interrupt the supply of gas.
- 4. All of the equipment will be operating 24 hours a day. [The hours of operation for equipment other than boilers will be ______.]
- 5. There will be no requirements for future equipment. [We estimate that the following future equipment may be installed:]

A. Device. Range of pressure is _____ to ____ in. wc. [in. Hg] [psi].

- 6. Is there any other type of gas service available for this area that may reduce the overall cost of gas for our client?
- 7. Because of design considerations based on the location of the Mechanical Equipment Room, we request that the meter be located on the ______ side of the building. Do you anticipate any problem with this location?

We request the following information:

- A. The size and location of any existing gas main adjacent to our property that we can utilize to supply our project. If at present no such service exists, what is the scheduled completion date?
- B. What is the BTU content, specific gravity, and pressure of the gas in the main from which you intend to supply our project?
- C. Will your regulations permit [or require] a meter to be located inside the building, in a pit outside the building, or exposed, adjacent to the building? Could you also provide a dimensioned drawing, both plan and section, of the proposed complete meter assembly?
- D. Please provide us with a breakdown of the work provided by you and by the utility company and the work to be performed by the plumbing contractor in conjunction with the service extension from the main into the building and any ancillary work to be performed by the owner, such as concrete pad, telephone connections, electrical connections, etc., and the exact point of connection of the building piping with your service and meter assembly. Who will make the final connection?

If you have any questions or we could be of any further assistance, please do not hesitate to call.

Sincerely,

Figure 11-B3 Typical Gas Utility Letter

EMPOWERING PLUBING INDUSTRY PROFESSIONALS



AMERICAN SOCIETY OF PLUMBING ENGINEERS

The American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE) is the preeminent international organization for professionals, such as yourself, who are skilled in the design, specification, inspection, and manufacture of plumbing systems.

Why ASPE?

Becoming an ASPE member will elevate your career status as well as give you the knowledge, tools, and resources to become a leader in the industry. In addition, you will join a global community of professionals advancing the plumbing engineering industry.

To receive additional information about ASPE or to become a member, call 847-296-0002 or visit ASPE.org.

Technical Expertise at Your Fingertips

ASPE's extensive technical library for plumbing engineers includes the following bestsellers:

- Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook
- Domestic Water Heating Design Manual
- Engineered Plumbing Design
- Plumbineering Dictionary
- Pharmaceutical Facilities Plumbing Systems
- Plumbing Engineering & Design Handbook of Tables

All of our publications are available for purchase at **ASPE.org.** ASPE Members receive discounts on our publications, so join today!



Laboratory Gases

This chapter describes the design criteria and central piping distribution methods for various laboratory-grade specialty gas systems, including pure compressed air used for laboratory processes. For the purposes of this chapter, a compressed gas is any gas at a pressure higher than atmospheric pressure. Also included in the discussion are various specialty compressed air and gas systems typically used for organic and inorganic chemistry, physics, and biological laboratories and those used for research, development, and commercial purposes. The gases and their delivery systems used in these types of facilities are characterized by low delivery pressures, low and intermittent volumes, and high purity requirements. This chapter concentrates on cylinder and dewer supply and the local generation of such gases.

For a discussion of all phases of standard compressed air, compressor types, compressor accessories, fundamentals, and definitions not discussed here, refer to Chapter 9 of this volume. For a discussion of compressed air for healthcare facilities, refer to Chapter 2.

CODES AND STANDARDS

The building codes and standards impacting the design and installation of the various specialty gas systems have been put in place to protect the safety and health of operating personnel and building occupants. The building codes also have requirements concerning fire and the structural consequences of accidents. However, no mandated code requirements have been written concerning the sizing or purity of any of the specialty gases. These requirements are usually specific to the type of facility and end use.

Minimum purity requirements, called "commodity standards," are listed in the Compressed Gas Association (CGA) standards for various gases. Often, the actual on-site purity requirement is higher than that listed in the standard and is determined by the proposed use of the gas and the requirements of the user. The CGA also has material, pressure, and dimensional standards for pipe connections and terminations. For standards for gases not covered by the CGA and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), good engineering practice is used to adequately locate the tanks, piping systems, and components.

The NFPA has codes for the storage of flammable gases both inside and outside a building. NFPA 55: *Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code* covers bulk oxygen at consumer sites and the storage of hydrogen. NFPA 99: *Standard for Health Care Facilities* lists the requirements for the storage of flammable and nonflammable gases in cylinders. This standard does not actually apply to laboratories outside of healthcare facilities, but it often is used for guidance in determining the amount and location of these cylinders. The final decision to adhere to provisions of this standard depends on the client, the requirements of the client's insurance carrier, and the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) provides health hazard classifications, fire hazard classifications, and sudden release of pressure hazard classifications. All of these ratings and the associated precautions are available on material safety data sheets (MSDS). For instance, gases that fall under the "Reactive Hazard" classification must be kept separate from each other, typically with walls, nonpermanent solid separators available from the gas supplier, or gas cabinets. The EPA also publishes threshold limit values for the degree of concentration of any particular gas in ambient air for breathing purposes.

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF AIR

Because purified air is a specialty gas, it is important for the engineer to analyze standard laboratory (free) air to determine if the end use requires further purifying of the air and how to select equipment to accomplish this.

Free air is a mixture of many elements and compounds. The composition of dry air is listed in Table 12-1. Pure air is odorless, tasteless, and free of chemi-

Component	Percent by Volume	Percent by Mass
Nitrogen	78.09	75.51
Oxygen	20.95	23.15
Argon	0.93	1.28
Carbon dioxide	0.03	0.046
Neon	0.0018	0.00125
Helium	0.00052	0.000072
Methane	0.00015	0.000094
Krypton	0.0001	0.00029
Carbon monoxide	0.00001	0.00002
Nitrous oxide	0.00005	0.00008
Hydrogen	0.00005	0.0000035
Ozone	0.00004	0.000007
Xenon	0.00008	0.000036
Nitrogen dioxide	0.0000001	0.0000002
lodine	2 x 10 ⁻¹¹	1 x 10 ⁻¹⁰
Radon	6 x 10 ⁻¹⁸	5 x 10 ⁻¹⁷

Table 12-1 General Composition of Dry Air

Table 12-2 Elevation Correction Factor

Altitude, ft (meters)	Correction Factor
0 (0)	1.00
1,600 (480)	1.05
3,300 (990)	1.11
5,000 (1,500)	1.17
6,600 (1,980)	1.24
8,200 (2,460)	1.31
9,900 (2,970)	1.39

cals unless some foreign matter is suspended in the mixture in error.

The air pressure exerted at the Earth's surface is due to the weight of the column of air above that point and is measured barometrically at a standard pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (101.4 kPa). Because free air is less dense at higher elevations, a correction factor must be used for standard air to determine the equivalent volume at the higher elevation. The elevation correction factors are given in Table 12-2. By multiplying the volume of air at sea level by the correction factor, the actual quantity of air at a higher elevation can be found.

Temperature is also a consideration. Because an equal volume of any gas at a lower temperature will exert a higher pressure at a higher temperature, a correction factor must be used to determine the equivalent volume of air at different temperatures. The temperature correction factors are given in Table 12-3. By

Table 12-3 Temperature Correction Factor

1 4 3 1 0 1							
Temperature of Intake, °C	Temperature of Intake, °F	Correction Factor					
-46	-50	0.773					
-40	-40	0.792					
-34	-30	0.811					
-28	-20	0.830					
-23	-10	0.849					
-18	0	0.867					
-9	10	0.886					
-5	20	0.905					
-1	30	0.925					
4	40	0.943					
10	50	0.962					
18	60	0.981					
22	70	1.000					
27	80	1.019					
32	90	1.038					
38	100	1.057					
43	110	1.076					
49	120	1.095					

multiplying the volume of air at the lower temperature by the correction factor, the actual quantity of free air at the higher temperature can be found.

Impurities and Contamination

A knowledge of the various pollutants in the air is necessary when determining the equipment required to effectively reduce or remove them, and the air must be tested to achieve this knowledge. When selecting appropriate and specific air purification components, remember that no single piece of equipment or device can accomplish the job of removing all contaminants.

The required level of protection from the various contaminants depends on the purpose for which the air will be used. As well as identifying and quantifying the pollutants, the performance criteria for each individual system also must be determined prior to selecting any equipment.

The four general classes of contaminants are liquids (oil and water), vapor (oil, water, and hydrocarbons), gases, and particulates.

Liquids

Water enters a system with the intake air, passes through the compressor as a vapor, and condenses afterward into liquid droplets. When water settles on or within pipes, corrosion begins, ultimately ruining machinery and tools, causing product


rejection and contamination. Water also allows microorganisms to grow.

Most liquid oil contamination originates at the intake location or in an oil-lubricated compressor. As the droplets are swept through the system at velocities approaching 4,000 feet per minute (fpm) (1,200 m/min), they gradually erode obstructions in their path by repeated collisions. At high temperatures, oils break down to form acids. In the presence of particulates, oil forms sludge. Oil also can act like water droplets and cause erosion.

Liquid chemicals react with water and also corrode surfaces. There is no safe level of liquids in the airstream. They should be removed as completely as practical.

Vapor

Water vapor is the most common contaminant to enter the system. Oil, water, and chemical vapors enter the system in the same manner as liquids and contribute to the corrosion of surfaces in contact with the air. Oil vapor reacts with oxygen to form varnish buildup on surfaces. Various chemicals also cause corrosion and are often toxic.

The level of acceptable water vapor varies with end-use requirements. A dewpoint of -30° F (-34° C) is required to minimize corrosion in pipelines. For critical applications, a dewpoint of -100° F (-73° C) may be required. Oil vapor remaining in the air should be reduced to as close to zero as practical. Chemical concentrations should be reduced to zero, where practical.

Gas

Gases in any quantity that are potentially harmful to the system or process requirements should be reduced to zero or to a point that will cause no harm, depending on practical considerations. Condensable hydrocarbons should be removed as completely as practical. Gases such as carbon dioxide, sulfur dioxide, and nitrogen compounds react with heat and water to form acids.

Particulates

Particulates enter the system from the air intake, originate in the compressor due to mechanical action, or are released from some air-drying systems. These particles erode piping and valves or cause product contamination. However, the most harmful effect is that they clog the orifices or passages of, for example, tools at the end-use points. These particulates include metal fines, carbon and Teflon particles, pollen, dust, rust, and scale.

Particulate contamination must be reduced to a level low enough to minimize enduse machine or tool clogging, cause product rejection, or contaminate a process. These values must be established by the engineer and client and will vary widely. The general range of particles in a typical system is between 10 and 0.01 micrometer (μ m) in diameter.

Water Vapor in Compressed Air

Water vapor is present in all free air and is the most common contaminant. In many cases, it will be necessary to remove any water vapor above that required for air normally used for general laboratory purposes.

Saturated Air and Dry Air

Saturated air contains the maximum amount of water vapor possible based on its temperature and pressure. Dry air contains no water vapor. To determine the moisture content of saturated air (100 percent relative humidity) based on its temperature, refer to Figure 12-1.

Relative Humidity

Relative humidity is the amount of water vapor present in air expressed as a percent of the total amount capable of being present when the air is saturated. Relative humidity depends on pressure and temperature and is not the preferred method to refer to water vapor in air.

Dewpoint

The dewpoint is that temperature at which water in the air will start to condense on a surface. It is the preferred method used to express the dryness of compressed air since it does not depend on temperature. As the dewpoint decreases, the air gets dryer. Since the dewpoint of air varies with air pressure, it is referred to as the pressure dewpoint.

To find the dewpoint of air at various pressures and Q temperatures, refer to the dewpoint conversion chart in Figure 12-2. To use the chart, first determine the temperature of the ambient air. Extend a line horizontally until the ambient pressure is found, and then extend a line vertically from the intersection down to read the dewpoint at 1 atmosphere.

CLASSIFICATION OF SPECIALTY LABORATORY GASES

Specialty laboratory gases are prepared to perform specific tasks. Examples include the following:

- Span and calibration gases to calibrate gas chromatographs
- Carrier gases to exclude impurities and sweep a sample through a column
- EPA protocol gases to monitor atmospheric discharge from power plants, chemical plants, and refineries
- Process gases to promote specific reactions
- Gases for analysis functions

Specialty compressed gases are classified into the following general categories:

- Oxidizers are nonflammable but support combustion. No oil or grease is permitted to be used with any device associated with the use of this type of gas, and combustibles shall not be stored near these gases. Oxygen is an example.
- Inert gases, such as helium, do not react with other materials. If released into a confined space, they will reduce the oxygen level to a point that asphyxiation could occur. Rooms where these gases are stored should be provided with oxygen monitors and should be well ventilated.



Figure 12-2 Dewpoint Conversion Chart Source: Hankison Coro.

> Flammable gases are those that when combined with air or oxidizers will form a mixture that will burn or possibly explode if ignited. Flammable mixtures have a range of concentration below which they are too lean to be ignited and above which they are too rich to burn. The most often used figure is the lower explosive level (LEL), which is the minimum percent, by volume, that will form a flammable mixture at normal temperatures and pressures. The high level for alarms is generally one-half of the LEL, with warnings issued at one-tenth of the LEL. The area where flammable gases are stored must be well ventilated, use approved electrical devices suitable for explosive atmospheres, and restrict all ignition sources. The flammability limits and specific gravities of common gases are given in Table 12-4

0	Specific	Flammab	Flammability in air, %		
Gas	Gravity	Low	High		
Acetylene	0.906	25	100		
Air	1.00				
Ammonia	0.560	15	28		
Argon	1.38				
Arsine	2.69	5.1	78		
Butane	0.600	1.8	8.4		
Carbon dioxide	1.52				
Carbon monoxide	0.967	0.967 12.5			
Chlorine	2.49				
Cyclopropane	0.720	2.4	10.4		
Ethane	1.05	3.0	12.4		
Ethylene	0.570	2.7	36		
Ethyl chloride	2.22	3.8	15.4		
Fluorine	1.31				
Helium	0.138				
Hydrogen	0.069	4.0	75		
Hydrogen sulfide	1.18	4.0	44		
Isobutane	2.01	1.8	9.6		
Isopentane	2.48				
Krypton	2.89				
Methan	0.415	5.0	15		
Methyl chloride	1.74	10.7	17.4		
Natural gas	0.600				
Neon	0.674				
Nitrogen	0.966				
Nitrous oxide	1.53				
Oxygen	1.10	1	1		
Phosgene	1.39				
Propane	1.580	2.1	9.5		
Silane	1.11	1.5	98		
Sulphur dioxide	2.26				
Xenon	4.53		1		

 Table 12-4
 Flammability Limits and Specific Gravity for Common Gases

- Corrosive gases will attack the surface of certain substances and also damage human tissue upon contact.
- Toxic and poisonous gases will harm human tissue by contact or ingestion. Protective clothing and equipment must be used.
- Pyrophoric gases will spontaneously ignite upon contact with air under normal conditions.
- Cryogenic gases are stored as extremely cold liquids under moderate pressure and vaporized

when used. If the liquid is spilled, bare skin will suffer severe burns, and splashing into the eyes will cause blindness.

GRADES OF SPECIALTY LABORATORY GASES

Many grades of pure and mixed gases are available. Due to the lack of an industry-recognized standard grade designation for purity, each supplier has its own individual designations. It is possible for the same gas used for different purposes or provided by a different supplier to have different designations for the same purity. The instrument manufacturer and the end user must be consulted to learn the maximum acceptable levels for the various impurities based on the type of instrument used and the analytical work to be performed. The supplier then must be informed of these requirements to determine what grade of gas to supply to meet or exceeds the levels of the various impurities.

The following list, although not complete, covers some manufacturers' designations for different grades of gases. Specific instruments have additional grades, such as "Hall" grades of gases.

- Research grade
- Carrier grade
- Zero gas
- Ultra zero
- Ultra-high purity plus
- Ultra-high purity
- Purified
- USP

STORAGE AND GENERATION OF GASES

Cylinder Storage

It is convenient and inexpensive to store compressed gases in cylinders. Cylinders are available in various pressure ratings, with the nomenclature differing among the manufacturers. High-pressure cylinders store gas at pressures ranging up to 6,000 psig (41,368.5 kPa), with the most common pressures between 2,000 and 2,500 psig (13,789.5 and 17,236.9 kPa). Low-pressure cylinders or dewers store gases at pressures up to 480 psig (3,309.5 kPa).

When more than one cylinder is used to supply a system, the multiple arrangement is referred to as a bank of cylinders. Cylinder banks generally are classified as primary, secondary, and reserve based on end-use requirements. They are connected by a header and controlled by a manifold assembly. The arrangement of the cylinders is determined by the space available for the installation and the relative ease desired for changing the cylinders. They can be placed in a single row, double row, or staggered. The space typically required for various arrangements is shown in Figure 12-3. Any additional space between banks of cylinders required for specialized devices such as manifold controls, purging devices, filters, and purifiers should be added to the cylinder bank dimensions.

Cylinders do not have a standard capacity from one supplier to another. If the actual capacity of any gas must be determined, it can be found using the following formula:

Equation 12-1

$$VC = \frac{CP}{14.7} \times CV$$

where:

VC = Volume of gas in the proposed cylinder at pressure, cubic feet (m^3)

CP = Actual proposed cylinder pressure, psi (kPa)CV = Actual cylinder volume, cubic feet (m³)

Cylinders are available in many sizes and pressure ratings. Figure 12-4 illustrates the typical sizes. The cylinders themselves are available in four general categories. The first is the plain carbon steel tank. The second is called the ultra-clean tank, which is made of a slightly different alloy steel and has been completely cleaned, prepared, and dried to reduce contaminants in the cylinder. The third classification is aluminum tanks, in which the tank interior has been specially prepared and the walls treated to maintain stability and reduce particulates. Aluminum is used for cleanliness and for gases that will react with steel. In many cases, the exterior also is treated to be easily cleaned, such as required for clean room installations. The fourth type of cylinder is made of stainless steel, which is often used for ultra-pure gases.

Following are the general recommendations for the installation and storage of cylinders:

- The room or area in which the cylinders are placed shall have adequate ventilation and be free from combustible material and separated from sources of ignition.
- Consideration should be given for the storage of additional full and empty cylinders in the same room for convenience.
- Enough room should be allowed for the easy changing of cylinders. They are brought in on a hand truck or cart, and room, usually 3 feet (0.91 m), should be allowed for their maneuvering.
- Gas cylinders in active use shall be secured against falling by means of floor stands, wall brackets, or bench brackets. These brackets use straps to attach the cylinder to the bracket. Also available are floor racks and stands that can be provided for the installation and support of cylinders that cannot be located near walls.
- Empty cylinders also shall be secured against falling.

Dewers

When a larger amount of gas storage is desired, dewers typically are used. Typical dewers are illustrated in Figure 12-5. Dewers should be placed at least 3

inches (1.5 cm) apart for easy changing.

Gas Cabinet

When toxic or reactive gases are used, the cylinders should be placed in a vented gas cabinet. The basic purpose of the cabinet is to isolate the cylinders and to contain the gases in the event of a leak. Escaped gases shall be directed away from the immediate vicinity of the cylinder and cylinder storage area to a point outside the building where they can be diluted with the outside air.

The typical cabinet construction is 11-gauge painted steel or thicker to provide a one-half hour fire rating. The cabinet can contain panelmounted manifolds, purging equipment, and other devices to allow some degree of control of operating parameters. They



DIMEN	ISIO	NAL	DATA

Cylinders Per Bank	Dimension "A"	Dimension "B"
2 banks of 2 each	5'- 0"	4'- 6"
2 banks of 3 each	6'- 8"	5'- 8"
2 banks of 4 each	8'- 4"	6'-10"
2 banks of 5 each	10'- 0"	8'- 0"
2 banks of 6 each	11'- 8"	9'- 2"
2 banks of 7 each	13'- 4"	10'- 4"
2 banks of 8 each	15'- 0"	11'- 6"
2 banks of 9 each	16'- 8"	12'- 8"
2 banks of 10 each	18'- 4"	13'-10"

Figure 12-3 Typical Arrangements and Dimensions of Cylinder Installations (9-in. diameter)

				Siziliy it				All Cucuitur	4	
				pper lub	e Type L,	55 psi, 5	pecific	Gravity =	: 1	
sctm	actm	¹ ∕₂ I n .	³⁄₄ I n .	1 in.	11/4 in.	1½ in.	2 in.	2 ½ IN .	3 in.	4 in.
					psi per	100 feet o	of pipe	r	r	
5	1.1	0.15	0.04	0.01						
10	2.2	0.51	0.13	0.04	0.01					
15	3.3	1.04	0.27	0.09	0.02	0.01				
20	4.3		0.45	0.14	0.04	0.02				
25	5.4		0.67	0.21	0.06	0.03	0.01			
30	6.5		0.93	0.29	0.08	0.04	0.01			
35	7.6		1.18	0.39	0.10	0.05	0.02	0.01		
40	8.7			0.49	0.13	0.06	0.02	0.01		
45	9.8			0.60	0.16	0.08	0.02	0.01		
50	10.9			0.73	0.20	0.09	0.03	0.01		
60	13.0			1.01	0.27	0.13	0.04	0.02	0.01	
70	15.2			1.28	0.36	0.17	0.05	0.02	0.01	
80	17.4				0.45	0.22	0.07	0.03	0.01	
90	19.5				0.56	0.27	0.08	0.03	0.01	
100	21.7				0.68	0.32	0.10	0.04	0.02	0.00
110	23.9				0.81	0.38	0.12	0.05	0.02	0.01
120	26.0				0.94	0.45	0.14	0.06	0.02	0.01
130	28.2				1.09	0.52	0.16	0.07	0.02	0.01
140	30.4				1.22	0.59	0.18	0.08	0.03	0.01
150	32.6				İ	0.67	0.20	0.09	0.03	0.01
175	38.0	İ				0.89	0.27	0.11	0.04	0.01
200	43.4					1.13	0.34	0.14	0.05	0.01
225	48.8	1				1.28	0.42	0.18	0.06	0.02
250	54.3						0.51	0.22	0.08	0.02
275	59.7						0.60	0.26	0.09	0.02
300	65.1						0.71	0.30	0.11	0.03
325	70.5						0.82	0.35	0.12	0.03
350	76.0						0.94	0.40	0.14	0.04
375	81.4						1.06	0.45	0.16	0.04
400	86.8						1.18	0.51	0.18	0.05
450	97.7			L				0.63	0.22	0.06
500	108 5							0.76	0.27	0.00
550	119.0							0.90	0.32	0.07
600	120.2							1.06	0.02 0.37	0.10
650	141 1							1.00	0.37 0.42	0.10
700	151.0							1.21	0.40	0.12
760	162 0								0.45 0 66	0.13
000	172.0								0.00	0.10
000	101 5				l	l			0.03	0.17
000	104.0								0.70	0.19
300	190.3	ļ					ļ		0.70	0.21
900	200.2								0.89	0.23
1,000	217.0									0.25
1,100	238.7									0.30
1,200	260.4			ļ						0.35
1,300	282.1									0.41
1,400	303.8				ļ	ļ				0.47
1,500	325.5									0.53

Table 12-5 Sizing for Oxygen, Nitrogen, and Air

Table 12-6 Factors for the Sizing of Any Gas, Based on Specific Gravity

Specific Gravity						
Specific Gravity	Factor					
.05	4.50					
.10	3.16					
.15	2.58					
.20	2.20					
.25	2.00					
.30	1.79					
.35	1.68					
.40	1.57					
.45	1.49					
.50	1.41					
.55	1.33					
.60	1.28					
.65	1.23					
.70	1.19					
.75	1.15					
.80	1.12					
.85	1.07					
.90	1.05					
.95	1.02					
1.00	1.00					
1.10	.95					
1.20	.91					
1.30	.87					
1.40	.85					
1.50	.81					
1.60	.78					
1.70	.76					
1.80	.74					
1.90	.72					
2.00	.70					
2.10	.69					
2.20	.67					
2.30	.65					
2.40	.63					
2.50	.62					
2.60	.61					
2.70	.60					
3.00	.56					
4.50	.25					
Note: Multiply factor by sofm in						

Note: Multiply factor by scfm in Table 12-8. Calculate adjusted scfm. Use adjusted scfm to obtain friction loss.

Note: Values in table are for flow velocities not exceeding 4,000 fpm.

also can be provided with vertical and horizontal adjustable cylinder brackets. The following options also are available with the cylinder cabinet:

- Automatic shutoff of gas in the event of a catastrophic failure (flow limit)
- Purging of gas lines after cylinder changes
- Mechanical cabinet exhaust (typically 13 air changes per minute with the access window open)
- A sprinkler head for flammable gases, typically rated at 135°F (57.2°C) with a minimum water pressure of 25 psig (172.4 kPa)
- For toxic and reactive gases, a small access window could be provided to operate the valves without opening the main door and compromising the exhaust system. A fixed access window is acceptable for inert gases.

Specialty Gas Generators

In some cases, it is more desirable for a small facility to generate their own highpurity specialty gases rather than having them supplied in cylinders. A limited number of gases is available for which the anticipated volume allows this choice in laboratory or research facilities. Among

them are nitrogen, hydrogen, helium, and compressed air. The generating units have their own filters and purifiers that can create gases of ultra-high purity. In particular, the use of these units for the generation of hydrogen eliminates flammable cylinders in the laboratory or separate storage areas and keeps the actual amount of gas stored below that needed for explosion to take place. These units may need to be supplied with utilities such as electrical power, compressed air, or deionized water.

DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The components that distribute high-purity gas are different than those that distribute standard labora-



Figure 12-4 Typical Cylinder Dimensions

Source: Liquid Carbonic

tory gases. Following is a discussion of only those accessories and considerations that are necessary to accomplish higher purity.

Manifolds

A manifold is an assembly used to connect multiple cylinders. This assembly also could contain regulators, shutoff valves, gauges, etc. A header with individual shutoff valves and connecting pigtail is used to physically connect several cylinders to a changeover manifold. Manifolds can be specified with manual or automatic changeover, and they can be constructed of high-purity and other special materials compatible with any specific gas being used. The most often used materials for the header, manifold, interconnecting pipe, and fittings are brass and stainless steel, with



stainless steel flexible connections connecting the cylinders to the header.

When use is intermittent and the demand is low, a manual single-cylinder (station) supply is appropriate. The cylinder must be changed when the pressure becomes marginally low, which will require an interruption in the supply. The same system also could be used for greater demand where a bank of cylinders is used. When an uninterrupted supply is required, some method of automatic changeover must be used.

The simplest and least costly of the automatic types is the semiautomatic or differential type of changeover manifold. For this type of installation, the regulators for each bank of cylinders are manually set at different pressures. Usually, the secondary bank is set 5 psig lower than the primary bank. When the pressure of the primary bank falls below the lower setting of the reserve bank, the secondary bank automatically becomes the primary supply by default, since it has a higher pressure than the primary bank. A low-pressure alarm or low-pressure gauge reading will indicate that the changeover has taken place. To change the cylinders, the empty bank first must be manually isolated. Then, the pressures on the respective primary and secondary regulators must be reset to new settings to reflect the 5-psig difference between the former reserve supply, which is now the primary supply, and vice versa. In other types of semiautomatic manifolds, the changeover is fully automatic, but a switch must be manually turned from the reserve position to the primary position when changing cylinders.

The fully automatic changeover manifold uses pressure switches or transducers to sense changes in line and supply pressures. This in turn sends an electric signal to a relay that turns off or on appropriate valves that accomplish the changeover with no variation in system delivery pressure. It also changes the secondary operating bank indicator to primary. In addition, an alarm is sent when the cylinders need to be changed. For critical applications, connection of the power supply to optional standby power should be considered.

A typical manifold assembly is illustrated in Figure 12-6. Exact manifold dimensions vary and need to be obtained from the specific manufacturer.

Regulators

A regulator is a device used to reduce a variable high inlet pressure to a constant lower outlet pressure. The two broad categories of regulators are cylinder and line. Cylinder pressure regulators are mounted directly on high-pressure cylinders to reduce highpressure gases, generally in the range of 2,000 to 6,000 psig (13,789.5 to 41,368.5 kPa), to a lower pressure, generally around 150 psig (1,034.2 kPa). Line regulators are inline devices used to reduce a higher



pressure to a lower working pressure of 55 psig (379.2 kPa) and also are used on cryogenic tanks to reduce the pressure of the vapor above the vaporized liquid, generally in the range of 150 to 250 psig (1,034.2 to 1,723.7 kPa). The regulator is the first device installed in the distribution system. Depending on the purity of the gas, an integral inlet filter should be considered to keep particulates from entering the regulator.

Regulators are available in two types: single and double stage. The single stage is less costly and less accurate. This type should be chosen if maintenance of exact pressure is not a major factor in system operation. The double stage is more costly and more accurate and able to achieve a constant outlet pressure within a narrow operating range. When selecting a regulator for specific accuracy requirements, obtain the accuracy envelope diagrams from the manufacturer to check the device's parameters using actual anticipated system design pressures and flow rates. Typical single- and double-stage regulators are illustrated in Figure 12-7.

The single-stage regulator reduces pressure in one step. Typical differences in outlet pressure could vary as much as 7 psig (48.2 kPa) from low to high flow rates. The double-stage regulator reduces the pressure in two steps. Typical differences in outlet pressure could vary as much as 3 psig (20.7 kPa) from low to high flow rates.

Another parameter that may be important in some installations is regulator creep. This is the rise in delivery pressure due to differences in motion of the internal mechanical components caused by aging. Creep is also caused by foreign material interfering with the mechanical operation of the unit. This is the most common cause of unit failure.

The following should be considered when selecting a regulator:

• The regulator should have a positive gas vent.



Outlet Pressure adjusting handle (poppet valve actuator) pressure gauge N I S Vent Bonnet Needle valve Check valve (flow control) (spring housing) ∇ 2nd stage poppet assembly Inlet 1st stage poppet assembl 1st stage diaphragm st stage is preset Bonnet Two-stage regulator

Figure 12-7 Typical Single- and Double-stage Regulators

Source: Scott

- The regulator must be rated for the highest possible working pressure.
- The delivery pressure range must be adequate.
- The operating temperature must be compatible with the environment in which the valve is located.
- The valve body and internal materials should be selected for the specific purity of the desired gas, such as being machine welded or having diffusionresistant materials and packing, low particulate metals, and flexible diaphragms. High-purity regulators shall have little dead space internally and diaphragm seals that are consistent with the required purity.
- The pressure range of the gauges must be compatible with the pressures expected. As an ideal, the working pressure should be one-half of the maximum outlet gauge reading.

One feature that should be considered when only gas is to be used from a bulk liquid supply is an internal tank piping arrangement called an economizer. Provided as an integral part of the tank, this allows use of the gas available in the vapor space above the liquid in the tank before the liquid itself has to be vaporized. A special type of pressure regulator shall be provided that will switch from the economizer to the liquid line when the pressure in the vapor space falls below a preset level.



Figure 12-8 Typical Purifier Arrangement

Filters and Purifiers

Filters and purifiers are necessary to reduce or eliminate unwanted contaminants and particulates in the gas stream. The most common purifiers are those used to remove oxygen, water vapor, hydrocarbons, and particulates. For delivery of sterile gases, a 0.2- μ filter is used to remove any organisms suspended in the air stream. Filters also are used to eliminate other unwanted trace elements.

Many different types of filters are available.

- The most often used filter removes particulates $0.2 \ \mu m$ and larger.
- To remove hydrogen, palladium filters are used.
- Ceramic, fiberglass, sintered metal, and other adsorbent materials are used to remove oil, moisture, and other trace contaminants to make the main gas as pure as possible. For some filter mediums, colored materials can be added to indicate when it is time to replace the filter medium.
- The molecular sieve filter is a synthetically produced crystalline metal powder that has been activated for adsorption by removing the water of hydration. This material is manufactured with precise and uniform sizes and dimensions. The size determines what can be filtered. Sieves are available as powder, pellets, beads, and mesh, although mesh is not used in laboratories.

The requirements of the end user will dictate the filter medium and type. A filter shall be placed before any flow meter and any other type of equipment where required.

The housing must be compatible with the gas being filtered and the pressure involved. No filter should be subject to pressures more than the 60 psig (413.7 kPa) normally used in most laboratories unless specified for a higher pressure.

Pressure drop through the filter medium is a critical factor in the selection of the material used. For large installations, pressure gauges on each side of the filters are used to monitor their effectiveness. Usually, a 5-psig (34.5-kPa) drop means that replacement is required.

It is not possible to improve the purity of a gas with the use of purifiers. If a gas of a certain purity is required, a gas of that grade must be used from the outset.

Refer to Figure 12-8 for a typical system purifier arrangement. Components shall be eliminated as required.

Gauges

Gauges (other than those integral to regulators) for pressures up to 10 psig (68.9 kPa) are usually the diaphragm sensing-element type.

For pressures more than 10 psig (68.9 kPa), use the bourdon style. They should be cleaned for oxygen service, and the materials must be compatible with the intended gas. For single gauges, provide a small gas cock of the needle valve type between the pipeline and the gauge to shut off the flow and allow the gauge to be replaced without shutting down the system.

Flash Arresters

Flash arresters (see Figure 12-9) are required when the gas being used is flammable, particularly hydrogen and acetylene. They are mounted inline to prevent any flame from going back into the tank in the event that gas in the delivery piping system has ignited. It is standard procedure for a check valve to be made an integral part of a flash arrester, although this is not true in all cases.

Valves

Valves are an often overlooked component of any system, but the selection of valve type and material is important to efficiency and operating life. The valves used should have been designed for the type of service for which they will be used. Be careful to examine valve specifications for airway ports or openings smaller than the nominal size indicated or expected. The most often used shutoff valves are ball valves. Three-piece valves are the most desired because the body can be separated from the end connections when being installed and serviced.

For exacting control and modulating purposes, needle valves are used because of the precise level of control permitted. The materials of the valve and seals must be compatible with the gas used.

For specialty applications, diffusion-resistant valves reduce or eliminate unwanted gases from entering the system through the packing. Where purity is a major consideration, packless and bellows-sealed diaphragm valves are available.

The following should be considered when selecting valves:



Note: Not all accessory devices are required for all installations

Figure 12-9 Typical Single-cylinder Installation Detail



Figure 12-10 Typical Relief Venting

- The most important valve feature is minimum flow restriction (pressure drop) when the valve is open full. Ball, gate, and plug valves have the lowest pressure drop, so it is extremely rare to use these types for flow restriction. Where this feature is important, the needle type of valve is used.
- The pressure rating should be suitable for the maximum pressure possible.
- The valve body and seat materials must be compatible with the expected trace gases and contaminants.
- There must be positive shutoff.
- There should be minimum or no leakage through the valve stem.

Flow Limit Shutoff Valve

A flow limit shutoff valve (see Figure 12-9) automatically shuts off the flow from a cylinder if the flow rate exceeds a predetermined limit, which is usually about 10 times the highest expected flow rate. This valve must be manually reset after operation.

Check Valves

Check valves (see Figure 12-9) are used to prevent the reverse flow of gas in the delivery piping system. If one gas at a higher pressure possibly may force its way into another piping system or if system failure is a possibility, a check valve shall be installed.

Relief Valves

Relief valves (see Figure 12-10) are used to protect a system from overpressure. A relief valve must be provided between the regulator and the first shutoff valve in the system, with the discharge independently piped outdoors. The discharges from a single gas service manifold or regulator may be connected, but no connection from any source to a relief discharge may be made from any other system. The discharge pipe should be a minimum of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in diameter.

The relief valve shall be located at the first point in the system that could be subject to full cylinder pressure if the regulator failed. No valve should be located between the relief valve and the regulator. The relief valve release point should be set to 50 percent over working pressure.

When two-stage regulators are used, a preset first-stage (or interstage) relief valve is sometimes required to protect the second stage from overpressure. Additionally, it is good practice to install an adjustable relief valve on the second stage to protect the system and instruments from damage due to excessive pressure. For outdoor installations involving inert gases, the relief valve can exhaust directly to atmosphere. For indoor installations or any installation involving toxic or flammable gases, the relief valve exhaust should be captured and vented to a safe location outside.

Manifold and Regulator Purge Devices

The replacement of cylinders introduces unwanted room air into the piping manifold assembly and the connecting cylinder pigtails. When maintaining a high purity level of the gas is necessary, purge valves are installed to run system gas through the contaminated parts of the system to replace all such air. The purge valve outlet should be vented outside the building. If the gas is suitable and low enough in volume and the storage room is large enough and well ventilated, it could discharge into the room since the purge volume used is generally quite small. The regulator often requires special purging techniques recommended by the manufacturer. Purge gas shall be taken from a dedicated source used only for this purpose and as illustrated in Figure 12-11.

Flow Measurement

Flow meters can be either of two types: electric or mechanical. The mechanical kind is called a variablearea type and uses a small ball as an indicator in a variable-area vertical tube. The type of mechanical meter most often used has an accuracy of 10 percent full scale. This means that if the flow range is from 1 to 10 scfm, the accuracy is ± 1 acfm. However, more accurate variable-area flow meters are available.

Mass flow meters are electronically operated, using the difference in temperature that gas creates when flowing over a heated element. The mass flow meter is quite accurate and expensive.

Gas Warmers

On occasion, the gas in cylinders is withdrawn so fast that the regulator could freeze because of the change in temperature. If this occurs, an electrically with a solenoid value to stop the flow of gas. If this happens often, a gas warmer might be required.

Alarms

Alarms are necessary to alert the user to immediate or potential trouble. They could be visible and/or audible. The typical alarms are high system pressure, low system pressure, and reserve in use. In some installations, a normal light is also requested. If a single cylinder is the sole source of supply, an alarm might be installed when the pressure in the tank reaches 400 psig (2,757.9 kPa). Other alarms could be provided that will indicate high pressure loss at filters, low gas temperature, purifiers at limit of capacity, and flow limit valve operation.

These alarms are usually installed in an alarm panel, which can be mounted in the room where the gases are stored, in a constantly occupied location such as a maintenance shop or receptionist area, or in the laboratory itself, depending on the availability and level of maintenance. Often, multiple locations are desirable if a continued supply of gas is critical. Various devices must be placed in the system for these alarms to function, such as pressure switches, transducers, and auxiliary contacts in a manifold assembly to transmit the alarm signal to the alarm panel.

Toxic and Flammable Gas Monitors

If a toxic and/or flammable gas might accumulate in an enclosed area or room, a gas monitor must be installed to signal an alarm if the gas percentage rises above a predetermined limit that is considered harmful or dangerous. This should be 50 percent of either the lower flammability limit (LFL) or the level of concentration that may cause ill effects or

heated gas warmer is available to be installed inline, and this warmer heats the gas out of the cylinder before it reaches the regulator. The rule of thumb is to consider a warmer if the use of gas exceeds 35 acfm. The actual figure should be based on the specific type of gas being used, so consult with the supplier. Carbon dioxide, for example, presents a particular problem.

On occasion, the temperature of the delivered gas is a critical factor. If a low temperature could harm instruments or interfere with the procedures being conducted, a low-temperature cutoff should be installed

Table 12-7 Typical Laboratory Branch Sizing Chart

No. of	Pipe Diameter, in.							
Connections	Cold water, hot water	Air	Gas	Vacuum	Oxygen	D.W.	Nitrogen	
1	1/2	1⁄2	1/2	1⁄2	1/2	1⁄2	1/2	
2	3⁄4	1⁄2	1⁄2	1/2	1/2	1⁄2	1/2	
3	3⁄4	1⁄2	1⁄2	3⁄4	1/2	1⁄2	1/2	
4	3⁄4	1⁄2	1⁄2	3⁄4	1/2	1⁄2	1/2	
5	3⁄4	1⁄2	3⁄4	3⁄4	1/2	3⁄4	1/2	
6	3⁄4	1⁄2	3⁄4	1	1/2	3⁄4	1/2	
7	1	1/2	3⁄4	1	1/2	3⁄4	1/2	
8	1	1⁄2	3⁄4	1	1/2	1	1/2	
9	1	1/2	3⁄4	1	1/2	1	1/2	
10	1	1/2	3⁄4	1	1/2	1	1/2	
11–20	11⁄4	3⁄4	1	11⁄4	3⁄4	1	3⁄4	
21 and over	1½	1	11⁄4	1½	1 (21–30) 1¼ (31–50) 1½ (51 and over)	1	1	

Note: 1 in. = 25.4 mm

Maximum scfm Free Air Capacity	Minimum Size, in.
50	21/2
110	3
210	4
400	5
800	6

Table 12-8 Recommended Air Compressor Inlet Pipe Size

Note: 1 cfm = 0.03 m3/min

Source: James Church

breathing problems. The oxygen concentration of ambient air should never be allowed to fall below 19.5 percent. In addition, much lower levels should also be alarmed to indicate that a problem exists well before the evacuation of an area is required because of a leak. Refer back to Table 12-4 for the flammability limits of some of the more common gases. Request the MSDS for gases not listed.

Gas Mixers

For certain applications, gas mixers are available to accurately mix different gases to produce various proportions. The accuracy of the mixture, flow rates of the various gases, and the compatibility of the piping materials and the gases are considerations in the selection of the mixer.

Vibration Isolation

Vibration isolation is achieved by the proper selection of resilient devices between the pump base and the building structure. This isolation is accomplished by placing isolators between the pump and the floor, flexible connections on all piping from the compressor, and spring-type hangers on the piping around the compressor.

DISTRIBUTION NETWORK

System Pressure

Unless otherwise instructed, it is generally accepted practice to use a pressure of 50–55 psig (344.7–379.2 kPa) in the normal centralized piping distribution system, with a nominal 5-psig (34.5-kPa) loss in the system. High-pressure systems, if specifically requested by the end user or required by the laboratory equipment manufacturer, use a different pressure. Accepted practice limits the allowable friction loss in the piping system to 10 percent of initial pressure. These figures are not set in stone and should be adjusted for specific conditions or special systems when necessary. The most important consideration is the actual pressure required by the equipment being used. The maximum pressure set by a regulator should be $10\ psi\ (69\ kPa)$ above the minimum recommended by the manufacturer or end user.

Pipe Material Selection

Consider the following when selecting the pipe material and type for a specialty gas system:

- Compatibility with the specific gas used
- Capability of delivering the desired gas purity for the anticipated usage
- Pressure rating of the pipe and joining methods
- Temperature rating and the ability to be cleaned or sterilized in place
- Joining method

If all elements are equal, the least expensive piping shall be selected

Refer to the manufacturer or supplier of the gas for pipe compatibility. The pipe most often used to maintain the highest purity is grade 304L or 316L stainless steel tubing conforming to ASTM A270: Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Sanitary Tubing. The interior should be electro-polished, and the exterior could be mill finished in concealed spaces. In exposed locations and where the pipe exterior will be sterilized or cleaned, the pipe exterior should have a No. 4 finish. Stainless steel pipe is capable of withstanding repeated sterilization by steam and a variety of chemicals. The pipe is joined by orbital welding, so the tube should have a minimum wall thickness of 0.65 inch to be welded. When welding is not required, a tube wall thickness of 0.28 inch is commonly used, but the wall thickness must be able to handle the working pressure of the system. The total installed cost often is less than that of copper tube.

When hard pipe is not desired or used from a cylinder or system to a movable instrument, it is common practice to use $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (6-mm) polyethylene (PE), stainless steel, or copper tubing of sufficient pressure rating and compatibility with the specific gas, with no joints between the cylinder and instrument.

In many laboratory applications, maintaining ultra-high purity of a gas from the storage tank to the outlet is not an absolute requirement. For this type of service, copper tube and fittings that have been cleaned for oxygen service and joined by brazing and properly purged often are inexpensive and the material of choice. The following grades of copper pipe have been used:

- ASTM B88: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
- ASTM B819: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems
- ASTM B280: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
- ASTM B75: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube

Another type of material for non-critical applications is aluminum tubing ASTM B210: Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes, alloy 6061, T4 or T6 temper. This pipe is commonly joined by patented flare joints.

The pipe pressure rating is selected to resist the highest system design pressure, which is usually in the range of 50–55 psig (344.7-379.2 kPa). Copper tubing type L is used for pressures up to 200 psig (1.379)kPa), and type K is used for pressures up to 300 psig (2,068.4 kPa). The pressures are lowered internally at the equipment if the supplied pressure is too great. Based on experience, the allowable pressure range is usually between 30 and 75 psig (206.8 and 517.1 kPa). Higher pressures in the 300 psig (2,068.4 kPa) range for special uses are well within the limits of piping with flared, orbital welded, and brazed joints. The allowable pressure ratings for the various piping materials at ambient temperatures based on wall thickness values are calculated from equations appearing in ASME B31.3: Process Piping Design.

The piping system also shall be capable of being cleaned and sterilized in place, often,

if required. Cleaned in place (CIP) uses chemicals, so the pipe must be able to resist corrosion. Refer to the manufacturer's literature to establish compatibility. Steam in place (SIP) raises the distribution system to a high temperature that kills microbes. A drain for the system is often required. The piping system materials need to be steam compatible for the temperatures that may be experienced.

Another consideration in maintaining a highpurity gas is outgasing. This is a phenomenon in which a gas under pressure is absorbed into any porous material. This occurs primarily in elastomers used as gaskets or seals and to some lesser extent into metallic and plastic pipe and tubing materials. When the pressure is reduced or eliminated, such as when changing cylinder banks or during maintenance, the absorbed gases are spontaneously given off, adding impurities into the gas piping system.

Experience has shown that reaming the ends of pipe or tubing to obtain a smooth interior has left pieces of shaved metal in the pipe. If this is a cause for concern, reaming methods and tools are available that eliminate this problem.

Joints

The joining method may be a criteria in the selection of pipe wall thickness or pipe material composition.



Figure 12-11 Typical Purging Arrangement

The temper of the pipe may have to be carefully selected to use proprietary fittings.

The most often used joints for copper tubing are brazed. No flux is permitted, so only cast or wrought copper fittings should be used. The interior of the joint shall be purged with an inert gas, such as nitrogen type NF or argon. The reason for making up a joint in this manner is to eliminate any residue that may be produced as a by-product by the brazing process.

For stainless steel pipe, orbital welding leaves the smoothest interior surface, but it should be used only on tubing with a wall thickness of 0.65 inch or thicker. Another type of joint that can be used is the patented flared joint, which is preferable to solder or brazed joints that often leave a residue that contributes particulates into the gas stream. In addition, the flared joint is popular because it can be made up using only a saw and some wrenches. When copper tubing is used with flared joints, the pipe shall not have embossed identification stamped into the pipe because doing so causes leaks at the joint. There is no ASTM designation for patented flare joints, but they are acceptable for all applications as long as the allowable joint pressure ratings are not exceeded.

PIPE SIZING AND LAYOUT

Before laying out the piping system, the following information must be known:



Figure 12-12 ¹/₈-in. OD Tubing

- All air- or gas-consuming devices
- Minimum and maximum pressure requirements for each device
- Actual volume of air or gas used by each device
- Suggested duty cycle and diversity factor for equipment
- Special individual air or gas purification requirements

System Sizing Procedure

Following is a recommended system sizing procedure. It is not intended for compressed air in common laboratories. Refer to Chapter 9 for that information.

- 1. Locate the gas storage area and lay out the cylinders, manifolds, and so on.
- 2. Establish a general layout of the system from the storage area to the farthest outlet or use point. Measure the actual distance along the run of pipe to the most remote outlet. Next, add a fitting allowance. For ease of calculations, the addition of 50 percent of the actual measured run will give a conservative approximation of the entire system. Adding the measured length to the fitting allowance will result in the equivalent run of pipe.
- 3. Choose all of the filters, purifiers, and accessories necessary for system purity. This will establish a combined allowable pressure drop through each of them and the assembly as a whole.
- 4. Establish the actual pressure required at the farthest outlet.

- 5. Calculate the allowable total system friction loss.
 - a. It is accepted practice for general use to have a minimum system pressure of 45 to 55 psig (310.3 to 379.2 kPa) and to allow 5 psig (34.5 kPa) as a pressure loss in the pipe. For highpressure systems serving specific equipment or tools, start with the high end of the range for the actual pressure required. Accepted practice is to allow 10 percent of the proposed system pressure for pipe friction loss. So, for a 125-psig (861.8-kPa) system, a \pm 12-psig (82.7kPa) friction loss will be allowed. This figure is variable. To that figure add the pressure required to overcome the drop through the filter-purifier-manifold assembly and other accessories.
 - b. Divide the total equivalent run of pipe (in hundreds of feet) by the allowable friction loss to calculate the allowable friction loss in psig per 100 feet of pipe. This calculation is necessary to allow the use of the sizing chart provided in this chapter. If other methods are used to indicate friction loss in the piping system, calculate the loss in that specific method.
- 6. Calculate the connected flow rate for the piping to be sized. For general use, a figure of 1 scfm (30 nLpm) for each outlet unless the end user indicates otherwise. Calculate the scfm (nLpm) of gas through each branch, from the farthest outlet back to the source (or main). For specific equipment, use the flow rate recommended by the manufacturer.
- 7. Calculate the expected flow rate for all points using the appropriate diversity factor for all parts of the system. For specific equipment, the diversity factor must be obtained from the end user. The diversity (or simultaneous use) factor, which determines the maximum number of outlets in use at any one time, has a major influence on the sizing of the piping system. Specialty gas systems have no exact calculation method, so consultation with the end user is the best method and is strongly suggested.
- 8. The sizing chart, Table 12-5, has been calculated for a gas with a specific gravity of 1 (which is air), using type L copper pipe, and a pressure of 55 psig (379.2 kPa). This table also can be used for gases with a specific gravity ranging from 1.90 to 1.10. Slight differences are well within accepted accuracy. To find the specific gravity of many common gases, refer back to Table 12-4.

With all the above information available, the pipe can now be sized. Starting from the most remote point on the branch and then proceeding to the main, calculate the actual flow rate using the appropriate diversity factor. Enter Table 12-5 with the actual flow rate and the allowable friction loss. Find the flow rate, and then read across to find a friction loss figure that is equal to or less than the allowable friction loss. Read up the column to find the size. In some cases, the diversity factor for the next highest range of outlets may result in a smaller-size pipe than the range calculated. If this occurs, do not reduce the size of the pipe; keep the larger size previously determined. For equipment using capillary piping and tubing, refer to Figure 12-12 for nominal ¹/₈-inch pipe.

- a. To calculate the specific gravity of any gas not covered in Table 12-4, divide the molecular weight of that gas by 29, which is the composite molecular weight of air.
- b. When any gas with a specific gravity other than 1 is used, an adjustment factor is provided in Table 12-6 that will convert scfm to the equivalent of any other gas or combination of gases for use in Table 12-5. Multiply the factor found in the table by the compressed air flow rate to obtain the new flow rate for the gas in question.
- c. For pressures other than 55 psig (379.2 kPa), use the following formula:

Equation 12-2

$$PD = \frac{P_1 + 14.7}{P_2 + 14.7} \times PD_{p_1}$$

For the flow of any compressed gas at temperatures other than 60° F (15.6°C), use the following formula to calculate a factor that, when multiplied by the flow rate, will give the flow rate at the new temperature:

Equation 12-3

$$f = \frac{460 + t}{520}$$

where:

PD = New pressure drop, psig (kPa)

- $P_1 = 55$ (referenced table pressure), psig (kPa)
- $P_2 = Actual service pressure, psig (kPa)$
- PD_r = Referenced pressure drop found in Table 12-5, psi/100 feet (kPa/30m)
- t = Temperature under consideration, °F (°C)
- f = Factor

Having calculated the scfm (nLpm) and the allowable friction loss in each section of the piping being sized, now size the piping using the charts for system pressure. Since all pipe sizing charts are formulated on the loss of pressure per some length of piping (usually 100 feet [30 m]), it will be necessary to arrive at the required value for the chart being used. A maximum velocity of 4,000 fpm (1,200 m/min) is recommended. Another method, applicable only to branch lines with small numbers of laboratory outlets used for average purposes, is to use a prepared chart based on the number of outlets with the actual flow of gas not considered. The flow rate and diversity of use are taken into consideration in the sizing chart, which assumes that sufficient system pressure is available. With a small number of outlets on a branch, this method provides a sufficient degree of accuracy and speed of calculation. Table 12-7 is such a chart for various systems found in a typical laboratory.

COMPRESSOR INLET PIPING

Since air compressor performance depends on inlet conditions, this system deserves special care. The air intake should provide a supply of air to the compressor that is as clean, cool, and dry as possible. The proposed location should be studied for the presence of any type of airborne contamination and positioned to avoid the probability of a contaminated intake. Intake piping is discussed in Chapter 9. For sizing intake piping, refer to Table 12-8.

TESTS

Bulk storage tanks and dewers are required to be ASME rated and therefore are tested at the factory before shipment. They are not tested after installation. Cylinders are not tested for the same reason. This means that only the distribution system, from the cylinder valve to the outlets, must be subject to pressure tests.

Testing is done by pressurizing the system to the test pressure with an inert, oil-free, and dry gas. Nitrogen is often used because of its low cost and availability. The system test pressure for low-pressure systems is 150 percent over the working pressure. For systems with a working pressure up to 200 psig (1,379 kPa), the entire piping system, including the cylinder manifold, is tested to 300 psig (2,068.4 kPa) for one hour with no leakage permitted. If a working pressure higher than 200 psig (1,379 kPa) is required, the system is tested at 150 percent of the system pressure.

The pressure testing should be done in increments of 100 psig (689.5 kPa), starting with 100 psig. This is done to avoid damage due to a catastrophic failure. Leaks are repaired after each increment. After final testing, it is recommended that the piping be left pressurized at the system working pressure with system gas if practical.

FLUSHING, TESTING, AND PURGING THE DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

After the system is completely installed and before it is placed in service, the piping system first must be flushed to remove all loose debris, then tested, and finally purged with the intended system gas to ensure purity.

An accepted flushing method is to allow a volume of two to five times the expected flow through each respective part of the system. This is done by connecting the flushing gas under pressure to the piping system and then opening and closing all outlets and valves starting from the closest and working to the most remote.

To test for particulates, flow the gas into a clean white cloth at a minimum rate of 15 cfm (100 L/min) and inspect the cloth for contamination.

Finally, the system must be capable of providing the desired purity when actually placed in operation. Since flushing and testing may leave the piping system filled with inert or other gases, they must be removed, or purged. This is accomplished by allowing the system gas to flow through all parts of the piping system, opening all of the valves, and testing the gas purity at various points of the system until the desired purity level is reached. For high-purity gases, a laboratory specializing in testing for the purity level required shall be used unless the facility is capable of performing the test.

It is often best to use the system gas for testing purposes.

Index

μ (micro) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 Σ (ohms), 2009 V1: 34 Σ cm (ohm-centimeter units), 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 195 Σ m (ohm-meters), 2009 V1: 34 1-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 10 1-family dwellings, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 1-occupant toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 17-18 1-piece water closets, 2008 V4: 3 1-stage distillation, 2010 V2: 200 1-time costs, defined, 2009 V1: 217 1-wall tanks, 2011 V3: 139 2-bed deionizing units, 2011 V3: 48 2-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 10, 11-12 2-family dwellings, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 2-pipe venturi suction pumps, 2010 V2: 157 2-point vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 145 2-step deionization (dual-bed), 2010 V2: 206, 207 2-valve parallel pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 2-way braces, 2008 V4: 142 2-word expressions of functions, 2009 V1: 218, 225 2,4-D levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 3-bolt pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 142 3-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 10, 11-12 3E Plus, 2009 V1: 118 4-way braces, 2008 V4: 136 10-year storms, 2010 V2: 42 18-8 SS, 2009 V1: 132 18-8-3 SS, 2009 V1: 132 28 CFR Part 36, 2009 V1: 98 70:30 Cu Ni, 2009 V1: 132 80/20 rule, 2009 V1: 218, 249 90:10 Cu Ni, 2009 V1: 132 100% area (full port), 2008 V4: 74, 84 100-year storms, 2010 V2: 42 1964 Alaska Earthquake, 2009 V1: 152 1971 San Francisco Earthquake, 2009 V1: 152 3408 HDPE. See HDPE (high density polyethylene) 6061 aluminum alloy, 2011 V3: 277

A

A, X#, X#A (compressed air). *See* compressed air A/m (amperes per meter), 2009 V1: 33 A (amperes). *See* amperes

A (area). See area (A) a (atto) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 A-53 standard, 2008 V4: 48 A-106 standard, 2008 V4: 48 A-135 standard, 2008 V4: 48 AAMI (Association for the Advancement of Medical Instrumentation), 2010 V2: 187, 219, 220 AAV (automatic air vents), 2009 V1: 10 abandoned fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 154 abandoned septic tanks, 2010 V2: 148 abandoned wells, 2010 V2: 159 abbreviations existing building survey reports, 2009 V1: 269-270 International System of Units, 2009 V1: 33 plumbing and piping symbols, 2009 V1: 7-15 text, drawings, and computer programs, 2009 V1: 14 - 15The ABC's of Lawn Sprinkler Systems, 2011 V3: 96 above-finished floor (AFF), 2009 V1: 14 above-slab grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162 aboveground piping inspection checklist, 2009 V1: 95 materials for, 2010 V2: 12-13 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 227-229 aboveground sanitary piping codes, 2009 V1: 42 aboveground tank systems abandonment and removal, 2011 V3: 154 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 137 connections and access, 2011 V3: 148 construction, 2011 V3: 147-148 corrosion protection, 2011 V3: 148 electronic tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 filling and spills, 2011 V3: 148 industrial wastes, 2011 V3: 84 installation, 2011 V3: 152 leak prevention and monitoring, 2011 V3: 148-149 leakage detection, 2011 V3: 141-145 liquid fuel systems, 2011 V3: 147-149 materials for, 2011 V3: 147-148 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 148 product-dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 149 tank protection, 2011 V3: 149 testing, 2011 V3: 152-154 vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 149 venting, 2011 V3: 148

abrasion, 2010 V2: 16, 186, 2008 V4: 105

corrosion and, 2009 V1: 136 defined, 2009 V1: 16 specifications to prevent, 2009 V1: 256-258 ABS. See acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) abs, ABS (absolute), 2009 V1: 14 absolute (abs, ABS), 2009 V1: 14 absolute pressure Boyle's law, 2008 V4: 233-234 defined, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 183, 186, 2008 V4: 177 formulas, 2008 V4: 169-170 in vacuums, 2010 V2: 166 absolute temperature, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 183 absolute zero, 2009 V1: 16 absorber (plate), defined, 2011 V3: 190 absorber area, defined, 2011 V3: 190 absorphan (carbon filtration). See activated carbon filtration (absorphan) absorptance, defined, 2011 V3: 190 absorption air drying, 2011 V3: 178-179 defined, 2009 V1: 16, 2008 V4: 220 rates for soils, 2011 V3: 91 trenches. See soil-absorption sewage systems AC (air chambers). See air chambers (AC) ac, AC (alternating current), 2009 V1: 14 AC-DC rectifiers, 2009 V1: 139, 140 acc (accumulate or accumulators), 2009 V1: 16 acceleration earthquakes, 2009 V1: 149, 150 linear, 2009 V1: 34, 35 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 acceleration limiters, 2008 V4: 134 accelerators (dry-pipe systems), 2011 V3: 8-9 accellerograms, 2009 V1: 150 access. See also people with disabilities aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 148 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 clean agent gas fire containers, 2011 V3: 27 to equipment, piping and, 2008 V4: 23 underground liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 139-140 access channels for pipes, 2008 V4: 134 access doors, 2009 V1: 16 access openings for pipes, 2008 V4: 134 access to (defined), 2009 V1: 16 accessibility, 2009 V1: 16. See also people with disabilities storm drainage, 2010 V2: 48-49 Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities, 2009 V1 · 97 Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities, 2009 V1: 97, 115, 2008 V4: 2 accessories as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85, 88 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 accreditation of health care facilities, 2011 V3: 51 accumulation, defined, 2009 V1: 16 accumulators (acc, ACCUM), 2009 V1: 16, 2008 V4: 134 accuracy defined, 2009 V1: 16 in measurements, 2009 V1: 33 of pressure-regulating valves, 2010 V2: 94

ACEC (American Consulting Engineers Council), 2009 V1: 56 acetone, 2009 V1: 141 acetylene, 2010 V2: 114 ACF (altitude correction factor), 121, 2010 V2: 117 acfh (actual cfh), 2010 V2: 126 acfm (actual cubic feet per minute) defined, 2011 V3: 76, 187 gas systems, 2011 V3: 269 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 medical vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 64 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 166 ACI (American Concrete Institute), 2008 V4: 252 acid absorbers in ion exchange, 2008 V4: 197 acid-containing inhibitors, 2010 V2: 207 acid dilution tanks, 2008 V4: 197 acid feed pumps, 2011 V3: 129-130 acid fumes, 2011 V3: 46 acid manholes, 2011 V3: 231 acid neutralization, 2011 V3: 43-44, 85 acid-neutralization tanks, 2011 V3: 43-44 acid pickling, 2008 V4: 59 acid radicals, 2010 V2: 189 acid regenerants, 2010 V2: 199, 206, 207 acid resins, 2010 V2: 199 acid-resistant fixtures, 2008 V4: 1-2 acid-resistant floor drains, 2010 V2: 15 acid-resistant glass foam insulation, 2008 V4: 107 acid-resistant piping, 2010 V2: 13, 239 acid-resistant sinks, 2011 V3: 41 acid vents (AV), 2009 V1: 8, 16 acid-waste systems acid-waste treatment, 2010 V2: 235 continuous systems, 2010 V2: 236 health and safety concerns, 2010 V2: 229-230 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 42-46 introduction, 2010 V2: 229 large facilities, 2010 V2: 235 metering, 2011 V3: 45 piping and joint material, 2010 V2: 232-234, 2008 V4: 54 solids interceptors, 2011 V3: 45 system design considerations, 2010 V2: 234-235 types of acid, 2010 V2: 230-232 acid wastes (AW), 2009 V1: 8, 16, 2011 V3: 42-46 acidity in corrosion rates, 2009 V1: 134 pH control, 2011 V3: 85-87 in water, 2010 V2: 160, 189, 192 acids defined, 2009 V1: 16, 2010 V2: 188 feed water treatment, 2010 V2: 220 acoustics in plumbing systems cork insulation, 2008 V4: 149-150 costs of mitigation, 2009 V1: 188 critical problems with noise, 2008 V4: 145 design and construction issues, 2009 V1: 201–202 drainage system mitigation, 2009 V1: 189-190 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 120 insulation and, 2008 V4: 105, 115 introduction, 2009 V1: 187-188 mitigating fixture noise, 2009 V1: 193-194 neoprene vibration control, 2008 V4: 149-150

Index

noise-related lawsuits, 2009 V1: 263 pumps, 2009 V1: 194-201 silencers on vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 179 sources of noise, 2009 V1: 188-189 STC (Sound Transmission Class), 2009 V1: 187 transmission in pipes, 2010 V2: 13-14 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 174 valves, pumps and equipment, 2009 V1: 194-201 water distribution system noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190-193 water hammer, 2010 V2: 70-73 acoustics in swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108 acquisition costs acquisition prices defined, 2009 V1: 210 base acquisition costs, 2009 V1: 217 ACR/MED pipes, 2008 V4: 31 ACR piping, 2008 V4: 31 acres, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 acrylic fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 acrylic insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber (ABR), 2011 V3: 150 acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 defined, 2009 V1: 32 fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 pipe characteristics, 2008 V4: 49-50, 54 piping, 2010 V2: 13, 14, 2011 V3: 49 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 activated alumina air dryers, 2011 V3: 179 activated alumina water treatment, 2010 V2: 218, 2008 V4: 187 activated carbon filtration (absorphan) in gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 25 illustrated, 2010 V2: 205 overview, 2010 V2: 201-204 pure-water systems, 2010 V2: 221 RO treatments, 2008 V4: 219 small water systems, 2010 V2: 218 water problems, 2008 V4: 187 well water, 2010 V2: 160 Activated Carbon Process for Treatment of Wastewater Containing Hexavalent Chromium (EPA 600/2-79-130), 2011 V3: 89 activated sludge, 2009 V1: 16 activated sludge systems, 2011 V3: 88 active, defined, 2009 V1: 141 active controls, cross-connections, 2008 V4: 173-175 active potential, defined, 2009 V1: 141 Active Solar Energy System Design Practice Manual, 2011 V3: 204 active solar systems, 2011 V3: 192 active solar water heaters, 2009 V1: 122 active verbs in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218 activities in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 223 actual capacity, 2009 V1: 16 actual cfh (acfh), 2010 V2: 126 actual cubic feet per minute. See acfm (actual cubic feet per minute) actual flow rates, 2011 V3: 4, 210 actual liters per minute (aL/min), 2011 V3: 187

actual pressure. See static pressure (SP) actuators, 2009 V1: 16 ad (area drains). See area drains ADA. See Americans with Disabilities Act ADAAG (Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines), 2009 V1: 97, 98 ADAAG Review Federal Advisory Committee, 2009 V1: 115 adapter fittings, 2009 V1: 16 addenda in contract documents, 2009 V1: 56-57 additions to buildings, 2009 V1: 265-266 adhesives, 2009 V1: 16 adiabatic compression, 2009 V1: 16 adjustable, defined, 2008 V4: 134 adjustable diverter plate, fountains, 2011 V3: 103 adjustable high-pressure propane regulators, 2010 V2: 133 adjustment devices, 2008 V4: 134 adjustment section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 72 administrative and operation costs in value engineering. See overhead administrative authorities, 2009 V1: 16 admiralty brass, 2009 V1: 132 adsorption, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 178-179, 2008 V4: 220 adult-sized wheelchairs, dimensions, 2009 V1: 100. See also wheelchairs Advanced Chem, 2008 V4: 224 advanced oxidation water treatment, 2010 V2: 218 Advanced Plumbing Technology, 2010 V2: 46, 47, 55 aerated lagoons, 2011 V3: 88 aeration, 2009 V1: 16, 2008 V4: 196-197 aeration cells, 2009 V1: 141 aerators aeration treatment, 2010 V2: 197-198, 218 lavatories and sinks, 2011 V3: 35 Provent aerators, 2010 V2: 17-18 Sovent aerators, 2010 V2: 17-18 aerobic, defined, 2009 V1: 16 aerobic bioremediation, 2008 V4: 249 aerobic digestion, biosolids, 2008 V4: 263 aerobic wastewater treatment plants, 2010 V2: 150 aerosols, 2009 V1: 16 AFF (above-finished floor), 2009 V1: 14 AFFF foam concentrates, 2011 V3: 25 after cold pull elevation, 2008 V4: 134 after-coolers, 2009 V1: 16 air compressors, 2011 V3: 174, 178 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 after-cooling, defined, 2011 V3: 183 AGA (American Gas Association) defined. 2009 V1: 32 relief valve standards, 2010 V2: 106 water heating standards, 2010 V2: 112 age of water mains, 2011 V3: 6 age-related disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 agglomeration, 2008 V4: 157 aggressiveness index, 2010 V2: 196 aging, 2009 V1: 16 aging disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 aging water mains, 2011 V3: 6 agitators in kill tanks, 2010 V2: 242 agreement documents, 2009 V1: 56 agreement states, 2010 V2: 238 AHJ. See authorities having jurisdiction

AHRI (Air Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute), 2009 V1: 46 AI (aggressiveness index), 2010 V2: 196 AIA (American Institute of Architects). See American Institute of Architects air compressed, 2009 V1: 16 depleted in air chambers, 2010 V2: 72 expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 233-234 free, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 171-172, 186 oil-free, 2011 V3: 76 in pipes, 2010 V2: 2 pollutants, 2011 V3: 264-265 properties, 2011 V3: 171-172, 263-266 standard, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 187 water vapor in, 2011 V3: 172-173 air, compressed. See compressed air air, free, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 171-172, 186 air, oil-free, 2011 V3: 76 air, standard, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 187 air-admittance valves, 2009 V1: 16, 43, 2010 V2: 39 air-bleed vacuum controls, 2010 V2: 179 air-bleed valves, 2010 V2: 171 air breaks. See air gaps air chambers (AC) defined, 2009 V1: 16 symbols for, 2009 V1: 11 water hammer arresters, 2010 V2: 72 air circuits in instrumentation, 2011 V3: 171 air compressors accessories, 2011 V3: 177-182 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 174-176 dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 8 laboratory inlet piping, 2011 V3: 280 medical systems, 2011 V3: 61-62 pulsation, 2011 V3: 177 sizing, 2011 V3: 183 types of, 2011 V3: 174-176 vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 169-170 AIR COND (air conditioning). See air-conditioning systems Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI), 2008 V4: 243 air-conditioning cooling towers. See cooling-tower water air-conditioning engineers, 2011 V3: 29 Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI), 2009 V1: 46 air-conditioning systems (AIR COND) direct water connections, 2008 V4: 184 fixture-unit values, 2010 V2: 8 pipes, 2008 V4: 31 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123 water chillers, 2008 V4: 237 air-consuming devices, 2011 V3: 180 air-cooled after-coolers, 2011 V3: 178 air densities, calculating, 2009 V1: 5 air drvers compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 178-179 deliquescent drvers, 2011 V3: 178 desiccant dryers, 2011 V3: 179 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 63 refrigerated air dryers, 2011 V3: 178

selection, 2011 V3: 179 air filters hydrophilic and hydrophobic, 2008 V4: 213-214 stills, 2008 V4: 213-214 air gaps. See also effective openings applications, 2008 V4: 185 booster pumps and, 2010 V2: 64 defined, 2009 V1: 16, 2008 V4: 177, 180 shortfalls, 2008 V4: 176 standards, 2008 V4: 172 air-gate valves, 2010 V2: 179 air-handling units, condensate traps, 2011 V3: 167 air intakes, 2011 V3: 182, 2008 V4: 163 air lines ABS pipe, 2008 V4: 54 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 air locks, 2009 V1: 16 air pressure, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 8 air purges in vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 air receivers, 2011 V3: 177-178 air solar systems, 2011 V3: 192 air springs in noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 197 air temperature condensate estimates, 2011 V3: 167 swimming pools and, 2011 V3: 108 air tests in cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 90 defined, 2009 V1: 16 air velocity in vacuum cleaning systems, 183, 2010 V2: 181 air vents in centralized drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 246airborne contamination, 2008 V4: 213 airborne noise, 2009 V1: 187, 190 aircraft cable bracing method, 2009 V1: 160 aircraft fuel, 2010 V2: 12 airgaps. See air gaps airport runways, piping underneath, 2008 V4: 120 AISC. See American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) aL/min (actual liters per minute), 2011 V3: 187 alachlor levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 ALARA (as low as reasonably achievable), 2010 V2: 238 alarm check valves, 2009 V1: 13, 16, 2011 V3: 6 alarm lines on sprinklers, 2011 V3: 6 alarm relays, 2011 V3: 28 alarms defined, 2009 V1: 16, 2011 V3: 76 on aboveground tanks, 2011 V3: 149 on bulk oxygen supply, 2011 V3: 59 on compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 182 on corrosive-waste systems, 2011 V3: 43 on hazardous waste systems, 2011 V3: 84 on kill tanks, 2010 V2: 242 on laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 275 on medical gas systems area alarms, 2011 V3: 67 master alarms, 2011 V3: 67 testing, 2011 V3: 74-75 on pressurized fuel delivery systems, 2011 V3: 145 on vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 169, 173 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 141, 148 Alaska Earthquake, 2009 V1: 152 Albern, W.F., 2010 V2: 186

alcohol-resistant AFFF foam concentrates, 2011 V3: 25 algae, 2010 V2: 188, 195, 2008 V4: 199, 220-221 alignment, storm drainage piping, 2010 V2: 47 alkali, 2009 V1: 16 alkali neutralization, 2008 V4: 196 alkalinity after ion exchange, 2008 V4: 198-199 alkaline solutions in corrosion rates, 2009 V1: 134 boiler feed water, 2010 V2: 216 cork and, 2008 V4: 149 dealkalizing treatment, 2010 V2: 199 defined, 2008 V4: 221 distillation feed water, 2008 V4: 212 low-alkalinity water, 2008 V4: 198 measuring, 2010 V2: 189 neutralization of water, 2008 V4: 196 pH and, 2010 V2: 192, 228-229, 2011 V3: 85 predicting scale and corrosion, 2010 V2: 196 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127-131 water saturation, 2010 V2: 196 all-service jackets (ASJ), 2008 V4: 108, 110 allowable gas pressure, 2010 V2: 119-121 allowable leakage in compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 183 allowable radiation levels, 2010 V2: 237 allowable vacuum system pressure loss, 2010 V2: 174 alloy pipes, 2009 V1: 17 alloys, 2009 V1: 16, 2008 V4: 134 alpha ray radiation, 2010 V2: 236-237 alterations (altrn, ALTRN), 2009 V1: 265-266 alternate bracing attachments for pipes, 2009 V1: 167 alternating current (ac, AC), 2009 V1: 14 alternative collection and treatment of waste water, 2010 V2: 144-145, 149 alternative energy sources, 2009 V1: 121-126 alternative sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 16-19 Alternatives for Small Wastewater Treatment Systems: Cost-Effectiveness Analysis, 2010 V2: 154 Alternatives for Small Wastewater Treatment Systems: On-site Disposal/Seepage Treatment and Disposal, 2010 V2: 154 Alternatives for Small Wastewater Treatment Systems: Pressure Sewers/Vacuum Sewers, 2010 V2: 154 alternators medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 65 altitude (alt, ALT), 2011 V3: 183. See also elevation air pressure corrections, 2011 V3: 264 natural gas and, 2010 V2: 121 altitude correction factor (ACF), 121, 2010 V2: 117 altitude valves, 2010 V2: 163-164 alum, 2010 V2: 199, 2008 V4: 201 aluminosilicates, 2011 V3: 179 aluminum, 2009 V1: 129, 132, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 187 aluminum 1100, 2009 V1: 132 aluminum 2017 and 2024, 2009 V1: 132 aluminum gas cylinders, 2011 V3: 268 aluminum hydroxide, 2010 V2: 189 aluminum jackets, 2008 V4: 108 aluminum mills, 2011 V3: 26 aluminum piping, 2010 V2: 122, 2011 V3: 49, 277, 2008 V4: 59 aluminum silicates, 2010 V2: 205

aluminum sulfate, 2010 V2: 199, 2008 V4: 201 aluminum tubing, 2010 V2: 122 ambient temperature defined. 2009 V1: 17 drinking-water coolers and, 2008 V4: 238 hangers and supports for systems, 2008 V4: 126 piping for ambient temperatures, 2008 V4: 125 ambulatory accessible stalls, 2009 V1: 106 Amerian Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Airconditioning Engineers ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals, 2010 V2: 136 American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) H20-44 standard, 2008 V4: 252 American Chemical Society, 2009 V1: 142 American Concrete Institute (ACI), 2010 V2: 54, 2008 V4: 252 American Consulting Engineers Council (ACEC), 2009 V1:56 American Gas Association (AGA), 2010 V2: 117 abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 codes and standards, 115, 2010 V2: 114, 115 relief valve standards, 2010 V2: 106 water heating standards, 2010 V2: 112 American Institute of Architects (AIA) General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, 2009 V1: 56 Masterspec, 2009 V1: 65 medical gas guidelines, 2011 V3: 51 specifications format, 2009 V1: 57 American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), 2009 V1: 14 American National Standards Institute (ANSI) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 consensus process, 2009 V1: 41 gas approvals, 2010 V2: 114 list of standards, 2009 V1: 45-46 MSS standards and, 2008 V4: 73 publications, 2009 V1: 41 ANSI A112.2.1, 2008 V4: 184 ANSI A112.6.1, 2008 V4: 6 ANSI A112.18.3, 2008 V4: 13 ANSI A112.19.6, 2008 V4: 5, 9 ANSI A117.1-1980, 2009 V1: 97 ANSI A117.1-1986, 2009 V1: 97 ANSI A117.1-1998, 2009 V1: 97, 98, 99-115, 2008 V4: 2, 13 ANSI/ASME B16.18 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings, 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B16.22 Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings, 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B36.10: Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe, 2010 V2: 122 ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4 Cement Mortar Lining, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C105/A21.5 Polyethylene Encasement, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 Fitting, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11 Rubber-Gasket Joints, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C115/A21.15 Flanged Pipe, 2008 V4:

28ANSI/AWWA C116/A21.16 Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50 Thickness Design, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51 Manufacturing, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53 Compact Fittings, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C600 Installation, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI B16.10, 2008 V4: 89 ANSI B16.21, 2008 V4: 65 ANSI B31.9: Building Services Plumbing, 2008 V4: 61 ANSI LC/CSA 6.26: Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing, 2010 V2: 122 ANSI/NFPA 30: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, 2010 V2: 115 ANSI/NFPA 54: National Fuel Gas Code, 2011 V3: 251, 256 ANSI/UL 144: Pressure Regulating Values for Liquified Petroleum Gas, 2010 V2: 115 ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27: Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances and Manufactured Homes, 2010 V2: 124 ANSI Z83.3: Gas Utilization Equipment for Large Boilers, 2010 V2: 115 ANSI Z358.1, 2008 V4: 17 ANSI ZE 86.1: Commodity Specification for Air, 2011 V3: 61, 76 ASA A117.1-1961, 2009 V1: 97 ASME/ANSI B16.23 Cast Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 ASME/ANSI B16.26 Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tube, 2008 V4: 32 ASME/ANSI B16.29 Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 Connectors for Gas Appliances, 2010 V2: 124 Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances, 2010 V2: 124NSF/ANSI 50: Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Other Recreational Water Facilities, 2011 V3: 111, 122 NSF Standard no. 61, 2008 V4: 56 Z1001 standard, 2008 V4: 153 water quality standards, 2010 V2: 220 web site, 2011 V3: 89 American Petroleum Institute (API) API abbreviation, 2009 V1: 14 emergency vent standards, 2011 V3: 148 fiberglass pipe standards, 2008 V4: 56 publications AOIRP 1004: Bottom Loading and Vapor Recovery for MC-306 Tank Motor Vehicles, 2011 V3: 156API Bulletin no. 1611: Service Station Tankage Guide, 2011 V3: 156 API Bulletin no. 1615: Installation of Underground Gasoline Tanks and Piping at Service

Stations, 2011 V3: 156

API Specification 12D: Field Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids, 2011 V3: 88 API Specification 12F: Shot Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids, 2011 V3: 88 API Standard 650: Welded Tanks for Oil Storage, 2011 V3: 88 removal of globules standards, 2010 V2: 245 separators, 2011 V3: 88 valve standards, 2008 V4: 73 web site, 2011 V3: 89, 156 American Public Health Service, 2010 V2: 193 American Rainwater Catchment Systems Association, 2008 V4: 265 American Society for Healthcare Engineering (ASHE), 2010 V2: 108-109 American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 ASTM A53 piping, 2011 V3: 257 ASTM A106 piping, 2011 V3: 257 ASTM B819 tubing, 2011 V3: 69 consensus process, 2009 V1: 41 electronics-grade water standards, 220, 2010 V2: 219 high-purity water standards, 2010 V2: 218-219 list of standards, 2009 V1: 41, 49-51 membrane filters, 2010 V2: 194 plastic pipe and tubing standards, 2010 V2: 123-124 publications A-53 standard, 2008 V4: 48 A-74 standard, 2008 V4: 23, 24 A-106 standard, 2008 V4: 48 A-126 standard, 2008 V4: 78, 85 A-135 standard, 2008 V4: 48 A-240 standard, 2008 V4: 108 A-270: Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Sanitary Tubing, 2011 V3: 276 A-304 standard, 2008 V4: 108 A-518 standard, 2008 V4: 59 A-536 standard, 2008 V4: 85 A-716: Culvert Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 A-746: Gravity Sewer Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 A-861 standard, 2008 V4: 59 A-888 standard, 2008 V4: 24 B-16.9 standard, 2008 V4: 48 B-16.11 standard, 2008 V4: 48 B-16.23: Cast Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 B-16.28 standard, 2008 V4: 48 B-16.50: Wrought Copper Braze Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 B-62 standard, 2008 V4: 85 B-75: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, 2011 V3: 276, 2008 V4: 32 B-88: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, 2011 V3: 276, 2008 V4: 32 B-99 standard, 2008 V4: 85 B-209 standard, 2008 V4: 108 B-210: Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes,

2011 V3: 277 B-280: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and

Refrigeration Field Service, 2011 V3: 276, 2008 V4: 32 B-306: Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV), 2008 V4: 32, 41 B-371 standard, 2008 V4: 85 B-584: Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Applications, 2008 V4: 32 B-813: Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube, 2008 V4: 32, 62 B-819: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems, 2011 V3: 276, 2008 V4: 32 B-828: Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings, 2008 V4: 32, 62 B-837: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gas Fuel Distribution Systems, 2008 V4: 32 C-12 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-14: Standard Specification for Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe for Nonreinforced Concrete, 2008 V4: 28 C-33: Specification for Concrete Aggregates, 2008 V4: 252 C-76: Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culverts, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe, 2008 V4: 38 C-94: Specification for Ready Mix Concrete, 2008 V4: 252 C-150: Specification for Portland Cement, 2008 V4: 252C-260: Specification for Air Entraining Admixtures for Concrete, 2008 V4: 252 C-301 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-425 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-443: Standard Specification for Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets, 2008 V4: 32 C-533 standard, 2008 V4: 107 C-534 standard, 2008 V4: 106-107 C-547 standard, 2008 V4: 106 C-552 standard, 2008 V4: 107 C-564 standard, 2008 V4: 24, 60 C-578 standard, 2008 V4: 107 C-591 standard, 2008 V4: 107 C-655: Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete D-Load Culvert Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe for Reinforced Concrete Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 C-700 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-828 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-896 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-1091 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-1208 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-1277 standard, 2008 V4: 61 C-1540 standard, 2008 V4: 24 D-638 standard, 2008 V4: 55 D-696 standard, 2008 V4: 227 D-1527 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-1785 standard, 2008 V4: 53

D-2235 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2239 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2241 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2464 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2466 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2467 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2564 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2609 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2661 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2665 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2672 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2680 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2729 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2737 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2751 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2846 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2863: Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candlelike Combustion of Plastics, 2011 V3: 77 D-2996 standard, 2008 V4: 56 D-3035 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-3222 standard, 2008 V4: 55 D-3309 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-5127 standard, 2008 V4: 55 E-84 standard, 2008 V4: 106 F-437 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-438 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-439 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-441 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-442 standard, 2008 V4: 54 F 628 standard, 2008 V4: 54 F-771 standard, 2008 V4: 51 F-810 standard, 2008 V4: 51 F-876 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-877 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-894 standard, 2008 V4: 51 F-1055 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1056 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1281 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-1282 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-1290-989: Electrofusion Joining Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings, 2008 V4: 63 F-1290 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1412 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1673 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-2014 standard, 2008 V4: 61 F-2389 standard, 2008 V4: 55 reagent-grade water standards, 2010 V2: 187, 218-219, 2008 V4: 218 steel gas pipe specifications, 2010 V2: 122 surface burning pipe characteristics, 2010 V2: 224 American Society of Civil Engineers Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures, 2009 V1: 147, 174, 185 American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) contract publications, 2009 V1: 56 sewer publications, 2010 V2: 55 American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 cold water systems, 2010 V2: 96 Legionella standards, 2010 V2: 108-109

list of standards, 2009 V1: 46 publications Equipment Handbook, 2011 V3: 204 Handbook of Fundamentals, 2009 V1: 2, 5, 6, 39, 2011 V3: 169, 203 Standard 15, 2008 V4: 247 Standard 18: Methods of Testing for Rating Drinking Water Coolers with Self-Contained Mechanical Refrigeration Systems, 2008 V4: 243, 247 Standard 90.1, 2008 V4: 116 Systems and Applications Handbook, 2011 V3: 204 water heating codes and standards, 2010 V2: 112 American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 air receivers, 2011 V3: 177 Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 2010 V2: 112 drinking water cooler standards, 2008 V4: 247 list of standards, 2009 V1: 46-48 propane tank specifications, 2010 V2: 132 publications ANSI/ASME A112.6.1, 2008 V4: 6 ANSI/ASME A112.18.1, 2008 V4: 13 ANSI/ASME A112.19.6, 2008 V4: 5, 9 ANSI/ASME B16.18: Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings, 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B16.22: Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings, 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B16.23: Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings (DWV), 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B16.24: Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B16.26: Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tube, 2008 V4: 32 ANSI/ASME B16.29: Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings (DWV), 2008 V4: 32, 42 ANSI/ASME B16.39: Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings (DWV), 2008 V4: 32 ASME A17.1: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, 2011 V3: 29 ASME A112.18.8: Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Hot Tubs, 2011 V3: 101, 104, 112, 135 ASME B31.3: Process Piping Design, 2011 V3: 176, 277 ASME International Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. 2011 V3: 88 Fuel-Gas Piping, 2010 V2: 136 Grease Removal Devices, 2008 V4: 166 relief valve standards, 2010 V2: 106 web site, 2011 V3: 89 Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe, 2010 V2: 122 American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 Domestic Water Heating Design Manual, 2010 V2: 96, 2011 V3: 47 list of standards. 2009 V1: 48 medical gas station guidelines, 2011 V3: 51, 52 publications Plumbing Engineering and Design Handbook of

Tables, 2010 V2: 130 Siphonic Roof Drainage, 2010 V2: 55 American Society of Plumbing Engineers Research Foundation (ASPERF), 2009 V1: 32 American Society of Sanitary Engineering (ASSE) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 ASSE 1001 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1002, 2008 V4: 8 ASSE 1011 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1012 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1013 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1015 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1020 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1024 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1035 standard, 2008 V4: 185 ASSE 1056 standard, 2008 V4: 185 cross connection control, 2008 V4: 179 list of standards, 2009 V1: 48-49 water hammer arrester certification, 2010 V2: 72 American standard pipe threads, 2009 V1: 17 American Standard Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Usable by the Physically Handicapped, 2009 V1: 97 American Standards Association. See American National Standards Institute (ANSI) American Water Works Association (AWWA) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14, 32 cold water systems, 2010 V2: 94 cross connection control, 2008 V4: 179 list of standards, 2009 V1: 51 publications ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4: Cement Mortar Lining, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C105/A21.5: Polyethylene Encasement, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10: Fittings, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11: Rubber-Gasket Joints, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C115/A21.15: Flanged Pipe, 2008 V4: 28ANSI/AWWA C116/A21.16: Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50: Thickness Design, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51: Manufacturing, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53: Compact Fittings, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C509-89: Standard for Resilient-Seated Gate Valves, 2008 V4: 85 ANSI/AWWA C509: Standard for Resilient-Seated Gate Valves, 2008 V4: 90 ANSI/AWWA C550-90: Standard for Protective Epoxy Interior Coating for Values, 2008 V4:85 ANSI/AWWA C550: Standard for Protective Epoxy Interior Coating for Valves, 2008 V4: 90 ANSI/AWWA C600: Installation, 2008 V4: 28 ANSI/AWWA C651: Disinfecting, 2008 V4: 28 AWWA Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains, 2010 V2: 95 AWWA Standard for Disinfection of Water Storage

Facilities, 2010 V2: 95 AWWA Standard for Hypochlorites, 2010 V2: 95 AWWA Standard for Liquid Chlorine, 2010 V2: 95 Recommended Practice for Backflow Prevention and Cross-connection Control, 2010 V2: 95 water purveyor responsibility statement, 2008 V4: 184 water usage data, 2008 V4: 255 web site, 2008 V4: 224 American Welding Society (AWS), 2009 V1: 51, 159, 2008 V4: 61 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) ADAAG Review Federal Advisory Committee, 2009 V1: 115 faucet flow rates, 2009 V1: 128 fixture standards, 2008 V4: 2 history, 2009 V1: 98-99 overview, 2009 V1: 97, 98-99 swimming pool guidelines, 2011 V3: 135 Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG), 2009 V1: 98-99 Amin, P., 2010 V2: 224 amines in boiler feed water, 2008 V4: 214 ammonia (NH₃), 2010 V2: 189, 199, 2008 V4: 211–212 ammonium alum, 2008 V4: 201 ammonium hydroxide (NH₄OH), 2008 V4: 211-212 amoebic dysentery, 2008 V4: 171 amp, AMP, AMPS (ampere). See amperes ampacity, 2011 V3: 76 amperes (A, amp, AMP, AMPS) amperes per meter, 2009 V1: 33 corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 measurement conversions, 2009 V1: 33 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 amphoteric corrosion, defined, 2009 V1: 141 amphoteric materials, 2009 V1: 134 amplification factor in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 177 amplifiers, 2009 V1: 17 amplitude, 2009 V1: 17 amusement parks drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 anaerobic, defined, 2009 V1: 17, 141 anaerobic bacteria in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 anaerobic bioremediation, 2008 V4: 249 anaerobic digestion, biosolids, 2008 V4: 263 anaerobic wastewater treatment, 2011 V3: 88 analysis, 2009 V1: 17 Analysis phase of value engineering, 2009 V1: 209, 218-223. See also Function Analysis phase in value engineering analytical grade water, 2010 V2: 219 anchor bolts, 2008 V4: 134 anchoring equipment anchorage forces in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 180 anchors, defined, 2009 V1: 185 fire-protection equipment, 2011 V3: 28 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 153 anchoring pipes, 2010 V2: 16, 54 anchors, defined, 2008 V4: 134 anchors for hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 127-131 DWV stacks, 2008 V4: 229 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 125 types of anchors, 2008 V4: 63-65, 123

water hammer and, 2008 V4: 119 anchors, defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2008 V4: 134 anesthesia workrooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 39 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical air, 2011 V3: 53 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52 anesthetic gas management, 2011 V3: 65-66 anesthetics, 2011 V3: 76 anesthetizing locations, 2011 V3: 76 ANG (angle). See angles (ANG) angle-globe valves, 2008 V4: 83 angle of incidence, defined, 2011 V3: 190 angle of reflection, defined, 2011 V3: 190 angle of refraction, defined, 2011 V3: 190 angle snubbers, 2009 V1: 156 angle stops, 2009 V1: 17 angle valves (AV), 2009 V1: 9, 17 abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 14 defined, 2008 V4: 76 resistance coefficients, 2010 V2: 92 stems, 2008 V4: 79 angled grates in school shower rooms, 2010 V2: 11 angles (ANG), measurements, 2009 V1: 34 angles of bend, 2009 V1: 17 angular acceleration measurements, 2009 V1: 34 angular velocity measurements, 2009 V1: 34 animal research centers, 2010 V2: 241, 2011 V3: 52 animal shelters, 2010 V2: 15 animal treatment rooms, 2011 V3: 47 anion exchange anion exchangers defined, 2008 V4: 197 in water treatment, 2008 V4: 187 anions anion resins, 2010 V2: 191, 207 defined, 2009 V1: 17, 141, 2010 V2: 187, 2008 V4: 197, 221 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 134 in ion exchange, 2010 V2: 205 in pH values, 2010 V2: 229 annealed temper (soft), 2008 V4: 32annealing, 2009 V1: 17 annual costs. See costs and economic concerns annular chambers in dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 8 annular spaces in wells, 2010 V2: 156, 158 annunciators, 2011 V3: 28 anodes anode expected life, 2009 V1: 138 anodic protection, 2009 V1: 141 defined, 2009 V1: 129, 141 galvanic series of metals, 2009 V1: 132 sacrificial anodes, 2009 V1: 137 anodic inhibitors, 2009 V1: 141 anodic potential (electronegative potential), 2009 V1: 14 anodic protection, defined, 2009 V1: 141 ANSI. See American National Standards Institute (ANSI) anthracite coal filters, 2010 V2: 160, 201 anthropometrics for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101 anti-cross-connection precautions, 2010 V2: 27 anti-siphon ballcocks, 2008 V4: 8 antifreeze, 2009 V1: 122, 2008 V4: 189-190 antifreeze systems, fire sprinklers, 2011 V3: 11

antisiphons, 2009 V1: 17 apartment buildings firefighting demand flow rates, 2011 V3: 224 gas demand. 2010 V2: 123, 124, 130 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99, 100 natural gas demand, 2010 V2: 123 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 187 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 API. See American Petroleum Institute appearance functions defined, 2009 V1: 218 in value engineering, 2009 V1: 223 appearance of pipes, 2009 V1: 262-263, 2008 V4: 105, 107 appliance gas regulators, 2010 V2: 117 appliances. See also fixtures appliance regulators, 2010 V2: 117 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43-44 flexible gas connections, 2010 V2: 124 gas control valves, 118, 2010 V2: 115 gas demand, 2010 V2: 115, 116 gas regulators, 2011 V3: 254-255 propane vaporizers, 2010 V2: 134 venting systems, 2010 V2: 118 Applied Polymer Science, 2008 V4: 224 Applied Technology Council (ATC), 2009 V1: 174, 185 approaches (heat), 2009 V1: 17 approaches to toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 106 approvals for radioactive materials systems, 2010 V2: 238 for special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 227-228 approved, defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2008 V4: 180 approved testing agencies, 2009 V1: 17 approximate values, 2009 V1: 33 aquastats, 2009 V1: 10 Aqueous Film-Forming Foam (AFFF), 2011 V3: 25 aquifers defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2010 V2: 155 formation of, 2010 V2: 155 potentiometric surfaces, 2010 V2: 157 unconsolidated aquifers, 2010 V2: 157 Arabic numerals, 2009 V1: 33 arcades, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 Architect-engineers Turf Sprinkler Manual, 2011 V3: 96 architect's supplemental instructions (ASI), 2009 V1: 57 Architectural Barriers Act (90-480), 2009 V1: 98 area (A) calculating, 2009 V1: 3-5 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 area, aperture, defined, 2011 V3: 190 area, gross collector, defined, 2011 V3: 190 area alarms, 2011 V3: 50, 67, 75 area drains (ad), 2009 V1: 14, 17 areas of sprinkler operation, 2011 V3: 12 areaways, 2009 V1: 17 arenas, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 ARI (Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute), 2008 V4: 243 arm baths, 2010 V2: 99, 2011 V3: 36, 38, 40

Army Corps of Engineers, 2009 V1: 57 arresters for water hammer. See water hammer arresters arsenic levels in drinking water. 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 articulated-ceiling medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 56 "as built," defined, 2008 V4: 134 "as low as reasonably achievable" (ALARA), 2010 V2: 238 ASA. See American National Standards Institute (ANSI) ASA A117.1-1961, 2009 V1: 97 asbestos cement piping, 2010 V2: 75, 2011 V3: 242 asbestos in water, 2008 V4: 187 ASCE. See American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) ASHE (American Society for Healthcare Engineering), 2010 V2: 108-109 ASHRAE. See American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE) ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals, 2010 V2: 136 ASI (architect's supplemental instructions), 2009 V1: 57 ASJ (all-service jackets), 2008 V4: 108, 110 ASME. See American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) ASPE. See American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE) ASPERF (American Society of Plumbing Engineers Research Foundation), 2009 V1: 32 asphalt-dipped piping, 2010 V2: 78 asphalt mixers, 2010 V2: 133 asphalt pavement, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 asphyxiant gases, 2009 V1: 17 aspirators, 2009 V1: 17, 2011 V3: 40, 2008 V4: 184 ASSE. See American Society of Sanitary Engineering (ASSE) assemblies, defined, 2008 V4: 134 assembly costs, 2009 V1: 210 assembly halls drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 single-occupant toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 18 assisted creativity, 2009 V1: 227 assisted living facilities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 Association for the Advancement of Medical Instrumentation (AAMI), 2010 V2: 187, 219, 220 Association of Pool and Spa Professionals (APSP), 2011 V3: 104 Association of State Drinking Water Administrators, 2010 V2: 155 ASTM. See American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) ASTs (aboveground storage tanks). See aboveground tank systems asynchronous, defined, 2009 V1: 17 ATBCB (U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board), 2009 V1: 98, 99 ATC-3 (Tentative Provisions for the Development of Seismic Regulations for Buildings), 2009 V1: 174, 185 Atienze, J., 2010 V2: 29 atm, ATM (atmospheres). See atmospheres atmospheres (atm, ATM) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38

vacuum units, 2010 V2: 166

atmospheric backflow preventers, 2008 V4: 185 atmospheric pressure Boyle's law, 2008 V4: 233-234 defined, 2008 V4: 177 atmospheric pressure breakers, 2008 V4: 177 atmospheric pressure in vacuum, 2010 V2: 165 atmospheric regulators, 2011 V3: 255 atmospheric tanks defined, 2011 V3: 136 foam, 2011 V3: 25 venting, 2011 V3: 141 atmospheric vacuum breakers (AVB) defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2008 V4: 177, 180 dual check with atmospheric vent devices, 2008 V4: 180, 185 faucets, 2008 V4: 13 illustrated, 2008 V4: 175 irrigation sprinklers, 2011 V3: 95 atmospheric vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 atmospheric vent devices, 2008 V4: 180, 185 atmospheric vents (steam or hot vapor) (ATV), 2009 V1: 9 atomic absorption spectrophotometry, 2008 V4: 218 atomic weight, 2009 V1: 17 atrazine levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 attachments, 2009 V1: 185 "atto" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 ATV (atmospheric vents), 2009 V1: 9 Auciello, Eugene P., 2010 V2: 55 auditoriums, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 augered wells, 2010 V2: 156 austenitic stainless steel, 2008 V4: 59 authorities having jurisdiction alterations to existing buildings, 2009 V1: 266 alternative sanitary systems, 2010 V2: 16 clean agent fire-suppression systems, 2011 V3: 27 cross-connection programs, 2008 V4: 177 defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2011 V3: 76 fire-protection system design, 2011 V3: 1 fixture vents, 2010 V2: 32 gas approvals, 2010 V2: 114 laboratory gas systems, 2010 V2: 121, 2011 V3: 263 manholes, 2011 V3: 225 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 51 public sewer availability, 2011 V3: 225 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104, 107 vent stacks, 2010 V2: 39-40 autoclaves, 2008 V4: 184 autoignition, 2009 V1: 17 automatic air vents (AAV), 2009 V1: 10 automatic alternators, 2011 V3: 65 automatic controls on ion exchangers, 2008 V4: 198 automatic drain valves, 2011 V3: 95 automatic drains in vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 65 automatic dry standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20 automatic fire-detection devices, 2011 V3: 9 automatic fire-protection systems history and objectives, 2011 V3: 1 pipes and hangers, 2011 V3: 18, 19 automatic flushometer valves, 2008 V4: 8 automatic grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 159-160

automatic grease recovery devices, 2008 V4: 185

automatic heat-up method, condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 164 automatic overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 148 automatic overrides for irrigation controllers, 2011 V3: 95 automatic purity monitors, 2008 V4: 214 automatic softeners, 2008 V4: 221 automatic sprinkler systems combined dry-pipe and pre-action, 2011 V3: 10-11 design density, 2011 V3: 11-12 elevator shafts, 2011 V3: 29 fire hazard evaluation, 2011 V3: 2 fire pumps for, 2011 V3: 21-22 foam fire-suppression systems and, 2011 V3: 25 history, 2011 V3: 1 hydraulic design, 2011 V3: 11-13 numbers of sprinklers in operation, 2011 V3: 12 pipes, 2011 V3: 9 pipes and hangers, 2011 V3: 18, 19 pre-action systems, 2011 V3: 9 system design, 2011 V3: 2-18 types, 2009 V1: 28-29, 2011 V3: 6-11 water supplies, 2011 V3: 2-6 Automatic Sprinkler Systems Handbook, 2009 V1: 185 automatic storage water heaters, 2010 V2: 101 automatic tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 automatic trap primers, 2010 V2: 11 automatic wet standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20 automotive traffic, 2010 V2: 11 autopsy rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 38, 40 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 non-potable water, 2011 V3: 47 auxiliary energy subsystems, 2011 V3: 190 auxiliary stops, 2008 V4: 134 auxiliary water supplies defined, 2008 V4: 180 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 AV (acid vents), 2009 V1: 8, 16 AV (angle valves). See angle valves (AV) availability. See demand availability of water, 2009 V1: 17 available vacuum, safety factors and, 2010 V2: 186 AVB. See atmospheric vacuum breakers (AVB) average flow rates for fixtures, 2008 V4: 207 average water use, 2009 V1: 117 AW (acid wastes), 2009 V1: 8, 16, 2011 V3: 42-46, 2008 V4: 54 AWS. See American Welding Society (AWS) AWWA. See American Water Works Association (AWWA) axial braces, 2008 V4: 134 axial motions, hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 119, 124 axial pumps, 2008 V4: 93-97 Ayres, J.M., 2009 V1: 185

B

B-16.9 standard, 2008 V4: 48 *B-16.11 standard*, 2008 V4: 48 *B-16.28 standard*, 2008 V4: 48 back pressure tests, 2008 V4: 5 back pressures in pipes, 2010 V2: 2, 4, 2011 V3: 255, 2008 V4: 170-171, 171 back-siphonage, 2010 V2: 94, 2011 V3: 95. See also backflow defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2008 V4: 177, 180 devices for, 2008 V4: 185 reverse flow, cause of, 2008 V4: 170-171 back-spud water closets, 2008 V4: 3 back-to-back water closets, 2008 V4: 6 backfilling around septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 backfill defined, 2009 V1: 17 building sewers and, 2010 V2: 14-15 labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87, 88 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 137, 155 backflow. See also back-siphonage backflow connections, defined, 2009 V1: 17 defined, 2009 V1: 17, 2010 V2: 94, 2008 V4: 177, 180 devices for, 2008 V4: 185 prevention, 2008 V4: 173-176, 177 swing check valves, 2008 V4: 77 testing devices, 2008 V4: 183 backflow preventers (BFP) applications, 2008 V4: 185 codes, 2009 V1: 42 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 60 cross-connection control devices, 2010 V2: 60-61 defined, 2009 V1: 14, 17, 2008 V4: 177, 178-179, 180 domestic cold water systems, 2010 V2: 60 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 214-216 existing devices, 2008 V4: 183 faucets, 2008 V4: 13-14 fire-protection connections, 2011 V3: 217, 220 fixtures in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35 pressure loss, 2011 V3: 215 reduced pressure zones, 2011 V3: 215 spill proof indoors, 2008 V4: 185 thermal expansion compensation and, 2010 V2: 106 vacuum breakers, 2011 V3: 35, 46 background levels of radiation, 2010 V2: 237 backing rings, 2009 V1: 17 backpressure, 2009 V1: 17 backpressure appliance regulators, 2010 V2: 117 backup, defined, 2009 V1: 17 backup demineralizers, 2011 V3: 48 backup storm-drainage systems, 2010 V2: 52 backwash from water softeners, 2010 V2: 160, 210 backwashing defined, 2008 V4: 221 filters, 2010 V2: 201, 2008 V4: 203 pressure differential switches, 2008 V4: 203 in regeneration cycle, 2010 V2: 206 backwater valves, 2009 V1: 17, 43, 2010 V2: 12 bacteria biological fouling, 2010 V2: 195, 217 chemical control, 2010 V2: 213 copper-silver ionization, 2008 V4: 220 defined, 2008 V4: 221 demineralizer systems, 2011 V3: 48 distilled water and, 2011 V3: 47-48, 2008 V4: 195, 212 in drinking water, 2010 V2: 160, 2008 V4: 186

in feed water, 2010 V2: 188 in filters, 2010 V2: 201 in hot water, 2011 V3: 47 killing in water systems, 2010 V2: 109-111 laboratory grade water and, 2008 V4: 218 ozone treatments and, 2008 V4: 215-216 in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 solar water heating and, 2011 V3: 196 in storm water, 2010 V2: 27, 43 in water-heating systems, 2010 V2: 108-111 in wells, 2010 V2: 158 bacteriological examination, 2008 V4: 221 baffle systems bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 158 in stills, 2008 V4: 213 water distillation, 2011 V3: 48 baffleplates, 2009 V1: 17 bag-filter gross filtration, 2010 V2: 201 Bahamas, gray-water systems in, 2010 V2: 27 bailers, 2011 V3: 144 baking soda, 2008 V4: 193 balanced-piston valves, 2008 V4: 81 balancing cocks, 2008 V4: 246 balancing valves (BLV), 2009 V1: 9 ball check valves, 2009 V1: 18 ball joints, 2009 V1: 18, 161, 2008 V4: 64 ball removal tests, 2008 V4: 5 Ball Valves, 2008 V4: 85, 86, 87, 90 ball valves (BV), 2009 V1: 9, 14, 18, 2010 V2: 92, 230 compressed-air systems, 2008 V4: 86 defined, 2008 V4: 76-77 high-rise service, 2008 V4: 90 hot and cold water supply service, 2008 V4: 85 low-pressure steam systems, 2008 V4: 87 medical gas service, 2011 V3: 67, 2008 V4: 87 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194 quarter-turn, 2008 V4: 84 vacuum system service, 2008 V4: 87 Ballanco, Julius, 2010 V2: 55 ballast pads, 2011 V3: 155 ballcocks, 2008 V4: 8 Baltimore Dept. of Public Works, 2010 V2: 29 band hangers, 2008 V4: 126, 134 banquet halls, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 baptismal fonts, 2008 V4: 184 bar joist hangers, 2008 V4: 129 bar joists, 2008 V4: 130 barber shop water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 bare earth, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 bare pipe, 2009 V1: 139 bariatric water closets (WC), 2008 V4: 5, 7 barium, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 186, 187 baro pr, BARO PR (barometric pressure). See barometric pressure barometers (baro, BARO), 2010 V2: 166 barometric loops, 2008 V4: 180 barometric pressure (baro pr, BARO PR, BP) altitude adjustments, 2010 V2: 166-167 defined, 2011 V3: 172, 183, 186 in vacuums, 2010 V2: 166, 185

barrels converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 dimensions, 2008 V4: 25-27 "barrier free," 2009 V1: 18. See also people with disabilities barrier-free water coolers, 2008 V4: 239 barriers around tanks, 2011 V3: 149 bars, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 bars, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 base acquisition costs, 2009 V1: 217 base materials base defined, 2009 V1: 18 compounds in water, 2010 V2: 188 pH control, 2011 V3: 85-87 base supports, 2008 V4: 134 base units, 2009 V1: 33 basic functions in value engineering, 2009 V1: 219, 221 basic material standards, 2009 V1: 61 basket strainers, 2010 V2: 92 bathhouses, 2010 V2: 151, 2011 V3: 108-110 bathing rooms, 2009 V1: 104-105 bathroom groups, 2009 V1: 18, 2011 V3: 206 bathtub fill valves, 2008 V4: 16 bathtub spout noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 200 bathtubs (BT) abbreviations for, 2009 V1: 14 accessibility design, 2009 V1: 109-110 acoustic ratings of, 2009 V1: 194 bathtub enclosures, 2009 V1: 110 fill valves, 2008 V4: 185 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 grab bars, 2009 V1: 109 gray-water systems and, 2009 V1: 126 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 infant bathtubs, 2011 V3: 38 minimum numbers of, 2008 V4: 18-21 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194, 198, 201 overflows, 2008 V4: 15 patient rooms, 2011 V3: 37 seats, 2009 V1: 114-115 standards, 2008 V4: 2 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 temperatures, 2011 V3: 47 types and requirements, 2008 V4: 15-16 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 batteries, corrosion cells in sacrificial anodes, 2009 V1: 137 batteries of fixtures defined, 2009 V1: 18 battery installations of water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 82 Baumeister, Theodore, 2009 V1: 1, 2, 3, 5, 39 BCMC (Board for Coordination of Model Codes), 2009 V1:98 BCuP brazing, 2008 V4: 42 beach components in pools, 2011 V3: 108 bead-to-bead joints, 2008 V4: 48, 63 bead-to-cut-glass end joints, 2008 V4: 48 bead-to-plain-end joints, 2008 V4: 63 beads, ion exchange, 2008 V4: 197-199 beam attachments, 2008 V4: 129

beam clamps, 2009 V1: 182, 2008 V4: 122, 126, 129, 134 bearing plates. See roll plates; slide plates beauty shops, 2008 V4: 208 Beckman, W.A., 2011 V3: 204 bed depths, 2008 V4: 221 bed locator units, 2011 V3: 55 bedding and settlement building sewers and, 2010 V2: 14-15 defined, 2009 V1: 18, 2011 V3: 225-226 illustrated, 2011 V3: 227 pipe supports and, 2010 V2: 12 protecting against settlement, 2010 V2: 16 settlement loads, 2009 V1: 180 bedpan washers, 2011 V3: 36, 37, 39, 40, 2008 V4: 184 beer, 2009 V1: 141 bell-and-spigot joints and piping. See also hub-and-spigot piping and joints defined, 2009 V1: 18 earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 160 bell-hub depressions, 2010 V2: 14 bell-mouth inlets or reducers, 2010 V2: 93 bellows expansion joints, 2008 V4: 229 bellows-style water hammer arresters, 2010 V2: 72-74 bellows traps, 2011 V3: 162 bells, defined, 2009 V1: 18 belt-driven compressors, 2008 V4: 242 bending moments, 2008 V4: 228 bending movements, 2009 V1: 35 bending pipes, 2008 V4: 63 bending presses, 2008 V4: 63 benefits in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 Bennett, E.R., 2010 V2: 154 bentonite clay, 2010 V2: 205 bentonite grout, 2010 V2: 157 bents, 2008 V4: 134 benzene levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 Bergstrom, Ken, 2011 V3: 135 Bernoulli's equation, 2009 V1: 5-6 beta oxidation, 2008 V4: 251 beta ray radiation, 2010 V2: 236-237 beveling edges for welding, 2008 V4: 63 BFP (backflow preventers). See backflow preventers BFV (butterfly valves). See butterfly valves bhp, BHP (brake horsepower), 2009 V1: 6, 14, 2011 V3: 21 bicarbonate ions (HCO₃), 2008 V4: 193, 197 bicarbonate of soda, 2008 V4: 193 bicarbonates, 2010 V2: 189, 196, 199, 2008 V4: 196, 199 bid bonds, 2009 V1: 56 bid by invitation, 2009 V1: 56 bid shopping, 2009 V1: 62 bidders defined, 2009 V1: 55 information in project manuals, 2009 V1: 55 well construction, 2010 V2: 164 bidding documents, 2009 V1: 55 bidding requirements, 2009 V1: 55 Biddison, 2009 V1: 185 bidets, 2010 V2: 86, 2011 V3: 206, 2008 V4: 2, 16, 184 bilge pumps, 2008 V4: 99 bimetallic traps, 2011 V3: 162 binding, preventing in cleanouts, 2010 V2: 9

biochemical measurements of microorganisms, 2010 V2: 188 biocides, 2010 V2: 213, 217, 222-223 biodegradable foam extinguishers, 2011 V3: 26 biofilm, 2010 V2: 109, 2008 V4: 250-251 biofouling, 2010 V2: 195, 217 biohazardous materials. See infectious and biological waste systems biological and biomedical laboratories. See laboratories biological characteristics of drinking water, 2010 V2: 217 biological control in pure water systems. See microbial growth and control biological fouling, 2010 V2: 195, 217 biological oxygen demand (BOD), 2011 V3: 26, 88, 2008 V4: 221, 250 biological treatment in gray-water treatment, 2010 V2: 27 of oil spills, 2010 V2: 245 in pure water systems, 2010 V2: 222-223 of sewage in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 wastewater treatment plants, 2011 V3: 88 biological waste systems. See infectious and biological waste systems biopure water defined, 2008 V4: 195 distillation, 2008 V4: 195 health care facilities. 2011 V3: 47 bioreactors, 2008 V4: 249 bioremediation grease interceptor, 2008 V4: 160 bioremediation pretreatment systems codes and standards, 2008 V4: 251-252 defined, 2008 V4: 249 dimensions and performance, 2008 V4: 253 flow control, 2008 V4: 251 materials and structure, 2008 V4: 252-253 principles, 2008 V4: 249-251 retention system, 2008 V4: 250 separation, 2008 V4: 249-250 sizing, 2008 V4: 251 types of, 2008 V4: 249 biosafety cabinets, 2010 V2: 240 Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories, 2010 V2: 172 biosafety levels (BL1-BL4), 2010 V2: 172, 241 biosolids, 2008 V4: 261-264 biostats, 2010 V2: 213, 217 birthing rooms, 2011 V3: 39, 52, 56 bitumastic-enamel-lined piping, 2010 V2: 75 BL1-4 levels, 2010 V2: 241 Black, A. P., 2008 V4: 224 black iron coated pipe, 2008 V4: 48 black pipes, 2009 V1: 18 black steel piping, 2010 V2: 122, 2011 V3: 148, 257 black-water systems amount of generated black water, 2008 V4: 261 compared to gray water, 2010 V2: 21 defined, 2010 V2: 21 estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 sources, 2008 V4: 262 types of, 2008 V4: 260 bladder bags, 2009 V1: 108 bladder tanks, 2011 V3: 26, 2008 V4: 232

Blake, Richard T., 2010 V2: 224 blank flanges, 2009 V1: 18 blast furnace gas, 2010 V2: 114 blast gates, 2010 V2: 179 bleach, 2009 V1: 141 bleachers, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 bleaches, 2010 V2: 147 bleaching powder, 2008 V4: 193 bleed air, 2010 V2: 171 bleed cocks, 2011 V3: 3 bleed throughs, 2008 V4: 221 block-like soils, 2010 V2: 141 block-method irrigation, 2011 V3: 92 blocking creativity, 2009 V1: 225 blood analyzers, 2010 V2: 13 blood or other objectionable materials, 2010 V2: 15, 2008 V4: 187. See also infectious and biological waste systems blood-type floor drains, 2011 V3: 38 blow-off in air compressors, 2011 V3: 177 blowdown boiler blowdown, 2010 V2: 216 cooling towers, 2010 V2: 216 removing sludge, 2010 V2: 195 blowout urinals, 2008 V4: 8-9 blowout water closets, 2008 V4: 3 blue dyes in gray water, 2010 V2: 27 BLV (balancing valves), 2009 V1: 9 Board for Coordination of Model Codes (BCMC), 2009 V1: 98 boarding houses, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 BOCA. See Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA) BOD (biological oxygen demand), 2011 V3: 26, 88, 2008 V4: 221, 250 bodies of valves, 2008 V4: 73 body sprays, 2008 V4: 15 Boegly, W.J., 2010 V2: 154 boiler blow-offs, 2009 V1: 18 boiler room earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 158 Boiler Water Treatment, 2010 V2: 224 boilers allowable pressure, 2010 V2: 119 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 boiler steam as distillation feed water, 2008 V4: 214 cast-iron supports for, 2009 V1: 152 central heating, 2011 V3: 127 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 42 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 153 feed lines, 2008 V4: 32 feed water corrosion inhibitors, 2009 V1: 140 feed water treatments, 2010 V2: 215-216 gas demand, 2010 V2: 116 gas train arrangements, 2011 V3: 255 scaling, 2010 V2: 195 sediment buckets in drains, 2010 V2: 11 water cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 188 boiling points (bp, BP) defined, 2009 V1: 18, 2010 V2: 135 liquid fuels, 2011 V3: 136 liquid oxygen, 2011 V3: 57

bollards, 2011 V3: 149, 155 bolted bonnet joints, 2008 V4: 80 bolts and bolting defined, 2008 V4: 134 lubricating, 2008 V4: 62 problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 types of bolts, 2008 V4: 127 water closets, 2008 V4: 6 bonded joints, 2009 V1: 140 bonding, electrical, 2010 V2: 125 bonds and certificates, 2009 V1: 56 bonnets, 2009 V1: 18, 2008 V4: 73, 79-80 booster pump control valves, 2008 V4: 82 booster pump controls, 2008 V4: 101 booster-pump systems cold-water supplies, 2010 V2: 61-68 connections, 2011 V3: 217 domestic water service, 2011 V3: 206 fire-protection systems, 2011 V3: 6 in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 46 swimming pool heaters, 2011 V3: 126 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 172 booster systems, gas, 2010 V2: 119 booster water heaters, 2009 V1: 18, 121, 2010 V2: 104 borate, 2010 V2: 189 bored wells, 2010 V2: 156-157 borosilicate glass piping, 2010 V2: 13, 14, 75, 2011 V3: 42, 2008 V4: 48 Bosich, Joseph F., 2009 V1: 144 bottle water coolers, 2008 V4: 237, 238 bottled gas regulators, 2010 V2: 117 bottled water, 2008 V4: 14, 238 Bottom Loading and Vapor Recovery for MC-306 Tank Motor Vehicles (AOIRP 1004), 2011 V3: 156 Bourdon gauges, 2010 V2: 171 bowl depth of sinks, 2009 V1: 109 bowling alleys, 2008 V4: 208 Boyle's law, 2010 V2: 65, 2008 V4: 233-234 BP (barometric pressure). See barometric pressure bp, BP (boiling points). See boiling points (bp, BP) BR (butadiene), 2009 V1: 32 braces (walking aids), 2009 V1: 99 bracing aircraft cable method, 2009 V1: 160 alternate attachments for pipes, 2009 V1: 167 brace assemblies, 2008 V4: 134 brace, hanger, or support drawings, 2008 V4: 134 defined, 2009 V1: 185, 2008 V4: 134 hanger rod connections, 2009 V1: 170 hanger rods, 2009 V1: 158 hubless cast-iron pipe, 2009 V1: 170 lateral sway bracing, 2009 V1: 175-176 longitudinal and transverse bracing, 2009 V1: 173 longitudinal-only bracing, 2009 V1: 165, 173 open-web steel joists, 2009 V1: 169 pipes on trapeze and, 2009 V1: 168, 171 piping systems for seismic protection, 2009 V1: 158-179 riser bracing for hubless pipes, 2009 V1: 171 self bracing, 2009 V1: 184 spacing of, 2009 V1: 177 steel beam connections, 2009 V1: 168

structural angle bracing, 2009 V1: 160 structural channel bracing, 2009 V1: 160 strut bracing, 2009 V1: 166, 168 superstrut, 2009 V1: 163 sway bracing, 2009 V1: 172, 173, 175-176, 178-179, 181 Tension 360 bracing, 2009 V1: 162 transverse bracing, 2009 V1: 160, 172 truss-type actions, 2009 V1: 182 typical earthquake bracing, 2009 V1: 161 brackets defined, 2008 V4: 135 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 126 illustrated, 2008 V4: 68, 122, 128 securing pipes, 2008 V4: 67 brainstorming in creativity, 2009 V1: 227 brake horsepower (bhp, BHP) defined, 2011 V3: 186 fire pumps, 2011 V3: 21 pumps, 2009 V1: 6 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 branch-bottom connections, 2009 V1: 11 branch intervals, 2009 V1: 18, 2010 V2: 35 branch length gas pipe sizing method, 2010 V2: 130 branch length method, 2010 V2: 87, 89, 94 branch-side connections, 2009 V1: 11 branch tees, 2009 V1: 18 branch-top connections, 2009 V1: 11 branch vents air admittance valves, 2010 V2: 39 defined, 2009 V1: 18 branches branch lines, defined, 2011 V3: 78 clear water waste, 2010 V2: 50 defined, 2009 V1: 18 laboratory gases, 2011 V3: 280 thermal expansion and contraction in, 2008 V4: 228 brand names in specifications, 2009 V1: 60, 62 brass corrosion, 2008 V4: 196 dezincification, 2009 V1: 132 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 valves, 2008 V4: 78 brass floor drains, 2010 V2: 15 brass (copper alloy) pipe, 2010 V2: 12-13 brass pipes, 2010 V2: 75, 78, 122, 2011 V3: 102 brass tubing, 2010 V2: 122 brazed ends on valves, 2008 V4: 80 brazed joints earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 160 inspection, 74, 2011 V3: 69 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 277 medical gas tubing, 2011 V3: 69, 2008 V4: 42 brazing, defined, 2009 V1: 18, 2008 V4: 62 brazing ends, 2009 V1: 18 Brazing Joints for Copper and Copper Alloy Pressure Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 break tanks, 2010 V2: 64, 2008 V4: 176 breathing apparatus for emergencies, 2010 V2: 229, 231

BREEAM (Building Research Establishment Environmental Assessment Method), 2008 V4: 256 Breton, E. J., 2008 V4: 224 brine tanks defined, 2008 V4: 221 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 brines, 2008 V4: 211, 221 hydrostatic monitoring systems, 2011 V3: 143 refrigerants, 2009 V1: 140 in water softening, 2010 V2: 210 British thermal units (Btu, BTU) British thermal units per hour (Btu/h), 2009 V1: 18 Btu (J) (fire loads), 2011 V3: 2 calculating hot water savings, 2009 V1: 118 condensate estimates, 2011 V3: 167 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 defined, 2009 V1: 18, 128, 2008 V4: 105 natural gas services, 2011 V3: 252 solar energy, 2011 V3: 193 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 bromine, 2010 V2: 110, 2011 V3: 131 bromtrifluoro-methane CBrF3 (halon 1301), 2009 V1: 24 Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves, 2008 V4: 85 bronze-mounted, defined, 2009 V1: 18 bronze seats for valves, 2008 V4: 83 bronze sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 13 bronze valves, 2008 V4: 78 bronze, in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 Brown, F.R., 2009 V1: 185 Brown, J., 2010 V2: 224 Brundtland Commission, 2008 V4: 256 BT (bathtubs), 2009 V1: 14 Btu, BTU (British Thermal units). See British Thermal units Btu (J) (fire loads), 2011 V3: 2 Btu/h (British thermal units per hour), 2009 V1: 18 bubble aerators, 2010 V2: 198 bubble tight, defined, 2009 V1: 18 bubbler irrigation heads, 2011 V3: 94 bubbler system (surge tanks), 2011 V3: 132 bubblers on water coolers, 2008 V4: 240, 244 pressure-type water coolers, 2008 V4: 238 stream regulators, 2008 V4: 242 wastage, 2008 V4: 242 water consumption, 2008 V4: 245 bubbles. See also detergents; soaps; suds bucket traps, 2011 V3: 162-163, 166 Budnick, J., 2011 V3: 203 building code list of agencies, 2009 V1: 42 building drains combined, 2009 V1: 18 cross-sections of, 2010 V2: 2 defined, 2009 V1: 18 flow in, 2010 V2: 2 house drains, 2009 V1: 25 inspection checklist, 2009 V1: 95 installation, 2010 V2: 14-15 pneumatic pressure in, 2010 V2: 2-3 sanitary. See sanitary drainage systems storm. See storm-drainage systems Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA), 2010 V2: 55

BOCA Basic Plumbing Code, 2010 V2: 55 **Building Research Establishment Environmental** Assessment Method, 2008 V4: 256 building sewers (house drains), 2009 V1: 18, 2010 V2: 14 - 15building sites. See site utilities; sites building storm-sewer pipe codes, 2009 V1: 42 building structure attachments, 2008 V4: 126 building subdrains, 2009 V1: 18 building traps defined, 2009 V1: 18 design, 2010 V2: 31-32 house traps, 2009 V1: 25 buildings construction and fire hazards, 2011 V3: 2 defined, 2009 V1: 18 dwellings, defined, 2009 V1: 22 essential facilities, 2009 V1: 185 expansion, 2011 V3: 50 minimum numbers of fixtures, 2008 V4: 18-21 plumbing noise issues, 2009 V1: 187-188 standard fire tests, 2011 V3: 2 storm-drainage systems. See storm-drainage systems subdrains, 2009 V1: 18 surveying existing conditions, 2009 V1: 265-270, 267 - 270traps, 2009 V1: 18 type of structure and earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 159utilities. See site utilities vibration and, 2008 V4: 145 built-in showers, 2008 V4: 14 bulk media tests, 2008 V4: 5-6 bulk oxygen systems, 2011 V3: 57-59 bulkhead fittings, 2011 V3: 145 bull head tees, 2009 V1: 18 Buna-N (nitrile butadiene), 2011 V3: 150, 2008 V4: 83, 86 Bunsen burners, 2010 V2: 116, 121 buoyancy, tanks, 2011 V3: 241 burat ochre, 2008 V4: 193 buried piping. See underground piping burners, defined, 2010 V2: 135 burning methane, 2009 V1: 122 burning rates of plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 49-50 burrs, 2009 V1: 18 burst pressure, 2009 V1: 18 bushels, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 bushings, 2009 V1: 18, 2010 V2: 92 businesses, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 butadiene (BR), 2009 V1: 32 butadiene and acrylonitrile (Buna-N), 2008 V4: 83, 86 butane, 2010 V2: 114, 135. See also fuel-gas piping systems butt caps on fire hydrants, 2011 V3: 3 butt-end welding, 2008 V4: 80 butt-welded standard weight pipe, 2008 V4: 48 butt welding butt-weld end connections, 2009 V1: 22 butt weld joints, 2009 V1: 19 butt weld pipes, 2009 V1: 19 defined, 2008 V4: 62 radioactive drainage systems, 2010 V2: 239 Butterfield, C. T., 2008 V4: 224

Butterfly Valves, 2008 V4: 85, 86, 90 butterfly valves (BFV), 2009 V1: 9, 14, 18, 2010 V2: 92 compressed-air service, 2008 V4: 86 defined, 2008 V4: 73, 76-77 design details, 2008 V4: 84 high-rise service, 2008 V4: 90 hot and cold water supply service, 2008 V4: 85-86 low-pressure steam systems, 2008 V4: 87 medium-pressure steam service, 2008V4: 88 swimming pool use, 2011 V3: 125, 131 vacuum service, 2008 V4: 87 butylene, 2010 V2: 114 BV (ball valves), 2009 V1: 9, 14, 18, 2010 V2: 230 bypass systems for water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 bypass valves, 2009 V1: 19, 2008 V4: 17, 75 bypasses, 2009 V1: 19, 2008 V4: 221

C

C. °C (Celsius), 2009 V1: 14, 30, 34 c (centi) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 C (coulombs), 2009 V1: 34, 129 c (curies), 2010 V2: 237 C (specific heat). See specific heat C-12 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-301 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-425 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-700 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-828 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-896 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-1091 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C-1208 standard, 2008 V4: 56 C clamps, 2008 V4: 122, 126, 129, 135 C/m³ (coulombs per cubic meter), 2009 V1: 34 CA. See compressed air (A, CA, X#, X#A) CA (cellulose acetate), 2009 V1: 32 CAAA (Clean Air Act Amendments), 2011 V3: 137 CAB (cellulose acetate butyrate), 2009 V1: 32 cable sway braces, 2008 V4: 130, 135 cables defined, 2008 V4: 135 earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 158 cadmium, 2009 V1: 132, 2008 V4: 186, 187 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 cafeterias cafeteria-type water coolers, 2008 V4: 239 drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 calcined natural pozzolan, 2008 V4: 252 calcium defined, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 221 in hardness, 2008 V4: 198 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 metal (Ca²⁺), 2008 V4: 193 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 scale formation and corrosion, 2010 V2: 196 in water, 2010 V2: 160, 189 water hardness and, 2008 V4: 196 calcium 45, 2010 V2: 238 calcium bicarbonate, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 193 calcium carbonate (lime), 2010 V2: 189, 190, 191, 196, 2008 V4: 193 calcium chloride, 2010 V2: 190

calcium hardness, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127-131 calcium hydroxide, 2010 V2: 190 calcium hypochlorite, 2010 V2: 160, 2008 V4: 193 calcium phosphate, 2010 V2: 190 calcium salts, 2008 V4: 196 calcium silicates, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 111 calcium sulfate, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 193 calculations. See equations calendars for irrigation controllers, 2011 V3: 95 calibration gases, 2011 V3: 266 calibrations, 2009 V1: 19 California Code of Regulations, 2009 V1: 174, 185 California Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), 2008 V4: 138 calories, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 calorific values in fire loads, 2011 V3: 2 calsil, 2008 V4: 111 Cameron Hydraulic Data, 2010 V2: 96, 2011 V3: 214 Camp, Thomas, 2008 V4: 166 camps, septic tank systems for, 2010 V2: 151-152 CAN/CSA-B137.1 standard, 2008 V4: 52 CAN/CSA-B137.10 standard, 2008 V4: 52, 53, 54 can pumps, 2009 V1: 23 CAN3-B137.8 standard, 2008 V4: 51, 52 Canadian Mortgage and Housing Corporation Research Report: Water Reuse Standards and Verification Protocol, 2010 V2: 29 wastewater issues of concern, 2010 V2: 22, 24 The Canadian Renewable Energy Guide, 2011 V3: 204 Canadian Solar Industries Association web site, 2011 V3: 203Canadian Standards Association (CSA), 2009 V1: 14 consensus process, 2009 V1: 41 list of standards, 2009 V1: 52 medical compressed air standards, 2011 V3: 61 publications CAN/CSA-B137.1 standard, 2008 V4: 52 CAN/CSA-B137.10 standard, 2008 V4: 52, 53, 54 CAN3-B137.8 standard, 2008 V4: 51, 52 CSA Z-305.1: Non-flammable Medical Gas Piping Systems, 2011 V3: 78 water closet standards, 2008 V4: 6 web site, 2011 V3: 78 canals, piping systems near, 2008 V4: 120 candelas (cd), 2009 V1: 33 candelas per meter squared (cd/m²⁾, 2009 V1: 33 canopies, 2009 V1: 19 cantilevered drinking fountains, 2009 V1: 104 cantilevers, 2008 V4: 135 CAP (cellulose acetate propionate), 2009 V1: 32 CAP (College of American Pathologists), 2010 V2: 187, 219, 2008 V4: 218, 221 capacitance measurements, 2009 V1: 34 tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 capacity air, defined, 2011 V3: 183 defined, 2009 V1: 19 gas cylinders. 2011 V3: 268 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 106-107, 111-112 water conditioners, 2008 V4: 221

water coolers, 2008 V4: 237

water softeners, 2008 V4: 206 capacity (flow). See flow rates capacity coefficient, defined, 2008 V4: 98 capillaries, 2009 V1: 19 capillary tubes (water coolers), 2008 V4: 242 Capitol Dome, Washington, D.C., 2008 V4: 119 caps on ends of pipes, 2009 V1: 11 caps on valves, 2008 V4: 73 capture-type vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 169 capturing rainwater, 2008 V4: 260-261 car traffic, 2010 V2: 11 car wash cross-connections, 2008 V4: 188-189 carbifuran levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 carbohydrazide, 2010 V2: 216 carbon adsorption of oil spills, 2010 V2: 245 as contaminant in air, 2011 V3: 265 corrosion, 2009 V1: 129, 134 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 total organic carbon, 2010 V2: 194 in water, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 193 carbon 14, 2010 V2: 238 carbon dioxide (CO^2) as contaminant in air, 2011 V3: 265 biofilms and, 2008 V4: 251 color coding, 2011 V3: 55 decarbonation, 2010 V2: 199 defined, 2008 V4: 221 distillation and, 2008 V4: 211-212 extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 26 feed system, 2011 V3: 130 formula, 2008 V4: 193 from cation exchange, 2008 V4: 198 medical gas supply systems, 2011 V3: 60 medical gas system tests, 2011 V3: 76 portable fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 28-29 reductions from solar energy use, 2011 V3: 189 symbols for, 2009 V1: 9 in water, 2010 V2: 189, 190, 199, 2008 V4: 196 Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems (NFPA 12), 2011 V3: 26 carbon filtration (absorphan). See activated carbon filtration (absorphan) carbon footprints, 2011 V3: 189 carbon monoxide, 2010 V2: 114, 2011 V3: 76, 189 carbon steel, 2009 V1: 132, 2011 V3: 84, 85, 2008 V4: 132 carbon steel gas cylinders, 2011 V3: 268 carbon steel piping, 2010 V2: 122 carbon tetrachloride, 2008 V4: 186 carbonate films, 2009 V1: 140 carbonate ions, 2008 V4: 193 carbonate salts, 2008 V4: 198 carbonates, 2010 V2: 189, 196, 2008 V4: 199-200, 218 carbonic acid (H₂CO₃), 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 196, 212 carboxymethyl cellulose, 2009 V1: 32 carburetted water gas, 2010 V2: 114 carcinogens, diatomaceous earth as, 2011 V3: 119 carpets, vacuum calculations for, 2010 V2: 180 carrier-grade gases, 2011 V3: 266, 267 carrier support system noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 197 cartridge filtration, 2010 V2: 201, 208, 214, 221, 2008 V4: 221

Cartwright, Peter, 2010 V2: 224 cascade waterfall aerators, 2010 V2: 198 case studies of cross connections, 2008 V4: 187-190 casein, 2009 V1: 32 casings driven wells, 2010 V2: 157 jetted wells, 2010 V2: 157 pumps, 2008 V4: 94 well casings, 2010 V2: 156 Cassidy, Victor M., 2009 V1: 128 Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tube, 2008 V4: 32 Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, 2008 V4: 32 Cast Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings (DWV), 2008 V4: 32 cast-filled acrylic fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 cast-filled fiberglass fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 cast glands, 2011 V3: 221 cast-in-place anchor bolts, 2009 V1: 154 cast iron (CI) in electromotive series, 2009 V1: 132 fixtures. See cast-iron fixtures in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 graphitization, 2009 V1: 132 hanging rolls, 2008 V4: 126 noise mitigation and, 2009 V1: 189-190, 192 pipe sleeves, 2008 V4: 69 piping. See cast-iron soil pipe pumps, 2011 V3: 122-123 stanchions, 2008 V4: 126 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 supporting rolls, 2008 V4: 126 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 cast-iron boiler supports, 2009 V1: 152 cast-iron fixtures enameled, 2008 V4: 1 in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35 standards, 2008 V4: 2 cast-iron floor drains, 2010 V2: 15 Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 85, 88, 90 cast-iron piping bracing, 2009 V1: 170 corrosion and, 2009 V1: 140 gas systems and, 2010 V2: 122 laboratories, 2011 V3: 42 Manning formula and, 2011 V3: 242 natural gas, 2011 V3: 257 radioactive materials systems and, 2010 V2: 239 roughness, 2010 V2: 75, 78 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 12-13 cast-iron soil pipe dimensions of hubs, spigots and barrels, 2008 V4: 25 - 27gaskets, 2008 V4: 60 hangers, 2008 V4: 132 lead and oakum joints, 2008 V4: 61 shielded hubless coupling, 2008 V4: 61 telescoping and laying lengths, 2008 V4: 24

types, 2008 V4: 25-27 Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Engineering Manual, 2010 V2: 55 Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI), 2009 V1: 32, 51, 2010 V2: 55 CISPI 301 standard, 2008 V4: 24 CISPI 310 standard, 2008 V4: 24, 61 Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 86, 88, 90 cast-iron tank legs, 2009 V1: 154 Cast Iron Valves, 2008 V4: 85, 87, 88, 89 catch basins, 2009 V1: 19, 2010 V2: 48 Category I-IV gas venting, 2010 V2: 119 Category II, III, or IV vent systems, 2009 V1: 43 cathodes defined, 2009 V1: 129, 141 galvanic series of metals, 2009 V1: 132 cathodic, defined, 2009 V1: 141 cathodic corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 cathodic inhibitors, 2009 V1: 141 cathodic potential (electropositive potential), 2009 V1: 14 cathodic protection criteria, 2009 V1: 140 defined, 2009 V1: 19, 141 introduction, 2009 V1: 129 liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 136 methods, 2009 V1: 137-140 wells, 2010 V2: 164 cation exchangers defined, 2008 V4: 197 hydrogen-sodium ion exchange plants, 2008 V4: 198-199 water problems, 2008 V4: 187 cations cation resins, 2010 V2: 191, 206 defined, 2009 V1: 141, 2010 V2: 187, 2008 V4: 221 in ion exchange, 2010 V2: 205, 2008 V4: 197 in pH values, 2010 V2: 229 caulked joints, defined, 2008 V4: 61 caulking caulked joints on floor drains, 2010 V2: 15 defined, 2009 V1: 19 drains, 2010 V2: 13 pipe sleeves, 2008 V4: 69 causes and effects in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 of earthquakes, 2009 V1: 148-149 caustic embrittlement, 2009 V1: 141 caustic soda, 2010 V2: 235, 2011 V3: 85. See also sodium hydroxide (lye or caustic soda) caustic waste from regeneration cycle, 2010 V2: 206 cavitation cavitation corrosion, 2009 V1: 142 defined, 2009 V1: 19, 142 CCS (Certified Construction Specifier), 2009 V1: 65 CD. See construction contract documents (CD) cd (candelas), 2009 V1: 33 CD (condensate drains), 2009 V1: 8 CDA (Copper Development Association), 2009 V1: 32 CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention), 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 108-109 CDI (continuous deionization), 2010 V2: 209-210 CE (coefficient of expansion), 2008 V4: 69

ceiling-mounted medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 55-56 ceiling plates, 2008 V4: 129 ceiling-with-gas-stacks systems, 2011 V3: 55-56 ceilings, piping in, 2009 V1: 202 cell pairs, 2010 V2: 209 cells, defined, 2009 V1: 142 cellular glass insulation, 2008 V4: 107, 111 cellular urethane, 2008 V4: 111 cellulose acetate, 2009 V1: 32 cellulose acetate butyrate (Celcon), 2009 V1: 32 cellulose acetate membranes, 2010 V2: 213, 2008 V4: 217, 219 cellulose acetate propionate, 2009 V1: 32 cellulose gas filters, 2011 V3: 252 cellulose nitrate, 2009 V1: 32 cellulose propionate, 2009 V1: 32 cellulose tricetate membranes, 2010 V2: 213 cellulose water filters, 2011 V3: 122 Celsius (°C), 2009 V1: 14, 30 cement grout, 2010 V2: 157 cement joints, 2009 V1: 19 cement-lined piping Manning formula and, 2011 V3: 242 pressure classes, 2008 V4: 28 roughness, 2010 V2: 75 in sprinkler hydraulic calculations, 2011 V3: 13 water pipes, 2008 V4: 25-38 Cement Mortar Lining, 2008 V4: 28 cement plaster joints, 2008 V4: 32 center beam clamps, 2008 V4: 135 Center for Biofilm Engineering, 2008 V4: 251, 253 center-guided check valves, 2008 V4: 83 Center, J.C., 2010 V2: 29 centerline spacing of gas outlets, 2011 V3: 51 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 108-109 centersets for faucets, 2008 V4: 10 "centi" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 Centigrade conversion factors, 2009 V1: 37. See also Celsius centipoise, 2009 V1: 38, 2011 V3: 137 central heating boilers, 2011 V3: 127 central manifold gas system configurations, 2010 V2: 122 central-supply rooms, 2011 V3: 47 central-water purification equipment, 2010 V2: 223-234 centralized distillation, 2008 V4: 213 centralized drinking-water cooler systems, 2008 V4: 243-247 chillers, 2008 V4: 243-244 circulating pumps, 2008 V4: 245 codes and standard, 2008 V4: 247 design layout and example, 2008 V4: 246-247 fountains, 2008 V4: 244 pipes and piping, 2008 V4: 243-244, 246 refrigeration, 2008 V4: 244-245 storage tanks, 2008 V4: 246 centrally-located vacuum cleaning systems. See vacuum cleaning systems centrifugal air compressors, 2011 V3: 62, 175-176, 176, 177 centrifugal drum traps, 2011 V3: 46 centrifugal pumps acid wastes and, 2010 V2: 231

defined, 2009 V1: 23 end-suction, 2011 V3: 122-123 pump pressure and, 2010 V2: 62 shallow well discharge, 2010 V2: 162 types, 2008 V4: 93-98 vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 169 centrifugal separators centrifugal-type vacuum separators, 2010 V2: 178 for oil spills, 2010 V2: 246 centrifugal vacuum cleaning systems, 186, 2010 V2: 184 centrifugation in FOG separation, 2008 V4: 250 centrifugation of oil, 2010 V2: 245 ceramic filters, 2011 V3: 273 ceramic fixtures standards, 2008 V4: 2 types of, 2008 V4: 1 **CERCLA** (Comprehensive Environmental Response Compensation and Liability Act), 2011 V3: 82, 83 certificates of insurance, 2009 V1: 56 certification certification of performance, 2010 V2: 91 LEED program, 2008 V4: 257 medical gas systems, 74-76, 2011 V3: 69 medical gas zones, 2011 V3: 67 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 152 Certified Construction Specifier (CCS), 2009 V1: 65 Certified Plumbing Designer (CPD), 2009 V1: 65 cesspools defined, 2009 V1: 19 irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 25 CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons), 2011 V3: 26 cfh (cubic feet per hour), 2011 V3: 172, 251 cfm (cubic feet per minute). See cubic feet per minute CFR (Code of Federal Regulations), 2011 V3: 82 cfus (colony forming units), 2010 V2: 188 CGA. See Compressed Gas Association, Inc. cGMP (current good manufacturing practices), 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 224, 227 CGPM (General Conference of Weights and Measures), 2009 V1: 32, 33 chain hangers, 2008 V4: 67 chainwheel-operated valves, 2009 V1: 19 chalk, 2008 V4: 193 chambers (air chambers). See air chambers (AC) Chan, Wen-Yung W., 2009 V1: 39 change orders, 2009 V1: 57, 254 changed standpipes, 2009 V1: 13 changeover gas manifolds, 2011 V3: 270-271 Changes in LEED 2009 for Plumbing Fixtures and Process Water, 2010 V2: 29 channel clamps, 2008 V4: 135 channels, 2009 V1: 19 character in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 characteristic curves for pumps, 2008 V4: 97-98 Characteristics and Safe Handling of Medical Gases (CGA P-2), 2011 V3: 78 Characteristics of Rural Household Waste Water, 2010 V2: 29chases, 2009 V1: 19, 2008 V4: 7, 10, 11 check valves (CV) compressed-air service, 2008 V4: 86-87 defined, 2009 V1: 19, 2008 V4: 74

design details, 2008 V4: 83 dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 7 flow data, 2010 V2: 95 globe valves, 2008 V4: 83 high-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 89 high-rise service, 2008 V4: 90 hot and cold water supply service, 2008 V4: 86 irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 94 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 274 low-pressure steam systems, 2008 V4: 88 medium-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 88 swing check and lift check valves, 2008 V4: 77 symbols for, 2009 V1: 9, 14 thermal expansion compensation and, 2010 V2: 106 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 179 checklists and forms creativity worksheets, 2009 V1: 226, 228 designs and drawings, 2009 V1: 92-94 detail/product/material specification checklist, 2009 V1: 215 evaluation checklists, 2009 V1: 230-231 field checklists, 2000 V1: 95-96 final checklist, 2009 V1: 96 forms of agreement, 2009 V1: 56 fuel systems, 2011 V3: 154 function definitions, 2009 V1: 219-224 functional evaluation worksheets. 2009 V1: 236-247 general checklists for jobs, 2009 V1: 91-92 health care facility medical gas and vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 50 idea development and estimated cost forms, 2009 V1: 234idea evaluation worksheet, 2009 V1: 245 project information checklists, 2009 V1: 211-216 project information sources checklists, 2009 V1: 216 recommendations worksheets, 2009 V1: 249, 250 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 155-156 surveying existing buildings, 2009 V1: 265-266 value engineering checklists, 2009 V1: 209 Chemical and Petroleum Industry, 2009 V1: 14 chemical cleaning connections, 2011 V3: 48 chemical coagulants in filtration, 2008 V4: 201-202 functions of, 2008 V4: 196 mechanical clarifiers, 2008 V4: 201 chemical descaling, 2008 V4: 59 chemical feed pumps, 2011 V3: 129 chemical feeders, 2008 V4: 184 chemical fumes, 2008 V4: 120 chemical oxygen demand (COD), 2008 V4: 221 chemical plants, 2011 V3: 81 chemical pre-treatment oils, 2011 V3: 88 sand filters, 2008 V4: 202 chemical reactions, hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 120 chemical regeneration in demineralizers, 2011 V3: 48 chemical-resistance testing, 2008 V4: 2 chemical spill emergency fixtures, 2008 V4: 17 chemical tanks, 2008 V4: 185 chemical-waste drains glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 plastic pipes, 2008 V4: 48-49
chemical-waste systems air admittance valves, 2010 V2: 39 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 242 defined, 2009 V1: 19 design considerations, 2010 V2: 243 pipe and joint selection, 2010 V2: 242-243 chemically-stabilized emulsions, 2010 V2: 244 chemicals. See also names of specific chemicals air contamination, 2011 V3: 265 chemical characteristics of drinking water, 2010 V2: 217 chemical control of microbes in water, 2010 V2: 213 chemical treatment of oil spills, 2010 V2: 245 emulsions, 2011 V3: 88 laboratory vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171 material safety data sheets, 2011 V3: 83 in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 in special-waste effluent, 2010 V2: 228 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 115, 127-131 water softeners, 2008 V4: 193, 194 chemistry of water. See water chemistry The Chemistry, Technology and Physiology of Iodine in Water Disinfection, 2008 V4: 224 Chicago case of cross connections, 2008 V4: 171 city building code, 2010 V2: 108-109 children, fixtures and fixture heights, 2009 V1: 99 in hot water demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99 water closets, 2008 V4: 5 water coolers, 2008 V4: 14 chilled drinking water recirculating (DWR), 2009 V1: 8 chilled drinking water supply (DWS), 2009 V1: 8, 2011 V3: 37 chilled water returns (CWR), 2009 V1: 8 chilled water supply (CWS), 2009 V1: 8, 191, 2008 V4: 185 chilling systems centralized drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243-244 laser machine cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 189 chimney liners, 2009 V1: 43 chimneys codes, 2009 V1: 43 defined, 2010 V2: 135 china fixtures, 2008 V4: 1. See also ceramic fixtures chips in acid-neutralization tanks, 2011 V3: 44, 45 chloramine, 2010 V2: 201 chloramines in chlorination, 2008 V4: 215 defined, 2008 V4: 199 chlordane, 2008 V4: 186 chloride (Cl) defined, 2008 V4: 221 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 water hardness and, 2008 V4: 196 chloride of lime, 2008 V4: 193 chlorides, 2009 V1: 136, 2010 V2: 189, 190, 206, 2008 V4: 59 storm water. 2010 V2: 27 chlorinated isobutene isoprene, 2009 V1: 32 chlorinated polyethylene, 2009 V1: 32 chlorinated polyethylene sheet shower pans, 2008 V4: 14

chlorinated polyvinyl-chloride (CPVC), 2009 V1: 32 corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 defined, 2010 V2: 94 industrial waste usage, 2011 V3: 85 pipe characteristics, 2011 V3: 49, 2008 V4: 49-50 pipes, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 53-54 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 velocity and, 2010 V2: 78 VOCs and, 2010 V2: 190 chlorination automatic chlorinators, 2008 V4: 200 defined, 2008 V4: 199-201, 215 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 domestic water systems, 2010 V2: 91 drinking water, 2010 V2: 160 economic concerns, 2008 V4: 200 feed water, 2010 V2: 220 gray water, 2010 V2: 22 manual control chlorinators, 2008 V4: 201 wells, 2010 V2: 158 chlorine as biocides, 2010 V2: 109 bleaches, 2010 V2: 147 chlorine-resistant grates, 2010 V2: 13 cvanide and, 2011 V3: 87 formation of hypochlorous and hydrochlorous acids, 2008 V4: 199-200 formula, 2008 V4: 193 hyperchlorination, 2010 V2: 110 microbial control, 2010 V2: 213 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221 reflecting pools and fountains, 2011 V3: 98 removing, 2010 V2: 201 reverse osmosis and, 2011 V3: 48 small drinking water systems, 2010 V2: 218 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127-131 in water chemistry, 2010 V2: 189, 190 chlorine dioxide gas injection, 2010 V2: 109 chlorine dioxide treatment, 2010 V2: 110 chlorine sulphonyl polyethylene, 2009 V1: 32 chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 2011 V3: 26 chloroform, 2011 V3: 66 chloroprene rubber (Neoprene), 2009 V1: 32 Chlorox bleach, 2009 V1: 141 cholera, 2008 V4: 199 chromium boiler water contamination case, 2008 V4: 188 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 chromium III, 2011 V3: 87 chromium-iron, 2009 V1: 132 chromium VI, 2011 V3: 87 Church, James, 2010 V2: 55 churches, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 churn, defined, 2008 V4: 98 CI. See cast iron (CI) cigarette burn testing, 2008 V4: 2 CIIR (chlorinated isobutene isoprene), 2009 V1: 32 CIP (cleaned in place), 2011 V3: 277 circles, calculating area, 2009 V1: 5 circuit venting, 2009 V1: 19, 2010 V2: 32-33 circuits (ckt, CKT), 2009 V1: 19

circular concrete piping, 2008 V4: 30 circular lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 circulating pumps centralized drinking-water coolers, 2008 V4: 245, 247 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243 controls, 2008 V4: 101 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 113-116, 122-123 circulating water systems in geothermal energy systems, 2009 V1: 123 hot water systems, 2010 V2: 105 standby losses in, 2009 V1: 119 circulation loops (water systems), 2011 V3: 48 CISPI (Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute) abbreviation, 2009 V1: 32 Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Engineering Manual, 2010 V2: 55 CISPI 301 standard, 2008 V4: 24 CISPI 310 standard, 2008 V4: 24 publications, 2009 V1: 51 cisterns, 2009 V1: 19, 2010 V2: 162, 2008 V4: 260-262 citing codes and standards, 2009 V1: 61 citric acid, 2009 V1: 136, 141 City of Chicago Building Code, 2010 V2: 108-109 city rainfall rate table, 2010 V2: 57 city water. See municipal water supply ckt, CKT (circuits), 2009 V1: 19 CL, C/L (critical level), 2009 V1: 20 clad steel tanks, 2011 V3: 136, 147, 155 Claes, 2009 V1: 144 clamp joints, 2008 V4: 24 clamping tools, 2008 V4: 61 clamps beam clamps, 2008 V4: 122 defined, 2008 V4: 135 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 126 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 193 pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 121 types of, 2008 V4: 68 clams, 2010 V2: 188 clappers, 2011 V3: 8, 2008 V4: 74 clarification treatments for water, 2010 V2: 198-199, 215, 2008 V4: 200-201 clarifiers defined, 2008 V4: 221 turbidity and, 2008 V4: 196 clarifying tanks, 2011 V3: 43 Class 2 & Class 3 Transformers, 2008 V4: 252 classes, biosolids, 2008 V4: 262-263 classes of service, standpipe systems, 2009 V1: 30, 2011 V3: 20 classifications bedding, 2011 V3: 225-226, 227 disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 fires, 2011 V3: 2 liquid fuel, 2011 V3: 136-137 claw-type pumps, 2010 V2: 169 clay loams, 2011 V3: 91, 239 clay piping industrial discharge piping, 2010 V2: 243 noise insulation, 2010 V2: 13-14 surface roughness, 2010 V2: 75 vitrified clay pipe, 2008 V4: 56-57, 57-58

clay soils, 2010 V2: 25 clays in feed water, 2010 V2: 195 in soil texture, 141, 2010 V2: 140 Claytor, Richard A., 2010 V2: 55 Clean Agent Extinguishing Systems (NFPA 2001), 2011 V3: 27, 28 clean agent fire suppression systems, 2011 V3: 26-28 Clean Air Act Amendments (CAAA), 2011 V3: 137 clean extinguishing agents, 2011 V3: 26-28 clean rooms, 2009 V1: 19 Clean Water Act, 2010 V2: 41, 242, 2011 V3: 82 cleaned in place (CIP), 2011 V3: 277 cleaning cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 90-94 fixtures, 2008 V4: 1 insulation, 2008 V4: 106, 108 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 277 medical gas pipes, 2011 V3: 69 pipes and piping, 2008 V4: 23 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 48 radioactive waste piping, 2010 V2: 239 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 72 septic tanks, 2010 V2: 148 cleaning liquids, 2008 V4: 120 cleanout deck plates (codp), 2009 V1: 14 cleanout plugs (CO), 2009 V1: 11 cleanouts (CO) chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 243 cleaning drains, 2010 V2: 15 defined, 2009 V1: 14, 19 manholes, 2011 V3: 234 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 240 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 9-10 storm drainage, 2010 V2: 48-49 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 186 cleanouts to grade (CO), 2009 V1: 11 cleanup/utility rooms, 2011 V3: 36 clear floor space bathtub accessibility, 2009 V1: 109 drinking fountains and water coolers, 2009 V1: 104, 2008 V4: 239-240 insulation in confined spaces, 2008 V4: 116 laundry equipment, 2009 V1: 115 lavatories and sinks, 2009 V1: 108 urinal design, 2009 V1: 108 water closet and toilet accessibility, 2009 V1: 105-108 water softeners and, 2008 V4: 207, 208 for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101, 102, 2008 V4: 239-240 clear space in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 clear-water waste, 2009 V1: 19 clear water waste branches, 2010 V2: 50 clearance clean agent gas fire containers, 2011 V3: 27 fixtures in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35 piping and, 2008 V4: 23 clevis devices and clevis hangers defined, 2008 V4: 135 functions, 2008 V4: 67 illustrated, 2008 V4: 121 insulating, 2008 V4: 110 selecting, 2008 V4: 126

Index

clevis plates, 2008 V4: 128 climate. See weather conditions clinic sinks, 2011 V3: 36 clinics. 2011 V3: 76 clips, 2008 V4: 122, 126 clo, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 clogging in grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162, 166 close-coupled water closets, 2008 V4: 3 close nipples, 2009 V1: 19 closed-circuit cooling systems, 2009 V1: 140 closed proprietary specifications, 2009 V1: 62 closed solar systems, 2011 V3: 192 closed systems, dangerous pressures in, 2008 V4: 231 closed-type sprinklers, 2011 V3: 6 cloth lagging, 2008 V4: 108 clothes washers. See laundry systems and washers clubs, hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 CMC (carboxymethyl cellulose), 2009 V1: 32 CMPR (compressors). See compressors CN (cellulose nitrate), 2009 V1: 32 cndct, CNDCT (conductivity), 2009 V1: 34 CO (cleanout plugs), 2009 V1: 11 CO (yard cleanouts or cleanouts to grade). See cleanouts; cleanouts to grade CO_2 (carbon dioxide). See carbon dioxide coagulation coagulants in clarification, 2010 V2: 198-199, 2008 V4: 201.221 in filtration, 2008 V4: 201-202 flow rates and, 2008 V4: 202 FOG separation, 2008 V4: 250 in gray-water treatment, 2010 V2: 25-26 turbidity and, 2008 V4: 196 coal tar epoxy, 2011 V3: 139 coalescence bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 coalescing, defined, 2008 V4: 221 filtration of oil spills, 2010 V2: 245 FOG separation, 2008 V4: 250 coalescing, defined, 2009 V1: 19 coalescing filters in vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171 coalescing media, 2011 V3: 88 coarse sands, 2010 V2: 25, 2011 V3: 91 coarse vacuum, 2010 V2: 165 coat hooks accessibility in toilet and bathing rooms, 2009 V1: 105 ambulatory accessible toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 107 coated metal cathodic protection, 2009 V1: 140 corrosion protection, 2009 V1: 136-137 passivation, 2009 V1: 136 sprinkler head ratings, 2011 V3: 13 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 155 coaxial fill hoses (tanks), 2011 V3: 140 coaxial vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 145, 148 cocks, 2009 V1: 19 COD (chemical oxygen demand), 2008 V4: 221 Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages (NFPA 30A), 2011 V3: 137, 156 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), 2010 V2: 218, 2011 V3: 82, 89, 137

codes and standards alterations to existing buildings, 2009 V1: 266 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 251-252 building sound isolation, 2009 V1: 188 centralized drinking-water cooler systems, 2008 V4: 247 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 citing, 2009 V1: 61 codes, defined, 2009 V1: 19 cold water systems, 2010 V2: 59 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 171 concrete pipe, 2008 V4: 28-32 cross-connections, 2008 V4: 176 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 206 ductile iron pipe, 2008 V4: 25-28 fire protection, 2011 V3: 1, 218 fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 fountains, 2011 V3: 100-101 gasoline and diesel-oil systems, 2011 V3: 137 gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 22 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162, 164-165 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 117-118 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 33, 35 hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 112 industrial wastewater treatment, 2011 V3: 82-83 infectious and biological waste systems, 2010 V2: 241 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 263 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 76 natural gas services, 2011 V3: 251 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 115 NFPA standards, 2011 V3: 1 plumbing codes, defined, 2008 V4: 178 plumbing materials and equipment, 2009 V1: 41-54 plumbing standards for people with disabilities, 2009 V1: 97-98 pools, 2011 V3: 100-101 preventing Legionella growth, 2010 V2: 108-109 private water systems, 2010 V2: 155 reference-based standards, 2009 V1: 61 reflecting pools, 2011 V3: 100-101 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 1 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 147, 155, 161, 174 site utilities, 2011 V3: 205 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 227 standards, defined, 2009 V1: 29 storm-drainage systems, 2010 V2: 41-42 storm sewers, 2011 V3: 238 sustainable design, 2008 V4: 256 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104-106 vacuum-cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 178 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 172 valves, 2008 V4: 73 water analysis, treatment and purification, 219, 2010 V2: 187, 218 water heaters, 2009 V1: 121, 155 codp (cleanout deck plates), 2009 V1: 14 coefficient, runoff, 2010 V2: 43 coefficients of expansion (CE), 2009 V1: 19, 2008 V4: 69, 227, 233 coefficients of hydrant discharge, 2011 V3: 3, 3-4 coefficients of permeability (K factor), 2010 V2: 158 coefficients of volumetric expansion, 2008 V4: 233 coffee sinks. See sinks and wash basins

coffee urns, 2008 V4: 184 cogeneration systems, waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123 coherent unit systems, 2009 V1: 33 coke oven gas, 2010 V2: 114 cold elevation. See after cold pull elevation; design elevations cold flow, 2009 V1: 19 cold fluids hangers and supports for systems, 2008 V4: 126 piping for, 2008 V4: 125 cold hanger location, 2008 V4: 135 cold loads, 2008 V4: 135 cold settings, 2008 V4: 135 cold shoes, 2008 V4: 135 cold spring, 2008 V4: 135 cold water (CW), 2009 V1: 8, 14 cold-water systems backflow prevention, 2010 V2: 60 booster pump systems, 2010 V2: 61-68 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 244 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 59 constant pressure in, 2010 V2: 63 cross connection controls, 2010 V2: 60-61 domestic water meters, 2010 V2: 59-60 examples for pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 87-89 excess water pressure, 2010 V2: 68-70 glossaries, 2010 V2: 94-95 heat loss, 2008 V4: 113 introduction, 2010 V2: 59 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 191 pipe codes, 2009 V1: 45 pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 75-84 potable water systems, 2011 V3: 47 references, 2010 V2: 95-96 sizing, 2010 V2: 84-89 testing, cleaning, and disinfection, 2010 V2: 90-94 valves for, 2008 V4: 85-86 water flow tests, 2010 V2: 84-87 water hammer, 2010 V2: 70-73 water line sizing, 2010 V2: 73-90 water pressure, 2008 V4: 86 water supply graph, 2011 V3: 212 cold working pressure (CWP), 2008 V4: 85 Colebrook formula, 2010 V2: 74-75 coliform, 2009 V1: 19 coliform group of bacteria, 2009 V1: 19, 2008 V4: 186 coliform organism tests, 2010 V2: 91 coliseums, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 collective bargaining agreements, cost estimates and, 2009 V1: 90 collectors (dug wells), 2010 V2: 156 collectors (solar) concentrating, 2011 V3: 190, 193 cover, defined, 2011 V3: 191 defined, 2011 V3: 190 efficiency, defined, 2011 V3: 191 evacuated tube (vacuum tube), 2011 V3: 190 flat-plate, 2011 V3: 190, 193-195 subsystem, defined, 2011 V3: 191 tilt, defined, 2011 V3: 191 transpired, defined, 2011 V3: 190 trickle, defined, 2011 V3: 191

vacuum tube, 2011 V3: 190, 193 College of American Pathologists (CAP), 2010 V2: 187, 219, 2008 V4: 218, 221 Collentro, W.V., 2010 V2: 224 colloidal particles laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 removing, 2010 V2: 198-199, 2011 V3: 88 colloidal silica, 2010 V2: 190 colony forming units (cfus), 2010 V2: 188 color of drinking water, 2010 V2: 217, 2008 V4: 186 of feed water, 2010 V2: 188, 193 of gray water, 2010 V2: 27 of soils, 141, 2010 V2: 140 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 color codes copper drainage tube, 2008 V4: 41 copper pipes, 2008 V4: 30-31 medical gas codes, 2011 V3: 51, 55 medical gas tube, 2008 V4: 42 seamless copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32 colored finishes, 2008 V4: 135 columns in ion exchange systems, 2010 V2: 205 combination building water supplies, 2011 V3: 218-220 combination drain and vent, 2010 V2: 33 combination dry-pipe and pre-action systems, 2009 V1: 28, 2011 V3: 10-11 combination fixtures, 2009 V1: 19 combination storm-drainage and sanitary sewers, 2010 V2: 12, 2011 V3: 249 combination temperature and pressure relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 combination thermostatic and pressure balancing valves, 2008 V4: 14-15 combination vacuum-cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 178 combination waste and vent systems, 2009 V1: 19 combined residuals, 2008 V4: 199-200 combustibles defined, 2011 V3: 76, 136 fire loads, 2011 V3: 2 metal fires, 2011 V3: 24 combustion efficiency, 2009 V1: 19 combustion products, 2011 V3: 76 combustion properties of gases, 2010 V2: 114 Coming Plague, 2010 V2: 49 The Coming Plague, 2010 V2: 55 Commercial and Industrial Insulation Standards, 2008 V4: 116 Commercial Energy Conservation Manual, 2009 V1: 128 commercial facilities commercial/industrial gas service, 2011 V3: 252 estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 firefighting demand flow rates, 2011 V3: 224 gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 23-24 grease interceptors, 2010 V2: 12 oil interceptors in drains, 2010 V2: 12 radioactive waste drainage and vents, 2010 V2: 235 commercial kitchen sinks, 2008 V4: 12 commercial land use, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 commercial laundries. See laundry systems and washers commercial piping systems, 2008 V4: 135 commercial service gas, 2010 V2: 114

far@erga.com 17/01/15

commercial sites, runoff volume calculation, 2010 V2: 56 Commercial Standards (CS), 2009 V1: 32 Commercial Water Use Research Project, 2010 V2: 29 commissioning section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64-65, 72 Commodity Specification for Air (CGA G-7.1/ANSI ZE 86.1), 2011 V3: 61, 76, 78 Commodity Specification for Nitrogen (CGA G-10.1), 2011 V3: 78 commodity standards, gases, 2011 V3: 263 commodity tube, 2008 V4: 30 common vents (dual vents), 2010 V2: 32-33 defined, 2009 V1: 19 community bathhouses, 2010 V2: 151 Compact Fittings, 2008 V4: 28 compacted fill, building sewers and, 2010 V2: 14 comparing functions in value engineering, 2009 V1: 235 compartment coolers, 2008 V4: 238, 242 compartmentalization in bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250, 252 compartments in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 competition swimming pools, 2011 V3: 107 components defined, 2008 V4: 135 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 composite land use, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 composite tanks, 2011 V3: 138-139 composition disc valves angle valves, 2008 V4: 76 gate valves, 2008 V4: 83 globe valves, 2008 V4: 75 composting biosolids, 2008 V4: 262-263 composting toilets, 2009 V1: 127 compound magnetic drive meters, 2010 V2: 88 Compound Parabolic Concentrator (CPC) system, 2011 V3: 196 compound water meters, 2010 V2: 59-60, 59-61 compounds in water, 2010 V2: 189 **Comprehensive Environmental Response Compensation** and Liability Act (CERCLA), 2011 V3: 82, 83 compressed air (A, CA, X#, X#A). See also compressed air systems compared to free air, 2011 V3: 171 defined, 2011 V3: 183 flow rates, 2011 V3: 172 generating, 2011 V3: 270 joints, 2011 V3: 176 laboratory or medical compressed air, 2009 V1: 8, 2011 V3: 41, 61-64, 70, 75-76 overview, 2011 V3: 171-172 supplies to water tanks, 2010 V2: 162 symbols for, 2009 V1: 8, 16 tools and equipment, 2011 V3: 180 use factors, 2011 V3: 174 uses, 2011 V3: 171 water vapor in, 2011 V3: 172-173, 265-266 Compressed Air and Gas Data, 2010 V2: 136 Compressed Air for Human Respiration (CGA G-7.0), 2011 V3: 78 compressed air systems accessories, 2011 V3: 177-182 air dryers, 2011 V3: 178-179 air receivers, 2011 V3: 177-178

alarms, 2011 V3: 182 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 171 compressors, 2011 V3: 174-176 contaminants, 2011 V3: 173-174 definitions, 2011 V3: 183-187 flow meters, 2011 V3: 177 flushing and testing, 2011 V3: 183 friction loss table, 2011 V3: 181 glossary, 2011 V3: 183-187 gravity filters, 2008 V4: 202 hoses and fittings, 2011 V3: 181-182 inlet piping, 2011 V3: 182 measurement units, 2011 V3: 172 overview, 2011 V3: 171 piping system design air-consuming devices, 2011 V3: 182-183 air dryers, 2011 V3: 178-179 design sequence, 2011 V3: 182-183 duty cycles, 2011 V3: 182 earthquake bracing, 2009 V1: 158 future expansion, 2011 V3: 182 leakage, 2011 V3: 183 materials, 2011 V3: 176 sizing piping, 2011 V3: 69, 72-73, 183 use factors, 2011 V3: 183 pressure drops, 2011 V3: 177, 181 regulation methods, 2011 V3: 179-180 relief valves, 2011 V3: 180-181 tool requirements, 2011 V3: 180 tools and equipment, 2011 V3: 180 valves, 2011 V3: 176, 2008 V4: 86-87 vibration isolation, 2011 V3: 182 water vapor in air, 2011 V3: 172-173 compressed cork, 2008 V4: 149 compressed gas. See natural gas systems Compressed Gas Association, Inc. (CGA), 2009 V1: 14 color coding system, 2011 V3: 55 list of standards, 2009 V1: 52 publications CGA C-9: Standard for Color-marking of Compressed Gas Cylinders Intended for Medical Use, 2011 V3: 78 CGA G-7.0: Compressed Air for Human Respiration, 2011 V3: 78 CGA G-7.1/ANSI ZE 86.1: Commodity Specification for Air, 2011 V3: 76, 78 CGA G-8.1: Standard for the Installation of Nitrous Oxide Systems at Consumer Sites, 2011 V3: 78 CGA G-10.1: Commodity Specification for Nitrogen, 2011 V3: 78 CGA P-2: Characteristics and Safe Handling of Medical Gases, 2011 V3: 78 CGA P-9: Inert Gases: Argon, Nitrogen and Helium, 2011 V3: 74, 78 CGA V-5: Diameter-Index Safety System, 2011 V3: 76.78 purity standards, 2011 V3: 263 web site. 2011 V3: 78 Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code (NFPA 55), 2011 V3: 263 compressibility, 2011 V3: 183

compressibility factor (Z), 2011 V3: 183 compression couplings clay pipe, 2008 V4: 57 flexible couplings, 2008 V4: 64-65 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 mechanical joints, 2008 V4: 60 compression efficiency, 2011 V3: 183 compression fittings cast iron, 2008 V4: 24, 25 defined, 2009 V1: 23 compression ratio, 2011 V3: 183-184 compressive strength of plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50 compressive stresses piping, 2008 V4: 69 stacks, 2008 V4: 229 with temperature change, 2008 V4: 228 compressors (cprsr, CMPR) centralized drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243 defined, 2009 V1: 19 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 157 vibration and noise problems, 2008 V4: 145 water coolers, 2008 V4: 242 computer-controlled grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 159-160 computer processing of specifications, 2009 V1: 65 computer programs 3E Plus, 2009 V1: 118 abbreviations in. 2009 V1: 14-15 computer analysis of piping systems, 2009 V1: 180 plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85, 89 specifications programs, 2009 V1: 65 computer room waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123 computerization of specifications programs, 2009 V1: 65 concealed piping, 2011 V3: 68 concealed sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 concentrates, cross flow filtration and, 2008 V4: 221 concentrating collectors, 2011 V3: 190, 193, 195-196 concentrating ratio, defined, 2011 V3: 191 concentration cells attack corrosion, 2009 V1: 129, 131-132 defined, 2009 V1: 142 concentration gradients, 2010 V2: 211 concentration polarization, 2009 V1: 142, 2008 V4: 217 concentration, rainfall, 2010 V2: 44-46 concentration tests, 2011 V3: 75 concentrators, defined, 2011 V3: 191 concentric reducers, 2009 V1: 10 concrete anchoring to, 2008 V4: 125-132 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 noise mitigation and, 2009 V1: 201 concrete aggregates, 2008 V4: 252 concrete anchors anchoring pipes to, 2008 V4: 125-132 concrete block anchors, 2008 V4: 63-65 floor-mounted equipment, 2009 V1: 154 problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 182 concrete ballast pads, 2011 V3: 155 concrete barriers around tanks, 2011 V3: 149 concrete block anchors, 2008 V4: 63-65 concrete embedments, 2009 V1: 184 concrete fasteners, 2008 V4: 135 concrete floors, leveling around, 2010 V2: 16

concrete grease interceptors, field-formed, 2008 V4: 161 concrete gutters, 2011 V3: 114 concrete insert boxes, 2008 V4: 135 concrete inserts, 2008 V4: 121, 127, 128, 135 concrete pavement, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 Concrete Pipe Handbook, 2010 V2: 54 concrete piping circular, 2008 V4: 30 flow rate, 2011 V3: 242 noise insulation, 2010 V2: 13-14 roughness, 2010 V2: 78 standards, 2008 V4: 28-32 surface roughness, 2010 V2: 75 underground piping, 2008 V4: 28-32 concrete restraints, 2011 V3: 221 concrete shielding from radiation, 2010 V2: 238 concrete slab hangers, 2008 V4: 67 concrete-tank saddles, 2009 V1: 154 concrete tanks, 2011 V3: 84, 147-148 concurrent regeneration, 2008 V4: 221 cond, COND (condensers, condensation). See condensation; condensers condensate drains (CD), 2009 V1: 8 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 188 poor examples of, 2009 V1: 255, 257 condensate traps air-handling units, 2011 V3: 167 shell and tube heat exchangers, 2011 V3: 167 space-heating equipment, 2011 V3: 166-167 unit heaters, 2011 V3: 167 condensates. See also steam and condensate systems as feed water for distillation, 2008 V4: 214 corrosion inhibitors, 2009 V1: 141 defined, 2009 V1: 19, 2010 V2: 135, 2011 V3: 157-159 drainage, 2011 V3: 163-166 high-pressure piping, 2011 V3: 166 removal, 2011 V3: 161-162 condensation (cond, COND) air drying, 2011 V3: 178 corrosion and, 2009 V1: 136 dew points, 2011 V3: 173 earthquakes and, 2009 V1: 160 formation of, 2008 V4: 113 insulation and, 2009 V1: 118, 2008 V4: 105 protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108 vacuum piping, 2010 V2: 174 condensed steam condensate removal, 2011 V3: 161-162 defined, 2011 V3: 157-159 condensers centralized drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243 condenser system water treatments, 2010 V2: 216 distilled water systems, 2011 V3: 48 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 191 scale deposits, 2010 V2: 195 waste heat reclamation, 2009 V1: 124, 125 condensing gas water heaters, 2009 V1: 121 conditioning compressed air, 2011 V3: 178 conditioning water. See water treatment

Index

conditions in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 conditions of existing buildings, 2009 V1: 267-270 conductance (C), 2008 V4: 105 conductance (S), 2009 V1: 34 conduction, defined, 2011 V3: 191 conductivity (cndct, CNDCT, K). See also thermal conductivity (k, \mathbf{K}) defined, 2009 V1: 20, 2008 V4: 105, 221-222 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 120 insulation, 2008 V4: 105 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 mho (specific conductivity), 2010 V2: 193 conductivity cells, 2008 V4: 198, 214 conductivity/resistivity meters, 2008 V4: 198, 212, 218 conductors, 2009 V1: 20 conduits defined, 2009 V1: 20 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 145 cones calculating volume, 2009 V1: 4 of depression, 2010 V2: 157 "Conference Generale de Poids et Measures," 2009 V1: 33 confluent vents, 2009 V1: 20 connected loads, 2009 V1: 20, 2010 V2: 136 connected standbys, 2011 V3: 27 connection strainers, 2011 V3: 124 connections section in specifications, 2009 V1: 72 connectors, flexible gas hose, 2010 V2: 124-125 Connectors for Gas Appliances, 2010 V2: 124 Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances, 2010 V2: 124 conserving energy alternate energy sources, 2009 V1: 121-126 Bernoulli's equation, 2009 V1: 5-6 domestic water temperatures, 2009 V1: 117-120 glossary, 2009 V1: 128 hot water system improvements, 2009 V1: 118 insulation thickness and, 2008 V4: 109-113 introduction, 2009 V1: 117 off-peak power, 2009 V1: 119 reduced water flow rates, 2009 V1: 118 references, 2009 V1: 128 saving utility costs, 2009 V1: 119 standby losses in circulating systems, 2009 V1: 119 thermal insulation thickness, 2009 V1: 118 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123-126 conserving water design techniques, 2009 V1: 126 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 46 institutional wastewater systems, 2010 V2: 149 introduction, 2009 V1: 117 rain shutoff devices, 2011 V3: 96 urinals, 2008 V4: 8-9 water closet fixtures, 2008 V4: 3 constant-pressure pumps, 2010 V2: 63 constant support hangers and indicators, 2008 V4: 135 constant supports, 2008 V4: 124 constant velocity method, 2010 V2: 87, 94 Constructed Science Research Foundation Spectext, 2009 V1:65 construction change directives, 2009 V1: 57 construction contract documents (CD)

checklists for existing buildings, 2009 V1: 270 contract documents defined, 2009 V1: 55 defined, 2009 V1: 20, 55 overview, 2009 V1: 55 project manuals, 2009 V1: 56-57 value engineering clauses in, 2009 V1: 251 construction costs in value engineering, 2009 V1: 207-208 Construction Specifications Canada (CSC) Uniformat, 2009 V1: 57-58 Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) classes, 2009 V1: 65 Constructed Science Research Foundation, 2009 V1: 65 general conditions documents, 2009 V1: 56 Manual of Practice, 2009 V1: 55 MasterFormat, 2009 V1: 57 MasterFormat 2004, 2009 V1: 58-59, 72-83 MasterFormat Level Four (1995), 2009 V1: 68-69 MasterFormat Level One (1995), 2009 V1: 66 MasterFormat Level Three (1995), 2009 V1: 68 MasterFormat Level Two (1995), 2009 V1: 66-68 section shell outline, 2009 V1: 68-72 Sectionformat, 2009 V1: 59 solar energy specifications, 2011 V3: 199 Uniformat, 2009 V1: 57-58, 64-65 web site, 2009 V1: 58 Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 2011 V3: 106.112 consumption. See demand contact corrosion. defined. 2009 V1: 142 contact sheets, 2011 V3: 205 contact time for microbial control, 2010 V2: 213 containment biological wastes, 2010 V2: 240 defined, 2008 V4: 177, 181 gas piping, 2010 V2: 135 Containment Control in Biotechnology Environments, 2010 V2: 246 containment floors or dikes, 2011 V3: 84 containment sumps, 2011 V3: 139, 145, 148 contaminants concentration, storm water, 2010 V2: 27 defined, 2008 V4: 177 removing from gas, 2011 V3: 273 Safe Drinking Water Act levels, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 urban storm water, 2010 V2: 43-44 contamination issues backflow prevention, 2010 V2: 60 bored wells, 2010 V2: 157 compressed air, 2011 V3: 173-174 contaminant classification, 2011 V3: 215 contaminators, defined, 2009 V1: 20 dug wells, 2010 V2: 156 gray-water irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 27-28 well protection, 2010 V2: 158-159 contingency plans for industrial wastes, 2011 V3: 83 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 86 continuing education, 2009 V1: 65 continuous acid-waste treatment systems, 2010 V2: 236 continuous deionization (CDI), 2010 V2: 209-210 continuous duty pumps, 2011 V3: 22

continuous flow. See steady flow continuous inserts, 2008 V4: 135 continuous vents, defined, 2009 V1: 20 continuous waste, 2009 V1: 20 continuous wastewater treatment, 2011 V3: 87 continuous welding technique, 2008 V4: 48 contract documents. See construction contract documents contraction of materials, 2009 V1: 189, 2008 V4: 231-235 contraction of pipes aboveground piping, 2008 V4: 227-229 anchors, 2008 V4: 63-65 calculating, 2009 V1: 3 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 119 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 189 overview, 2008 V4: 69 protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 underground piping, 2008 V4: 231 contractors makeshift installations, 2009 V1: 254–257 quality requirements and, 2009 V1: 262 Control of Pipeline Corrosion, 2009 V1: 144 control panels clean gas systems, 2011 V3: 28 fire alarm, 2009 V1: 12 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171 control systems in geothermal energy systems, 2009 V1: 123 control valves defined, 2008 V4: 222 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 66-67 controlled-flow storm-drainage systems, 2010 V2: 52-53 controlled-substance spills, 2010 V2: 186 controllers chemical, 2011 V3: 127-131 defined, 2009 V1: 20 differential-pressure, 2011 V3: 132 for irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 95-96 controls in accessible shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112 in bathtubs, 2009 V1: 109 defined, 2009 V1: 20 on gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125 on water heaters, 2010 V2: 104-105 pumps, 2008 V4: 101 for vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171, 179, 2011 V3: 64 water level, fountains, 2011 V3: 102 convection, 2011 V3: 191, 2008 V4: 105 convention halls, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 20 conventional angle valves, 2008 V4: 76 conventional disc globe valves, 2008 V4: 76 conventional port valves, 2008 V4: 84 converging seismic plates, 2009 V1: 148 conversion factors and converting Fahrenheit and Centigrade, 2009 V1: 37 feet of head to pounds per square inch, 2009 V1: 2 gas pressure to destinations, 2010 V2: 127, 130 IP and SI, 2009 V1: 38-39, 2010 V2: 170, 2011 V3: 30 measurements, 2009 V1: 33 meters of head to pressure in kilopascals, 2009 V1: 2 vacuum acfm and scfm, 2010 V2: 166-167 vacuum pressures, 2010 V2: 166 water impurity measurements, 2010 V2: 191

converting parts per million to grains per gallon, 2008 V4: 222 conveyance, storm water, 2010 V2: 46-47 cooling compressors, 2011 V3: 174 cooling fire areas, 2011 V3: 25 cooling grease, 2008 V4: 162 cooling loads (clg load, CLG LOAD, CLOAD), 2008 V4: 245 cooling systems direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 solar, 2011 V3: 191 cooling-tower water backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 corrosion inhibitors, 2009 V1: 140 cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 189-190 exclusion from gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 21 Legionella pneumophila, 2010 V2: 108 monitoring, 2008 V4: 194 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 use of gray water in, 2010 V2: 21 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123 water treatments, 2010 V2: 216-217 cooling vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 coordination disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 coordination with other designers, 2010 V2: 50, 54 COP (coefficient of performance), 2009 V1: 128 copper coefficient of linear expansion, 2008 V4: 233 corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 in electromotive series, 2009 V1: 132 in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 copper alloy piping, 2010 V2: 12-13 copper-copper sulfite half-cells, 2009 V1: 132 Copper Development Association, 2010 V2: 96 Copper Development Association (CDA), 2009 V1: 32 Copper Tube Handbook, 2008 V4: 61, 62, 235 copper drainage tube, 2008 V4: 40, 41-42 copper-nickel alloys, 2009 V1: 132 copper-phosphorous-silver brazing (BCuP), 2008 V4: 42 copper-phosphorus brazing, 2008 V4: 42 copper piping aboveground piping, 2010 V2: 12 bending, 2008 V4: 63 commodity tube, 2008 V4: 30 conserving energy, 2009 V1: 120 copper K piping, 2010 V2: 173 copper L piping, 2010 V2: 173 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 67 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 276 Legionella control and, 2010 V2: 111 mechanical joints, 2008 V4: 61-62 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 122 pure-water system, 2011 V3: 49 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 239 roughness, 2010 V2: 75 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 13 tape wrapping, 2008 V4: 67 types, 2008 V4: 30-32

Index

velocity and, 2010 V2: 78 copper plating, 2008 V4: 135 copper-silver ionization, 2010 V2: 110, 111, 2008 V4: 220 copper-sulfate electrodes, 2009 V1: 140 Copper Tube Handbook, 2008 V4: 61, 62, 235 copper tube size (CTS), 2008 V4: 51 copper tubing, 2010 V2: 122, 2011 V3: 276 copper water tube, 2008 V4: 30-42, 61, 132 Copson, H.R., 2009 V1: 144 cork elastomer-cork mountings, 2008 V4: 150 speed and vibration control, 2008 V4: 146, 149, 151 corona-discharge generators, 2010 V2: 214 corona-discharge ozone system, 2011 V3: 133 corporation cocks, 2009 V1: 20 correctional centers, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 corroded end of galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 corrosion boilers, 2010 V2: 215 calcium carbonate and, 2010 V2: 196 cathodic protection, 2009 V1: 137-140 causes, 2010 V2: 195-196 coatings, 2009 V1: 136-137 control of, 2009 V1: 135-141, 2010 V2: 16, 160 cooling towers, 2010 V2: 217 corrosion cells, 2009 V1: 129, 130, 137 corrosion mitigation, 2009 V1: 142 corrosion potential, 2009 V1: 142 corrosion-resistant materials, 2009 V1: 135, 2010 V2: 14 corrosion-resistant sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 corrosive wastes, 2010 V2: 13 deaeration and, 2010 V2: 199 defined, 2009 V1: 129, 142, 2008 V4: 136, 222 electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 134 factors in rate of, 2009 V1: 134-135 fatigue and fatigue limits, 2009 V1: 142 glossary, 2009 V1: 141-143 hot-water relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 impure water and, 2008 V4: 194 inhibitors, 2009 V1: 141 insulation and, 2008 V4: 107 introduction, 2009 V1: 129 oxygen and carbon dioxide, 2008 V4: 196 passivation, 2009 V1: 136 plastic, 2009 V1: 141 plastic water pipes, 2010 V2: 164 predicting water deposits and corrosion, 2010 V2: 196 - 197prevention, 2009 V1: 142 protection, 2011 V3: 148 references, 2009 V1: 144 sacrificial anodes, 2009 V1: 137 soldering and, 2008 V4: 62 specifications to prevent, 2009 V1: 256-258 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 84, 138, 148 total organic carbon and, 2010 V2: 193 types of, 2009 V1: 129-132 water mains, 2011 V3: 6 Corrosion, 2009 V1: 144 Corrosion and Resistance of Metals and Alloys, 2009 V1: 144

Corrosion Causes and Prevention, 2009 V1: 144 Corrosion Control, 2009 V1: 144 Corrosion Engineering, 2009 V1: 144 corrosion fatigue, 2009 V1: 142 Corrosion Handbook, 2009 V1: 144 corrosion mitigation, 2009 V1: 142 corrosion potential, 2009 V1: 142 corrosion prevention, 2009 V1: 142 Corrosion Prevention for Practicing Engineers, 2009 V1: 144 corrosion-resistant materials, 2009 V1: 135, 2010 V2: 14 Corrosion Resistant Materials Handbook, 2011 V3: 89 corrosion-resistant sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 corrosive atmospheres, insulation and, 2008 V4: 116 corrosive gases, 2011 V3: 267 corrosive wastes, 2010 V2: 13 double containment, 2008 V4: 60 drainage systems, 2011 V3: 42-43 duriron pipe, 2008 V4: 57 stainless steel valves, 2008 V4: 79 corrosives, 2009 V1: 20 corrosivity levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 corrugated bends in pipes, 2008 V4: 63 corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST), 2008 V4: 60 corrugated steel piping, 2010 V2: 75, 122-123, 2011 V3: 242cosmic radiation, 2010 V2: 237 Cost Analysis phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 229 costs and economic concerns administrative and operation costs, 2009 V1: 208 collecting data on, 2009 V1: 217-218 construction costs, 2009 V1: 208 cost fitting, defined, 2009 V1: 249 cost information in value engineering, 2009 V1: 217-218 cost of goods, 2009 V1: 217 cost-to-function relationship, 2009 V1: 219 defined, 2009 V1: 209, 210, 217-218 development costs, 2009 V1: 208 economic values, 2009 V1: 209 engineering and design costs, 2009 V1: 208 estimating costs, 2009 V1: 85-90 flexible gas piping, 2010 V2: 122 gas pressure and, 2010 V2: 119 idea development and estimated cost forms, 2009 V1: 234labor costs, 2009 V1: 208 life-cycle costs, 2009 V1: 128 material costs, 2009 V1: 208 noise mitigation products, 2009 V1: 203 overhead, 2009 V1: 208 Pareto principle, 2009 V1: 218 quality engineering and, 2009 V1: 253 relationships, 2009 V1: 217 specific applications air dryers, 2011 V3: 178 cathodic protection costs, 2009 V1: 140 centralized or decentralized stills, 2008 V4: 213 chlorination, 2008 V4: 200, 215 corrosion resistant materials, 2009 V1: 135 diatomaceous earth filters, 2008 V4: 204 double containment, 2008 V4: 60 feed water disinfection, 2010 V2: 222 fuel product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 146

gas booster location, 2010 V2: 126 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 166 green plumbing benefits, 2008 V4: 258 hardness treatments, 2008 V4: 196 horizontal pressure sand filters, 2008 V4: 202 hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 97-98 insulation, 2008 V4: 113-115 insulation thickness, 2008 V4: 109–113 ion-exchange cartridges, 2010 V2: 208 ion-exchange resins, 2010 V2: 206, 207 iron and bronze valves, 2008 V4: 78-79 laboratory acid-waste drainage, 2010 V2: 232 plumbing noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 188 pure water piping systems, 2010 V2: 224 pure water storage systems, 2010 V2: 223 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 1 seismic protection costs, 2009 V1: 147 solar energy, 2011 V3: 189, 192, 193 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 utility costs, 2009 V1: 119 vacuum system piping, 2010 V2: 173-174 vibration control, 2008 V4: 151 water distillers, 2010 V2: 200 water softeners, 2008 V4: 209 water treatments, 2008 V4: 194 water usage, 2008 V4: 256 well construction, 2010 V2: 157, 164 in specifications, 2009 V1: 63 supporting details for, 2009 V1: 249 true costs of makeshift installations, 2009 V1: 263-264 types of, 2009 V1: 210, 217-218 value engineering process and, 2009 V1: 207 vs. prices, 2009 V1: 210 cotton gin, creativity and, 2009 V1: 225 coulombs (C) corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 SI units, 2009 V1: 34 coulombs per cubic meter (C/m³), 2009 V1: 34 countdown timer delays, 2011 V3: 28 counter-mounted kitchen sinks, 2008 V4: 12 counter-mounted lavatories, 2008 V4: 11 counter sinks, 2011 V3: 36 counter zoning, 2011 V3: 28 countercurrent regeneration, 2008 V4: 222 couple action. See galvanic corrosion couples, defined, 2009 V1: 142 couplings. See joints coverings. See jacketing covers, collector, defined, 2011 V3: 191 CP (cellulose propionate), 2009 V1: 32 CPC (Compound Parabolic Concentrator) system, 2011 V3: 196 CPD (Certified Plumbing Designer), 2009 V1: 65 CPE (chlorinated polyethylene), 2009 V1: 32 CPI (Chemical and Petroleum Industry), 2009 V1: 14 cprsr (compressors). See compressors CPSC (Consumer Product Safety Commission), 2011 V3: 106, 112 CPVC (chlorinated polyvinyl chloride). See chlorinated polyvinyl-chloride (CPVC) CR (chloroprene rubber), 2009 V1: 32 cracking, defined, 2009 V1: 142

Craytor, J., 2010 V2: 29 creativity assisted and unassisted, 2009 V1: 227 creativity worksheets, 2009 V1: 226, 228 first phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209, 223-229 questions for, 2009 V1: 227 creep, 2009 V1: 20, 2010 V2: 12 crevice-attack corrosion crud traps in radioactive-waste piping, 2010 V2: 239, 240 defined, 2009 V1: 131, 142, 2010 V2: 196 reducing, 2009 V1: 136 crimping tools, 2008 V4: 32 critical care areas, 2011 V3: 36, 55 critical flows, defined, 2009 V1: 2 critical level, defined, 2009 V1: 20 critical path functions, 2009 V1: 221 critical points, 2009 V1: 20 critical pressure, defined, 2011 V3: 184 critical temperature, defined, 2011 V3: 184 Cross-connection Control Manual, 2008 V4: 179 cross connections. See also back-siphonage; backflow active control, 2008 V4: 173-175 air gaps, 2008 V4: 172-173 authorities having jurisdiction, 2008 V4: 177 backflow prevention, 2010 V2: 60 barometric loops, 2008 V4: 172-173 break tanks, 2008 V4: 176 case studies, 2008 V4: 187-190 Chicago example, 2008 V4: 171 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 60-61 control paradox, 2008 V4: 172 defined, 2009 V1: 20, 2008 V4: 177-178, 181 field testing, 2008 V4: 176 flood hazard, 2008 V4: 176 glossary, 2008 V4: 177-179 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 46 installation, 2008 V4: 175-176 medical gas pipe tests, 2011 V3: 74 model ordinances, 2008 V4: 179-183 overview, 2008 V4: 169-171 passive control techniques, 2008 V4: 172-173 product standards, 2008 V4: 176 quality control, 2008 V4: 176-177 reverse flow, causes, 2008 V4: 170-171 splashing, 2008 V4: 176 taking precautions against, 2010 V2: 27 types of prevention devices, 2010 V2: 60-61 vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 173-174, 175, 176 water distribution hazards, 2008 V4: 171-172 cross-country pipe lines, 2009 V1: 139 cross-flow filter media, 2010 V2: 191, 201 cross-flow membrane filtration, 2008 V4: 222 cross-linked polyethylene (PEX), 2009 V1: 32, 2008 V4: 52 cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX), 2008 V4: 52 cross-sections ditches, 2011 V3: 242, 250 drains, 2010 V2: 2, 3 cross valves, 2009 V1: 20 crosses, defined, 2009 V1: 20 crossovers, 2009 V1: 20 crown vents, 2009 V1: 20

crowns, 2009 V1: 20 crud traps, 2010 V2: 196, 239, 240 crutches, 2009 V1: 99 cryogenic, defined, 2009 V1: 20 cryogenic gases, 2011 V3: 267, 271 cryogenic systems, 2008 V4: 59, 107 cryogenic tanks, 2011 V3: 57 CS (casein), 2009 V1: 32 CS (Commercial Standards), 2009 V1: 32 CSA. See Canadian Standards Association (CSA) CSC (Construction Specifications Canada) Uniformat, 2009 V1: 57-58 CSI and CSI format. See Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) CSP (chlorine sulphonyl polyethylene), 2009 V1: 32 CSST. See corrugated steel piping CSST (corrugated stainless steel tubing), 2008 V4: 60 CTS (copper tube size), 2008 V4: 51 CU FT (cubic feet), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 30 cubes, calculating volume, 2009 V1: 4 cubic feet (ft³, CU FT, CUFT, CFT), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 30 cubic feet per hour (cfh), 2011 V3: 172, 251 cubic feet per minute (cfm, CFM), 2011 V3: 187. See also scfm, SCFM (standard cubic feet per minute) compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 181 condensate estimates, 2011 V3: 167 converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 defined, 2010 V2: 135 medical vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 64 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 vacuum measurements, 2010 V2: 166 cubic feet per second, standard (scfs, SCFS), 2009 V1: 14 cubic foot meters (cfms) defined, 2010 V2: 135 vacuum measurements, 2010 V2: 166 cubic meters, 2009 V1: 34 cubic meters per kilogram, 2009 V1: 34 cubic meters per minute, 2011 V3: 172 cubic meters per second, 2009 V1: 34 CUFT (cubic feet), 2011 V3: 30 cUL (Underwriters Laboratories of Canada), 2009 V1: 41 - 42cultivated field, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 cultured marble acrylic fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 cultured marble fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 Culvert Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 cup service for drinking water, 2008 V4: 245 cup sinks, 2011 V3: 36, 40, 41 curb boxes, 2009 V1: 20 curb inlets, 2009 V1: 20 curb valves, 2009 V1: 20 curies (c), 2010 V2: 237 current cathodic protection, 2009 V1: 137 in corrosion, 2009 V1: 129, 134 electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 134 large anode current requirements, 2009 V1: 139 measurements, 2009 V1: 33 current good manufacturing practices (cGMP), 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 224, 227 cuspidors, dental, 2011 V3: 40, 2008 V4: 184

custom-made grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 161 cut-in sleeves, 2008 V4: 69 cutting oils, 2010 V2: 12, 2008 V4: 62 cutting short, 2008 V4: 136 cutting threads, 2008 V4: 62 CV (check valves). See check valves CVOL (specific volume). See specific volume cw (cold water). See cold water (CW) CWA. See Clean Water Act CWP (cold working pressure), 2008 V4: 85 CWR (chilled water return), 2009 V1: 8 $\,$ CWS (chilled water supply), 2009 V1: 8 cyanide, 2011 V3: 87 cycle of concentration in cooling towers, 2010 V2: 216 cycles and cycle operation in water softeners, 2008 V4: 222 cyclopropane, 2011 V3: 55 cylinder banks, gas, 2011 V3: 267-268 cylinder-manifold-supply systems, 2011 V3: 57-61, 64, 65 cylinder snubbers, 2009 V1: 155 cylinders calculating volume, 2009 V1: 4 carbon dioxide extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 26 clean agent gas fire suppression, 2011 V3: 27 laboratory gas storage, 2011 V3: 267-268 regulators, 2011 V3: 271-272 cystoscopic rooms fixtures. 2011 V3: 38 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56

D

d (deci) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 D (difference or delta), 2009 V1: 14 D (drains). See drains D (indirect drains), 2009 V1: 8 D-1527 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-1785 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2209 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2235 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2239 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2241 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2464 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2466 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2467 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2564 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2609 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2661 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2665 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2672 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2680 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2729 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-2737 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-2751 standard, 2008 V4: 54 D-2846 standard, 2008 V4: 53 D-3035 standard, 2008 V4: 51 D-3222 standard, 2008 V4: 55 da (deka) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 Dalton's law, 2010 V2: 72 damage. See bedding and settlement; corrosion; creep; hazards; scale and scale formation; seismic protection; water damage

dampen, defined, 2009 V1: 20 damping defined, 2008 V4: 146 in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 150, 177, 180 dance halls, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 Darcy's law, 2009 V1: 2, 3, 2010 V2: 6, 74, 157-158 data storage for specifications programs, 2009 V1: 65 Database of State Incentives for Renewables and Efficiency, 2011 V3: 190 databases of plumbing costs, 2009 V1: 85, 89 Daugherty, Robert L., 2010 V2: 19 Davis, Calvin V., 2008 V4: 166 Dawson, F.M., 2010 V2: 3, 19, 72 DB (dry-bulb temperature), 2009 V1: 21 dbt, DBT (dry-bulb temperature), 2009 V1: 21 DC (double containment systems), 2008 V4: 60 DC current, 2009 V1: 14, 137, 2010 V2: 209 dc, DC (direct current), 2009 V1: 14, 137, 2010 V2: 209 DCV (double-check valves), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 215 DD (design development phase), 2009 V1: 58 DE (deionized water), 2009 V1: 8 DE (diatomaceous earth). See diatomaceous earth DE/Perlite Performance Test Data, 2011 V3: 135 De Renzo, D.J., 2011 V3: 89 deactivation, defined, 2009 V1: 142 dead-end pressure, 2011 V3: 184 dead-end service in pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 94 dead ends centralized drinking-water cooler systems, 2008 V4: 246 defined, 2009 V1: 20 valves in, 2008 V4: 86 dead legs in pure water systems, 2010 V2: 224 dead loads on roof, 2010 V2: 51 "dead-man" abort stations, 2011 V3: 28 deadman installation, 2011 V3: 155 deadweight loads, 2008 V4: 136 deaerators boiler feed water, 2010 V2: 216 deaeration, defined, 2008 V4: 196-197 deaeration water treatment, 2010 V2: 199 pressure and vacuum, 2008 V4: 197 Provent deaerators, 2010 V2: 17-18 Sovent deaerators, 2010 V2: 17-18 dealkalizing treatment, 2010 V2: 199 dealloying, defined, 2009 V1: 142 decarbonation, 2010 V2: 199 decentralized distillation, 2008 V4: 213 "deci" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 decomposition potential, 2009 V1: 142 decontaminating radioactive waste piping, 2010 V2: 239 decontamination areas, 2011 V3: 39-41, 52 decorative pools, wastewater and, 2010 V2: 21 deep (dp, DP, DPTH). See depth deep-bed sand filtration, 2010 V2: 201 deep ends of swimming pools, 2011 V3: 107 deep fill, building sewers and, 2010 V2: 14 deep seal traps, 2009 V1: 20 deep wells, 2010 V2: 155, 156, 161 deficiency reports, 2009 V1: 267-269 definitions. See glossaries definitions section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 69 deflection

joints, 2008 V4: 61 natural frequencies and, 2008 V4: 146 steel spring isolators, 2008 V4: 149-150 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 228-229 deformation, joints resistant to, 2008 V4: 61 deg., °, DEG (degrees), 2009 V1: 14 degasification, 2010 V2: 199, 2008 V4: 196, 198 degradation of pure water, 2010 V2: 223 degreasers, 2008 V4: 185 degree of saturation, defined, 2011 V3: 187 degrees (deg., °, DEG), 2009 V1: 14 degrees Celsius, 2009 V1: 34, 2008 V4: 105 degrees Fahrenheit, 2008 V4: 105 degrees Kelvin (°K), defined, 2011 V3: 184 degrees Rankine (°R), defined, 2011 V3: 184 DEHA (diethylhydroxylamine), 2010 V2: 216 dehumidification, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127 deionization, 2010 V2: 201. See also demineralizer systems; service deionization deionized water (DE), 2009 V1: 8, 2008 V4: 195 "deka" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 delay relays, 2011 V3: 28 delays in clean gas extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 28 deliquescent dryers, 2011 V3: 178 deliquescent materials, 2009 V1: 20 delivery rooms. See birthing rooms delivery section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63-64, 70 Dell'Isola, Alphonse J., 2009 V1: 252 Delphia method of evaluation, 2009 V1: 248 delta (diff.,), DIFF, D, DELTA), 2009 V1: 14 delta t (temperature differential), 2009 V1: 128 DELTP (pressure drops or differences). See pressure drops or differences deluge systems, 2009 V1: 28, 2011 V3: 9-10 deluge valves, 2009 V1: 13, 2011 V3: 9-10 demand average flow rates for fixtures, 2008 V4: 207 centralized chilled water systems, 2008 V4: 244-245 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 73 defined, 2009 V1: 20, 2010 V2: 135 drinking fountains, 2008 V4: 244-245 drinking water, 2010 V2: 159 estimating, 2010 V2: 83 estimation guide, 2008 V4: 208 fire demand, 2011 V3: 2 fire hydrant water demand, 2011 V3: 4 flow rates, 2011 V3: 222-225 gas appliances, 2010 V2: 116 hot water, 2009 V1: 128, 2010 V2: 97 hydropneumatic-tank systems, 2010 V2: 62, 64-65 medical air systems, 2011 V3: 62 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 50, 51, 53, 57 medical school-laboratory water demand, 2011 V3: 46 natural gas, 2010 V2: 124, 130, 2011 V3: 256 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 123, 129 pipe sizing and, 2010 V2: 75-76, 78 sizing water heaters, 2010 V2: 98-99 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 2-6, 13 vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 54, 65 water conservation and paybacks, 2009 V1: 118 water heater types and, 2010 V2: 101-104 water softeners and, 2008 V4: 206

water treatment methods and, 2010 V2: 210 demineralizer systems, 2010 V2: 199, 201 activated carbon, mixed bed deionization, 2008 V4: 219 cation and anion tanks, 2008 V4: 197 compared to distillation, 2008 V4: 197 compared to reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 218 defined, 2008 V4: 195 for distillation, 2008 V4: 214 laboratory grade water comparison, 2008 V4: 218 pure water systems, 2011 V3: 48 using with distillation, 2008 V4: 212 water softening pretreatment, 2008 V4: 206 demographics in hot water demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99 demolition work, in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 Denoncourt, 2010 V2: 224 dens, DENS (density). See density density (dens, DENS, RHO) defined, 2009 V1: 20 gas, defined, 2011 V3: 184 grease particles, 2008 V4: 154-156 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 of natural gas, 2010 V2: 126 purified water, 2010 V2: 72-74 settling velocity and, 2008 V4: 200 dental equipment, 2011 V3: 42, 52, 2008 V4: 185 department connections, 2009 V1: 12 departments having jurisdiction, 2009 V1: 20 dependent functionality defined, 2009 V1: 219 in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 221-223 depolarization, defined, 2009 V1: 142 depolarizing cathodes, 2009 V1: 134 deposit attacks, 2009 V1: 142 deposition corrosion, defined, 2009 V1: 142 deposits from feed water, 2010 V2: 196. See also scale and scale formation; sediment; slime; sludge depth (dp, DP, DPTH) grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 157 of liquids in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 of reflecting pools, 2011 V3: 100 of septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 of soils, 2010 V2: 141 of wells, 2010 V2: 156 depth filters, 2010 V2: 206, 2008 V4: 202 Depth of Freeze and Thaw in Soils, 2008 V4: 116 derived units of measurement, 2009 V1: 34 descriptive specifications, 2009 V1: 60-61 desiccant air dryers, 2011 V3: 179 desiccants, 2009 V1: 20 design alterations to buildings, 2009 V1: 265-266 ensuring good quality during, 2009 V1: 255 LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), 2008 V4: 2-3 noise mitigation and, 2009 V1: 201-202 for people with disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 reducing corrosion, 2009 V1: 135-136 seismic, 2009 V1: 151, 180-182 sustainable, 2008 V4: 256 value engineering and, 2009 V1: 208 design areas for sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 12

design (built-in) compression ratio, 2011 V3: 185 design density, 2011 V3: 11-12 design development phase (DD), 2009 V1: 58 design elevations, 2008 V4: 136 Design Information for Large Turf Irrigation Systems, 2011 V3: 96 design loads, 2008 V4: 136 Design of Hoffman Industrial Vacuum Cleaning Systems, 2010 V2: 186 Design of Stormwater Filtering Systems, 2010 V2: 55 design points, 2009 V1: 20 design standards, 2009 V1: 61 design storms, 2011 V3: 239 desolver tanks, 2010 V2: 210 destruction phase in ozonation, 2010 V2: 214 destructive forces in pipes. See water hammer details in projects, checklists, 2009 V1: 215 detector-check water meters, 2010 V2: 60 detectors, smoke, 2009 V1: 20 detention storm drainage, 2010 V2: 47-48 detention centers, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 detention periods grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 157 treated water, 2010 V2: 198 detergent cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 188-189 detergents defined, 2009 V1: 141 factors in trap seal loss, 2010 V2: 37 high-expansion foam, 2011 V3: 25 in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 deterioration, 2009 V1: 267-270 Deutsches Institut fur Normung (DIN), 2009 V1: 14 developed length, 2009 V1: 20 developers perception of engineering, 2009 V1: 251 value engineering and, 2009 V1: 208 development costs defined, 2009 V1: 210 in value engineering, 2009 V1: 208 Development phase in value engineering activities, 2009 V1: 235-248 idea development and estimated cost forms, 2009 V1: 234in process, 2009 V1: 209 sketches, 2009 V1: 246 Development Presentation phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 deviations in measurements, 2009 V1: 33, 2008 V4: 136 dew points corrosion in pipes and, 2011 V3: 265 defined, 2009 V1: 20, 2011 V3: 173, 185, 265-266, 2008 V4: 113 lowering, 2011 V3: 178-179 medical gas system tests, 2011 V3: 76 monitors, 2011 V3: 63 pressure dew points, 2011 V3: 266 refrigerated air dryers, 2011 V3: 178 table, 2008 V4: 112 dewatering pumps, 2008 V4: 99 dewers, defined, 2011 V3: 268 dezincification of brass, 2009 V1: 132, 2008 V4: 78

DF. See drinking fountains (DF) dfu (drainage fixture units), 2009 V1: 14, 21 DHEC (Department of Health and Environmental Control), 2010 V2: 112 DI (deionization), 2010 V2: 201 DI (distilled water), 2009 V1: 8 DI (drainage inlets), 2009 V1: 14 dia., DIA (diameters). See diameters diagnostic facilities, 2010 V2: 238 dialogue in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 223 dialysis machines, 2011 V3: 42, 2008 V4: 189-190, 219 dialysis rooms, 2011 V3: 39 Diameter-Index Safety System (CGA V-5), 2011 V3: 76, 78 diameters (dia., DIA) defined, 2009 V1: 20 inside (ID), 2009 V1: 14 outside (OD), 2009 V1: 14 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 diaper changing stations, 2008 V4: 18 diaphragm-actuated valves, 2011 V3: 125 diaphragm gas meters, 2010 V2: 116-117 diaphragm gauges, 2010 V2: 171 diaphragm pumps, 2010 V2: 169, 2011 V3: 130 diaphragm reciprocating compressors, 2011 V3: 174 diaphragm tanks, 2011 V3: 26, 2008 V4: 232 diaphragm valves, 2010 V2: 230, 2008 V4: 81 diaphragms defined, 2009 V1: 21 water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 80 diatomaceous earth filtration, 2008 V4: 203-205. See also silica advantages and disadvantages, 2010 V2: 218 diatomaceous earth filters, 2011 V3: 114, 119-122 regenerative alternative media filters, 2011 V3: 122 swimming pool usage, 2011 V3: 110 diatomes, 2008 V4: 222 1,2-dibromo-3-chloropropane (DBCP), 2008 V4: 186 dichlor, 2011 V3: 128 dichlorobenzenes levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 dichloroethanes levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 dichloropropane levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 Dictionary of Bioscience, 2008 V4: 253 die-cast metals, 2011 V3: 35 dielectric fittings, 2009 V1: 21 dielectric insulation, 2009 V1: 136, 140 dielectric unions, 2011 V3: 139, 2008 V4: 64-65 diesel drivers, 2011 V3: 22 diesel engines, 2011 V3: 22 diesel fuel, 2010 V2: 12 diesel-oil systems aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 147-149 connections and access, 2011 V3: 148 construction, 2011 V3: 147-148 corrosion protection, 2011 V3: 148 filling and spills, 2011 V3: 148 leak prevention and monitoring, 2011 V3: 148-149 materials, 2011 V3: 147-148 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 148 product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 149 tank protection, 2011 V3: 149 vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 149 venting, 2011 V3: 148

codes and standards, 2011 V3: 137 components, 2011 V3: 138 definitions and classifications, 2011 V3: 136-137 designing installation considerations, 2011 V3: 154-156 piping materials, 2011 V3: 149-151 piping sizing, 2011 V3: 150-151 submersible pump sizing, 2011 V3: 151-152 testing, 2011 V3: 152-154 overview, 2011 V3: 136 references, 2011 V3: 156 resources, 2011 V3: 156 tank abandonment and removal, 2011 V3: 154 underground tank systems, 2011 V3: 139-140 leak detection and system monitoring, 2011 V3: 141 - 145product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 146-147 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 139-140 vapor recovery systems, 2011 V3: 145-146 dietary services in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 diethylhydroxylamine, 2010 V2: 216 diff., DIFF (difference or delta), 2009 V1: 14 difference (diff., (, DIFF, D, DELTA), 2009 V1: 14 differential aeration cells, 2009 V1: 142 differential changeover manifolds, 2011 V3: 271 differential environmental conditions, corrosion by, 2009 V1: 132 differential flow sensors, 2011 V3: 124 differential gas regulators, 2010 V2: 117 differential movement in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 152 differential pressure controllers, 2011 V3: 132 water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 differential regulators, 2011 V3: 255 differentials, defined, 2009 V1: 21 difficulties in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 diffusion aerators, 2010 V2: 198, 218 diffusion-resistant valves, 2011 V3: 273 digester gas, 2010 V2: 114 digesting biosolids, 2008 V4: 263-264 digestion, 2009 V1: 21 digits, 2009 V1: 33 dikes for aboveground storage tanks, 2011 V3: 148, 148-149 for hazardous waste areas, 2011 V3: 84 dilution air, defined, 2010 V2: 135 dilution, pollution and, 2011 V3: 81 dimensions in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 defined, 2009 V1: 33 nominal, 2009 V1: 14 wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 100 dimple/depth stops, 2008 V4: 61 DIN (Deutsches Institut fur Normung), 2009 V1: 14 direct-acting, balanced-piston valves, 2008 V4: 81 direct-acting, diaphragm-actuated valves, 2008 V4: 81 direct-acting gas regulators, 2011 V3: 254 direct-circulation solar systems, 2009 V1: 122 direct connections, 2008 V4: 184 direct-count epifluorescent microscopy, 2010 V2: 188 direct current (dc, DC) cathodic protection, 2009 V1: 137

in deionization, 2010 V2: 209 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 direct discharge of effluent, 2008 V4: 249 direct fill ports, 2011 V3: 139-140 direct-filtration package plants, 2010 V2: 218 direct-fired gas water heaters, 2009 V1: 121, 2011 V3: 126 direct-fired propane vaporizers, 2010 V2: 134 direct-operated pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 direct-operated propane regulators, 2010 V2: 133 direct pump water supplies, 2011 V3: 6 directly-heated, automatic storage water heaters, 2010 V2: 101 dirt cans for vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 179 dirt in feed water, 2010 V2: 195 dirty gas, 2011 V3: 252 disabled individuals. See people with disabilities disc-type positive displacement meters, 2010 V2: 88 disc water meters, 2010 V2: 59 discharge characteristic fixture curves, 2010 V2: 3 discharge coefficients, 2009 V1: 5 discharge curves, 2011 V3: 211 discharge permits, 2011 V3: 83 discharge piping for vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 184 discharge pressure, defined, 2011 V3: 185 discharge rates in sizing bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 251 discharge temperature, defined, 2011 V3: 185 discharge times in fire suppression, 2011 V3: 27 discs defined, 2009 V1: 21, 2008 V4: 74 gate valves, 2008 V4: 83 globe/angle-globe valves, 2008 V4: 83 globe valves, 2008 V4: 75-76 discussions in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 223 disease, 2008 V4: 256 dished ends on tanks, 2011 V3: 139 dishwashers backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 defined, 2009 V1: 21 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 grades of water for, 2008 V4: 219 graywater, 2008 V4: 261 grease interceptors and, 2008 V4: 162 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 39 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 water temperatures, 2011 V3: 47 disinfecting. See also sterilization codes for, 2009 V1: 43 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 90-94 decontaminating infectious wastes, 2010 V2: 241-242 drinking water, 2010 V2: 160 feed water, 2010 V2: 195, 213 gray water, 2010 V2: 22, 27-28 septic tanks, 2010 V2: 148 small drinking water systems, 2010 V2: 218 wastewater, 2008 V4: 261 water systems, 2010 V2: 164 Disinfecting, 2008 V4: 28

Disinfection of Escherichia Coli by Using Water Dissociation Effect on Ion Exchange Membranes, 2010 V2: 225 disintegrations per second (dps), 2010 V2: 237 dispenser pans, 2011 V3: 146 dispensers aboveground tanks, 2011 V3: 149 high-rate dispensers, 2011 V3: 151 multiple dispenser flow rates, 2011 V3: 151 dispersed oil, 2010 V2: 244 displacement defined, 2009 V1: 21, 2011 V3: 185 in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 150 water meters, 2010 V2: 61 disposal fields (sewage). See soil-absorption sewage systems disposal of grease approved methods, 2008 V4: 165-166 bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250, 251 disposal wells in geothermal energy, 2009 V1: 123 disposals, 2009 V1: 21 disposers. See food waste grinders DISS connectors, 2011 V3: 76 dissociation, 2009 V1: 21 dissolved air flotation, 2008 V4: 250 dissolved elements and materials in water dissolved gases, 2010 V2: 190, 199, 215 dissolved inorganics, 2010 V2: 193 dissolved iron, 2008 V4: 222 dissolved metals, 2011 V3: 87 dissolved minerals, 2010 V2: 215 dissolved oil, 2010 V2: 244 dissolved organics, 2010 V2: 201 dissolved oxygen, 2011 V3: 88 dissolved solids, 2010 V2: 193, 2008 V4: 222 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 removing, 2008 V4: 197 dissolved gases, 2009 V1: 21, 2010 V2: 190, 199, 215 distances in standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20-21 distilled water (DI, DW) applications, 2008 V4: 212 corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 decentralized or centralized, 2008 V4: 213 defined, 2008 V4: 195 distillation compared to demineralizer systems, 2008 V4: 197 distillation compared to reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 219 distillation treatment, 2010 V2: 199-201, 202-204 distribution systems for water, 2008 V4: 213, 215 feed water, 2008 V4: 214-215 feedback purifiers, 2008 V4: 214 health care facility stills, 2011 V3: 42 laboratory grade water comparison, 2008 V4: 218 overview, 2008 V4: 211-212 producing, 2011 V3: 47-48 purity monitors, 2008 V4: 214 sizing equipment, 2008 V4: 212, 213 storage reservoirs, 2008 V4: 213 symbols for, 2009 V1: 8, 14 types of equipment, 2008 V4: 213 ultraviolet light, 2008 V4: 213 water problems, 2008 V4: 187

distribution of wealth, 2009 V1: 218 distribution piping, steam, 2011 V3: 159-161 distribution subsystems, solar, defined, 2011 V3: 191 distributors in water softeners. 2008 V4: 222 disturbing forces, 2008 V4: 146 disturbing frequency (f_d), defined, 2008 V4: 146 ditches, 2011 V3: 250 divergent thinking in creativity, 2009 V1: 225 diversity factor compressed air tools, 2011 V3: 182 defined, 2009 V1: 21, 2010 V2: 135 health care facility systems, 2011 V3: 46 medical gas, 2011 V3: 51, 70 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 51, 70 natural gas systems, 2011 V3: 252, 256 nitrogen systems, 2011 V3: 69, 70 nitrous oxide, 2011 V3: 70 oxygen, 2011 V3: 70 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 176 diverter plate, fountains, 2011 V3: 103 diverters, spray accessories on sinks, 2008 V4: 13-14 diving pools, 2011 V3: 107 divinyl benzene, 2010 V2: 206 division in SI units, 2009 V1: 35 Divisions in MasterFormat 2004, 2009 V1: 58-60, 72-83 DL. See distilled water DMH (drop manholes), 2009 V1: 14 DN (dimensional, nominal), 2009 V1: 14 DN (down), 2009 V1: 14 DN (nominal diameter), 2010 V2: 165 DNA materials, 2010 V2: 241, 2008 V4: 215 dolomite limestone chips, 2010 V2: 235 dome grates in shower rooms, 2010 V2: 11 dome roof drains, 2010 V2: 52 domestic booster pumps, 2008 V4: 99 domestic sewage, 2009 V1: 21 domestic systems. See domestic water supply; residential systems Domestic Water Heating Design Manual, 2010 V2: 96, 99, 2011 V3: 47 domestic water meters, 2010 V2: 59-60 domestic water supply as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 206 combined with fire-protection supply, 2011 V3: 218-220 defined, 2009 V1: 21 fixtures, usage reduction, 2008 V4: 258-259 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 46-49 irrigation, usage reduction, 2008 V4: 258 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190-193 overview, 2011 V3: 205-206 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 service components and design, 2011 V3: 208-217 backflow prevention, 2011 V3: 214-216 elevation differences, 2011 V3: 216 piping runs, 2011 V3: 214 strainer losses, 2011 V3: 216 taps, 2011 V3: 210-214 valves and fittings, 2011 V3: 214 water meters, 2011 V3: 216 water pressure, 2011 V3: 210 service connection, 2011 V3: 213, 214

system requirements, 2011 V3: 206-208 valves for, 2008 V4: 85-86 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 water mains, 2011 V3: 206 water utility letters, 2011 V3: 208, 259 doors, accessibility and, 2009 V1: 104, 106 dope, pipe, 2010 V2: 191 dormant water freezing points (fp, FP), 2008 V4: 114 dormitories, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 doses of radiation, 2010 V2: 237 dosimeters, 2010 V2: 237 dosing tanks, 2009 V1: 21 dot products, defined, 2009 V1: 85 DOTn. See U.S. Department of Transportation (DOTn) double. See also entries beginning with dual-, multiple-, or twodouble-acting altitude valves, 2010 V2: 164 double-acting cylinders in compressors, 2011 V3: 174 double-acting devices, 2008 V4: 136 double-bolt pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 142 double-check valves (DCV) assemblies, 2008 V4: 174, 178, 185 defined, 2009 V1: 14 with intermediate atmospheric vents, 2008 V4: 180 water mains and, 2011 V3: 215 double-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 11-12 double-contained piping systems, 2010 V2: 242, 2011 V3: 43, 145 double-contained tanks, 2011 V3: 139 double-containment systems, 2008 V4: 55, 60 double discs check valves, 2008 V4: 83 defined, 2009 V1: 21 gate valves, 2008 V4: 75, 83 double extra-strong steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 double offsets, 2009 V1: 21 double-ported valves, 2009 V1: 21 double-seated pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 double-stage gas regulators, 2011 V3: 272 double-sweep tees, 2009 V1: 21 double tees, 2008 V4: 6-7 double-wall piping, 2010 V2: 227 double-wall tanks, 2011 V3: 139 Dow Chemical Corp., 2010 V2: 224 down defined, 2009 V1: 21 symbol, 2009 V1: 14 down flow, defined, 2008 V4: 222 downfeed risers, 2008 V4: 243 downspouts and leaders (l). See also vertical stacks calculating flows, 2010 V2: 53 defined, 2009 V1: 21, 25 roof drainage systems, 2010 V2: 49 roof expansion and, 2010 V2: 49 roof leaders, 2010 V2: 49 downstream, defined, 2009 V1: 21 dp, DP (depth). See depth dps (disintegrations per second), 2010 V2: 237 DPTH (depth). See depth draft hoods, 2010 V2: 135-136 drag coefficients, 2008 V4: 154 drag force, 2008 V4: 136

drag, frictional, 2008 V4: 154 drain bodies. See sumps and sump pumps drain cleaners in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 drain fields. See soil-absorption sewage systems drain line carry tests, 2008 V4: 5 drain tiles, 2010 V2: 143 drain valves, 2011 V3: 95, 2008 V4: 222 drain, waste, and vent pipes (DWV) combination drain and vent, 2010 V2: 33 copper drainage tube, 2008 V4: 41-42 copper pipe, 2008 V4: 31 defined, 2009 V1: 22, 32, 2008 V4: 136 dimensions, 2008 V4: 38 DWV pattern schedule 40 plastic piping, 2010 V2: 13 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 48-49 polypropylene, 2008 V4: 54 Provent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 53-54 Sovent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227, 229 drain, waste, and vent stacks (DWV) copper, 2008 V4: 32 Provent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 Sovent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 drainage (corrosion), defined, 2009 V1: 142 drainage channels, irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 24 drainage fittings, 2009 V1: 21 drainage fixture units (dfu), 2009 V1: 14, 21, 23. See also fixture units and unit values drainage inlets (DI), 2009 V1: 14 drainage piping copper pipe, 2008 V4: 32 double containment, 2008 V4: 60 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 nonreinforced concrete pipe, 2008 V4: 28 drainage systems. See also specific types of drainage systems air compressor systems, 2011 V3: 178 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 188-189 condensate, 2011 V3: 163-166 defined, 2009 V1: 21, 2010 V2: 1 drainage structures, defined, 2011 V3: 226 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 42-46 laboratories acid-waste drainage, 2011 V3: 42-46 acid-waste metering, 2011 V3: 45 acid-waste solids interceptors, 2011 V3: 45 acidic-waste neutralization, 2011 V3: 43-44 corrosive-waste piping materials, 2011 V3: 46 discharge to sewers, 2011 V3: 43-44 sink traps, 2011 V3: 45-46 waste and vent piping, 2011 V3: 46 manholes, 2011 V3: 226-228 mitigating noise, 2009 V1: 189-190 pumps, 2008 V4: 99-100 storm water, 2011 V3: 249 drainage, waste, and vents (DWV). See drain, waste, and vent drainback solar systems, 2009 V1: 122 drainless water coolers, 2008 V4: 239 drainline heat reclamation, 2009 V1: 123-126

drains (D). See also building drains; horizontal drains; specific types of drains butterfly valves, float-operated main, 2011 V3: 131 defined, 2009 V1: 21 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 154 secondary containment areas, 2011 V3: 84 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104-106, 112, 131-132 symbols for, 2009 V1: 11 for water softeners, 2008 V4: 207 drawdowns (wells), 2010 V2: 158, 161, 164 drawings, plumbing. See plumbing drawings drawn temper (hard), 2008 V4: 32, 41, 42 drawoff installations. See specific kinds of interceptors drench equipment for emergencies, 2010 V2: 229 drench showers, 2011 V3: 36, 41. See also emergency fixtures dressing facilities, 2011 V3: 110 drift defined, 2009 V1: 21 problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 drilled anchor bolts, 2009 V1: 154, 184 drilling wells, 2010 V2: 164 drink dispensers, 2008 V4: 185 drinking fountains (DF) access to, 2009 V1: 101-105 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 centralized systems, 2008 V4: 243-247 estimating water usage, 2008 V4: 246 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 graywater systems, 2009 V1: 126 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 37, 40 materials and components, 2008 V4: 245 minimum numbers of, 2008 V4: 18-21 office building usage, 2008 V4: 244 stand-alone water coolers, 2008 V4: 237-240 standards, 2008 V4: 2 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 swimming pool facilities, 2011 V3: 109, 110 symbols, 2009 V1: 14 types, 2008 V4: 14 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 wheelchair approaches, 2009 V1: 104 drinking water blood contamination in, 2008 V4: 187 boiler water contamination case, 2008 V4: 188 contaminant levels, 2008 V4: 186 cross connections to nonpotable water, 2008 V4: 170 drinking water supply (DWS), 2009 V1: 8 drinking water supply recirculating (DWR), 2009 V1: 8 drinking water systems. See private water systems fountains vs. cup service, 2008 V4: 245 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 46, 47 material codes, 2009 V1: 43 potable water, 2009 V1: 27, 2008 V4: 178, 179-183, 194 Safe Drinking Water Act, 2008 V4: 186 shipyard cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 189 supply as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 system noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190-193 treatments for, 2010 V2: 218, 2008 V4: 187 typical usage in offices, 2008 V4: 244-245 drinking-water coolers access to, 2009 V1: 101-105

accessories, 2008 V4: 240 centralized systems, 2008 V4: 243-247 compared to water chillers, 2008 V4: 237 defined, 2008 V4: 237 features, 2008 V4: 240-241 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 heating functions, 2008 V4: 240 installing, 2008 V4: 247 invention of, 2008 V4: 237 options, 2008 V4: 240 public areas in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 37 ratings, 2008 V4: 238 refrigeration systems, 2008 V4: 242 standards, 2008 V4: 2 stream regulators, 2008 V4: 242 types, 2008 V4: 14, 237-240 water conditioning for, 2008 V4: 242-243 wheelchair space around, 2009 V1: 104 drip legs, condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 164 drip pots, 2011 V3: 255 drive points, 2010 V2: 157 driven wells, 2010 V2: 157 drives, variable-frequency (VFD), 2011 V3: 125-126 droop, 2009 V1: 21, 2008 V4: 80 drop elbows, 2009 V1: 21 drop manholes (DMH), 2009 V1: 14, 21, 2011 V3: 228, 232 drop nipples on pendant sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13 drop tees, 2009 V1: 21 drop tubes, 2011 V3: 140, 145 drops, 2009 V1: 11, 21, 2011 V3: 139 drops in pressure. See pressure drops or differences (PD, DELTP) drug rooms, 2011 V3: 38 drum traps, 2011 V3: 46 dry air composition of, 2011 V3: 172, 264 properties, 2011 V3: 263 water vapor in, 2011 V3: 265 dry-bulb temperature (dbt, DBT, DB), 2009 V1: 21, 2011 V3: 185, 2008 V4: 112, 113 dry-chemical extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24-25, 28 - 29dry gas, 2011 V3: 185, 257 dry hose stations, 2009 V1: 13 dry ice, 2011 V3: 26 dry nitrogen, 2011 V3: 257 dry pendent sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 dry-pipe systems accelerators, 2011 V3: 9 air compressors, 2011 V3: 8 combined dry-pipe and pre-action systems, 2011 V3: 10 - 11defined, 2009 V1: 28 normal conditions, 2011 V3: 8 riser diagram, 2011 V3: 8 sprinklers, 2011 V3: 6-8 water delivery time frames, 2011 V3: 9 dry-pipe valves, 2009 V1: 13, 21 dry-pit pumps, 2008 V4: 100 dry-powder extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 dry pumps, 2010 V2: 173 dry standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20

dry standpipes, 2009 V1: 13, 30 dry-storage water softeners, 2010 V2: 210 dry units, defined, 2011 V3: 185 dry upright sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 dry-vacuum cleaning systems (DVC), 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 178, 186 dry-weather flows, 2009 V1: 21 dry wells (leaching wells), 2011 V3: 249-250 dryers in laundry facilities, 2011 V3: 39 du Moulin, G.C., 2010 V2: 224 dual. See also entries beginning with double-, multiple-, or twodual-bed deionization (two-step), 2010 V2: 206, 207 dual-check valve assemblies applications, 2008 V4: 185 with atmospheric vents, 2008 V4: 185 defined, 2008 V4: 174-175, 180 dual-flush water closets, 2009 V1: 127, 2010 V2: 2 dual fuel devices, 2009 V1: 21 dual-gas booster systems, 2010 V2: 120 dual-height water coolers, 2008 V4: 239 dual vents (common vents), 2009 V1: 19. See also common vents dual water-supply systems, 2011 V3: 46 ductile action of building systems, 2009 V1: 174 ductile iron grates, 2010 V2: 13 ductile iron piping characteristics and standards, 2008 V4: 28-29 hangers, 2008 V4: 132 pressure classes, 2008 V4: 28 radioactive waste and, 2010 V2: 239 sizing, 2011 V3: 242 ducts. See vents and venting systems Duffie, J.A., 2011 V3: 203 dug wells, 2010 V2: 156 Dumfries Triangle and Occoquan-Woodbridge Sanitary District, 2010 V2: 29 dump loads, 2011 V3: 47 Dunleavy, M., 2010 V2: 224 duplex. See also entries beginning with double-, dual-, or twoduplex air compressors, 2011 V3: 63 duplex bed pressure swing dryers, 2011 V3: 179 duplex manifolds, 2011 V3: 60, 61 duplex sump pump systems, 2010 V2: 8 duplex vacuum pump arrangements, 2010 V2: 173, 178 duration defined, 2009 V1: 22 rainfall, 2010 V2: 53, 2011 V3: 241-242 rainfall charts, 2011 V3: 244-248 Durham systems, 2009 V1: 22 durion, 2009 V1: 22 duriron pipe, 2008 V4: 57-59 dust, as air contaminant, 2011 V3: 265 duty cycles, 2009 V1: 22, 2011 V3: 182, 183 duty-cycling controls, 2011 V3: 62, 65 DVC (dry vacuum cleaning), 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 178, 186 DW. See distilled water (DI, DW) dwellings. See buildings DWG (drawings), 2009 V1: 14. See also plumbing drawings DWR (drinking water supply recirculating), 2009 V1: 8 DWS (drinking water supply), 2009 V1: 8

DWV. See drain, waste, and vent pipes (DWV); drain, waste, and vent stacks (DWV) dye tests, 2008 V4: 5, 9 dyes in gray water, 2010 V2: 27 dynamic air compressors, 2011 V3: 62, 174 dynamic force (dynamic loading), 2008 V4: 136 dynamic head, 2010 V2: 161 dynamic loads, 2008 V4: 136 dynamic properties of piping, defined, 2009 V1: 185 dynamic response (K) to ground shaking, 2009 V1: 149, 152 dynamic viscosity converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 dyne, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 dysentery, 2008 V4: 171

E

E (roughness). See roughness of pipes E (volts). See volts E (exa) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 early flame knockdown, 2011 V3: 23 earth loads bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 defined, 2009 V1: 22 protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 earthquake protection of plumbing equipment. See seismic protection Earthquake Resistance of Buildings, 2009 V1: 185 Earthquake Resistant Design Requirements Handbook, 2009 V1: 185 Eaton, Herbert N., 2010 V2: 4 eccentric fittings, 2009 V1: 22 eccentric reducers, 2009 V1: 10 e.coli bacteria, 2010 V2: 43 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 economic concerns. See costs and economic concerns economic values, 2009 V1: 209 economizers drinking water coolers, 2008 V4: 242 gas systems, 2011 V3: 272 ECTFE (ethylenechlorotrifluoroethylene), 2009 V1: 32 Eddy, 2010 V2: 154 edge distances, problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 edr, EDR (equivalent direct radiation), 2009 V1: 38 educating public on graywater systems, 2010 V2: 27-28 educational facilities. See schools eff, EFF (efficiency). See efficiency effective openings, 2009 V1: 22, 2008 V4: 178 effective pressure, 2010 V2: 94 effects in multi-effect distillation, 2010 V2: 200 effects of earthquakes, 2009 V1: 148-149 efficiency (eff, EFF) energy, 2008 V4: 264 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 157 heat transfer, 2011 V3: 162 pumps, 2008 V4: 94-96 thermal, 2009 V1: 128 water softeners, 2008 V4: 209 efficiency quotient (Eq), defined, 2008 V4: 145

effluent. See also private onsite wastewater treatment systems (POWTS) bioremediation pretreatment. See bioremediation pretreatment systems chemicals in special-waste effluent, 2010 V2: 228 defined, 2009 V1: 22, 2008 V4: 222 estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 layers of in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 pumps, 2008 V4: 99 samples of radioactive waste effluent, 2010 V2: 240 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 227 temperature of special-waste effluent, 2010 V2: 228 treatment of sewage effluent, 2010 V2: 145 Effluent Guideline program, 2011 V3: 82-83 Egozy, 2010 V2: 224 EJ (expansion joints). See expansion joints EJCDC (Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee), 2009 V1: 57 ejector pumps and pits, 2009 V1: 22, 2011 V3: 228-229 ejectors defined, 2010 V2: 8 in sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 8-9 EL (elevation). See elevation elastic limits, 2009 V1: 22 elastic rebound theory, 2009 V1: 148 elastic vibration in pipes, 2009 V1: 6 elasticity flexural modulus of, 2008 V4: 228 plastic pipes, 2006 V4: 50 elastomeric insulation defined, 2008 V4: 106-107 elastomer-cork mountings, 2008 V4: 150 heat loss, 2008 V4: 111 vibration insulation, 2008 V4: 149-150 elastomeric seals or gaskets reinforced concrete pipe, 2008 V4: 32 slip expansion joints, 2008 V4: 229 water closets, 2008 V4: 6 elastomers, 2009 V1: 22, 32 elbow lugs, 2008 V4: 136 elbow offsets, 2008 V4: 229 elbows angle valves and, 2008 V4: 76 ells, 2009 V1: 22 risers up or down, 2009 V1: 10-11 elderly aging disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 fixtures and, 2009 V1: 99 in hot water demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99 electric arc welding, 2008 V4: 62-63 electric capacitance measurements, 2009 V1: 34 electric charge density measurements, 2009 V1: 34 electric fire pumps, 2011 V3: 22 electric hot-water heaters, 2009 V1: 120 electric inductance, 2009 V1: 34 electric irrigation valves, 2011 V3: 94 electric permeability measurements, 2009 V1: 34 electric permitivity measurements, 2009 V1: 34 electric resistance, 2009 V1: 34 electric-resistance welding (ERW), 2008 V4: 48 electric resistivity measurements, 2009 V1: 34 electric solenoid level-sensing systems, 2011 V3: 132

electric vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 electric water heaters, 2010 V2: 100-101 electrical bonding, 2010 V2: 125 electrical components in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125 electrical engineers, 2011 V3: 29 electrical equipment fires, 2011 V3: 25 installation of pipe and, 2008 V4: 23 electrical leakage, 2008 V4: 120 electricity conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 electric current, 2008 V4: 64-65 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 off-peak power savings, 2009 V1: 119 electrochemical equivalents in corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 Electrochemical Society, 2009 V1: 142 electrodeionization, 2010 V2: 209-210 electrodes in conductivity meters, 2008 V4: 198 defined, 2009 V1: 142 electrofusion joining, 2008 V4: 63 Electrofusion Joining Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings, 2008 V4: 63 electrogalvanization, 2008 V4: 136 electrolysis. See also galvanic action defined, 2009 V1: 22, 2008 V4: 136 dezincification of brass, 2008 V4: 78 electrolytes defined, 2009 V1: 22, 129, 142, 2010 V2: 187 specific resistance, 2010 V2: 192 electromagnetic radiation, 2010 V2: 237, 2008 V4: 216 electrometric compression liners, 2008 V4: 48 electromotive force (emf, EMF) electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 134 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 134, 142 electron microscopes, 2011 V3: 40, 42, 47, 52 electronegative potential, 2009 V1: 142 electronic grade water, 2008 V4: 49, 55 electronic pressure differential switches, 2008 V4: 203 electronic product level gauges, 2011 V3: 149 electronic tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 electronics-grade water, 220, 2010 V2: 219 electroplating defined, 2008 V4: 136 wastewater treatment, 2011 V3: 86 electropositive potential, 2009 V1: 142 electroregeneration, 2010 V2: 210 elemental bromine, 2011 V3: 131 elements in water, 2010 V2: 189 elev., ELEV (elevation). See elevation elevated water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 elevated water supplies, 2010 V2: 65-66, 2011 V3: 6 elevation (elev., EL, ELEV) adjustments for vacuum, 2010 V2: 166-167, 185 air compressors and, 2011 V3: 63 air pressure corrections, 2011 V3: 264 altitude valves, 2010 V2: 163-164 compressed air and, 2011 V3: 171 defined, 2008 V4: 136 medical vacuum systems and, 2011 V3: 64 natural gas and, 121, 2010 V2: 117

pressure drops and, 2010 V2: 84 pressure losses and, 2011 V3: 216 regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262 in sprinkler hydraulic calculations, 2011 V3: 13 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 elevation pressure, 2010 V2: 94 elevator shafts medical gas piping and, 2011 V3: 68 protection systems, 2011 V3: 29 ellipses, calculating area, 2009 V1: 4 ells (elbows), 2009 V1: 22. See also elbows elongated bowls on water closets, 2008 V4: 3-4 elutriation, 2009 V1: 22 embedding, defined, 2008 V4: 136 embedments, problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 emergency equipment for acid spills, 2010 V2: 229, 231 emergency fixtures emergency eyewashes, 2008 V4: 17 emergency showers, 2008 V4: 17 standards, 2008 V4: 2 emergency gas shutoffs, 2010 V2: 121 Emergency Planning and Community Right-To-Know Act (EPCRA) (SARA Title III), 2011 V3: 137 emergency power for fire pumps, 2011 V3: 22 emergency rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 36, 38 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 water demand, 2011 V3: 46 emergency showers, 2011 V3: 36, 41 emergency shutoffs for fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 emergency tank vents, 2011 V3: 148 e.m.f. series, 2009 V1: 134, 142 emissivity, defined, 2011 V3: 191 emittance, defined, 2011 V3: 191 emitters in irrigation systems, 2010 V2: 25 Empire State Building, 2008 V4: 119 employee facilities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 emulsions, 2010 V2: 244 enameled cast iron fixtures defined, 2008 V4: 1 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35 standards, 2008 V4: 2 enameled floor drains, 2010 V2: 15 enameled sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 13 encephalitis, 2010 V2: 49 enclosed impellers, 2008 V4: 95, 99 enclosures for showers, 2009 V1: 112 encoder remote-readout gas meters, 2010 V2: 116 end connections, 2009 V1: 22 end-head flows, 2011 V3: 13 end-suction pumps, 2009 V1: 23, 2011 V3: 21, 122-123 end-use water restrictions, 2009 V1: 118 endotoxins, 2010 V2: 188, 194, 2008 V4: 222 endrin levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 energy alternate energy sources, 2009 V1: 121-126 conservation. See conserving energy conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35

defined, 2009 V1: 128, 2011 V3: 185 efficiency, green plumbing, 2008 V4: 264 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 nondepletable, 2009 V1: 128 recovered, 2009 V1: 128 requirements, wastewater management, 2008 V4: 264 solar. See solar energy use, 2011 V3: 188 energy code list of agencies, 2009 V1: 42 energy conservation. See conserving energy energy efficiency. See conserving energy Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy web site, 2011 V3: 203 Energy Policy Act (EPACT), 2009 V1: 117, 127, 2008 V4: 3, 8, 10, 11 Energy Policy and Conservation Act (EPCA), 2009 V1: 117 Energy Saving and the Plumbing System, 2009 V1: 128 Energy Star web site, 2011 V3: 203 energy transport subsystem, defined, 2011 V3: 191 enflurane, 2011 V3: 66 Engineered Controls International, Inc., 2010 V2: 137 engineered drawings, 2008 V4: 136 engineered dry-chemical systems, 2011 V3: 24 engineered hanger assemblies, 2008 V4: 136 Engineered Plumbing Design, 2009 V1: 39, 2010 V2: 55 Engineered Plumbing Design II, 2010 V2: 96, 2008 V4: 235 engineered plumbing systems, 2009 V1: 22 engineering and design costs, 2009 V1: 208 Engineering Manual of the War Department, 2010 V2: 55 Engineering Resource Binder, 2009 V1: 206 **Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee** (EJCDC), 2009 V1: 57 engineers of record, 2009 V1: 253 engines, earthquake protection for, 2009 V1: 157 enthalpy (H), 2011 V3: 185 entrainment ratios, 2011 V3: 185 entropy (S), 2009 V1: 34, 2011 V3: 186 environmental concerns. See green building and plumbing environmental conditions corrosion by, 2009 V1: 132 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 117, 119 environmental impacts propane, 2010 V2: 131 environmental impacts of solar energy, 2011 V3: 189 Environmental Protection Agency. See U.S. Environmental Protection Agency environs (facilities with radiation), 2010 V2: 237 EP (epoxy, epoxides), 2009 V1: 32 EPA. See U.S. Environmental Protection Agency The EPA Effluent Guidelines Series (EPA 440), 2011 V3: 89 EPA protocol gases, 2011 V3: 266 EPACT (Energy Policy Act), 2009 V1: 117, 127 EPCA (Energy Policy and Conservation Act), 2009 V1: 117 EPCRA (Emergency Planning and Community Right-To-Know Act) (SARA Title III), 2011 V3: 137 EPDM (ethylene-propylene diene monomer), 2009 V1: 32, 2008 V4: 41, 86 epicenters of earthquakes, 2009 V1: 147 epm (equivalents per million), 2010 V2: 191 EPM (ethylene propylene terpolyment), 2009 V1: 32 epoxy, 2009 V1: 32

as thermoset, 2008 V4: 49 coatings, 2009 V1: 136, 2011 V3: 150 fiberglass pipe and, 2008 V4: 56 valve coatings, 2008 V4: 86 epsom salt, 2008 V4: 193. See also magnesium sulfate equations absolute, atmospheric, and gage pressure, 2008 V4: 169 acfm to scfm, 2011 V3: 62 air receiver sizing, 2011 V3: 177-178 anode expected life, 2009 V1: 138 areas and volumes, 2009 V1: 3-5 Bernoulli's equation, 2009 V1: 5-6 bioremediation system size, 2008 V4: 251 Boyle's law, 2010 V2: 65, 2008 V4: 233-234 calculating seismic forces, 2009 V1: 179-180 chemical formulas, 2008 V4: 193 clean agent weight, 2011 V3: 27 coefficients of expansion, 2008 V4: 233 Colebrook formula, 2010 V2: 74-75 condensate estimates, 2011 V3: 167 corrosion rates, 2009 V1: 134 CPC solar system, 2011 V3: 196 Darcy's Law, 2009 V1: 2, 3, 2010 V2: 6, 74 drinking fountain requirements, 2008 V4: 246 drinking water usage and refrigeration loads, 2008 V4: 244 - 245Faraday's Law, 2009 V1: 134 fixture flow rates and water softeners, 2008 V4: 207 fixture vent design, 2010 V2: 38 flash steam, 2011 V3: 157-159 flow at outlets, 2009 V1: 3, 5 flow capacity in vertical stacks, 2010 V2: 3 flow from outlets, velocity of, 2009 V1: 6 flow rates, 2009 V1: 1 freezing in pipes, 2008 V4: 114-115 friction head, 2009 V1: 6, 2010 V2: 61-63 friction head loss, 2009 V1: 2 gas cylinder capacity, 2011 V3: 268 gas expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 233-234 gas laws, 2010 V2: 126 gas pressures, 2011 V3: 279 gas temperatures, 2011 V3: 279 gravity circulation, 2009 V1: 5 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 154-156, 163-164 Hazen-Williams formula, 2009 V1: 2, 2010 V2: 6, 73 hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 100-101 hydrant flow tests, 2011 V3: 4 hydraulic shock, 2009 V1: 6 insulation and heat loss, 2008 V4: 113-115 International System of Units (SI), 2009 V1: 1 Joukowsky's formula, 2010 V2: 70-71 kinetic energy, 2009 V1: 2 Manning formula alternative sewage-disposal systems, 2010 V2: 144 open-channel flow, 2009 V1: 1, 2010 V2: 6 sloping drains, 2010 V2: 7 maximum allowable strain, 2008 V4: 228-229 medical gas pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 68-69 mixing flows of water, 2009 V1: 118 natural gas pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 130 Newton's equation, 2008 V4: 154 Ohm's Law, 2009 V1: 134

pipe expansion and contraction, 2009 V1: 3, 2008 V4: 227 plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85-90 potential energy, 2009 V1: 2 pump affinity laws, 2009 V1: 6 pump efficiency, 2009 V1: 6-7 pump head, 2010 V2: 61-63 pump head/capacity curves, 2008 V4: 97 rainfall concentration and intensity, 2010 V2: 44 Rational Method, 2010 V2: 43 Rational Method formulas, 2009 V1: 7, 2011 V3: 238-239 references, 2009 V1: 39 Reynold's number, 2009 V1: 2, 2008 V4: 154 sizing conveyance piping, 2010 V2: 47 soil resistivity, 2009 V1: 138 solar energy, 2011 V3: 193 Spitzglass formula, 2009 V1: 7, 2010 V2: 130 sprinkler demand, 2011 V3: 13 sprinkler design density, 2011 V3: 12 sprinkler end-head pressures, 2011 V3: 13 SRTA absorbers, 2011 V3: 195-196 stack terminal velocity and length, 2009 V1: 3 steady-state heat balance equations, 2010 V2: 100 steam velocity, 2011 V3: 159 Stoke's law, 2008 V4: 154, 200 storm drainage, 2009 V1: 7 storm drainage collection inlets and outlets, 2010 V2: 46 tank volume, 2008 V4: 154 terminal velocity and terminal length, 2010 V2: 1-2 thermal efficiency, 2011 V3: 194-195 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 228-229 vacuum system demand, 2011 V3: 65 value, worth and cost, 2009 V1: 208 velocity head, 2009 V1: 5 vent piping length, 2009 V1: 3 vent stack sizing, 2010 V2: 36-37 vibration transmission, 2008 V4: 146-149 water balance, 2010 V2: 21-22 water expansion, 2008 V4: 232-235 water flow in pipes, 2009 V1: 2 water heating, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 126 water mass and volume, 2010 V2: 67-68 water vapor transmission, 2008 V4: 106 well equilibrium equations, 2010 V2: 157-158 Weymouth formula, 2009 V1: 7, 2010 V2: 130 equilibrium equations for wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 equipment as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 defined, 2009 V1: 185 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194-201 quality support systems for, 2009 V1: 258 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 153-158 suspended, 2009 V1: 259 Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Other Recreational Water Facilities (NSF/ANSI 50), 2011 V3: 111, 122 Equipment Handbook, ASHRAE, 2011 V3: 204 equivalent air, defined, 2011 V3: 186 equivalent direct radiation (edr, EDR) EDR hot water, 2009 V1: 38

EDR steam, 2009 V1: 38 equivalent length compressed air piping, 2011 V3: 182 defined, 2010 V2: 136 medical gas piping, 2011 V3: 68 natural gas piping, 2010 V2: 129 equivalent run, 2009 V1: 22 equivalent static force, calculating, 2009 V1: 174 equivalent weight, 2010 V2: 188, 189 equivalents per million, 2010 V2: 191 erected elevations, 2008 V4: 136 erosion, 2009 V1: 22, 2011 V3: 49, 91, 161, 2008 V4: 194 erosion corrosion, 2010 V2: 195 erosion feeders, 2011 V3: 130 ERW (electric-resistance welding), 2008 V4: 48 essential facilities, defined, 2009 V1: 185 estates, septic tank systems for, 2010 V2: 149 estimating calculations, solar energy, 2011 V3: 193 estimating costs. See also costs and economic concerns factors in estimates, 2009 V1: 89-90 idea development and estimated cost forms, 2009 V1: 234overestimating, 2009 V1: 218 per-area costs, 2009 V1: 89 per-fixture or per-accessory estimates, 2009 V1: 88 plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85-90 software for cost estimation. 2009 V1: 89 in value engineering, 2009 V1: 235 estimating medical gas and vacuum stations, 2011 V3: 50-51, 52-53 Estimating wastewater loading rates using soil morphological descriptions, 2010 V2: 55 Estimation of Soil Water Properties, Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers, 2010 V2: 55 ethane, 2010 V2: 114 ethylbenzene levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 ethylene dibromide levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 ethylene glycol, 2009 V1: 141, 2008 V4: 189–190 ethylene-propylene diene monomer (EPDM), 2009 V1: 32, 2008 V4: 41, 86 ethylene propylene terpolymet, 2009 V1: 32 ethylenechlorotrifluoroethylene, 2009 V1: 32 EVAC stations, 2011 V3: 52-53 Evaluation phase in value engineering activities, 2009 V1: 229-235 checklists, 2009 V1: 230-231 comparing functions, 2009 V1: 235 functional evaluation worksheets, 2009 V1: 236-247 idea evaluation checklist, 2009 V1: 245 in process, 2009 V1: 209 second creativity, cost, and evaluation analysis, 2009 V1: 235 evap, EVAP. See evaporation; evaporators evaporation (evap, EVAP) staged, 2010 V2: 200 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 154 evaporative coolers. See cooling-tower water evaporative cooling, defined, 2011 V3: 186 evaporators (evap, EVAP) centralized chilled water systems, 2008 V4: 243 distillation, 2011 V3: 48

drinking water coolers, 2008 V4: 242 flushing in stills, 2008 V4: 214 evapotranspiration defined, 2009 V1: 22 irrigation, 2011 V3: 96 sewage treatment, 2010 V2: 145 events, storm, 2010 V2: 42 "exa" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 exact conversions, 2009 V1: 33 exam/treatment rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 38 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 examination section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 71 excavation labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87-88 plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 excess air, defined, 2010 V2: 136 excess flow gas valves, 2010 V2: 118 excess pressure pumps, 2009 V1: 23 excess water pressure, 2010 V2: 68-70 excessive costs, value engineering and, 2009 V1: 208 exchange capacity of resins, 2010 V2: 206 exchangers in distillers, 2010 V2: 200 Execution section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 71 exfiltration, 2009 V1: 22 exhaust filters on vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 172 from vacuum, 2010 V2: 174 gas cabinets, 2011 V3: 270 gas venting systems, 2010 V2: 118 pressure loss in vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 184 vacuum exhaust pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 178 vacuum system piping, 2010 V2: 169, 2011 V3: 65 vacuum system stacks, 2011 V3: 65 exhausted cartridges in ion exchange, 2010 V2: 208 exhausters (dry-pipe systems), 2011 V3: 8 exhausters (vacuum) air-bleed controls, 2010 V2: 179 defined, 2010 V2: 179 locating, 2010 V2: 181 sizing, 2010 V2: 184 exhaustion, defined, 2008 V4: 222 exhibition halls, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 existing work defined, 2009 V1: 22 surveying existing buildings, 2009 V1: 265-270 exp, EXP (expansion). See expansion expanded air in vacuums, 2010 V2: 168 expanded perlite, 2008 V4: 111 expanded system volumes, 2008 V4: 232 expansion (exp, EXP, XPAN) aboveground piping, 2008 V4: 227-229 ABS pipes, 2008 V4: 54 anchors, 2008 V4: 63-65 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 backflow prevention and, 2010 V2: 61 buildings, 2011 V3: 50 calculating pipe expansion, 2009 V1: 3 Capitol Dome, Washington, D.C., 2008 V4: 119 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38

copper, 2008 V4: 233 defined, 2008 V4: 227 expansion tanks, 2008 V4: 231-235 fiberglass pipe, 2008 V4: 56 foam extinguishing agents, 2011 V3: 25 future expansion of compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 182 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 119 HDPE pipe, 2008 V4: 51 hot-water systems and, 2010 V2: 106-107 insulation, 2008 V4: 116 linear expansion in PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 53 materials expansion, 2008 V4: 232-233 pipes, 2008 V4: 69 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50 protecting against pipe expansion, 2010 V2: 16 PVDF pipe, 2008 V4: 55 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 16 stainless steel, 2008 V4: 59-60 storage tanks and piping, 2011 V3: 153 thermal expansion loops, 2009 V1: 152 thermal expansion tanks, 2010 V2: 106 water expansion formulas, 2008 V4: 232-235 water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 expansion bends, 2010 V2: 16 expansion hook plates, 2008 V4: 67 expansion joints (EJ) anchoring, 2008 V4: 63-65 defined, 2009 V1: 22 DWV pipes, 2008 V4: 229 roofs, 2010 V2: 49 spacing, 2008 V4: 229 symbols for, 2009 V1: 10 thermal expansion and, 2010 V2: 16, 2008 V4: 228-229 types of, 2008 V4: 64-65, 229 use of, 2008 V4: 69 expansion loops bracing and, 2009 V1: 161 defined, 2009 V1: 22 loops and offsets, 2008 V4: 228-229 protecting against thermal expansion, 2010 V2: 16 use of, 2008 V4: 69 expansion tanks, 2010 V2: 67-68 air cushion expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 233 - 234effects of, 2008 V4: 231 materials expansion, 2008 V4: 232-233 overview, 2008 V4: 231-232 sizing, 2008 V4: 231, 234 expert costs, 2009 V1: 218 explosion-proof water coolers, 2008 V4: 239 explosions explosion-proof (XP) construction, 2010 V2: 125 explosion-relief devices for vacuums, 2010 V2: 179 fire-protection systems, 2011 V3: 24 hot-water heaters, 2010 V2: 97 nitric acid, 2010 V2: 232 exposed ends of piping, 2008 V4: 23 extended-coverage sidewall sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 extended handles, 2008 V4: 84, 87 extension riser clamps, 2008 V4: 136

external energy, defined, 2011 V3: 185 external water treatments, 2008 V4: 194 extinguishing systems, 2009 V1: 12 extra-hazard occupancies defined, 2009 V1: 28-29, 2011 V3: 2 deluge systems, 2011 V3: 9-10 firefighting hose streams, 2011 V3: 225 portable fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 29 extra-heavy cast-iron soil pipe (XH), 2008 V4: 24-26 extra-heavy gaskets, 2008 V4: 60 extra-heavy piping, 2009 V1: 22 extra materials section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 71 extra-strong steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 extractors in laundry facilities, 2011 V3: 39 extruded steel piping, 2008 V4: 48 eye nuts, 2008 V4: 121 eye rods, 2008 V4: 136 eye sockets, 2008 V4: 127, 136 eyeball fittings, fountains, 2011 V3: 102 eyewashes for emergencies, 2010 V2: 229, 2011 V3: 36, 41, 2008 V4: 17

F

°F, F (Fahrenheit), 2009 V1: 14, 30, 37 F (farads), 2009 V1: 34 f (femto) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 F (fire-protection water supply). See fire-protection systems f to f, F TO F (face to face), 2009 V1: 22 f-chart sizing method, solar energy, 2011 V3: 196 F/m (farads per meter), 2009 V1: 34 F-437 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-438 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-439 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-441 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-442 standard, 2008 V4: 54 F-477 standard, 2008 V4: 53 F-628 standard, 2008 V4: 54 F-771 standard, 2008 V4: 51 F-810 standard, 2008 V4: 51 F-876 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-877 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-894 standard, 2008 V4: 51 F-1055 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1056 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1281 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-1282 standard, 2008 V4: 52 F-1290 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1412 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-1673 standard, 2008 V4: 55 F-2389 standard, 2008 V4: 55 fabricated steel parts, 2008 V4: 136 fabrication, defined, 2008 V4: 136 fabrication section in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 fabricators, 2008 V4: 136 face-to-face dimensions, defined, 2009 V1: 22 face washes, 2011 V3: 36, 41 Facility Piping System Handbook, 2010 V2: 96, 137, 186, 224, 246, 2011 V3: 156, 2008 V4: 116 Facility Piping Systems Handbook, 2010 V2: 55 factories

numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 factory-beaded pipe, 2008 V4: 63 Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FM) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 32 air compressors in dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 8 design density requirements, 2011 V3: 11 Factory Mutual (FM) Loss Prevention Data Sheets, 2011 V3: 218 FM Global, 2010 V2: 115 Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 6-4: Oil and Gasfired Single-burner Boilers, 2010 V2: 117-118 seismic protection recommendations, 2009 V1: 177 valve standards, 2008 V4: 73, 90 Fahrenheit (°F, F) conversion factors, 2009 V1: 37 defined, 2009 V1: 30 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 fail-safe mixing valves, 2008 V4: 17 Failsafe Neutralization of Wastewater Effluent, 2010 V2: 246 failure values of anchors, 2009 V1: 184 Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines, 2009 V1: 98 fairly-rough piping, 2010 V2: 81 fairly-smooth piping, 2010 V2: 80 fall-off pressure, 2008 V4: 80 falloff pressure, 2010 V2: 94 Fallon, Carlos, 2009 V1: 252 false alarms for sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 6 families, in hot water demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99 fan pressurization tests, 2011 V3: 28 Faraday's Law, 2009 V1: 129, 134 farads, 2009 V1: 34 farads per meter, 2009 V1: 34 farm animal water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 FAST approach to function analysis, 2009 V1: 219-223 fats, oils, and grease (FOG). See also grease interceptors bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 249 disposal systems, 2008 V4: 160 exclusion from wastewater systems, 2010 V2: 21 fats in kitchens, 2011 V3: 39 grease traps, defined, 2009 V1: 24 grease waste drains, 2008 V4: 249 interceptors. See grease interceptors recombined FOG (fats, oil, and grease), 2008 V4: 249 removing grease, 2008 V4: 165-166 faucets accessible shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 13-14 centersets, 2008 V4: 10 defined, 2009 V1: 22 flow rates, 2008 V4: 10, 13 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35 leakage, 2009 V1: 126 LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 low flow, 2009 V1: 127-128 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 193-194 patient rooms, 2011 V3: 37 reduced water usage, 2009 V1: 118 reducing flow rates, 2009 V1: 126 residential kitchen sinks, 2008 V4: 11

self-metering, 2008 V4: 13 sinks, 2009 V1: 109 standards, 2008 V4: 2 types of, 2008 V4: 13-14 wasted water, 2009 V1: 128 water usage reduction, 2008 V4: 258 faults and fault zones, 2009 V1: 148 FC (flexible connectors). See flexible connectors FCO (floor cleanouts), 2009 V1: 11 FD (floor drains with p-traps), 2009 V1: 11. See also floor drains (FD) FDA (Food and Drug Administration), 2010 V2: 220, 224, 227 FE (fire extinguishers), 2009 V1: 14. See also under fireprotection systems features, defined, 2009 V1: 33 fecal coliform bacteria storm water, 2010 V2: 27 fecal matter. See black-water systems; effluent federal agencies. See specific agencies under "US" Federal Energy Management Improvement Act (FEMIA), 2009 V1: 117 Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, 2010 V2: 218 Federal Register (FR), 2011 V3: 82 federal specifications (FS), 2009 V1: 32. See also U.S. Federal Specifications Fédération Internationale de Natatíon Amateur (FINA), 2011 V3: 104 feed-gas treatment units in ozone generators, 2010 V2: 214 feed systems, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127-131 feed water condensate as, 2008 V4: 214 defined, 2010 V2: 187 distillation, 2008 V4: 214-215 pure-water systems, 2010 V2: 219 raw water, defined, 2008 V4: 194 raw water as cooling water for stills, 2008 V4: 214 feedback purifiers, 2008 V4: 214 feet (ft, FT) converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 feet per minute (fpm, FPM), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 30 feet per second (fps, FPS), 2009 V1: 14 foot-pounds (ft-lb, FT LB), 2009 V1: 14 of head, converting, 2009 V1: 2 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 female threads, 2009 V1: 22 FEMIA (Federal Energy Management Improvement Act), 2009 V1: 117 "femto" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 Ferguson, Bruce K., 2010 V2: 55 ferric chloride, 2008 V4: 201 ferric hydroxide, 2010 V2: 189 ferric iron, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 222 ferric oxide, 2008 V4: 193 ferric sulfate, 2008 V4: 196, 201 ferritic stainless steel, 2008 V4: 59 ferrous bicarbonate, 2010 V2: 189 ferrous carbonate, 2008 V4: 193 ferrous iron, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 222 ferrous oxide, 2008 V4: 193 ferrous pipes, 2011 V3: 101

FF (full-flow conditions), 2009 V1: 1 FHR (fire hose racks), 2009 V1: 14 FHV (fire hose valves), 2009 V1: 14 fiber piping, 2010 V2: 75 fiber stress in bending, 2008 V4: 228 fiberglass insulation, 2008 V4: 106-107 tank insulation, 2008 V4: 109 fiberglass cloth, skrim, and kraft paper (FSK), 2008 V4: 108 fiberglass filters, 2011 V3: 273 fiberglass fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 fiberglass insulation, 2008 V4: 106-107 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 244 freezing points and, 2008 V4: 114-115 heat loss, 2008 V4: 110, 111 fiberglass lagging, 2008 V4: 108 fiberglass pipe hangers, 2008 V4: 132 fiberglass-reinforced plastic (FRP) cold water systems, 2010 V2: 94 exposed piping on storage tanks, 2011 V3: 148 fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 fuel product dispensing, 2011 V3: 150 liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 138 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 56 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 147, 155 sulfuric acid and, 2011 V3: 85 velocity, 2011 V3: 151 VOCs and, 2010 V2: 190 fiberglass-reinforced polyester, 2008 V4: 252 fiberglass-reinforced storage tanks aboveground storage tanks, 2011 V3: 147 hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 high-purity water, 2010 V2: 223 liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 138 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 155 field-beaded pipe, 2008 V4: 63 field checklists, 2009 V1: 95-96 field-devised installations, 2009 V1: 254-257 field-formed concrete grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 161 field orders, 2009 V1: 57 field quality control section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 72 field testing cross-connection controls, 2008 V4: 176 fill sewers, 2010 V2: 14-15 types of, around building sewers, 2010 V2: 14-15 fill hoses, 2011 V3: 140 fill port assemblies (tanks), 2011 V3: 140 fill ports, 2011 V3: 148 fill valves, propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 filling aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 148 underground liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 139-140 Filling in the Missing Rainfall Data, 2010 V2: 55 film-forming flouroprotein foams, 2011 V3: 25 film-processing areas, 2011 V3: 42, 47 films carbonate, 2009 V1: 140 film formation in rate of corrosion, 2009 V1: 135 sodium hexametaphosphate, 2009 V1: 140 sodium silicate, 2009 V1: 140 filter-ag, 2008 V4: 222 filter alum, 2010 V2: 199

filter beds defined, 2008 V4: 201 problems, 2008 V4: 203-204 filter cloths, 2008 V4: 204 filter intakes, 2011 V3: 62 filters and filtration air compressors, 2011 V3: 180 air filters, 2008 V4: 213-214 backsplash cycles, 2008 V4: 203 backwashing, 2008 V4: 203 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 244 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 180 defined, 2009 V1: 22, 2008 V4: 196, 222 diatomaceous earth filters, 2008 V4: 203-205 filter elements or media, 2009 V1: 22 filtration water systems, 2011 V3: 48 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 gas line filters, 2011 V3: 252 gravity filters, 2008 V4: 202 gray water, 2010 V2: 25-27 infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 241 iron filters, 2008 V4: 208 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 273 Legionella control, 2010 V2: 110-111 membrane filtration and separation, 2010 V2: 211-213 microorganisms, 2010 V2: 214 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 oil spills, 2010 V2: 245, 246 organic removal filters, 2008 V4: 214 pressure filters, 2008 V4: 202-203 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221 rainwater, 2008 V4: 260-261 regenerative alternative media filters, 2011 V3: 122 small drinking water systems, 2010 V2: 218 storm drainage treatment, 2010 V2: 48 swimming pools diatomaceous earth filters, 2011 V3: 119-122 filter media rate, 2011 V3: 111 high-rate sand filters, 2011 V3: 117-118 return piping, 2011 V3: 113 types, 2011 V3: 114 vacuum sand filters, 2011 V3: 118-119 turbidity and, 2008 V4: 196, 200 utility water, 2010 V2: 215 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 172, 179 water quality and, 2010 V2: 159-160 water treatment, 2010 V2: 201-204, 2008 V4: 187, 201 - 205FINA (Fédération Internationale de Natatíon Amateur), 2011 V3: 104 final checklists, 2009 V1: 96 fine sands graywater irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 25 irrigating, 2011 V3: 91 fine vacuum, 2010 V2: 165 finger entrapment in swimming pools, 2011 V3: 105 finish coats, 2009 V1: 136 Finnemore, E. John, 2010 V2: 19 fire departments, 2011 V3: 205 fire extinguishers (FE), 2009 V1: 14. See also under fireprotection systems fire hose racks (FHR), 2009 V1: 14

fire hose valves (FHV), 2009 V1: 14 fire hydrants. See hydrants fire loads, 2011 V3: 2 fire marshals, 2011 V3: 137, 205 Fire Protection Handbook, 2011 V3: 30 fire-protection systems. See also sprinkler systems (fire protection) alarms electric gongs, 2011 V3: 7 fire alarm control panels, 2009 V1: 12, 2011 V3: 28 fire alarm systems, 2009 V1: 22 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 42-43 detection, 2011 V3: 9, 27 extinguishers, 2009 V1: 13 fire department connections, 2009 V1: 12, 22 fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 28-29 fire hazards defined, 2009 V1: 22 evaluation, 2011 V3: 2 fire loads and resistance ratings, 2011 V3: 2 flammable or volatile liquids, 2010 V2: 12, 244-246 oxygen storage areas, 2011 V3: 59 fire lines defined, 2009 V1: 23 fire-line water meters, 2010 V2: 60 fire mains, 2011 V3: 6 fire-protection engineers, 2011 V3: 29 fire pumps, 2009 V1: 12, 23, 2011 V3: 21-22, 217 firefighting equipment, 2009 V1: 13 firefighting water drainage, 2010 V2: 243-244 flow tests, 2011 V3: 3-4 hydrants, 2009 V1: 12, 23, 2011 V3: 220-221 other trades and, 2011 V3: 29 overview, 2011 V3: 1 references, 2011 V3: 30 sanitary systems and, 2010 V2: 16 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 177 special extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 22-29 carbon-dioxide systems, 2011 V3: 26 clean agent fire-suppression systems, 2011 V3: 26 - 28dry-chemical extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 23 - 24dry-powder extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 elevator shaft protection systems, 2011 V3: 29 foam extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 25-26 overview, 2011 V3: 22-23 water mist extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24-25 water spray fixed extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 wet chemical extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 sprinkler systems. See sprinkler systems (fire protection) standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 18, 20-21 symbols, 2009 V1: 12-13 terminology, 2009 V1: 16-21 water lines, 2008 V4: 30-31 water supply for building water supply, 2011 V3: 218-220 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 218 fire risers, 2011 V3: 12 flow rates, 2011 V3: 222-225

graphs, 2011 V3: 5 guard posts, 2011 V3: 220 hydrants, 2011 V3: 220-221 hydraulic calculations. 2011 V3: 13 joint restrainers, 2011 V3: 221 overview, 2011 V3: 218 piping system layout, 2011 V3: 6 post indicator valves, 2011 V3: 220-221 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 quantity and availability, 2011 V3: 2-6 reliability, 2011 V3: 6 sizing system, 2011 V3: 221-225 standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 21, 2008 V4: 184 symbols for water supply (F), 2009 V1: 8 tank capacity, 2011 V3: 225 valves, 2008 V4: 89-90 water demands, 2010 V2: 159, 162 fire resistance, insulation and, 2008 V4: 106, 107 Fire Resistant Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids (UL 2080), 2011 V3: 147 fire-retardant jackets for pipes, 2008 V4: 60 Fire Safety Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks Including Type Designations, Areas of Use, Conversions, Maintenance, and Operation, 2010 V2: 137 fire sprinklers. See sprinkler systems (fire protection) fire suppression pumps, 2008 V4: 99, 101 fire suppression, underground tank systems, 2011 V3: 146 - 147fire triangle, 2011 V3: 22-23 fires classes of, 2011 V3: 2 fire triangle, 2011 V3: 22-23 growth rate, 2011 V3: 2 firm gas services, 2011 V3: 251 first aid kits, 2011 V3: 135 first-degree burns, 2010 V2: 111 first-stage propane regulators, 2010 V2: 132 first-stage relief valves, 2011 V3: 274 fissures in filter beds, 2008 V4: 203-204 fittings. See also specific types of fittings ABS pipe, 2008 V4: 54 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 44 compressed air, 2011 V3: 181-182 compression, 2009 V1: 23 copper and bronze, 2008 V4: 32, 39-40 copper drainage tubes, 2008 V4: 40, 42 copper pipe, 2008 V4: 39-40 cross-linked polyethylene, 2008 V4: 52 defined, 2009 V1: 23 dielectric unions or flanges, 2008 V4: 64-65 domestic pressure drops and, 2011 V3: 214 ductile iron water and sewer pipe, 2008 V4: 28-29 duriron pipe, 2008 V4: 59 earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 158 equivalent lengths for natural gas, 2010 V2: 123 erosion, 2011 V3: 161 flanged, 2009 V1: 23 fountain and pool safety, 2011 V3: 101 friction loss and, 2010 V2: 90-91 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 42-43, 48

grab bars, 2009 V1: 112-114 hub and spigot, 2008 V4: 24-25 hubless pipe and fittings, 2008 V4: 24 installing insulation, 2008 V4: 108-109 medical gas tube, 2008 V4: 42 natural gas pipes, 2011 V3: 256 plastic pipes, 2008 V4: 49 polypropylene pipe, 2008 V4: 54-55 PVC piping, 2008 V4: 52-53, 56 PVDF pipe, 2008 V4: 55 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 240 screwed fittings, 2009 V1: 152 seamless copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32, 39 stainless steel pipe, 2008 V4: 60 standards, 2008 V4: 2 steel or galvanized piping, 2008 V4: 48 steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 tank manways, 2011 V3: 139 thermal contraction and expansion failures, 2008 V4: 228 types of, 2008 V4: 1 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 179 weight of, 2008 V4: 118-119 welded, 2008 V4: 63 Fittings, 2008 V4: 28 Fitzgerald, 2009 V1: 144 fixed compression ratio, defined, 2011 V3: 186 fixed costs, in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 fixed floor-mounted equipment, 2009 V1: 153-157 fixed liquid level gauges, propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 fixed shower heads, 2009 V1: 112 fixed suspended equipment, 2009 V1: 157 fixture branches, 2009 V1: 23 fixture carriers, 2009 V1: 23 fixture drains defined, 2009 V1: 23 discharge characteristics, 2010 V2: 3 flow in, 2010 V2: 2 flow rate in, 2009 V1: 3 simultaneous use of fixtures, 2010 V2: 3, 4 fixture supplies, 2009 V1: 23 fixture supply, defined, 2010 V2: 94 fixture traps, distance from vent connections, 2010 V2: 32 - 34fixture units and unit values abbreviations for, 2009 V1: 14 cold-water system demand, 2010 V2: 75-76 conversion to gpm, 2010 V2: 85, 2011 V3: 209, 226 drainage fixture units (dfu), 2009 V1: 23 forms for charting, 2010 V2: 86 governing fixtures, 2010 V2: 84-89 maximum for vertical stacks, 2010 V2: 4 minimum sizes of pipes for fixtures, 2010 V2: 86 pipe sizing and, 2010 V2: 83 sanitary drainage system loads, 2010 V2: 3 sizing bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 251slope of drains, 2010 V2: 6-7, 7-8 steady flow in horizontal drains, 2010 V2: 8-9 water fixture units (wfu), 2009 V1: 23 water hammer and, 2010 V2: 72-73 fixture vent design, 2010 V2: 38-39

fixture vents, types, 2010 V2: 32-34 fixtures and fixture outlets. See also specific types of fixtures (water closets, showers, etc.) accessibility standards, 2008 V4: 2 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 batteries of fixtures, 2009 V1: 18 building requirement tables, 2008 V4: 18-21 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43-44 cold-water system demand, 2010 V2: 75-76 defined, 2008 V4: 1 domestic water supply and, 2011 V3: 208 fittings, 2008 V4: 1 fixture inventories, 2008 V4: 251 fixture isolation, 2008 V4: 178, 181 flow rates for water softeners, 2008 V4: 207-208 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35-42 installation productivity rates, 2009 V1: 88 laboratory acid-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 235 LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), 2010 V2: 25, 2008 V4: 2-3 materials, 2008 V4: 1-2 minimum numbers of, 2008 V4: 18-21 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 193-194 per-fixture cost estimation, 2009 V1: 88 plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 plumbing fixtures, defined, 2009 V1: 26 reduced water usage, 2009 V1: 118 reducing flow rates, 2009 V1: 126 sizing vents, 2010 V2: 35-37 soft water for, 2008 V4: 205 standards, 2008 V4: 2 swimming pools and water attractions, 2011 V3: 109 types of, 2008 V4: 1 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 water-saving fixtures, 2009 V1: 118 flame arresters, 2011 V3: 141 flame-retardant pipe (FRPP), 2008 V4: 55 flammability of gases, 2011 V3: 267 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code (NFPA 30), 2010 V2: 115, 2011 V3: 88, 136, 148, 149, 156 flammable, defined, 2009 V1: 23 flammable gases defined, 2011 V3: 76, 266 flash arresters, 2011 V3: 273 monitoring, 2011 V3: 275-276 table, 2011 V3: 267 flammable or volatile liquids, 2010 V2: 12, 244-246, 2011 V3: 136 flanged ells, 2010 V2: 93 flanged end connections, 2009 V1: 23 Flanged Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 flanged tees, 2010 V2: 93 flanges assembling flanged joints, 2008 V4: 62 defined, 2009 V1: 23 dielectric unions or flanges, 2008 V4: 64-65 flange ends, 2009 V1: 23 flange faces, 2009 V1: 23 flanged bonnets, 2008 V4: 74 flanged connections, 2008 V4: 67 flanged end connections, 2008 V4: 80 gaskets, 2008 V4: 65

problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 flared ends on valves, 2008 V4: 80 flared fittings, 2008 V4: 39 flash arresters, laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 273 flash attacks, 2009 V1: 136, 143 flash fires, 2011 V3: 10 flash flood runoff patterns, 2010 V2: 43 flash points defined, 2009 V1: 23, 2011 V3: 76, 136 foam extinguishing systems and, 2011 V3: 25 liquid fuels, 2011 V3: 136 flash steam, 2011 V3: 157-159, 166 flash tanks, 2011 V3: 166 flashing, 2009 V1: 23 flashing flanges, 2010 V2: 16 flashing L flanges, 2010 V2: 16 flashing rings, 2010 V2: 11, 16, 52 flat-plate collectors, 2011 V3: 190, 193-195 flat-plate solar collectors, 2009 V1: 121 flat roof drains, 2010 V2: 52 flat-spray irrigation sprinklers, 2011 V3: 94 flexibility couplings, 2008 V4: 64-65 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 119 vibration control and, 2008 V4: 151 flexible bubblers, 2008 V4: 240 flexible connectors (FC) noise mitigation and, 2009 V1: 201, 205 symbols for, 2009 V1: 10 vibration control devices, 2009 V1: 205 flexible gas piping, 2010 V2: 122 flexible hose connections, 2010 V2: 124-125, 2008 V4: 13 flexible plastic piping, 2011 V3: 150, 2008 V4: 230 flexural modulus of elasticity, 2008 V4: 228 flexural offsets or loops, 2008 V4: 228 flexural strength of plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50 float gauges propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 float-operated main drain butterfly valves, 2011 V3: 131 float traps, 2011 V3: 162 float-type level controls, 2010 V2: 163 float valves, 2009 V1: 23, 2010 V2: 64, 2008 V4: 214 floatation, 2009 V1: 24 devices for oil spills, 2010 V2: 246 of oil in spills, 2010 V2: 246 sumps or wet wells, 2011 V3: 236 floatation vibration isolation, 2009 V1: 157 floating ball devices in tanks, 2011 V3: 141 floating velocity, 2008 V4: 154 floc, 2010 V2: 198, 2008 V4: 222 flocculation, 2010 V2: 198, 2008 V4: 157 flood hazard cross-connection controls, 2008 V4: 176 flood level rims, 2009 V1: 23, 2008 V4: 178 flooded, defined, 2009 V1: 23 flooding mosquitoes, 2010 V2: 49 runoff patterns, 2010 V2: 43 flooding factors clean agent gas fire suppression, 2011 V3: 28 rainfall, 2011 V3: 240-241 underground storage tanks and, 2011 V3: 138 floor cleanouts (FCO), 2009 V1: 11

floor drains (FD) acid-resistant floor drains, 2010 V2: 15 blood-type, 2011 V3: 38 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 243 components, 2010 V2: 10 fire-suppression drainage and, 2010 V2: 243-244 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 floor leveling around, 2010 V2: 16 food-preparation areas, 2011 V3: 39 grate open areas, 2010 V2: 10 grease interceptors and, 2008 V4: 162 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 40 infectious and biological waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 kitchen areas, 2010 V2: 15-16 with p-traps, 2009 V1: 11 public areas in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 37 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 240 rated discharge, 2008 V4: 251 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 10-11 standards, 2008 V4: 2 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 swimming pool bathhouses, 2011 V3: 110 types, 2008 V4: 16-17 waterproofing, 2010 V2: 15-16 floor inlets, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 135 floor-mounted back-outlet water closets, 2008 V4: 4 floor-mounted bidets, 2008 V4: 16 floor-mounted urinals, 2008 V4: 10 floor-mounted vibration-isolated equipment, 2009 V1: 157 - 158floor-mounted water closets, 2008 V4: 4, 6 floor sinks, 2010 V2: 10-11, 15, 2008 V4: 251 floors bathhouses, 2011 V3: 110 design considerations in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 180 leveling, 2010 V2: 16 motions in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 151 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190, 191 noise mitigation design, 2009 V1: 202 shaking in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 152 flotation in automatic grease skimming devices, 2008 V4: 159 custom-made grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 161 density and particle size, 2008 V4: 155 factors in, 2008 V4: 155-156 forced flotation, 2008 V4: 158 grease separation, 2008 V4: 155-156 turbulence and, 2008 V4: 157 flotation basins, 2008 V4: 155-156 flow. See also flow rates at outlet, 2009 V1: 3 building drains, 2010 V2: 2 critical flows, defined, 2009 V1: 2 equalization in graywater treatment, 2010 V2: 25 fixture drains, 2009 V1: 3, 2010 V2: 2 flow pressure, 2009 V1: 23, 2010 V2: 94 flow pressure drop, 2010 V2: 94 hydraulic jumps in, 2010 V2: 2, 6, 2010 V2:35 open-channel flow, 2009 V1: 1, 2010 V2: 6 outlet velocity, 2009 V1: 6 rate of flow, calculating, 2009 V1: 1 Rational Method, 2010 V2: 43

stacks, 2010 V2: 1-2 steady flow, 2010 V2: 6 surging flows, 2010 V2: 5 symbols for. 2009 V1: 11 velocity of uniform flow, 2009 V1: 1 water flow in pipes, calculating, 2009 V1: 2 flow control bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 251 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 163 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 114-115, 125-126 flow diversity factors (gas systems), 2010 V2: 121 flow hydrants, 2011 V3: 3 flow meters compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 177 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 275 flow rates air flow in vacuum pressure, 2010 V2: 165 altitude and, 2010 V2: 167 at outlets, 2009 V1: 5 capacity, 2009 V1: 19, 34 coagulation and, 2008 V4: 202 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 69-70, 73 compressed air systems air compressors, 2011 V3: 179 air-consuming devices, 2011 V3: 180 measurements, 2011 V3: 172, 187 tools and equipment, 2011 V3: 180 conserving energy, 2009 V1: 118 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 defined, 2008 V4: 222 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 206 drinking fountains, 2008 V4: 244 emergency showers and eyewashes, 2008 V4: 17 faucets, 2008 V4: 13 filtration and, 2008 V4: 202 fire-protection demand, 2011 V3: 222-225 fixture drains, 2009 V1: 3 fixture rate averages, 2008 V4: 207-208 fluctuating flows in horizontal drains, 2010 V2: 5 fountain systems, 2011 V3: 100 freezing points and, 2008 V4: 114-115 fuel product dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125, 127 gas meters, 2010 V2: 116-117 grease interceptor capacity, 2008 V4: 158 high-rate dispensers, 2011 V3: 151 hydrants, 2011 V3: 210 kitchen sinks, 2008 V4: 11 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 279 lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 liquid fuel piping, 2011 V3: 150-151 measurements, 2009 V1: 34, 2010 V2: 166 medical air, 2011 V3: 69 medical gas, 2011 V3: 51 medical oxygen, 2011 V3: 68-69 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 69, 73 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 127-128, 2011 V3: 256 nitrogen, 2011 V3: 64, 69 nitrous oxide, 2011 V3: 69 pump capacity, 2009 V1: 6 pump head/capacity curves, 2008 V4: 96-98 rate of flow, calculating, 2009 V1: 1

reducing for fixtures, 2009 V1: 126 resin bead regeneration, 2010 V2: 207 retention periods and, 2008 V4: 154-155 RPZ discharge, 2010 V2: 60-61 sand filters, 2008 V4: 202 sewage life stations, 2011 V3: 236 showers, 2008 V4: 14 sizing gas systems, 2011 V3: 278 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 sprinkler hydraulic calculations, 2011 V3: 12 steam, 2011 V3: 159-161 submersible fuel pumps, 2011 V3: 151-152 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 111, 112 tables, 2011 V3: 14-17 urinals, 2008 V4: 10 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 181 vacuum exhauster sizing, 2010 V2: 184 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 166, 174 valves and fittings, 2010 V2: 95 water closets, 2008 V4: 7-8 water coolers, 2008 V4: 238 water fountains, 2009 V1: 101 water heater types and, 2010 V2: 101–104 water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 water softeners, 2008 V4: 205-206, 207-208 weirs and waterfalls, 2011 V3: 100 wells, 2010 V2: 164 flow regulators, 2008 V4: 222 flow restrictors, 2009 V1: 118 flow sensors, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 114-115, 124-125 flow switches (FS), 2009 V1: 10 flow tests equations, 2011 V3: 4 fire-protection systems, 2011 V3: 3-4 hydrants, 2011 V3: 210 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 74 flow-through periods for grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 155 FlowGuard Gold Connection, 2009 V1: 206 flowing pressure. See residual pressure Flowserve, 2010 V2: 96 fluctuating flows in horizontal drains, 2010 V2: 5 flue gases, 2010 V2: 119, 136 venting, 2010 V2: 118-119 flues, 2009 V1: 24 Fluid Mechanics with Engineering Applications, 2010 V2: 19 flumes, 2011 V3: 134 fluoride, 2010 V2: 160, 190, 2008 V4: 186, 187 fluorine, 2010 V2: 189 fluorine rubber, 2009 V1: 32 fluoroprotein-mixed chemical concentrates, 2011 V3: 25 flurine rubber, 2009 V1: 32 flush controls urinals, 2009 V1: 108 water closet and toilet accessibility, 2009 V1: 106 water closet requirements, 2009 V1: 108 flush sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 flush tanks, 2010 V2: 75-76 flush valves. See also flushometer valves defined, 2009 V1: 24 fixture units and, 2010 V2: 75-76 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 198

vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 175 wasted water and, 2009 V1: 127 flushing cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 90-91 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 183 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 280 performance testing, 2008 V4: 5-6 resin beds, 2010 V2: 208 in reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 217 urinal tests, 2008 V4: 9 water closet system types, 2008 V4: 7-8 water conservation and toilets, 2008 V4: 3 water systems, 2010 V2: 164 flushing rim sinks, 2010 V2: 86 flushing rims, 2010 V2: 15 flushing-type floor drains, 2009 V1: 24 flushometer tanks, 2008 V4: 3-4, 8 flushometer valves defined, 2009 V1: 24, 2008 V4: 3-4, 8, 178 sanitation and, 2010 V2: 15 urinals, 2008 V4: 10 flushometer water closets, 2008 V4: 3-4, 8 flux (filtration) defined, 2008 V4: 223 membrane productivity, 2010 V2: 221 natural osmosis, 2010 V2: 211 reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 217 flux (soldering), 2008 V4: 62 defined, 2009 V1: 24 laboratory gas joints, 2011 V3: 277 standards, 2008 V4: 32 fly ash, 2008 V4: 252 FM. See Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FM) FMRC (Factory Mutual). See Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FM) foam extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 25-26, 29 foam noise isolation, 2009 V1: 194 Foam-water Sprinkler Systems and Foam-water Spray Systems (NFPA 16), 2011 V3: 30 foam-water sprinklers, 2011 V3: 25 foamed elastomer insulation, 2008 V4: 111 foamed plastic insulation, 2008 V4: 107, 114 foaming agents in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 FOG (fats, oil, and grease). See fats, oils, and grease (FOG) fog nozzles, 2010 V2: 230 fogging in swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108 Follow-up phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 Fontana, Mars G., 2009 V1: 144 Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 2010 V2: 220, 224, 227 food courts, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 food dyes in gray water, 2010 V2: 27 food-processing areas and kitchens backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 drains, 2010 V2: 15-16 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 flexible gas connections, 2010 V2: 124 gas demands for appliances, 2010 V2: 116 gas efficiency, 2010 V2: 115 health care facility fixtures, 2011 V3: 39 medical gas piping and, 2011 V3: 68 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18

rates of sewage flows, 2010 V2: 151 sanitation, 2010 V2: 15 sewage estimates, 2010 V2: 151 typical graywater demand, 2010 V2: 24 water fixture-unit values. 2011 V3: 206 water temperatures, 2011 V3: 47 food-processing plants, 2010 V2: 218, 2008 V4: 185 food solids removal in bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 food waste grinders (disposals) bioremediation systems and, 2008 V4: 250 defined, 2009 V1: 21 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 grease interceptors and, 2008 V4: 162, 165 sink outlets and, 2008 V4: 11 foot (FT), 2009 V1: 14. See also feet (ft, FT) foot basins, 2010 V2: 99 foot controls on faucets, 2011 V3: 35 foot head (ft.hd), 2009 V1: 14 foot pedals nitrogen systems, 2011 V3: 64 water coolers, 2008 V4: 240 foot-pounds (ft-lb, FT LB), 2009 V1: 14 foot valves, 2009 V1: 24, 2010 V2: 92 footing drains (subsoil drains, SSD), 2009 V1: 8, 24, 30 footings of buildings defined, 2009 V1: 24 FOR (fuel oil return), 2009 V1: 8 force conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 factors in seismic force calculations, 2009 V1: 174-177 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 in seismic design, 2009 V1: 182 in vibration transmission, 2008 V4: 146 force mains, 2009 V1: 24 defined, 2011 V3: 229 illustrated, 2011 V3: 234-235 manholes, 2011 V3: 226 sanitary sewer systems, 2011 V3: 225 sewage life stations, 2011 V3: 236 forced-air-cooled compressors, 2008 V4: 242 forced-air vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 forced convection, defined, 2011 V3: 191 forced distortions of piping, 2009 V1: 152 forced drainage (corrosion), defined, 2009 V1: 143 forced flotation, 2008 V4: 158 forcing functions in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 150 forcing pipes, 2008 V4: 23 forest, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 forged clevises, 2008 V4: 136 formazin turbidity unit, 2010 V2: 193 forms. See checklists and forms formula rooms, 2011 V3: 36 formulas. See equations forward approaches and reaches approaches for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 102 drinking fountains and water coolers, 2009 V1: 99 reach for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101, 103 FOS (fuel oil supply), 2009 V1: 8 fossil fuel use, 2011 V3: 188 fouling factor, 2009 V1: 24 fouling of water, 2010 V2: 195, 217, 2011 V3: 162

Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research, 2011 V3: 216 foundations of pumps, 2010 V2: 158, 161 fountains codes and standards, 2011 V3: 100-101 direct connections, 2008 V4: 184 drinking. See drinking fountains equipment location, 2011 V3: 98-99 interactive, 2011 V3: 100 overview, 2011 V3: 98 pool design, 2011 V3: 98 pumps, 2011 V3: 99 safety, 2011 V3: 100 sump pumps, 2011 V3: 100-102 surface skimmer, 2011 V3: 102 wastewater in, 2010 V2: 21 four-way braces, 2008 V4: 136 FOV (fuel oil vents), 2009 V1: 8 FPM (fluorine rubber), 2009 V1: 32 fpm, FPM (feet per minute), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 30 fps, FPS (feet per second), 2009 V1: 14 FR (Federal Register), 2011 V3: 82 fracture rooms, 2011 V3: 36, 39 framing drawings for facilities, 2011 V3: 35 framing steel, 2008 V4: 136 Francis formula, 2011 V3: 100 Frankel, Michael, 2010 V2: 55, 96, 137, 186, 224, 246, 2011 V3: 156, 2008 V4: 116 Franzini, Joseph B., 2010 V2: 19 fraternities and sororities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 Frederick, Ralph H., 2010 V2: 55 free air defined, 2011 V3: 186 properties, 2011 V3: 171, 263, 264 water vapor in, 2011 V3: 172-173 free board, 2008 V4: 223 free convection, defined, 2011 V3: 191 free-floating oils, 2011 V3: 88 free oil, 2010 V2: 244 free residuals, 2008 V4: 200 free-standing surge vessels, 2011 V3: 116 free-standing water coolers, 2008 V4: 240 free vibration, 2009 V1: 150 free water surface, 2008 V4: 178 freeboard in ditches, 2011 V3: 250 freestanding siamese fire-department connections, 2009 V1: 12 freestanding sprinklers in irrigation, 2011 V3: 93 freezing points (fp, FP), 2008 V4: 51 insulation and, 2008 V4: 114-115 prevention calculations, 2008 V4: 114-115 regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262 "freezing," preventing in cleanouts, 2010 V2: 9 freezing temperatures calculations for, 2008 V4: 114-115 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243 dry-pipe sprinkler systems and, 2011 V3: 6, 7 frost lines, 2011 V3: 218, 220 ice and oxygen storage, 2011 V3: 57 ice as part of total load, 2008 V4: 119

ice inside water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 insulation and, 2008 V4: 114-115 irrigation system valves and, 2011 V3: 95 testing of cold-water systems. 2010 V2: 90 water meters and, 2010 V2: 59 well heads and, 2010 V2: 158-159 Freije, M., 2010 V2: 108-109 french drains, 2009 V1: 24 frequencies (Hz, HZ) defined, 2008 V4: 145 disturbing vibrations, 2008 V4: 146 frequency ratios in vibration control, 2008 V4: 146-149 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 natural frequency of resilient mounted systems, 2008 V4: 146 frequency of ion regeneration cycles, 2010 V2: 208 fresh-air inlets, 2009 V1: 24 fresh water makeup, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 116, 132 - 133friction clamps, 2011 V3: 221 friction factor, 2009 V1: 24 friction head calculating, 2009 V1: 6 centralized drinking-water cooler systems, 2008 V4: 246 friction loads, 2008 V4: 137 friction losses in flow bends in pipe and, 2008 V4: 63 calculating friction head loss, 2009 V1: 2 compressed air, 2011 V3: 72-73, 181 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 181 examples for pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 87-89 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 151 Hazen-Williams formula, 2009 V1: 2, 2010 V2: 73 liquid fuel piping, 2011 V3: 151 medical air, 2011 V3: 63, 69, 72-73 medical gas piping, 2011 V3: 68 medical vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 69, 73 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 127-128, 2011 V3: 256 nitrogen systems, 2011 V3: 69, 71 nitrous oxide, 2011 V3: 69, 71 oxygen, 2011 V3: 68-69, 71 pipe pressure and, 2010 V2: 78-84 pressure and, 2010 V2: 87 reduced pressure zones, 2010 V2: 61-63 sizing pipes and, 2010 V2: 78-84 submersible fuel pumps, 2011 V3: 151 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 181-184, 184 vacuum exhauster sizing, 2010 V2: 184 valves and threaded fittings, 2010 V2: 90-91 vent systems, 2010 V2: 35 water in pipes, tables, 2008 V4: 246 water mains, 2011 V3: 6 well pumps, 2010 V2: 161 front-end documents, 2009 V1: 57, 58 frost. See freezing temperatures frost lines, 2011 V3: 218, 220 frostproof devices, 2009 V1: 24 FRP. See fiberglass-reinforced plastic FRPP (flame-retardant pipe), 2008 V4: 55 FS (federal specifications), 2009 V1: 32 FS (flow switches), 2009 V1: 10 FSK (fiberglass cloth, skrim and kraft paper), 2008 V4: 108

ft, FT (feet). See feet ft-lb, FT LB (foot-pounds), 2009 V1: 14 FT³ (cubic feet), 2009 V1: 14 ft.hd (foot head), 2009 V1: 14 FTUs (formazin turbidity units), 2010 V2: 193 fu values. See fixture units and unit values fuel double containment systems, 2008 V4: 49 fuel gas codes, list of agencies, 2009 V1: 42 Fuel Gas Piping, 2010 V2: 136 fuel-gas piping systems. See also diesel-oil systems; gasoline systems fuel gas, defined, 2010 V2: 136 glossary, 2010 V2: 135-136 liquefied petroleum gas, 2010 V2: 131-135, 135 methane, 2009 V1: 122 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 113-131, 2008 V4: 30-31 fuel, in fire triangle, 2011 V3: 22-23 fuel islands, 2011 V3: 146 fuel loads (fire hazards), 2011 V3: 2 fuel oil calculation, solar energy and, 2011 V3: 190 copper pipe, 2008 V4: 30-31 fuel oil return (FOR), 2009 V1: 8 fuel oil supply (FOS), 2009 V1: 8 fuel oil vents (FOV), 2009 V1: 8 pipe bracing, 2009 V1: 158, 159 fuel-storage tanks, 2011 V3: 154 full-flow conditions (FF), 2009 V1: 1 full port (100% area), 2008 V4: 74, 84, 91 full-port ball valves, 2011 V3: 67 fully recessed water coolers, 2008 V4: 239-240, 241 fully-sprinklered spaces, 2009 V1: 12 fume hoods, 2010 V2: 240 fumes, hazardous. See also gases acid-waste drainage systems, 2011 V3: 42 acids, 2010 V2: 229, 231 in soil profiles, 2011 V3: 144 vent piping, 2011 V3: 46 VOCs, 2010 V2: 190 fuming grade sulfuric acid, 2010 V2: 230 Function Analysis phase in value engineering defined, 2009 V1: 218-223 FAST approach, 2009 V1: 219-223 function definitions forms, 2009 V1: 219-224, 222 in process, 2009 V1: 209 rules, 2009 V1: 218-223 Function phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 Functional Analysis System Technique (FAST), 2009 V1: 219 - 223functions basic or secondary, 2009 V1: 219 comparing in evaluation phase, 2009 V1: 235 cost-to-function relationship, 2009 V1: 219 defined, 2009 V1: 218 evaluation checklists, 2009 V1: 230-231 in evaluation phase, 2009 V1: 229 in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 223 interrelationships, 2009 V1: 219 levels of importance, 2009 V1: 218 ranking and comparing, 2009 V1: 235 sketches of, 2009 V1: 232-233 specific and dependent, 2009 V1: 219

two-word expressions, 2009 V1: 218 fundamental corrosion cells, defined, 2009 V1: 129 *Fundamentals Handbook*, 2011 V3: 169, 204 *Fundamentals of Underground Corrosion Control*, 2009 V1: 144 fungi, 2010 V2: 188, 195 funnel-type drains, 2010 V2: 243, 2011 V3: 42 furring-out requirements for roofs, 2010 V2: 51 fusible link sprinklers, 2011 V3: 6 *Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating*, 2008 V4: 28 fusion-joint plastic piping systems, 2011 V3: 46 future construction, planning impacts of, 2008 V4: 120 future expansion of compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 182

G

G (giga) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 G (low-pressure gas), 2009 V1: 8 G pipes, 2008 V4: 31 ga, GA (gauges). See gauges GACs (granulated carbon filters), 2010 V2: 218, 221. See also activated carbon filtration GAGE (gages). See gages gages (ga, GA, GAGE). See also gauges Boyle's law, 2008 V4: 233-234 gal, GAL (gallons). See gallons (gal, GAL) galleries, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 gallons (gal, GAL) converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 gallons per day (gpd, GPD), 2009 V1: 14 gallons per hour (gph, GPH), 2009 V1: 14, 38, 2010 V2: 98-99 gallons per minute (gpm), 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 85, 156 converting to fixture units, 2011 V3: 209, 226 converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 estimating demand, 2010 V2: 76 pressure and, 2010 V2: 73, 74 grains per gallon (gpg), 2010 V2: 191 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 galvanic action, 2009 V1: 24, 2008 V4: 67. See also electrolysis galvanic anodes, 2009 V1: 137-139 galvanic cells, defined, 2009 V1: 143 galvanic corrosion, 2009 V1: 130, 143, 256, 2010 V2: 195 galvanic series of metals defined, 2009 V1: 143 dielectric insulation and, 2009 V1: 136 listing, 2009 V1: 132 galvanized coatings, 2009 V1: 136 galvanized-iron piping, 2010 V2: 13, 78 galvanized-steel piping, 2010 V2: 122 aboveground piping, 2010 V2: 12 fuel product dispensing and, 2011 V3: 150 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 173 galvanizing, defined, 2009 V1: 24, 2008 V4: 137 galvomag alloy, 2009 V1: 132 gamma ray radiation, 2010 V2: 236-237, 237 gang hangers, 2008 V4: 137 garages, residential sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 11 garbage can washers, 2008 V4: 184

garbage disposals sewage flows and, 2010 V2: 152 garbage disposers. See food waste grinders garnet in filters. 2010 V2: 201 Garrett, Laurie, 2010 V2: 55 gas. See gases; medical gas systems; natural gas systems; specific types of gases gas boosters, 2010 V2: 119, 125-128 gas cabinets, 2011 V3: 268-270 gas chlorinators, 2008 V4: 215 gas contamination in air, 2011 V3: 265 gas expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 233-234 gas-fired water heaters conserving energy, 2009 V1: 121 defined, 2009 V1: 120 efficiency, 2010 V2: 97-98 net efficiency of, 2009 V1: 121 gas horsepower, defined, 2011 V3: 186 gas laws, 2010 V2: 126 gas logs, defined, 2010 V2: 136 gas meters, 2010 V2: 115-117 gas mixers, laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 276 gas piping codes, 2009 V1: 42 gas piping systems. See also fuel-gas piping systems; gasoline systems; liquefied petroleum gas; natural gas systems bracing, 2009 V1: 159 defined, 2009 V1: 185 gas cocks, 2009 V1: 9 gas line earthquake-sensitive valves, 2009 V1: 153 gas main inspection checklist, 2009 V1: 95 gas pressure regulators, 2010 V2: 136, 2011 V3: 254-255 gas stops (gas cocks), 2009 V1: 9 gas trains, 2010 V2: 136, 2011 V3: 255 gas vents (GV), 2009 V1: 8 high-pressure (HG), 2009 V1: 8 line filters, 2011 V3: 252-254 low-pressure (G), 2009 V1: 8 medium-pressure (MG), 2009 V1: 8 operating pressure, 2010 V2: 115 plastic pipes, 2008 V4: 51 services at laboratory outlets, 2011 V3: 41-42 Spitzglass formula, 2009 V1: 7, 2010 V2: 130 Weymouth formula, 2010 V2: 130 gas regulator relief vents, 2010 V2: 117-118 gas regulators, 2010 V2: 119-121 gas-shielded welding, 2008 V4: 62-63 gas stations, 2011 V3: 147, 2008 V4: 19 gas stripping, 2010 V2: 194 gas systems medical gas levels, 2011 V3: 34-35 tank abandonment and removal, 2011 V3: 154 gas-train vents, 2010 V2: 117-118 gas-transfer vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 169 Gas Utilization Equipment for Large Boilers, 2010 V2: 115 gas venting, 2010 V2: 118-119, 136 gas warmers, 2011 V3: 275 gas water heating, 2011 V3: 126 gaseous (clean agent) fire suppression systems, 2011 V3: 26 - 28gases. See also fuel-gas piping systems; liquefied petroleum gas; natural gas systems

as fluids, 2011 V3: 171 combustion properties, 2010 V2: 114 contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 174 dissolved gases in water, 2010 V2: 190 grades of, 2011 V3: 267 hazardous, 2010 V2: 229 heavier-than-air, 2010 V2: 134-135 laboratory gas systems. See laboratory gas systems nitrous fumes, 2010 V2: 232 sulfuric acid, 2010 V2: 232 volatile organic compounds, 2010 V2: 190 gaskets defined, 2008 V4: 65 fire-protection water supply, 2011 V3: 221 fuel piping, 2011 V3: 150 special-waste systems, 2010 V2: 228 gasoline, 2010 V2: 12, 2011 V3: 136, 149 gasoline blends, 2011 V3: 136, 149 gasoline systems aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 147-149 connections and access, 2011 V3: 148 construction, 2011 V3: 147-148 corrosion protection, 2011 V3: 148 filling and spills, 2011 V3: 148 leak prevention and monitoring, 2011 V3: 148-149 materials, 2011 V3: 147-148 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 148 product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 149 tank protection, 2011 V3: 149 vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 149 venting, 2011 V3: 148 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 137 components, 2011 V3: 138 definitions and classifications, 2011 V3: 136-137 designing installation considerations, 2011 V3: 154-156 piping materials, 2011 V3: 149-151 piping sizing, 2011 V3: 150-151 submersible pump sizing, 2011 V3: 151-152 testing, 2011 V3: 152-154 overview, 2011 V3: 136 references, 2011 V3: 156 resources, 2011 V3: 156 underground tank systems, 2011 V3: 139-140 leak detection and system monitoring, 2011 V3: 141 - 145product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 146-147 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 139-140 vapor recovery systems, 2011 V3: 145-146 valves, 2008 V4: 89 gate valves (GV), 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 92, 95, 230 defined, 2008 V4: 74 design details, 2008 V4: 82-83 fire-protection systems, 2008 V4: 89-90 high-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 88-89 high-rise service, 2008 V4: 90 hot and cold water supply service, 2008 V4: 85 illustrated, 2008 V4: 75 low-pressure steam systems, 2008 V4: 87 medium-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 88 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194 stems, 2008 V4: 79

gauges (ga, GA, GAGE). See also gages (ga, GA, GAGE) fuel product level gauging, 2011 V3: 148, 149 gauge pressure, 2010 V2: 165, 2011 V3: 186 hazardous materials, 2011 V3: 84 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 273 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 67 pressure, 2011 V3: 172 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 gear pumps, 2010 V2: 162 Geiger-Mueller counters, 2010 V2: 237 gel-coated plastic fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 general conditions in contract documents, 2009 V1: 56 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, 2009 V1: 56 General Conference of Weights and Measures (CGPM), 2009 V1: 32, 33 general corrosion, 2009 V1: 143, 2010 V2: 195 General Electric Company, 2009 V1: 207 general laboratory-grade water, 2010 V2: 218 General phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 General section in specifications, 2009 V1: 62-63 general service system valves, 2008 V4: 87-88 generalized total costs, 2009 V1: 217 generally-accepted standards, defined, 2009 V1: 24 Geogehegan, R.F., 2010 V2: 246 geography cost estimates and, 2009 V1: 90 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 86 geological stability of sites, 2010 V2: 24 geothermal energy, 2009 V1: 122-123 Get Your Process Water to Come Clean, 2010 V2: 225 GFCI (government furnished, contractor installed), 2009 V1: 64 giardia, 2008 V4: 187 "giga" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 gland bushing, 2008 V4: 74 glass borosilicate piping, 2010 V2: 13, 14, 75 glass-bulb sprinklers, 2011 V3: 6 glass china fixtures, 2008 V4: 1 glass-fiber pads, 2009 V1: 198 glass-foam insulation, 2008 V4: 107 glass-lined pipes, 2011 V3: 49 glass piping characteristics, 2008 V4: 48 expansion, 2008 V4: 48 fittings, 2008 V4: 42-43, 48 hangers, 2008 V4: 132 joints, 2008 V4: 63 roughness, 2010 V2: 78 special wastes, 2010 V2: 234, 239 glass washers demineralized water, 2011 V3: 48 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 39 laboratory rooms, 2011 V3: 41 pure water systems for, 2011 V3: 48 glauber's soda, 2008 V4: 193 glazed fixture surfaces, 2008 V4: 1 Glidden, R., 2010 V2: 186 global issues, green plumbing, 2008 V4: 255-256 Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 6-4: Oil and Gas-fired Single-burner Boilers, 2010 V2: 117-118 globe lift or stop valves, 2008 V4: 83

globe valves (GLV), 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 92, 95 defined, 2008 V4: 74, 75-76 design details, 2008 V4: 83 high-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 89 hot and cold water supply service, 2008 V4: 86 low-pressure steam systems, 2008 V4: 87-88 medium-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 88 stems, 2008 V4: 79 glossaries cold water systems, 2010 V2: 94-95 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 183-187 conserving energy, 2009 V1: 128 corrosion, 2009 V1: 141-143 cross connections, 2008 V4: 177-179 fuel-gas systems, 2010 V2: 135-136 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 134-142 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 76-78 industrial wastewater, 2011 V3: 81-82 insulation, 2008 V4: 105 measurement units, 2009 V1: 33 plumbing terminology, 2009 V1: 16-21 pumps, 2008 V4: 98 references for, 2009 V1: 39 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 185 solar energy, 2011 V3: 190-193 valve terminology, 2008 V4: 73-75 vibration and vibration isolation. 2008 V4: 145-146 water conditioning, 2008 V4: 220-224 glove boxes, 2010 V2: 240 GLSP (good large-scale production), 2010 V2: 241 glues, 2010 V2: 191, 2008 V4: 56 GLV (globe valves). See globe valves (GLV) GMP (good manufacturing practice), 2009 V1: 14 gold, 2009 V1: 132 good engineering practice, 2010 V2: 228 good large-scale production (GLSP), 2010 V2: 241 good manufacturing practice (GMP), 2009 V1: 14 "good value," defined, 2009 V1: 209 goods, costs of, 2009 V1: 217 gooseneck spouts, 2008 V4: 13, 185 Gorry, M., 2010 V2: 224 governing fixtures, 2010 V2: 84-89 government furnished, contractor installed (GFCI), 2009 V1: 64 gpd, GPD (gallons per day), 2009 V1: 14 gpg (grains per gallon). See grains per gallon (gpg) gph, GPH (gallons per hour), 2009 V1: 14 gpm (gallons per minute) converting to fixture units, 2010 V2: 85, 2011 V3: 209, 226converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 orifice size and, 2011 V3: 5 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 wells, 2010 V2: 156 gr, GR (grains). See grains grab bars ambulatory accessible toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 107 bathtub accessibility, 2009 V1: 109 clearance, 2009 V1: 114 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 37 shower stalls, 2009 V1: 112-114

standards for, 2009 V1: 106 water closet and toilet accessibility, 2009 V1: 106 grab rings, 2008 V4: 60 grades defined, 2009 V1: 24 maintaining for piping, 2008 V4: 23 grains (gr, GR) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 grains per gallon, 2010 V2: 191 grains capacity defined, 2008 V4: 223 water softeners, 2008 V4: 206 grains per gallon (gpg), 2010 V2: 191 converting parts per million to, 2008 V4: 222 defined, 2008 V4: 223 water softener capacity, 2008 V4: 206 grandstands, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 granulated carbon filters, 2010 V2: 221. See also activated carbon filtration granulated carbon filters (GAC), 2010 V2: 218 granule tests, 2008 V4: 5 graphic conventions in plumbing drawings, 2009 V1: 100 graphite, 2009 V1: 132, 2008 V4: 62, 69, 193 graphite anodes, 2009 V1: 139 graphitic corrosion, 2009 V1: 143 graphitization cast iron, 2009 V1: 132 defined, 2009 V1: 143 graphs, water supply, 2011 V3: 5 grass filter strips, 2010 V2: 48 grassed area, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 grates grate open areas for floor drains, 2010 V2: 11 materials for, 2010 V2: 13 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 11 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104-106, 112 grating, 2009 V1: 24 gravel, 2009 V1: 24, 2010 V2: 25, 42 gravimetric measurement of solids, 2010 V2: 193 gravitational acceleration units, 2009 V1: 1 gravitational constants (g, G), 2009 V1: 1, 2008 V4: 154 gravity acceleration of water, 2010 V2: 1-2 forces in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 180 loads, 2009 V1: 145 gravity circulation, 2009 V1: 5 gravity drainage, 2010 V2: 228 gravity drops, 2011 V3: 139 gravity filters, 2008 V4: 202 gravity flotation, 2008 V4: 250 gravity-flow systems, 2008 V4: 57, 215 gravity flushes, 2008 V4: 7-8 gravity grease interceptors (GGIs), 2008 V4: 153, 160-161 gravity separators in oil spills, 2010 V2: 245-246 Gravity Sewer Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 gravity sewers, 2010 V2: 144 gravity tank systems fire-protection connections, 2011 V3: 217, 219 fire-protection water supply, 2011 V3: 225 operation of, 2010 V2: 65-66 suction piping and, 2010 V2: 163 gravity water filters, 2010 V2: 159

Gray, G.D., 2010 V2: 29 graywater. See also storm water; wastewater defined, 2010 V2: 21 horizontal distances. 2010 V2: 26 LEED certification, 2010 V2: 21 water balance, 2010 V2: 21-23 graywater systems amount of generated gray water, 2010 V2: 21 benefits of water reuse, 2009 V1: 126 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 22 contents, 2008 V4: 262 cross connections, 2008 V4: 169 designing for supply and consumption, 2010 V2: 24-45 economic analysis of, 2010 V2: 26-27 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 46, 47 introduction, 2010 V2: 21 precautions, 2010 V2: 27 public concerns and acceptance, 2010 V2: 27-28 reasons for using, 2010 V2: 21 reclaimed water, 2009 V1: 126 references, 2010 V2: 29 sources of, 2008 V4: 261 system description and components, 2010 V2: 22 treatment systems, 2010 V2: 25-27, 2008 V4: 259-260 GRD (grease/oil recovery devices), 2008 V4: 159-160, 185 grease. See fats, oils, and grease (FOG) grease-extracting hoods, 2008 V4: 162, 163 grease interceptors applications, 2008 V4: 162 bioremediation, 2008 V4: 160 bioremediation systems and, 2008 V4: 249 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43, 2008 V4: 162, 164-165 commercial kitchen sinks and, 2008 V4: 12 custom-made, 2008 V4: 161 defined, 2009 V1: 24 design characteristics flotation factors, 2008 V4: 155-156 flow-through periods, 2008 V4: 155 practical design, 2008 V4: 158 retention periods, 2008 V4: 154-155 economic concerns, 2008 V4: 166 field-formed concrete, 2008 V4: 161 flow control, 2008 V4: 163 FOG disposal systems, 2008 V4: 160 formulas for operation, 2008 V4: 154-156, 163-164 gravity (GGIs), 2008 V4: 153, 160-161 hydromechanical (HGIs), 2008 V4: 153, 158-159, 165 operation and maintenance, 2008 V4: 165-166 overview, 2008 V4: 153 removing grease, 2008 V4: 165-166 sanitary drainage systems, 2011 V3: 226 single- and multiple-fixture design, 2008 V4: 163-164 sizing, 2008 V4: 163-164 types of automatic computer-controlled units, 2008 V4: 159 - 160automatic power-operated units, 2008 V4: 159-160 custom-made units, 2008 V4: 161 manually operated units, 2008 V4: 159 semiautomatic units, 2008 V4: 159 grease/oil recovery devices (GRD), 2008 V4: 159-160 Grease Removal Devices, 2008 V4: 166

grease traps bioremediation systems and, 2008 V4: 249 codes, 2009 V1: 43 commercial kitchen sinks and, 2008 V4: 12 defined, 2009 V1: 24 green building and plumbing biosolids, 2008 V4: 261-264 disease, 2008 V4: 256 economic benefits, 2008 V4: 258 economic growth, 2008 V4: 256 energy efficiency, 2008 V4: 264 global issues, 2008 V4: 255-256 irrigation, 2008 V4: 258 LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), 2008 V4: 2-3, 255, 257-258, 265 objections to, 2008 V4: 258 pumps, 2008 V4: 100-101 quality perceptions and, 2009 V1: 263 references, 2008 V4: 265 sanitation, 2008 V4: 255-256 sustainable design, 2008 V4: 256 vacuum-operated waste transport system, 2008 V4: 259 wastewater management, 2008 V4: 259-264 water use, 2008 V4: 255 green sands, 2010 V2: 205 Greene, Norbert D., 2009 V1: 144 Greening Federal Facilities Guide, 2009 V1: 126 Gribbin, PE, John. E., 2010 V2: 55 gridded systems, fire mains, 2011 V3: 6 grinder pumps, 2008 V4: 99-100 defined, 2009 V1: 24 in sewage tanks, 2010 V2: 144 groove butterfly valves, 2008 V4: 84 grooved wheel and bar benders, 2008 V4: 63 Grossel, S.F., 2010 V2: 246 ground failure, 2009 V1: 149 ground floor space. See clear floor space ground-motion time history, 2009 V1: 150 ground-mounted water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 ground ruptures, 2009 V1: 149 ground shaking, 2009 V1: 149-150, 152 ground water carbon dioxide in, 2008 V4: 197 feed water for pure water systems, 2010 V2: 220 graywater irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 21 monitoring, 2011 V3: 143-144 need for treatment, 2008 V4: 193-194 private water systems, 2010 V2: 155 storage tanks and, 2011 V3: 154 storm drainage detention, 2010 V2: 47 swimming pool locations and, 2011 V3: 107 underground tanks and, 2011 V3: 138 grounding gas systems, 2010 V2: 125 groundspace for wheelchairs. See clear floor space groundwater, 2009 V1: 24 Groundwater Contamination from Stormwater Infiltration, 2010 V2: 55 groundwater defined, 2010 V2: 188 group washups, 2008 V4: 11 grouts in wells, 2010 V2: 158 growth rate of fires, 2011 V3: 2
guaranty bonds, 2009 V1: 56 Guard against Freezing in Water Lines, 2008 V4: 116 guard posts for hydrants, 2011 V3: 220 Guide to Federal Tax Incentives for Solar Energy, 2011 V3: 190 Guidelines Establishing Test Procedures for the Analysis of Oil and Grease and Non-polar Material, 2008 V4: 252 Guidelines for Seismic Restraints of Mechanical Systems, 2009 V1: 180, 185 guides (pipe), 2009 V1: 24, 2008 V4: 137 Gut Feel Index, 2009 V1: 235-248 gutters (pools), 2011 V3: 113-114, 116-117 gutters (roofs), 2009 V1: 24 GV (gas vents), 2009 V1: 8 GV (gate valves), 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 230 gymnasiums, 2010 V2: 99, 2008 V4: 18 gypsum, 2008 V4: 193

gypsum board, lining with lead, 2010 V2: 238

Η

h (hecto) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 H (henrys), 2009 V1: 34 h (hours), 2009 V1: 34 h (velocity head), 2009 V1: 5 H-I alloy, 2009 V1: 132 H/m (henrys per meter), 2009 V1: 34 ha (hectares), 2009 V1: 34 hair entanglement in drains, 2011 V3: 104, 112 hair strainers, 2011 V3: 114, 124 Halar, 2009 V1: 32, 2011 V3: 49 half-circle rotary sprinklers, 2011 V3: 94 half-dome ends on tanks, 2011 V3: 139 half-full conditions (HF), 2009 V1: 1 half lives, defined, 2010 V2: 238 Hall grades of gases, 2011 V3: 267 halogenated agents, 2011 V3: 26, 29, 66, 76 halogens, 2010 V2: 109-110 halon 1211, 2011 V3: 26 halon 1301, 2009 V1: 24, 2011 V3: 26 halothane, 2011 V3: 66 hammer. See water hammer hand-held extinguishers, 2011 V3: 23 hand-held shower heads, 2009 V1: 112 hand tools for vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 180 hand trenching, labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87-88 hand wheels, 2008 V4: 74 Handbook for Mechanical Engineers, 2009 V1: 2, 3, 5, 39 Handbook of Applied Hydraulics, 2008 V4: 166 Handbook of Applied Hydrology, 2010 V2: 55 Handbook of Corrosion Resistant Pipeline, 2011 V3: 89 Handbook of Fundamentals, 2009 V1: 2, 5, 6, 39 handicapped individuals. See people with disabilities handle extensions, 2008 V4: 84, 87 handling section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63-64, 70 hands-free controls on sinks, 2011 V3: 35, 37 hands-free water coolers, 2008 V4: 240 hands-off automatic (HOA), 2009 V1: 14 handwashing lavatories, 2011 V3: 36, 39, 47 hanger assemblies, 2008 V4: 137 hanger drawings, 2008 V4: 135

hanger loads. See pipe loads; support and hanger loads hanger rod fixtures, 2008 V4: 126 hanger rods, 2008 V4: 137 hangers. See supports and hangers hanging rolls, 2008 V4: 126 hard conversions, 2009 V1: 33 hard-temper tubing, 2010 V2: 13, 2011 V3: 68 Hardenberg, W. A., 2008 V4: 166 hardness ions, 2008 V4: 196 hardness of water boiler feed water, 2010 V2: 216 defined, 2008 V4: 223 degrees of hardness, 2010 V2: 189 grains exchange capacity, 2008 V4: 206 hardness leakage, 2008 V4: 207, 223 ion exchange treatment, 205-211, 2010 V2: 201 maximum levels of, 2008 V4: 205 pH and alkalinity, 2010 V2: 196 private water systems, 2010 V2: 160 scaling and, 2008 V4: 194 temporary and permanent hardness, 2008 V4: 196 water softener treatments, 2010 V2: 210, 2008 V4: 187, 196 Harris, Nigel, 2010 V2: 186 Hastellov B, 2010 V2: 232 Hastelloy C, 2009 V1: 132 haunches, 2009 V1: 24 Haws, Luther, 2008 V4: 237 Hazardous and Solid Waste Amendments of 1984 (Public Law 98), 2011 V3: 137 hazardous materials, emergency fixtures and, 2008 V4: 17 hazardous wastes defined, 2011 V3: 81 permits, 2011 V3: 83 hazards accidental acid spills, 2010 V2: 229 chemical material safety data sheets, 2011 V3: 83 classes of hazard occupancies, 2009 V1: 28-29, 2011 V3: 13 closed hot-water systems, 2008 V4: 231 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 59 controlled substance spills, 2010 V2: 186 degree of, defining, 2008 V4: 182 direct connections, 2008 V4: 184 exposed piping and accessibility, 2009 V1: 109 fire hazards, 2009 V1: 22, 2011 V3: 2 flammable and volatile liquids, 2010 V2: 244-246 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125 gases in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 148 graywater systems, 2010 V2: 27-28 hazardous gases, 2010 V2: 229 hazardous materials, defined, 2011 V3: 81-82 hazardous substances, defined, 2011 V3: 81 hazardous wastes, defined, 2011 V3: 81 hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 97, 108-111 insulation, 2008 V4: 114-115 propane, 2010 V2: 131 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133-134 radiation, 2010 V2: 237 radioactive waste-drainage systems, 2010 V2: 239 sanitary precautions for wells, 2010 V2: 159 types of acids, 2010 V2: 230-232

vacuum cleaning system issues, 2010 V2: 186 water distribution, cross-connections, 2008 V4: 171-172 Hazen-Williams formula defined, 2009 V1: 2, 2010 V2: 6 pipe sizing and, 2010 V2: 73 HB (hose bibbs), 2009 V1: 10, 14 HCFCs (hydrochlorofluorocarbons), 2011 V3: 27 hd, HD (head). See pressure (PRESS, PRES, P) HDPE (high density polyethylene), 2009 V1: 32, 2011 V3: 256, 2008 V4: 51 head (hd, HD), 2009 V1: 24. See also pressure (PRESS, PRES, P) head loss, 2009 V1: 24. See also pressure drops or differences (PD, DELTP) headers, 2009 V1: 24 headroom around pipes, 2008 V4: 23 headwall gas systems, 2011 V3: 51, 55 health care facilities defined, 2011 V3: 33-34, 76 drainage systems, 2011 V3: 42-46 fixtures and equipment, 2011 V3: 35-42 glossary, 2011 V3: 76-78 Legionella control in, 2010 V2: 108-111 medical gas and vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 50-76 plumbing overview, 2011 V3: 35 references, 2011 V3: 78 resources, 2011 V3: 78 selection process, 2011 V3: 35 water-supply systems, 2011 V3: 46-49 Health-Care Facilities (NFPA 99), 2011 V3: 63, 64, 69 health codes, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 106 health hazards. See hazards hearing disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 heart-and-lung machines, 2011 V3: 42 heat (HT) compression, 2011 V3: 179 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 defined, 2011 V3: 186, 2008 V4: 105 distillation and, 2008 V4: 213 in fire triangle, 2011 V3: 22-23 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162 heat detectors, 2011 V3: 29 latent, 2009 V1: 128, 2011 V3: 157, 162 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 plastic corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 sensible, 2009 V1: 128, 2011 V3: 157, 162 thermal, defined, 2011 V3: 188-189 water-heater heat recovery, 2010 V2: 100-101 heat-activated air dryers, 2011 V3: 179 heat and flush method, 2010 V2: 109-110 heat distortion of plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50 heat drying biosolids, 2008 V4: 263 Heat Exchange Institute, 2010 V2: 178 heat exchangers and exchange systems air dryers, 2011 V3: 176, 178 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 condensate estimates, 2011 V3: 167-169 corrosion inhibitors, 2009 V1: 141 defined, 2009 V1: 24 geothermal energy, 2009 V1: 122-123

heat exchanger loop gas booster systems, 2010 V2: 120, 127solar systems, 2009 V1: 122, 2011 V3: 191, 201 for vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123-126 heat expansion. See expansion heat fusion joints defined, 2008 V4: 63 heat-fused socket joints, 2010 V2: 232 PEX piping, 2008 V4: 52 special wastes and, 2011 V3: 42 heat gain (HG, HEATG) storage tanks, 2008 V4: 247 water systems, 2008 V4: 245 heat loss (HL, HEATL) calculating, 2008 V4: 113-115 fiberglass insulation and, 2008 V4: 106 insulation thickness, 2008 V4: 109-113 water heater location and, 2009 V1: 120 heat pumps backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 solar, defined, 2011 V3: 191 solar energy systems, 2011 V3: 203 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123 heat recovery systems, 2009 V1: 123-126, 2011 V3: 127 heat-trace systems, 2009 V1: 24, 2010 V2: 105-106 heat transfer (Q) coefficients, 2008 V4: 106 defined, 2009 V1: 24 efficiency, 2011 V3: 162 medium, 2011 V3: 191 scaling and, 2008 V4: 194 heat-up method, condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 163-164 heated water. See hot-water systems heaters (HTR), 2009 V1: 14. See also water heaters HEATG (heat gain). See heat gain heating engineers, 2011 V3: 29 heating feed water for microbial control, 2010 V2: 214 for pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221 heating hot water return (HHWR), 2009 V1: 9 heating hot water supply (HHWS), 2009 V1: 9 heating systems HVAC. See HVAC systems solar, defined, 2011 V3: 191 heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning systems. See HVAC systems heating water. See water heaters heavier-than-air gases, 2010 V2: 134-135 heavy brackets, 2008 V4: 137 heavy clay loams, 2011 V3: 91 heavy equipment earthquake recommendations, 2009 V1: 153 - 157heavy metals, 2011 V3: 87, 2008 V4: 218. See also names of specific metals heavy process gas service, 2011 V3: 251-252 heavy process service gas, 2010 V2: 114 hectares, 2009 V1: 34 "hecto" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 heel inlets on traps, 2010 V2: 15 heel-proof grates, 2010 V2: 11 heel-proof strainers, 2010 V2: 52

height (hgt, HGT, HT) grab bars for accessibility, 2009 V1: 106 laundry equipment, 2009 V1: 115 sinks, 2009 V1: 109 toilet seats, 2009 V1: 106 helium, 2011 V3: 55, 270 hemodialysis. See dialysis machines Henriques, F.C., Jr., 2010 V2: 111 henrys, 2009 V1: 34 Henry's law, 2010 V2: 72 henrys per meter, 2009 V1: 34 HEPA filters, 2010 V2: 172, 179, 242 heptachlor, 2008 V4: 186 heptachlor epoxide, 2008 V4: 186 herbicides, 2010 V2: 147 safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 Hersey Meters Co., 2010 V2: 96 hertz, 2009 V1: 14, 34 Hesser, Henry H., 2010 V2: 186 HET (high-efficiency toilets), 2009 V1: 127 hexachlorobenzene, 2008 V4: 186 hexametaphosphate, 2010 V2: 160 hexavalent chromium, 2008 V4: 189 HF (half-full conditions), 2009 V1: 1 HFCs (hydrochlorofluorocarbons), 2011 V3: 27 HG (heat gain). See heat gain HG (high-pressure gas), 2009 V1: 8 hgt, HGT (height). See height HHWR (heating hot water return), 2009 V1: 9 HHWS (heating hot water supply), 2009 V1: 9 high-backflow hazard, 2011 V3: 215 high-capacity resins, 2008 V4: 223 high-capacity wells, 2010 V2: 156 high-demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99, 100 high-density polyethylene (HDPE), 2009 V1: 32, 2011 V3: 256high-efficiency toilets (HET), 2009 V1: 127 high-energy beta radiation, 2010 V2: 237 high-expansion foam extinguishers, 2011 V3: 25 high-grade water, 2008 V4: 195-196 high-hazard fires, 2011 V3: 2 high-hose retrievers, 2011 V3: 146 high-level water tank alarms, 2011 V3: 84 high-piled storage, 2011 V3: 225 high-pressure carbon dioxide systems, 2011 V3: 26 high pressure compressed air (HPCA), 2009 V1: 9 high-pressure condensate (HPC), 2009 V1: 9 high-pressure cutouts, 2008 V4: 243-244 high-pressure cylinders, 2011 V3: 50 high-pressure gas (HG), 2009 V1: 8 high-pressure gas systems, 2011 V3: 271-272, 276 high-pressure liquid chromatography, 2008 V4: 218 high-pressure nitrogen systems, 2011 V3: 63-64 high-pressure propane regulators, 2010 V2: 132 high-pressure relief devices, 2008 V4: 218 high-pressure steam (hps, HPS), 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 88-89 high-pressurization air drying, 2011 V3: 178 high-purity gas, 2011 V3: 270-276 high-purity water. See water purification

high-radiation areas, 2010 V2: 237, 239 high-rate dispensers, 2011 V3: 151 high-rate sand filters, 2011 V3: 117-118 high-rise buildings. See large buildings high-silicon cast iron piping, 2010 V2: 13, 14, 2011 V3: 42,46 high-silicon iron anodes, 2009 V1: 139 high-suds detergents, 2010 V2: 37 high-temperature hot water (hthw, HTHW), 2008 V4: 89 high-to-low pressure loss in vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 174 high vacuum, 2010 V2: 172, 176 high-velocity jetted well digging, 2010 V2: 157 high-volume sprinklers in irrigation, 2011 V3: 92 high winds, 2008 V4: 119 highest order functions, 2009 V1: 221 Hillman, 2009 V1: 185 hinge pins, 2008 V4: 74 hinged pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 137 hip baths, 2011 V3: 38 history of earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152-153 of fire-protection systems, 2011 V3: 1 HOA (hands-off automatic), 2009 V1: 14 Hodnott, Robert M., 2009 V1: 185 Hoffman Industries, 2010 V2: 186 hoists for immersion baths, 2011 V3: 38 hold-down straps on storage tanks, 2011 V3: 155 holding rooms, 2011 V3: 56 holes in coatings, 2009 V1: 136 for perc tests, 2010 V2: 141 holidays in coatings, 2009 V1: 136, 2011 V3: 153, 155 in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 hollow-fiber modules in cross-flow filtration, 2010 V2: 212 in reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 194, 211-212 Holtan, H.N., 2010 V2: 55 homogeneity in rate of corrosion, 2009 V1: 134 horizontal branch hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 67 horizontal distances for graywater system elements, 2010 V2: 26 horizontal drains cross-sections of, 2010 V2: 2 fixture loads, 2010 V2: 6, 8-9 flow in, 2010 V2: 2 hydraulic jumps in, 2010 V2: 6 minimum slope of piping, 2010 V2: 7-8 sloping drains in sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 5 - 8steady flow in, 2010 V2: 6 horizontal end-suction centrifugal pumps, 2011 V3: 122 - 123horizontal high-rate sand filters, 2011 V3: 118 horizontal loads of piping, 2009 V1: 177, 178-179 horizontal movement of pipes, 2008 V4: 124 horizontal natural frequencies, 2008 V4: 146 horizontal pipe attachments, 2008 V4: 126 horizontal pipes or fittings, 2009 V1: 24 horizontal pressure-media filters, 2010 V2: 201, 2008 V4: 202 horizontal pumps

defined, 2009 V1: 23 split-case pumps, 2009 V1: 23, 2011 V3: 21 horizontal travelers, 2008 V4: 124, 137 horizontal turbine meters, 2010 V2: 88 horizontal velocity, 2008 V4: 155 horsepower (hp, HP) brake horsepower (bhp, BHP), 2009 V1: 6 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 defined, 2011 V3: 186 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 hose bibb vacuum breakers applications, 2008 V4: 185 defined, 2008 V4: 180 hose bibbs (HB), 2009 V1: 10, 14, 24, 2011 V3: 39, 2008 V4: 185, 223 hose connection vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 175 hose demand, 2011 V3: 13 hose outlets, 2009 V1: 12 hose sprays, 2008 V4: 185 hose stations, dry, 2009 V1: 13 hose streams in firefighting, 2011 V3: 225 hose thread outlets, 2008 V4: 13 hose valves, 2011 V3: 20 hoses bed pans, 2011 V3: 40 compressed air pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 181-182 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 181-182 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 fuel storage tanks, 2011 V3: 140 medical gas tubing, 2011 V3: 69 retrievers, 2011 V3: 146 vacuum cleaning hose capacity, 2010 V2: 180 vacuum cleaning systems. See tubing hospitals, 2010 V2: 15, 99, 109. See also health care facilities backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 defined, 2011 V3: 33 distilled water use, 2008 V4: 212 drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 fixtures, 2008 V4: 19, 20 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 hot dip galvanization, 2008 V4: 137 hot elevations, 2008 V4: 137 hot fluids glass piping and, 2008 V4: 48 hangers and supports for, 2008 V4: 126 piping for, 2008 V4: 125 hot hanger locations, 2008 V4: 137 hot loads, 2008 V4: 137 hot settings, 2008 V4: 137 hot shoes, 2008 V4: 137 hot tubs, 2011 V3: 111, 2008 V4: 185 hot-vapor atmospheric vents, 2009 V1: 9 hot water, defined, 2009 V1: 25 hot water recirculating (HWR), 2009 V1: 8 hot-water returns, 2009 V1: 8, 14 hot-water supply (HW) heating hot water supply, 2009 V1: 8 high-temperature hot-water service, 2008 V4: 89 potable water, 2011 V3: 47 symbols for, 2009 V1: 8, 14

temperature ranges for expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 hot-water systems avoiding standby losses, 2009 V1: 119 circulation systems, 2010 V2: 105 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 112 conserving energy, 2009 V1: 117-120, 119, 120 corrosion rates, 2009 V1: 134 earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152 equations, 2010 V2: 100-101 exposed piping and accessibility, 2009 V1: 109 heat loss, 2008 V4: 112-113 high-temperature systems, 2008 V4: 89 hot-water properties, 2010 V2: 107 hot-water temperatures, 2009 V1: 112, 2010 V2: 101, 102-104, 2011 V3: 39, 47 introduction, 2010 V2: 97-98 Legionella pneumophila, 2010 V2: 108-111 maintaining temperatures, 2010 V2: 105-106 mixed-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 191 pipe codes, 2009 V1: 45 relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 safety and health concerns, 2010 V2: 108-111 scalding water, 2010 V2: 111 sizing water heaters, 2010 V2: 98-99 solar, 2011 V3: 196-199 temperature ranges for expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 thermal efficiency, 2010 V2: 107-108 thermal expansion, 2010 V2: 106-107, 2008 V4: 227 types of domestic systems, 2009 V1: 120 valves for, 2008 V4: 85-86, 89 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123-126 water heater heat recovery, 2010 V2: 100-101 water heaters, 2010 V2: 101-105 hot-water temperatures accessible shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112 charts, 2010 V2: 102-104 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 39, 47 high-temperature hot water, 2008 V4: 89 maintaining temperatures, 2010 V2: 105-106 mixed-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101 ranges for expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 scalding water, 2010 V2: 111 hotels drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 153 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 septic tanks, 150, 2010 V2: 149 vacuum calculations for, 2010 V2: 180 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 hourly data in sizing water heaters, 2010 V2: 99 hours (h, HR), 2009 V1: 34 house drains. See building drains house pumps, 2010 V2: 66 house tanks, 2010 V2: 65-66, 68 house traps. See building traps houses. See buildings housing project sewers, 150, 2010 V2: 149 housings

for gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125 for gas filters, 2011 V3: 252 HOW logic path, 2009 V1: 223, 224 How to Design Spencer Central Vacuum Cleaners, 2010 V2: 186 hp, HP (horsepower). See horsepower HPC (high-pressure condensate), 2009 V1: 9 HPCA (high pressure compressed air), 2009 V1: 9 hps, HPS (high-pressure steam), 2009 V1: 9 HR (hours), 2009 V1: 34 HT (heat). See heat HT (height). See height hthw, HTHW (high-temperature hot water). See hot-water temperatures HTR (heaters), 2009 V1: 14. See also water heaters hub-and-spigot piping and joints. See also bell-and-spigot joints and piping acid wastes and, 2011 V3: 46 as compression joints, 2008 V4: 60 cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23-25, 25-27 defined, 2009 V1: 25 sanitary piping, 2010 V2: 12 hub ends on valves, 2008 V4: 80 Hubbard baths, 2010 V2: 99 Hubbard Enterprises-HOLDRITE, 2009 V1: 206 hubless outlet drain body, 2010 V2: 14 hubless piping bracing cast-iron pipe, 2009 V1: 170 cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23-25, 24, 27 hubless, defined, 2009 V1: 25 riser bracing for hubless pipes, 2009 V1: 171 sanitary piping, 2010 V2: 12 shielded hubless coupling, 2008 V4: 61 HUD (Housing and Urban Development), 2009 V1: 97, 99 Huff, Winston, 2010 V2: 29 human blood in drinking water case, 2008 V4: 187 human body, need for water, 2008 V4: 237 humidity, 2009 V1: 25, 2011 V3: 186 hungry water. See distilled water Hunter, Roy B., 2010 V2: 3, 95-96 Hunter's Curve, 2010 V2: 76 Hurricane filters, 2010 V2: 201 hurricanes, 2009 V1: 262, 2008 V4: 119 hutene, 2010 V2: 114 HVAC engineers, 2011 V3: 29 HVAC systems backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 copper pipes, 2008 V4: 30-31 defined, 2008 V4: 137 exhaust ducts, 2010 V2: 184 glass pipes, 2008 V4: 48 steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 HW. See hot-water supply (HW) HWR (hot water recirculating), 2009 V1: 8, 14 hybrid gas system configurations, 2010 V2: 122 hybrid pressure gas pipe sizing method, 2010 V2: 130 hybrid vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 hydrant wrenches, 2011 V3: 3 hydrants butt caps, 2011 V3: 3, 210 coefficients of discharge, 2011 V3: 3, 3-4

cross connections, 2008 V4: 185 defined, 2009 V1: 23, 25 fire-protection water supply, 2011 V3: 220-221 flow tests, 2011 V3: 3-4, 210 guards, 2011 V3: 220 outlets, 2011 V3: 4 public hydrants, 2009 V1: 12 wall hydrants, 2009 V1: 10, 12 hydraulic design of sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 11-13 hydraulic equipment direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 Hydraulic Institute, 2010 V2: 96 Hydraulic Institute Standards for Centrifugal, Rotary, and Reciprocating Pumps, 2011 V3: 123, 135 hydraulic irrigation valves, 2011 V3: 94 hydraulic jumps in flow, 2010 V2: 2, 6, 35 Hydraulic loading rates for soil absorption systems based on wastewater quality, 2010 V2: 55 hydraulic mean depth of flow, 2009 V1: 1 hydraulic pipe benders, 2008 V4: 63 hydraulic pressure differential switches, 2008 V4: 203 hydraulic radii (R), 2009 V1: 1 hydraulic shock. See water hammer hydraulic snubbers, 2008 V4: 137 hydraulic sway braces, 2008 V4: 137 hydraulically remote, 2009 V1: 25 Hydraulics and Hydrology for Stormwater Management, 2010 V2: 55 hydraulics of wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 hydrazine, 2010 V2: 216 Hydro 35 (National Weather Service), 2011 V3: 239 hydrobromic acid, 2010 V2: 232 hydrocarbons classifications, 2011 V3: 136-137 contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 174 medical gas system tests, 2011 V3: 76 hydrochloric acid cation regenerants, 2008 V4: 197 formation and removal, 2008 V4: 199-200 formula, 2008 V4: 193 from cation exchange, 2008 V4: 198 in laboratory wastes, 2010 V2: 232 in regeneration, 2010 V2: 199, 207 in water chemistry, 2010 V2: 189 hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), 2011 V3: 27 hydrodynamics, 2008 V4: 169-170 hydrogen, 2010 V2: 114, 189, 205, 229, 2008 V4: 193 generating, 2011 V3: 270 in pH balance, 2011 V3: 85 removing, 2011 V3: 273 hydrogen embrittlement, 2009 V1: 143 hydrogen film buildup, 2009 V1: 129 hydrogen fluoride, 2011 V3: 27 hydrogen ions, 2008 V4: 193 hydrogen overvoltage, 2009 V1: 143 hydrogen peroxide, 2010 V2: 213, 2011 V3: 49 hydrogen-sodium ion exchange plants, 2008 V4: 199 hydrogen sulfide, 2010 V2: 122, 190, 198, 199 defined, 2008 V4: 223 formula, 2008 V4: 193 hydrographs, storm drainage, 2010 V2: 43

hydromechanical grease interceptors (HGIs), 2008 V4: 153, 158-159, 165 Hydronics Institute, 2011 V3: 169 hydrophilic air filters, 2008 V4: 213-214 hydrophobic air filters, 2008 V4: 213-214 hydropneumatic-tank systems, 2010 V2: 62, 64-65, 162 hydroquinone, 2010 V2: 216 hydrostatic design stress table, 2008 V4: 228 hydrostatic fundamentals, 2008 V4: 169-170 hydrostatic loads, 2008 V4: 137 hydrostatic locks, 2008 V4: 137 hydrostatic monitoring systems, 2011 V3: 143 hydrostatic pressure, 2010 V2: 4 hydrostatic relief valves, 2011 V3: 112-113 hydrostatic test loads, 2008 V4: 137 hydrostatic tests, 2011 V3: 153, 2008 V4: 137 hydrotherapeutic showers, 2010 V2: 99 hydrotherapy immersion baths, 2011 V3: 38 hydroxide salts, 2008 V4: 198 hydroxides, 2010 V2: 189, 2011 V3: 85 hydroxyl, 2010 V2: 205, 214, 229 hygienic insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 Hypalon, 2009 V1: 32 hyperbaric pressures, 2011 V3: 76, 77 hyperchlorination, 2010 V2: 110 hypobaric pressures, 2011 V3: 76 hypochlorite solutions, 2008 V4: 200 hypochlorous acid, 2008 V4: 200 Hz (hertz), 2009 V1: 14, 34 Hz, HZ (frequencies), 2009 V1: 34

I

I-beams, 2008 V4: 68 IAPMO. See International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) IBBM (iron body bronze mounted), 2009 V1: 14 IBC (International Building Code), 2011 V3: 137 ICBO (International Conference of Building Officials), 2009 V1: 185 ICC (International Code Council), 2009 V1: 52 ice. See freezing temperatures ice dispensers, 2008 V4: 240 ice makers, 2009 V1: 199, 2011 V3: 36, 2008 V4: 184, 185 icfm (inlet cubic feet per minute) dynamic air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 vacuum piping systems, 2010 V2: 166 ID (inside diameters), 2009 V1: 14 idea evaluation checklists, 2009 V1: 230-231 idea generators, 2009 V1: 227 ideal gas law, 2010 V2: 64 identifying parts of graywater systems, 2010 V2: 22, 27 IE (invert elevations), 2009 V1: 14 i.e. (that is), 2009 V1: 15 ignition (torch) testing, 2008 V4: 2 IIC (Impact Isolation Class), 2009 V1: 188 IIR (isobutene isoprene rubber), 2009 V1: 32 illegal connections to water meters, 2010 V2: 59 Illinois Plumbing Code, 2010 V2: 108-109 illuminance conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36

measurements, 2009 V1: 34 Illustrated National Plumbing Code Design Manual, 2010 V2: 50, 55 imaginary costs, 2009 V1: 218 imaging-science facilities, 2010 V2: 238 immersion baths, 2011 V3: 36, 38, 40 immersion heaters, 2008 V4: 159 immersion-type vacuum separators, 2010 V2: 179 immiscible liquids, 2009 V1: 25, 2010 V2: 187 impact applications, neoprene and, 2008 V4: 149 impact heads in sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 93 Impact Isolation Class (IIC), 2009 V1: 188 impact noise (structure-borne sound), 2009 V1: 187 impact type flow sensors, 2011 V3: 124 impaired individuals. See people with disabilities impellers defined, 2009 V1: 25 pump impeller diameters, 2009 V1: 6 imperviousness factor, 2011 V3: 239 impingement attack corrosion, 2009 V1: 131, 143 Implementation Follow-up phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 Implementation Presentation phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 importance assigning in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218 of equipment or systems in seismic force calculations, 2009 V1: 177 impoundment basins, 2011 V3: 149 impressed current systems, 2009 V1: 137, 139 impurities defined, 2009 V1: 25 in water. See water impurities in. See inches in. Hg (inches of mercury), 2010 V2: 165, 167 in-line filters, 2011 V3: 63 in-line life check valves, 2008 V4: 83 in-line pumps, 2009 V1: 23 in.hr (inches per hour), 2009 V1: 14 inch-pound units (IP) converting, 2010 V2: 170, 2011 V3: 30 flow rates and pressure measurements, 2011 V3: 172 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 use of, 2010 V2: 165 inches converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 of mercury (in. Hg), 2009 V1: 38, 2010 V2: 165, 167 per hour (in./h), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 91 symbols for, 2009 V1: 14 incineration systems, 2009 V1: 122 income, in hot water demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99 inconel, 2009 V1: 132, 2008 V4: 108 independent functions in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 223 indicated horsepower, defined, 2011 V3: 186 indirect-circulation solar systems, 2009 V1: 122 indirect discharges, 2011 V3: 83, 2008 V4: 249 indirect drains (D), 2009 V1: 8 indirect-fired propane vaporizers, 2010 V2: 134 indirect-fired water heaters, 2010 V2: 104 indirect waste pipes, 2009 V1: 25, 2008 V4: 12, 178

indirect waste receptors, 2010 V2: 15-16, 2008 V4: 16. See also floor sinks indirect water heating, 2011 V3: 126-127 individual aerobic waste treatment plants, 2010 V2: 150 Individual Home Wastewater Characterization and Treatment, 2010 V2: 154 individual vents, 2009 V1: 25. See also revent pipes indoor gas boosters, 2010 V2: 126 indoor swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108. See also swimming pools induced siphonage, 2009 V1: 25 industrial acid-waste drainage systems acid-waste treatment, 2010 V2: 235 continuous acid-waste treatment systems, 2010 V2: 236 defined, 2010 V2: 229 health and safety concerns, 2010 V2: 229-230 large facilities, 2010 V2: 235 types of acids, 2010 V2: 230-232 industrial chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 243 industrial facilities distilled water use, 2008 V4: 212 firefighting demand flow rates, 2011 V3: 224 firefighting water drainage, 2010 V2: 243-244 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 piping systems, 2008 V4: 137 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133-134 radiation in, 2010 V2: 238 water content in wastes. 2011 V3: 91 industrial laundries, 2008 V4: 205 Industrial Plumbing Code (IPC), 2009 V1: 14 Industrial Risk Insurers (IRI), 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 115, 117, 2011 V3: 11 industrial service gas, 2010 V2: 114 industrial waste defined, 2009 V1: 25 pretreatment of, 2008 V4: 249 industrial wastewater treatment codes and standards, 2011 V3: 88 definitions, 2011 V3: 81-82 designing systems, 2011 V3: 83-84 government publications, 2011 V3: 89 industry and technical handbooks, 2011 V3: 89 overview, 2011 V3: 81 permits, 2011 V3: 82-83 references, 2011 V3: 88 regulatory framework, 2011 V3: 82-83 resources, 2011 V3: 89 system elements, 2011 V3: 85-88 inert gases, 2009 V1: 25, 2011 V3: 27, 266 Inert Gases: Argon, Nitrogen and Helium (CGA P-9), 2011 V3: 74, 78 inert materials, 2011 V3: 48 inertia conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 inerting atmospheres, 2011 V3: 26 infant bathtubs, 2011 V3: 36, 38 infectious and biological waste systems. See also disinfecting; microorganisms biosafety levels, 2010 V2: 241 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 241

components, 2010 V2: 242 introduction, 2010 V2: 240-241 liquid-waste decontamination systems, 2010 V2: 241 - 242infectious disease rooms, 2011 V3: 47 infiltration, 2009 V1: 25 storm drainage, 2010 V2: 48 inflexibility, creativity and, 2009 V1: 225 inflow, defined, 2009 V1: 25 influents, 2008 V4: 223 Information phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209-218 information sources in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209-210, 216 infrared controls on faucets and fixtures, 2009 V1: 128 infrared radiation, defined, 2011 V3: 191 Ingersoll-Rand Company, 2010 V2: 136 inhibitors (corrosion), 2009 V1: 141, 143 initial pressure in water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 initial system volumes, 2008 V4: 232 initial vacuum pressure, 2010 V2: 183 injectable pharmaceuticals, 2008 V4: 218, 219 ink tests, 2008 V4: 5, 9 inlet cubic feet per minute (icfm), 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 62 inlet filters, 2009 V1: 25 inlet piping, compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 182 inlet pressure, defined, 2011 V3: 186 inlet temperature, defined, 2011 V3: 186 inlet times, 2011 V3: 242 inlet valves, 2008 V4: 223 inlets. See also outlets; stations gas or vacuum. See stations inlet filters on vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171 inlet inverts on septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 inlet pressure in cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 69 inlet pressure in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 128 inlet times, 2011 V3: 242, 249 number of in vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 174 for storage tanks, 2010 V2: 163 storm drainage collection systems, 2010 V2: 46 submerged, 2008 V4: 184 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 135 for vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 179, 180, 183, 184in vacuum sizing calculations, 2010 V2: 174, 176 inline shutoff valves, 2011 V3: 67 innovations, 2009 V1: 262 inorganic salts, 2008 V4: 220 inorganic substances, 2009 V1: 25 input motion of earthquakes, 2009 V1: 150 inputs, 2009 V1: 25 insecticides, storm water, 2010 V2: 27 insert boxes, 2008 V4: 137 insert nuts, 2008 V4: 127, 137 inserts, 2008 V4: 64-65, 126, 137 inside-caulk drains, 2010 V2: 13 inside-caulk outlets, 2010 V2: 13 inside diameters (ID), 2009 V1: 14, 2011 V3: 139 insolation, defined, 2011 V3: 191 inspecting. See also cleanouts conditions of existing buildings, 2009 V1: 267-270 hazardous waste systems, 2011 V3: 84 sewage-disposal systems, 2010 V2: 153

installation anchor bolts, seismic problems, 2009 V1: 184 appearance of, 2009 V1: 262-263 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 253 cross-connection controls, 2008 V4: 175-176 ensuring high quality with detailed specs, 2009 V1: 253-254 estimating productivity rates, 2009 V1: 88 flow sensors, 2011 V3: 124-125 gas meters, 2010 V2: 115–116 grab bars, 2009 V1: 113 installation costs, 2009 V1: 217 installation sequence in water treatment, 2008 V4: 223 insulation on valves and fittings, 2008 V4: 108-109 lavatories, 2008 V4: 10-11 liquid fuel storage systems, 2011 V3: 154-156 makeshift or substandard, 2009 V1: 254-257 medical gas piping, 2011 V3: 67-68 pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 pumps, 2008 V4: 101-102 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 showers, 2008 V4: 14 storage tank checklist, 2011 V3: 155-156 tank insulation, 2008 V4: 109 urinals, 2008 V4: 9-10 water closets, 2008 V4: 6-7 water coolers, 2008 V4: 247 water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 82 Installation, 2008 V4: 28 Installation/Maintenance of Private Fire Mains (FM 3-10), 2011 V3: 218 Installation of Centrifugal Fire Pumps (NFPA 20), 2011 V3: 21 Installation of Closed-head Foam-water Sprinkler Systems (NFPA 16A), 2011 V3: 30 Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances (NFPA 24), 2011 V3: 30, 218 Installation of Sprinkler Systems (NFPA 13), 2011 V3: 2, 11, 225 Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems (NFPA 14), 2011 V3: 18 Installation of Underground Gasoline Tanks and Piping at Service Stations (API 1615), 2011 V3: 156 instantaneous water heaters, 2009 V1: 25, 2010 V2: 101 - 104institutional facilities estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 151 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 153 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 piping systems, 2008 V4: 137-138 septic tank systems for, 150, 2010 V2: 149 instructions to bidders, 2009 V1: 56 instrument sterilizers, 2011 V3: 39, 40 instruments, nitrogen-pressure-driven, 2011 V3: 64 Insulated Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids (UL 2085), 2011 V3: 137 insulated handle extensions, 2008 V4: 84 insulated pipe supports, 2008 V4: 138 insulating cement, 2008 V4: 107 insulation chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 244 confined spaces, 2008 V4: 116

dielectric insulation, 2009 V1: 136 economic issues, 2008 V4: 113-115 in geothermal energy systems, 2009 V1: 123 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 120, 126 hot-water systems, 2009 V1: 118 insulation protection saddles, 2008 V4: 138 noise insulation, 2010 V2: 13-14 pipe. See pipe insulation pure water systems, 2010 V2: 223 short-circuiting installations, 2009 V1: 140 solar energy systems, 2011 V3: 203 storage and handling, 2008 V4: 114-115 tanks, 2008 V4: 109 thickness and energy conservation, 2009 V1: 118 for valves and fittings, 2008 V4: 108-109 insurance carriers, 2011 V3: 1, 27, 205 certificates, 2009 V1: 56 in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 intake silencers on compressors, 2011 V3: 175 integral attachments, 2008 V4: 138 integral two-stage propane regulators, 2010 V2: 133 intensity (luminous), 2009 V1: 34 intensity-duration-frequency curves, 2011 V3: 239, 244-248intensity, rainfall, 2010 V2: 44-46 intensive-care rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 38 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56 interactive fountains, 2011 V3: 100 interceptors, 2009 V1: 25. See also specific kinds of interceptors intercooling, defined, 2011 V3: 186 interface controls for medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 67 intergranular corrosion, 2010 V2: 195 interlocking, gas boosters and, 2010 V2: 127 interlocks for gas shutoffs, 2010 V2: 118 intermediate chambers in dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 8 intermediate coats, 2009 V1: 136 intermediate gas regulators, 2011 V3: 255 intermediate hangers, 2008 V4: 68 intermediate-level sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 intermittent flow in fixtures, 2008 V4: 207 intermittent sand filters, 2010 V2: 150 internal energy, defined, 2011 V3: 185 Internal Revenue Service (IRS) web site, 2011 V3: 203 internal water treatments, 2008 V4: 194 International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), 2011 V3: 119 International Amateur Swimming Federation (FINA), 2011 V3: 104 International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO), 2009 V1: 52, 2010 V2: 29 PS 1 Tank Risers, 2008 V4: 252 publications Uniform Plumbing Code, 2010 V2: 115, 136 Uniform Plumbing Code. See Uniform Plumbing Code Z1001 Prefabricated Gravity Grease Interceptors, 2008 V4: 153

International Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 2011 V3: 88

344

International Building Code (IBC), 2009 V1: 174, 2011 V3: 137 International Code Council (ICC), 2009 V1: 52, 2010 V2: 29,96 International Fuel Gas Code, 2010 V2: 115 International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO), 2009 V1: 185 International Fuel Gas Code, 2010 V2: 115, 118, 121, 125 International Plumbing Code, 2009 V1: 206, 2010 V2: 29, 2008 V4: 17-19, 164, 165 graywater, 2010 V2: 22 vent sizing, 2010 V2: 39-40 International Safety Equipment Association (ISEA), 2009 V1: 52 International Standards Organization Laboratory Tests on Noise Emission from Appliances and Equipment Used in Water Supply Installations, 2009 V1: 193, 206 international swimming meets, 2011 V3: 107 International System of Units (SI) conversion factors, 2009 V1: 38-39 converting, 2009 V1: 38, 2010 V2: 170, 2011 V3: 30 equations, 2009 V1: 1 listing, 2009 V1: 33-39 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 prefixes and symbols, 2009 V1: 34 pressure and flow rate measurements, 2011 V3: 187 style and use, 2009 V1: 34-35, 2010 V2: 165 interrelationships of functions, 2009 V1: 219, 223 interruptible fuel-gas service, 2010 V2: 114 interruptible gas services, 2011 V3: 251 interstage relief valves, 2011 V3: 274 interstitial monitoring, 2011 V3: 143 interstitial spaces in tanks, 2011 V3: 139, 148 intravenous injections, 2008 V4: 213 Introduction to Storm Water, 2010 V2: 46, 55 inventory control in storage tanks, 2011 V3: 142-143 invert elevations, 2009 V1: 14 invertebrates, 2010 V2: 188 inverted, defined, 2008 V4: 138 inverted bucket traps, 2011 V3: 162–163 $\,$ inverts defined, 2009 V1: 25 on septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 Investigation phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209, 235 - 248inward projecting pipes, 2010 V2: 93 iodine, 2010 V2: 110 iodine 131, 2010 V2: 238 ion-exchange and removal systems, 2010 V2: 201-211 cartridges, 2008 V4: 214 continuous deionization, 2010 V2: 209-210 defined, 2008 V4: 223 design considerations, 2010 V2: 210-211 internal structure, 2008 V4: 198 ion exchange with acid addition, 2008 V4: 199 ion exchange with chloride dealkalizer, 2008 V4: 199 regenerable ion exchange, 2010 V2: 205 regeneration cycle, 2010 V2: 206-208 resins, 2010 V2: 205-206, 2008 V4: 197-199 service deionization, 2010 V2: 208-209 small drinking water systems, 2010 V2: 218

sodium cycle, 2008 V4: 196 total dissolved solids and, 2010 V2: 194 trace metal removal, 2011 V3: 87 water softening, 2010 V2: 210, 2008 V4: 197-199, 198-199 ionization, copper-silver, 2010 V2: 11, 110, 2008 V4: 220 ionized salts (NaCI), 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 195 ions defined, 2009 V1: 25, 143, 2008 V4: 197, 223 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 134 in pH values, 2010 V2: 229 Iowa Institute of Hydraulic Research, 2010 V2: 72 IP units, 2009 V1: 14, 2010 V2: 165, 170, 2011 V3: 30, 172 IPC (Industrial Plumbing Code), 2009 V1: 14 IPC vent sizing, 2010 V2: 39-40 IPS. See iron pipe size (IPS) IPS outlet drain body, 2010 V2: 14 IPS outlets, 2010 V2: 13 IR (polyisopryne), 2009 V1: 32 IRI. See Industrial Risk Insurers (IRI) iron corrosion, 2009 V1: 129, 2008 V4: 196 defined, 2008 V4: 223 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 ferric ion formula, 2008 V4: 193 ferrous ion formula, 2008 V4: 193 in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 removing, 2010 V2: 198 sludge and, 2010 V2: 195 in soils, 2010 V2: 141 in water, 2010 V2: 160, 189, 2008 V4: 186, 187 iron bacteria, 2010 V2: 188 iron body bronze mounted (IBBM), 2009 V1: 14 iron coagulants, 2010 V2: 199 iron filters, 2008 V4: 208 iron oxide, 2009 V1: 129 iron oxide films, 2009 V1: 134 iron pipe size (IPS), 2009 V1: 14, 2008 V4: 51, 54 iron piping corrosion, 2009 V1: 129, 2008 V4: 196 ductile iron water and sewer pipe, 2008 V4: 25-29 iron seats for valves, 2008 V4: 83 iron valves, 2008 V4: 78-79 irradiation (insolation), instantaneous, 2011 V3: 191 irradiation treatment of water, 2010 V2: 160, 213, 218, 222, 223 irregularity of shapes in velocity, 2008 V4: 154 irrigation graywater, 2010 V2: 22 Irrigation Association, 2011 V3: 96 irrigation systems backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 design information, 2011 V3: 96 graywater systems and, 2010 V2: 24-25, 27 green plumbing, 2008 V4: 258 lawn sprinkler submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 methods, 2011 V3: 92 overview, 2011 V3: 91 rain shutoff devices, 2011 V3: 96 rainwater harvesting, 2009 V1: 126 references, 2011 V3: 96 resources, 2011 V3: 96-97

sample information sheet, 2011 V3: 97 soil considerations, 2011 V3: 91 system components, 2011 V3: 92-96 water metering and, 2011 V3: 95-96 water guality and requirements, 2011 V3: 91 water supply, 2011 V3: 96 ISEA (International Safety Equipment Association), 2009 V1: 52 island venting, 2011 V3: 46 island vents, 2010 V2: 34 isoascorbic acid, 2010 V2: 216 isobaric processes, 2009 V1: 25 isobutene isoprene rubber, 2009 V1: 32 isochoric processes, 2009 V1: 25 isolating copper pipes, 2009 V1: 256, 258 isolating medical gas zones, 2011 V3: 66 isolating noise drainage system components, 2009 V1: 190 pipes and piping, 2009 V1: 190-193 quality and, 2009 V1: 263 isolation rooms, 2011 V3: 36, 47, 52 isolation valves, 2011 V3: 50 isolation, vibration isolation springs, 2009 V1: 158 isolators within hangers, 2009 V1: 158 isolators, 2009 V1: 194, 2008 V4: 149-150 isosceles triangles, calculating area, 2009 V1: 4 isothermal processes, 2009 V1: 25 isotopes, 2010 V2: 236-237, 238 Izod impact, 2008 V4: 50

J

J (joules), 2009 V1: 34 J/K (joules per kelvin), 2009 V1: 34 J/kg K (joules per kg per kelvin), 2009 V1: 34 jacketing coverings for insulation, 2008 V4: 107-108 defined, 2008 V4: 138 insulation, 2008 V4: 106 on pipe insulation, 2008 V4: 106 pipe insulation, 2008 V4: 107-108 preformed plastic jackets for valves and fittings, 2008 V4: 108-109 types of all-service jackets, 2008 V4: 108 aluminum jackets, 2008 V4: 108 stainless steel, 2008 V4: 108 vapor barriers, 2008 V4: 113 Jackson turbidity units (JTUs), 2010 V2: 193 jam packing, 2008 V4: 74 janitors' closets, 2011 V3: 36, 2008 V4: 12 Janoschek, R., 2010 V2: 224 Jayawardena, N., 2010 V2: 224 JCAHO (Joint Commission for the Accreditation of Hospitals Organization), 2010 V2: 108-109, 111, 2011 V3: 35, 51, 2008 V4: 224 jet pumps, 2010 V2: 157 jetted wells, 2010 V2: 157 job preparation checklists, 2009 V1: 91-92 jockey pumps, 2009 V1: 23, 2011 V3: 22

Joint Commission for the Accreditation of Hospitals Organization (JCAHO), 2010 V2: 108-109, 111, 2011 V3: 35, 51, 2008 V4: 224 joint responsibilities for drinking water purity, 2008 V4: 178 joints acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 232 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 176 couplings, 2009 V1: 20 deflection, 2008 V4: 61 earthquake damage to, 2009 V1: 152 earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 160 inspection, 2011 V3: 69, 74 labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87, 88 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 277 materials ABS pipe, 2008 V4: 54 aluminum pipe, 2008 V4: 59 bronze joints and fittings, 2008 V4: 32, 39-40 cast-iron hubless pipes, 2008 V4: 24 cast-iron soil pipes, 2008 V4: 24-25 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43 copper drainage tubes, 2008 V4: 40, 42 copper joints, 2008 V4: 32, 39-40 copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32-41, 61-62 CPVC piping, 2008 V4: 53-54 cross-linked polyethylene, 2008 V4: 52 cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX), 2008 V4: 52 ductile iron water and sewer pipe, 2008 V4: 28-29 duriron pipe, 2008 V4: 59 fiberglass pipe, 2008 V4: 56 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 41, 42-43, 48, 63 lead and oakum joints, 2008 V4: 61 plastic joints, 2008 V4: 62 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 49 polypropylene pipe, 2008 V4: 54-55 PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 56 PVC piping, 2008 V4: 52-53 PVDF pipe, 2008 V4: 55 reinforced concrete pipe, 2008 V4: 32 seamless copper pipe, 2008 V4: 39 stainless steel pipe, 2008 V4: 60 steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 medical gas tubing, 2011 V3: 69, 2008 V4: 42 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 124, 2011 V3: 257 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 48-49 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 239 resistance coefficients, 2010 V2: 92 restrainers, 2011 V3: 221 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 13-14 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 specifications to prevent failures, 2009 V1: 256-258 thermal expansion and, 2008 V4: 228-229 types of ball joints, 2008 V4: 64 bonded joints and cathodic protection, 2009 V1: 140 brazing, 2008 V4: 62 caulked joints, 2010 V2: 15, 2008 V4: 61 compression joints, 2008 V4: 60 dielectric unions or flanges, 2008 V4: 64-65

electrofusion joining, 2008 V4: 63 expansion joints, 2010 V2: 16, 49, 2008 V4: 64-66, 228-229 fill and pipe joints, 2010 V2: 13 flanged joints, 2008 V4: 62, 67 flexible couplings, 2008 V4: 64-65 glass pipe joints, 2008 V4: 63 heat-fused socket joints, 2010 V2: 232 lead and oakum joints, 2008 V4: 61 mechanical couplings, 2008 V4: 65, 67 mechanical joints, 2008 V4: 60, 61-62 nonrigid couplings, 2009 V1: 180 plastic pipe joints, 2008 V4: 62 sanitary, 2011 V3: 48-49 screwed mechanical joints, 2010 V2: 232 shielded hubless coupling, 2008 V4: 61 soldered, 2008 V4: 62 thread cutting, 2008 V4: 62 threaded, 2008 V4: 62 welded, 2008 V4: 62-63 welded joints in radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 239 joist hangers, 2008 V4: 129 Joukowsky's formula, 2010 V2: 70-71 joules, 2009 V1: 34 joules per kelvin, 2009 V1: 34 joules per kg per kelvin, 2009 V1: 34 JTUs (Jackson turbidity units), 2010 V2: 193 Judgment phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 judgmentalism, 2009 V1: 227 juveniles. See children, fixtures and

Κ

k, K (conductivity), 2009 V1: 33, 2008 V4: 105 K (dynamic response to ground shaking), 2009 V1: 149, 152K (Kelvin), 2009 V1: 14, 30 k (kilo) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 K factor (coefficient of permeability), 2010 V2: 158 K factor (conductivity), 2008 V4: 105 K factor (sprinkler heads), 2011 V3: 13 K piping. See Type K copper Kalinske, A.A., 2010 V2: 19, 72 Kaminsky, G., 2010 V2: 246 Kaufman, Jerry J., 2009 V1: 252 KE (kinetic energy), 2009 V1: 2, 5 Kelvin (K), 2009 V1: 14, 30, 33, 2011 V3: 184 kerosene, 2010 V2: 12, 2011 V3: 136 keyboards, inflexible thinking and, 2009 V1: 225 kg (kilograms). See kilograms kg/m (kilograms per meter), 2009 V1: 34 kg/m² (kilograms per meter squared), 2009 V1: 34 kg/m³ (kilograms per meter cubed), 2009 V1: 34 kg/ms (kilogram-meters per second), 2009 V1: 34 kg/s (kilograms per second), 2009 V1: 34 kidney dialysis. See dialysis machines kill tanks, 2010 V2: 241-242 "kilo" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 kilocalories converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 defined, 2008 V4: 105 kilograms (kg)

defined, 2009 V1: 33 kilograms per cubic meter, 2009 V1: 34 kilograms per meter, 2009 V1: 34 kilograms per meter squared, 2009 V1: 34 kilograms per second, 2009 V1: 34 kilometers (km) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 kilometers per hour, 2009 V1: 34 kilopascals (kPa) converting meters of head loss to, 2009 V1: 2 converting to psi, 2011 V3: 30 in SI units, 2011 V3: 187 vacuum pump ratings, 2010 V2: 167 vacuum work forces, 2010 V2: 166 kiloponds, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 kilowatt hours (kWh, KWH), 2009 V1: 15, 34 kilowatts (kW, KW), 2009 V1: 14 kinematic viscosity converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 water temperature variations, 2010 V2: 73, 74, 77 Kinematic Viscosity Centistokes, 2011 V3: 137 kinetic energy (KE) calculating, 2009 V1: 2 defined, 2011 V3: 185 velocity head and, 2009 V1: 5 kinetically-operated aerobic bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 King, Thomas R., 2009 V1: 252 kip, KIP (thousand pounds), 2009 V1: 15 Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology, 2011 V3: 89 kitchen faucets, 2010 V2: 25 kitchen sinks faucets, 2008 V4: 13 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 153 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 symbols, 2009 V1: 15 types, 2008 V4: 11-12 kitchens. See food-processing areas and kitchens Klein, S.A., 2011 V3: 204 km/h (kilometers per hour), 2009 V1: 34 knee braces, 2008 V4: 138 knee space for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101 knockout pots in vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171 Konen, Thomas K., 2010 V2: 29 Kortright Centre for Conservation web site, 2011 V3: 203 kPa (kilopascals). See kilopascals Kreider, J.F., 2011 V3: 204 Kreith, J., 2011 V3: 203 KS. See kitchen sinks Kullen, Howard P., 2009 V1: 144 kW, KW (kilowatts), 2009 V1: 14 kWh, KWH (kilowatt hours), 2009 V1: 15, 34, 2011 V3: 193 KYNAR piping, 2011 V3: 49

\mathbf{L}

l (leader). See downspouts and leaders L (length). See length L (liters). See liters

L Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 87 L/min (liters per minute), 2011 V3: 187 L piping. See Type L copper L/s (liters per second), 2011 V3: 187 L-shaped bath seats, 2009 V1: 114 LA (laboratory compressed air), 2009 V1: 8 labels labeled, defined, 2009 V1: 25 labeled fire pumps, 2011 V3: 21 medical gas tubing, 2011 V3: 69, 74 medical gas valves, 2011 V3: 67 parts of graywater systems, 2010 V2: 27 labor and materials payment bonds, 2009 V1: 56 labor costs defined, 2009 V1: 210 factors in, 2009 V1: 86 ongoing and one-time, 2009 V1: 217 overtime, 2009 V1: 86 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87-88 in take-off estimating method, 2009 V1: 86 true costs of makeshift installations, 2009 V1: 263-264 in value engineering, 2009 V1: 208 labor rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 39 health care facilities. 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56 laboratories acid-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 229, 2011 V3: 42 - 46acid-waste treatment, 2010 V2: 235, 2011 V3: 43 - 44continuous acid-waste treatment systems, 2010 V2: 236 discharge to sewers, 2011 V3: 43-44 health and safety concerns, 2010 V2: 229-230 large facilities, 2010 V2: 235 metering, 2011 V3: 45 piping and joint material, 2010 V2: 232-234 sink traps, 2011 V3: 45-46 solids interceptors, 2011 V3: 45 system design considerations, 2010 V2: 234-235 types of acids, 2010 V2: 230-232 waste and vent piping, 2011 V3: 46 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 classroom water demand, 2011 V3: 46 compressed air use factors, 2011 V3: 182 defined, 2011 V3: 76 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 distilled water use, 2008 V4: 212 emergency eyewash and showers, 2011 V3: 36, 41 fixtures and pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 228 gas service outlets, 2011 V3: 41-42 gas systems. See laboratory gas systems grades of water for, 2008 V4: 219 in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 41-42 infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 240-241 lab animals, 2010 V2: 241 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 121 plastic pipes, 2008 V4: 48

pure water systems for, 2010 V2: 218-219, 2011 V3: 48 radioactive isotopes in, 2010 V2: 235 sinks as submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 vacuum systems codes and standards, 2010 V2: 172 diversity factor calculations for vacuums, 2010 V2: 176 leakage, 2010 V2: 177, 178 piping, 2010 V2: 173 pump assemblies, 2010 V2: 173 sizing, 2010 V2: 174-176 vacuum-pump systems, 2011 V3: 65 water systems filtration, 2010 V2: 201 laboratory compressed air (LA), 2009 V1: 8 laboratory gas systems cleaning and sterilizing pipes, 2011 V3: 277 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 263 components alarms, 2011 V3: 275 compressor inlet piping, 2011 V3: 280 cylinders, 2011 V3: 267-268 dewers, 2011 V3: 268 distribution system components, 2011 V3: 270–276 filters and purifiers, 2011 V3: 273 flash arresters, 2011 V3: 273 flow meters, 2011 V3: 275 gas cabinets, 2011 V3: 268-270 gas mixers, 2011 V3: 276 gas warmers, 2011 V3: 275 gauges, 2011 V3: 273 joints, 2011 V3: 277 pipes and piping, 2011 V3: 276-280 purge devices, 2011 V3: 275 shutoff valves, 2011 V3: 274 valves, 2011 V3: 273-274 generating gases, 2011 V3: 270 grades of gases, 2011 V3: 267 overview, 2011 V3: 263 pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 277-280 pressure, 2011 V3: 276 sizing, 2011 V3: 275-276 specialty gas classifications, 2011 V3: 266-267 storage and generation, 2011 V3: 267-270 testing and purging, 2011 V3: 280 toxic and flammable gas monitoring, 2011 V3: 275-276 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218, 219 laboratory outlets, 2009 V1: 25 laboratory service panels, 2010 V2: 121 Laboratory Testing on the Noise Emitted by Valves, Fittings, and Appliances Used in Water Supply Installations, 2009 V1: 206 Laboratory Tests on Noise Emission by Appliances and Equipment Used in Water Supply Installations, 2009 V1: 193 laboratory vacuum (LV), 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 170 LaCrosse encephalitis, 2010 V2: 49 ladders aboveground storage tanks, 2011 V3: 148 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 134-135 lagging (pipe wrappings), 2008 V4: 108 lagoons, 2010 V2: 150 lakes, 2010 V2: 24

Index

LAL test, 2010 V2: 188 laminar flow devices, 2011 V3: 35 laminar flow in pipes, 2009 V1: 2, 2010 V2: 74 landscaping irrigation. See irrigation systems landslides, 2009 V1: 149 lanes in swimming pools, 2011 V3: 107 Langelier saturation index (LSI), 2010 V2: 196, 2011 V3: 128Langelier, W.F., 2010 V2: 196 lap joint welds, 2008 V4: 61 Laque, F.L., 2009 V1: 144 large buildings acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 235 fixture drainage loads, 2010 V2: 3 high-rise buildings, 2010 V2: 126 large private sewage-disposal systems, 150, 2010 V2: 149 pipe expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 227, 229 Provent single-stack plumbing systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 Sovent single-stack plumbing systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 valves in systems, 2008 V4: 90 large-drop sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 large-scale biohazard facilities, 2010 V2: 241 laser machines, 2008 V4: 189 latent heat (LH, LHEAT), 2009 V1: 128, 2011 V3: 157, 162 lateral and longitudinal motion, 2008 V4: 119, 124 lateral and longitudinal sway bracing, 2009 V1: 175-176, 178-179, 2008 V4: 138 lateral force calculating for seismic protection, 2009 V1: 174 defined, 2009 V1: 185 lateral lines, 2011 V3: 78 lateral sewers, 2009 V1: 25 lateral stability defined, 2008 V4: 138 of suspended equipment, 2009 V1: 157 laundry machines. See laundry systems and washers laundry sinks or trays, 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 13 laundry systems and washers accessibility, 2009 V1: 115 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 clothes washer fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 gray water use, 2009 V1: 126, 2010 V2: 21 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 39 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 laundry sinks and clothes washers, 2008 V4: 13 laundry tray fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 199, 200 rates of sewage flows, 2010 V2: 152 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 suds problems, 2010 V2: 37-38 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 water softening, 2008 V4: 205 water temperatures, 2011 V3: 47 lavatories (lav). See also sinks and wash basins abbreviations for, 2009 V1: 15 accessibility, 2009 V1: 108-109 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 chase size, 2008 V4: 11 faucets and overflows, 2008 V4: 10, 13

fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 flow rates, 2008 V4: 10 graywater systems, 2009 V1: 126, 2010 V2: 23 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35, 36, 40 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 installation requirements, 2008 V4: 10-11 LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 minimum numbers of, 2008 V4: 18-21 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 198 patient rooms, 2011 V3: 37 poor installations of, 2009 V1: 259 recovery rooms, 2011 V3: 39 reduced water usage, 2009 V1: 118 shapes and sizes, 2008 V4: 10 standards, 2008 V4: 2 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 swimming pool facilities, 2011 V3: 109 temperatures, 2011 V3: 47 typical graywater supply, 2010 V2: 23-24 typical use, 2010 V2: 23 Law of Inverse Proportions, 2009 V1: 218 lawn imperviousness factors, 2011 V3: 239 lawn sprinkler supply (LS), 2009 V1: 8 lawn sprinklers. See irrigation systems; sprinkler systems (irrigation) lawsuits moisture problems, 2009 V1: 263 noise-related. 2009 V1: 263 plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 187 layer-type dezincification, 2009 V1: 131 layers of effluent in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 layers of fill, 2010 V2: 14 lb, LBS (pounds). See pounds leaching trenches. See soil-absorption sewage systems leaching wells. See dry wells lead corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 joint seals, 2008 V4: 24, 25 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 in older plumbing system solder, 2008 V4: 242-243 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 lead-absorbant filters, 2008 V4: 243 lead and oakum joints, 2008 V4: 61 lead-free solders, 2008 V4: 62 lead-lined concrete blocks, 2010 V2: 238 lead-lined lath for plaster, 2010 V2: 238 lead piping, 2010 V2: 75 lead shielding on radioactive drainage systems, 2010 V2: 238lead-tin solders, 2009 V1: 132 leaders. See downspouts and leaders; vertical stacks Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED), 2009 V1: 32 leaf design filters, 2008 V4: 204 leakage clean agent gas fire suppression, 2011 V3: 27 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 183 electrical leakage, 2008 V4: 120

eliminating, 2009 V1: 126 gas cabinets, 2011 V3: 268 leaking oil into water, 2010 V2: 244-246 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133-134 waste anesthetic gas management, 2011 V3: 66 water conservation and, 2009 V1: 117 leakage detection aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 148-149 chemical wastes, 2010 V2: 243 connectors, 2011 V3: 148-149 industrial waste, 2011 V3: 84 infectious waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 241 ion exchange systems, 2010 V2: 210 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 227 underground liquid fuel storage tanks, 2011 V3: 141-145 leakage detection cables, 2008 V4: 60 leakage tests cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 90 private water systems, 2010 V2: 164 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 152-154 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 177, 178 lecture halls, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), 2009 V1: 32, 263, 2008 V4: 2-3, 255, 257-258, 265 LEED 2009 baselines, plumbing fixtures, 2010 V2: 25 solar energy credits, 2011 V3: 190 wastewater reuse certification, 2010 V2: 21 leg baths, 2010 V2: 99, 2011 V3: 36, 38, 40 leg clearances drinking fountains and water coolers, 2009 V1: 104 toilet and bathing rooms, 2009 V1: 105 Legionella pneumophila, 2010 V2: 97, 108-111, 2011 V3: 196, 2008 V4: 220 Legionellae Control in Health Care Facilities, 2010 V2: 108 - 109legislation regarding people with disabilities, 2009 V1: 98 - 99legs in piping systems, 2011 V3: 48 legs on tanks cast-iron tank legs, 2009 V1: 154 problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 182, 183 Lehr, Valentine A., 2010 V2: 29 LEL gases (lower explosive level), 2011 V3: 266 length (lg, LG, L) conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 in measurements, 2009 V1: 33 of stacks, 2009 V1: 3 total developed length in pipes, 2008 V4: 229 of vent piping, 2009 V1: 3 letters of service requests (gas), 2010 V2: 114 Level 1, 2, and 3 gas and vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 34-35 level control systems, 2011 V3: 131-133 level control valves, 2008 V4: 82 Level I vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 78 Level III alarm systems, 2011 V3: 76 Level III vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 78 level-sensing systems, 2011 V3: 131-133 level sensors hazardous materials, 2011 V3: 84 tank gauges, 2011 V3: 141 leveling bolts, 2008 V4: 150 levels in water tanks, 2010 V2: 163

levels of radiation, 2010 V2: 237 Lewis, G.N., 2009 V1: 142 LF (linear feet), 2009 V1: 15 lg, LG (length). See length LH (latent heat), 2009 V1: 128 LHEAT (latent heat), 2009 V1: 128 libraries, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 life-cycle costs, 2009 V1: 128 life hooks, 2011 V3: 135 life rings, 2011 V3: 135 life safety in fire protection, 2011 V3: 1 lift check valves, 2008 V4: 74, 77, 83 lift station pumps, 2008 V4: 99 lifts of fill, 2010 V2: 14 light brackets, 2008 V4: 138 light conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 light energy, defined, 2011 V3: 188-189 light hazard occupancies defined, 2009 V1: 29, 2011 V3: 2 firefighting hose streams, 2011 V3: 225 portable fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 29 light heating oil, 2011 V3: 136 light process gas service, 2011 V3: 251–252 light service gas, 2010 V2: 114 light wall pipe (Schedule 10), 2008 V4: 48 lighting protection, 2010 V2: 125 lights, underwater, 2011 V3: 135 lightwall pipes, 2011 V3: 13 lime (calcium carbonate). See scale and scale formation lime-soda method of water softening, 2010 V2: 160, 210 lime stabilization, biosolids, 2008 V4: 264 limestone calcium carbonate, 2008 V4: 193 defined, 2008 V4: 223 limestone chips, 2010 V2: 235 limit stops, 2008 V4: 138 limited-care facilities, 2011 V3: 34, 76 limited-discharge roof drains, 2011 V3: 250 limiting conditions in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 183, 184 limulus amoebocyte lysate test, 2010 V2: 188 Lin, S.H., 2010 V2: 225 Linaweaver, F.P., 2010 V2: 29 lindane levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 line-pressure sensors, 2011 V3: 67 line regulators, 2011 V3: 254 linear acceleration conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 linear expansion in ABS pipe, 2008 V4: 54 in fiberglass pipe, 2008 V4: 56 linear coefficients of thermal expansion, 2008 V4: 227 of materials, 2008 V4: 232-233 in PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 53 linear feet (lin ft, LF), 2009 V1: 15 linear velocity measurements, 2009 V1: 34 lined steel storage tanks and hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 sulfuric acid and, 2011 V3: 85 linen holding areas, 2011 V3: 36

Index

liners, defined, 2008 V4: 138 lining materials for dug wells, 2010 V2: 156 Linstedt, K.C., 2010 V2: 154 lint interceptors, 2011 V3: 39 lint strainers, 2011 V3: 114, 124 liquefaction, 2009 V1: 149 liquefied petroleum gas (LPG). See also fuel-gas piping systems abbreviations for, 2009 V1: 15 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43 defined, 2010 V2: 136 design considerations, 2010 V2: 134-135 environmental impacts, 2010 V2: 131 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125-128 glossary, 2010 V2: 135-136 overview, 2010 V2: 131 physical properties, 2010 V2: 113 pipes, 2008 V4: 30-31 pressures, 2010 V2: 115 propane regulators, 2010 V2: 132-133 sizing systems, 2010 V2: 135 sniffer systems, 2010 V2: 135 specific gravity, 2010 V2: 131 storage, 2010 V2: 131-134 valves for systems, 2008 V4: 89 vaporization requirements, 2010 V2: 134 Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code (NFPA 58), 2010 V2: 115, 132-133, 137 liquid contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 173, 264 - 265liquid fuel systems. See diesel-oil systems; gasoline systems liquid monitoring, 2011 V3: 143 liquid oxygen (LO₂, LOX) defined, 2011 V3: 77 fire hazards, 2011 V3: 57 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 58 symbol, 2009 V1: 8 liquid petroleum, 2011 V3: 136 liquid piston compressors, 2011 V3: 175 liquid ring compressors, 2011 V3: 62, 175 liquid ring pumps, 171, 2010 V2: 169, 170, 173 liquid solar systems, 2011 V3: 192 liquid waste decontamination systems, 2010 V2: 241-242 defined, 2009 V1: 25 levels in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 liquid withdrawal valves propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 liquids, vacuuming, 2010 V2: 178 listed, defined, 2009 V1: 25 listing agencies, 2009 V1: 25 listings, product, cross-connection control, 2008 V4: 176 liters converting to gallons units, 2011 V3: 30 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 liters per minute (L/min, Lpm), 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 187 liters per second (L/s), 2011 V3: 187 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 litigious society, impact on engineers, 2008 V4: 117 live loads on roofs, 2010 V2: 51 lm (lumens), 2009 V1: 34

LO (lubricating oil), 2009 V1: 8, 2010 V2: 12 LO₂ (liquid oxygen). See liquid oxygen load adjustment scales, 2008 V4: 138 load bolts or pins. 2008 V4: 138 load couplings, 2008 V4: 138 load indicators, 2008 V4: 138 load rates, storm water infiltration, 2010 V2: 48 load ratings carbon steel threaded hanger rods, 2008 V4: 132 concrete inserts, 2008 V4: 135 defined, 2008 V4: 138 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 134 suspended equipment supports, 2009 V1: 258 load scales, 2008 V4: 138 load variations, 2008 V4: 138 loading influences for bioremediation, 2008 V4: 251 loading tables fixture-unit values in drainage systems, 2010 V2: 3 vertical stacks, 2010 V2: 4 loads. See also pipe loads; support and hanger loads computer analysis of loads, 2009 V1: 180 connected loads, defined, 2010 V2: 136 design considerations in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 180 - 182horizontal loads of piping, 2009 V1: 177 live loads on roof, 2010 V2: 51 load factors, defined, 2009 V1: 25 settlement loads, 2009 V1: 180 sway bracing, 2009 V1: 178-179 vertical seismic load, 2009 V1: 177 loams, 2011 V3: 91 local alarms, 2011 V3: 76. See also area alarms local application systems (carbon dioxide), 2011 V3: 26 local authorities, 2010 V2: 24, 227 local barometric pressure in vacuums, 2010 V2: 166 local rainfall rate tables, 2010 V2: 57 localized corrosion, 2010 V2: 195 location of piping, earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 159 locations of hangers. See cold hanger location; hot hanger locations lock-out regulators, 2011 V3: 255 lock-up periods, 2008 V4: 138 locker rooms, 2011 V3: 36 Loeb, S., 2008 V4: 224 Loevenguth, 2009 V1: 185 long runs in vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 185 long-turn tee-wyes, 2010 V2: 4 longest length gas pipe sizing method, 2010 V2: 130 longitudinal bracing, 2008 V4: 138 defined, 2009 V1: 185 longitudinal and transverse bracing, 2009 V1: 173 longitudinal brace points, 2009 V1: 160 longitudinal-only bracing, 2009 V1: 173 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 165 sway bracing, 2009 V1: 178 longitudinal forces, 2009 V1: 185 longitudinal motion expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 228 hangers and supports. 2008 V4: 119, 124 Lonsdale, H., 2008 V4: 224 Looking to Treat Wastewater? Try Ozone, 2010 V2: 225 loop systems

expansion loops, 2008 V4: 228-229 fire mains, 2011 V3: 6 loop vents, 2009 V1: 26, 31, 2010 V2: 32, 33, 2011 V3: 46 LOV (lubricating oil vents), 2009 V1: 8 low-alkalinity water, 2008 V4: 198 low backflow hazard, 2011 V3: 215 low-demand classifications, 2010 V2: 100 low-expansion borosilicate glass, 2008 V4: 48 low-expansion foams, 2011 V3: 25 low-extractable PVC piping, 2008 V4: 56 low-flow fixtures low-flow control valves, 2011 V3: 95 low-flush toilets and water closets, 2009 V1: 126 water conservation estimates, 2009 V1: 117 low-flow shutdown systems, 2010 V2: 63 low-flow toilets fixture drain flow, 2010 V2: 2 low-flush toilets and water closets, 2009 V1: 126 low-pressure carbon dioxide systems, 2011 V3: 26 low-pressure condensate (LPC), 2009 V1: 9 low-pressure cutouts, 2008 V4: 243-244 low-pressure gas (G), 2009 V1: 8 low-pressure gas cutoffs, 2010 V2: 118 low-pressure natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 113-125 low-pressure steam (lps, LPS), 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 87-88 low-pressure tanks, 2011 V3: 136 low-suction-pressure switches, 2010 V2: 63 low-temperature foam, 2011 V3: 25 lower explosive level gases (LEL), 2011 V3: 266 lower order functions, 2009 V1: 221 Lowther plate units, 2010 V2: 214 LP-Gas Serviceman's Manual, 2010 V2: 137 LPC (low-pressure condensate), 2009 V1: 9 lpg. See liquefied petroleum gas Lpm (liters per minute). See liters lps, LPS (low-pressure steam), 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 87-88 LS (lawn sprinkler supply), 2009 V1: 8 LSI (Langelier saturation index), 2010 V2: 196 LT. See laundry sinks or trays lubricated plug cocks, 2008 V4: 84-85 lubricating oil (LO), 2009 V1: 8, 2010 V2: 12, 2008 V4: 62 lubricating oil vents (LOV), 2009 V1: 8 lubrication, direct connection hazards and, 2008 V4: 184 lubricators in compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 184 lug plates, 2008 V4: 128 lug-style valves, 2008 V4: 84 lugs, 2008 V4: 128, 138 lumens, 2009 V1: 34 luminance measurements, 2009 V1: 34 luminous flux, 2009 V1: 34 luminous measurements, 2009 V1: 34 lux, 2009 V1: 34 LV (laboratory vacuum), 2009 V1: 9 LWDS (liquid-waste decontamination systems), 2010 V2: 241 - 242lx (lux), 2009 V1: 34 lye. See sodium hydroxide (lye or caustic soda) lysing, 2008 V4: 215

Μ

m (meters). See meters (measurements)

M alkalinity, 2010 V2: 189 M piping. See Type M copper M (mega) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 m (milli) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 m/s (meters per second), 2009 V1: 34 m/s^2 (meters per second squared), 2009 V1: 34 m² (meters squared), 2009 V1: 34 m²/s (meters squared per second), 2009 V1: 34 m³ (cubic meters), 2009 V1: 34 m³/kg (cubic meters per kilogram), 2009 V1: 34 m³/min (cubic meters per minute), 2011 V3: 172 m³/s (cubic meters per second), 2009 V1: 34 MΩ (mega ohms), 2008 V4: 212 MA. See medical compressed air macadam pavement runoff, 2010 V2: 42 MacHatton, J.G., 2010 V2: 154 machine trenching, labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87-88 magnesia, 2008 V4: 193 magnesite, 2008 V4: 193 magnesium corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 defined, 2008 V4: 223 dry-power extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 in hardness, 2008 V4: 198 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 lifespan of anodes, 2009 V1: 138 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 sacrificial anodes, 2009 V1: 137 in water, 2010 V2: 189, 190 water hardness and, 2008 V4: 196 zeolite process and, 2010 V2: 160 magnesium alloys, 2009 V1: 132 magnesium bicarbonate, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 193 magnesium carbonate, 2010 V2: 189, 190, 196, 2008 V4: 193 magnesium chloride, 2010 V2: 190 magnesium hydroxide, 2010 V2: 189 magnesium oxide, 2008 V4: 193 magnesium salts, 2008 V4: 196 magnesium sulfate, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 193 magnetic drive meters, 2010 V2: 88 magnetic field strength measurements, 2009 V1: 34 magnetic flux density, 2009 V1: 34 magnetic flux measurements, 2009 V1: 34 magnetism, conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 magnetostrictive tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 main drain piping, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 112, 132 main relief valves, 2011 V3: 22 main shut-off valves, 2011 V3: 66 main vents, 2009 V1: 26, 2010 V2: 37 mains. See also water mains defined, 2009 V1: 26, 2011 V3: 78 fire mains, 2011 V3: 6 force mains, 2011 V3: 225, 229, 234-235 natural gas mains, 2011 V3: 256 pipe, 2009 V1: 12 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 228 maintenance costs, 2009 V1: 217 fountains and pools, 2011 V3: 98

grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 165-166 pumps, 2008 V4: 100 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63-64, 71 stills, 2008 V4: 212, 218 storm drainage, 2010 V2: 48-49 maintenance hot-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 105-106 major or prime costs, 2009 V1: 217 makeshift installations, 2009 V1: 254-257, 263-264 makeup, 2009 V1: 128 makeup water systems, 2008 V4: 246 malleable (mall), defined, 2009 V1: 26 malleable iron rings, 2008 V4: 126 malleable iron valves, 2008 V4: 79 malls, 2010 V2: 24, 2008 V4: 19 Management of Small Waste Flows, 2010 V2: 29 Manas, Vincent T., 2010 V2: 55 manganese, 2010 V2: 160, 198, 2008 V4: 186, 187, 193 manholes acid manholes, 2011 V3: 231 acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 233, 235 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 243 cleanouts, 2011 V3: 234 defined, 2009 V1: 26 drop manholes, 2011 V3: 228, 232 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 161 MH abbreviation, 2009 V1: 15 precast manholes, 2011 V3: 226, 230 sampling manholes, 2011 V3: 45 sanitary sewer systems, 2011 V3: 226-228, 230 shallow manholes, 2011 V3: 228, 232 spacing, 2011 V3: 233 steps and covers, 2011 V3: 228 storm drainage, 2010 V2: 48-49 venting, 2011 V3: 228, 233 waterproof manholes, 2011 V3: 228, 233 manifolds compressed air, 2011 V3: 61 laboratory high-purity gas systems, 2011 V3: 270-271 nitrogen systems, 2011 V3: 64, 65 nitrous oxide systems, 2011 V3: 59-60, 61 oxygen, 2011 V3: 57, 59, 60 purging, 2011 V3: 275 manmade environmental conditions, 2008 V4: 120 Manning formula alternative sewage-disposal systems, 2010 V2: 144 circular pipes, 2011 V3: 226 ditches, 2011 V3: 250 open-channel flow, 2009 V1: 1, 2010 V2: 6, 7 sloping drains, 2010 V2: 7, 2011 V3: 224 storm-drainage pipes, 2011 V3: 242 manual butterfly valves, 2011 V3: 125 manual chlorinators, 2008 V4: 201 manual-control irrigation valves, 2011 V3: 94 manual controls on ion exchangers, 2008 V4: 197 manual dry standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20 manual flushometer valves, 2008 V4: 8 manual grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 159 Manual of Practice introduction, 2009 V1: 55 section shell outline, 2009 V1: 68-72 Uniformat, 2009 V1: 58

Manual of Septic Tank Practice, 2010 V2: 152 Manual on the Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers, 2010 V2: 55 manual overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 148 manual overrides, 2011 V3: 94 manual pull stations, 2011 V3: 24 manual release stations, 2011 V3: 28 manual tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 manual trap primers, 2010 V2: 11 manual wet standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20 manufacturers noise mitigation features of products, 2009 V1: 202-203, 205-206 in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 71 Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc. (MSS) ANSI standards and, 2008 V4: 73 MSS abbreviation, 2009 V1: 32, 52 SP-25: Standard Marking System for Values, Fittings, Flanges and Unions, 2008 V4: 73 SP-42: Class 150 Corrosion Resistant Cast Flanged Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-67: Butterfly Valves, 2008 V4: 73, 86, 87, 90 SP-70: Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 73, 85, 87, 88, 90 SP-71: Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 73, 86, 88, 90 SP-72: Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service, 2008 V4: 73 SP-73: Brazing Joints for Copper and Copper Alloy Pressure Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 SP-78: Cast Iron Plug Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-80: Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves, 2008 V4: 73, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89 SP-81: Stainless Steel, Bonnetless, Flanged, Wafer, Knife Gate Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-85: Cast Iron Globe and Angle Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-85: Cast Iron Values, 2008 V4: 85, 88, 89 SP-110: Ball Valves, 2008 V4: 73, 86, 87, 90 valve approvals, 2008 V4: 73 Manufacturing, 2008 V4: 28 manufacturing facilities, 2011 V3: 81, 2008 V4: 245 manways in tanks, 2011 V3: 139, 145, 150, 2008 V4: 252 maps frost lines, 2011 V3: 218 seismic risk maps, 2009 V1: 145-146 soils, 2010 V2: 140 marble acrylic fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 marble as calcium carbonate, 2008 V4: 193 marble fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 mark-ups, in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85-86, 86 markets in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 sanitation in, 2010 V2: 15 markings, corrosion and, 2009 V1: 136 Marks, Lionel S., 2009 V1: 1, 2, 3, 5, 39, 2008 V4: 69 martensitic stainless steel, 2008 V4: 59 Maryland Department of the Environment, 2010 V2: 55 Maryland Stormwater Design Manual, 2010 V2: 55 mass conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36

mass per unit area measurements, 2009 V1: 34

mass per unit length measurements, 2009 V1: 34 in measurements, 2009 V1: 33 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 mass flow, 2010 V2: 166 mass flow meters, 2011 V3: 177, 275 mass flow rates (mfr, MFR), 2009 V1: 34 massive soil structure, 141, 2010 V2: 140 master alarms defined, 2011 V3: 76 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 50, 67, 75 master plumbers, 2009 V1: 26 MasterFormat comparisons and changes in 2004, 2009 V1: 59-60 defined, 2009 V1: 58 specifications sections, 2009 V1: 62-65 MasterFormat 2004, 2009 V1: 58-60, 72-83 MasterFormat expansion task team (MFETT), 2009 V1: 58 MasterFormat Level Four (1995), 2009 V1: 68-69 MasterFormat Level One (1995), 2009 V1: 66 MasterFormat Level Three (1995), 2009 V1: 68 MasterFormat Level Two (1995), 2009 V1: 66-68 Masterspec, 2009 V1: 65 mastic, 2008 V4: 107 mat zones in grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 155 material costs defined, 2009 V1: 210 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 in take-off estimating method, 2009 V1: 86 in value engineering, 2009 V1: 208 material safety data sheets, 2009 V1: 15 industrial wastes, 2011 V3: 83 laboratory gas, 2011 V3: 263 materials. See also specific materials or system fixtures detail/product/material specification checklist, 2009 V1: 215 fixtures, 2008 V4: 1-2 materials section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 71 ongoing and one-time costs, 2009 V1: 217 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 quality choices, 2009 V1: 254 sprinkler system piping (fire protection), 2011 V3: 20 storm-drainage systems, 2011 V3: 238 value engineering questions, 2009 V1: 209 materials expansion, 2008 V4: 232-233 materials section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 71 maximum allowable stress and strain, 2008 V4: 228-229 maximum considered earthquake motion, 2009 V1: 147 maximum contaminant levels (MCL), 2008 V4: 186 maximum design flow, 2010 V2: 127 maximum discharge pressure, defined, 2011 V3: 186 maximum discharge rates, 2009 V1: 5 maximum flow rates for fixtures, 2008 V4: 207 maximum outlet pressure in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 128 maximum probably demand, 2009 V1: 26 maximum resistance values, 2010 V2: 192-193 mbars (millibars), 2010 V2: 166 mc (millicuries), 2010 V2: 237 McAlister, Roy, 2011 V3: 203 McClelland, Nina I., 2010 V2: 154 MCE (maximum considered earthquake motion), 2009 V1: 147 Mcf, MCF (thousand cubic feet), 2009 V1: 15

MCL (maximum contaminant levels), 2008 V4: 186 McSweeney, D.P., 2010 V2: 186 MDPE (medium density) 2406 pipe, 2008 V4: 51 MEA (New York City Materials and Equipment Acceptance Division), 2008 V4: 90 meadow, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 measurable nouns in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218, 219 measurement units compressed air, 2011 V3: 187 converting, 2011 V3: 30 flow rates, 2010 V2: 166 International System of Units, 2009 V1: 33-39 microorganisms, 2010 V2: 188 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 pressure, 2011 V3: 187 pure water, 2011 V3: 47 radiation, 2010 V2: 237 types of conversions, 2009 V1: 33 units and symbols, 2009 V1: 33 usage of, 2010 V2: 165-166 vacuum pressure, 2010 V2: 166 water impurities, 2010 V2: 191 measuring tank leakage, 2011 V3: 141-145 Measuring Water Purity by Specific Resistance, 2010 V2: 225 mechanical aerators, 2010 V2: 198 mechanical areas fountain equipment location, 2011 V3: 98-99 sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 11 trap primers in drains, 2010 V2: 12 mechanical clarifiers, 2008 V4: 201, 202 mechanical code agencies, 2009 V1: 42 mechanical couplings, 2008 V4: 65, 67 mechanical efficiency, defined, 2011 V3: 186 mechanical emulsions, 2011 V3: 88 Mechanical Engineering Reference Manual, 2010 V2: 136 mechanical equipment rooms (MER), 2009 V1: 15 mechanical foam extinguishers, 2011 V3: 25-26 mechanical joints, 2009 V1: 160, 2011 V3: 42, 221, 2008 V4: 60, 62 mechanical rooms as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 188 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 158 mechanical rotary-type vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 169 mechanical snubbers, 2008 V4: 138 mechanical steam traps, 2011 V3: 162 mechanical sway bracing, 2008 V4: 138 mechanical tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 mechanically-dispersed oil, 2010 V2: 244 Meckler, Milton, 2009 V1: 39 media (biofilms), 2008 V4: 250-251 media rate, filter, 2011 V3: 111 medical air systems. See also medical compressed air (MA) color coding, 2011 V3: 55 concentrations, 2011 V3: 76 defined, 2011 V3: 76-77 medical compressed air (MA) altitude and, 2011 V3: 63 compressors, 2011 V3: 50, 77 storage, 2011 V3: 61-64 surgical use, 2011 V3: 56 symbol, 2009 V1: 8 system description, 2011 V3: 61-62

peak demand, 2011 V3: 53 pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 68-69 stations, 2011 V3: 51, 52-53 testing, 2011 V3: 75-76 medical cabinets, 2009 V1: 105 medical compressed air (MA) altitude and, 2011 V3: 63 compressors, 2011 V3: 50, 77 storage, 2011 V3: 61-64 surgical use, 2011 V3: 56 symbol, 2009 V1: 8 system description, 2011 V3: 61-62 medical gas systems certification, 74-76, 2011 V3: 69 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 76 color coding, 2011 V3: 51, 55 design checklist, 2011 V3: 50 dispensing equipment, 2011 V3: 51-54 diversity factors, 2011 V3: 70 earthquake bracing for, 2009 V1: 158 gas flow rates, 2011 V3: 51 gas storage, 2011 V3: 57-61 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 50-76 levels, 2011 V3: 34-35 number of stations, 2011 V3: 51 piping, 2011 V3: 68-76 system control valves, 2011 V3: 66-67 typical storage layout, 2011 V3: 58 valves for, 2008 V4: 87 warning systems, 2011 V3: 67 waste anesthetic gas management, 2011 V3: 65-66 medical-gas tube, 2011 V3: 69, 74, 2008 V4: 42 medical-grade water, 2008 V4: 56 medical laboratories. See health care facilities; laboratories medical schools. See health care facilities medical vacuum (MV), 2009 V1: 9 medical waste systems. See infectious and biological waste systems Medicare taxes, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 medicine sinks, 2011 V3: 38 medium-backflow hazard, 2011 V3: 215 medium brackets, 2008 V4: 138 medium-demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99, 100 medium-expansion foams, 2011 V3: 25 medium-pressure condensate (MPC), 2009 V1: 9 medium-pressure gas (MG), 2009 V1: 8, 2010 V2: 113-125 medium-pressure steam (mps, MPS), 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 88 medium vacuum, 2010 V2: 165 mega-ohm-cm, 2010 V2: 193, 2008 V4: 195 mega-ohms (MΩ), 2008 V4: 212 "mega" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 membrane filtration cross-flow filters, 2010 V2: 201, 213 graywater systems, 2010 V2: 25 in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 48 membrane flux, 2010 V2: 211 membrane productivity, 2010 V2: 221 membrane selection in reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 213 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 196 overview, 2010 V2: 211-213 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221

reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 211-213, 2008 V4: 216-217 tangential-flow filters, 2010 V2: 201 total dissolved solids and, 2010 V2: 194 types of membranes, 2008 V4: 219 membrane flux, 2010 V2: 211 membrane productivity, 2010 V2: 221 Membrane Technologies in the Power Industry, 2010 V2: 224 membranes in waterproofing, 2010 V2: 16 memory metal couplings, 2011 V3: 69 MER (mechanical equipment rooms), 2009 V1: 15 mercantile facilities numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 single-occupant toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 18 mercury (Hg, HG), 2008 V4: 186, 187 mercury vapor lamps, 2010 V2: 213, 2008 V4: 216 Mermel, H., 2010 V2: 246 Meslar, H.W., 2010 V2: 246 metal flashing on roof drains, 2010 V2: 49 metal isolation, 2009 V1: 258 metallic hose, 2008 V4: 151 metallic inert gas (MIG), 2008 V4: 63 metallic pipes. See also specific metals bedding, 2011 V3: 225-226, 227 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 49 metals. See also specific metals corrosion losses, 2009 V1: 129 galvanic series table, 2009 V1: 132 metallic coatings, 2009 V1: 136 removing in effluent, 2008 V4: 249 safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 Metcalf, 2010 V2: 154 meter-reading equipment, 2010 V2: 116 meter set assemblies, 2010 V2: 136 meters (gas) installation, 2010 V2: 115-116 meter-reading equipment, 2010 V2: 116 outlet pressures, 2010 V2: 115 meters (general devices) acid wastes, 2011 V3: 45 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 natural gas, 2010 V2: 115-177, 2011 V3: 252, 254 meters (measurements) converting units, 2011 V3: 30 meters, 2009 V1: 34 meters of head, 2009 V1: 2 meters per second, 2009 V1: 34 meters per second squared, 2009 V1: 34 meters squared, 2009 V1: 34 meters squared per second, 2009 V1: 34 meters (water) domestic cold water systems, 2010 V2: 59-60 flow pressure loss tables, 2010 V2: 61 irrigation, 2011 V3: 95-96 irrigation systems and, 2011 V3: 95-96 meter readings, 2008 V4: 208 pressure and, 2010 V2: 84 pressure losses, 2011 V3: 216 methane, 2010 V2: 114, 2008 V4: 193. See also fuel-gas piping systems Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-like Combustion of Plastics (ASTM D2863), 2011 V3: 77

Methods of Estimating Loads in Plumbing Systems, 2010 V2: 95-96 Methods of Testing for Rating Drinking Water Coolers with Self-Contained Mechanical Refrigeration Systems, 2008 V4: 243 methoxychlor, 2008 V4: 186, 187 methoxyflurane, 2011 V3: 66 methyl orange alkalinity, 2010 V2: 189 Metric Conversion Act, 2009 V1: 33 metric hangers, 2008 V4: 138 metric tons, 2009 V1: 34 metric units. See International System of Units Meyers, Vance A., 2010 V2: 55 Meyrick, C.E., 2010 V2: 225 MFETT (MasterFormat expansion task team), 2009 V1: 58 mfr, MFR (mass flow rates), 2009 V1: 34 MG (medium-pressure gas), 2009 V1: 8 mg/L (milligrams per liter), 2010 V2: 191 MGD (million gallons per day), 2009 V1: 15 MH (manholes). See manholes mho (specific conductivity), 2010 V2: 193 "micro" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 microbial growth and control. See also bacteria; microorganisms; viruses cooling towers, 2010 V2: 217 drinking water, 2010 V2: 217 feed water, 2010 V2: 220 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 222 utility water, 2010 V2: 215 water softeners, 2010 V2: 210, 211 water treatments, 2010 V2: 213-214 microbiological fouling of water, 2010 V2: 195, 217 microbiological laboratories, 2010 V2: 241. See also laboratories micrometers, vacuum units, 2010 V2: 166 micromhos, 2010 V2: 193 microns, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 microorganisms. See also bacteria; microbial growth and control; viruses biofilms, 2008 V4: 250-251 bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250-251 chlorination systems, 2008 V4: 199-201 infectious waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 240-241 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 222, 2011 V3: 49 safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 ultraviolet light and, 2008 V4: 216 water analysis of, 2010 V2: 188 water treatments, 2010 V2: 213-214, 218 microscopes, electron, 2011 V3: 40, 42, 47, 52 microsiemens (µS), 2008 V4: 212 Midwest Insulation Contractors Association, 2008 V4: 116 MIG (metallic inert gas), 2008 V4: 63 miles converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 miles per hour (mph, MPH), 2009 V1: 15 Miles, Lawrence D., 2009 V1: 252 mill galvanization, 2008 V4: 138 Millepore filters, 2010 V2: 194 "milli" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 millibars (mbar) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39

vacuum units, 2010 V2: 166 millicuries (mc), 2010 V2: 237 milligrams per liter (mg/L), 2010 V2: 191 millimeters converting to inches, 2011 V3: 30 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 million gallons per day (MGD), 2009 V1: 15 millirems (mrem), 2010 V2: 237 Mills, Lawrence E., 2009 V1: 209 min (minutes), 2009 V1: 34 min., MIN (minimum), 2009 V1: 15 mineral beds in water treatment, 2008 V4: 187 mineral fiber blankets, 2008 V4: 111 mineral salts, 2010 V2: 194, 196, 2008 V4: 197 mineral solids, 2010 V2: 195 minerals removing from water, 2008 V4: 195 in water, 2008 V4: 197 minimum (min., MIN), 2009 V1: 15 minimum design flow, 2010 V2: 127 Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures, 2009 V1: 147, 174, 185 minimum outlet pressure in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 128 Minimum Property Standards (HUD), 2009 V1: 99 Minnesota Urban Small Sites Best Management Practice Manual, 2010 V2: 42, 55 minor backflow hazards, 2011 V3: 215 minutes, 2009 V1: 34 mirrors, 2009 V1: 105 misaligned wells, pumps for, 2010 V2: 161 miscellaneous gases, 2011 V3: 77 mist, 2009 V1: 26 mist eliminators, 2010 V2: 200 mitigating noise drainage systems, 2009 V1: 189-190 fixtures and fixture outlets, 2009 V1: 193-194 valves, pumps and equipment, 2009 V1: 194-201 water distribution system noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190 - 193MIUS Technology Evaluation: Collection, Treatment and Disposal of Liquid Wastes, 2010 V2: 154 mixed-bed deionization (single-step), 2010 V2: 206, 208, 2011 V3: 48 mixed-flow pumps, 2008 V4: 93-96 mixes in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 mixing faucets, 2011 V3: 37 mixing flows of water conserving energy, 2009 V1: 118 mixed-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101 mixing stations, 2011 V3: 39 mobile home courts, 2008 V4: 208 mock-ups, 2009 V1: 264 moderate backflow hazard, 2011 V3: 215 Modern Vacuum Practice, 2010 V2: 186 modifications section in project manual, 2009 V1: 57 modulating valves, pneumatically operated main drain, 2011 V3: 131–132 Moffat, R., 2010 V2: 186 moisture problems, 2009 V1: 263 molded elastomer mounting, 2008 V4: 150 mole (mol), 2009 V1: 33 molecular sieve filters, 2011 V3: 273

molecular weights of elements, 2010 V2: 189 molybdenum-alloyed chromium-nickel steels, 2008 V4: 59 moments of inertia calculating, 2008 V4: 228 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 momentum measurements, 2009 V1: 34 monel, 2009 V1: 132, 2008 V4: 108 monitor-type intermediate gas regulators, 2011 V3: 255 monitoring aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 148-149 defined, 2009 V1: 26 ground water, 2011 V3: 143-144 underground liquid fuel storage tanks, 2011 V3: 141-145 monobed demineralizers, 2008 V4: 197 monochlorobenzene, 2008 V4: 186 monovalent ions laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 196, 220 Montana State University Center for Biofilm Engineering, 2008 V4: 253 Montgomery, R.H., 2011 V3: 203 monthly inventory tank tightness testing, 2011 V3: 143 Montreal Protocol, 2011 V3: 26 Moody, L. F., 2010 V2: 74 mop basins or sinks, 2009 V1: 199, 2010 V2: 23, 2011 V3: 36, 37, 2008 V4: 12 morgues and mortuaries, 2010 V2: 15 Moritz, A.R., 2010 V2: 111 mosquitoes, 2010 V2: 49 motels. See hotels motion in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 149-150 motor compressors, 2008 V4: 242 Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages Code (NFPA 30A), 2011 V3: 137 motor lubrication oil, 2011 V3: 136 motor-operated filter bag shakers, 2010 V2: 179 motor-operated valves, 2009 V1: 9 motors earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 157 pump motor controls, 2010 V2: 63-64 mounting. See also installation elastomer-cork mountings, 2008 V4: 150 fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 29 resilient mounts. See resilient mounts water closets, 2008 V4: 4 mounting natural frequency, 2008 V4: 149 movable gas appliances, 2010 V2: 124-125 MPC (medium-pressure condensate), 2009 V1: 9 mph, MPH (miles per hour), 2009 V1: 15 MPS (medium-pressure steam supply), 2009 V1: 9 mrem (millerems), 2010 V2: 237 MSDS (material safety data sheets), 2009 V1: 15, 2011 V3: 83 MSS. See Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc. (MSS) MU (viscosity), 2009 V1: 2, 34, 2011 V3: 136-137 mudballing in filters, 2008 V4: 203-204 Mudge, Arthur E., 2009 V1: 252

muds in feed water, 2010 V2: 195

mufflers on vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 64 multi-cell vertical high-rate sand filters, 2011 V3: 118 multi-effect distillation, 2010 V2: 200, 204, 2008 V4: 212 multi-family buildings. See apartment buildings multi-graded sand filtration, 2010 V2: 201 multimedia depth filters, 2008 V4: 202 multimedia filtration, 2010 V2: 201, 221 multiple. See also entries beginning with double-, multi-, or twomultiple-compartment septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 multiple-degree-of-freedom systems, 2009 V1: 150, 151 multiple-family dwellings. See apartment buildings multiple-gang-service outlets, 2011 V3: 51 multiple pressure-regulated valve installation, 2010 V2: 69-70 multiple-pump systems, 2010 V2: 63 multiple supports, 2008 V4: 138 multiple-tray waterfall aerators, 2010 V2: 198 multiplication in SI units, 2009 V1: 35 multipurpose dry chemicals, 2011 V3: 23, 29 multistage pumps, 2008 V4: 98-99 multistory buildings. See large buildings multivalent ions, 2008 V4: 218 municipal sewers. See public sewers municipal water supply city water, 2009 V1: 19 cross connections and, 2008 V4: 170 fire-protection connections, 2011 V3: 217 irrigation usage, 2011 V3: 96 model ordinances, 2008 V4: 179-183 responsibilities, 2008 V4: 181-182 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 2-3 types of, 2011 V3: 6 water mains and pressure, 2011 V3: 206 municipalities, rainfall, 2010 V2: 57 muriatic acid, 2010 V2: 207, 232, 2008 V4: 193. See also hydrochloric acid museums, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 Musgrave, G.W., 2010 V2: 55 mussels, 2010 V2: 188 MV (medical vacuum), 2009 V1: 9

Ν

n (nano) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 N (newtons), 2009 V1: 34 n c, N C (normally closed), 2009 V1: 15 n i c, N I C (not in contract), 2009 V1: 15 N m (newton-meters), 2009 V1: 34n o, N O (normally open), 2009 V1: 15 N_2 (nitrogen). See nitrogen (N_2) N₂O (nitrous oxide), 2009 V1: 9 NACE (National Association of Corrosion Engineers), 2009 V1: 140, 144 NACE Basic Corrosion Course, 2009 V1: 144 NACE Standard RP-01, 2009 V1: 140 NaCI (ionized salts), 2011 V3: 47 nails, protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 NAIMA (North American Insulation Manufacturers Association), 2009 V1: 118 Nalco Chemical Co., 2010 V2: 225 Nalco Water Handbook, 2010 V2: 225

nameplates (propane tanks), 2010 V2: 132 "nano" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 nanofilter membranes, 2010 V2: 191, 201, 211, 213 nanofiltration (NF), 2008 V4: 196, 220 naphtha, 2010 V2: 12 National Association of Corrosion Engineers (NACE), 2009 V1: 140, 144 National Association of Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors. See Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors-National Association (PHCC-NA) National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors (NBBPVI), 2010 V2: 106 National Bureau of Standards, 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 18 - 19electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 142 publications, 2010 V2: 95-96 stack capacities study, 2010 V2: 4 National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, Inc. (NCCLS), 2010 V2: 220 National Easter Seal Society, 2009 V1: 97 National Electrical Code, 2010 V2: 125 National Electrical Code (NEC), 2010 V2: 112 National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), 2009 V1: 15 NEMA 4 listing, 2010 V2: 125 NEMA 4X listing, 2010 V2: 106 NEMA 12 listing, 2010 V2: 125 NEMA Class 1, Division 1, Group D listing, 2010 V2: 125 National Energy Conservation Policy Act, 2009 V1: 117 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code (NFPA 72), 2011 V3: 28, 30 National Fire Protection Association, Inc. air compressors in dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 8 design density requirements, 2011 V3: 11 designing systems and, 2011 V3: 1 firefighting water tanks, 2010 V2: 162 gas approvals, 2010 V2: 114 hot-water system standards, 2010 V2: 112 liquefied petroleum pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 135 list of standards, 2009 V1: 53 medical gas station guidelines, 2011 V3: 51 NFPA abbreviation, 2009 V1: 15, 32 propane tank specifications, 2010 V2: 132 publications, 2009 V1: 39 NFPA Fire Protection Handbook, 2011 V3: 30 NFPA Standard no. 10: Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers, 2011 V3: 28, 30 NFPA Standard no. 11: Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam, 2011 V3: 25, 30 NFPA Standard no. 12: Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems, 2011 V3: 26, 30 NFPA Standard no. 12A: Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems, 2011 V3: 27, 28, 30 NFPA Standard no. 13: Installation of Sprinkler Systems, 2009 V1: 185, 2011 V3: 2, 11, 30, 225NFPA Standard no. 13D: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One-and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes, 2011 V3: 18

NFPA Standard no. 13R: Standard for the

Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height, 2011 V3: 18

- NFPA Standard no. 14: Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems, 2011 V3: 18, 30
- NFPA Standard no. 15: Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection, 2011 V3: 24, 30
- NFPA Standard no. 16: Installation of Foam-water Sprinkler and Foam-water Spray Systems, 2011 V3: 30
- NFPA Standard no. 16A: Installation of Closedhead Foam-water Sprinkler Systems, 2011 V3: 30
- NFPA Standard no. 17: Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems, 2011 V3: 23, 30
- NFPA Standard no. 17A: Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Agents, 2011 V3: 24
- NFPA Standard no. 20: Installation of Stationary Fire Pumps for Fire Protection, 2011 V3: 21, 30, 2008 V4: 32, 99
- NFPA Standard no. 24: Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances, 2011 V3: 30, 218
- NFPA Standard no. 30: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, 2011 V3: 88, 136, 148, 149, 156
- NFPA Standard no. 30A: Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages, 2011 V3: 137, 156
- NFPA Standard no. 50: Standard for Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites, 2011 V3: 57, 78
- NFPA Standard no. 51: Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes, 2010 V2: 137
- NFPA Standard no. 51B: Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding, Cutting, and Other Hot Work, 2010 V2: 136
- NFPA Standard no. 54: National Fuel Gas Code, 117, 118, 121, 137, 2010 V2: 115, 2011 V3: 251, 256
- NFPA Standard no. 55: Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code, 2011 V3: 263
- NFPA Standard no. 58: Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code, 2010 V2: 115, 132–133, 137
- NFPA Standard no. 59: Utility LP-Gas Plant Code, 2010 V2: 137
- NFPA Standard no. 70: National Electrical Code, 2010 V2: 125
- NFPA Standard no. 72: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code, 2011 V3: 28, 30
- NFPA Standard no. 88A: Standard for Parking Structures, 2010 V2: 115
- NFPA Standard no. 99: Standard for Health-care Facilities, 2011 V3: 51, 63, 64, 69, 76, 78, 263
- NFPA Standard no. 99C: Gas and Vacuum Systems, 2008 V4: 32
- NFPA Standard no. 255: Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, 2011 V3: 69, 2008 V4: 106
- NFPA Standard no. 291: Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of

Hydrants, 2011 V3: 3, 30 NFPA Standard no. 329: Recommended Practice for Handling Releases of Flammable and Combustible Liquids and Gases, 2011 V3: 137 NFPA Standard no. 385: Standard for Tank Vehicles for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, 2011 V3: 137 NFPA Standard no. 484: Combustible Metals, 2011 V3: 30 NFPA Standard no. 505: Fire Safety Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks Including Type Designations, Areas of Use, Conversions, Maintenance, and Operation, 2010 V2: 137 NFPA Standard no. 750: Water Mist Fire Protection Systems, 2011 V3: 25, 30 NFPA Standard no. 2001: Clean Agent Extinguishing Systems, 2011 V3: 27, 28, 30 sprinkler piping, 2009 V1: 177 web site, 2011 V3: 78, 89 National Formulary (NF) USP nomographs, 2010 V2: 218 National Fuel Gas Code (NFPA 54), 117, 118, 121, 137, 2010 V2: 115 natural gas system design, 2011 V3: 251 pipe materials, 2011 V3: 256 National Ground Water Association (NGWA), 2010 V2: 164 National Institutes of Health. 2010 V2: 172. 241 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 42, 55, 2011 V3: 239 national pipe thread (NPT), 2009 V1: 15 National Plumbing Code, 2009 V1: 15 National Plumbing Code, Illustrated, 2010 V2: 55 National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), 2011 V3: 81, 82 National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) abbreviation, 2009 V1: 32 ANSI/NSF Standard no. 61, 2008 V4: 23, 56 Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Other Recreational Water Facilities (NSF/ANSI 50), 2011 V3: 111, 122 hot-water system requirements, 2010 V2: 112 list of standards, 2009 V1: 53 NSF Standard no. 14, 2008 V4: 56 website, 2008 V4: 179 National Society of Professional Engineers (NSPE), 2009 V1: 56, 57 National Standard Plumbing Code, 2010 V2: 115, 2008 V4: 164 National Swimming Pool Foundation (NSPF), 2011 V3: 104, 122 National Technical Information Service (NTIS), 2011 V3: 89 National Weather Service (NWS), 2010 V2: 42 Hydro 35, 2011 V3: 239 natural drainage (corrosion), 2009 V1: 143 natural frequency (f_n) , defined, 2008 V4: 146 natural frequency of vibration control materials, 2008 V4: 146, 147–148 natural gas. See fuel-gas piping systems; natural gas systems natural gas systems

altitude factors, 2010 V2: 117, 121

appliance demand table, 2010 V2: 116 appliances, 118, 2010 V2: 116 approvals, 2010 V2: 114 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 115, 2011 V3: 251 compressed gas fires, 2011 V3: 25 compressed gases, defined, 2011 V3: 171 defined, 2011 V3: 263 demand in multiple family dwellings, 2010 V2: 123, 124, 130 design considerations, 2010 V2: 126-127 efficiency, 2010 V2: 115 equivalent lengths for valves and fittings, 2010 V2: 123 gas expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 233-234 glossary, 2010 V2: 135-136 grounding, 2010 V2: 125 high-rise buildings and, 2010 V2: 126 laboratory usage, 2010 V2: 121 liquefied petroleum gas, 2010 V2: 131-135 low and medium pressure systems, 2010 V2: 113-125 NG abbreviation, 2009 V1: 15 operating pressures, 2010 V2: 115 overview, 2011 V3: 251 physical properties of gas and propane, 2010 V2: 113 pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 123, 128-131, 2011 V3: 256 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 pressure, 2010 V2: 119-121 sample gas utility letter, 2011 V3: 252, 261 site utility planning, 2011 V3: 251-257 sizing methods, 2010 V2: 130-131 specific gravity, 2010 V2: 126, 131 system components, 2011 V3: 252-255 control valves, 2010 V2: 118 drip pots, 2011 V3: 255 fittings and joints, 2010 V2: 124 flexible hose connections, 2010 V2: 124-125 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125-128 gas line filters, 2011 V3: 252-254 gas meters, 2011 V3: 254 gas pressure regulators, 2011 V3: 254-255 gas regulator relief vents, 2010 V2: 117-118 materials, 2010 V2: 121-125 meters, 2010 V2: 115-117, 2011 V3: 254 natural gas pipes, 2008 V4: 30-31 piping, 2010 V2: 122 pressure control valves, 2010 V2: 117-118 pressure regulating valves, 2010 V2: 118 regulator relief vents, 2010 V2: 121 storage tanks, 2010 V2: 131-134 tubing, 2010 V2: 122-124 testing and purging, 2011 V3: 257 types of, 2010 V2: 113-114 types of services, 2011 V3: 251-252 venting systems, 2010 V2: 118-119 natural gas water heaters. See gas-fired water heaters natural osmosis, 2010 V2: 211 natural period of vibration, 2009 V1: 150 Natural Resources Canada, 2011 V3: 204 Natural Resources Defense Council, 2011 V3: 81 natural soil, building sewers and, 2010 V2: 14 natural water, 2010 V2: 187, 2008 V4: 223. See also feed water

359

Naturally Occurring Arsenic in Well Water in Wisconsin, 2010 V2: 29 naturally-vented multiple tray aerators, 2010 V2: 198 naval rolled brass, 2009 V1: 132 NBBPVI (National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors), 2010 V2: 106 NBR (acrylonitrile butadiene rubber), 2011 V3: 150 NBS (National Bureau of Standards). See National Bureau of Standards NC (noise criteria), 2008 V4: 145 NCCLS (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, Inc.), 2010 V2: 220 NEC (National Electrical Code), 2010 V2: 112 negative gauge pressure, 2010 V2: 166 negative pressure. See vacuum negativity in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249negligent acts, 2008 V4: 178 negligible movement, 2008 V4: 138 NEMA (National Electrical Manufacturers Association), 2009 V1: 15 NEMA 4 listing, 2010 V2: 125 NEMA 4X listing, 2010 V2: 106 NEMA 12 listing, 2010 V2: 125 NEMA Class 1, Division 1, Group D listing, 2010 V2: 125 neoprene, 2009 V1: 32 compression gaskets, 2008 V4: 25 gaskets, 2011 V3: 46, 2008 V4: 60, 61 hanger isolators, 2009 V1: 203 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190 pad isolators, 2009 V1: 204 vibration control, 2008 V4: 146, 149 nephelometric test, 2010 V2: 193 nephelometric turbidity units (NTUs), 2010 V2: 193 net positive suction head (NPSH), 2010 V2: 162, 2008 V4: 98 neutralizing acid, 2008 V4: 196 neutralizing acid in waste water discharge from laboratories, 2011 V3: 42-44 health care facility systems, 2011 V3: 42-44 laboratories, 2011 V3: 43-44 methods of treatment, 2010 V2: 235 sizing tanks, 2011 V3: 44 solids interceptors, 2011 V3: 45 tank and pipe materials, 2011 V3: 85-87 types of acids, 2010 V2: 230-232 neutralizing tanks, 2011 V3: 43-44 neutrons, 2010 V2: 236-237 New York City, ultra-low-flow toilets in, 2009 V1: 127 New York City Materials and Equipment Acceptance Division (MEA), 2008 V4: 90 New York State Department of Environmental Conservation Technology for the Storage of Hazardous Liquids, 2011 V3: 89 web site, 2011 V3: 89 newer buildings, 2008 V4: 145 newton-meters, 2009 V1: 34 newtons, 2009 V1: 34 Newton's equation, 2008 V4: 154 NF. See nanofiltration NF nomographs, 2010 V2: 218

NFPA. See National Fire Protection Association, Inc. NFPP (nonflame pipe), 2008 V4: 55 NG. See natural gas systems NGWA (National Ground Water Association), 2010 V2: 164 ni-resist cast iron, 2009 V1: 132 ni-resist irons, 2009 V1: 132 Nibco Inc., 2010 V2: 96 niche lights, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 135 nickel corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 plastic corrosion and, 2009 V1: 141 in stainless steel, 2008 V4: 1-2 nickel-bronze grates, 2010 V2: 13, 15 nightclubs, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 Nine Dots exercise, 2009 V1: 225, 252 nippled-up sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13 nitrates, 2010 V2: 189, 190 defined, 2008 V4: 223-224 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 water hardness and, 2008 V4: 196 nitric acid, 2009 V1: 136, 2010 V2: 232 nitrifying bacteria, 2010 V2: 188 nitrile butadiene (Buna-N), 2011 V3: 150, 2008 V4: 83, 86 nitrile rubber. See nitrile butadiene nitrogen (N_2) as contaminant in air, 2011 V3: 265 color coding outlets, 2011 V3: 55 control cabinets, 2011 V3: 56 cylinder supplies, 2011 V3: 58, 65 defined, 2011 V3: 77 dry nitrogen, 2011 V3: 257 formula, 2008 V4: 193 gas blankets in water tanks, 2010 V2: 223 generating, 2011 V3: 270 high-pressure dispensing equipment, 2011 V3: 56-57 laboratory outlets, 2011 V3: 41-42 medical gas pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 69, 70, 71 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52-53 medical gas storage, 2011 V3: 63-64, 65 oil-free, 2008 V4: 42 purging vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 in raw water, 2010 V2: 190 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 surgical use, 2011 V3: 56 symbol, 2009 V1: 9 testing concentrations, 2011 V3: 75 testing laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 280 in water chemistry, 2010 V2: 189 nitrogen NF, 2011 V3: 61, 77 nitrous fumes, 2010 V2: 232 nitrous oxide (N²O) color coding outlets, 2011 V3: 55 cylinder supplies, 2011 V3: 58 defined, 2011 V3: 77 medical gas pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 69, 71 medical gas storage, 2011 V3: 59-60, 61 reductions from solar energy use, 2011 V3: 189 surgical use, 2011 V3: 57 symbol, 2009 V1: 9

testing concentrations, 2011 V3: 75 waste anesthetic gas management, 2011 V3: 66 nL/min (normal liters per minute), 2011 V3: 187 nm³/min (normal cubic meters per minute), 2011 V3: 172 no-flow pressure in pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 94 no-hub joints, earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 160 no-hub outlet drain body, 2010 V2: 14 no-hub outlets, 2010 V2: 13 no., NO (numbers), 2009 V1: 15 "no observed adverse effect level," 2011 V3: 27 NOAA (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 42 NOAA, National Weather Service 5-60 Minute Precipitation Frequency for the Eastern and Central United States, 2010 V2: 55 rainfall records, 2011 V3: 239 NOAEL (no observed adverse effect level), 2011 V3: 27 Noble, Duncan, 2011 V3: 204 noble potential, defined, 2009 V1: 143 noise. See acoustics in plumbing systems noise criteria (NC), 2008 V4: 145 nominal diameter (DN), 2010 V2: 165 nominal pipe size (NPS), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 165, 2008 V4: 52 nominal size, defined, 2008 V4: 138 nominal values, 2009 V1: 33 nominal volume of piping, 2008 V4: 233 non-agreement states, 2010 V2: 238 non-ambulatory disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 non-aqueous liquid wastes, 2011 V3: 81 non-carbonic salts, 2008 V4: 196 non-circular grab bars, 2009 V1: 112 non-clog pumps, 2008 V4: 99 non-continuous joints, 2009 V1: 140 non-depletable energy sources, 2009 V1: 128 Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability by Public Accommodations and in Commercial Facilities, 2009 V1: 98 non-electrolytes, 2010 V2: 187 non-ferrous metals, 2008 V4: 63 non-flammable medical gas, 2011 V3: 50 Non-flammable Medical Gas Piping Systems (CSA Z305.1), 2011 V3: 78 non-flammable pipe, 2008 V4: 55, 59 non-impact applications, 2008 V4: 149 non-integral attachment, 2008 V4: 138 non-looped piping systems, 2011 V3: 12 non-lubricated plug valves, 2008 V4: 89 non-measurable nouns in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218 non-metallic coatings, 2009 V1: 136 non-metals in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 non-oxidizing chemicals in microbial control, 2010 V2: 213 non-oxidizing piping, 2010 V2: 239 non-pathogenic organisms, 2008 V4: 199 non-porous piping, 2010 V2: 239 non-porous soils, 2011 V3: 96 non-potable cold water (NPCW), 2009 V1: 9 non-potable hot water (NPHW), 2009 V1: 9 non-potable hot water return (NPHWR), 2009 V1: 9 non-potable water systems. See graywater systems non-pumping wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 non-puncturing membrane flashing, 2010 V2: 16

non-reactive silica, 2010 V2: 190 non-reinforced concrete pipe, 2008 V4: 28 non-residential owners, responsibilities, 2008 V4: 182 non-rigid couplings, 2009 V1: 180 non-rising stems on valves (NRS), 2008 V4: 79 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 non-sprinklered spaces, 2009 V1: 12 Non-structural Damage to Buildings, 2009 V1: 185 non-tilting grates, 2010 V2: 11 non-vitreous china fixtures defined, 2008 V4: 1 standards, 2008 V4: 2 non-volatile substances, 2008 V4: 211 normal air, defined, 2011 V3: 186 "normal," compared to "standard," 2011 V3: 187 normal cubic meters per minute (nm³/min), 2011 V3: 172 normal liters per minute (nL/min), 2011 V3: 187 normal pressure, 2009 V1: 26 normally closed (n c, N C), 2009 V1: 15 normally open (n o, N O), 2009 V1: 15 North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (NAIMA), 2009 V1: 118 "not in contract" (n i c, N I C), 2009 V1: 15 "not to scale" (NTS), 2009 V1: 15 nouns in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218, 219, 225 nourishment stations in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 nozzles defined, 2009 V1: 29 dry-chemical systems, 2011 V3: 23 fountains, 2011 V3: 100 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 irrigation sprinklers, 2011 V3: 93 pressure, 2011 V3: 210 pressure flow tables, 2011 V3: 3, 5 sprinklers, 2011 V3: 6 NPC. See National Plumbing Code NPCW (non-potable cold water), 2009 V1: 9 NPDES (National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System), 2011 V3: 81, 82 NPHW (non-potable hot water), 2009 V1: 9 NPHWR (non-potable hot water return), 2009 V1: 9 NPS (nominal pipe size), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 165 NPSH (net positive suction head), 2010 V2: 63, 162, 2008 V4: 98 NPT (national pipe thread), 2009 V1: 15 NRC (Nuclear Regulatory Commission), 2010 V2: 237, 238 NSF. See National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) NSPE (National Society of Professional Engineers), 2009 V1: 56. 57 NSPF (National Swimming Pool Foundation), 2011 V3: 122 NTIS (National Technical Information Service), 2011 V3: 89 NTS (not to scale), 2009 V1: 15 NTUs (nephelometric turbidity units), 2010 V2: 193 nuclear power plants regulatory requirements, 2010 V2: 235 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 148 Nuclear Regulatory Commission, 2010 V2: 237, 238 numbers (no., NO, N) in CSI format, 2009 V1: 59 in measurements, 2009 V1: 33

of swimmers, 2011 V3: 106

symbol, 2009 V1: 15 numerical weights in value engineering, 2009 V1: 235 nurse stations, 2011 V3: 36 nurseries fixtures for, 2011 V3: 37–38 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56 sinks, 2011 V3: 40 nursing homes, 2011 V3: 33–34. See also health care facilities Nussbaum, O.J., 2010 V2: 225 nuts. See insert nuts NWS (National Weather Service), 2010 V2: 42

0

O-rings, 2008 V4: 41 O_2 . See oxygen (O_2, OX) oakum seals, 2008 V4: 24, 25, 61 objectives in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 221 obstructions to wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 103, 104 OC (on center), 2009 V1: 15 occupancy, defined, 2009 V1: 26 occupancy classification (sprinkler systems), 2009 V1: 28-29, 2011 V3: 2, 13 occupancy of pools, 2011 V3: 106-107 occupants in hot water demand classifications, 2010 V2: 99 loads of buildings, 2008 V4: 17-18 perception of quality and, 2009 V1: 263 Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 232, 2011 V3: 136 ocean water, irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 25 OD (outside diameters), 2009 V1: 15 odor gas pressure regulators and, 2010 V2: 118 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 odor control in drinking water, 2010 V2: 160, 217 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 OEM (original equipment manufacturers), 2009 V1: 15 OFCI (owner furnished, contractor installed), 2009 V1: 64 off-peak power usage, 2009 V1: 119 office buildings drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 244-245, 245 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), 2009 V1: 185 offset connection strainers, 2011 V3: 124 offset stack thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 229 offset stacks, 2010 V2: 5, 37 offsets defined, 2009 V1: 26, 2008 V4: 138 expansion offsets, 2008 V4: 228-229 use of, 2008 V4: 69 offshore facilities, 2009 V1: 139 ohm-centimeter units (Ω -cm), 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 195 ohm-meters, 2009 V1: 34 OHMS (resistance or resistors), 2009 V1: 34, 2008 V4: 224 $\,$ Ohm's Law, 2009 V1: 134 oil. See also fats, oils, and grease (FOG) as seal liquid in liquid ring pumps, 2010 V2: 171

contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 173 intercepting in acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 235 intercepting in sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 12 neoprene and, 2008 V4: 149 oil-water separation, 2011 V3: 88 removing from gases, 2011 V3: 273 separating with ultrafiltration, 2008 V4: 220 skimming, 2011 V3: 88 spills and containment, 2010 V2: 244-246 vegetable oil, 2010 V2: 10 oil contamination in air, 2011 V3: 265 oil-free compressors, 2011 V3: 61, 174 oil interceptors, 2010 V2: 12, 244 oil-mist filters in vacuums, 2010 V2: 171 oil of vitriol. See sulfuric acid Oil Pollution Prevention (40 CFR 112) (SCCC), 2011 V3: 137 oil-removal filters, 2011 V3: 180 oil systems. See diesel-oil systems; gasoline systems oil-wet solids, 2010 V2: 244 oilless compressors, 2011 V3: 61 oilless pumps, 2010 V2: 169 O'Keefe, W., 2008 V4: 116 older buildings, 2008 V4: 145 oleums, 2010 V2: 230 on center (OC), 2009 V1: 15 on-site facility treatment systems. See special-waste drainage systems On-Site Renewables Tax Incentives, 2011 V3: 190 On Site Wastewater Facilities for Small Communities and Subdivisions, 2010 V2: 154 on-site water reclamation. See graywater systems once-thru-oil pumps, 2010 V2: 171 one-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 11 one-family dwellings, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19,20 one-occupant toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 17-18 one-piece water closets, 2008 V4: 3 one-stage distillation, 2010 V2: 200 one-time costs, 2009 V1: 217 one-wall tanks, 2011 V3: 139 ongoing costs, 2009 V1: 217 oocysts, 2011 V3: 122 open air, 2009 V1: 26 open-channel flow, 2009 V1: 1, 2010 V2: 6 open-circuit potential, defined, 2009 V1: 143 open proprietary specifications, 2009 V1: 62 open solar systems, 2011 V3: 192 open sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 open-type base pumps, 2010 V2: 158 open-web steel joists in pipe bracing, 2009 V1: 169 openings for tool access. See access; cleanouts operating costs, 2009 V1: 217 operating efficiency of water softeners, 2008 V4: 209 operating loads on pipes, 2008 V4: 138 operating rooms articulated ceiling medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 56 fixtures, 2011 V3: 38-39 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52, 56 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 water demand, 2011 V3: 46 operational pressure tests, 2011 V3: 75

operators of vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 180 oral surgery equipment, 2011 V3: 42, 52 orbital welding, 2011 V3: 277 orbital welding process, 2010 V2: 239 orders in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 ordinary hazard occupancies defined, 2009 V1: 29, 2011 V3: 2 firefighting hose streams, 2011 V3: 225 portable fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 29 ordinary lobe pumps, 2010 V2: 169 organic chemicals laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 removal in effluent, 2008 V4: 249 safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 organic free water, 2010 V2: 219 organic material vibration control, 2008 V4: 146 organic materials in water, 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 199 organic polyelectrolytes, 2010 V2: 199 organic removal filters, 2008 V4: 214 organisms in water, 2010 V2: 188-189, 2008 V4: 220. See also microorganisms orifices on hydrants, 2011 V3: 5 on nozzles, 2011 V3: 5 original equipment manufacturers (OEM), 2009 V1: 15 ornamental sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 orthotolidin tests, 2010 V2: 91 OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 232, 2011 V3: 136 OSHPD (Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development), 2009 V1: 185, 2008 V4: 138 osmosis, defined, 2010 V2: 211 osmotic pressure, 2010 V2: 211, 2008 V4: 217 OS&Y (outside screw and yoke), 2008 V4: 74, 85 Otis, Richard J., 2010 V2: 154 OTO pumps, 2010 V2: 169, 171 Otten, Gerald, 2010 V2: 225 Otto plate units, 2010 V2: 214 ounces (oz, OZ) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 symbols for, 2009 V1: 15 out-of-sequence work conditions, cost estimates for projects and, 2009 V1: 90 outdoor gas booster installation, 2010 V2: 126 outdoor swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108. See also swimming pools outfall sewers, 2009 V1: 26 outgasing, 2011 V3: 277 outlet pressures outlet pressure regulators, 2011 V3: 10 standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 21 outlet valves, 2008 V4: 223 outlets. See also inlets; stations flow rates at outlets, 2009 V1: 3, 5 gas or vacuum. See stations pressure in cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 69 septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 storm drainage collection systems, 2010 V2: 46 symbols for, 2009 V1: 11 velocity of flow from outlets, 2009 V1: 6 outpatient-services rooms, 2011 V3: 36, 46 output, 2009 V1: 26

outside diameters (OD), 2009 V1: 15 outside screw and yoke (OS&Y), 2008 V4: 74, 85 "outside the box" thinking, 2009 V1: 225 "outstanding value," defined, 2009 V1: 209 overall system thermal efficiency, 2009 V1: 128 overengineering, perception of, 2009 V1: 251 overestimating needs, 2009 V1: 218 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 84, 148 overflow for bathtubs, 2008 V4: 15 fittings, fountains, 2011 V3: 102 for lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 rates for grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 158 storm drains. See secondary storm-drainage systems overflow roof drains, 2009 V1: 26 overhead costs in value engineering, 2009 V1: 208, 217 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 overhead equipment. See suspended equipment overheating protection in solar systems, 2009 V1: 122 overheating vacuum exhausters, 2010 V2: 179 overland flow rates for sites, 2011 V3: 239, 240, 242 overlap in toilet accessibility, 2009 V1: 105 overspray areas in irrigation, 2011 V3: 96 overtime labor costs, in take-off estimating method, 2009 V1:86 overturning, preventing, 2009 V1: 153, 183 overvoltage, defined, 2009 V1: 143 owner furnished, contractor installed (OFCI), 2009 V1: 64 owners defined, 2008 V4: 181 perception of engineering, 2009 V1: 251 quality requirements and, 2009 V1: 262 responsibilities, 2008 V4: 182 value engineering and, 2009 V1: 208 OX (oxygen). See oxygen (O_2, OX) oxidants, 2009 V1: 26 oxidation joints resistant to, 2008 V4: 61 ozone molecules and, 2008 V4: 215-216 oxidation, defined, 2009 V1: 143 oxidation reduction potential (ORP), 2011 V3: 129 oxidizing chemicals in microbial control, 2010 V2: 213 oxidizing gases, 2011 V3: 77, 266 OXY/ACR pipes, 2008 V4: 31 OXY/MED pipes, 2008 V4: 31 oxyacetylene welding, 2008 V4: 62-63 oxygen (O_2, OX) bulk oxygen systems, 2011 V3: 57-59, 59 color coding outlets, 2011 V3: 55 corrosion process, 2009 V1: 134, 2010 V2: 190 cylinder-manifold supply systems, 2011 V3: 59, 60, 61 defined, 2011 V3: 77 in fire triangle, 2011 V3: 22-23 formula, 2008 V4: 193 high contents in water, 2008 V4: 196 medical gas pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 68-69, 70, 71 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 51, 52-53 medical gas storage, 2011 V3: 57-61 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 50 medical reserve supply, 2011 V3: 58 oxygen USP, 2011 V3: 61, 77

oxygenated water, 2010 V2: 160 reducing with carbon dioxide, 2011 V3: 27 removing, 2010 V2: 199, 2008 V4: 197 saturation with, 2010 V2: 197 surgical use, 2011 V3: 56 symbols for, 2009 V1: 8, 15 testing concentrations, 2011 V3: 75 in water, 2010 V2: 189 oxygen concentration cells, 2009 V1: 143 oxygen-delivery equipment, 2011 V3: 77 oxygen-enriched atmospheres, 2011 V3: 77 oxygen index, 2011 V3: 77 oxygen scavengers, 2010 V2: 216 oxygen toxicity, 2011 V3: 77 oz, OZ (ounces), 2009 V1: 15, 39 ozonation cooling tower water, 2010 V2: 217 feed water, 2010 V2: 220 Legionella and, 2010 V2: 111 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 222 small drinking water systems, 2010 V2: 218 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 133 water treatments, 2010 V2: 160, 214, 2008 V4: 215-216 ozone generators, 2010 V2: 214 laver, 2011 V3: 26 water treatments, 2008 V4: 215-216 Ozone, 2008 V4: 224 Ozone Technology, Inc., 2008 V4: 224

Р

P (pressure). See pressure P & ID (piping and instrumentation diagrams), 2009 V1: 15 P alkalinity, 2010 V2: 189 P (peta) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 p (pico) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 p-traps floor drains with, 2009 V1: 11 laboratory sinks, 2011 V3: 45-46 Pa (pascals), 2009 V1: 34 PA (pipe anchors), 2009 V1: 10 PA (polyamide), 2009 V1: 32 Pas (pascal-seconds), 2009 V1: 34 packed-bed, activated-carbon filters, 2010 V2: 201 packed tower aeration, 2010 V2: 218 packing, defined, 2008 V4: 74 packing glands, 2008 V4: 74 packing material in vacuum deaerators, 2010 V2: 199 packing nuts, 2008 V4: 74 pad elastomer isolation, 2008 V4: 149 padding for glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 paddle wheel type flow sensors, 2011 V3: 124 PAEK (polyaryl etherketone), 2009 V1: 32 pain, thresholds of, 2010 V2: 111 painted propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132 paints in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 Pair, Claude H., 2011 V3: 96 palladium filters, 2011 V3: 273 panels, lining with lead, 2010 V2: 238 panic buttons, 2010 V2: 121 paper diatomaceous earth filters, 2008 V4: 204

paper towel clogs, 2010 V2: 11 paraffin, 2010 V2: 12 paragraph numbering in CSI format, 2009 V1: 59 parallel approaches for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101, 102 parallel gas system configurations, 2010 V2: 122 parallel installation of pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70, 2008 V4: 82 parallel pump systems, 2008 V4: 99 parapet wall scuppers, 2010 V2: 49, 52 Parekh, B.S., 2010 V2: 225 Pareto principle, 2009 V1: 218, 249 Pareto, Vilfredo, 2009 V1: 218 Park, Richard, 2009 V1: 252 Parmalee heads, 2011 V3: 1 partial pressures law, 2010 V2: 72 partially-sprinklered spaces, 2009 V1: 12 participation in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 particle settling rates, 2008 V4: 200 particulate radiation, 2010 V2: 237 particulate silica, 2010 V2: 190 particulates contamination in air, 2011 V3: 265 contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 174 testing for, 2011 V3: 280 treating, 2008 V4: 187 in water, 2010 V2: 187, 193 Partnership for Safe Water, 2008 V4: 224 parts per million (ppm, PPM), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 191 converting to grains per gallon, 2008 V4: 222 defined, 2008 V4: 224 water purity, 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 195 party walls, 2009 V1: 202 pascal-seconds, 2009 V1: 34 pascals, 2009 V1: 34 passenger terminals, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 passivation, 2009 V1: 136 passive, defined, 2009 V1: 143 passive control, cross-connections, 2008 V4: 172-173 passive solar systems, 2011 V3: 192 passive solar water heaters, 2009 V1: 122 passive verbs in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218 pasteurizing biosolids, 2008 V4: 263 pathogenic organisms, 2008 V4: 199 pathogens, 2010 V2: 139, 188 patient rooms bathing areas, 2011 V3: 36 fixtures for, 2011 V3: 37 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 37 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 53, 56 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 patient head wall stations, 2011 V3: 56 patient vacuum (VAC), 2011 V3: 77 Paul, D., 2010 V2: 225 paved areas imperviousness factors, 2011 V3: 239 runoff, 2010 V2: 42 storm drainage, 2010 V2: 41 PB (polybutylene). See polybutylene (PB) PC (polycarbonate), 2009 V1: 32 PCBs (polychlorinated biphenyls) levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186

safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 PCTFE (polychlorotrifluoroethylene), 2009 V1: 32 PCUs (platinum cobalt units), 2010 V2: 193 PD (pressure drops or differences). See pressure drops or differences PD (pump discharge lines), 2009 V1: 8 PDAP (polydiallyl phthalate), 2009 V1: 32 PDI (Plumbing and Drainage Institute). See Plumbing and Drainage Institute (PDI) PE (polyethylene). See polyethylene (PE) PE (potential energy), 2009 V1: 2, 5 PE-AL-PE (polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene), 2008 V4: 22 pea gravel backfill, 2011 V3: 155 Peabody, A.W., 2009 V1: 144 peak consumption in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 128 peak demand flushometer valves and, 2008 V4: 8 medical air, 2011 V3: 53, 62 medical gas, 2011 V3: 50 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 106 urinals, 2008 V4: 10 vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 65 water softeners, 2008 V4: 206 peak flow, Rational Method, 2010 V2: 43 peak horsepower, defined, 2011 V3: 186 peak loads, 2009 V1: 26 peak shaving, 2010 V2: 47 PEEK (polyether etherketone), 2009 V1: 32 pendent sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13, 29 penetration of irrigation water, 2011 V3: 91, 96 pentachlorophenol, 2008 V4: 186 people with disabilities ambulatory-accessible toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 106 ANSI 117.1-1998, 2009 V1: 99-115 bathing rooms, 2009 V1: 104-105 bathtub and shower seats, 2009 V1: 114-115 bathtub design, 2009 V1: 109-110 design for, 2009 V1: 99 drinking fountains and water coolers, 2009 V1: 101-105 exposed piping and accessibility, 2009 V1: 109 fixture design standards and, 2008 V4: 2 grab bars, 2009 V1: 106 history of design and construction standards, 2009 V1: 97-98 introduction to plumbing for, 2009 V1: 97 laundry equipment, 2009 V1: 115 lavatories and sinks, 2009 V1: 108-109 legislation, 2009 V1: 98-99 references, 2009 V1: 115 shower compartments, 2009 V1: 110-112 swimming pool facilities, 2011 V3: 107, 110, 134-135 urinal design, 2009 V1: 108 water closets and toilets, 2009 V1: 105-108, 2008 V4: 5 water coolers for, 2008 V4: 239-240 per-area costs, 2009 V1: 89 per-fixture estimations, cost estimations, 2009 V1: 88 percent transmissibility (T), defined, 2008 V4: 145 perception of engineers, 2009 V1: 251 perchloric acid, 2010 V2: 232

defined, 2009 V1: 26 rates for soils, 2010 V2: 139-142 perfect vacuums, 2010 V2: 165, 2011 V3: 172 perfluorocarbons (PFCs), 2011 V3: 27 perforated strap irons, 2008 V4: 67 performance bonds, 2009 V1: 56 performance criteria in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 69 performance factor efficiency, solar, 2011 V3: 191 Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations, 2010 V2: 105 Performance Requirements for Automatic Temperature Control Mixing Values, 2010 V2: 105 Performance Requirements for Water Temperature Limiting Devices, 2010 V2: 105 performance specifications, 2009 V1: 61 performance tests. See testing perfuoroalkoxy, 2009 V1: 32 perimeter diking, 2011 V3: 84 peristaltic pumps, 2011 V3: 129-130 perlite, 2011 V3: 121, 122 perlite insulation, 2008 V4: 111 permanent hardness, 2008 V4: 196 permanganate of potash, 2008 V4: 193 permeability coefficient of (K factor), 2010 V2: 158 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 permeable strata in soils, 2010 V2: 141 permeance, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 permits cross connection permits, 2008 V4: 182-183 defined, 2008 V4: 181 industrial wastewater, 2011 V3: 82-83 RCRA hazardous waste, 2011 V3: 83 Perry's Chemical Engineer's Handbook, 2011 V3: 89 personnel protection, insulation and, 2008 V4: 105, 113, 114 persons defined, 2008 V4: 181 persons with disabilities. See people with disabilities pesticides safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 "peta" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 petroleum-based fuel systems. See diesel-oil systems; gasoline systems petroleum hydrocarbons in storm water, 2010 V2: 27 petroleum products, 2011 V3: 136-137 PEX (cross-linked polyethylene), 2009 V1: 32, 2008 V4: 52 PEX-AL-PEX (cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/crosslinked polyethylene), 2008 V4: 52 PF (phenol formaldehyde), 2009 V1: 32 PFA (perfuoroalkoxy), 2009 V1: 32 PFCs (perfluorocarbons), 2011 V3: 27 PG (pressure gauges with gauge cocks), 2009 V1: 10 рΗ acid wastes, 2010 V2: 235 adjustments to waste, 2010 V2: 227-228, 2008 V4: 249 alkalinity and, 2010 V2: 189 boiler feed water, 2010 V2: 216

in corrosion rates, 2009 V1: 134

percolation

defined, 2009 V1: 143 discharge from laboratories, 2011 V3: 42-44 feed water for pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221 industrial wastewater systems, 2011 V3: 85-87 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 limits for sanitary drainage systems, 2011 V3: 46 measuring, 2010 V2: 192 pH values, defined, 2008 V4: 224 predicting water deposits, 2010 V2: 196-197 saturation, 2010 V2: 196 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127-131 values in waste, 2010 V2: 229 pH Control of Chemical Waste, 2010 V2: 246 pharmaceutical facilities, 2011 V3: 81, 2008 V4: 212 pharmaceutical pure water, 2010 V2: 219, 2008 V4: 56 Pharmaceutical Water, 2010 V2: 224, 225 pharmaceutical water pipe, 2008 V4: 49 pharmacies bio-pure water, 2011 V3: 48 fixtures, 2011 V3: 38 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 53 Phase 1 and 2 vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 137, 145-146, 148.149 PHCC-NA. See Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors-National Association (PHCC-NA) phenol formaldehyde, 2009 V1: 32 phenolics as thermoset, 2008 V4: 49 ion exchange resins, 2008 V4: 197 phenolphthalein alkalinity, 2010 V2: 189 phenols, 2008 V4: 186 Philadelphia systems, 2010 V2: 18, 39 phosphates, 2009 V1: 140, 2010 V2: 189 phosphoric acid, 2010 V2: 189, 232 phosphorus, 2010 V2: 189 phosphorus 32, 2010 V2: 238 phosphorus, storm water, 2010 V2: 27 photo laboratories backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 photographic badges for radiation levels, 2010 V2: 237 photolytic oxidation, 2010 V2: 194 photostat equipment, 2008 V4: 184 photovoltaics, defined, 2011 V3: 188-189 physical characteristics of drinking water, 2010 V2: 217 physical condition surveys, 2009 V1: 267-270 physical therapy rooms, 2011 V3: 36, 38 physically challenged people. See people with disabilities physics laboratories, 2010 V2: 171. See also laboratories PIB (polyisobutylene), 2009 V1: 32 "pico" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 pilot-operated gas regulators, 2011 V3: 254 pilot-operated pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69 pilot-operated valves, 2008 V4: 81 pilot-valve discs, 2011 V3: 6 pints, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 pipe anchors (PA), 2009 V1: 10 pipe-applied vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 185 pipe attachments, 2008 V4: 138 pipe braces. See bracing pipe channels, 2008 V4: 139

pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 121, 139 pipe clips, 2008 V4: 122, 139 pipe-covering protection saddle, 2008 V4: 139 pipe cutters, 2008 V4: 62 pipe dope, 2010 V2: 191, 2008 V4: 62 pipe elevations. See after cold pull elevation; design elevations pipe friction pressure drop, 2010 V2: 94 pipe glue, 2010 V2: 191 pipe guides, 2009 V1: 10 pipe hanger loads. See pipe loads; support and hanger loads pipe hanger locations. See cold hanger location; hot hanger locations pipe hangers. See supports and hangers pipe insulation cleaning and sterilization, 2008 V4: 106 damage, 2008 V4: 116 design considerations, 2008 V4: 114-115 expansion of pipes and insulation, 2008 V4: 116 glossary, 2008 V4: 105 high-density inserts, 2008 V4: 109-113 installing on valves and fittings, 2008 V4: 108-109 insulation shields, 2008 V4: 139 insulation thickness, 2008 V4: 109-113 jacketing, 2008 V4: 107-108 noise, 2008 V4: 115 purposes, 2008 V4: 105 smoke and fire requirements, 2008 V4: 106 storage and handling, 2008 V4: 115 supports and hangers, 2008 V4: 109-112 types of, 2008 V4: 106-107 calcium silicate, 2008 V4: 107 cellular glass, 2008 V4: 107 elastomeric, 2008 V4: 106-107 fiberglass, 2008 V4: 106 foamed plastic, 2008 V4: 107 insulating cement, 2008 V4: 107 lagging, 2008 V4: 108 plastic jackets, 2008 V4: 108 wire mesh, 2008 V4: 108 water vapor and, 2008 V4: 105-106 weight of, 2008 V4: 118-119 pipe joints acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 232 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 fill and, 2010 V2: 14 heat-fused socket joints, 2010 V2: 232 inspection, 2011 V3: 69, 74 material codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43 natural gas systems, 2011 V3: 257 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 48-49 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 239 restrainers, 2011 V3: 221 sanitary, 2011 V3: 48-49 screwed mechanical joints, 2010 V2: 232 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 thermal expansion and, 2010 V2: 16 welded joints, 2010 V2: 239 pipe loads cold loads, 2008 V4: 135 deadweight loads, 2008 V4: 136

design loads, 2008 V4: 136 dynamic loads, 2008 V4: 136 friction loads, 2008 V4: 137 hot loads, 2008 V4: 137 hydrostatic loads, 2008 V4: 137 operating loads, 2008 V4: 139 seismic loads, 2008 V4: 140 thermal loads, 2008 V4: 141 thrust loads, 2008 V4: 142 trip-out loads, 2008 V4: 142 water hammer loads, 2008 V4: 142 wind loads, 2008 V4: 142 pipe nipple codes, 2009 V1: 43 pipe openings, 2008 V4: 139 pipe racks, 2008 V4: 139 pipe rollers, 2008 V4: 123 pipe rolls, 2008 V4: 139 pipe saddle supports, 2008 V4: 139 pipe shafts, 2011 V3: 68 pipe shoes, 2008 V4: 139 pipe sleeve hangers or supports, 2008 V4: 139 pipe sleeves, 2009 V1: 153, 2008 V4: 67-70, 132, 139 pipe slides, 2008 V4: 123, 139 pipe solvents, 2010 V2: 191 pipe straps, 2008 V4: 139 pipe supports. See supports and hangers pipe system loads. See pipe loads pipe unions, 2008 V4: 67 pipes and piping. See also sizing; specific kinds of piping or piping functions accessories anchors, 2008 V4: 63-65 gaskets, 2008 V4: 65 hangers and supports. See supports and hangers pipe sleeves, 2008 V4: 67-70 pipe unions, 2008 V4: 67 service connections for water piping, 2008 V4: 69 applications centralized drinking-water cooler systems, 2008 V4: 246 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243-244 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 176, 182-183 condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 165 corrosive wastes, 2011 V3: 46 distilled water, 2008 V4: 212 exposed piping on storage tanks, 2011 V3: 148 fire-protection systems, 2011 V3: 6, 28 fountains, 2011 V3: 101-102 high-pressure condensate, 2011 V3: 166 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 276-280, 277-280 laboratory waste and vent piping, 2011 V3: 46 liquid fuel systems, 2011 V3: 149-151 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 68-76 natural gas, 2010 V2: 121-125, 123, 126, 128-131, 2011 V3: 256-257 propane, 2010 V2: 135 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 48-49 roof drains and pipes, 2010 V2: 49 sewage life stations, 2011 V3: 236 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 9, 12-13, 13-14, 20 steam, 2011 V3: 159-161 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 113

vacuum piping, 2010 V2: 174-178 bedding, 2011 V3: 225-226, 227 bending, 2008 V4: 63 calculating water capacity per foot, 2011 V3: 9 cleaning and covering exposed ends, 2008 V4: 23 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 42-45 computer analysis of piping systems, 2009 V1: 180 corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 damage to pipes, 2008 V4: 23 defined, 2011 V3: 78 draining, 2008 V4: 23 erosion, 2011 V3: 161 hazardous waste incompatibilities, 2011 V3: 83-84, 84 installation requirements, 2008 V4: 23 insulation. See pipe insulation joints. See joints leakage, 2009 V1: 126 loads. See pipe loads materials expansion, 2008 V4: 232-233 monitoring leakage, 2011 V3: 145 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190-193, 195 nominal volumes, 2008 V4: 233 openings, 2008 V4: 139 pipe schedules, 2011 V3: 12, 14 piping symbols, 2009 V1: 7-15 pitch, 2011 V3: 165 protection, 2009 V1: 255 resonance and vibration transmission, 2008 V4: 151 roughness, 2010 V2: 78 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 145, 158-179 size. See sizing snaking in trenches, 2008 V4: 230, 231 specifications, 2008 V4: 23 temperature classification, 2008 V4: 125 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 69 aboveground piping, 2008 V4: 227-229 underground piping, 2008 V4: 231 tightness testing, 2011 V3: 153 total developed length, 2008 V4: 229 total loads, 2008 V4: 118-119 types acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS), 2008 V4: 54 aluminum, 2008 V4: 59 brass (copper alloy) pipe, 2010 V2: 13 cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 25-27 chlorinated polyvinyl-chloride (CPVC), 2010 V2: 190, 2011 V3: 49, 2008 V4: 49-50, 53-54 concrete pipe. See concrete piping copper drainage tube, 2008 V4: 40, 41-42, 61 copper pipe. See copper piping copper water tube, 2008 V4: 30-42 cross-linked polyethylene (PEX), 2008 V4: 52 cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX), 2008 V4: 52 double containment, 2008 V4: 55, 60 ductile iron water and sewer pipe. See ductile iron piping duriron, 2008 V4: 57-59 ferrous, 2011 V3: 101 fiberglass pipe (FRP), 2008 V4: 56 glass pipe, 2010 V2: 234, 239, 2008 V4: 41-43, 48

lead piping, 2010 V2: 75 low extractable PVC, 2008 V4: 56 medical gas tubing, 2011 V3: 69, 74, 2008 V4: 42 plastic. See plastic piping polybutylene pipes, 2008 V4: 49-51 polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE), 2008 V4: 52 polypropylene (PP), 2008 V4: 54-55 polyvinyl chloride (PVC), 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 49-50, 52-53 polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF), 2008 V4: 55 reinforced thermosetting resin pipe (RTRP), 2008 V4: 56 special purpose piping, 2008 V4: 59-60 stainless steel, 2008 V4: 59-60 steel pipe. See steel piping Teflon, 2008 V4: 55-56 vitrified clay piping, 2010 V2: 75, 243, 2011 V3: 242, 2008 V4: 56-57, 57-58 unintended uses, 2008 V4: 118 water flow tables, 2011 V3: 14-17 piping and instrumentation diagrams (P & IDs), 2009 V1: 15Piping Handbook, 2010 V2: 136 piston displacement, defined, 2011 V3: 186 piston reciprocating compressors, 2011 V3: 174 piston-style water hammer arresters, 2010 V2: 72, 74 pistons balanced-piston valves, 2008 V4: 81 in water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 80 pit-type fire-department connections, 2009 V1: 12 pitch defined, 2009 V1: 26 pipe, 2011 V3: 165 pitch down or up, 2009 V1: 11 radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 240 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 186 pitcher fillers, 2008 V4: 240 pitless adapters, 2010 V2: 158, 159 pitot pressure, 2011 V3: 4, 5, 210 pitot tubes, 2011 V3: 3-4, 210 pitting, defined, 2009 V1: 143 pitting corrosion, 2009 V1: 130, 2010 V2: 195, 2008 V4: 194 PIV (post indicator valves), 2009 V1: 15, 2011 V3: 220-221 PL (Public Laws). See Public Laws places of worship, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 21 plain air chambers, 2010 V2: 73 plane angles, 2009 V1: 34, 36 plans. See construction contract documents; plumbing drawings plantings, types of, 2011 V3: 96 plaster, lining with lead, 2010 V2: 238 plaster of paris, 2008 V4: 193 plaster traps, 2011 V3: 39 plastic fixtures standards, 2008 V4: 2 types of, 2008 V4: 2 plastic insulation. 2008 V4: 107 plastic jackets, 2008 V4: 108 Plastic Pipe Institute (PPI), 2008 V4: 235

Thermal Expansion and Contraction in Plastic Piping Systems, 2009 V1: 206 plastic piping as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 188 bedding, 2011 V3: 225-226, 227 codes, 2009 V1: 43 corrosion, 2009 V1: 141, 2010 V2: 164 electrofusion joints, 2008 V4: 63 fittings, 2008 V4: 49 fuel product dispensing and, 2011 V3: 150 gas piping, 2011 V3: 256, 257 hangers, 2008 V4: 132 joints, 2008 V4: 49, 62 laboratory wastes, 2011 V3: 46 Manning formula and, 2011 V3: 242 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 123-124 polyolefin piping, 2008 V4: 52 porous surfaces, 2008 V4: 213 roughness, 2010 V2: 78 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 12-13 types, 2008 V4: 48-56 water hammer and, 2010 V2: 71-72 plastic pumps, 2011 V3: 123 plastic wraps on toilet seats, 2008 V4: 5 plate and frame modules in reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 211 - 212plate lugs. See lugs plate tectonics, 2009 V1: 148 plates for anchoring, 2008 V4: 128 platform diving, 2011 V3: 107 plating defined, 2008 V4: 139 demineralized water and, 2008 V4: 197 plating solutions, 2009 V1: 141 platinum, 2009 V1: 132 platinum cobalt units (PCUs), 2010 V2: 193 platy soils, 141, 2010 V2: 140 plenum-rated areas, 2009 V1: 259, 262 plot plans, irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 24 plug angle valves, 2008 V4: 76 plug cocks, 2008 V4: 84-85 plug disc valves, 2008 V4: 76 plug-type dezincification, 2009 V1: 131 plug valves (PV), 2009 V1: 9, 15 defined, 2008 V4: 77 hot-water service, 2008 V4: 89 liquefied petroleum gas systems, 2008 V4: 89 plumber's friends, 2008 V4: 184 plumbing appliances, 2009 V1: 26 appurtenances, 2009 V1: 26 code agencies, 2009 V1: 42 cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85-90 defined, 2009 V1: 26 designs, 2009 V1: 92-94 fittings. See fittings fixtures. See fixtures plumbing systems defined, 2009 V1: 26 specifications. See specifications symbols, 2009 V1: 7-15 terminology, 2009 V1: 16-21 Plumbing and Drainage Institute (PDI), 2010 V2: 96

abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 32 G-101: Testing and Rating Procedure for Grease Interceptors with Appendix of Sizing and Installation Data, 2008 V4: 153, 166, 250, 252, 253list of standards, 2009 V1: 53 PDI symbols for water hammer arresters, 2010 V2: 72 - 74Plumbing and Piping Industry Council (PPIC), 2009 V1: 160Plumbing Appliance Noise Measurements, 2009 V1: 206 plumbing codes, defined, 2008 V4: 178. See also codes and standards Plumbing Design and Installation Reference Guide, 2010 V2: 55 Plumbing Design Manual, 2010 V2: 55 plumbing drawings abbreviations, 2009 V1: 14-15 checklists, 2009 V1: 92-94 comprehensive, 2009 V1: 264 costs analysis phase, 2009 V1: 234 defined, 2009 V1: 55 DWG abbreviation, 2009 V1: 14 ensuring high quality with detailed specs, 2009 V1: 253 - 254existing building alterations, 2009 V1: 266 function evaluation. 2009 V1: 232-233 functional development, 2009 V1: 246 graphic conventions, 2009 V1: 100 introduction, 2009 V1: 55 samples of clear specifications, 2009 V1: 255, 260-261 in specifications, 2009 V1: 63 Plumbing Engineer, 2010 V2: 55 plumbing engineering, 2008 V4: 117 changes in technology and products, 2009 V1: 262 coordinating in fire protection design, 2011 V3: 29 defined, 2009 V1: 26 ensuring high quality in, 2009 V1: 253 Plumbing Engineering and Design Handbook of Tables, 2010 V2: 130 Plumbing Engineering and Design Standard 45, 2010 V2: 55 Plumbing Engineering Design Handbook, 2008 V4: 2, 265 plumbing fittings. See fittings plumbing fixtures. See fixtures and fixture outlets Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors-National Association (PHCC-NA), 2009 V1: 54, 87 National Standard Plumbing Code, 2010 V2: 115 plumbing inspectors, 2009 V1: 26, 255 Plumbing Manual, 2010 V2: 96 plumbing specifications. See specifications Plumbing Systems and Design, 2010 V2: 29 pneumatic control system, fresh water makeup, 2011 V3: 132 - 133pneumatic pressure differential switches, 2008 V4: 203 pneumatic pressures, 2010 V2: 2-3, 2011 V3: 64 pneumatic tank gauging, 2011 V3: 142 pneumatically operated main drain modulating valves, 2011 V3: 131-132 POC (points of connection), 2009 V1: 11 Podall, T., 2008 V4: 224 point loading, 2008 V4: 139

point-of-use reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 219 point-of-use ultrafiltration, 2010 V2: 201 point-of-use vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 172 point-of-use water heating, 2009 V1: 121, 2011 V3: 47 points of connection (POC), 2009 V1: 11 poisonous gases, 2011 V3: 267 polar solvents, 2011 V3: 25 polarization defined, 2009 V1: 143 hydrogen film buildup, 2009 V1: 129 polishing deionizers, 2010 V2: 205, 210 polishing exchangers, 2010 V2: 206 polishing water in pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221, 2008 V4: 219 pollen, as contaminant in air, 2011 V3: 265 pollution air contaminants, 2011 V3: 264-265 contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 173 dilution, 2011 V3: 81 filtering air pollution, 2011 V3: 63 pollutants defined, 2008 V4: 181 priority pollutants, 2011 V3: 81 rainwater and precipitation, 2010 V2: 45 Safe Drinking Water Act levels, 2008 V4: 186 sanitary precautions for wells, 2010 V2: 159 solar water heaters, 2011 V3: 189 storm-drainage systems and, 2010 V2: 41 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 polyamide, 2009 V1: 32 polyamide membranes, 2010 V2: 213, 2008 V4: 219 polyaryl etherketone, 2009 V1: 32 polybutylene (PB), 2009 V1: 32, 2008 V4: 49-50, 227 polycarbonate, 2009 V1: 32 polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 polychlorotrifluroroethylene, 2009 V1: 32 polydiallyl phthalate, 2009 V1: 32 polyelectrolytes, 2010 V2: 199 polyester fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 polyether etherketone, 2009 V1: 32 polyethylene (PE), 2010 V2: 78, 191, 2008 V4: 51-52 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 gas lines, 2011 V3: 257 insulation, 2008 V4: 107 laboratory gas piping, 2011 V3: 276 PE abbreviation, 2009 V1: 32 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE), 2008 V4: 52 Polyethylene Encasement, 2008 V4: 28 polyethylene plastic pipe gas systems, 2010 V2: 124 polyethylene storage tanks, 2010 V2: 223 polyisobutylene, 2009 V1: 32 polvisoprvne, 2009 V1: 32 polymer membranes, 2010 V2: 213 polymeric silica, 2010 V2: 190 polymers, 2009 V1: 26 polyolefin piping, 2008 V4: 52

polyphenylene sulfide, 2009 V1: 32 polypropylene, 2009 V1: 32 polypropylene piping double containment. 2008 V4: 55 laboratories, 2010 V2: 232, 2011 V3: 42-43 pipe characteristics, 2008 V4: 49-50 pipe standards, 2008 V4: 54-55 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 224 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 49 soil and waste piping, 2010 V2: 13 sulfuric acid and, 2011 V3: 85 USP water, 2010 V2: 223 VOCs and, 2010 V2: 190 water hammer and, 2010 V2: 71-72 polypropylene storage tanks, 2010 V2: 223, 2011 V3: 84 polystyrene insulation, 2008 V4: 107 polystyrene resins, 2008 V4: 197 polysulfone, 2009 V1: 32 polysulfone membranes, 2010 V2: 213 polytetrafluoroethylene. See Teflon polytrophic processes, 2009 V1: 27 polyurethane insulation, 2008 V4: 107 polyvalent ions, 2008 V4: 196, 220 polyvinyl acetate (PVA), 2008 V4: 108 polyvinyl carbazol, 2009 V1: 32 polyvinyl chloride (PVC), 2010 V2: 71, 78, 94 corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 distilled water piping, 2008 V4: 213 fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 fountain systems, 2011 V3: 102 insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 low extractable PVC, 2008 V4: 56 noise, 2010 V2: 14 pipe characteristics, 2008 V4: 49-50 piping, 2010 V2: 190 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 49 PVC abbreviation, 2009 V1: 32 sanitary drainage, 2010 V2: 12-13 shower pans, 2008 V4: 14 storage tanks and hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 sulfuric acid and, 2011 V3: 85 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 types of piping, 2008 V4: 52-53 volatile organic compounds, 2010 V2: 190 polyvinyl-fluoride. See polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) polyvinyl formal, 2009 V1: 32 polyvinylidene chloride, 2009 V1: 32 polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF), 2010 V2: 13, 71 distilled water piping, 2008 V4: 213 insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 piping, 2010 V2: 223, 224, 2011 V3: 49, 2008 V4: 55 PVDF abbreviation, 2009 V1: 32 ponding, 2010 V2: 47 on roofs, 2010 V2: 51 ponds, stabilization, 2010 V2: 150 pools, 2009 V1: 27. See also reflecting pools; swimming pools codes and standards, 2011 V3: 100-101 fixture requirements, 2011 V3: 109 interactive, 2011 V3: 100 safety regulations, 2011 V3: 104-106

"poor value," defined, 2009 V1: 209 pop-up sprinklers, 2011 V3: 93 population density, 2010 V2: 99 porcelain enameled steel fixtures defined, 2008 V4: 1 standards, 2008 V4: 2 pore size in filter membranes, 2010 V2: 213 pores, 2009 V1: 27 porous paper filters, 2008 V4: 204 porous soils, 2011 V3: 91 porous stone tubes, 2008 V4: 204 port size in valves, 2008 V4: 84 portable fire extinguishers, 2009 V1: 13, 2011 V3: 28-29 portable propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132 Portland cement, 2008 V4: 252 positive attachments, defined, 2009 V1: 185 positive-displacement air compressors, 2011 V3: 62, 174 positive-displacement meters, 2010 V2: 59, 88 positive-displacement pumps, 2008 V4: 93-98 post indicator valves (PIV), 2009 V1: 15, 2011 V3: 220-221 pot and pan sinks, 2011 V3: 39, 2008 V4: 162, 163 potable water. See drinking water; private water systems; wells potash alum, 2010 V2: 199 potassium, 2010 V2: 189, 190, 2008 V4: 193, 218 potassium bicarbonate, 2010 V2: 190 potassium carbonate, 2010 V2: 190 potassium chloride, 2010 V2: 190 potassium hydroxide, 2010 V2: 147 potassium permanganate, 2010 V2: 160, 2008 V4: 193 potential energy (PE) calculating, 2009 V1: 2 defined, 2011 V3: 185 velocity head and, 2009 V1: 5 potentiometric surfaces of aquifers, 2010 V2: 157 POTW (Publicly Owned Treatment Works), 2011 V3: 83, 2008 V4: 249 POU filtration, 2010 V2: 201 pounding forces in water. See water hammer pounds (lb, LBS) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 pounds per cubic foot (lb/ft³), 2009 V1: 15 pounds per square foot (psf, PSF), 2009 V1: 15 pounds per square inch (psi, PSI), 2009 V1: 2, 15, 2011 V3: 30, 184 pounds per square inch absolute (psia), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 78, 172 pounds per square inch gauge (psig), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 78, 172 symbols for, 2009 V1: 15 power conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 increased needs for plumbing, 2008 V4: 145 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 power/capacity characteristic curves, 2008 V4: 97-98 power company off-peak power savings, 2009 V1: 119 power plants, 2008 V4: 205 power steam, 2010 V2: 200 power usage, economizing on, 2009 V1: 119 powered vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 POWTS. See private onsite wastewater treatment systems pozzolan, 2008 V4: 252 PP. See polypropylene piping PP (polypropylene), 2009 V1: 32 PPI (Plastic Pipes Institute), 2008 V4: 235 PPI-TR 21: Thermal Expansion and Contraction of Plastic Pipe, 2008 V4: 235 PPIC (Plumbing and Piping Industry Council), 2009 V1: 160 ppm, PPM (parts per million). See parts per million (ppm, PPM) PPS (polyphenylene sulfide), 2009 V1: 32 Practical Design of a High-purity Water System, 2010 V2: 225Practical Plumbing Design Guide, 2010 V2: 55 pre-action systems, 2009 V1: 28, 2011 V3: 9, 10-11, 29 pre-action valves, 2009 V1: 13 pre-bid information, 2009 V1: 56 pre-cast manholes, 2011 V3: 226, 230 pre-cast water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 pre-coolers, 2011 V3: 186, 2008 V4: 242 pre-engineered cathodically protected steel tanks, 2011 V3: 138 pre-engineered dry-chemical systems, 2011 V3: 24 pre-engineered fountains, 2011 V3: 98 pre-engineered wet chemical systems, 2011 V3: 24 pre-fabricated shower bases, 2008 V4: 14 pre-fabricated shower enclosures. 2008 V4: 14 pre-fabricated water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 pre-formed insulation for valves and fittings, 2008 V4: 108 - 109pre-heated feed water, 2008 V4: 214 pre-plumbed vaults, fountain equipment, 2011 V3: 99 pre-rinse spray valves LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 pre-softening distillation feed water, 2008 V4: 212 pre-treatment in pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221 pre-treatment ordinances, 2011 V3: 83 precipitates in water, 2010 V2: 160, 198, 2008 V4: 224 precipitation. See rainwater and precipitation precision in measurements, 2009 V1: 33 predicting water deposits and corrosion, 2010 V2: 196-197 Prefabricated Gravity Grease Interceptors, 2008 V4: 153 prefilters air compressors, 2011 V3: 178 feed water, 2010 V2: 194 prefixes in SI units, 2009 V1: 34 premium grade PVC piping, 2011 V3: 49 preparation checklists, 2009 V1: 91-92 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 71 in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 Preparation phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 preparing for jobs, checklists, 2009 V1: 91-92 PRES (pressure). See pressure Presentation phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209, 249presets, defined, 2008 V4: 140 President's Committee on Employment of the Handicapped, 2009 V1: 97 PRESS (pressure). See pressure press-fitted ends on valves, 2008 V4: 80

371

pressure (PRESS, PRES, P). See also pressure drops or differences air-consuming devices, 2011 V3: 180 air pressure, 2011 V3: 264 barometric. See barometric pressure compressed air, 2011 V3: 172, 178, 181 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 differential, trap, 2011 V3: 165 examples for pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 87-89 fixture requirements, 2010 V2: 89 flow and air, 2010 V2: 2 fluctuation warnings, 2011 V3: 67 fluctuations, 2008 V4: 119 friction head, 2009 V1: 2, 6, 2010 V2: 61-63 friction loss and, 2009 V1: 2, 2010 V2: 87 head, defined, 2008 V4: 98 head (hd), 2009 V1: 14 head coefficient, defined, 2008 V4: 98 hydraulic shock, 2009 V1: 6 hydrostatic pressure, 2010 V2: 3-4 measurements, 2009 V1: 34, 2010 V2: 3-4, 84, 165-166 natural gas, 119-121, 2010 V2: 115 nozzle pressure flow tables, 2011 V3: 3 pressure-regulating valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 pressure sensors, 2010 V2: 63 pressure-volume relationships (gas laws), 2010 V2: 126 pressure waves. See water hammer pump affinity laws, 2009 V1: 6 pump head, 2010 V2: 61-63 relationship, hydrostatic fluids, 2008 V4: 169-170 relative discharge curves, 2011 V3: 211 relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 sizing pipes and, 2010 V2: 78-84 soil pressures, 2011 V3: 138 in specific applications booster pump systems, 2010 V2: 61-68 carbon dioxide extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 26 centralized chilled water systems, 2008 V4: 243, 246 closed hot-water systems, 2008 V4: 231 condensate piping, 2011 V3: 166 distilled water distribution, 2008 V4: 215 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 210 expansion tanks, 2010 V2: 67-68 fire pumps, 2011 V3: 21-22 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125-128 gravity tank systems, 2010 V2: 66 heavy flow drains, 2010 V2: 9 hot-water system pressures, 2010 V2: 97 interstitial tank monitoring, 2011 V3: 143 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 276 natural gas pressure, 2011 V3: 254-255, 256 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 115, 119-121, 126, 127, 129 nitrogen surgical instruments, 2011 V3: 56-57 nitrous oxide, 2011 V3: 60 plastic piping systems, 2011 V3: 49 pneumatic pressures in sanitary drains, 2010 V2: 2 - 3propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132 saturated steam, 2011 V3: 159-161 sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 229 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 3, 13-14, 14

storm-drainage stacks, 2010 V2: 50 submersible fuel pumps, 2011 V3: 151 vacuum cleaning system requirements, 2010 V2: 181 water mains, 2011 V3: 206 water softeners, 2008 V4: 206 stack flow capacity and, 2010 V2: 3-4 suds pressure zones, 2010 V2: 37-38 system head loss checklist, 2011 V3: 154 tests medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 74, 75–76 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 152-153 water flow tests, 2010 V2: 84-87 vacuum defined, 2010 V2: 165 vacuum pressure measurement, 2010 V2: 166 velocity head (h), 2009 V1: 5 velocity of water in pipes and, 2010 V2: 75, 76-78, 78 water hammer and, 2010 V2: 71-72 water meters and, 2010 V2: 88 water vapor in air and, 2011 V3: 172-173 pressure-assist water closets, 2009 V1: 127 pressure-balancing fixtures. See pressure-regulating or reducing valves (PRV) pressure classes, ductile iron cement-lined pipe, 2008 V4: 28 pressure cookers, 2008 V4: 185 pressure deaerators, 2008 V4: 197 pressure dew points, 2011 V3: 266 pressure diatomaceous earth filters, 2011 V3: 120 pressure differential flow sensors, 2011 V3: 124 pressure differential switches, 2008 V4: 203 pressure drops or differences (PD, DELTP) air filtration and, 2011 V3: 180 backflow preventers and, 2011 V3: 215 calculating, 2009 V1: 2 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 72-73, 177, 181, 182, 184 defined, 2010 V2: 136, 2008 V4: 224 double-check valves and, 2011 V3: 215 examples for pipe sizing, 2010 V2: 87-89 fittings, 2011 V3: 214 fuel systems, 2011 V3: 151 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 128 gas filters and, 2011 V3: 273 gas line filters and, 2011 V3: 254 gas valves and, 2011 V3: 274 gravity filters, 2008 V4: 202 installing taps, 2011 V3: 210-214 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 276, 279 measuring in water flow tests, 2010 V2: 84 medical air, 2011 V3: 68-69 medical gas, 2011 V3: 68 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 115, 119-121 piping runs, 2011 V3: 214 pressure drop curves, 2008 V4: 206, 247 sanitary drainage, 2010 V2: 2 sprinkler hydraulic calculations, 2011 V3: 14 steam, 2011 V3: 159-161 strainers and, 2011 V3: 216 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 181-184 vacuum exhauster sizing, 2010 V2: 184 vacuum piping, 2010 V2: 174-176 vacuum pressures, 2010 V2: 168 valve sizing, 2008 V4: 85

valves and fittings, 2010 V2: 90-91, 2011 V3: 214 water meters, 2010 V2: 84, 2011 V3: 216 water softeners and, 2008 V4: 205-206 pressure filters backwashing, 2008 V4: 203 compared to diatomaceous earth, 2008 V4: 204 defined, 2008 V4: 202-203 horizontal pressure sand filters, 2008 V4: 202 multimedia depth filters, 2008 V4: 202 vertical pressure sand filters, 2008 V4: 203 pressure gauges backwashing, 2008 V4: 203 with gauge cocks (PG), 2009 V1: 10 measurements, 2010 V2: 166 pressure loss. See pressure drops pressure maintenance (jockey) pumps, 2009 V1: 23 pressure media filters, 2010 V2: 201 pressure piping double containment, 2008 V4: 60 expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 227-229 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 pressure product-dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 146 pressure ratings, 2009 V1: 27 pressure-regulating or reducing valves (PRV), 2010 V2: 94 health care water supplies, 2011 V3: 46 irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 95 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 115, 118 pressure-relief valves (PV), 2009 V1: 10 shower valves, 2010 V2: 62-63, 2008 V4: 14-15 symbols for, 2009 V1: 9, 15 tank size and, 2010 V2: 66 tub valves, 2008 V4: 16 types of, 2010 V2: 69-70 Pressure Regulating Values for Liquified Petroleum Gas, 2010 V2: 115 pressure regulators compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 179 deluge valves, 2011 V3: 10 flushometer tanks, 2008 V4: 8 laboratory gas cylinders, 2011 V3: 271-272 natural gas systems, 2011 V3: 254-255 water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 163-164 pressure relief valves (PV), 2009 V1: 10, 15 Pressure Sewer Demonstration at the Borough of Phoenixville, Pennsylvania, 2010 V2: 154 pressure sewers, 2010 V2: 144 pressure swing air dryers, 2011 V3: 179 pressure switches (PS), 2009 V1: 10 pressure tanks, 2011 V3: 136 pressure vacuum breakers (PVBs), 2008 V4: 175, 178, 180, 185 pressure-volume relationships (gas laws), 2010 V2: 126 pressure water coolers, 2008 V4: 238, 239, 242 pressure water filters, 2010 V2: 159 pressure waves. See water hammer pressurized fuel delivery systems, 2011 V3: 145, 151-152 pretreated feed water, 2008 V4: 214 pretreating effluent. See bioremediation pretreatment systems prices, 2009 V1: 210. See also costs and economic concerns primary barriers for infectious wastes, 2010 V2: 240 primary tanks
aboveground types, 2011 V3: 148 construction, 2011 V3: 139 interstitial monitoring, 2011 V3: 143 underground tanks, 2011 V3: 138 prime costs, 2009 V1: 217 primers, 2009 V1: 136 priming in dry-pipe systems, 2011 V3: 8 priority pollutants, 2011 V3: 81 prism-like soils, 141, 2010 V2: 140 prisons, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 private onsite wastewater treatment systems (POWTS) aerobic wastewater treatment plants, 2010 V2: 150 collection and treatment alternatives, 2010 V2: 144-145 defined, 2009 V1: 27 distribution boxes, 2010 V2: 148-149 estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 inspection, 2010 V2: 153 introduction, 2010 V2: 139 large systems, 150, 2010 V2: 149 primary collection and treatment systems, 2010 V2: 139 private sewers, 2009 V1: 27 septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145-149 soil-absorption systems, 2010 V2: 139-142 private sewage disposal systems, 2009 V1: 27 private unit weighting in fixture flow rate estimates, 2008 V4: 207 private use defined, 2009 V1: 27 lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 private water systems codes and standards, 2010 V2: 155 drinking water demand, 2010 V2: 159 initial operation and maintenance, 2010 V2: 164 introduction, 2010 V2: 155 matching water storage to pump flow, 2010 V2: 162 performance specifications, 2010 V2: 164 sources of supply, 2010 V2: 155 system equipment, 2010 V2: 160-164 water quality, 2010 V2: 159-160 wells, 2010 V2: 155-157 Proceedings of the Third National Conference on Individual On Site Wastewater Systems, 2010 V2: 154 process gases, 2011 V3: 266 Process Piping Design (ASME B31.3), 2011 V3: 176, 277 Procurement and Contracting Requirements Group, 2009 V1: 58, 72 producer costs, 2009 V1: 217 producer gas, 2010 V2: 114 producers (vacuum) defined, 2010 V2: 178 locating, 2010 V2: 181 sizing, 2010 V2: 184 product costs, 2009 V1: 217 product dispensing systems aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 149 underground tank systems dispenser pans, 2011 V3: 146 fire suppression, 2011 V3: 146-147 fuel islands, 2011 V3: 146 fuel transactions, 2011 V3: 147 pressure dispensing, 2011 V3: 146 product dispensers, 2011 V3: 146

product level gauging, 2011 V3: 148, 149 product spec sheet examples, 2009 V1: 256 product standards, 2009 V1: 61, 2008 V4: 176 product substitutions, 2009 V1: 62 product water. See treated water production wells in geothermal energy, 2009 V1: 123 productivity rates, in cost estimation, 2009 V1: 87-88 products costs, 2009 V1: 217 detail/product/material specification checklist, 2009 V1: 215 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 71 in specifications, 2009 V1: 64 value engineering questions, 2009 V1: 209 professionals, defined, 2008 V4: 178 profit markup in cost determinations, 2009 V1: 210 programmers, irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 95 project conditions section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 70 project costs, 2009 V1: 210 project manuals contents of, 2009 V1: 56-57 defined, 2009 V1: 55 propagation velocity, 2009 V1: 6 propane, 2010 V2: 114. See also fuel-gas piping systems; liquified petroleum gas glossary, 2010 V2: 135-136 laboratory use, 2010 V2: 121 physical properties, 2010 V2: 113 sizing systems, 2010 V2: 135 in water supply, 2008 V4: 188 Propane 101 (propane101.com), 2010 V2: 137 propane regulators, 2010 V2: 132-133 propane torches, 2010 V2: 133 propane vaporizers, 2010 V2: 134 propeller water meters, 2010 V2: 60 property protection in fire protection, 2011 V3: 1 prophylactic additives to water, 2010 V2: 160 proportional solubility law, 2010 V2: 72 proportions of septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 proprietary names in specifications, 2009 V1: 60, 61-62 proprietary specifications, 2009 V1: 61-62 propylene, 2010 V2: 114 propylene glycol, 2009 V1: 141 Protected Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids (UL 2085), 2011 V3: 137 protected end of galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 protecting insulation, 2008 V4: 107-108 protection section in specifications, 2009 V1: 72 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 149 value engineering contract document clauses, 2009 V1: 251 protection saddles, 2008 V4: 140 protection shields defined, 2008 V4: 140 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 123 pipe hangers, 2008 V4: 123 protective coatings, 2009 V1: 136. See also coated metal protective potential, defined, 2009 V1: 143 protein-forming foam, 2011 V3: 25 protein-mixed chemical concentrates, 2011 V3: 25 protocol gases, 2011 V3: 266

Provent single-stack plumbing systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 PRV (pressure-regulating or reducing valves). See pressure-regulating or reducing valves prying actions in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 182 PS (polysulfone), 2009 V1: 32 PS (pressure switches), 2009 V1: 10 PS standards. See under International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) pseudo-dynamic elastic analysis, 2009 V1: 151 Pseudo Value Engineers, 2009 V1: 249 Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 2010 V2: 43 psf, PSF (pounds per square foot), 2009 V1: 15 psi, PSI (pounds per square inch) converting to metric units, 2011 V3: 30 measurements, 2011 V3: 184 psi absolute (psia, PSIA), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 78, 172 psi gage (psig, PSIG), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 172 psi gauge (psig, PSIG), 2011 V3: 78 symbols for, 2009 V1: 15 psia, PSIA (psi absolute), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 78, 172 psig, PSIG (psi gage), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 166, 2011 V3: 78, 172 psychrometry, defined, 2011 V3: 186 PTFE. See Teflon (PTFE) public, educating on graywater systems, 2010 V2: 27-28 public areas fixtures for, 2011 V3: 35 heel-proof grates, 2010 V2: 11 sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 11 public facilities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 20 public hydrants, 2009 V1: 12 Public Law 90-480, 2009 V1: 98 Public Law 93-112, 2009 V1: 98 Public Law 98, 2011 V3: 137 Public Law 616, 2011 V3: 137 public sewers availability of, 2011 V3: 225 defined, 2009 V1: 27 discharging into, 2010 V2: 227 neutralizing acid wastes for, 2010 V2: 235 public storm sewer systems, 2010 V2: 41, 2011 V3: 249 radioactive waste systems and, 2010 V2: 240 public swimming pools. See swimming pools public unit weighting in fixture flow rate estimates, 2008 V4: 207 public use defined, 2009 V1: 27 lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 public utilities, 2010 V2: 113, 116 public water supply. See municipal water supply Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW), 2011 V3: 83, 2008 V4: 249 pubs, 2008 V4: 18, 20 pull-out spray accessories, 2008 V4: 12, 13 pulsation, air compressors, 2011 V3: 177 pulse remote-readout gas meters. 2010 V2: 116 pump affinity laws, 2011 V3: 125 pump discharge lines (PD), 2009 V1: 8 pumper connections, 2009 V1: 12

pumping defined, 2011 V3: 186 septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 pumping head, 2010 V2: 161 pumps acoustics, 2008 V4: 145 applications booster pump systems, 2010 V2: 61-68 centralized drinking-water coolers, 2008 V4: 245, 247 chemical feed, 2011 V3: 129-130 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243 cooling vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 distilled water systems, 2008 V4: 212 domestic booster, 2008 V4: 99 drainage systems, 2008 V4: 99-100 fire pumps, 2011 V3: 21-22 fire suppression, 2008 V4: 99 geothermal energy systems, 2009 V1: 123 gravity tank systems, 2010 V2: 65-66 house pumps, 2010 V2: 66 hydropneumatic-tank systems, 2010 V2: 62, 64-65 liquid fuel systems, 2011 V3: 151-152 liquid-waste decontamination systems, 2010 V2: 240sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 229 solar, circulating system, 2011 V3: 197 solar systems, 2011 V3: 200, 201-202 specialty, 2008 V4: 99 storm drainage backup systems, 2010 V2: 41 sump pumps in sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 8-9 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104, 110, 114, 122-123, 125 - 126systems for water supplies, 2010 V2: 160-162 well pumps, 2010 V2: 160-162 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 automatic shutdown, 2011 V3: 84 bases, 2010 V2: 158, 161 casings, 2008 V4: 94 characteristic curves, 2008 V4: 97-98 controls, 2008 V4: 101 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 157 efficiency, 2009 V1: 6-7, 2008 V4: 94-96 environmental concerns, 2008 V4: 100-101 glossary, 2008 V4: 98 installation, 2008 V4: 101-102 matching water storage to pump flow, 2010 V2: 162 motor controls, 2010 V2: 63-64 mounting details, 2009 V1: 204 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194-201 overview, 2008 V4: 93-94 performance, 2008 V4: 97-98 power/capacity characteristic curves, 2008 V4: 97-98 pump affinity laws, 2009 V1: 6, 2011 V3: 125 purging vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 repairing, 2008 V4: 100 seals, 2008 V4: 94 secondary containment areas, 2011 V3: 84 staging, 2008 V4: 98-99 sulfuric acid and, 2010 V2: 231

temperature maintenance, 2008 V4: 99 timers, 2010 V2: 64 types of acid feed, 2011 V3: 129-130 axial, 2008 V4: 93-97 centrifugal, 2008 V4: 93-98 ejector pumps, 2011 V3: 228-229 mixed-flow, 2008 V4: 93-96 multiple pump systems, 2010 V2: 63 multistage, 2008 V4: 98-99 parallel pump systems, 2008 V4: 99 positive-displacement, 2008 V4: 93-98 regenerative pumps, 2008 V4: 98-99 submersible, 2010 V2: 158, 2011 V3: 151-152, 233 vertical, 2008 V4: 94, 98 volute, 2008 V4: 93, 98-99 vibration isolation, 2009 V1: 202, 2008 V4: 145 Pumps and Pump Systems, 2009 V1: 39 purchasers in cost equation, 2009 V1: 217 pure air properties, 2011 V3: 263-264 pure water, 2010 V2: 219, 2008 V4: 195, 218, 223 pure-water systems. See also water purification defined, 2010 V2: 187 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 46, 47-49 piping materials, 2011 V3: 48-49 types of pure water, 2011 V3: 47 purge valves, 2011 V3: 275 purging gas manifolds and regulators, 2011 V3: 275 laboratory gas lines, 2011 V3: 270 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 280 medical gas zones, 2011 V3: 67, 74 natural gas systems, 2011 V3: 257 vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 171 purified gas grade, 2011 V3: 267 purified water (PW), 2010 V2: 72, 74, 219, 2008 V4: 48, 195. See also pure-water systems; water purification purifiers, laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 273 purity compressed air, 2011 V3: 180 laboratory gases, 2011 V3: 263, 273 monitors, 2008 V4: 214 testing medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 75-76 push-on joints, 2011 V3: 221 push-seal gasketed drains, 2010 V2: 13 push-seal gasketed outlets, 2010 V2: 13 putrefaction, 2009 V1: 27 Putting Industrial Vacuum to Work, 2010 V2: 186 puzzles Nine Dots exercise, 2009 V1: 225, 252 Six Sticks exercise, 2009 V1: 225, 252 PV (plug valves). See plug valves (PV) PV (pressure relief valves), 2009 V1: 15 PVA (polyvinyl acetate), 2008 V4: 108 PVBs. See pressure vacuum breakers (PVBs) PVC. See polyvinyl chloride (PVC) PVC (polyvinyl chloride), 2010 V2: 94 PVDC (polyvinylidene chloride), 2009 V1: 32 PVDF (polyvinyl-fluoridine). See polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) PVDM (polyvinyl formal), 2009 V1: 32

PVE (Pseudo Value Engineers), 2009 V1: 249
PVK (polyvinyl carbazol), 2009 V1: 32
PW (pure water). See pure-water systems; purified water; water purification
pyramids, calculating volume, 2009 V1: 4
pyrogens, 2010 V2: 188, 213
distilled water and, 2008 V4: 195, 212
intravenous injections and, 2008 V4: 213
laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218
pure water systems and, 2011 V3: 47
pyrophoric gases, 2011 V3: 267

Q

qt, QT (quarts), 2009 V1: 39 quads, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 quality appearance of installations, 2009 V1: 262-263 building noise and perceptions of, 2009 V1: 187 building occupants and, 2009 V1: 263 building owners and, 2009 V1: 262 contractors and, 2009 V1: 262 in cost estimation, 2009 V1: 89 costs vs. benefits, 2009 V1: 253 equipment supports, 2009 V1: 258 low cost vs. high quality, 2009 V1: 263-264 makeshift or field-devised methods, 2009 V1: 254-257 mock-ups, 2009 V1: 264 quality assurance in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 70 quality control section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 72 regional and climate considerations, 2009 V1: 262 researching readily-available products and technologies, 2009 V1: 262 safety and, 2009 V1: 258-262 specification clarity and, 2009 V1: 253-254, 264 of water, 2010 V2: 27-28, 159-160. See also water analysis; water purification quantities. See also demand clean gas agents, 2011 V3: 27 in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 irrigation water, 2011 V3: 91 water supplies, 2011 V3: 2-6 quarter-circle rotary sprinklers, 2011 V3: 94 quarter-turn ball valves, 2008 V4: 83-84 quarter-turn butterfly valves, 2008 V4: 84 quarter-turn valves, lubricated plug cocks, 2008 V4: 84-85 quarts (qt, QT), 2009 V1: 39 questions in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 quick-coupling method of irrigation, 2011 V3: 92 quick-disconnect couplings, 2011 V3: 184 quick-opening devices, 2011 V3: 9 quick-response sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 quick valve closure, 2010 V2: 71 quieting pipes, 2010 V2: 13-14

R

- R (hydraulic radii), 2009 V1: 1
- °R, R (Rankines), 2009 V1: 15, 30
- *R*, R (thermal resistance), 2008 V4: 105, 106–107
- R, R- (refrigerants), 2009 V1: 140 R-13 and R-13A fire-protection systems, 2008 V4: 49

RAD (radiation). See radiation rad. RAD (radians). See radians rad/s (radians per second), 2009 V1: 34 rad/s² (radians per second squared), 2009 V1: 34 radians (RAD) measurement unit conversions, 2009 V1: 34 radians per second, 2009 V1: 34 radians per second squared, 2009 V1: 34 radiant emittance (exitance), 2011 V3: 191 radiant energy, 2008 V4: 216 radiant flux, 2011 V3: 191 radiant intensity, 2011 V3: 191 radiation (RADN, RAD) defined, 2011 V3: 191 nature of, 2010 V2: 236-237 radiation equivalent to man (rem), 2010 V2: 237 rads (radioactive dosage), 2010 V2: 237 treatment facilities, 2010 V2: 238 radicals (ions), 2009 V1: 134, 143, 2010 V2: 229 radio frequency remote-readout gas meters, 2010 V2: 116 radioactive waste drainage and vents allowable radiation levels, 2010 V2: 237 approval process and applications, 2010 V2: 238 diluting radwaste, 2010 V2: 240 introduction, 2010 V2: 235-236 measuring radiation, 2010 V2: 237 nature of radiation, 2010 V2: 236-237 pipe selection, 2010 V2: 239 radioactive materials, 2010 V2: 238 shielding systems, 2010 V2: 238 system design criteria, 2010 V2: 238-240 radioactivity defined, 2010 V2: 236-237 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 radioactive half lives, 2010 V2: 238 radioactive isotopes, 2010 V2: 236-237, 238 radiological characteristics of drinking water, 2010 V2: 217 Radiological Safety Officers, 2010 V2: 238 radium, 2008 V4: 187 radium 226, 2010 V2: 238 radius screwed ells, 2010 V2: 93 RADN (radiation). See radiation radon gas, 2010 V2: 160, 190, 217, 2008 V4: 187 radwaste (waterborne radioactive waste), 2010 V2: 236 rain shutoff devices, 2011 V3: 96 Rainbird Company, 2011 V3: 96 Rainfall Rates: How Much Rain Is Enough in Design?, 2010 V2: 55 rainwater and precipitation, 2008 V4: 118, 259-261 calculating intensity, 2010 V2: 44-46 calculating time of concentration, 2010 V2: 44-46 capturing rainwater, 2009 V1: 126 cisterns, 2010 V2: 162 duration, 2011 V3: 241-242 flow rates, 2010 V2: 53 imperviousness factor, 2011 V3: 239 inlet times, 2011 V3: 242 intensity-duration-frequency curves, 2011 V3: 239, 244 - 248pollution, 2010 V2: 45 precipitation, defined, 2009 V1: 27 rainfall rates, 2010 V2: 57, 2011 V3: 239, 240

rainwater drains (SD, ST). See storm-drainage systems regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262 return periods, 2011 V3: 240-241 runoff patterns, 2010 V2: 43 runoff volume calculation example, 2010 V2: 56 siphonic roof drains, 2010 V2: 53 storing in controlled flow systems, 2010 V2: 52-53 storm-drainage systems, 2010 V2: 41 raised-floor areas, 2011 V3: 27 ramp-drain grates, 2010 V2: 11 ramps, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 134-135 random hangers, 2008 V4: 140 range ability gas meters, 2010 V2: 117 Rankines (°R, R), 2009 V1: 15, 30, 2011 V3: 184 ranking functions in value engineering, 2009 V1: 235 rapid sand/direct filtration package plants, 2010 V2: 218 rate of corrosion acidity, 2009 V1: 134 Faraday's Law, 2009 V1: 134 film formation, 2009 V1: 135 homogeneity in, 2009 V1: 134 oxygen content, 2009 V1: 134 temperature, 2009 V1: 135 velocity in, 2009 V1: 135 rate of flow. See flow rates rated vacuum levels, 2010 V2: 166-167 ratings drinking water coolers, 2008 V4: 238 insulation smoke requirements and ratings, 2008 V4: 106 LEED, 2008 V4: 257-258 load ratings. See load ratings portable fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 28 saturated steam pressure valves, 2008 V4: 79 valves (v, V, VLV), 2008 V4: 79 water, oil, and gas (WOG) pressure rating, 2008 V4: 79, 86 ratio of specific heats, defined, 2011 V3: 186 Rational Method, 2009 V1: 7, 2010 V2: 42-43, 2011 V3: 238-239 raw sewage, 2009 V1: 27 raw water, 2010 V2: 187, 220 RCP (reinforced concrete pipe), 2008 V4: 28 RCRA (Resource Conservation and Recovery Act), 2010 V2: 242, 2011 V3: 82, 83, 137 rcvr, RCVR (receivers), 2010 V2: 170, 173 RD. See roof drainage re-flashing, 2011 V3: 23 reaction forces in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 180 Reactive Hazard gases, 2011 V3: 263 reactive silica, 2010 V2: 190 reactivity, hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 120 ready mix concrete, 2008 V4: 252 reagent grade water, 2010 V2: 219, 2008 V4: 218, 219 real costs, 2009 V1: 218 rear wall grab bars, 2009 V1: 106 reasonable care, defined, 2008 V4: 178 reasoning against value engineering, 2009 V1: 225 REC (receivers), 2010 V2: 170, 173 receiver tanks

medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 62-63 vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 64 receivers (rcvr, RCVR, REC), 2010 V2: 170, 173 receiving costs, 2009 V1: 217 receptors, 2009 V1: 27 recessed-box hose bibbs, 2009 V1: 10 recessed grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162 recessed sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 recessed water coolers, 2008 V4: 239-240, 241 recharge basins, 2011 V3: 250 rechargeable air chambers, 2010 V2: 73 recharging aquifers, 2010 V2: 155 rechlorination treatments, 2010 V2: 110-111 reciprocating air compressors, 2011 V3: 62, 174-175, 177, 2008 V4: 87 reciprocating (rotary) piston pumps, 2010 V2: 169 recirculating hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 109 recirculating sand filter sewage systems, 2010 V2: 145 recirculation systems for high purity water, 2011 V3: 48 for hot water, 2010 V2: 105 reclaimed water. See graywater systems reclamation, wastewater, 2008 V4: 259-260 recombined FOG (fats, oil, and grease), 2008 V4: 249 Recommendation phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209, 249 Recommendations for a New ADAAG, 2009 V1: 115 Recommended Practice for Backflow Prevention and Crossconnection Control, 2010 V2: 95 Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Fire Hydrants (NFPA 291), 2011 V3: 3, 30 Recommended Practice for Handling Releases of Flammable and Combustible Liquids and Gases (NFPA 329), 2011 V3: 137 records of cross connections, 2008 V4: 183 recovered energy, 2009 V1: 128 recovering heat from water heaters, 2010 V2: 100-101 recovery in reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 211 recovery pressure, defined, 2011 V3: 186 recovery rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 39 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 53, 56 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 recreational establishments estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 151 septic tank/soil-absorption systems for, 150, 2010 V2: 149 recreational pools, 2011 V3: 107 rectangles, calculating area, 2009 V1: 3 rectangular bath seats, 2009 V1: 114 rectangular solids, calculating volume, 2009 V1: 4 rectifiers, 2009 V1: 139, 140 recycled water systems. See graywater systems recycling systems, salt, 2008 V4: 209-211 red brass, 2009 V1: 132 reduced noise transmission, 2010 V2: 13-14 reduced-port valves, 2008 V4: 84 reduced pressure conditions in water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 163 defined, 2011 V3: 187 fall-off, 2008 V4: 80

in pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 94 reduced-pressure backflow preventers, 2010 V2: 94 reduced pressure zones (RPZ), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 60-61, 94, 2011 V3: 215, 220 reduced-pressure-principle backflow devices (RPBDs), 2010 V2: 94 applications, 2008 V4: 185 defined, 2008 V4: 174, 178-179, 180 reduced pressure zone backflow preventers, 2009 V1: 27 reduced-size venting, 2010 V2: 18-19 reduced temperature, defined, 2011 V3: 187 reduced water-flow rates, 2009 V1: 118 reduced water pressure differential, 2008 V4: 81 reduced zone backflow preventers (RZBP), 2009 V1: 10 reducers, defined, 2009 V1: 27 reducing bushings, 2010 V2: 92 redundancy in hazardous waste systems, 2011 V3: 84 reference standard specifications, 2009 V1: 61 references bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 253 cold water systems, 2010 V2: 95-96 conserving energy, 2009 V1: 128 cross connections, 2008 V4: 179 designing for people with disabilities, 2009 V1: 115 fire-protection systems, 2011 V3: 30 formulae, symbols, and terminology, 2009 V1: 39 gasoline and diesel-oil systems, 2011 V3: 156 graywater systems, 2010 V2: 29 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 166 green plumbing, 2008 V4: 265 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 78 irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 96 piping insulation, 2008 V4: 116 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 19 seismic protection, 2009 V1: 185 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 246 steam and condensate systems, 2011 V3: 169 thermal expansion, 2008 V4: 235 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 186 water treatment and purification, 2010 V2: 224-225, 2008 V4: 224 references section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 69 reflecting pools codes and standards, 2011 V3: 100-101 defined, 2009 V1: 27 design, 2011 V3: 98 flow rates, 2011 V3: 100 interactive, 2011 V3: 100 overview, 2011 V3: 98 reformatories, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 refrigerant after-coolers, 2011 V3: 178 refrigerants (R, R-), 2009 V1: 140 refrigerated air dryers, 2011 V3: 178 refrigeration loads, 2008 V4: 245, 246 refrigeration mechanical rooms, 2009 V1: 158 refrigeration piping, 2008 V4: 31, 32 refrigeration systems centralized chilled water systems, 2008 V4: 244-245, 246 heat reclamation, 2009 V1: 123 waste heat usage, 2009 V1: 123, 124 water coolers, 2008 V4: 242 regenerable ion exchange, 2010 V2: 205

regenerants, dealkalizing and, 2010 V2: 199 regeneration controls on ion exchangers, 2008 V4: 198 regeneration cycle in dealkalizing, 2010 V2: 199 defined, 2008 V4: 224 in deionizing, 2010 V2: 206-208, 207 in demineralizers, 2011 V3: 48, 2008 V4: 195 in ion exchange, 2010 V2: 208, 2008 V4: 198 salt recycling, 2008 V4: 211 service deionization, 2008 V4: 195 sodium chloride usage, 2008 V4: 199 in water softeners, 2010 V2: 210, 2008 V4: 206, 209 regenerative alternative media filters, 2011 V3: 122 regenerative diatomaceous earth filters, 2011 V3: 120-122 regenerative pumps (turbines), 2008 V4: 98-99 regional authorities, 2010 V2: 227 regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262 registers in fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 regulated substances, 2011 V3: 136 regulations. See codes and standards regulator creep, 2011 V3: 179, 272 regulator relief vents, 2010 V2: 121 regulators, 2009 V1: 27. See specific types of regulators propane, 2010 V2: 132–133 purging, 2011 V3: 275 Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (93-112), 2009 V1: 98 Reid, D., 2008 V4: 224 reinforced concrete pipe (RCP), 2008 V4: 28 reinforced thermosetting resin pipe (RTRP), 2008 V4: 56 reinforcing ribs in tanks, 2011 V3: 138 reject stream from reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 211 relative discharge curves, 2011 V3: 211 relative humidity (rh, RH), 2009 V1: 15, 2011 V3: 186, 265 Relative Resistance of Escherichin coli and Eberthella thyphosa to Chlorine and Chloramines, 2008 V4: 224relative velocity, 2008 V4: 154 relay interface controls, 2011 V3: 67 reliability of water supplies, 2011 V3: 2, 6 relief valves centralized drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 246 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 180-181 fire pumps, 2011 V3: 22 gas regulators, 2011 V3: 255 hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 106, 2008 V4: 231 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 274 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 sizing, 2010 V2: 106 water-pressure regulators and, 2008 V4: 81 Relief Values for Hot Water Supply Systems, 2010 V2: 112 relief vents defined, 2009 V1: 27 gas regulator relief vents, 2010 V2: 117-118 gas systems, 2010 V2: 121 gas trains, 2011 V3: 255 offsets, 2010 V2: 37 remote-control irrigation valves, 2011 V3: 94 remote earth (remote electrodes), 2009 V1: 143 remote electrodes, 2009 V1: 143 remote fill ports, 2011 V3: 139-140, 148 remote leakage from tanks, 2011 V3: 144

remote portions of fire design areas, 2011 V3: 12 remote-readout gas meters, 2010 V2: 116 remote-readout water meters, 2010 V2: 60 remote secondary-containment enclosures, 2011 V3: 148 remote water coolers, 2008 V4: 238 removal ratios for grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 157 Remove Organics by Activated Carbon Adsorption, 2010 V2: 225 removing tanks, 2011 V3: 154 rems (radiation equivalent to man), 2010 V2: 237 renewable energy resources, 2011 V3: 189 renovations, cost estimating and, 2009 V1: 90 repetition in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 replacements for Halon gases, 2011 V3: 27 Report on Hydraulics and Pneumatics of Plumbing Drainage Systems, 2010 V2: 19 reports cross connections, 2008 V4: 183 physical condition of buildings, 2009 V1: 267-269 research facilities, radiation in, 2010 V2: 238 research-grade gases, 2011 V3: 267 Research Report: Water Reuse Standards and Verification Protocol, 2010 V2: 29 researching new technologies and products, 2009 V1: 262 reserves (connected standbys), 2011 V3: 27 reservoirs, 2010 V2: 47 condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 164 defined, 2008 V4: 140 municipal, 2011 V3: 6 storm drainage systems, 2010 V2: 41 residential care facilities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 residential dual-check valve assemblies, 2008 V4: 180 residential garage sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 11 residential kitchen faucets, 2010 V2: 25 residential kitchen sinks faucets, 2008 V4: 13 types and requirements, 2008 V4: 11-12 residential land use, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 residential owners, responsibilities, 2008 V4: 182 residential sprinkler systems (fire protection), 2011 V3: 18 residential systems cold-water systems. See cold-water systems estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 firefighting demand flow rates, 2011 V3: 224 fixture drainage loads, 2010 V2: 3 gas appliances, 2010 V2: 116 hot-water systems. See hot-water systems irrigation, 2011 V3: 92 lavatory flow rates, 2008 V4: 10 numbers of fixtures, 2008 V4: 19 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133-134 sewage-disposal systems. See private onsite wastewater treatment systems (POWTS) sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 typical graywater supply and demand, 2010 V2: 24 water supply. See domestic water supply residual acids, 2008 V4: 200 residual pressure defined, 2009 V1: 27, 2010 V2: 94 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 208-210 fire hydrants, 2011 V3: 3

sprinkler hydraulic calculations, 2011 V3: 13 residual radiation, 2010 V2: 239 resilient mounts calculating vibration, 2008 V4: 147-148 economic concerns, 2008 V4: 151 natural frequencies and, 2008 V4: 146 vibration calculator, 2008 V4: 147-148 resilient pipe isolation, 2009 V1: 191, 201 resilient pipe supports, 2008 V4: 140 resilient seat discs, 2008 V4: 83 resilient wedges, 2008 V4: 83 resin beads, 2010 V2: 206 resins, dissolved metal removal, 2011 V3: 87 resins, ion-exchange continuous deionization, 2010 V2: 209-210 defined, 2010 V2: 205, 2008 V4: 197-199, 224 in diluting compartments, 2010 V2: 209 overview, 2010 V2: 205-206 regenerating, 2010 V2: 206 strong-acid and weak-acid, 2010 V2: 206 volatile organic compounds in, 2010 V2: 191 resistance ratings (fire loads), 2011 V3: 2 resistivity defined, 2009 V1: 27, 143 low extractable PVC, 2008 V4: 56 resistivity meters, 2008 V4: 197, 214 soil, 2009 V1: 138 resonance and ringing calculating, 2008 V4: 149 preventing, 2008 V4: 120 upper floor installations, 2008 V4: 150 vibration and, 2008 V4: 145 resonant amplification, defined, 2008 V4: 146 resource conservation, 2009 V1: 117 Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, 2009 V1: 117, 2010 V2: 242, 2011 V3: 82, 137 resources gasoline and diesel-oil systems, 2011 V3: 156 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 78 industrial wastewater treatment, 2011 V3: 89 irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 96-97 solar energy, 2011 V3: 203 respirators, 2010 V2: 229, 231 response factor in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 177 response in pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 94 response spectrum in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 151, 180 responsibilities of owners and engineers, 2008 V4: 184 rest homes, 2008 V4: 208 restaurants, 150, 2010 V2: 149. See also food-processing areas and kitchens drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 fixtures, 2008 V4: 18, 20 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 153 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 restraints and restraining control devices defined, 2008 V4: 140 for earthquakes, 2009 V1: 158, 183 for fire-protection joints, 2011 V3: 221 illustrated, 2008 V4: 123 restricted areas (facilities with radiation), 2010 V2: 237 restrooms. See water-closet compartments; water closets retail stores, 2008 V4: 19, 245

retaining straps, 2008 V4: 140 retard chambers, 2011 V3: 6, 7 retention basins, 2011 V3: 250 bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 FOG bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 retention periods for grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 154-155 retention ratios in bioremediation, 2008 V4: 253 retirement costs, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 retractable ceiling medical gas columns, 2011 V3: 56 return air (ra, RA), 2009 V1: 262 return bends, 2010 V2: 93 return circuits, 2009 V1: 129 return offsets, 2009 V1: 27 return periods, 2009 V1: 27 return periods in rainfall, 2010 V2: 57, 2011 V3: 240-241 reusing water. See graywater systems rev, REV (revolutions), 2009 V1: 15 revent pipes, 2009 V1: 27. See also individual vents reverse flow active control, 2008 V4: 173-175 air gaps, 2008 V4: 172-173, 176 barometric loops, 2008 V4: 172-173 causes, 2008 V4: 170-171 passive control, 2008 V4: 172-173 vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 173-174, 175, 176 water distribution hazards, 2008 V4: 171-172 reverse osmosis (RO) applications, 2008 V4: 219 cartridges, 2010 V2: 194 continuous deionization and, 2010 V2: 210 defined, 2010 V2: 211-213, 2008 V4: 195-196 drinking-water coolers, 2008 V4: 243 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 48 history and current technology, 2008 V4: 217 laboratory grade water comparison, 2008 V4: 218 membrane configurations, 2010 V2: 211-212 membrane selection, 2010 V2: 213 overview, 2008 V4: 216-217 polishing systems, 2008 V4: 219 polymer membranes, 2010 V2: 213 silica and, 2010 V2: 190 small drinking water systems, 2010 V2: 218 VOCs in membranes, 2010 V2: 191 water problems, 2008 V4: 187 water quality, 2008 V4: 217-219 water softening pretreatment, 2008 V4: 206 water supply (RO), 2009 V1: 8 Reverse Osmosis and Nanofiltration System Design, 2010 V2: 224 Reverse Osmosis Membrane Research, 2008 V4: 224 reverse-trap water closets, 2008 V4: 3 reversible potential, defined, 2009 V1: 143 revolutions (rev, REV) revolutions per minute (rpm, RPM), 2009 V1: 15 revolutions per second (rps, RPS), 2009 V1: 15 Reynold's number for turbulence, 2009 V1: 2, 2010 V2: 74-75, 77, 2008 V4: 154 RF remote-readout gas meters, 2010 V2: 116 RFP (fiberglass reinforced plastic), 2010 V2: 78, 94 rgh, RGH (roughness). See roughness of pipes rh, RH (relative humidity). See relative humidity RHO (density). See density

rhomboids, calculating area, 2009 V1: 4 rhombuses, calculating area, 2009 V1: 3 RI (Ryzner stability index), 2010 V2: 196 Richardson, D.W., Sr., 2010 V2: 224 rigging, 2008 V4: 140 right-angle triangles, calculating area, 2009 V1: 4 rigid braces, 2008 V4: 140 rigid ceiling medical gas columns, 2011 V3: 56 rigid cellular urethane, 2008 V4: 111 rigid hangers, 2008 V4: 140 rigid pipes expansion of, 2008 V4: 230 plastic piping, 2011 V3: 150 rigid supports, 2008 V4: 140 rim top test, 2008 V4: 5 rims defined, 2009 V1: 27 on urinals, 2009 V1: 108 rim top test, 2008 V4: 5 water closets, 2008 V4: 4-5 ring bands, 2008 V4: 140 ring buoys, 2011 V3: 135 ring hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 126 ring-securing methods around drains, 2010 V2: 16 ringing in pipes. See resonance and ringing rinsing in regeneration cycle, 2010 V2: 206, 208, 2008 V4: 224ripraps, 2009 V1: 27 riser clamps, 2009 V1: 194, 2008 V4: 121, 123, 126, 140 riser hangers, 2008 V4: 140 riser-mounted sprinklers, 2011 V3: 93 risers bracing, 2009 V1: 161, 171 checklists, 2009 V1: 94 defined, 2009 V1: 27, 2011 V3: 78, 2008 V4: 140 earthquake protection and joints, 2009 V1: 161 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 67 natural gas piping, 2010 V2: 131 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 191 riser clamps, 2008 V4: 121, 123, 140 riser down (elbows), 2009 V1: 10 riser hangers, 2008 V4: 140 riser-mounted sprinklers, 2011 V3: 93 riser up (elbows), 2009 V1: 11 symbols for, 2009 V1: 12 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 228 rises or drops, 2009 V1: 11 rising stems (RS), 2008 V4: 74 with inside screws, 2008 V4: 79 with outside screws, 2008 V4: 79 Risk Guides in value engineering, 2009 V1: 248 rivers cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 189 piping systems near, 2008 V4: 120 riveted steel piping, 2010 V2: 75, 78 rms (root main square), 2009 V1: 15 RNA materials, 2008 V4: 215 RO (reverse osmosis). See reverse osmosis roadblocks to creativity, 2009 V1: 225 rock salt, 2010 V2: 210 rod couplings, 2008 V4: 140 rod hangers, 2008 V4: 140

rod stiffeners, 2008 V4: 127, 140 Rodie, E. R., 2008 V4: 166 rods and anchors, 2008 V4: 127, 140 Roentgens, 2010 V2: 237 roll and plate devices, 2008 V4: 140 roll hangers, 2008 V4: 140 roll-in shower compartments, 2009 V1: 110-111 roll plates, 2008 V4: 140 roll stands, 2008 V4: 140 roll trapezes, 2008 V4: 140 rollers, 2008 V4: 67, 68, 123 roof drainage, 2010 V2: 41 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 188 avoiding septic tank disposal, 2010 V2: 147 controlled flow systems, 2010 V2: 52-53 limited-discharge roof drains, 2011 V3: 250 RD abbreviation, 2009 V1: 15 roof drain sizes, 2010 V2: 54 roof drains, defined, 2009 V1: 27 siphonic roof drains, 2010 V2: 53 roofing design considerations in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 180 imperviousness factors, 2011 V3: 239 roof penetrations, 2010 V2: 34 roofing tar kettles, 2010 V2: 133 root main square (rms), 2009 V1: 15 rotary gas meters, 2010 V2: 116-117 rotary lobe compressors, 2011 V3: 175 rotary lobe (roots) pumps, 2010 V2: 169 rotary piston pumps, 2010 V2: 169 rotary pop-up sprinklers, 2011 V3: 92, 93 rotary screw air compressors, 2011 V3: 62, 175 rotary vane, once-through-oil pumps, 2010 V2: 169 rotating filters, 2011 V3: 88 rotational natural frequencies, 2008 V4: 146 rotors in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125 rotting cork, 2008 V4: 149 rough-ins checklist, 2009 V1: 95 examples of poor quality, 2009 V1: 255 roughing in, defined, 2009 V1: 27 water closets, 2008 V4: 4 rough vacuum, 2010 V2: 165 roughness of pipes fairly rough pipe, 2010 V2: 81 fairly smooth pipe, 2010 V2: 80 laminar flow and, 2010 V2: 74 pipe sizing and, 2010 V2: 75-84 pipe types and, 2010 V2: 78 rough pipe, 2010 V2: 82 smooth pipe, 2010 V2: 79 types of pipes and, 2010 V2: 75 round bowls on water closets, 2008 V4: 4 round surfaces, heat loss and, 2008 V4: 113 RPBDs. See reduced-pressure-principle backflow devices rpm, RPM (revolutions per minute), 2009 V1: 15 rps, RPS (revolutions per second), 2009 V1: 15 RPZ (reduced pressure zones), 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 60-61, 62-63, 94, 2011 V3: 215, 220 RS. See rising stems (RS) RSOs (Radiological Safety Officers), 2010 V2: 238 RTRP (reinforced thermosetting resin pipe), 2008 V4: 56

RTRP-11AF1 standard, 2008 V4: 56 rubber noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190, 194 vibration control, 2008 V4: 146, 151 vibration insulation, 2008 V4: 149 rubber compression gaskets, 2008 V4: 25 rubber facing in dry-pipe clappers, 2011 V3: 8 Rubber-Gasket Joints, 2008 V4: 28 rubber gaskets, 2008 V4: 32 rubber-in-shear isolators, 2009 V1: 158 rubber insulation, 2008 V4: 106-107, 109 rubber isolation devices noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 197-198 rubber insulation, 2008 V4: 106-107, 109 with steel spring isolators, 2008 V4: 149-150 vibration control, 2008 V4: 146, 151 rubble drains (french drains), 2009 V1: 24 rules in Function Analysis, 2009 V1: 218 running loads, condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 165 running traps, 2011 V3: 45 runoff imperviousness factor, 2011 V3: 239 patterns, 2010 V2: 43 Rational Method, 2010 V2: 42-43 rational method and, 2011 V3: 238-239 Rational method for calculating, 2009 V1: 7 volume calculation, commercial sites, 2010 V2: 56 runouts, 2009 V1: 27 Russell SRTA (Stationary Reflector/Tracking Absorber) system, 2011 V3: 195-196 rust as contaminant in air, 2011 V3: 265 formation in iron pipes, 2009 V1: 129 rusting, defined, 2009 V1: 143 RV (pressure-relief valves). See pressure-regulating or reducing valves Ryzner stability index (RI), 2010 V2: 196 RZBP (reduced zone backflow preventers), 2009 V1: 10

S

S (entropy), 2009 V1: 34 S (siemens), 2009 V1: 34 S (soil). See soils S (soil sewers), 2009 V1: 8 S (conductance), 2009 V1: 34 s, SEC (seconds), 2009 V1: 33 s traps (unvented traps), 2011 V3: 45 sacrificial anodes, 2009 V1: 137 saddles and rollers, 2008 V4: 68, 123, 126, 140 saddles for tanks, 2011 V3: 155 Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974, 2010 V2: 155, 159, 187, 217, 2008 V4: 179, 186 Safe Handling of Acids, 2010 V2: 246 safety. See also hazards controlled substance spills, 2010 V2: 186 flammable and volatile liquids, 2010 V2: 244-246 fountains, 2011 V3: 100 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 125 gas utility controllers and laboratory service panels, 2010 V2: 121 gases in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 148

hot-water systems, 2010 V2: 97, 111 life safety in fire protection, 2011 V3: 1 propane, 2010 V2: 131 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132, 133-134 quality installations and, 2009 V1: 258-262 radioactive waste-drainage systems, 2010 V2: 239 Radiological Safety Officers, 2010 V2: 238 reflecting pools and, 2011 V3: 100 safety factors, defined, 2008 V4: 140 sanitary precautions for wells, 2010 V2: 159 storm drainage collection systems, 2010 V2: 46 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104-106, 135 types of acids, 2010 V2: 230-232 vacuum cleaning system issues, 2010 V2: 186 water features, 2011 V3: 134 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction (OSHA 29 CFR 1926), 2011 V3: 136 safety cabinets, 2010 V2: 241 safety factors, defined, 2008 V4: 140 safety shut-off devices, 2010 V2: 136 sal soda. See sodium carbonate (soda ash) sales tax, in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 86 salesmanship in value engineering, 2009 V1: 249 salt-laden air, 2009 V1: 262 salt splitting, 2010 V2: 199 salt water, 2008 V4: 120 salts. See also sodium chloride defined. 2008 V4: 224 in distilled water, 2008 V4: 212 ions in reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 187 in irrigation water, 2011 V3: 91 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 recycling systems, water softeners, 2008 V4: 209-211 storage, 2008 V4: 211 water hardness and, 2008 V4: 196 water purity and, 2008 V4: 195 water softener consumption, 2008 V4: 206-207, 209 samples acid wastes, 2011 V3: 45 infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 radioactive waste effluent, 2010 V2: 240 sampling manholes, 2011 V3: 45 SAN (sanitary sewers), 2009 V1: 8, 28. See also sanitary drainage systems San Diego Gas & Electric Company, 2009 V1: 128 San Fernando Earthquake, 2009 V1: 152 sand filtration drinking water, 2010 V2: 159-160, 218 earthquake damage to filters, 2009 V1: 152 horizontal pressure sand filters, 2008 V4: 202 laboratory water, 2010 V2: 201 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 221 sand filters defined, 2009 V1: 28 sewage treatment, 2010 V2: 145 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 110, 114, 117-118 vertical pressure sand filters, 2008 V4: 203 sand points, 2010 V2: 157 sands graywater irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 25 imperviousness factors, 2011 V3: 239 porous soils, 2011 V3: 91, 96 in soil texture, 2010 V2: 140

storm water infiltration, 2010 V2: 48 sanistans, 2011 V3: 40 sanitary building drains. See also sanitary drainage systems as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 188 cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23 sanitary, defined, 2009 V1: 28 sanitary drain system pumps, 2008 V4: 100 sanitary drainage fitting codes, 2009 V1: 44 sanitary drainage systems alternative disposal methods, 2011 V3: 237 alternative systems, 2010 V2: 16-19 building sewers (house drains), 2010 V2: 14-15, 2008 V4: 23 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 1 components, 2010 V2: 8-12, 2011 V3: 225-228 connections, 2011 V3: 226, 249 defined, 2010 V2: 1 drainage loads, 2010 V2: 3 drainage structures, 2011 V3: 226-228 fittings, 2009 V1: 44 fixture discharge characteristics, 2010 V2: 3 floor leveling around drains, 2010 V2: 16 flow in, 2010 V2: 1-2 force main connections, 2011 V3: 234 graywater systems and, 2010 V2: 27-28 grease interceptors, 2011 V3: 226 grease interceptors and, 2008 V4: 162 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 42-46 joining methods, 2010 V2: 13-14 kitchen areas, 2010 V2: 15 laboratories, 2011 V3: 43-44 materials for, 2010 V2: 13 overview, 2011 V3: 225 pipes, 2009 V1: 44 pneumatic pressures in, 2010 V2: 2-3 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 protection from damage, 2010 V2: 16 Provent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 public sewer availability, 2011 V3: 225 reduced-size venting, 2010 V2: 18-19 sample letters, 2011 V3: 225 sanitary sewers (SAN, SS), 2009 V1: 8, 28 sanitation and cleaning, 2010 V2: 15 self-cleansing velocities, 2010 V2: 7 sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 228-237 single-stack systems, 2010 V2: 18 sizing, 2011 V3: 224, 225 sloping drain capacities, 2010 V2: 5-8 Sovent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 stack capacities, 2010 V2: 3-5 supports, 2010 V2: 12 thermal expansion, 2010 V2: 16 trenching and bedding, 2011 V3: 225-226, 227 vacuum drainage systems, 2010 V2: 19 waterproofing, 2010 V2: 15-16 sanitary fixture units (SFU), 2009 V1: 15 sanitary joints, 2011 V3: 48-49 sanitary sewer pipe codes, 2009 V1: 44 sanitary sewer systems. See sanitary drainage systems sanitary tees flow capacity and, 2010 V2: 4

water closet installation, 2008 V4: 6 sanitaryware. See fixtures sanitation. See also cleanouts feed water, 2010 V2: 195 fixture materials and, 2008 V4: 1 floor drains, 2008 V4: 16 precautions for wells, 2010 V2: 159 sanitary seals on wells, 2010 V2: 156 stainless steel piping, 2008 V4: 59 underdeveloped nations, 2008 V4: 255-256 water softeners, 2010 V2: 211 sanitizer levels, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 127 sanitizers/oxidizers feed system, 2011 V3: 130-131 hospitals, 2011 V3: 40 ozone system, 2011 V3: 133-134 UV system, 2011 V3: 133-134 Sansone, John T., 2010 V2: 55 SARA Title III Act (Superfund Amendment and Reauthorization Act of 1986), 2011 V3: 137 sasol, 2010 V2: 114 sat., SAT (saturation). See saturation saturated air and vapor mixtures, 2011 V3: 187, 265 saturated steam defined, 2011 V3: 157-158 pressure, 2011 V3: 159-161 valve ratings, 2008 V4: 79 saturated vapor pressure, 2011 V3: 187 saturation (sat., SAT) defined, 2011 V3: 187 of soils, 2010 V2: 141 of water with calcium carbonate, 2010 V2: 196 saturation pressure, 2011 V3: 187 SAVE. See Society of American Value Engineering sawcutting trenches, labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87 Saybolt Seconds Furol (ssf, SSF), 2011 V3: 137 Saybolt Seconds Universal (ssu, SSU), 2011 V3: 137 SBR (styrene butadiene), 2009 V1: 32 SC (sillcocks), 2009 V1: 15 scalars, defined, 2009 V1: 85 scalding water, 2010 V2: 97, 111, 2008 V4: 113 scale and scale formation boilers, 2010 V2: 215 chlorides and sulfates, 2010 V2: 190 cooling towers, 2010 V2: 217 distilled water and, 2008 V4: 212 fixtures and appliances, 2008 V4: 205 hardness and, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 196 impure water and, 2008 V4: 194 Langelier saturation index, 2010 V2: 196 magnesium and, 2010 V2: 190 predicting water deposits and corrosion, 2010 V2: 196-197 removing with water softening, 2010 V2: 210 Ryzner stability index, 2010 V2: 196 in stills, 2008 V4: 213 temperature and, 2008 V4: 205 total dissolved solids and, 2010 V2: 193 water deposits and corrosion, 2010 V2: 195-196 water piping systems, 2010 V2: 160 scale plates, 2008 V4: 140

scanning electron microscopy, 2010 V2: 188. See also electron microscopes scavenging adapters, 2011 V3: 66 scfh (standard cfh), 2010 V2: 126 scfm, SCFM (standard cubic feet per minute) ambient free air and, 2010 V2: 166 compressed air pipe sizing, 2011 V3: 183 compressed air tools, 2011 V3: 180 defined, 2011 V3: 78, 187 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 medical vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 64 sizing gas systems, 2011 V3: 269 scfs, SCFS (cubic feet per second), 2009 V1: 34 Schedule 10 steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 Schedule 40 ABS pipe, 2008 V4: 54 Schedule 40 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 62 Schedule 40 polypropylene pipe, 2008 V4: 54 Schedule 40 polyvinyl pipe, 2008 V4: 53 Schedule 40 PVC plastic, 2011 V3: 13, 2008 V4: 53 Schedule 40 PVDF pipe, 2008 V4: 55 Schedule 40 steel pipe, 2008 V4: 44-45 Schedule 80 ABS pipe, 2008 V4: 54 Schedule 80 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 62 Schedule 80 polypropylene pipe, 2008 V4: 54 Schedule 80 polyvinyl pipe, 2008 V4: 53 Schedule 80 PVC plastic, 2008 V4: 53 Schedule 80 PVC plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 213 Schedule 80 PVDF pipe, 2008 V4: 55 Schedule 80 steel pipe, 2008 V4: 46-47 schedules (pipe size), 2009 V1: 28 schedules (project) checklist, 2009 V1: 94-95 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 70, 72 school laboratories. See laboratories schools hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 laboratory gas systems, 2010 V2: 121 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 21 septic tank systems for, 150, 2010 V2: 149 shower room grates, 2010 V2: 11 swimming pools and, 2011 V3: 108 vacuum calculations for, 2010 V2: 180 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208, 245 Schueler, Thomas R., 2010 V2: 55 scope lines, 2009 V1: 219 scoring pipes and equipment, 2008 V4: 194 screening in graywater treatment, 2010 V2: 25 vacuum exhaust piping, 2010 V2: 184 screw compressors, 2011 V3: 175, 177 screw pumps, 2010 V2: 169 screwed bonnets, 2008 V4: 74, 79 screwed ells, 2010 V2: 93 screwed ends of valves, 2008 V4: 79 screwed fittings, 2009 V1: 152 screwed-lug type valves, 2008 V4: 77 screwed mechanical joints, 2010 V2: 232 screwed tees, 2010 V2: 93 screwed union-ring bonnets, 2008 V4: 79 scrub-up sinks, 2011 V3: 36, 38, 40 scum in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 scuppers, 2009 V1: 28, 2010 V2: 52

SCW (soft cold water), 2009 V1: 8 SD (storm or rainwater drains). See storm-drainage systems SDI (service deionization), 2008 V4: 195 SDI (silt density index), 2010 V2: 194 SDR (standard dimension ratio) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 15 HDPE pipe, 2008 V4: 51 SDR21 PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 53 SDR26 PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 53 SE (sea level). See sea level sea level (sl, SL, SE) atmospheric pressure, 2011 V3: 186 barometric pressure, 2011 V3: 172 vacuum ratings, 2010 V2: 166 sealed sprinklers, 2011 V3: 8 sealing grouts in wells, 2010 V2: 158 seals butterfly valve seals, 2008 V4: 86 elastomeric seals or gaskets, 2008 V4: 229 flashing rings, 2010 V2: 11 floor drains in infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 pumps, 2008 V4: 94 seal liquids in vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 170 trap seals in floor drains, 2010 V2: 11 water closets, 2008 V4: 6 well fixtures, 2010 V2: 158 seamless copper pipe, 2008 V4: 30-32 seamless copper water tube, 2008 V4: 30-42 seamless steel piping, 2008 V4: 48 seasonal flow rates, 2008 V4: 207 seats accessible shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112 bathtub and shower seats, 2009 V1: 109, 114-115 seat fouling tests, 2008 V4: 5 toilets, 2009 V1: 108 water closets, 2008 V4: 5 seats (valves) gate valves, 2008 V4: 83 globe/angle-globe valves, 2008 V4: 83 seat erosion, 2008 V4: 75-76 seat tests, 2008 V4: 89 seawater, 2009 V1: 141 second-guessing designs, 2009 V1: 208 second-stage propane regulators, 2010 V2: 132-133 secondary containment of hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 of infectious wastes, 2010 V2: 240 secondary containment tanks aboveground types, 2011 V3: 147-148 interstitial monitoring, 2011 V3: 143 interstitial spaces, 2011 V3: 139 underground tanks, 2011 V3: 139 secondary functions, 2009 V1: 219, 223 secondary gas regulators, 2010 V2: 121 secondary pipe liquid monitoring, 2011 V3: 145 secondary pipe vapor monitoring, 2011 V3: 145 secondary roof drains, 2009 V1: 28 secondary storm-drainage systems controlled-flow systems, 2010 V2: 52-53 planning for in design, 2010 V2: 52 scuppers, 2010 V2: 52

seconds (s, SEC), 2009 V1: 33 Seconds Redwood, 2011 V3: 137 Seconds Saybolt Furol (SSF), 2011 V3: 137 Seconds Saybolt Universal (SSU), 2011 V3: 137 sectional modulus, 2008 V4: 228 Sectionformat, 2009 V1: 59, 62-65 sections in Manual of Practice, 2009 V1: 68-72 MasterFormat 2004, 2009 V1: 59-60 of pump equipment, 2010 V2: 161 in specifications, 2009 V1: 62-65 security of oxygen storage areas, 2011 V3: 59 sediment removing, 2010 V2: 198-199 in water, 2010 V2: 188 sediment buckets kitchen drains, 2010 V2: 15-16 materials, 2010 V2: 13 in oil collectors, 2010 V2: 12 in sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 11 sedimentation bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 in graywater treatment, 2010 V2: 25 turbidity and, 2008 V4: 196 in water treatment, 2010 V2: 198-199 Sedimentation and the Design of Settling Tanks, 2008 V4: 166 seepage beds. See soil-absorption sewage systems seepage flanges, 2010 V2: 15-16 seepage pits, 2009 V1: 28, 2010 V2: 25, 2011 V3: 237 seiches, 2009 V1: 149 seismic, defined, 2009 V1: 185 seismic control devices, 2009 V1: 190, 2008 V4: 140 seismic design categories, 2009 V1: 157 Seismic Design for Buildings, 2009 V1: 174, 185 seismic forces, hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 67, 119 seismic joints, crossing, 2009 V1: 152 seismic loads, 2008 V4: 140 seismic pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 121 seismic protection calculating seismic forces, 2009 V1: 179-180 causes and effects of earthquakes, 2009 V1: 148-149 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 147, 174 computer analysis of piping systems, 2009 V1: 180 damage from earthquakes, 2009 V1: 149 design considerations, 2009 V1: 180-182 earthquake measurement and seismic design, 2009 V1: 151 - 152equipment protection, 2009 V1: 153-158 glossary, 2009 V1: 185 introduction, 2009 V1: 145-148 learning from past earthquakes, 2009 V1: 152-153 pipe restraints, 2009 V1: 158-179, 2010 V2: 12, 16, 2011 V3: 18 plumbing equipment, 2009 V1: 262 potential problems, 2009 V1: 183 references, 2009 V1: 185 seismic loads, defined, 2009 V1: 145 seismic risk maps, 2009 V1: 145-146 underground storage tanks and, 2011 V3: 138 Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, 2009 V1: 185

selective attack corrosion, 2009 V1: 131-132 selective surfaces, 2011 V3: 191 selectivity coefficients, 2010 V2: 205 selenium, 2008 V4: 186, 187 self-bracing problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 self-cleansing velocities, 2010 V2: 7 self-closing valves, 2011 V3: 35 self-contained breathing units, 2010 V2: 229, 231 self-contained fountains, 2011 V3: 98 Self-Contained Mechanically-Refrigerated Drinking Water Coolers, 2008 V4: 243 self-extinguishing, defined, 2009 V1: 28 self-jetting well points, 2010 V2: 157 self-metering faucets, 2008 V4: 13 self-priming pumps, 2011 V3: 110, 122 self-regulating heat-trace systems, 2010 V2: 105-106 self-scouring velocity in sewers, 2011 V3: 225 self-siphonage, 2010 V2: 2 self-venting in Provent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 self-venting in Sovent systems, 2010 V2: 17-18 selling functions, 2009 V1: 218 SEMI (Semiconductor Equipment and Materials International), 2010 V2: 218 SEMI (Semiconductor Equipment Manufacturers Institute), 2010 V2: 187 semi-ambulatory individuals semi-ambulatory disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 water closet requirements, 2009 V1: 108 semi-automatic grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 159 semi-circular lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 semi-engineered drawings, 2008 V4: 141 semi-engineered hanger assemblies, 2008 V4: 141 semi-instantaneous water heaters, 2010 V2: 104 semi-permeable membranes, 2011 V3: 48, 2008 V4: 217, 219 semi-plug disc assemblies, 2008 V4: 83 semi-recessed water coolers, 2008 V4: 240, 241 semiautomatic changeover manifolds, 2011 V3: 271 semiautomatic dry standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20 Semiconductor Equipment and Materials International, 2010 V2: 218 Semiconductor Equipment Manufacturers Institute, 2010 V2: 187 Sendelbach, M.G., 2010 V2: 225 seniors. See elderly sensible heat (SH) defined, 2009 V1: 128, 2011 V3: 157 heat transfer efficiency and, 2011 V3: 162 sensitivity in pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 94 sensors corrosive-waste systems, 2011 V3: 43 faucet controls, 2009 V1: 128 flow, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 114-115, 124-125 grease removal devices, 2008 V4: 159-160 hazardous material level sensors, 2011 V3: 84 level-sensing, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 131–132 line-pressure sensors, 2011 V3: 67 liquid fuel leakage, 2011 V3: 145 pH sensors, 2011 V3: 44 pressure sensors, 2010 V2: 63 separating systems for acid waste, 2010 V2: 229, 235 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252

FOG bioremediation systems, 2008 V4: 250 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 154-156 for oil, 2010 V2: 245-246 separator/filters in air compressors, 2011 V3: 178, 180 separators in vacuum cleaning systems kinds of materials, 2010 V2: 184 location, 2010 V2: 181 pressure loss, 2010 V2: 184 types of systems, 2010 V2: 178-179 septic tanks biological treatment of sewage in, 2010 V2: 145 chemicals in, 2010 V2: 147 cleaning, 2010 V2: 148 clogging materials, 2010 V2: 147-148 compartments, 2010 V2: 147 defined, 2009 V1: 28 estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 grease interceptors, 2010 V2: 147 institutional and recreational establishments, 2010 V2: 149 - 150percolation rates and, 2010 V2: 153 sanitary sewers and, 2011 V3: 237 sizing, 2010 V2: 146 solids removal, 2010 V2: 145 specifications, 2010 V2: 145-147 venting, 2010 V2: 148 septum filters, 2010 V2: 218 sequence of project phases, cost estimates and, 2009 V1: 90 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 70 sequential functions in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 221-223 sequential functions in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 221-223 series of pumps, 2008 V4: 98-99 series water conditioning equipment, 2008 V4: 208 service cocks, 2010 V2: 91 service conditions, defined, 2008 V4: 141 service connections for water piping, 2008 V4: 69 service deionization, 2010 V2: 208-209 service deionization (SDI), 2008 V4: 195 service factors, 2009 V1: 28 service flow rates for water softeners, 2008 V4: 205-206 service gaskets, 2008 V4: 60 service hot water, 2009 V1: 28 service runs, defined, 2008 V4: 224 service sinks, 2010 V2: 86, 99, 2008 V4: 12-13, 18-21 abbreviations, 2009 V1: 15 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 199 Service Station Tankage Guide (API 1611), 2011 V3: 156 service stations, 2011 V3: 147, 2008 V4: 19 service valves propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 service water heating, solar, 2011 V3: 196-199 service-weight cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23, 26-27 services costs, 2009 V1: 210 ongoing and one-time costs, 2009 V1: 217 set pressure in pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 94, 106 settlement. See bedding and settlement; creep; sedimentation settling tanks, 2011 V3: 88, 2008 V4: 201 settling velocity, 2008 V4: 154 severe backflow hazards, 2011 V3: 215

sewage, defined, 2009 V1: 28. See also effluent sewage effluent. See effluent sewage ejectors, 2009 V1: 28, 2011 V3: 228, 2008 V4: 99 sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 228-236 flow rates, 2011 V3: 236 force mains, 2011 V3: 236 overview, 2011 V3: 228-229 pipes, 2011 V3: 236 required head, 2011 V3: 229 sewage pumps, 2011 V3: 229 storage basins, 2011 V3: 235-236 vacuum and pressure venting, 2011 V3: 236-237 velocity in pipes, 2011 V3: 236 sewage pumps, 2008 V4: 99-100 sewage systems. See sewer systems sewage treatment plants, 2010 V2: 27-28 sewer gas, 2010 V2: 114 sewer mains, 2008 V4: 28 sewer systems. See also building sewers; private onsite wastewater treatment systems (POWTS); public sewers; soil-absorption sewage systems; specific types of sewers combined systems, 2011 V3: 249 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 discharge from laboratories, 2011 V3: 43-44 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 sample sewer services letter, 2011 V3: 260 sanitary sewer systems, 2011 V3: 225-237. See also sanitary drainage systems sewer manholes, 2008 V4: 184 sewer video equipment, 2010 V2: 10 storm sewers, 2011 V3: 237-243 SFU (sanitary fixture units), 2009 V1: 15 SG. See specific gravity (SG) SH (sensible heat), 2009 V1: 128 SH (showers). See showers shaking vacuum filter bags, 2010 V2: 179 shallow-end depth of swimming pools, 2011 V3: 107 shallow fill, building sewers and, 2010 V2: 14 shallow manholes, 2011 V3: 228, 232 shallow wells, 2010 V2: 155, 156, 162 shapes of swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108 shear lugs, 2008 V4: 141 shear motions, preventing, 2009 V1: 153, 183, 184 sheet copper, 2008 V4: 14 sheet flows, 2011 V3: 242 sheet lead, 2008 V4: 14 Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA), 2009 V1: 160, 185 Sheet Metal Industry Fund, 2009 V1: 185 Guidelines for Seismic Restraints of Mechanical Systems, 2009 V1: 180 shell-and-coil compressors, 2008 V4: 243 shell-and-tube condensers, 2008 V4: 243 shell-and-tube heat exchangers, 2009 V1: 123, 2011 V3: 167 - 169shell tests, 2008 V4: 89 shelving accessibility in toilet and bathing rooms, 2009 V1: 105 ambulatory accessible toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 107 shielded hubless coupling, 2008 V4: 61

shielding on radioactive drainage systems, 2010 V2: 238 shields. See protection shields Shigella, 2010 V2: 43 shine. See radiation shipping costs, 2009 V1: 90, 217 shipyard cross contamination case, 2008 V4: 189 shock absorbers. See water hammer arresters shock absorbers, cork as, 2008 V4: 149 shock arrestors in noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 192 shock intensity of water hammer, 2010 V2: 71 Sholes, Christopher, 2009 V1: 225 shopping centers, 2010 V2: 24, 2008 V4: 19. See also retail stores shops. See retail stores short circuiting in grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 158 short-circuiting installations, 2009 V1: 140 shot-in concrete anchors, 2009 V1: 154, 184 shower pans, 2008 V4: 14 shower valves flow rates, 2008 V4: 15 installation, 2008 V4: 15 types, 2008 V4: 14-15 showerheads LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 low flow, 2009 V1: 127 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194, 200 poor installation of, 2009 V1: 255 poor installations of, 2009 V1: 257 scaling, 2010 V2: 111 wasted water, 2009 V1: 127 water usage reduction, 2008 V4: 259 showers abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 15 body sprays, 2008 V4: 15 emergency showers, 2010 V2: 229, 231, 2008 V4: 17 enclosures, 2009 V1: 112 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 flow rates, 2008 V4: 14 grab bars, 2009 V1: 112-114 grates in school shower rooms, 2010 V2: 11 graywater supply and demand, 2010 V2: 24 graywater systems, 2009 V1: 126 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 40 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 hydrotherapy, 2011 V3: 38 labor rooms, 2011 V3: 39 minimum numbers of, 2008 V4: 18-21 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 198, 201 patient rooms, 2011 V3: 37 pressure reducing balancing valves and, 2010 V2: 62-63 public areas in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 37 rates of sewage flows, 153, 2010 V2: 152 reduced water usage, 2009 V1: 118 reducing flow rates, 2009 V1: 126 requirements, 2008 V4: 14-15 seats, 2009 V1: 114-115 shower compartment accessibility, 2009 V1: 110–112 sodium hydroxide cross contamination, 2008 V4: 187 - 188spray units, 2009 V1: 109-110, 112 standards, 2008 V4: 2

swimming pool bathhouses, 2011 V3: 110 swimming pool facilities, 2011 V3: 109 thresholds, 2009 V1: 112 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 Shreir, L.L., 2009 V1: 144 shrinkage of ceramic fixtures, 2008 V4: 1 shrub sprinkler heads, 2011 V3: 94 Shumann, Eugene R., 2010 V2: 55 shut-off devices defined, 2010 V2: 136 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 146 gas cabinets, 2011 V3: 270 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 274 shut-off valves design details, 2008 V4: 83 earthquake-sensitive valves, 2009 V1: 153 medical gases, 2011 V3: 66-67 shutdown pump features, 2010 V2: 63 shutdown relays, 2011 V3: 28 Shweitzer, Philip A., 2011 V3: 89 SI units. See International System of Units siamese fire-department connections, 2009 V1: 12, 28. See also fire-protection systems side-beam brackets, 2008 V4: 141 side-beam clamps, 2008 V4: 141 side reach for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101, 104 side spray accessories, 2008 V4: 12, 13-14 sidesway prevention, 2009 V1: 183 sidewalk fire-department connections, 2009 V1: 12 sidewall areas, 2009 V1: 28 sidewall grab bars, 2009 V1: 106 sidewall sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13, 29 Siegrist, R., 2010 V2: 29 siemens, 2009 V1: 34 sight disabilities, 2009 V1: 99 signals for fire alarms, 2011 V3: 6 significant digits, 2009 V1: 33 significant movement, 2008 V4: 141 silencers on air compressors, 2011 V3: 175 on vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 179 silent check valves, 2008 V4: 83 silfos, 2008 V4: 80 silica, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 204 silica gel, 2011 V3: 179 silicates, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 218 silicon, 2010 V2: 189 silicon iron piping, 2010 V2: 14, 2008 V4: 57 sill cocks, 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 185 silt content of water, 2011 V3: 91 loams, 2011 V3: 91 removing, 2010 V2: 198-199 silt density index, 2010 V2: 194 in soil texture, 2010 V2: 140 in water, 2010 V2: 188 silt density index (SDI), 2010 V2: 194 silver, 2009 V1: 129, 132, 2008 V4: 187 silver solder, 2009 V1: 132, 2008 V4: 80 silvex levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187

A Simple Method for Retention Basin Design, 2010 V2: 55 simplex gas booster systems, 2010 V2: 119, 120 simultaneous operators of vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 180, 183 simultaneous-use factors. See diversity factor sine wave configurations of pipe, 2008 V4: 231 single. See also headings beginning with "one-", "mono-", etc. single-acting altitude valves, 2010 V2: 163 single-acting cylinders in compressors, 2011 V3: 174 single-acting devices, 2008 V4: 141 single-compartment septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 single-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 11 single-degree-of-freedom systems, 2009 V1: 150 single-effect stills, 2008 V4: 212 single-family dwellings, 2008 V4: 19, 20 single-occupant toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 17-18 single pipe rolls, 2008 V4: 141 single-seated pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 single-stack systems, 2010 V2: 18 single stacks, 2010 V2: 39 single-stage distillation, 2010 V2: 200 single-stage gas regulators, 2011 V3: 272 single-step deionization (mixed bed), 2010 V2: 206, 208 single-wall tanks, 2011 V3: 139 sink-disposal units. See food waste grinders sinks and wash basins. See also lavatories accessibility, 2009 V1: 108-109 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 faucets, 2008 V4: 13 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 food-preparation, 2011 V3: 39 general category of, 2008 V4: 13 graywater and, 2010 V2: 23-24, 2008 V4: 261 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36, 40 hot water demand, 2010 V2: 99 infectious waste drainage, 2010 V2: 241 kitchen sinks, 2008 V4: 11-12 laboratory rooms, 2011 V3: 41 laboratory sink drainage rates, 2010 V2: 235 laundry sinks, 2008 V4: 13 neutralizing acid from, 2010 V2: 235 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 193, 197, 198 pharmacies and drug rooms, 2011 V3: 38 poor installations of, 2009 V1: 257 public areas in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35 rates of sewage flows, 2010 V2: 153 service sinks, 2008 V4: 12-13 standards, 2008 V4: 2 surgical scrub-up areas, 2011 V3: 38 traps and acid wastes, 2011 V3: 45-46 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 sintered metal filters, 2011 V3: 273 SIP (steam in place), 2011 V3: 277 siphon jet urinals, 2008 V4: 9 siphon jet water closets, 2008 V4: 3 siphonage. See back-siphonage Siphonic Roof Drainage, 2010 V2: 55 siphonic roof drains, 2010 V2: 53 Siphonic Roof Drains, 2010 V2: 55 siphons in secondary containment areas, 2011 V3: 84

site coefficients in seismic force calculations, 2009 V1: 174 - 177site storm drainage, 2009 V1: 7 site utilities domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 206-208, 259 fire-protection water supply, 2011 V3: 218-225 natural gas services, 2011 V3: 251-257, 261 off-peak power savings, 2009 V1: 119 overview, 2011 V3: 205 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 sample general notes, 2011 V3: 258 sanitary sewer services, 2011 V3: 224-237, 260 storm sewers, 2011 V3: 237-243, 260 swimming pool locations and, 2011 V3: 107 sites geological stability of, 2010 V2: 24 irrigation system plans, 2011 V3: 96 obtaining plans, 2011 V3: 205 sitz baths, 2010 V2: 99, 2011 V3: 36, 40 Six Sticks exercise, 2009 V1: 225, 252 Sixth National Symposium on Individual and Small Community Sewage Systems, 2010 V2: 55 sizing acid-neutralization tanks, 2011 V3: 44 acid-waste drainage system pipes, 2010 V2: 235 air compressors, 2011 V3: 63, 174-176 air receivers, 2011 V3: 177-178 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 250, 251.253 centralized drinking-water coolers, 2008 V4: 244-245, 246clean agent gas pipes, 2011 V3: 28 cleanouts, 2010 V2: 9-10 cold-water system pipes, 2010 V2: 73-90, 75-84 compressed air piping, 2011 V3: 177, 183 conveyance piping, storm drainage, 2010 V2: 47 corrugated steel gas piping systems, 2010 V2: 123 cryogenic tanks, 2011 V3: 59 distillation systems, 2008 V4: 213 domestic water heaters, 2010 V2: 98-99 elevated water tanks, 2010 V2: 65-66, 68 expansion tanks, 2008 V4: 231, 234 floor drains, 2010 V2: 10-11 gas boosters, 2010 V2: 127-128 gas line filters, 2011 V3: 254 gas meters, 2011 V3: 254 gas piping, 2009 V1: 7 gas regulators, 2011 V3: 255 grab bars, 2009 V1: 112 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 163-164 high-pressure condensate piping, 2011 V3: 166 hot-water circulation systems, 2010 V2: 105 hydropneumatic tanks, 2010 V2: 64-66 irrigation, 2011 V3: 92 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 269, 275-276, 277-280 liquefied petroleum gas systems, 2010 V2: 135 liquid fuel piping, 2011 V3: 150-151 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 63 medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 50, 68-69, 70, 71 medical vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 64, 70 natural gas piping, 2010 V2: 123, 126, 128-131, 130-131, 2011 V3: 256

nitrogen gas systems, 2011 V3: 64, 70 nitrous oxide systems, 2011 V3: 60, 61, 70, 71 nominal pipe size, 2010 V2: 165 oxygen systems, 2011 V3: 60, 70, 71 pipe examples for cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 87-89 pressure and, 2010 V2: 78-84 pressure and temperature relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69-70 project size and cost estimates, 2009 V1: 89 review of pipe procedures, 2010 V2: 84-87 roof drainage systems, 2010 V2: 51, 53-54 sanitary sewer systems, 2011 V3: 224, 225 septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 sewage life station pipes, 2011 V3: 236 soil absorption systems, 2010 V2: 143 solar energy systems, 2011 V3: 193, 196-199 special-waste system pipes, 2010 V2: 228, 229, 230, 231 sprinkler system pipes, 2011 V3: 13, 14 standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 21 steam distribution piping, 2011 V3: 159-161 storm drainage systems, 2010 V2: 53-54, 54 storm sewers, 2011 V3: 243-249 storm water ditches, 2011 V3: 250 submersible pumps, 2011 V3: 146, 151-152 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 106-107 toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 105-106 vacuum system receivers, 2010 V2: 170 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 174-178 exhaust, 2011 V3: 65 pumps, 2011 V3: 65 vacuum cleaning inlets, tools, and tubing, 2010 V2: 180vacuum cleaning piping network, 2010 V2: 181-183 vacuum cleaning system separators, 2010 V2: 186 vacuum exhaust pipes, 2010 V2: 178 vacuum piping, 2010 V2: 174-176, 2011 V3: 73 vacuum producers (exhausters), 2010 V2: 184 vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 176 valves, 2008 V4: 85 velocity and, 2010 V2: 76-78 vents, 2010 V2: 35-37 vertical stacks, 2010 V2: 5 water hammer arresters, 2010 V2: 72-73 water mains, 2011 V3: 6 water meters, 2010 V2: 60-61 water-pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 water softeners, 2008 V4: 206, 209, 210 water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 wells, 2010 V2: 156 skating rinks, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 sketches. See also plumbing drawings costs analysis phase, 2009 V1: 234 function evaluation, 2009 V1: 232-233 functional development, 2009 V1: 246 skimmers FOG separation, 2008 V4: 250 fountains, 2011 V3: 102 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 159 skimming trays, 2008 V4: 159 surge capacity, 2011 V3: 111-112 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 114, 117 skimming oils, 2011 V3: 88

sl, SL (sea level), 2010 V2: 166 slabs, in radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 240 slack cables in earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 158 slaughterhouses, 2010 V2: 15 sleepers, 2008 V4: 141 sleeves, pipe, 2008 V4: 132 slide plates, 2008 V4: 141 slides, 2011 V3: 134 sliding motions preventing for pipes or equipment, 2009 V1: 153 of seismic plates, 2009 V1: 148 sliding stems on valves, 2008 V4: 79 sliding supports, 2008 V4: 141 sliding vane compressors, 2011 V3: 175, 177 sliding vane pumps, 2010 V2: 173 slime, 2010 V2: 195, 2008 V4: 199 slime bacteria, 2010 V2: 188 slip, defined, 2011 V3: 187 slip expansion joints, 2008 V4: 229 slip fittings, 2008 V4: 141 slip joints, 2009 V1: 28 slip-resistant bases in baths, 2008 V4: 15 slip RPM, defined, 2011 V3: 187 slip type couplings, 2008 V4: 64–65 slop sinks, 2008 V4: 184 slope of ditches, 2011 V3: 250 of floors, 2011 V3: 110 of sewers, 2011 V3: 224 of sites, 2010 V2: 42, 2011 V3: 96, 242 sloping drains fixture loads, 2010 V2: 6, 8-9 Manning formula, 2009 V1: 1 minimum slope of piping, 2010 V2: 6 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 5-8 self-cleansing velocities, 2010 V2: 7 steady flow in, 2010 V2: 6 slow sand filtration, 2010 V2: 218 sludge activated sludge systems, 2011 V3: 88 defined, 2009 V1: 28, 2010 V2: 195 from water softeners, 2010 V2: 160 removal, 2011 V3: 88 in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 slugs of water, 2010 V2: 2, 3 slurry feed system, diatomaceous earth, 2011 V3: 120 SMACNA (Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association), 2009 V1: 160, 185 small bore pipes, 2010 V2: 239 small-diameter gravity sewers, 2010 V2: 144 smoke requirements for insulation, 2008 V4: 106 vacuum systems and, 2011 V3: 64 smoke detectors, 2009 V1: 20, 2011 V3: 28 smooth piping, 2010 V2: 79 smothering fires, 2011 V3: 24 snaking pipes, 2008 V4: 230, 231 sniffer systems (LPG), 2010 V2: 135 snow as part of total load, 2008 V4: 118 regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262

snow melting piping, 2008 V4: 30-31 snubbers, 2008 V4: 141 snubbing devices for earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 156, 157, 180 soaking combustibles in inerting atmosphere, 2011 V3: 26 soap dispensers, 2008 V4: 12 soaps, 2009 V1: 141. See also suds in gray water, 2010 V2: 27 in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 soapstone fixtures, 2008 V4: 2, 13 Social Security taxes, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 Society of American Value Engineering (SAVE), 2009 V1: 207, 209 socket-type joints, 2011 V3: 257 socket welding defined, 2010 V2: 239 socket-end welding, 2008 V4: 80 socket-joint welding, 2008 V4: 63 socket-weld end connections, 2009 V1: 22 soda ash. See sodium carbonate (soda ash) sodium, 2010 V2: 189, 190 defined, 2008 V4: 224 formula, 2008 V4: 193 laboratory grade water, 2008 V4: 218 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 sodium aluminate, 2010 V2: 199, 2008 V4: 201 sodium azide, 2010 V2: 13 sodium bicarbonate, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 193 sodium bisulfate, 2010 V2: 160, 2011 V3: 87 sodium carbonate (soda ash), 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 193, 197 sodium chloride, 2010 V2: 190, 2008 V4: 193, 197 sodium cycle ion exchange, 2010 V2: 210, 2008 V4: 196 sodium hexametaphosphate, 2009 V1: 140, 2010 V2: 160 sodium hydroxide (lye or caustic soda), 2010 V2: 147, 207 case of in water supply, 2008 V4: 187-188 formula, 2008 V4: 193 regeneration and, 2008 V4: 197, 199 sodium hypochlorite, 2010 V2: 160, 2011 V3: 87 sodium ion exchange plants, 2008 V4: 198, 199 sodium silicate, 2009 V1: 140 sodium sulfate, 2010 V2: 189, 2008 V4: 193 sodium thiosulfate, 2010 V2: 160 soft cold water (SCW), 2009 V1: 8 soft conversions, 2009 V1: 33 soft soldered joints, 2008 V4: 62 soft water (SW), 2008 V4: 195, 224. See also water softeners softening membranes. See nanofiltration softening water. See water softeners software. See computer programs soil-absorption sewage systems allowable rates of sewage application, 2010 V2: 153 alternative components, 2010 V2: 144-145 choosing absorption systems, 2010 V2: 142 construction considerations, 2010 V2: 143-144 drain fields defined, 2009 V1: 21 drain fields, defined, 2009 V1: 21 estimating sewage quantities, 2010 V2: 150-152 estimating soil absorption potential, 2010 V2: 139-142 individual wastewater treatment plants, 2010 V2: 150 inspection, 2010 V2: 153

institutional and recreational establishments, 2010 V2: 149 - 150mound systems, 2010 V2: 142 percolation rates for soils, 2010 V2: 141-142 setbacks, 2010 V2: 142 sizing, 2010 V2: 143 soil-moisture monitors, 2011 V3: 96 soil pipes, 2009 V1: 28 soil sewers (S, SS), 2009 V1: 8 soil stacks, 2010 V2: 1 soil vents. See stack vents soils abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 15 color, 141, 2010 V2: 140 depth, 2010 V2: 141 graywater irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 24-25 irrigation and, 2011 V3: 91, 96 maps of, 2010 V2: 140 percolation tests, 2010 V2: 141-142 profiles, 2011 V3: 91, 205 rainfall, municipalities, 2010 V2: 57 resistivity, 2009 V1: 138 runoff, 2010 V2: 42 in seismic force calculations, 2009 V1: 174 storm water infiltration, 2010 V2: 48 structure, 2010 V2: 141 swelling characteristics, 2010 V2: 141 swimming pool locations and, 2011 V3: 107 texture, 2010 V2: 140-141 underground tanks and, 2011 V3: 138 solar absorptance, defined, 2011 V3: 191 Solar and Sustainable Energy Society of Canada web site, 2011 V3: 203 solar constants, 2011 V3: 192 The Solar Decision Book, 2011 V3: 203 solar degradation, 2011 V3: 192 Solar Design Workbook, 2011 V3: 204 solar energy backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 collecting methods, 2011 V3: 193 commercial applications, 2011 V3: 190 Compound Parabolic Concentrator (CPC) system, 2011 V3: 196 concentrating collectors, 2011 V3: 190, 193, 195-196 copper pipe, 2008 V4: 30-31 costs, 2011 V3: 189, 192, 193 CPC equations, 2011 V3: 196 definitions, 2011 V3: 188-189, 190-193 estimating calculations, 2011 V3: 193 f-chart sizing method, 2011 V3: 196-199 flat-plate collectors, 2011 V3: 190, 193-195 glossary, 2011 V3: 190-193 home water heating, 2011 V3: 189, 196-199 LEED credits, 2011 V3: 190 light, defined, 2011 V3: 188-189 photovoltaics, 2011 V3: 188-189 resources, 2011 V3: 203 sizing, 2011 V3: 193, 196-199 solar energy sources, 2009 V1: 128 solar system definitions, 2011 V3: 192 specifications, 2011 V3: 199-203 SRTA equations, 2011 V3: 195-196

Stationary Reflector/Tracking Absorber (SRTA) system, 2011 V3: 195-196 sun, overview of, 2011 V3: 188 tax credits, 2011 V3: 190 thermal, defined, 2011 V3: 188-189 thermal efficiency equations, 2011 V3: 194-195 thermal water heaters, 2010 V2: 104 vacuum tube collectors, 2011 V3: 190, 193 water heaters, 2009 V1: 121-122, 2010 V2: 104, 2008 V4: 264-265 Solar Energy Industries Association web site, 2011 V3: 203 Solar Energy Research Institute, 2011 V3: 204 solar energy systems heat exchangers, 2011 V3: 201 heat pumps, 2011 V3: 203 insulation, 2011 V3: 203 pumps, 2011 V3: 200, 201-202 sizing, 2011 V3: 196-199 solar panels, 2011 V3: 199, 201 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 203 water heaters, 2011 V3: 202, 2008 V4: 264-265 Solar Energy Systems Design, 2011 V3: 204 Solar Energy Thermal Processes, 2011 V3: 203 Solar Heating and Cooling, 2011 V3: 203 Solar Heating Design by the f-Chart Method, 2011 V3: 204 The Solar Heating Design Process, 2011 V3: 204 Solar Heating Systems, 2011 V3: 204 The Solar Hydrogen Civilization, 2011 V3: 203 solar panel layouts, 2011 V3: 199, 201 Solar Rating and Certification Corporation (SRCC), 2009 V1: 122, 2011 V3: 203 solar water heaters, 2008 V4: 264-265 Solar Water Heaters: A Buyer's Guide, 2011 V3: 204 soldering clearance for, 2008 V4: 23 copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32-41 corrosion and, 2009 V1: 136 defined, 2009 V1: 28, 2008 V4: 62 fluxes, 2008 V4: 62 lead-free solders, 2008 V4: 62 lead in solder, 2008 V4: 242 soldered joints and earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 160 valve ends, 2008 V4: 80 solenoid valves, 2009 V1: 9, 2010 V2: 118 solid angles, 2009 V1: 34 solid toilet seats, 2008 V4: 5 solid waste disposal as energy source, 2009 V1: 122 solid waste incineration systems, 2009 V1: 122 solids removal in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 145 solid wedge discs, 2008 V4: 75, 83 solid wedges, 2008 V4: 74 solids rectangular, 2009 V1: 4 solids interceptors, 2011 V3: 45 in water, 2010 V2: 193 solids-handling pumps, 2008 V4: 99 soluble silica, 2010 V2: 190 solute. See treated water solution sinks, 2011 V3: 38 Solution Source for Steam, Air, and Hot Water Systems, 2011 V3: 169

solutions to puzzles, 2009 V1: 252 solvents PEX piping and, 2008 V4: 52 in pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 49 sonic cleaners, 2011 V3: 40 sound isolation in building code requirements, 2009 V1: 188 Sound Transmission Class (STC), 2009 V1: 187 sounds. See acoustics in plumbing systems sour gas, 2011 V3: 252 source shut-off valves, 2011 V3: 66 source water defined, 2010 V2: 187 pure-water systems, 2010 V2: 220 sources of information in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209-210, 216 Sources of Pollutants in Wisconsin Stormwater, 2010 V2: 55 sources, vacuum, 2010 V2: 169-171, 173, 176 Sourirajan, S., 2008 V4: 224 Sovent single-stack plumbing systems, 2010 V2: 17-18, 39 SP-25: Standard Marking System for Values, Fittings, Flanges and Unions, 2008 V4: 73 SP-42: Class 150 Corrosion Resistant Cast Flanged Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-67: Butterfly Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-70: Grav Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 73 SP-71: Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends, 2008 V4: 73 SP-72: Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service, 2008 V4: 73 SP-78: Cast Iron Plug Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-80: Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-81: Stainless Steel, Bonnetless, Flanged, Wafer, Knife Gate Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-85: Cast Iron Globe and Angle Valves, 2008 V4: 73 SP-110: Ball Valves, 2008 V4: 73 sp ht, SP HT (specific heat), 2009 V1: 34 sp vol, SP VOL (specific volume). See specific volume space, confined insulation and, 2008 V4: 116 water softeners and, 2008 V4: 207, 208-209 space heating equipment condensate traps, 2011 V3: 166-167 solar, 2011 V3: 198 spacing around water closets, 2008 V4: 6 drinking fountains, 2008 V4: 14 expansion joints, 2008 V4: 229 grab bars for accessibility, 2009 V1: 112-113 hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 67-68, 118, 125 lavatories, 2008 V4: 10 manholes, 2011 V3: 233 urinals, 2008 V4: 9-10 of vacuum inlets, 2010 V2: 180 span gases, 2011 V3: 266 spas, 2010 V2: 111, 2011 V3: 109, 2008 V4: 185 spec, SPEC (specifications). See specifications special components, defined, 2008 V4: 141 special sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 special tools, defined, 2008 V4: 179 special-waste drainage systems

acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 229-236 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 242-243 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 227 fire-suppression water drainage, 2010 V2: 243-244 flammable and volatile liquids, 2010 V2: 244-246 future growth of systems, 2010 V2: 229 general design considerations, 2010 V2: 229 infectious and biological waste systems, 2010 V2: 240-242 introduction, 2010 V2: 227 pH values in waste, 2010 V2: 228-229 piping and joint selection, 2010 V2: 228 planning for larger systems, 2010 V2: 229 radioactive waste drainage and vents, 2010 V2: 238-240 references, 2010 V2: 246 separating systems, 2010 V2: 229 sizing piping, 2010 V2: 228, 230, 231 special wastes defined, 2009 V1: 28 system approval requirements, 2010 V2: 227-228 specialty gases classification of, 2011 V3: 266-267 generating, 2011 V3: 270 specialty pumps, 2008 V4: 99 specialty water closets, 2009 V1: 127 specific conductance, 2010 V2: 193 specific energy, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 specific functionality, defined, 2009 V1: 219 specific gravity (SG), 2009 V1: 28 defined, 2010 V2: 136, 2011 V3: 136, 187 gases, table of, 2011 V3: 267 natural gas, 2010 V2: 126, 131 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50, 51 propane, 2010 V2: 131 PVC pipe, 2008 V4: 53 sizing gas systems, 2011 V3: 269 symbols for, 2009 V1: 15 table of substances, 2011 V3: 168-169 specific heat (sp ht, SP HT, C) defined, 2011 V3: 187 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 table of substances, 2011 V3: 168-169 specific humidity, 2011 V3: 186 specific resistance in water, 2010 V2: 192, 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 195 specific speed, defined, 2008 V4: 98 specific volume (sp vol, SP VOL, V, CVOL) defined, 2011 V3: 187 expansion and, 2008 V4: 232 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 saturated steam, 2011 V3: 157-158 Specification for Air Entraining Admixtures for Concrete, 2008 V4: 252 Specification for Aluminum-alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube, 2010 V2: 122 Specification for Concrete Aggregates, 2008 V4: 252 Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Applications, 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV), 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Field Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids (API 12D), 2011 V3: 88 Specification for Portland Cement, 2008 V4: 252 Specification for Ready Mix Concrete, 2008 V4: 252

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Airconditioning and Refrigeration Field Service, 2010 V2: 122, 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems, 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gas Fuel Distribution Systems, 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, 2008 V4: 32 Specification for Shop Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids (API 12F), 2011 V3: 88 specifications (spec, SPEC). See also construction contract documents; project manuals; names of specific listing agencies; names under publishing agencies (American National Standards Institute, etc.); titles of specific documents checklist, 2009 V1: 94-95 comprehensive, 2009 V1: 264 computer production of, 2009 V1: 65 contents of sections, 2009 V1: 62-65 costs associated with, 2009 V1: 217 ensuring high quality with detailed specs, 2009 V1: 253 - 254in FAST approach, 2009 V1: 221 formats, 2009 V1: 57 introduction, 2009 V1: 55 keeping up to date with products and technologies, 2009 V1: 262 MasterFormat, 2009 V1: 58 MasterFormat 2004, 2009 V1: 72-83 MasterFormat Level Four (1995), 2009 V1: 68-69 MasterFormat Level One (1995), 2009 V1: 66 MasterFormat Level Three (1995), 2009 V1: 68 MasterFormat Level Two (1995), 2009 V1: 66-68 methods for creating, 2009 V1: 60-62 noise specifications, 2009 V1: 205-206 problems with reuse, 2009 V1: 57 in project manuals, 2009 V1: 56 questioning in value engineering, 2009 V1: 208 specific language in, 2009 V1: 254 "specifications" as incorrect term, 2009 V1: 55 Uniformat, 2009 V1: 57-58, 65-66 Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Usable by the Physically Handicapped, 2009 V1: 97 Specifications Group, 2009 V1: 58, 72-74 specimen-type water closets, 2011 V3: 38 Spectext, 2009 V1: 65 speed of pumps, 2009 V1: 6 Speller, Frank N., 2009 V1: 144 Spencer Turbine Co., 2010 V2: 186 spherical soil structure, 141, 2010 V2: 140 spider guides, 2008 V4: 141 spigot outlets, 2010 V2: 13 spill-proof indoor vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 185 spill-resistant vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 175, 179 spills aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 148 acids, 2010 V2: 229 controlled substances, 2010 V2: 186 industrial waste, 2011 V3: 84 oil, 2010 V2: 244-246

underground liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 140-141 spineboards, 2011 V3: 135 spiral wound modules in cross-flow filtration, 2010 V2: 213 in reverse osmosis (SWRO), 2010 V2: 194, 211-212 Spitzglass formula, 2009 V1: 7, 2010 V2: 130 spkr. See sprinkler systems (fire protection) splashing, air gaps and, 2008 V4: 176 split-case horizontal end-suction pumps, 2011 V3: 21 split rim toilet seats, 2008 V4: 5 split-ring hangers, 2008 V4: 109 split rings, 2008 V4: 137 split-wedge discs, 2008 V4: 75 split wedges, 2008 V4: 74, 83 sponge rubber isolators, 2009 V1: 198 sports facilities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 spout location on water fountains, 2009 V1: 101 spray heads on irrigation sprinklers, 2011 V3: 92-93 spray nozzle waterfall aerators, 2010 V2: 198 spray units in bathtubs, 2009 V1: 109-110 in showers, 2009 V1: 112 spray valves, pre-rinse LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 spring-actuated check valves, 2008 V4: 83, 86 spring cushion hangers or rolls, 2008 V4: 123, 141 spring hangers, 2008 V4: 124, 141 spring isolators illustrated, 2009 V1: 204 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194 problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 182, 183 pump isolation and, 2009 V1: 196 stored energy in, 2009 V1: 158 spring lines, 2009 V1: 28 spring-loaded pressure regulators, 2008 V4: 81 spring supports, 2009 V1: 180 spring-sway braces, 2008 V4: 141 spring tube benders, 2008 V4: 63 springing pipes, 2008 V4: 23 Sprinkler Irrigation, 2011 V3: 96 Sprinkler Irrigation Systems, 2011 V3: 96 sprinkler systems (fire protection) automatic sprinkler system types, 2009 V1: 28 backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 combined dry-pipe and pre-action, 2011 V3: 10-11 concealed sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 corrosion-resistant sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 defined, 2009 V1: 28-29 deluge systems, 2011 V3: 9-10 design density, 2011 V3: 11-12 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 drop nipples on pendent sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13 dry upright sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 earthquake damage to, 2009 V1: 152 in elevator shafts, 2011 V3: 29 extended-coverage sidewall sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 fire hazard evaluation, 2011 V3: 2 fire pumps for, 2011 V3: 21-22 firefighting water drainage, 2010 V2: 243-244 flush sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 foam extinguishers, 2011 V3: 25-26 fully-sprinklered spaces, 2009 V1: 12

gas cabinets, 2011 V3: 270 heads, 2009 V1: 13 history of, 2011 V3: 1 hydraulic design, 2011 V3: 11-13 intermediate-level sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 large-drop sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 nippled-up sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13 non-sprinklered spaces, 2009 V1: 12 numbers of sprinklers in operation, 2011 V3: 12 occupancy classification, 2009 V1: 28 open sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 ornamental sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 partially-sprinklered spaces, 2009 V1: 12 pendent sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13, 29 pipe materials, 2011 V3: 20 pre-action systems, 2011 V3: 9 quick-response sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 recessed sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 residential, 2009 V1: 29, 2011 V3: 18 sediment buckets in drains, 2010 V2: 11 seismic protection and, 2009 V1: 177 sidewall sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13, 29 special sprinklers, 2009 V1: 29 sprinkler types, 2009 V1: 28-29, 2011 V3: 6-11 supports and hangers, 2011 V3: 18, 19 system design, 2011 V3: 2-18 temperature rating, 2011 V3: 18 time frames for water delivery, 2011 V3: 9 usage, 2011 V3: 14, 18 water demands, 2010 V2: 159, 2011 V3: 2-6 sprinkler systems (irrigation), 2008 V4: 185 concepts, 2011 V3: 92 impact heads, 2011 V3: 93 lawn sprinklers, 2009 V1: 8 sample information sheet, 2011 V3: 97 shrub heads, 2011 V3: 94 spray heads, 2011 V3: 92-93 trickle irrigation, 2011 V3: 94 spurs, 2011 V3: 226 sq., SQ (squares). See squares square-edged inlets, 2010 V2: 93 square feet, calculating, 2011 V3: 30 square foot [m²] method, defined, 2009 V1: 89 squares (sq., SQ) calculating area, 2009 V1: 3 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 sr (steradians), 2009 V1: 34 SR (styrene rubber), 2008 V4: 227 SRRC (Solar Rating and Certification Corp.), 2009 V1: 122 SRTA (Stationary Reflector/Tracking Absorber) system, 2011 V3: 195-196 SS (sanitary sewers), 2009 V1: 8, 28. See also sanitary drainage systems SS (service sinks). See service sinks SSD (subsoil or footing drains), 2009 V1: 8 ssf, SSF (Saybolt Seconds Furol), 2011 V3: 137 ssu, SSU (Saybolt Seconds Universal), 2011 V3: 137 ST (storm or rainwater drains). See storm-drainage systems stability index (Ryzner), 2010 V2: 196 stabilization ponds, 2010 V2: 150 stabilized chlorines, 2011 V3: 128

stack vents air in, 2010 V2: 2 defined, 2009 V1: 29, 2010 V2: 33 sizing, 2010 V2: 35-37 stack venting defined, 2009 V1: 29 stacks. See vertical stacks stadiums, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 staff areas (health care facilities), 2011 V3: 35 staff lounges, 2011 V3: 36 staged evaporation, 2010 V2: 200 stages in pump equipment, 2010 V2: 161 staging, pumps, 2008 V4: 98-99 stagnant water, 2010 V2: 72 stain-resistance testing, 2008 V4: 2 staining fixtures and appliances with hard water, 2008 V4: 205 stainless steel bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 commercial sinks, 2008 V4: 12 drinking fountains, 2008 V4: 244 electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 fixtures, 2011 V3: 35, 2008 V4: 1-2 gas storage, 2011 V3: 268 glass pipe couplings, 2008 V4: 48 gutters, 2011 V3: 113 jackets, 2008 V4: 108 laboratory gas piping, 2011 V3: 276 mesh insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 nickel content, 2008 V4: 1-2 passivation, 2009 V1: 136 pumps, 2011 V3: 123 reverse osmosis equipment, 2008 V4: 218 valve seats, 2008 V4: 83 valves, 2008 V4: 79 worm gear clamps, 2008 V4: 61 stainless-steel drains, 2010 V2: 240 stainless-steel grates, 2010 V2: 15 stainless-steel piping distilled water piping, 2008 V4: 213 exposed piping on storage tanks, 2011 V3: 148 industrial waste pipe, 2010 V2: 239 pure-water system, 2011 V3: 49 soil and waste pipe, 2010 V2: 13 special uses, 2008 V4: 59-60 USP water, 2010 V2: 223, 224 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 173 stainless-steel storage tanks, 2010 V2: 223, 2011 V3: 84 stairs and stairwells aboveground storage tanks, 2011 V3: 148 standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 20 stall urinals, 2008 V4: 9 stanchions, 2008 V4: 123, 126, 141 stand pipes, 2008 V4: 128 standard (std, STD), 2009 V1: 15 standard air, 2011 V3: 187 standard atmospheres, defined, 2011 V3: 172 standard atmospheric pressure defined, 2011 V3: 187 in vacuums, 2010 V2: 165 standard cartridge depth filtration, 2010 V2: 201 standard cfh (scfh), 2010 V2: 126

standard cubic feet per minute (scfm). See scfm, SCFM (standard cubic feet per minute) standard dimension ratio (SDR), 2009 V1: 15, 29, 2008 V4: standard fire-protection symbols, 2009 V1: 12-13 standard fire tests, 2011 V3: 2 Standard for Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites (NFPA 50), 2011 V3: 57, 78 Standard for Color-marking of Compressed Gas Cylinders Intended for Medical Use (CGA C-9), 2011 V3: 78 Standard for Combustible Metals (NFPA 484), 2011 V3: 30 Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains, 2010 V2: 95 Standard for Disinfection of Water Storage Facilities, 2010 V2: 95 Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems (NFPA 17), 2011 V3: 24, 30 Standard for Energy Conservation in New Building Design (ASHRAE 90A), 2011 V3: 203 Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding, Cutting, and Other Hot Work, 2010 V2: 136 Standard for Health-care Facilities, 2010 V2: 172, 2011 V3: 78, 263, 2008 V4: 32 Standard for Health-care Facilities (NFPA 99), 2011 V3: 51.76 Standard for Hypochlorites, 2010 V2: 95 Standard for Liquid Chlorine, 2010 V2: 95 Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam (NFPA 11), 2011 V3: 25, 30 Standard for Parking Structures, 2010 V2: 115 Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers (NFPA 10), 2011 V3: 28, 30 Standard for Protective Epoxy Interior Coating for Valves, 2008 V4: 85, 90 Standard for Resilient-Seated Gate Valves, 2008 V4: 85, 90 Standard for Tank Vehicles for Flammable and Combustible Liquids (NFPA 385), 2011 V3: 137 Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes, 2010 V2: 137 Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler Systems and Foam-Water Spray Systems (NFPA 16), 2011 V3: 25, 30 Standard for the Installation of Nitrous Oxide Systems at Consumer Sites (CGA G-8.1), 2011 V3: 78 Standard for the Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances, 2011 V3: 30 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems (NFPA 13), 2009 V1: 185, 2011 V3: 30 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Oneand Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes, 2011 V3: 18 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height, 2011 V3: 18 Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems (NFPA 14), 2011 V3: 30 Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection (NFPA 20), 2011 V3: 30 Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection (NFPA 15), 2011 V3: 24 Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Agents, 2011 V3: 24? 30

standard free air at atmospheric pressure (scfm). See scfm, SCFM (standard cubic feet per minute) in vacuum sizing calculations, 2010 V2: 175 Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers, 2009 V1: 1, 2008 V4: 69 Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials (NFPA 255), 2011 V3: 69, 2008 V4: 106 Standard of Testing to Determine the Performance of Solar Collections (ASHRAE 93), 2011 V3: 203 Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems (NFPA 12), 2011 V3: 30 Standard on Clean Agent Extinguishing Systems (NFPA 2001), 2011 V3: 30 Standard on Gas and Vacuum Systems, 2008 V4: 32 Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems (NFPA 12A), 2011 V3: 27, 30 Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems (NFPA 750), 2011 V3: 25, 30 standard plumbing and piping symbols, 2009 V1: 7-15 Standard Plumbing Code, 2010 V2: 55 standard port valves, 2008 V4: 84 standard ports, 2008 V4: 74 Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings, 2008 V4: 32, 62 standard pressure and temperature (SPT), defined, 2011 V3: 187 standard reference points (compressed air), 2011 V3: 172 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes (ASTM B210), 2010 V2: 122, 2011 V3: 277 Standard Specification for Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe for Non-reinforced Concrete, 2008 V4: 28 Standard Specification for Copper-brazed Steel Tubing, 2010 V2: 122 Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV), 2008 V4: 41 Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gasket, 2008 V4: 32 Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube, 2008 V4: 32, 62 Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hotdipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless, 2010 V2: 122 Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culverts, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete D-Load Culvert Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe for Reinforced Concrete Pipe, 2008 V4: 28 Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Sanitary Tubing (ASTM A270), 2011 V3: 276 Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service, 2010 V2: 122 Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube (ASTM B75), 2011 V3: 276

Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service (ASTM B280), 2011 V3: 276 Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems (ASTM B819), 2011 V3: 276 Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (ASTM B88), 2010 V2: 122, 2011 V3: 276 Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, 2010 V2: 123-124 standard temperature and pressure, 2009 V1: 29 Standard Text Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, 2010 V2: 122, 224 standard water closets, 2008 V4: 4 standard-weight steel pipe, 2008 V4: 48 standards. See codes and standards standby losses in circulating systems, 2009 V1: 119 standing water, 2010 V2: 49 standpipe systems classifications and characteristics, 2011 V3: 18, 20-21 defined, 2009 V1: 29-30 fire pumps for, 2011 V3: 21 flatland storage tanks, 2010 V2: 162 standpipe air chambers, 2010 V2: 72, 73 standpipes, defined, 2008 V4: 98 symbols for, 2009 V1: 13 system classes of service, 2009 V1: 30 system types, 2009 V1: 30 startup loads, condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 163 state agencies, 2010 V2: 227, 238, 2011 V3: 82 state frost lines, 2011 V3: 218, 220 state, gas, 2011 V3: 187 state rainfall rate tables, 2010 V2: 57 states in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 static cake diatomaceous earth filters, 2011 V3: 120 static deflection (d) defined, 2008 V4: 145 for pump vibration, 2008 V4: 146 static head calculating, 2009 V1: 2 defined, 2008 V4: 98 gallons per minute and, 2010 V2: 73 velocity head and, 2009 V1: 5 well pumps, 2010 V2: 161 static pressure (SP) defined, 2010 V2: 94 domestic water supply, 2011 V3: 208-210 elevation and, 2010 V2: 84 fire hydrants, 2011 V3: 4 irrigation flow, 2011 V3: 96 sprinkler hydraulic calculations, 2011 V3: 13 water mains, 2011 V3: 206 static wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 stationary propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132 Stationary Reflector/Tracking Absorber (SRTA) system, 2011 V3: 195-196 stations (medical gas and vacuum) ceiling outlets, 2011 V3: 55-56 estimating number, 2011 V3: 50-51, 52-53 inlets, 2011 V3: 78 medical gas diversity factors, 2011 V3: 70 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 order of gas outlets, 2011 V3: 51

outlets, 2011 V3: 78 patient headwall gas systems, 2011 V3: 51, 55 surgical ceiling columns, 2011 V3: 55-56 terminals, 2011 V3: 51-54 types of, 2011 V3: 56 STC (Sound Transmission Class), 2009 V1: 187 std, STD (standard), 2009 V1: 15 steady flow continuous flow rates, 2008 V4: 207 drinking water coolers, 2008 V4: 238 in horizontal drains, 2010 V2: 6-8, 8-9 water softeners, 2008 V4: 206 steady-state heat balance equations, 2010 V2: 100 steam and condensate systems condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 163-166 condensate removal, 2011 V3: 161-162 distilling water from steam, 2010 V2: 200 distribution piping, 2011 V3: 159-161 flash, 2011 V3: 157-159, 166 fouling, 2011 V3: 162 geothermal, 2009 V1: 123 high-pressure steam, 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 88-89 low-pressure steam, 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 87-88 medium-pressure steam, 2009 V1: 9, 2008 V4: 88 overview, 2011 V3: 157 pressure drop, 2011 V3: 159–161 references, 2011 V3: 169 saturated steam, 2011 V3: 157-158, 159-161 steam atmospheric vents, 2009 V1: 9 steam heat in distillation, 2008 V4: 213 steam traps, 2009 V1: 11 traps, 2011 V3: 162-163 velocity, 2011 V3: 159-160 waste heat usage of condensate, 2009 V1: 123 water hammer, 2011 V3: 162 steam deaerators, 2010 V2: 199 steam-fired water heaters, 2009 V1: 121 steam in place (SIP), 2011 V3: 277 steam indirect-fired water heaters, 2010 V2: 104 steam tables, 2008 V4: 184 steam traps, 2009 V1: 11 steam vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 steam working pressure (SWP), 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 85 steatite fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 steel. See also stainless steel; steel piping anchoring to, 2008 V4: 125-132 beam connections in pipe bracing, 2009 V1: 168, 169 in electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 fixtures, 2008 V4: 1-2 floor decks in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 160 in galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 138 stress and strain figures, 2008 V4: 228-229 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 227 underground tanks, 2011 V3: 155 water tanks, 2010 V2: 162 Steel Above Ground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids (UL 142), 2011 V3: 88, 137, 147 steel bands, 2008 V4: 126 steel clamps, 2008 V4: 126 steel clips, 2008 V4: 126 Steel, Ernest W., 2008 V4: 166

steel fixtures, 2008 V4: 1-2 steel pipe sleeves, 2008 V4: 69 steel piping. See also galvanized-steel piping; stainlesssteel piping dimensions, 2008 V4: 44-47 fittings, 2008 V4: 48 fuel-product dispensing, 2011 V3: 149 hangers, 2008 V4: 132 Manning formula and, 2011 V3: 242 natural gas, 2011 V3: 257 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 122 radioactive wastes, 2010 V2: 239 roughness, 2010 V2: 78 surface roughness, 2010 V2: 75 Teflon lined, 2008 V4: 55-56 types, 2008 V4: 44-47, 48 velocity and, 2010 V2: 78 welded joints, 2008 V4: 63 steel protection saddles and shields, 2008 V4: 126 steel riser clamps, 2008 V4: 126 steel spring isolators, 2009 V1: 196-197, 2008 V4: 149-150 steel stanchions, 2008 V4: 126 steel strap hangers, 2008 V4: 67 Steel Tank Institute (STI), 2011 V3: 137 steel trapezes, 2008 V4: 126 steel tubing, 2010 V2: 122 steel welded attachments, 2008 V4: 126 Steele, Alfred, 2009 V1: 39, 2010 V2: 46, 47, 55, 96, 2008 V4: 235 steep grass area, runoff, 2010 V2: 42 stems defined, 2008 V4: 74 on valves, 2008 V4: 78-79 Stenzel, Mark H., 2010 V2: 225 step-down gas regulators, 2010 V2: 121 steradians, 2009 V1: 34 sterilization feed water, 2010 V2: 195 infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 insulation on pipes, 2008 V4: 106 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 277 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 223 ultraviolet, 2011 V3: 48, 2008 V4: 216 sterilizers, 2011 V3: 39, 40, 42, 2008 V4: 184 Stevens Building Technology Research Laboratory, 2010 V2: 18 Steward SRTA (Stationary Reflector/Tracking Absorber) system, 2011 V3: 195-196 STI (Steel Tank Institute), 2011 V3: 137 sticking (manual tank gauging), 2011 V3: 142 stills, 2010 V2: 200, 202-204 baffle systems, 2008 V4: 213 decentralized or centralized, 2008 V4: 212 distillation, 2008 V4: 211-215 heat sources for, 2008 V4: 195 hospital requirements, 2011 V3: 42 maintenance, 2008 V4: 218 multiple-effect, 2008 V4: 212 pure-water systems, 2011 V3: 48 scaling in, 2008 V4: 213 single-effect stills, 2008 V4: 212

steam heating, 2008 V4: 213

storage reservoirs, 2008 V4: 213 types of, 2008 V4: 213 vapor-compression, 2008 V4: 212 Stokes law, 2008 V4: 156, 200 stop plugs, 2008 V4: 74 stop valves, 2009 V1: 30, 2011 V3: 35 stops, 2008 V4: 141 storage costs, 2009 V1: 217 of distilled water, 2008 V4: 213 fire hazard evaluation, 2011 V3: 2 gravity filters and, 2008 V4: 202 of gray water, 2010 V2: 22, 27-28 of laboratory gases, 2011 V3: 267-270 of medical gases medical compressed air, 2011 V3: 61-64 nitrogen, 2011 V3: 63-64 nitrous oxide, 2011 V3: 59-60 oxygen, 2011 V3: 57-59 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 131-134 of pure water, 2010 V2: 223 of rainwater, 2010 V2: 52-53 of salt, 2008 V4: 211 section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63-64, 70 of sewage in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 tanks, rainwater, 2008 V4: 260-262 storage basins, sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 235-236 storage devices (thermal), 2011 V3: 192 storage media (thermal), 2011 V3: 192 storage plants, 2008 V4: 19 storage reservoirs, 2011 V3: 84 storage rooms, 2011 V3: 68 storage subsystems, 2011 V3: 192 storage tanks. See tanks storage water heaters, 2009 V1: 121. See also tank-type water heaters stores. See retail stores storm building drains. See storm-drainage systems storm drainage accessibility, 2010 V2: 48-49 calculating intensity, 2010 V2: 44-46 calculating time of concentration, 2010 V2: 44-46 collection systems, 2010 V2: 46 contaminants, 2010 V2: 43-44 conveyance, 2010 V2: 46-47 detention, 2010 V2: 47-48 hydrographs, 2010 V2: 43 infiltration, 2010 V2: 48 introduction, 2010 V2: 42 maintenance, 2010 V2: 48-49 pollution, 2010 V2: 45 rainfall for selected municipalities, 2010 V2: 57 Rational Method, 2010 V2: 43 runoff patterns, 2010 V2: 43 runoff volume calculation example, 2010 V2: 56 storm events, 2010 V2: 42 treatment, 2010 V2: 48 vector control, 2010 V2: 49 water quality. 2010 V2: 43 Storm Drainage Design and Detention using the Rational Method, 2010 V2: 55 storm-drainage pipe codes, 2009 V1: 42

storm-drainage systems. See also rainwater and precipitation building drainage systems, 2010 V2: 49-54 calculations, 2010 V2: 53-54 cast-iron soil-pipe building drains, 2008 V4: 23 clear water waste branches, 2010 V2: 50 codes, 2009 V1: 42-44, 2011 V3: 238 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 41-42 controlled-flow systems, 2010 V2: 52-53 design criteria, 2010 V2: 49-54 design storms, 2011 V3: 239 disposal methods, 2011 V3: 249-250 introduction, 2010 V2: 41 materials, 2010 V2: 42 overview, 2011 V3: 237 pipe sizing and layout, 2010 V2: 49-54 preliminary information, 2011 V3: 205 rainfall intensity-frequency-duration charts, 2011 V3: 244 - 248Rational method, 2009 V1: 7, 2011 V3: 238-239 reinforced concrete pipe building drains, 2008 V4: 28 roof drainage, 2010 V2: 51-53 sample utility letters, 2011 V3: 238 secondary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 52 sizing, 2011 V3: 243-249 sizing ditches, 2011 V3: 250 storm drains (SD, ST), 2009 V1: 8 storm sewers defined, 2009 V1: 30 system design procedure, 2011 V3: 243-249 storm water, 2009 V1: 30. See also graywater; wastewater codes and standards, 2010 V2: 22 contaminant concentration, 2010 V2: 27 defined, 2010 V2: 21 introduction, 2010 V2: 21 water balance, 2010 V2: 21-23, 28 Storm Water Retention Methods, 2010 V2: 55 Stormwater: The Dark Side of Stormwater Runoff Management, 2010 V2: 55 STPs (sewage treatment plants), 2010 V2: 22, 27-28 straight lobe compressors, 2011 V3: 175 straight-reading volume meters, 2008 V4: 198 strain defined, 2009 V1: 30 maximum allowable, 2008 V4: 228-229 strainers basket strainers, 2010 V2: 92 cold water systems, 2010 V2: 60 distributors in water softeners, 2008 V4: 222 pressure losses, 2011 V3: 216 roof drains, 2010 V2: 53 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 11 sediment buckets, 2010 V2: 11 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 124 symbols for, 2009 V1: 10 strap hangers, 2008 V4: 134 straps, 2008 V4: 141 stratification in water heaters, 2010 V2: 105 stray current corrosion, 2009 V1: 132, 143 stream regulators for water coolers, 2008 V4: 242, 244 stream-spray irrigation sprinklers, 2011 V3: 94 streams, irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 25 street pressure, 2009 V1: 30

stress conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 defined, 2009 V1: 30 maximum allowable, 2008 V4: 228-229 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 stress analysis, 2008 V4: 141 stress-accelerated corrosion, 2009 V1: 143 stress corrosion, 2009 V1: 143 stress-corrosion cracking, 2009 V1: 131, 143, 2010 V2: 195 strip-chart recorder water meters, 2010 V2: 60 strong-base regeneration, 2010 V2: 206, 207 strongbacks, 2009 V1: 154 strontium 90, 2010 V2: 238 structural angle bracing, 2009 V1: 160 structural attachments, 2008 V4: 141 structural channel bracing, 2009 V1: 160 structural strength bath and shower seats, 2009 V1: 114-115 grab bars, 2009 V1: 114-115 structural stresses on piping systems, 2008 V4: 119 structure-borne sound, 2009 V1: 187 structured biofilms, 2008 V4: 251 strut bracing, 2009 V1: 166, 168 strut clamps, 2008 V4: 141 struts, 2008 V4: 141 studs in noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 193 stvrene, 2008 V4: 186 styrene butadiene, 2009 V1: 32 styrene rubber (SR), 2008 V4: 227 styrofoam blocking on glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 sub-micron cartridge filtration, 2010 V2: 201 sub-sterilizing rooms, 2011 V3: 36, 39 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 submersible pumps design, 2008 V4: 100 illustrated, 2011 V3: 233 mounting, 2008 V4: 101-102 protection of wells, 2010 V2: 158 shallow wells, 2010 V2: 162 sizing, 2011 V3: 151-152 underground storage tanks, 2011 V3: 146 well pumps, 2010 V2: 160 submittals section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 69 subsidence basin design, 2008 V4: 201 turbidity and, 2008 V4: 200 subsoil drainage pipe, 2009 V1: 44 subsoil drains (SSD), 2009 V1: 8, 30 substances, amount (moles), 2009 V1: 33 substituting products in proprietary specifications, 2009 V1: 62 value engineering process and, 2009 V1: 207 subsurface drip irrigation systems, 2010 V2: 25 subsurface obstructions, swimming pool locations and, 2011 V3: 107 subsurface waste-disposal systems. See soil-absorption sewage systems subsurface water. See ground water subsystems, solar, 2011 V3: 192 subterranean vaults, fountain equipment, 2011 V3: 99-100 subway vibration and resonance, 2008 V4: 120 suction fittings

swimming pools, 2011 V3: 104 Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Hot Tubs (ASME A112.18.8), 2011 V3: 101. 104. 112. 135 suction fittings, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 101, 112 suction fuel-delivery systems, 2011 V3: 145 suction head, defined, 2008 V4: 98 suction inlets in storage tanks, 2010 V2: 163 suction lift, defined, 2008 V4: 98 suction piping, 2010 V2: 163 suction pressure defined, 2011 V3: 187 fountains, 2011 V3: 100 suction sump pumps, 2011 V3: 101 suction-type pumps, 2010 V2: 157 sudden enlargements, 2010 V2: 92 suds pressure zones, 2009 V1: 30, 2010 V2: 37-38 venting, 2010 V2: 37-38 sulfate-reducing bacteria, 2010 V2: 188 sulfates, 2010 V2: 189, 190, 206 defined, 2008 V4: 224 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 220 sulfate ions, 2008 V4: 193 water hardness and, 2008 V4: 196 sulfides, 2009 V1: 136 sulfites, 2010 V2: 189, 216 sulfur, 2010 V2: 189 sulfur dioxide, 2011 V3: 87, 265 sulfuric acid demineralizers, 2008 V4: 197 formula, 2008 V4: 193 from cation exchange, 2008 V4: 199 in regeneration, 2010 V2: 207 special wastes, 2010 V2: 230-232 storage tanks, 2011 V3: 85 in water chemistry, 2010 V2: 189 sulfurous acid, 2010 V2: 189 sulphate. See sulfates summary section in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 69 sumps and sump pumps capacity, 2011 V3: 237 containment sumps, 2011 V3: 139 duplex sump pump systems, 2010 V2: 8 elevation and, 2008 V4: 99 field-fabricated sumps, 2011 V3: 105-106 fixture-unit values, 2010 V2: 8-9 flexible pipe connectors, 2011 V3: 150 floor drains and, 2010 V2: 10 fountains, 2011 V3: 100-102 liquid-waste decontamination systems, 2010 V2: 242 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 203 roof drainage and, 2010 V2: 54 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 8-9, 9-10 sewage life stations, 2011 V3: 235-236 sump pits, 2010 V2: 242 sump pumps defined, 2009 V1: 30 sumps defined, 2009 V1: 30 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 112 Sun, T.Y., 2009 V1: 185 sunlight

overview, 2011 V3: 188 plastic corrosion, 2009 V1: 141 protecting against, 2010 V2: 16, 2011 V3: 148 solar energy. See solar energy super flushes, 2009 V1: 30 supercritical flow. See hydraulic jumps in flow Superfund Amendment and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (SARA Title III), 2011 V3: 82, 137 superheated air and vapor mixtures, 2011 V3: 187 superstrut bracing, 2009 V1: 163 supervised heat-up method, condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 163 - 164supervisory (tamper) switches, 2009 V1: 30 supplementary conditions, 2009 V1: 56 supplementary units of measurement, 2009 V1: 34 supplies (sply., SPLY, SUP), 2009 V1: 217 support and hanger loads calculating for hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 118-119 cold loads, 2008 V4: 135 deadweight loads, 2008 V4: 136 design considerations, 2008 V4: 117-118 design loads, 2008 V4: 136 dynamic loads, 2008 V4: 136 friction loads, 2008 V4: 137 hot loads, 2008 V4: 137 hydrostatic loads, 2008 V4: 137 load ratings, 2008 V4: 132-133 operating loads, 2008 V4: 139 seismic loads, 2008 V4: 140 thermal loads, 2008 V4: 141 thrust loads, 2008 V4: 142 trip-out loads, 2008 V4: 142 water hammer loads, 2008 V4: 142 wind loads, 2008 V4: 142 support drawings, 2008 V4: 134, 141 supporting rolls, 2008 V4: 126 supports and hangers. See also support and hanger loads allowing for expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 227 alternate attachment to hangers, 2009 V1: 167 anchoring and anchor types, 2008 V4: 125-132, 127-131 clean agent gas pipes, 2011 V3: 28 clear specifications for, 2009 V1: 255 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 43, 2008 V4: 117-118 defined, 2009 V1: 30, 2008 V4: 137, 139, 141 design considerations, 2008 V4: 117-118 acoustics, 2008 V4: 120 loads, 2008 V4: 118-119 manmade environmental conditions, 2008 V4: 120 natural environmental conditions, 2008 V4: 119 pressure fluctuations, 2008 V4: 119 structural stresses, 2008 V4: 119 thermal stresses, 2008 V4: 119 drawings and plans, 2008 V4: 134, 139, 141 earthquake bracing, 2009 V1: 160 engineering issues, 2008 V4: 117-120 glossary, 2008 V4: 134-142 hanger rod gravity forces in earthquakes, 2009 V1: 180 hangers, defined, 2009 V1: 24 illustrated, 2008 V4: 123 installation productivity rates, 2009 V1: 86, 89 insulation for, 2008 V4: 109-112 load ratings, 2008 V4: 132-133

materials, 2009 V1: 43, 2008 V4: 132-134 medical gas piping, 2011 V3: 68 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 190, 191, 196, 203 plan locations, 2008 V4: 139 poor installations of, 2009 V1: 259 reactivity and conductivity, 2008 V4: 120 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 12 selection criteria, 2008 V4: 124-125 spacing, 2008 V4: 67, 118, 125 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 18, 19 symbols for, 2009 V1: 13 types of, 2008 V4: 67-68, 120-124 beam clamps, 2008 V4: 122 brackets, 2008 V4: 122 concrete inserts, 2008 V4: 121 hanger assemblies, 2008 V4: 137, 139 pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 121 pipe rollers, 2008 V4: 123 pipe slides, supports, anchors, and shields, 2008 V4: 123 spring hangers and constant supports, 2008 V4: 124 threaded products, 2008 V4: 121 vacuum cleaning tubing, 2010 V2: 179 surface abrasions corrosion and, 2009 V1: 136 grab bars, 2009 V1: 113 surface burning pipe characteristics, 2010 V2: 224 surface fault slips, 2009 V1: 149 surface fires, 2011 V3: 23 surface-mounted pumps, 2010 V2: 160 surface ponds, 2010 V2: 47 surface runoff. See runoff surface skimmers. See skimmers surface temperature of insulation, 2008 V4: 113 surface-type sprinkler spray heads, 2011 V3: 92-93 surface water as feed water for pure water systems, 2010 V2: 220 carbon dioxide in, 2008 V4: 196 defined, 2010 V2: 188 discharge permits for, 2011 V3: 83 need for treatment, 2008 V4: 193-194 Surface Water Treatment Rule, 2010 V2: 217 surfaces of fixture materials, 2008 V4: 1 surge capacity, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 111-112 surge pressure. See water hammer surge tanks, 2010 V2: 25 surge vessels (tanks), swimming pools, 2011 V3: 113, 116 surges in horizontal drains, 2010 V2: 5 surgical ceiling columns, 2011 V3: 55-56 surgical clean-up areas, 2011 V3: 36 surgical gas track systems, 2011 V3: 56 surgical instruments, 2011 V3: 56, 64 surgical scrub areas, 2011 V3: 36 surgical supply areas, 2011 V3: 36 surgical vacuum (SV), 2009 V1: 9 surveys cross connections, 2008 V4: 179 existing buildings, 2009 V1: 265-270, 267-270 plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 water softener data, 2008 V4: 209 suspended equipment earthquake restraints, 2009 V1: 154

fixed suspended equipment, 2009 V1: 157 poor installations of, 2009 V1: 258, 259 vibration-isolated, suspended equipment, 2009 V1: 158 suspended metals in wastes, 2011 V3: 87 suspended piping earthquake recommendations, 2009 V1: 152 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 192, 195 suspended solids. See also turbidity defined, 2010 V2: 188 filtration, 2010 V2: 201 removing, 2010 V2: 199 total suspended solids, 2010 V2: 193 turbidity, 2010 V2: 188 suspended tanks, 2009 V1: 153 suspension, defined, 2010 V2: 188, 2008 V4: 224 suspension hangers. See supports and hangers sustainable design, 2008 V4: 256 SV (surgical vacuum), 2009 V1: 9 SV (service) cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23, 26-27 swamp gas, 2010 V2: 190 Swartman, Robert K., 2011 V3: 204 sway bracing. See also lateral and longitudinal sway bracing; restraints and restraining control devices acceptable types, 2009 V1: 181 horizontal loads for, 2009 V1: 178-179 illustrated, 2008 V4: 124, 130 lateral and longitudinal, 2009 V1: 175-176, 178 longitudinal and transverse, 2009 V1: 172, 173 noise mitigation and, 2009 V1: 190 potential problems, illustrated, 2009 V1: 183 sway in piping, 2009 V1: 152 sweep fittings, 2008 V4: 246 swelling characteristics of soils, 2010 V2: 141 swimming pools backflow prevention, 2008 V4: 185 bathhouses, toilets, and showers, 2011 V3: 110 chemical controls, 2011 V3: 127-131 chemistry, 2011 V3: 115 circulation, 2011 V3: 113-116 circulation pumps, 2011 V3: 122-123 defined, 2009 V1: 30 dehumidification, 2011 V3: 127 design parameters, 2011 V3: 106-110 direct connection hazards, 2008 V4: 184 feed systems, 2011 V3: 127-131 filters diatomaceous earth, 2011 V3: 119-122 overview, 2011 V3: 114 sand, 2011 V3: 117-118 fixture requirements, 2011 V3: 109 flow control devices, 2011 V3: 125-126 flow sensors, 2011 V3: 124-125 fresh water makeup, 2011 V3: 132-133 grate materials, 2010 V2: 13 handicapped access, 2011 V3: 134-135 health codes, 2011 V3: 106 heat recovery, 2011 V3: 127 inlets, 2011 V3: 135 ladders, 2011 V3: 134-135 level control systems, 2011 V3: 131-132 location, 2011 V3: 107 main drains, 2011 V3: 132

numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 numbers of swimmers, 2011 V3: 106 operating systems, 2011 V3: 111-116 overview, 2011 V3: 104 ozone system, 2011 V3: 133 physical characteristics, 2011 V3: 107-110 ramps, 2011 V3: 134-135 safety equipment, 2011 V3: 135 size and capacity, 2011 V3: 106-107 skimmers, 2011 V3: 114, 117 specialty systems, 2011 V3: 116, 133-134 strainers, 2011 V3: 124 surge vessels, 2011 V3: 113, 116 underwater lights, 2011 V3: 135 UV system, 2011 V3: 133-134 water features, 2011 V3: 134 water heating, 2011 V3: 126-127 swing check valves, 2010 V2: 92, 164, 2008 V4: 74, 77, 86 swing eyes, 2008 V4: 126 swing loops, 2008 V4: 229 swinging on pipes, 2008 V4: 118 switch-gear rooms, 2011 V3: 68 swivel pipe rings, 2008 V4: 140 swivel turnbuckles, 2008 V4: 141 SWP (steam working pressure), 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 85 SWRO (spiral wound modules), 2010 V2: 194, 211-212 SYGEF piping, 2011 V3: 49 symbols fire protection, 2009 V1: 12-13 references, 2009 V1: 39 standardized plumbing and piping symbols, 2009 V1: 7 - 15Synthesis phase in value engineering, 2009 V1: 209 synthetic fiber gas filters, 2011 V3: 252 synthetic resins, 2010 V2: 205 SYS (systems), 2009 V1: 128 system curve analysis for pumps, 2008 V4: 97-98 system descriptions in specifications, 2009 V1: 63, 69 system head curve, 2008 V4: 97 system performance criteria in specifications, 2009 V1: 63,69 Systeme International d'Unites. See International System of Units (SI) systems (SYS) defined, 2009 V1: 128 diagramming, 2009 V1: 223 value engineering questions, 2009 V1: 209 Systems and Applications Handbook, ASHRAE, 2011 V3: 204

T

t (metric tons), 2009 V1: 34 T (temperature). See temperature T (teslas), 2009 V1: 34 T (time). See time t-joints, 2008 V4: 61 T (tera) prefix, 2009 V1: 34 t, TD (temperature differences), 2009 V1: 128 T&P valves (temperature and pressure relief), 2010 V2: 106T4 or T6 aluminum temper, 2011 V3: 277

tablespoons, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 tabular take-off sheets, in cost estimations, 2009 V1: 86 take-off estimating method, cost estimating, 2009 V1: 86-87 Take the Guesswork out of Demineralizer Design, 2010 V2: 224 "taking pretty to the bank," 2009 V1: 262–263 tamper switches, 2009 V1: 30 tamping fill, 2010 V2: 15 Tanaka, T., 2010 V2: 225 tangential-flow filtration, 2010 V2: 201, 211 tank-mounted product dispensers, 2011 V3: 149 Tank Risers, 2008 V4: 252 tank-type water closets, 2009 V1: 127 tank-type water heaters, 2009 V1: 121 tankless water heaters, 2009 V1: 120 tanks. See also septic tanks abandonment and removal, 2011 V3: 154 buoyant forces, 2011 V3: 241 calculating volume, 2010 V2: 64-66 carbon dioxide extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 26 connections and access, 2011 V3: 139, 148 construction, 2011 V3: 139 corrosion protection, 2011 V3: 148 earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152, 153 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 154-157, 182, 183 filling and spills, 2011 V3: 139-140, 148 flow-through periods, 2008 V4: 155 gauges, 2011 V3: 148 hazardous waste incompatibilities, 2011 V3: 83-84, 84 installation, 2011 V3: 154-156 insulation, 2008 V4: 109 leak prevention and monitoring, 2011 V3: 148-149 Legionella growth in, 2010 V2: 109 materials, 2011 V3: 138-139, 147-148 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 141, 148 protection, 2011 V3: 149 storage tanks, defined, 2011 V3: 136 tank end deflection, 2011 V3: 154 tank farms, 2009 V1: 139 tightness testing, 2011 V3: 142-143, 153 types of aboveground tanks, 2011 V3: 84, 147-149 break tanks, 2008 V4: 176 chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243-244, 246, 247 cryogenic, 2011 V3: 57 distilled water systems, 2011 V3: 48 drinking water storage, 2010 V2: 162 expansion tanks, 2010 V2: 67-68, 2008 V4: 231-235 fire-protection supplies, 2011 V3: 219 firefighting drainage, 2010 V2: 244 gravity tank systems, 2010 V2: 65-66 hydropneumatic-tank systems, 2010 V2: 64–65, 64 - 66kill tanks, 2010 V2: 241-242 liquefied petroleum gas, 2010 V2: 131-135 liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 139-140 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 131-135 product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 149 propane, 2010 V2: 131-134 radioactive wastes, 2010 V2: 240

rainwater, 2008 V4: 260-262 settling tanks, 2011 V3: 88 solar energy systems, 2011 V3: 203 solar water heaters, 2009 V1: 121 storm drainage detention, 2010 V2: 47-48 suspended, 2009 V1: 157 thermal expansion tanks, 2010 V2: 106 underground tanks, 2011 V3: 84, 139-140 water storage tanks, 2010 V2: 223, 2011 V3: 46 vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 149 venting, 2011 V3: 141, 148 volume calculations, 2008 V4: 154-155 tannic acid, 2008 V4: 187 tannin in water, 2008 V4: 224 tapping illegally into water lines, 2010 V2: 59 tapping valves, 2008 V4: 69 taps large wet tap excavations, 2011 V3: 213 pressure loss and, 2011 V3: 210-214 target areas in water closets, 2008 V4: 4 taste of drinking water, 2010 V2: 160, 217, 2008 V4: 187 taverns and bars, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 tax credits, solar energy, 2011 V3: 190 Tax Incentives Assistance Project (TIAP) web site, 2011 V3: 203 taxes in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 86 Taylor, Halsey Willard, 2008 V4: 237 TD (temperature differences), 2009 V1: 128 TD (turndown ratio), 2010 V2: 127 TDS (total dissolved solids). See total dissolved solids (TDS) TE (top elevation), 2009 V1: 15 teaspoons, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 technetium 99, 2010 V2: 238 Techniques of Value Analysis and Engineering, 2009 V1: 252technology advances, value engineering and, 2009 V1: 208 Technology for the Storage of Hazardous Liquids, 2011 V3: 89 tectonic plates, 2009 V1: 148 tee-wyes, flow capacity and, 2010 V2: 4 tees (TEE), 2009 V1: 10, 30 Teflon (PTFE), 2009 V1: 32, 2010 V2: 239 as contaminant in air, 2011 V3: 265 discs, 2008 V4: 83 joint caulking, 2011 V3: 46 pipes, 2008 V4: 55-56 polytetrafluoroethylene, 2009 V1: 32 seats, 2008 V4: 83 temp., TEMP (temperatures). See temperature TEMP. HW (tempered hot water), 2009 V1: 8 TEMP. HWR (tempered hot water recirculating), 2009 V1: 8 temperature (temp., TEMP, T) acid wastes, 2011 V3: 43 air pressure and, 2011 V3: 264 bathtub water notes, 2009 V1: 110 compressed air systems and, 2011 V3: 178 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36, 37 cooling air compressors, 2011 V3: 178 corrosion rates and, 2009 V1: 135

CPVC vs. PVC piping, 2008 V4: 53 deaeration water temperatures, 2010 V2: 199 defined, 2011 V3: 187 degree systems, 2009 V1: 30 density and viscosity of water and, 2008 V4: 200 dew points, 2011 V3: 173 in double containment systems, 2008 V4: 55 drinking-water coolers and, 2008 V4: 238 drops in flowing water, 2008 V4: 115 elevated temperatures for removing Legionella, 2010 V2: 109–110 energy conservation, 2009 V1: 117-118 expansion and contraction and, 2008 V4: 69 feed water temperature and deposits, 2010 V2: 197, 214, 221 flue gases, 2010 V2: 119 gas regulators and, 2011 V3: 272 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 126 hot-water properties, 2010 V2: 107 hot-water relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 hot-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101, 102-104, 105, 2011 V3: 39, 47 insulation and temperature loss, 2008 V4: 105 laboratory gases, 2011 V3: 275, 279 Legionella growth and, 2010 V2: 108-110 maintenance hot-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 105-106 maintenance, pumps, 2008 V4: 99 measurements, 2009 V1: 33 microbial control in water, 2010 V2: 214 mixed-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101 natural gas, 2010 V2: 126 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 oxygen and corrosion implications, 2008 V4: 197 pipe classification, 2008 V4: 125 pipe expansion and contraction, 2009 V1: 3 propane vaporization and, 2010 V2: 134 PVC pipe and, 2008 V4: 53 rating, sprinkler systems (fire protection), 2011 V3: 18 scalding water, 2010 V2: 111 scaling and, 2008 V4: 205 settling velocity and, 2008 V4: 154 shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112, 2008 V4: 14-15 special-waste effluent, 2010 V2: 228 specific resistance and, 2010 V2: 192 sprinkler head ratings, 2011 V3: 13 storage tanks and piping, 2011 V3: 154 surface temperature of insulation, 2008 V4: 113 swimming pool heaters, 2011 V3: 126 temperature differences (TD,)t, TDIF), 2009 V1: 128 temperature stratification, 2011 V3: 154 thermal expansion, 2008 V4: 227 thermal support systems and earthquakes, 2009 V1: 160 water heaters, 2010 V2: 97, 101 water vapor in air and, 2011 V3: 172-173 water volume and, 2010 V2: 67-68 Temperature-actuated Mixing Valves for Plumbed Emergency Equipment, 2010 V2: 105 Temperature-actuating Mixing Values for Hot Water Distribution Systems, 2010 V2: 104-105 temperature-pressure-relief valves (TPV, TPRV), 2009 V1: 10, 2010 V2: 106 temperature stratification, 2011 V3: 154

tempered water abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 15 defined, 2009 V1: 30 tempered hot water (TEMP. HW, TW), 2009 V1: 8 tempered hot water recirculating (TEMP. HWR, TWR), 2009 V1: 8 temporary hardness, 2008 V4: 196 tennis courts, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18 tensile strength plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50 PVC pipe and, 2008 V4: 53 tensile stresses expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 69 stacks, 2008 V4: 229 with temperature change, 2008 V4: 228 Tension 360 bracing, 2009 V1: 162 tension problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 Tentative Provisions for the Development of Seismic Regulations for Buildings, 2009 V1: 174, 185 "tera" prefix, 2009 V1: 34 terminal elements, defined, 2009 V1: 128 terminal length, defined, 2010 V2: 1 terminal velocity defined, 2010 V2: 1 stack capacities and, 2010 V2: 4 stack terminal velocity, 2009 V1: 3 terminal vents, 2010 V2: 34 terminals, passenger, 2008 V4: 18 terra-cotta pipe sleeves, 2008 V4: 69 tertiary treatment of gray water, 2010 V2: 26-27, 27-28 teslas, 2009 V1: 34 test block conditions in gas boosters, 2010 V2: 128 Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, 2010 V2: 224 test headers, 2009 V1: 12 test-method standards, 2009 V1: 61 test station cathodic protection, 2009 V1: 140 testing backflow devices, 2008 V4: 183 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 90 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 183 gaseous fire-suppression systems, 2011 V3: 28 hot-water relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 hydrants, 2011 V3: 3-4 hydraulic soil conditions, 2010 V2: 139-142 insulation, 2008 V4: 106 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 280 liquid fuel systems, 2011 V3: 152-154 medical gas alarms, 2011 V3: 74-75 medical gas systems, 74-76, 2011 V3: 69 natural gas services, 2011 V3: 257 percolation rates for soils, 2010 V2: 141-142 pipes for radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 239 plastic fixtures, 2008 V4: 2 seat tests (valves), 2008 V4: 89 shell tests (valves), 2008 V4: 89 tank tightness testing, 2011 V3: 142-143, 153 urinal tests, 2008 V4: 9 water closet flushing, 2008 V4: 5-6 welders for radioactive pipe systems, 2010 V2: 239 wells, 2010 V2: 158

Testing and Rating Procedure for Grease Interceptors with Appendix of Sizing and Installation Data, 2008 V4: 153, 166, 250, 252, 253 tetrachloroethylene, 2008 V4: 186 tetrafluoroethylene (TFE), 2008 V4: 48, 86 Texas Manual on Rainwater Harvesting, 2008 V4: 265 Texas Water Development Board, 2008 V4: 265 text, abbreviations in, 2009 V1: 14-15 texture of soils, 2010 V2: 140-141 TFE (tetrafluoroethylene), 2008 V4: 48, 86 that is (i.e.), 2009 V1: 15 theaters drinking fountain usage, 2008 V4: 245 numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 18, 20 vacuum calculations for, 2010 V2: 180 theoretical barometric pressure, 2011 V3: 172 theoretical horsepower, 2011 V3: 186 therapy pools, 2011 V3: 107, 111 therm, converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 thermal compressors, 2011 V3: 187 thermal conductivity (k, K), 2008 V4: 105 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 plastic pipe, 2008 V4: 50 thermal contraction and plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 thermal efficiency defined, 2009 V1: 30, 128 water heaters and. 2010 V2: 107–108 thermal energy, 2011 V3: 188-189 thermal expansion. See expansion (exp, EXP, XPAN) Thermal Expansion and Contraction in Plastic Piping Systems, 2009 V1: 206, 2008 V4: 235 thermal-hydraulic irrigation valves, 2011 V3: 94 Thermal Insulation, 2008 V4: 116 thermal insulation thickness, 2009 V1: 118 thermal loads, 2008 V4: 141 thermal resistance (R, R, RES), 2008 V4: 105 thermal-shock protection, 2009 V1: 112 thermal storage devices and media, 2011 V3: 192 thermal stresses on piping systems, 2008 V4: 119 thermal-support systems, earthquakes and, 2009 V1: 160 thermal transmittance (U), 2008 V4: 105 thermocompression distillation, 2010 V2: 200 thermodynamic disc traps, 2011 V3: 162 thermometers, 2009 V1: 10 thermoplastic pipes, 2008 V4: 49 thermoplastic piping, 2010 V2: 123 thermoset plastic, 2011 V3: 138, 2008 V4: 49 thermostatic bellows steam traps, 2011 V3: 162 thermostatic-mixing shower valves, 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 14-15, 17 thermostatic-mixing tub valves, 2008 V4: 16 thermostatic steam traps, 2011 V3: 162 thermostats (T STAT) chilled drinking-water systems, 2008 V4: 243 drinking water coolers, 2008 V4: 242 thermosyphon in fluids, 2011 V3: 192 thermosyphon solar systems, 2009 V1: 122, 2011 V3: 192, 198 thickness (thkns, THKNS, THK) insulation, 2008 V4: 109-113 of soils, 2010 V2: 141 Thickness Design, 2008 V4: 28

thin skin membranes, 2008 V4: 217 thinking outside the box, 2009 V1: 225 thkns, THKNS (thickness). See thickness thousand cubic feet (Mcf, MCF), 2009 V1: 15 thousand pounds (kip, KIP), 2009 V1: 15 thread cutting, 2008 V4: 62 thread lubricants, 2008 V4: 62 threaded ball valves, 2008 V4: 84 threaded end connections, 2009 V1: 22 threaded hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 121 threaded joints earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 160 mechanical joints, 2008 V4: 60 preparing, 2008 V4: 62 threaded outlet drain body, 2010 V2: 14 threaded outlets, 2010 V2: 13 threaded rod couplings, 2008 V4: 142 threaded rods, 2008 V4: 132, 141 three-bolt pipe clamps, 2008 V4: 142 three-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 11, 12 thresholds in shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112 throttling valves, 2008 V4: 75, 83 thrust blocks, 2009 V1: 30, 2011 V3: 223 thrust loads, 2008 V4: 142 tie rods, 2011 V3: 221 TIG (tungsten inert gas), 2008 V4: 63 "tight" piping systems, 2009 V1: 160 tightness testing, 2011 V3: 142-143, 153 tiles in absorption systems, 2010 V2: 143 time (T) clean agent gas fire suppression, 2011 V3: 28 of concentration in runoff, 2011 V3: 241-242 in creativity checklist, 2009 V1: 227 intervals in hydraulic shock, 2009 V1: 6 in measurements, 2009 V1: 33 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 time in pipes, 2011 V3: 242-243 time-temperature curves in fire tests, 2011 V3: 2-3 time delays in clean gas extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 28 time history computer analysis, 2009 V1: 180 earthquakes, 2009 V1: 150, 151 timers for pumps, 2010 V2: 64 tin coatings for distillers, 2008 V4: 212 corrosion, 2009 V1: 129 distillation systems, 2008 V4: 195 galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132 piping, 2010 V2: 75 tin-lined copper pipes, 2011 V3: 49 tipping prevention, 2009 V1: 183 tissue-culture rooms, 2011 V3: 47 titanium, 2009 V1: 132, 2011 V3: 24, 2008 V4: 212 titration, 2008 V4: 224 TOC (total organic carbon), 2010 V2: 194 TOC (total oxidizable carbon), 2008 V4: 56 toe clearance in toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 105 toilet compartments. See water-closet compartments toilet flanges, 2009 V1: 198 toilet paper dispensers, 2009 V1: 106

in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147

Index

toilets. See also water closets dual-flush fixture drain flow, 2010 V2: 2 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 low-flow fixture drain flow, 2010 V2: 2 vacuum toilets, 2010 V2: 19 tolerance, 2009 V1: 33 toluene, 2008 V4: 186 tons (TON), 2009 V1: 39 tools tool access in cleanouts, 2010 V2: 9-10 for vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 180 top-beam clamps, 2008 V4: 142 top coats, 2009 V1: 136 top elevation (TE), 2009 V1: 15 top-spud water closets, 2008 V4: 3 torch testing, 2008 V4: 2 torches, propane-powered, 2010 V2: 133 tornados, 2009 V1: 262 Toro Company, 2011 V3: 96 torque conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 Torr. 2009 V1: 30 torrs, 2010 V2: 166 total alkalinity, 2010 V2: 189 total connected loads, 2011 V3: 51, 252, 256 total costs defined, 2009 V1: 217 generalized, 2009 V1: 217 total developed lengths, 2008 V4: 229 total discharge head, defined, 2008 V4: 98 total dissolved solids (TDS), 2010 V2: 193, 217 defined, 2008 V4: 224 levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 total dynamic head (TDH), 2010 V2: 161, 2011 V3: 123 total fixture count weights, 2008 V4: 207 total flooding systems carbon dioxide systems, 2011 V3: 26 dry-chemical extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 23 total head, 2010 V2: 161, 2008 V4: 93, 96-97, 98 total head/capacity curves, 2008 V4: 96-97 total head curve, 2008 V4: 96-97 total organic carbon (TOC), 2010 V2: 194 total oxidizable carbon (TOC), 2008 V4: 56, 216 total pressure loss method, 2010 V2: 87, 89, 94-95 total pumping head, 2010 V2: 161 total suspended solids, 2010 V2: 193 total trihalomethanes (TTHM), 2010 V2: 110 total work force in vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 169 tower water. See cooling-tower water towers in standpipe systems, 2011 V3: 21 toxaphene levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water. 2008 V4: 187 toxic, defined, 2009 V1: 31 toxic gases, 2011 V3: 267, 275-276 TPRV. See TPV (temperature-pressure-relief valves)

TPV (temperature-pressure-relief valves), 2009 V1: 10, 2010 V2: 106 TR-55, 2010 V2: 44-46 trace elements in water, 2010 V2: 190 Trace Level Analysis of High Purity Water, 2010 V2: 224 tractor-type grates, 2010 V2: 11 traffic loads automotive traffic and grates, 2010 V2: 11 bioremediation pretreatment systems, 2008 V4: 252 cleanouts and, 2010 V2: 9 grates and strainers, 2010 V2: 11 traffic vibration or resonance, 2008 V4: 120 trailer parks septic tank systems for, 2010 V2: 149-150 sewers, 2009 V1: 31 water consumption, 2008 V4: 208 transactions, fuel, 2011 V3: 147 transfer fluid, heat, 2011 V3: 192 transfer-type showers, 2009 V1: 112 transferring hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 transition fittings, 2011 V3: 256 transition joints, 2008 V4: 60 transmissibility of vibration designing, 2008 V4: 145 upper floor installation, 2008 V4: 150 varying frequency ratios and, 2008 V4: 146-149 transmittance, 2011 V3: 193 transmitted forces, 2008 V4: 146 transport trucks, 2011 V3: 57 Transportation Department. See U.S. Department of Transportation transportation gas service, 2010 V2: 114 transportation gas services, 2011 V3: 252 transverse bracing, 2009 V1: 159, 160, 185. See also lateral and longitudinal sway bracing transverse sway bracing, 2009 V1: 172 trap design, 2010 V2: 31-32 trap primers, 2009 V1: 31 trap seals defined, 2009 V1: 31 factors in trap seal loss, 2010 V2: 31-32 floor drains, 2010 V2: 11, 2008 V4: 16-17 introduction, 2010 V2: 31-32 primer devices, 2008 V4: 16-17 reducing trap seal losses, 2010 V2: 31-32 tests, 2008 V4: 5 trapeze hangers bracing pipes on trapeze, 2009 V1: 168, 171 defined, 2008 V4: 142 illustrated, 2008 V4: 68, 124 noise isolation, 2009 V1: 196 potential problems in bracing, 2009 V1: 183 preference for, 2008 V4: 67 selecting, 2008 V4: 126 trapeziums, calculating area, 2009 V1: 4 trapezoids, calculating area, 2009 V1: 4 traps. See also trap seals building traps, defined, 2009 V1: 18 condensate drainage, 2011 V3: 166 defined, 2009 V1: 30, 31 distance from vent connections, 2010 V2: 34 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 153, 162

heat exchangers, 2011 V3: 167-169 introduction, 2010 V2: 31-32 sink traps, 2011 V3: 45-46 space heating equipment, 2011 V3: 166-167 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 steam, 2011 V3: 162-163 urinals, 2008 V4: 9 travel devices, 2008 V4: 142 travel indicators, 2008 V4: 142 travel scales, 2008 V4: 142 travel stops, 2008 V4: 142 TRC (tubular modules in reverse osmosis), 2010 V2: 211 - 212treated water. See also water treatment defined, 2010 V2: 187 from reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 211 systems. See graywater systems Treating Cooling Water, 2010 V2: 225 treatment storm drainage, 2010 V2: 48 treatment of biosolids, 2008 V4: 262-264 treatment of gray water, 2010 V2: 25-27, 27-28 treatment of oil in water, 2010 V2: 245-246 Treatment of Organic Chemical Manufacturing Wastewater for Reuse (EPA 600), 2011 V3: 89 treatment plants, 2008 V4: 185. See also names of specific treatment plants (chemical treatment, water *treatment*) treatment rooms fixtures, 2011 V3: 38 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 36 medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 52 medical vacuum, 2011 V3: 54 water demand, 2011 V3: 46 tree piping systems, 2011 V3: 12 trench drains in chemical plants, 2010 V2: 243 defined, 2008 V4: 16 trenches absorption trenches. See soil-absorption sewage systems labor productivity rates, 2009 V1: 87-88 sanitary sewer services, 2011 V3: 225-226, 227 storage tank piping, 2011 V3: 155 Tri-Services Manual, 2009 V1: 174, 180 triage rooms, 2011 V3: 38 triangles calculating area, 2009 V1: 4-5 exercise, 2009 V1: 225, 252 rule for sink location, 2008 V4: 12 trichlor, 2011 V3: 128 trichloroethanes, 2008 V4: 186 trichloroethylene, 2011 V3: 66 trickle collectors, 2011 V3: 191 trickle irrigation, 2011 V3: 94 trickling filters, 2011 V3: 88 triggering clean agent gas fire suppression, 2011 V3: 28 trihalomethanes, 2010 V2: 213, 2008 V4: 186, 187, 215 trip-out loads. 2008 V4: 142 triple points, 2009 V1: 31 triplex vacuum pump arrangements, 2010 V2: 178 trisodium phosphate, 2010 V2: 12

TROs (tubular modules in reverse osmosis), 2010 V2: 211 - 212truss-type bracing, 2009 V1: 182 tsunamis, 2009 V1: 149 TTHM (total trihalomethanes), 2010 V2: 110 TU (turbidity units), 2008 V4: 196 tub fillers, 2008 V4: 16, 185 tube ozone units, 2010 V2: 214 tube pulls, 2009 V1: 31 tube washers, 2011 V3: 41 tuberculation, 2009 V1: 143 tubing natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 122-124 vacuum cleaning hose capacity, 2010 V2: 180 tubular-bag separators, 2010 V2: 178 tubular membranes, 2008 V4: 219 tubular modules in reverse osmosis, 2010 V2: 211-212 Tully, G.F., 2011 V3: 204 tungsten inert gas (TIG), 2008 V4: 63 tunnel tests, 2008 V4: 106 tunnels, vibration and resonance from, 2008 V4: 120 turbidity clarification of, 2010 V2: 198-199, 2008 V4: 200 defined, 2009 V1: 31, 2010 V2: 188, 2008 V4: 224 drinking water, 2010 V2: 217 filter beds and, 2008 V4: 203 measuring, 2010 V2: 193 safe levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187, 196 turbidity units (TU), 2008 V4: 196 turbine gas meters, 2010 V2: 116-117 turbine meters, 2010 V2: 88 turbine pumps, 2010 V2: 160-161, 162, 2011 V3: 123-124, 2008 V4: 98-99 turbine water meters, 2010 V2: 60, 61 turbo machines. See pumps turbo pumps, 2010 V2: 169 turbo-surgical instruments, 2011 V3: 56 turbulence defined, 2009 V1: 31 determining friction, 2010 V2: 74-75 floatation and, 2008 V4: 157 in grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 154 in rate of corrosion, 2009 V1: 135 turbulent flow in pipes, 2009 V1: 2 turf imperviousness factors, 2011 V3: 239 runoff, 2010 V2: 42 turnbuckles defined, 2008 V4: 142 illustrated, 2008 V4: 68, 121, 126, 127 use of, 2008 V4: 67 turndown ratio (TD), 2010 V2: 127 turnover rate, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 111 TW (tempered hot water). See tempered water twin-agent dry-chemical systems, 2011 V3: 23 twin-stage propane regulators, 2010 V2: 133 twisting motions, hangers and, 2008 V4: 119 two. See also entries beginning with double-, dual-, or multipletwo-bed deionizing units, 2011 V3: 48 two-compartment septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147

Index

two-compartment sinks, 2008 V4: 11, 12 two-family dwellings, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19 two-pipe venturi suction pumps, 2010 V2: 157 two-point vapor recovery, 2011 V3: 145 two-stage propane regulators, 2010 V2: 133 two-stage reduction, 2010 V2: 69 two-step deionization (dual-bed), 2010 V2: 206, 207 two-valve parallel pressure-regulated valves, 2010 V2: 69–70 two-way braces, 2008 V4: 142 two-word expressions of functions, 2009 V1: 218, 225 TWR (tempered hot water recirculating), 2009 V1: 8 TYP (typical), 2009 V1: 15 Type 1 air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 Type 2 air compressors, 2011 V3: 62 Type A gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 26 Type ACR/MED pipes, 2008 V4: 31 Type ACR pipes, 2008 V4: 31 Type B gas vents, 2010 V2: 136 Type B gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 26 Type B vent codes, 2009 V1: 43 Type B-W gas vents, 2010 V2: 136 Type DWV pipes, 2008 V4: 31, 41-42 Type G copper, 2008 V4: 31 Type K copper copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32 dimensions and capacity, 2008 V4: 33-34 lengths, standards, and applications, 2008 V4: 30 medical gas tube, 2011 V3: 69, 2008 V4: 42 Type L copper copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32 dimensions and capacity, 2008 V4: 35-36 lengths, standards, and applications, 2008 V4: 30 medical gas tube, 2011 V3: 69, 2008 V4: 42 natural gas, 2011 V3: 257 Type L gas vents, 2010 V2: 136 Type L vent codes, 2009 V1: 43 Type M copper copper water tube, 2008 V4: 32 dimensions and capacity, 2008 V4: 37-38 lengths, standards, and applications, 2008 V4: 31 Type OXY/ACR pipes, 2008 V4: 31 Type OXY, MED pipes, 2008 V4: 31 Type OXY/MED pipes, 2008 V4: 31 typhoid, 2008 V4: 199 typhoons, 2008 V4: 119 typical (TYP), 2009 V1: 15

U

U, U (heat transfer coefficients) (U factor), 2008 V4: 106 U-bends, 2008 V4: 229 U-bolts, 2008 V4: 68, 121, 142 UF. See ultrafilters and ultrafiltration UF membranes, 2010 V2: 191 UFAS (Uniform Federal Accessibility Standard), 2009 V1: 97–98 Uhlig, Herbert H., 2009 V1: 144 UL listings. See Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) ULC (Underwriters Laboratories of Canada), 2009 V1: 41–42 ULF. See ultra-low-flow water closets

ultra-clean tanks, gas cylinders, 2011 V3: 268 ultra-high purity gas grade, 2011 V3: 267, 276 ultra-high purity plus gas grade, 2011 V3: 267 ultra-high vacuum. 2010 V2: 165 ultra-low-flow water closets operation, 2009 V1: 127 water usage rates, 2009 V1: 127 ultra-pure water (UPW), 2008 V4: 56 ultra-pure water systems, 2010 V2: 218 ultra zero gas grade, 2011 V3: 267 ultrafilters and ultrafiltration cross-flow filtration, 2010 V2: 201, 213 defined, 2008 V4: 196, 220 membrane filters, 2010 V2: 211 oil spills, 2010 V2: 245 Ultraviolet Disinfection in Biotechnology: Myth vs. Practice, 2010 V2: 224 ultraviolet rays. See UV (ultraviolet rays) U.N. World Commission on the Environment and Development, 2008 V4: 256 unassisted creativity, 2009 V1: 227 unbalanced forces, vibration and, 2008 V4: 145, 146 unblockable drains, 2011 V3: 105 unconsolidated aquifers, 2010 V2: 157 undamped mechanical systems, 2009 V1: 150 under-counter grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162 under-counter mounted lavatories, 2008 V4: 11 under-counter mounted sinks, 2008 V4: 12 under-film corrosion. 2009 V1: 143 under-floor areas, 2011 V3: 27 under-table waste and vent piping, 2011 V3: 46 underdeveloped nations, sanitation, 2008 V4: 255-256 underground building sanitary pipe codes, 2009 V1: 44 underground digging, planning impacts of, 2008 V4: 120 underground inspections, 2009 V1: 95 underground piping acid-waste piping, 2010 V2: 234 cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23-25 coatings, 2009 V1: 136 defined, 2009 V1: 31 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 materials for, 2010 V2: 12-13 medical gas piping, 2011 V3: 68 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 231 underground building sanitary pipe codes, 2009 V1: 44 valves, 2008 V4: 90 underground pressurized fuel delivery systems, 2011 V3: 145underground sprinklers, 2011 V3: 92 underground storage tanks (USTs) abandonment and removal, 2011 V3: 154 codes and standards, 2011 V3: 137 connections and access, 2011 V3: 139 construction, 2011 V3: 139 defined, 2011 V3: 136 dispenser pans, 2011 V3: 146 filling and spills, 2011 V3: 139-140 fire suppression, 2011 V3: 146-147 fuel islands. 2011 V3: 146 fuel transactions, 2011 V3: 147 hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 leak detection and system monitoring, 2011 V3: 141-145

liquid fuel storage tanks, 2011 V3: 139-140 materials, 2011 V3: 138 overfill prevention, 2011 V3: 141 product dispensing systems, 2011 V3: 146-147 testing, 2011 V3: 152 vapor recovery systems, 2011 V3: 145-146 venting, 2011 V3: 141 underground suction fuel delivery systems, 2011 V3: 145 underground valves, 2008 V4: 90 Understanding the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act, 2011 V3: 135 underwater pool lights, 2011 V3: 135 underwriters. See insurance Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 32 fiberglass pipe, 2008 V4: 56 gas booster components, 2010 V2: 125 hot-water components, 2010 V2: 106, 112 list of standards, 2009 V1: 54 pipe hangers, 2011 V3: 18 surface burning pipe characteristics, 2010 V2: 224 UL 142: Steel Above Ground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, 2011 V3: 88, 137, 147 UL 723 standard, 2008 V4: 106 UL 1585: Class 2 & Class 3 Transformers, 2008 V4: 252 UL 2080: Fire Resistant Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, 2011 V3: 147 UL 2085: Insulated Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, 2011 V3: 137 valve fire protection approvals, 2008 V4: 73, 90 web site, 2011 V3: 89 Underwriters Laboratories of Canada, 2009 V1: 41-42 unemployment taxes, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 ungravel upheaval, 2008 V4: 203-204 ungridded piping systems, 2011 V3: 12 uniform attack corrosion, 2009 V1: 129-130 Uniform Building Code (UBC), 2009 V1: 185, 2008 V4: 247 Uniform Federal Accessibility Standard (UFAS), 2009 V1: 97-98 uniform flow in horizontal drains, 2010 V2: 6-8 Manning formula, 2009 V1: 1 Uniform Plumbing Code graywater, 2010 V2: 22 vent sizing, 2010 V2: 39-40 Uniform Plumbing Code, 2009 V1: 206, 2010 V2: 39, 115, 136, 2008 V4: 17, 20-21, 164-165, 253 uniform pressure loss method, 2010 V2: 87, 89, 95 Uniformat specification system, 2009 V1: 57-58, 65-66 unintended uses of piping, 2008 V4: 118 uninterrupted water supplies, 2011 V3: 46 uninterruptible gas services, 2011 V3: 251 unions (joints) defined, 2008 V4: 74-75 flanged, 2009 V1: 10 screwed, 2009 V1: 10 union bonnets, 2008 V4: 75 union rings, 2008 V4: 75, 79 union shoulder pieces, 2008 V4: 75 union threaded pieces, 2008 V4: 75 unions (labor), 2009 V1: 90, 2008 V4: 116 unisex toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 17-18

unit costs, in plumbing cost estimation, 2009 V1: 85 unit heaters, condensate traps, 2011 V3: 167 United States agencies and departments. See U.S. agencies and departments United States Pharmacopoeia. See U.S. Pharmacopoeia (USP) units, measurement. See measurement units Universal Plumbing Code (UPC), 2009 V1: 15 universities. See also laboratories diversity factor calculations, 2010 V2: 176 laboratory gas systems, 2010 V2: 121 University of Southern California (USC) Foundations for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research, 2008 V4: 179 unknowns in value engineering presentations, 2009 V1: 249 unobstructed reach for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 103, 104 unoccupied buildings, conserving energy in, 2009 V1: 119 unrestricted areas (facilities with radiation), 2010 V2: 237 unsanitary, defined, 2009 V1: 31 untreated water. See water impurities up flow, defined, 2008 V4: 224 UPC (Universal Plumbing Code), 2009 V1: 15 UPC vent sizing, 2010 V2: 39-40 upfeed risers, 2008 V4: 243 upper-floor installations, 2008 V4: 150 upright sprinklers, 2009 V1: 13, 29 upstream, defined, 2009 V1: 31 UPW (ultrapure water), 2008 V4: 56 UR. See urinals (UR) Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, 2010 V2: 44, 55 urban storm water contaminant concentration, 2010 V2: 27 urinals (UR). See also water closets abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 15 accessibility design, 2009 V1: 108 chase size, 2008 V4: 10 exclusion from gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 21 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 flushing requirements, 2008 V4: 10 gray water use, 2010 V2: 23-24 health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35, 36 installation requirements, 2008 V4: 9-10 LEED 2009 baselines, 2010 V2: 25 minimum number for buildings, 2008 V4: 20 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 197 reducing flow rates, 2009 V1: 126 specialty urinals, 2009 V1: 127 standards, 2008 V4: 2 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 swimming pool facilities, 2011 V3: 109 testing, 2008 V4: 9 traps, 2008 V4: 9 types, 2008 V4: 8-9 typical use, 2010 V2: 23 ultra low flow, 2009 V1: 127 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 water usage reduction, 2008 V4: 258 waterless, 2008 V4: 9 U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (ATBCB), 2009 V1: 98, 99 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers specifications, 2009 V1: 57

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Manual, 2010 V2: 137 value engineering, 2009 V1: 207 U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009 V1: 14. 2010 V2: 108-109 U.S. Department of Commerce, National Information Services, 2010 V2: 29 U.S. Department of Defense, 2009 V1: 185, 208 Tri-Services Manual, 2009 V1: 180 U.S. Department of Energy, 2009 V1: 42 Active Solar Energy System Design Practice Manual, 2011 V3: 204 Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy web site, 2011 V3: 204 Greening Federal Facilities Guide, 2009 V1: 126 U.S. Department of Health and Environmental Control, 2010 V2: 112 U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2011 V3: 35 U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 2009 V1: 97, 99 U.S. Department of the Army, 2010 V2: 55, 2008 V4: 116 U.S. Department of Transportation (DOTn), 2009 V1: 14, 52 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132 U.S. Environmental Protection Agency aggressiveness index, 2010 V2: 196 bioremediation standards, 2008 V4: 249 chemical waste system codes and, 2010 V2: 242 Effluent Guideline program, 2011 V3: 82-83 industrial waste water defined, 2011 V3: 81 laboratory gas regulations, 2011 V3: 263 potable water treatment technologies, 2010 V2: 187 private water wells, 2010 V2: 155 publications, 2010 V2: 154 Cross-connection Control Manual, 2008 V4: 179 EPA 440: The EPA Effluent Guidelines Series, 2011 V3: 89 EPA 600/2-79-130: Activated Carbon Process for Treatment of Wastewater Containing Hexavalent Chromium, 2011 V3: 89 EPA 600: Treatment of Organic Chemical Manufacturing Wastewater for Reuse, 2011 V3: 89 EPA 1664: Guidelines Establishing Test Procedures for the Analysis of Oil and Grease and Non-polar Material, 2008 V4: 252 regulations, 2011 V3: 81, 82 Safe Drinking Water Act and, 2010 V2: 159 special waste drainage codes and, 2010 V2: 227 storage tank regulations, 2011 V3: 137 tank leak detection regulations, 2011 V3: 141 water consumption statistics, 2009 V1: 127 Water Quality Standards, 2008 V4: 224 website, 2011 V3: 156, 2008 V4: 224, 265 U.S. Federal Specifications (FS), 2008 V4: 247 U.S. Food and Drug Administration, 2010 V2: 220, 224, 227 feed water components, 2010 V2: 220 U.S. General Services Administration, 2009 V1: 185, 2010 V2: 29 U.S. Government Printing Office, 2011 V3: 89 U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC), 2009 V1: 32, 2008 V4: 2-3, 256, 265

U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration, 2010 V2: 232 U.S. Pharmacopoeia (USP) feed water values. 2010 V2: 220 USP nomographs, 2010 V2: 218 USP purified water, 2010 V2: 219, 221 water treatment standards, 2010 V2: 187 U.S. Public Health Service (USPHS), 2010 V2: 154 U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, 2008 V4: 171 U.S. Veterans Administration, 2009 V1: 185 U.S. War Department, 2010 V2: 55 USACOE. See U.S. Army Corps of Engineers usage. See demand usages in swimming pools, 2011 V3: 107 USC Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research, 2008 V4: 179 use factors air compressors, 2011 V3: 183 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 183 USEPA. See U.S. Environmental Protection Agency users in cost equation, 2009 V1: 217 USGBC. See U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC) USP. See U.S. Pharmacopoeia (USP) USP gas grade, 2011 V3: 267 USPHS. See U.S. Public Health Service (USPHS) USTs. See underground storage tanks (USTs) utilities. See site utilities utility controllers (gas systems), 2010 V2: 121 utility costs, lowering, 2009 V1: 119 utility gas. See fuel-gas piping systems Utility LP-Gas Plant Code, 2010 V2: 137 utility sinks, 2011 V3: 36 utility water treatment, 2010 V2: 214-215 UV (ultraviolet rays), 2009 V1: 15 Legionella control, 2010 V2: 110 sterilization, 2011 V3: 48 swimming pool sterilization, 2011 V3: 133-134 ultraviolet radiation, defined, 2011 V3: 193 ultraviolet radiation treatment of water, 2010 V2: 110, 213, 218, 222, 223, 2008 V4: 213, 216 UV treatment of water, 2010 V2: 160

V

v, V (valves). See valves V (specific volume). See specific volume V (velocity of uniform flow), 2009 V1: 1 V (velocity). See velocity V (vents). See vents and venting systems V (volts). See volts v/v (volume to volume), 2010 V2: 191 vac, VAC (vacuum). See vacuum (vac, VAC) vacation pay, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 vacuum (vac, VAC) defined, 2009 V1: 31, 2010 V2: 165, 2008 V4: 179 perfect vacuum, 2011 V3: 172 sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 236-237 surgical use, 2011 V3: 56 symbols for, 2009 V1: 9, 15 valves for systems, 2008 V4: 87 vacuum breakers, 2009 V1: 31, 2008 V4: 173-174, 175, 176, 179. See also backflow preventers

defined, 2010 V2: 95 vacuum cleaning systems, 2010 V2: 178-186. See also vacuum systems cleanouts, 2010 V2: 186 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 178 components, 2010 V2: 178-179 friction losses, 2010 V2: 181-184, 184 inlet locations and spacing, 2010 V2: 180 piping, 2010 V2: 179 separators, 186, 2010 V2: 184 simultaneous operators, 2010 V2: 180 sizing exhausters, 2010 V2: 184 types, 2010 V2: 178 Vacuum Cleaning Systems, 2010 V2: 186 vacuum deaerators, 2010 V2: 199, 2008 V4: 197 vacuum drainage systems, 2010 V2: 19 vacuum levels defined, 2010 V2: 165 in exhauster sizing, 2010 V2: 184 vacuum-operated waste transport system, 2008 V4: 259 Vacuum Piping Systems, 2010 V2: 186 vacuum producers (exhausters), 2010 V2: 178, 181, 184 vacuum product dispensers, 2011 V3: 146, 149 vacuum pumps, 2010 V2: 169-170, 176, 2011 V3: 50, 65 vacuum relief valves, 2009 V1: 31 vacuum sand filters, 2011 V3: 118-119 Vacuum Sewage Collection, 2010 V2: 154 vacuum sewers, 2010 V2: 144 vacuum sources, 2010 V2: 169-171, 173, 174, 176 Vacuum Sources, 2010 V2: 186 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 178-186. See also vacuum cleaning systems altitude adjustments, 2010 V2: 166-167 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 172 color coding, 2011 V3: 55 fundamentals, 2010 V2: 165 general layout, 2010 V2: 174 introduction, 2010 V2: 165 laboratory systems, 2010 V2: 173, 2011 V3: 41-42 leakage, 2010 V2: 177, 178 Level 1 defined, 2011 V3: 78 Level 3 defined, 2011 V3: 78 levels, 2011 V3: 34-35 medical gas system switches, 2011 V3: 66 medical vacuum design checklist, 2011 V3: 50 diversity factors, 2011 V3: 70 laboratory outlets, 2011 V3: 41-42 number of stations, 2011 V3: 51, 52-53 oral surgery equipment, 2011 V3: 42 patient vacuum, 2011 V3: 77 piping systems, 2011 V3: 54, 64-65 piping, 2010 V2: 173, 2011 V3: 69, 73 pressure drop, 2010 V2: 168 pressure measurement, 2010 V2: 166 pump curves, 2010 V2: 168 purchasing, 2010 V2: 170 references, 2010 V2: 186 sizing, 2010 V2: 174-178, 2011 V3: 69, 73 time to reach rated vacuum, 2010 V2: 167-168 vacuum-pressure gauges, 2010 V2: 171 vacuum sources, 2010 V2: 169-171, 173, 176

velocity calculations, 2010 V2: 169 work forces, 2010 V2: 169 vacuum tube collectors, 2011 V3: 190, 193 valence, 2010 V2: 188, 189, 205 Value Analysis, 2009 V1: 252 value, defined, 2009 V1: 209 value engineering (VE) arguments against, 2009 V1: 225 checklists creativity worksheets, 2009 V1: 226 detail/product/material specification checklists, 2009 V1: 215 evaluation checklists, 2009 V1: 230-231 function definitions forms, 2009 V1: 219-224, 222 functional evaluation worksheets, 2009 V1: 236-247 idea development and estimated cost forms, 2009 V1: 234 idea evaluation worksheets, 2009 V1: 245 project information checklists, 2009 V1: 211-216 project information sources checklists, 2009 V1: 216 questions checklists, 2009 V1: 209 recommendation worksheets, 2009 V1: 249, 250 compared to cost fitting, 2009 V1: 249 contract document clauses, 2009 V1: 251 cost information, 2009 V1: 217-218 creativity process, 2009 V1: 223-229 defined, 2009 V1: 207 elements of, 2009 V1: 209 Evaluation phase, 2009 V1: 229-235 Function Analysis phase, 2009 V1: 218-223 Functional Development sketches, 2009 V1: 232-233 Gut Feel Index, 2009 V1: 235-248 Information phase, 2009 V1: 209-218 job plan phases, 2009 V1: 209 overview, 2009 V1: 207-208 pre-recommendation questions, 2009 V1: 248 purpose, 2009 V1: 207-208 qualitative results, 2009 V1: 208 Recommendation/presentation phase, 2009 V1: 249 results of, 2009 V1: 252 Risk Guides, 2009 V1: 248 salesmanship in, 2009 V1: 249 science of, 2009 V1: 251-252 second creativity, cost, and evaluation analysis, 2009 V1: 235 value changes, 2009 V1: 208 "value" defined, 2009 V1: 209 Value Engineering, A Plan for Invention, 2009 V1: 252 Value Engineering, A Systematic Approach, 2009 V1: 252 Value Engineering Change Proposals (VECP), 2009 V1: 251 Value Engineering for the Practitioner, 2009 V1: 252 Value Engineering in the Construction Industry, 2009 V1: 252Value Engineering Job Plan (VEJP), 2009 V1: 209 Value Engineering: Practical Applications, 2009 V1: 252 Value Engineering, Theory and Practice in Industry, 2009 V1: 252 valve-per-sprinkler irrigation, 2011 V3: 92 valved zones in irrigation systems, 2010 V2: 25 valves (v, V, VLV). See also specific types of valves applications compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 176, 2008 V4:
86-87 emergency gas shutoffs, 2010 V2: 121 equivalent lengths for natural gas, 2010 V2: 123 fire-protection systems, 2008 V4: 89-90 gas regulators, 2011 V3: 272 gasoline and LPG service, 2008 V4: 89 high-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 88-89 high-rise service, 2008 V4: 90 high-temperature hot-water service, 2008 V4: 89 hot and cold domestic water, 2008 V4: 85-86 hydrostatic relief, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 112 - 113infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 irrigation systems, 2011 V3: 94-95 laboratory gas systems, 2011 V3: 273-274 low-pressure steam and general service, 2008 V4: 87-88 medical air compressors, 2011 V3: 63 medical gas control valves, 2011 V3: 66-67 medical gas systems, 2008 V4: 87 medium-pressure steam service, 2008 V4: 88 propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 224 steam traps, 2011 V3: 162-163 testing in medical gas systems, 2011 V3: 74 vacuum systems, 2011 V3: 65, 2008 V4: 87 as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 closing quickly, 2010 V2: 71 codes and standards, 2009 V1: 44, 2008 V4: 73 components, 2008 V4: 79-80 defined, 2009 V1: 31 design choices, 2008 V4: 82 design details, 2008 V4: 82-85 domestic pressure drops and, 2011 V3: 214 end connections, 2008 V4: 80 friction loss in, 2010 V2: 90-91 functions, 2008 V4: 73 glossary of terms, 2008 V4: 73-75 installing insulation, 2008 V4: 108-109 materials for, 2008 V4: 78-79 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194-201 pressure losses, 2008 V4: 85 ratings, 2008 V4: 79 in risers, 2009 V1: 10 service considerations, 2008 V4: 73 sizing, 2008 V4: 85 stems, 2008 V4: 78-79 sulfuric acid and, 2010 V2: 230 types of, 2008 V4: 75-78 angle-globe valves, 2008 V4: 83 angle valves, 2008 V4: 76 automatic shutdown, 2011 V3: 84 ball valves, 2008 V4: 76-77, 83-84, 86, 87, 90 butterfly valves, 2008 V4: 76-77, 84, 90 check valves, 2008 V4: 74, 83, 86-87, 88, 89, 90 deluge, 2011 V3: 9-10 diaphragm-actuated, 2011 V3: 125 double-check valve assemblies, 2008 V4: 174 float-operated main drain butterfly, 2011 V3: 132 flush valve vacuum breakers, 2008 V4: 175 gate valves, 2008 V4: 74, 75, 82-83, 85, 87 globe valves, 2008 V4: 74, 75-76, 83, 85, 89

lift check valves, 2008 V4: 77, 83 manual butterfly, 2011 V3: 125 nonlubricated plug valves, 2008 V4: 89 plug valves, 2008 V4: 77 pneumatically operated main drain modulating, 2011 V3: 131-132 quarter-turn valves, lubricated plug cocks, 2008 V4: 84-85 swing check valves, 2008 V4: 77, 83 water-pressure regulators. See water-pressure regulators water-saving, 2009 V1: 127 weight of, 2008 V4: 118 in yard boxes (YB), 2009 V1: 10 vandal-proof grates and strainers, 2010 V2: 11 vandalism dressing rooms, 2011 V3: 110 fasteners on grates and strainers, 2010 V2: 11 protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 vane-type water-flow indicators, 2011 V3: 6 vapor barriers defined, 2008 V4: 142 insulation, 2008 V4: 107, 109-112 perm rating, 2008 V4: 105-106 types of, 2008 V4: 113 vapor-compression distillation, 2010 V2: 200, 2008 V4: 212 vapor contamination in air, 2011 V3: 265 vapor pressure, 2009 V1: 31, 2011 V3: 187 vapor recovery systems aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 149 classifications, 2011 V3: 137 hazardous wastes, 2011 V3: 84 testing, 2011 V3: 153 underground tank systems, 2011 V3: 145-146 vapor return valves, propane tanks, 2010 V2: 133 vaporization, propane tanks, 134, 2010 V2: 132 vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 vapors, hazardous acid wastes and, 2010 V2: 229, 231 atmospheric tank venting and, 2011 V3: 141 contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 173 hydrocarbons, 2011 V3: 136-137 monitoring, 2011 V3: 142, 144, 145 vapor pockets, 2011 V3: 153 VOCs, 2010 V2: 190 variability, defined, 2008 V4: 142 variable-area flow meters, 2011 V3: 177, 275 variable-frequency drives (VFD), 2011 V3: 125-126 variable-speed drivers, 2011 V3: 22 variable-speed pumps, 2010 V2: 63, 2011 V3: 125 variable spring hanger indicators, 2008 V4: 142 variable spring hangers, 2008 V4: 142 varnishes in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 147 vaults, subterranean fountain, 2011 V3: 99-100 VECP (Value Engineering Change Proposals), 2009 V1: 251 vector control, storm drainage, 2010 V2: 49 vegetable oil, 2010 V2: 11 vegetable peelers, 2008 V4: 184 vehicular traffic, 2010 V2: 11 VEJP (Value Engineering Job Plan), 2009 V1: 209 vel., VEL (velocity). See velocity velocity (vel., VEL, V)

air in vents and, 2010 V2: 35 centralized drinking-water cooler systems, 2008 V4: 246 cold-water systems, 2010 V2: 75, 76-78 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 defined, 2009 V1: 31 earthquakes, 2009 V1: 150 floating velocity, 2008 V4: 154 flow from outlets, 2009 V1: 6 hydraulic shock, 2009 V1: 6 intake air in compression systems, 2011 V3: 182 irregularity of shapes and, 2008 V4: 154 Legionella growth in systems and, 2010 V2: 109 liquid fuel piping, 2011 V3: 151 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 open-channel flow, 2009 V1: 1 in rate of corrosion, 2009 V1: 135 self-scouring velocity in sewers, 2011 V3: 225 settling, 2008 V4: 154 sewage life stations, 2011 V3: 236 sizing method for pipes, 2010 V2: 71–72 steam, 2011 V3: 159-160 storm water in ditches, 2011 V3: 250 swimming pool drains, 2011 V3: 104-105 terminal velocity, defined, 2010 V2: 1 types of piping and, 2010 V2: 78 vacuum cleaning systems, 183, 2010 V2: 181 vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 169 water hammer and, 2010 V2: 71-72, 73, 76-78 velocity head (h), 2009 V1: 5, 2008 V4: 98 velocity-limited devices, 2008 V4: 142 velocity pipe sizing method, 2010 V2: 89 vent connectors, defined, 2010 V2: 136 vent gases, defined, 2010 V2: 136 vent-limiting devices, 2010 V2: 117 vent pipes cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23 glass pipe, 2008 V4: 48 vent stack terminals, 2010 V2: 34 vent stacks air in, 2010 V2: 2 defined, 2009 V1: 31, 2010 V2: 35 design, 2010 V2: 35 sizing, 2010 V2: 35-37 vent systems codes, 2009 V1: 43 ventilators, 2011 V3: 69 vents and venting systems (V, vent, VENT). See also vent stack terminals; vent stacks aboveground tank systems, 2011 V3: 148 acid-waste systems, 2010 V2: 229, 234, 2011 V3: 42 air admittance valves, 2010 V2: 39 alternative systems, 2010 V2: 39 atmospheric tank venting, 2011 V3: 148 chemical-waste systems, 2010 V2: 243 combination drain and vent, 2010 V2: 33 duct seismic protection, 2009 V1: 145 factors in trap seal loss, 2010 V2: 31-32 fire-suppression drainage and, 2010 V2: 244 fixture vents. 2010 V2: 32-34. 38-39 force mains, 2011 V3: 234-235 gas appliances, 2010 V2: 117, 118 gas regulator relief vents, 2010 V2: 117-118

gas venting categories, 2010 V2: 119 grease interceptors, 2008 V4: 162, 163 infectious waste systems, 2010 V2: 242 introduction, 2010 V2: 31, 34-35 island vents, 2010 V2: 34 jurisdictions, 2010 V2: 39-40 laboratory waste and vent piping, 2011 V3: 46 loop venting, 2009 V1: 31 main vents, 2010 V2: 37 manholes, 2011 V3: 228, 233 mechanical area, fountain equipment, 2011 V3: 99 natural gas venting systems, 2010 V2: 118-119 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 195 offsets, 2010 V2: 37 oil separators, 2010 V2: 246 oxygen storage areas, 2011 V3: 59 Philadelphia stack, 2010 V2: 39 propane systems, 2010 V2: 134-135 reduced-size venting, 2010 V2: 18-19 sanitary drainage systems, 2010 V2: 18-19 septic tank vents, 2010 V2: 148 sewage lift stations, 2011 V3: 236-237 single stack, 2010 V2: 39 sizes and lengths, 2009 V1: 3, 2010 V2: 35-37 sizing, 2010 V2: 39-40 Sovent systems, 2010 V2: 39 special-waste drainage systems, 2010 V2: 228 storm-drainage stacks, 2010 V2: 50 suds venting, 2010 V2: 37-38 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108 symbols for, 2009 V1: 8, 15 testing, 2011 V3: 153 thermal expansion and contraction, 2008 V4: 227-229 traps and trap seals, 2010 V2: 31-32 underground liquid fuel tanks, 2011 V3: 141 vent-limiting devices, 2010 V2: 117 vented inlet tees in septic tanks, 2010 V2: 146 waste anesthetic gas management, 2011 V3: 65-66 waste stacks, 2010 V2: 33 venturi suction pumps, 2010 V2: 157 verbs in function analysis, 2009 V1: 218, 219, 225 vert., VERT (vertical). See vertical vertical forces, 2009 V1: 183 vertical high-rate sand filters, 2011 V3: 118 vertical leaders, 2010 V2: 50 vertical movement of hangers and supports, 2008 V4: 124 vertical natural frequencies, 2008 V4: 146 vertical pipes, 2009 V1: 31, 2008 V4: 126 vertical pressure media filters, 2010 V2: 201 vertical pressure sand filters, 2008 V4: 203 vertical pumps, 2008 V4: 94, 98 vertical risers for vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 180 vertical seismic load, 2009 V1: 177 vertical shaft turbine pumps, 2009 V1: 23 vertical stacks anchors, 2008 V4: 229 calculating terminal velocity and length, 2009 V1: 3 defined, 2010 V2: 1 fittings, 2010 V2: 1 flow in, 2010 V2: 1-2 hydraulic jumps and, 2010 V2: 2, 35 loading tables, 2010 V2: 4

maximum fixture-unit values, 2010 V2: 4 multistory stacks, 2010 V2: 5 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 194 pneumatic pressure in, 2010 V2: 2-3 sizing, 2010 V2: 5 stack capacities, 2010 V2: 3-5 stacks, defined, 2009 V1: 29 storm-drainage stacks, 2010 V2: 50 thermal expansion or contraction, 2008 V4: 229 weight of, 2010 V2: 2 vertical turbine pumps fire pumps, 2011 V3: 21 illustrated, 2010 V2: 161 private water systems, 2010 V2: 160-161 shallow wells, 2010 V2: 162 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 123-124 VGB (Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act), 2011 V3: 101, 104-106, 112 VGB stamps, 2011 V3: 104, 112 viable-count essays, 2010 V2: 188 vibrating fill above sewers, 2010 V2: 15 vibration and vibration isolation applications, 2008 V4: 150-151 calculating, 2008 V4: 147-148 compressed air systems, 2011 V3: 182 compression joints, 2008 V4: 60 critical problems with, 2008 V4: 145 defined, 2008 V4: 145 earthquakes earthquake vibration periods, 2009 V1: 150 floor-mounted equipment, 2009 V1: 157-158 piping and, 2009 V1: 160 suspended equipment, 2009 V1: 158 formulas for transmissability, 2008 V4: 146-149 glossary, 2008 V4: 145-146 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 120 natural or free vibration, 2009 V1: 150 noise-related lawsuits, 2009 V1: 263 piping, 2009 V1: 160, 2008 V4: 151. See also water hammer pumps, 2009 V1: 196, 202, 2008 V4: 100 speed and vibration control, 2008 V4: 151 types of vibration control devices cork, 2008 V4: 149-150 defined, 2008 V4: 142 elastomers, 2008 V4: 149-150 neoprene rubber, 2008 V4: 149 steel spring isolators, 2008 V4: 149-150 vibration isolation mounts, 2009 V1: 153 vibration isolators, 2008 V4: 145 water supply systems, 2009 V1: 191-192 vibration isolation devices. See vibration and vibration isolation video equipment, 2010 V2: 10 vinyl chloride, 2008 V4: 186 vinyl coatings, 2009 V1: 136 Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act (VGB), 2011 V3: 101, 104-106, 112 viruses defined, 2008 V4: 224 distilled water and, 2008 V4: 212 in feed water, 2010 V2: 188, 213

ozone treatments and, 2008 V4: 215 storm water, 2010 V2: 43, 49 visc. See viscosity (visc, VISC, MU) viscosity (visc, VISC, MU) calculating values of, 2009 V1: 2 defined, 2011 V3: 136 kinematic, 2010 V2: 73, 74, 77 measurements, 2009 V1: 34 settling velocity and, 2008 V4: 200 visitors' facilities, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 visual inspections, 2009 V1: 267-270 visualization in function analysis, 2009 V1: 219 Viton, 2009 V1: 32 vitreous china fixtures, 2011 V3: 35, 2008 V4: 1, 2, 244 vitrified clay, 2009 V1: 31 vitrified clay piping, 2010 V2: 75, 243, 2011 V3: 242, 2008 V4: 56-57, 57-58 VLV (valves). See valves VOCs (volatile organic compounds). See volatile organic compounds vol., VOL (volume). See volume volatile liquids, 2010 V2: 12, 244-246 volatile organic compounds (VOCs), 197, 2009 V1: 15, 2010 V2: 187, 190, 2011 V3: 137, 145, 2008 V4: 186, 187 volatile substances in distillation, 2008 V4: 211-212 volcanoes, 2009 V1: 148 volts (V, E, VOLTS) decomposition potential defined, 2009 V1: 142 measurement conversions, 2009 V1: 34 volume (vol., VOL) calculating, 2009 V1: 3-5 conversion factors, 2009 V1: 36 flow rate measurements, 2009 V1: 34, 2010 V2: 166 formulas, 2008 V4: 154-155 gas particles, 2011 V3: 171 initial and expanded water volume, 2008 V4: 232 nominal volume, 2008 V4: 233 non-SI units, 2009 V1: 34 saturated steam, 2011 V3: 157-158 sink volume calculations, 2008 V4: 163-164 volumetric expansion, 2008 V4: 233 water calculations, 2010 V2: 67-68 volume to volume (v/v), 2010 V2: 191 volumetric expansion, 2008 V4: 233 volute pumps, 2008 V4: 93, 98-99 vortex storm drainage collection systems, 2010 V2: 46

W

 $\begin{array}{l} & \mbox{W (walls). See walls} \\ & \mbox{W (waste sewers), 2009 V1: 8, 15} \\ & \mbox{W (watts). See watts} \\ & \mbox{W/m K (watts per meter per kelvin), 2009 V1: 34} \\ & \mbox{w/w (weight to weight), 2010 V2: 191} \\ & \mbox{wading areas, 2011 V3: 107} \\ & \mbox{wading pools, 2011 V3: 109, 111} \\ & \mbox{wafer butterfly valves, 2010 V2: 179, 2008 V4: 84} \\ & \mbox{WAG (waste anesthetic gases), 2011 V3: 65-66} \\ & \mbox{WAGD (waste anesthetic-gas disposal), 2011 V3: 55, 65-66, 78} \\ & \mbox{wages, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86} \\ \end{array}$

waiting rooms, 2011 V3: 36 WAL (walls). See walls walking, noise of, 2009 V1: 187-188 wall carriers, 2008 V4: 6 wall cleanouts (WCO), 2009 V1: 11 wall-hung equipment earthquake restraints, 2009 V1: 155 quality installations, 2009 V1: 259 wall-hung fixtures, noise mitigation and, 2009 V1: 197 wall-hung lavatories, 2008 V4: 11 wall-hung urinals, 2008 V4: 9 wall-hung water closets, 2009 V1: 197, 2008 V4: 4, 6 wall-hung water coolers, 2008 V4: 240 wall hydrants (WH), 2009 V1: 10, 12, 15, 31, 2010 V2: 86 wall inlets, swimming pools, 2011 V3: 135 wall-mounted medical gas stations, 2011 V3: 56 walls (W, WAL), 2009 V1: 202 ward rooms, 2011 V3: 37 ware washers, 2008 V4: 251 warehouses, numbers of fixtures for, 2008 V4: 19, 20 warning systems (medical gas), 2011 V3: 67, 74-75 warping, joints resistant to, 2008 V4: 61 warranty section in specifications, 2009 V1: 64, 70-71 Warren, Alan W., 2010 V2: 55 wash basins. See sinks and wash basins wash-down urinals, 2008 V4: 9 wash troughs, 2008 V4: 202 washdown racks, 2008 V4: 185 washdown water closets, 2008 V4: 3 washing floors with gray water, 2010 V2: 21 washing machines. See laundry systems and washers Washington Suburban Sanitary Commission (WSSC), 2008 V4: 179 washout urinals, 2008 V4: 9 washout water closets, 2008 V4: 3 washrooms. See water-closet compartments waste, defined, 2009 V1: 31 waste anesthetic-gas disposal, 2011 V3: 55, 65-66, 78 waste brines, 2010 V2: 148, 210 waste-disposal units. See food waste grinders waste fitting standards, 2008 V4: 2 waste grinders, 2011 V3: 36. See also food waste grinders waste-heat usage, 2009 V1: 123-126 waste-heat vaporizers, 2011 V3: 57 waste oil (WO), 2009 V1: 8, 2011 V3: 136 waste oil vents (WOV), 2009 V1: 8 waste or soil vents. See stack vents waste pipes, 2009 V1: 31, 2008 V4: 23 waste sewers (W), 2009 V1: 8, 15 waste stacks, 2010 V2: 1 vents, 2010 V2: 33 waste streams evaluation, 2011 V3: 83 segregating, 2011 V3: 86 waste transport, vacuum-operated, 2008 V4: 259 wastewater. See also graywater; storm water codes and standards, 2010 V2: 22 defined, 2010 V2: 21 introduction, 2010 V2: 21 issues of concern, 2010 V2: 22, 24 LEED certification, 2010 V2: 21 water balance, 2010 V2: 21-23, 28

Wastewater Engineering: Treatment/Disposal/Reuse, 2010 V2: 154 wastewater heat recovery, 2009 V1: 125 wastewater management. See also graywater systems; private onsite wastewater treatment systems (POWTS) biosolids, 2008 V4: 261-264 black water, 2008 V4: 260, 261, 262 energy requirements, 2008 V4: 264 graywater, 2008 V4: 259-260, 261, 262 individual aerobic wastewater treatment, 2010 V2: 150 industrial wastewater treatment. See industrial wastewater treatment overview, 2008 V4: 259-260 rainwater, 2008 V4: 259-261 reclaimed and gray water systems, 2009 V1: 126, 2010 V2: 25-27 wastewater pumps, 2008 V4: 100 WAT (watts). See watts water (WTR). See also water analysis; water chemistry; water-distribution pipes and systems as seal liquid in liquid ring pumps, 2010 V2: 170 average daily use, 2009 V1: 117 contamination in compressed air, 2011 V3: 173 distribution hazards, cross-connections, 2008 V4: 171 - 172economic growth, 2008 V4: 256 expansion formulas, 2008 V4: 232-235 formula, 2008 V4: 193 freezing points (fp, FP), 2008 V4: 114-115 graywater. See graywater systems human body, need for, 2008 V4: 237 kinematic viscosity, 2010 V2: 73, 74, 77 mass and volume calculations, 2010 V2: 67-68 methods for treatment, 2008 V4: 195-196 oil-water separation, 2011 V3: 88 plastic corrosion and, 2009 V1: 141 portable fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 29 quality, storm drainage, 2010 V2: 43 samples of, 2010 V2: 91 sanitation, global issues, 2008 V4: 255-256 specific volumes, 2008 V4: 233 temperature drop, 2008 V4: 115 thermodynamic properties, 2008 V4: 233 treatments for, 2008 V4: 187 types of deionized water, 2008 V4: 195 distilled water (DL), 2008 V4: 195 high purity water, 2008 V4: 217-219 potable water, 2008 V4: 194 purified water (PW), 2008 V4: 195 raw water, 2008 V4: 194 reagent and laboratory grades, 2008 V4: 218 soft water (SW), 2008 V4: 195 tower water, 2008 V4: 194 usage, green plumbing, 2008 V4: 255 wastewater. See wastewater weight calculations, 2008 V4: 232-233 water absorption, plastic pipe and, 2008 V4: 50 water analysis aggressiveness index, 2010 V2: 196 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 187

example report, 2010 V2: 192 introduction, 2010 V2: 191 pH, 2010 V2: 192, 197 predicting water deposits and corrosion, 2010 V2: 196-197 references, 2010 V2: 224-225 Ryzner stability index, 2010 V2: 196 silt density index, 2010 V2: 194 specific conductance, 2010 V2: 193 total dissolved solids, 2010 V2: 193 total organic carbon, 2010 V2: 194 total suspended solids, 2010 V2: 193 water softeners and, 2008 V4: 206 water attractions, 2011 V3: 109 water balance, 2010 V2: 21-23, 28, 2011 V3: 128 water chemistry elements, acids, and radicals in water, 2010 V2: 189 introduction, 2010 V2: 187-188 water chillers, 2008 V4: 237 water-closet compartments accessibility, 2009 V1: 105-108 ambulatory-accessible toilet compartments, 2009 V1: 106 patient rooms, 2011 V3: 37 single-occupant unisex toilet rooms, 2008 V4: 17-18 spacing, 2008 V4: 6 swimming pool bathhouses, 2011 V3: 110 water-closet flanges, 2008 V4: 6 water closets (WC). See also urinals abbreviation for, 2009 V1: 15 accessibility design, 2009 V1: 105-108 bariatric, 2008 V4: 5, 7 bolts, 2008 V4: 6 chase size, 2008 V4: 7 conserving water in, 2010 V2: 149 exclusion from gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 21 fixture pipe sizes and demand, 2010 V2: 86 fixture-unit loads, 2010 V2: 3 flushing performance testing, 2008 V4: 5-6 flushing systems, 2008 V4: 7-8 gray water usage, 2010 V2: 22-24 in health care facilities, 2011 V3: 35, 36, 37 high-efficiency toilets (HET), 2009 V1: 127 installation requirements, 2008 V4: 6-7 minimum numbers of, 2008 V4: 18-21 mounting, 2008 V4: 4 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 192, 194 poor installations of, 2009 V1: 255, 257 rates of sewage flows, 2010 V2: 153 reducing flow rates, 2009 V1: 126 seats, 2008 V4: 5 shapes and sizes, 2008 V4: 4-5 specimen-type, 2011 V3: 38 standards, 2008 V4: 2, 6 submerged inlet hazards, 2008 V4: 184 swimming pool facilities, 2011 V3: 109 types of, 2009 V1: 127, 2008 V4: 3-4 ultra-low-flow, 2009 V1: 127 water conservation, 2009 V1: 127 water fixture unit values, 2011 V3: 206 water usage reduction, 2008 V4: 258 water column (wc), 2008 V4: 5

water conditioning. See also water purification; water softeners; water treatment defined, 2010 V2: 187 glossary, 2008 V4: 220-224 water-conditioning or treating devices, 2009 V1: 31 Water Conditioning Manual, 2010 V2: 224 water conservation. See conserving water water consumption. See demand water consumption tests, 2008 V4: 5, 9 water-cooled after-coolers, 2011 V3: 178 water-cooled condensers, 2008 V4: 242 water coolers. See drinking-water coolers water damage insulation and, 2008 V4: 105, 107, 116 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 2 swimming pool bathhouses, 2011 V3: 110 water deposits, 2010 V2: 195, 196-197 Water Distributing Systems for Buildings, 2010 V2: 96 water distribution, defined, 2010 V2: 95 water-distribution pipes and systems. See also cold-water systems; hot-water systems codes, 2009 V1: 45 defined, 2009 V1: 31, 2008 V4: 179 hazardous connections, 2008 V4: 184 pipe codes, 2009 V1: 45 service connections, 2008 V4: 69 water supply and distribution symbols, 2009 V1: 12 water supply systems, 2009 V1: 31 weight of water-filled pipes, 2009 V1: 177 Water Efficiency design (LEED), 2008 V4: 2-3 water features, 2011 V3: 134 water fixture units (WFU), 2009 V1: 15 water-flow indicators, 2011 V3: 6 water flow tests, 2010 V2: 84-87 water for injection (WFI), 2010 V2: 219, 221, 223, 2008 V4: 213, 218, 219 Water for People, 2008 V4: 256, 265 water gas, 2010 V2: 114 water glass, 2009 V1: 140 water hammer as source of plumbing noise, 2009 V1: 189 calculating hydraulic shock, 2009 V1: 6 condensates and, 2011 V3: 162 controlling water hammer, 2010 V2: 72-73 defined, 2009 V1: 31, 2010 V2: 70-73 fuel dispensers, 2011 V3: 151 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 119 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 192 shock intensity, 2010 V2: 71 sizing of arresters, 2010 V2: 72-73 symbols on arresters, 2010 V2: 72 system protection and control, 2010 V2: 72-73 velocity and, 2010 V2: 76-78 water hammer loads, 2008 V4: 142 water hammer arresters (WHA) as protection and control, 2010 V2: 72-73 codes, 2009 V1: 43 defined, 2009 V1: 31 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 192 sizing, 2010 V2: 72-73 symbols, 2009 V1: 10, 2010 V2: 72 water heaters. See also hot-water systems

avoiding standby losses, 2009 V1: 119 booster water heaters, 2009 V1: 121, 2010 V2: 104 codes, 2009 V1: 43 conserving energy, 2009 V1: 117-120, 119 earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152 earthquake protection, 2009 V1: 153, 154-157 efficiency, 2010 V2: 97-98 energy efficiency, 2008 V4: 264 expansion tanks, 2010 V2: 67-68 explosions, 2010 V2: 97 gas efficiency, 2010 V2: 115 gas water heaters, 2009 V1: 121 hard water and, 2008 V4: 205 heat recovery, 2010 V2: 100-101 improper installations, 2009 V1: 253-254 indirect-fired, 2010 V2: 104 locations of, 2009 V1: 120 materials expansion, 2008 V4: 232-233 noise mitigation, 2009 V1: 199 overview, 2010 V2: 101-105 point-of-use booster heaters, 2011 V3: 47 product spec sheets, 2009 V1: 256 relief valves, 2008 V4: 231 sizing, 2010 V2: 98-99 solar, 2011 V3: 189, 196-199, 202, 2008 V4: 264-265 solar thermal, 2010 V2: 104 steam indirect-fired. 2010 V2: 104 stratification in water heaters, 2010 V2: 105 suspended, 2009 V1: 258 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 126-127 temperature, 2010 V2: 97, 101 thermal efficiency, 2010 V2: 107-108 types of systems, 2009 V1: 120 venting systems, 2010 V2: 118 water impurities, 2010 V2: 188-191 alkalinity, 2010 V2: 189 analysis and measurement, 2010 V2: 191-194 biological fouling, 2010 V2: 195, 217 conditions and recommended treatments, 2008 V4: 194, 196-197 dissolved gases, 2010 V2: 190 hardness, 2010 V2: 189 microorganisms, 2010 V2: 188 need for treatment, 2008 V4: 193-194 specific resistance, 2010 V2: 192 suspended solids, 2010 V2: 188 treatment methods, 2010 V2: 197-214 volatile organic compounds, 2010 V2: 190 water lateral, defined, 2010 V2: 95 water levels, fountains, 2011 V3: 102 water mains age and size, 2011 V3: 6 copper pipe, 2008 V4: 30-31, 32 defined, 2009 V1: 31 fire-protection connections, 2011 V3: 217, 220 inspection checklist, 2009 V1: 95 pressure and, 2011 V3: 206 sprinkler systems, 2011 V3: 3 water makeup. See makeup water systems Water Management: A Comprehensive Approach for Facility Managers, 2010 V2: 29 water management plans, 2009 V1: 126

water meters domestic water meters, 2010 V2: 59-60 flow-pressure loss averages, 2010 V2: 61 irrigation, 2011 V3: 95-96 loss of pressure, 2010 V2: 84 pressure losses, 2011 V3: 216 readings in consumption estimates, 2008 V4: 208 water mist extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24-25 Water Mist Fire Protection Systems (NFPA 750), 2011 V3: 30 water motor gongs, 2011 V3: 6 water, oil, and gas (WOG) pressure rating, 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 79, 86 water pipes. See cold-water systems; hot-water systems; water-distribution pipes and systems water polishing, 2008 V4: 219 water pressure excess water pressure, 2010 V2: 68-70 gravity-tank systems, 2010 V2: 65-66 hydropneumatic-tank systems, 2010 V2: 64-65 water hammer and, 2010 V2: 72 water-pressure regulators installing, 2008 V4: 82 selection and sizing, 2008 V4: 81 types of, 2008 V4: 81-82 water pumps. See pumps water purging, 2008 V4: 188 water purification and quality central purification equipment, 2010 V2: 223-234 Clean Water Act, 2011 V3: 82-83 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 187, 218 conductivity/resistivity meters, 2008 V4: 198 glossary, 2008 V4: 220-224 gray-water systems, 2010 V2: 27-28 introduction, 2010 V2: 159 measuring, 2008 V4: 195 methods, 2011 V3: 47-48 pharmaceutical systems, 2010 V2: 219 polishers and, 2010 V2: 210 pure-water systems defined, 2010 V2: 187 references, 2010 V2: 224-225 reverse osmosis and, 2008 V4: 217-219 specific resistance of pure water, 2010 V2: 192 system design, 2010 V2: 221 types of water biopure water, 2008 V4: 195 deionized water, 2008 V4: 195 distilled water (DL), 2008 V4: 195 feed water, 2010 V2: 219 grades of laboratory water, 2010 V2: 219 high-purity water, 2011 V3: 47, 2008 V4: 195, 217-219, 218, 223 potable water, 2008 V4: 194 reagent and laboratory grades, 2008 V4: 218 water impurities, 2010 V2: 188-191 water quality. See water purification and quality water-resistivity meters, 2010 V2: 193 water-reuse systems. See graywater systems water rise tests, 2008 V4: 5 water risers, 2009 V1: 31 water saver devices in reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 219 water seals, 2009 V1: 31 water service

Index

calculation worksheet, 2011 V3: 207 defined, 2010 V2: 95 entrances, 2008 V4: 181 water-service pipes, defined, 2009 V1: 31 water shock absorbers. See water hammer arresters (WHA) water slides, 2011 V3: 107 water softeners as pretreatments, 2008 V4: 206 chemicals, 2008 V4: 193, 194 for distillation, 2008 V4: 214 earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152 efficiency, 2008 V4: 209 exchanging contaminants, 2008 V4: 218 fixture flow rates for, 2008 V4: 207-208 hardness exchange ability, 2008 V4: 206 hardness of water, 2010 V2: 189 ion-exchange, 2010 V2: 201, 2008 V4: 197-199, 198-199 leakage, 2010 V2: 210 overview, 2008 V4: 205 pure water systems, 2010 V2: 222 regeneration, 2008 V4: 197, 206 salt recycling systems, 2008 V4: 209-211 salt storage, 2008 V4: 211 selection factors, 2008 V4: 205 single or multiple systems, 2008 V4: 208 sizing, 2008 V4: 209, 210 space needs, 2008 V4: 208-209 survey data, 2008 V4: 209 types of, 2010 V2: 160, 210 utility water, 2010 V2: 215 waste brines, 2010 V2: 148 water consumption guide, 2008 V4: 208 water sports, 2011 V3: 107 water spray fixed extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection (NFPA 15), 2011 V3: 30 water-storage tanks earthquake damage, 2009 V1: 152 fire-protection water supply, 2011 V3: 225 pressure regulators, 2010 V2: 163-164 types of, 2010 V2: 162 water levels in, 2010 V2: 162 water suppliers/purveyors, 2008 V4: 184 Water Supply and Sewage, 2008 V4: 166 Water Supply and Waste Disposal, 2008 V4: 166 water supply fixture units (WSFU), 2010 V2: 76 water-supply systems. See cold-water systems; domestic water supply; fire-protection systems; hot-water systems; private water systems; water-distribution pipes and systems; wells Water Systems for Pharmaceutical Facilities, 2010 V2: 224 water tables underground storage tanks and, 2011 V3: 138 wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 Water Tanks for Fire Protection, 2010 V2: 162 water temperature. See also hot-water temperatures bathtub water notes, 2009 V1: 110 chilled water systems, 2008 V4: 243 deaeration water temperatures, 2010 V2: 199 feed water temperature and deposits, 2010 V2: 197,

hot-water properties, 2010 V2: 107 hot-water relief valves, 2010 V2: 106 hot-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101, 102-104, 2011 V3: 39, 47 maintenance hot-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 105-106 mixed-water temperatures, 2010 V2: 101 scalding water, 2010 V2: 111 shower compartments, 2009 V1: 112, 2008 V4: 14-15 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 108 water heaters, 2010 V2: 97, 101 water toys, 2011 V3: 107 water treatment boiler feed water, 2010 V2: 215-216 chemicals, 2008 V4: 193 codes and standards, 2010 V2: 187 conditions and recommended treatments, 2008 V4: 196-197 cooling towers, 2010 V2: 216-217 corrosion inhibitors, 2009 V1: 141 defined, 2010 V2: 187 drinking water, 2010 V2: 218 external and internal treatments, 2008 V4: 194 fountains and pools, 2011 V3: 98 methods of producing, 2008 V4: 195-196 microbial control, 2010 V2: 213-214 references. 2010 V2: 224-225 series equipment, 2008 V4: 208 for specific impurities, 2008 V4: 194 surface and groundwater needs, 2008 V4: 193-194 swimming pools, 2011 V3: 110 types of aeration, 2010 V2: 197-198 chlorination, 2008 V4: 199-201, 215 clarification, 2010 V2: 198-199, 2008 V4: 200-201 copper-silver ionization, 2008 V4: 220 deaeration, 2010 V2: 199 dealkalizing, 2010 V2: 199 decarbonation, 2010 V2: 199 demineralization, 2008 V4: 195 distillation, 2010 V2: 199-201, 2008 V4: 211-215 filtration, 2010 V2: 201-204, 2008 V4: 196, 201-205 ion-exchange and removal, 2010 V2: 201-211, 2008 V4: 197-199 membrane filtration and separation, 2010 V2: 201, 211 - 213nanofiltration, 2008 V4: 196, 220 ozonation, 2008 V4: 215-216 reverse osmosis, 2008 V4: 195-196, 216-219 service deionized water, 2008 V4: 195 ultrafiltration, 2008 V4: 196, 220 ultraviolet light, 2008 V4: 213 water purification, 2010 V2: 218-219 water softening, 2010 V2: 210, 2008 V4: 204-211 utility water treatment, 2010 V2: 214-215 water impurities, 2010 V2: 188-191 Water Treatment for HVAC and Potable Water Systems, 2010 V2: 224 Water Use in Office Buildings, 2010 V2: 29 Water: Use of Treated Sewage on Rise in State, 2010 V2: 29 Water Uses Study, 2010 V2: 29 water utility letters, 2011 V3: 208

^{214, 221}

water vapor in air, 2008 V4: 105-106, 113 compressed air, 2011 V3: 265-266 properties, 2011 V3: 172-173 removing, 2011 V3: 273 water wells. See wells water working pressure (WWP), 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 90 waterborne radioactive waste (radwaste), 2010 V2: 236 waterfall aerators, 2010 V2: 198 waterfalls, 2011 V3: 100 waterless urinals, 2009 V1: 127, 2008 V4: 9 waterproof manholes, 2011 V3: 228, 233 waterproofing drains, 2010 V2: 15-16, 53 watts (W, WAT) converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 39 defined, 2011 V3: 193 measurement conversions, 2009 V1: 34 W/m K (watts per meter per kelvin), 2009 V1: 34 wave actions in water (tsunamis), 2009 V1: 149 wave pools, 2011 V3: 107-108 wax ring seals, 2008 V4: 6 Wb (webers), 2009 V1: 34 WC. See water closets (WC) wc (water column), 2008 V4: 5 WCO (wall cleanouts), 2009 V1: 11 WD (wind). See wind weak-base regeneration, 2010 V2: 206, 207 weather conditions, 2009 V1: 90, 2008 V4: 107, 118 aboveground tanks and, 2011 V3: 148 domestic water service pressure and, 2011 V3: 210 irrigation and, 2011 V3: 91, 96 regional requirements for plumbing installations, 2009 V1: 262 webers, 2009 V1: 34 wedges defined, 2008 V4: 75 gate valves and, 2008 V4: 83 weep holes, 2010 V2: 16, 2008 V4: 14 weight (wt, WT) clean agent gas fire containers, 2011 V3: 27 horizontal loads of piping, 2009 V1: 177 piping, earthquake protection and, 2009 V1: 159 in seismic force calculations, 2009 V1: 177 water, 2008 V4: 232-233 weight loss in corrosion, 2009 V1: 134 weight to weight (w/w), 2010 V2: 191 weighted evaluations in value engineering, 2009 V1: 235 weighting flow rates in fixture estimates, 2008 V4: 207 weirs, 2011 V3: 100 Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe, 2010 V2: 122 welded attachments and supports, 2008 V4: 122, 126 welded beam attachments, 2008 V4: 142 welded ends on valves, 2008 V4: 80 welded joints, 2008 V4: 62-63, 63 welded pipe attachments, 2008 V4: 142 welded steel piping, 2008 V4: 48 Welded Tanks for Oil Storage (API 250), 2011 V3: 88 welding clearance for, 2008 V4: 23 corrosion and, 2009 V1: 136 earthquake protection techniques, 2009 V1: 159 problems in seismic protection, 2009 V1: 184 types of, 2008 V4: 62-63

weld decay defined, 2009 V1: 143 welded joints in radioactive waste systems, 2010 V2: 239 weldless eve nuts, 2008 V4: 142 wells bored wells, 2010 V2: 156-157 driven wells, 2010 V2: 157 dug and augered wells, 2010 V2: 156 equilibrium equations for wells, 2010 V2: 157-158 gray-water irrigation systems and, 2010 V2: 24 hydraulics of, 2010 V2: 157-158 initial operation and maintenance, 2010 V2: 164 introduction, 2010 V2: 155-156 irrigation usage, 2011 V3: 96 jetted wells, 2010 V2: 157 matching water storage to pump flow, 2010 V2: 162 monitoring fumes, 2011 V3: 144 monitoring groundwater, 2011 V3: 143-144 performance specifications, 2010 V2: 164 protection of, 2010 V2: 159 pumps, 2010 V2: 160-162 system equipment, 2010 V2: 160-164 types of, 2010 V2: 155 water demand and, 2010 V2: 159 water quality, 2010 V2: 159-160 West Nile virus, 2010 V2: 49 wet-bulb temperature (wbt, WBT), 2011 V3: 187 wet chemical extinguishing systems, 2011 V3: 24 wet floors in chemical plants, 2010 V2: 243 wet gas, 2011 V3: 187, 252 wet helical-lobe units, 2011 V3: 187 wet niche lights, 2011 V3: 135 wet-pipe systems, 2009 V1: 28, 2011 V3: 6, 7 wet standpipe systems, 2009 V1: 30, 2011 V3: 20 wet-tap excavations, 2011 V3: 213 wet vacuum-cleaning systems (WVC) defined, 2010 V2: 178 illustrated, 2010 V2: 185 pitch, 2010 V2: 186 separators, 2010 V2: 179 symbols for, 2009 V1: 9 wet venting, 2009 V1: 31, 2010 V2: 32 wet wells capacity, 2011 V3: 237 sewage life stations, 2011 V3: 235-236 wetted surfaces, propane tanks, 2010 V2: 132 Weymouth formula, 2009 V1: 7, 2010 V2: 130 WFI (water for injection), 2010 V2: 219, 221, 223 WFU (water fixture units), 2009 V1: 15 wfu (water fixture units), 2009 V1: 23 WH (wall hydrants), 2009 V1: 10, 12, 15 WHA (water hammer arresters). See water hammer arresters What Future Role for Pressure Sewers?, 2010 V2: 154 wheel loads, 2008 V4: 252 wheelchairs adult-sized, dimensions, 2009 V1: 100 anthropometrics for wheelchairs, 2009 V1: 99-101 approaches and reaches, 2009 V1: 102 clear space for, 2009 V1: 99-101 toilet and bathing rooms, 2009 V1: 104-105 water cooler accessibility, 2008 V4: 239-240

wheeled fire extinguishers, 2011 V3: 23, 29

Index

WHEN relationship, 2009 V1: 223 whirlpool bathtubs, 2010 V2: 111, 2008 V4: 15 whirlpools, 2011 V3: 111 Whitney, Eli, 2009 V1: 225 WHY logic path, 2009 V1: 223 wind (WD) effect on irrigation sprinklers, 2011 V3: 93 hangers and supports and, 2008 V4: 119 wind loads, 2008 V4: 142 Windows TR-55, 2010 V2: 44-46 Winston Compound Parabolic Concentrator (CPC) system, 2011 V3: 196 wire drawing, 2008 V4: 75, 81 wire hooks, 2008 V4: 142 wire mesh insulation jackets, 2008 V4: 108 wire ropes, 2008 V4: 135 wire screens for diatomaceous earth filters, 2008 V4: 204 wire wound tubes for diatomaceous earth filters, 2008 V4: 204 wireless meter-reading equipment, 2010 V2: 116 Wisconsin Administrative Code, 2011 V3: 135 Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, 2010 V2: 55 Wisconsin DNR, 2010 V2: 29 WO (waste oil), 2009 V1: 8 WOG (water, oil, and gas pressure rating). See water, oil, and gas (WOG) pressure rating Wolf, J.B., 2010 V2: 29 wood, anchoring into, 2008 V4: 131 wood shrinkage, protecting against, 2010 V2: 16 wood stave piping, 2010 V2: 75, 78 Woodcock, J.J., 2010 V2: 29 word processing of specifications, 2009 V1: 65 work conversion factors, 2009 V1: 35 converting to SI units, 2009 V1: 38 defined, 2009 V1: 56, 2011 V3: 187 measurements, 2009 V1: 35 work change directives, 2009 V1: 57 work functions in value engineering, 2009 V1: 218 working deionizers, 2010 V2: 205 working hours, in cost estimation, 2009 V1: 90 working occupants, 2010 V2: 99 working pressure, vacuum systems, 2010 V2: 171 workmanship standards, 2009 V1: 61, 253-254 workmen's compensation, in labor costs, 2009 V1: 86 worksheets. See checklists and forms World Aquatic Health Conference, 2011 V3: 122, 135 worst case possibilities, radiation and, 2010 V2: 239 worth, defined, 2009 V1: 209 WOV (waste oil vents), 2009 V1: 8 wrist blades on faucets, 2011 V3: 35 written amendments, 2009 V1: 57 Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings (DWV), 2008 V4: 32 Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 Wrought Copper Braze Fittings, 2008 V4: 42 wrought iron piping, 2010 V2: 75, 78 natural gas systems, 2010 V2: 122 WSFU (water supply fixture units), 2010 V2: 76 WSSC (Washington Suburban Sanitary Commission), 2008 V4: 179

wt, WT (weight). See weight WVC (wet vacuum cleaning). See wet vacuum-cleaning systems WWP (water working pressure), 2009 V1: 15, 2008 V4: 90 WWP-541 federal standard, 2008 V4: 247 wyes, 2010 V2: 32–33, 2008 V4: 6 Wyly, R.S., 2010 V2: 4

X

x-ray areas, 2011 V3: 42, 52 x-rays, 2010 V2: 236–237 X#A (compressed air). See compressed air XH (extra heavy) cast iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 24–26 XH (extra heavy) cast-iron soil pipe, 2008 V4: 23 XP explosion-proof construction, 2010 V2: 125 XP junction boxes, 2010 V2: 125 XPAN (expansion. See expansion xylenes, 2008 V4: 186

Y

Y-pattern valves, 2008 V4: 83 y (years), 2009 V1: 34 yard hydrants (YD), 2009 V1: 15 yards (yd, YD), 2009 V1: 39 yards and lawns lawn imperviousness factors, 2011 V3: 239 lawn sprinkler supply (LS), 2009 V1: 8 storm-drainage systems and, 2010 V2: 41 yard cleanouts (CO), 2009 V1: 11 YB (valves in yard boxes), 2009 V1: 10 YD (yard hydrants), 2009 V1: 15 yd, YD (yards), 2009 V1: 39 year-round pools, 2011 V3: 108 years (yr, YR), 2009 V1: 34 Yeh, K.L., 2010 V2: 225 yellow brass, 2009 V1: 132 YMCAs, 2010 V2: 99 yoke vents, 2009 V1: 31, 2010 V2: 35 Young, Virgil E., 2011 V3: 96 yr, YR (years), 2009 V1: 34 Yrjanainen, Glen, 2010 V2: 55

Z

z, Z (zones), 2009 V1: 174 ZCV (zone control valves), 2009 V1: 15 Zelmanovich, Y., 2010 V2: 224 zeolite process, 2010 V2: 160 zeolites, 2010 V2: 205, 2011 V3: 87 zero-flow potential, 2009 V1: 143 zero gas grade, 2011 V3: 267 zero governor regulators, 2010 V2: 117 zero governors, 2011 V3: 255 zeta potential, 2010 V2: 198 zinc anodes, 2009 V1: 139 brass and bronze, 2008 V4: 78 corrosion, 2009 V1: 129, 2008 V4: 196 electromotive force series, 2009 V1: 132 galvanic series, 2009 V1: 132

levels in drinking water, 2008 V4: 186 storm water, 2010 V2: 27 treating in water, 2008 V4: 187 zinc-coated piping, 2010 V2: 122 $\begin{array}{l} \text{ZN} \ (\text{zones}), 2009 \ \text{V1:} 174 \\ \text{zone control valves} \ (\text{ZCV}), 2009 \ \text{V1:} 15 \\ \text{zone valves}, 2011 \ \text{V3:} 50, 66 \\ \text{zones} \ (\text{z}, \text{Z}, \text{ZN}), \text{ in seismic force calculations}, 2009 \ \text{V1:} 174 \\ \end{array}$

far@erga.com 17/01/15

far@erga.com 17/01/15

far@erga.com 17/01/15